



Objective

**General**

**ENGLISH**

Bank (PO & Clerk), NDA, CDS  
SSC (CGL, MTS, LDC), MBA  
Hotel Management  
MCA, UPSC, BEd Exams

SP Bakshi



Objective  
**General**  
**ENGLISH**

For All Competitive Exams



Objective  
**General**  
**ENGLISH**

For All Competitive Exams

Bank (PO & Clerk), NDA,  
CDS, SSC (CGL, MTS, LDC),  
MBA, Hotel Management,  
MCA, UPSC, B Ed, Exams

SP Bakshi



**ARIHANT PUBLICATIONS (INDIA) LIMITED**



**Arihant Publications (India) LTD**

All Rights Reserved

⌘ **© PUBLISHERS**

No part of this publication may be re-produced, stored in a retrieval system or distributed in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning, web or otherwise without the written permission of the publisher. Arihant has obtained all the information in this book from the sources believed to be reliable and true. However, Arihant or its editors or authors or illustrators don't take any responsibility for the absolute accuracy of any information published and the damages or loss suffered there upon.

*All disputes subject to Meerut (UP) jurisdiction only.*

⌘ **ADMINISTRATIVE & PRODUCTION OFFICES**

**Regd. Office**

'Ramchhaya' 4577/15, Agarwal Road, Darya Ganj, New Delhi -110002  
Tele: 011- 47630600, 43518550

**Head Office**

Kalindi, TP Nagar, Meerut (UP) - 250002  
Tele: 0121-7156203, 7156204

⌘ **SALES & SUPPORT OFFICES**

Agra, Ahmedabad, Bengaluru, Bareilly, Chennai, Delhi, Guwahati,  
Hyderabad, Jaipur, Jhansi, Kolkata, Lucknow, Nagpur & Pune

⌘ **ISBN : 978-93-5176-844-9**

⌘

Published by Arihant Publications (India) Ltd.

*For further information about the books published by Arihant  
log on to [www.arihantbooks.com](http://www.arihantbooks.com) or email to [info@arihantbooks.com](mailto:info@arihantbooks.com)*

Follow us on    

<https://t.me/eagledgeujkssbjkpsc>

# PREFACE

**W**e feel a sense of rare achievement in bringing out this book on English Grammar for the benefit of the aspirants planning to take various competitive exams. This book would not have seen the light of the day if the authors had not felt the vacuum of a comprehensive book on the subject. In fact, we have always felt that there is still a need for a compact and easy-to-understand volume of this kind.

The authors have no hesitation in asserting, though with all humility, that the subject-matter of the book has been approved by and tempered with practical experience. Its authenticity has been accepted by a wider circle of student community with sustained interest. In a nutshell, the book is a brain child of practical teaching skill that the authors themselves imbibed while teaching.

As such a unique approach has been adopted to provide exhaustive coverage to important topics of Writing Ability and Verbal Ability. It has been our endeavour to provide a large number of Practice and Revision Exercises. A reasonable care has been taken to ensure that all the latest patterns of questions on English language find room in the book. Latest Sentences, Words and Expressions put up in the recent different exams have been duly incorporated to keep the students abreast of the present trends of the questions a student is expected to answer.

The authors do not claim any originality about the subject-matter but the innovative, systematic and lucid style adopted in the presentation of the theme is exclusively original.

The authors would fervently like to express their profound gratitude to Sh YC Jain of M/s Arihant Prakashan for his unstinted co-operation and enthusiasm in making the publication of the book possible. We would be failing in our duty if we fail to appreciate the motivation provided by young Sh. Deepesh Jain in bringing out this book in this form. We wish him success in life.

The valuable suggestions from student brothers are welcome. They would be incorporated in the ensuing editions of this book and also in other books that are on the anvil.

**Minerva Institute**  
Jan 1, 2000

**Authors**

# CONTENTS

## Part 'A'

### Foundation Module (Unit-I and Unit-II)

#### Unit - I

1. The Function of Tenses	1
→ Revision Exercises	12
2. Voice	17
3. Modals	32
→ Revision Exercises	41
→ Answers	43

#### Unit - II

4. Kinds of Sentences & Clauses	51
→ Revision Exercises	60
5. Clause Analysis	63
6. Question Tags	70
→ Revision Exercises	76
7. Non-Finite Verbs	79
8. Verb	92
→ Revision Exercises	104
→ Review Exercise	108
→ Answers	114

#### Unit-III

9. Articles	123
10. Noun	134
11. Pronoun	142
→ Review Exercise	149
→ Answers	153

#### Unit IV

12. Adjective	156
13. Adverb	164
14. Prepositions	171
→ Review Exercise	199
→ Answers	203

## Unit-V

15. Phrasal Verbs	206
16. Idioms and Phrases	221
→ Review Exercise	266
→ Answers	269

## Unit-VI

17. Spotting Errors (Miscellaneous)	271
18. Sentence Improvement	310
19. Selecting the Correct Sentences	344
→ Answers	355

## Part 'B'

(Verbal Ability)

1. Paronyms and Homonyms	368
2. One Word Substitutions	387
3. Words with Meanings	412
→ Additional Words for Practice	451
4. Synonyms and Antonyms	475
(a) Revision Exercises (Based on Synonyms)	516
(b) Revision Exercises (Based on Antonyms)	533
5. Foreign Words and Expressions	550
6. The Sentence Completion	555
7. Cloze Test	569
→ Answers	591

## Part 'C'

1. Sequence of Sentences	597
2. Objective Comprehension	623
→ Answers	660

## Part 'D'

(Practical Grammar)

1. Narration	663
2. Synthesis	680
3. Transformation	703
4. Punctuation	730
5. Spelling Rules	739
6. Contractions	752
→ Answers	755

## PART A

### Unit I (Foundation Module)

# 1

# The Function of Tenses

---

A **tense** may be defined as that form of a verb which indicates the time and the **state of an action or event**. In this manner a verb may refer to

#### (A) **Time of an Action** (Tense)

*For example*

- |                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (i) He goes to school.      | (Present time of an action) |
| (ii) He went to school.     | (Past time of an action)    |
| (iii) He will go to school. | (Future time of an action)  |

From the above sentences, it will be clear to the students that there are three main tenses.

1. The Present tense
2. The Past tense
3. The Future tense

#### (B) **State of an Action** (Function of Tenses)

*For example*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (i) I write letters regularly.                   | (Present tense, Habitual function)            |
| (ii) I am writing a letter.                      | (Present continuous, Progressive function)    |
| (iii) I have just written a letter.              | (Present perfect, Preceding function)         |
| (iv) I have been writing a letter for some time. | (Present perfect continuous, Time expression) |

#### (C) **Time Frame of a Tense**

We have following three time frames and in order to get a complete structure of tenses, we should know briefly all of them. These are as follows

- (i) **Point of time** is that time which denotes any specific /proper time. *e.g.*, in 1947, on Monday etc.
- (ii) **Period of time** is that time which denotes a specific duration of time. *e.g.*, from 1930 to 1950, from Monday to Saturday etc.
- (iii) **Expression of time** denotes the combination of both point and period of time. *e.g.*, winter 1947, summer 1950 etc.

## The Tenses and their Functions

### The Present Indefinite Tense

—*Habitual Action*

(A) This tense is generally used to denote ‘**habit, custom, practice, repeated action, permanent activity, general truth**’ etc.

These ideas are expressed by the adverbs of frequency such as ‘**often, seldom, usually, never, occasionally, sometimes, normally, generally, always, frequently, rarely, daily**’.

*For example*

- (i) The old lady goes for a walk in the morning.
- (ii) Pearl usually believes everybody.
- (iii) Arnav often gets late for lunch.
- (iv) Suhani always comes in time.
- (v) Shaurya seldom gets up late.

(B) This tense is also used to make a statement in the present **showing permanent nature and activity of the subject and eternal principles**.

*For example*

- (i) I know him well.
- (ii) He teaches in St. Xavier College.
- (iii) The cow gives milk.
- (iv) Rivers freeze at high altitude.

### Additional Uses of Present Indefinite Tense

#### Historical Present

- (i) Now Netaji enters and addresses the Indian soldiers.
- (ii) Now Arjun shoots arrows at Bhishma.

#### Future Arrangement

- (i) The Prime Minister arrives from New York tomorrow.
- (ii) He leaves his job next week.

## Work Book Exercise A

**Directions** Make the sentences using Present Indefinite tense with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets.

1. Buses ..... on this road every hour. (run)
2. Apples ..... ripe in autumn. (get)
3. Meena ..... on the stage. (dance)
4. The last bus normally ..... at midnight. (leave)
5. He ..... dinner at 8 p.m. (not have)

**The Present Continuous Tense**—*Progressive Action*

(A) This tense is normally used **for an action in progress** that is temporary in nature (not for a permanent activity) in the present at the time of speaking.

*For example*

- (i) She is not working. She is swimming in the river.
- (ii) It is raining outside.

(B) It also expresses **future action or a definite arrangement in the near future**.

*For example*

- (i) I am going to the cinema tomorrow.
- (ii) She is coming next week.

**Additional Uses of Present Continuous Tense**

(C) Continuous tense with 'always' may express an idea which is not to the liking of the speaker.

*For example*

- (i) She is always teaching her children.
- (ii) He is always praising his friends.

(D) There are some of the verbs which sometime don't admit of progressive action. Such verbs are called Non-progressive (Stative verbs).

*For example*

- (i) **Verbs of Perception** See, taste, smell, hear, prefer, please.
- (ii) **Verbs of Thinking Process** Think, know, mean, mind.
- (iii) **Verbs Showing Possession** Own, have, belong, comprise, possess, contain.
- (iv) **Verbs Expressing Feelings or State of Mind** Believe, like, love, want, wish, desire, hate.
- (v) **Verbs in General** Look, seem, appear, affect, resemble, cost, require, stand, face, become.

(a) *Study these sentences carefully*

**Incorrect**

1. He is owning a car.
2. We are hearing the bell.
3. This house is belonging to me.
4. I am not hating him.
5. Are you forgetting my name?
6. I am not meaning this.
7. I am having no house to live in.
8. She stands in the shade of a tree.
9. The temple is standing in the heart of the city.
10. The book is containing good subject-matter.

**Correct**

- He owns a car.
- We hear the bell.
- This house belongs to me.
- I don't hate him.
- Have you forgotten my name?
- I don't mean this.
- I have no house to live in.
- She is standing in the shade of a tree.
- The temple stands in the heart of the city.
- The book contains good subject-matter.

(b) *Mark the difference in the use of stative activity and progressive verbs.*

(Temporary activity)

- |  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| 1. The rose smells sweet.                | Stative verb         |
| 2. She is smelling a black rose.         | Progressive verb     |
| 3. He lives in Chennai.                  | Stative verb         |
| 4. She is living in India at present.    | Temporary activity   |
| 5. She has a large house to live in.     | Stative verb         |
| 6. She is having lunch now.              | Progressive verb     |
| 7. It looks it may rain soon.            | Stative verb         |
| 8. She is looking at the sky.            | Temporary activity   |
| 9. I am seeing him next morning.         | Progressive verb     |
| 10. The nurse is feeling her forehead.   | Progressive verb     |
| 11. I think she is a miser.              | Stative verb         |
| 12. I am thinking of leaving Chandigarh. | Progressive verb     |
| 13. I love my sister.                    | Stative verb         |
| 14. She is loving her daughter.          | Progressive activity |

(E) 'While, still, at the moment, presently (at present) and now' may help students to express progressive present.

## Work Book Exercise B

**Directions** Make the sentences using *Present Continuous tense* with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets.

1. She ....., she ..... chess with her friends. (*not work, play*)
2. She ..... for America next year. (*leave*)
3. What you ..... at present? I ..... a poem. (*read, read*)
4. We ..... lunch at 2.00 tomorrow as Ram ..... a noon train. (*have, catch*)
5. Meena usually does the cooking but I ..... it today as she isn't here. (*do*)

### The Present Perfect Tense (Imperfect Past)

—*Preceding Action*

(A) This tense is a mixture of present and past. At the time of speaking the action is already complete in the past. It always implies a strong connection with the present though action took place in the past. Generally, the following adverbs and conjunctions are used to express the **preceding action**. *For example*

'Ever, just, recently, already, yet, till (time), so far, of late, lately, before, (by) by the time, after' etc.

**NOTE** 'Just' is used in the sense of 'already'. Other meanings of 'just' are 'now' and 'exactly'.

- (i) I have **just** seen that film.
- (ii) I have **already** had my breakfast.
- (iii) '**Ever**' means 'any time in the past' and 'always'.
- (iv) '**So far, yet, till**' means 'upto now', upto this. (*negative implication*)
- (v) Of late, lately (*recently, used only in Present Perfect Tense*)

**(B) Present Perfect + Point of time = Simple Past**

It should be noted that point of time in the past indicates that action took place at a point in the past. The point of time in the past is expressed by '**Since, ever since, last, yesterday, the other day, ago, before, back**' formerly, (any time in the past) etc. *For example*

- (i) She has returned two days ago/before. (omit 'has')
- (ii) She returned two days ago. (Correct)

**(C) Present Indefinite + Time expression = Present Perfect**

This tense can also be used with '**since, for, how long, whole, all, throughout, all along**' etc to express time expression.

*For example*

- (i) He has known me for two years.
- (ii) She has owned this parlour since 2002.

**NOTE** Look up **Perfect Continuous** tense for details about time expression.

## Work Book Exercise C

**Directions** Make the sentences using Present Perfect tense with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets.

- In the movie we just ..... the most extraordinary scene. (see)
- This is the best book I ever ..... (read)
- How long you ..... him? (know)
- There are no taxis available because the drivers ..... on strike lately. (go)
- Vinay ..... the punctured tyre of his car yet. (mend)

## Work Book Exercise D

**Directions** Complete the sentences by using the Present Perfect or the Simple Past as the case may be. Remember that

- (a) Present Perfect = Preceding action, (Action in the past used in present)  
 (b) Present Perfect + Point of time = Simple Past  
 (c) Present Indefinite + Time Expression = Present Perfect

- Have you taken lunch?  
 (a) Yes, I ..... (b) Yes, I ..... at 1 p.m.
- Have you prepared your lesson?  
 (a) Yes, I ..... (b) Yes, I ..... in the morning.
- Have you seen such a nice movie?  
 (a) No, I ..... (b) Yes, I .....  
 (c) Yes, I ..... last year.
- Have you opened bank account?  
 Yes, I ..... only yesterday.
- How long have you known this man?  
 (a) I ..... him since I arrived here. (b) I ..... him when I was at school.

**The Past Indefinite Tense**—*Habitual Action*

- (A) This tense is used for a past habit, indicated generally by ‘Often, seldom, usually, normally, generally, occasionally, sometimes, never, always, frequently, rarely, daily, used to, would’ etc. *For example*
- (i) They never drank wine. (ii) He always carried an umbrella.  
 (iii) I used to go to Delhi by train. (iv) She would go there daily.
- (B) This tense is also used for a single act completed in the past. Definite point of time is denoted by ‘Since, ever since, earlier, ago, back, before, last, yesterday, the other day, (any point of time in the past)’ etc. *For example*
- (i) I met your brother yesterday.  
 (ii) She bought a car two years ago.
- It is wrong to say.** *For example*
- (i) I have met your brother yesterday. (remove ‘have’)  
 (ii) She has bought a car two years ago. (remove ‘has’)

**NOTE** Present Perfect + Point of time = Simple Past

‘Point of time’ denotes the time when the action takes place. (Present, Past, Future Tense). *For example*

- (i) I come here every Sunday. (Point of time)  
 (ii) I went to Delhi yesterday. (Point of time)  
 (iii) I shall go there tomorrow. (Point of time)

**Time Expression** For time expression look up Perfect Continuous Tense.

**Work Book Exercise E**

**Directions** Make the sentences using *Past Indefinite* tense with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets.

- We ..... a terrifying news last night. (hear)
- They ..... their success two days ago. (celebrate)
- The police ..... the dacoits at 9.00 p.m. (catch)
- Seema ..... her lost book an hour before. (not find)
- The train ..... at 8.00 at the station yesterday. (not arrive)

**The Past Continuous Tense**—*Progressive Action*

- (A) This tense is chiefly used for past action in progress. *For example*
- (i) It was still raining when I reached there. (Past action in progress)  
 (ii) He was busy in packing last evening. (Past action in progress)
- (B) It is also used for a definite arrangement for future in the past. *For example*
- (i) He was leaving that night. (Definite arrangement for future in the past)  
 (ii) I asked her what she was doing next Sunday. (Definite arrangement for future in the past)

- (C) As mentioned in the case of the present continuous tense, certain verbs don't admit of progressive action. Please study such verbs carefully. **Refer to such verbs under Present Continuous tense section.**
- (D) 'While, still, at that moment, then' may help the students to express progressive action in the past.

## Work Book Exercise F

**Directions** Make the sentences using *Past Continuous tense* with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets.

1. My cousin wears sandals but when I last saw him he ..... boots. (wear)
2. On the beach many children ..... and many girls ..... in the sea. (play, swim)
3. Seema was alone in the house at that time because her father ..... in the garage then. (work)
4. As she ..... the stairs, she slipped and fell. (climb)
5. The teacher went to see what the students ..... in the garden. (do)

### The Past Perfect Tense

—*Past Preceding*

- (A) This tense is used when out of two actions it is necessary to emphasize that the preceding action was completely finished before the succeeding action started.  
*For example*
- (i) I had gone to Delhi last week before my father came. (Correct)  
(ii) I had gone to Delhi last week. (Incorrect, because preceding action is not implied here)
- (B) Sometimes preceding action is implied and is indicated by the use of 'Ever, just, recently, already, yet, so far, till (time), by the time, (by), before, after' etc. *For example*
- (i) I had already taken breakfast.  
(ii) I had finished the book before he came.  
(iii) I had returned from college just then.  
(iv) I finished the book after I had returned from college.
- (C) This tense is also used as time expression with 'Since, for, how long, whole, all, throughout, all along' etc. *For example*
- (i) She had known him for two years.  
(ii) He had owned this plaza for five years.

**NOTE** Look up **Perfect Continuous** tense for details about time expression.

- (D) Past Perfect tense used with verbs such as 'Want, hope, expect, think, suppose, mean, intend' indicate that the action mentioned did not take place. *For example*
- (i) I had wanted to help my brother. (but could not help)  
(ii) I had expected to pass. (but did not pass)  
(iii) My sister had hoped that I would send her money. (unfulfilled hope)  
(iv) Vishal had intended to set up his own business. (but could not)

## Work Book Exercise G

**Directions** Make the sentences using **Past Perfect** tense with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets.

1. After the guests ..... we did the washing. (leave)
2. She ..... all the material by last evening. (type)
3. We ..... shopping before it started raining. (finish)
4. The house ..... to him since his birth. (belong)
5. She was not present because she ..... office when her boss called her. (leave)

### The Future Indefinite Tense

—*Future Action*

- (A) This tense expresses an action that is to take place in future. *For example*  
 ‘Soon, shortly, in a few moments, tomorrow, presently (soon), next year/month/ week etc indicate future action. *For example*  
 (i) They will come here shortly.  
 (ii) Ritu will take examination next month.

**NOTE** Presently means (i) soon (ii) at present.

- (B) It should be noted that there are several ways to express future action in English as given below.
- (a) Future action is expressed in the **present continuous tense**. But it is more definite action than the action expressed in the future indefinite. *For example*  
 (i) They are coming tomorrow. (certain to come)  
 (ii) She is marrying soon. (certain to marry)
  - (b) Future action is also expressed in **the future continuous**. *For example*  
 (i) Sushant will be arriving soon. (He will arrive)  
 (ii) I shall be going tomorrow. (I shall go)
  - (c) Future action is also expressed in **the present indefinite tense**. *For example*  
 (i) She arrives from the U.S.A. next month. (will arrive)  
 (ii) The Prime Minister leaves for Lucknow tomorrow. (will leave)

**NOTE** Ordinarily, ‘shall’ is used with first person of pronoun ‘I’ and ‘we’. ‘Will’ is used with second and third persons.

**Besides, there are following uses of ‘shall’ and ‘will’**

- |                                 |                            |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. You shall not move.          | Order                      |
| 2. They shall be rewarded.      | Assurance/promise          |
| 3. I will help my brother.      | Determination              |
| 4. You shall look after elders. | Duty                       |
| 5. I will go to Delhi tomorrow. | Intention                  |
| 6. I shall go to Delhi.         | (may or may not go)        |
| 7. I shall be drowned           | (may be drowned)           |
| 8. I will be drowned            | (determined to be drowned) |

## Work Book Exercise H

**Directions** Put the verbs in the brackets using either the *Simple Future* or the *Present Continuous/Future Continuous*.

1. I ..... my friend tomorrow. (meet)
2. You ..... college next year. (join)
3. He ..... shortly. (come)
4. I am sure he ..... in time for the class. (come)
5. You ..... English after another two months of hard work. (speak)

### The Future Continuous Tense

—*Future Progressive*

(A) This tense is used to express an action that will be in progress with a point of time in future.

*For example*

- (i) She will be waiting for me when I reach her home.
- (ii) What will he be doing when you visit him?
- (iii) Get home at once. Your mother will be wondering where you are.
- (iv) Probably, it will be raining when you reach Bhopal.
- (v) Rahul will be watching movie on television now.

(B) This tense is also used to express the future indefinite tense or definite future arrangement.

*For example*

- (i) He will be going to Pune by car today.
- (ii) She will be arriving tomorrow to meet her husband.

(C) As mentioned in the case of the Present Continuous tense certain verbs do not admit of progressive action. Refer to such verbs under Present Continuous tense section.

## Work Book Exercise I

**Directions** Make the sentences using *Future Continuous* tense with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets.

1. He ..... for Mr. Kapoor next week as his own assistant is expected to be on leave. (work)
2. In a few years time we all ..... in multi-storeyed houses. (live)
3. We ..... ourselves in school today as our principal's mood is very upset now-a-days. (behave)
4. My brother ..... at the party tonight as mother is likely to be present there. (not drink)
5. He surely ..... if you visit his room now. (smoke)

**The Future Perfect Tense**—*Future Preceding*

(A) This tense is used when out of two actions it is necessary to emphasize that the preceding action will be completely finished before the succeeding action starts in future.

Sometimes preceding action is implied and indicated by the use of 'Ever, just, already, recently, yet, so far, till (time), before, (by), by the time after.' For example

- (i) She will have already prepared food when I reach home.
- (ii) He will have rung up his wife before he arrives.
- (iii) I think the news will not have been published so far.
- (iv) My assistant will have typed five letters by lunch today.

(B) This tense is also used to express time expression.

'Since, for, how long, whole, all, throughout, all long' denote that action started sometime in the past and is continuing into the present. For example

- (i) He will have known her for two years next month.
- (ii) He will have suffered a lot by now since his birth.

**Work Book Exercise J**

**Directions** Make the sentences using Future Perfect tense with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets.

1. I ..... this essay by tomorrow morning. (complete)
2. At the rate he is studying he ..... by next year. (qualify)
3. The ship ..... before we reach the harbour. (leave)
4. If he continues with his exercises he ..... 10 kg by the end of this month. (lose)
5. She ..... me for five years next month. (know)

**Perfect Continuous : Present, Past, Future**—*Time Expression*

(A) Perfect continuous tense (Present, Past, Future) denotes an action continuing from the past into the present. It implies the duration of an action. (past to present) The time expression is normally indicated by

'Since, for, how long, whole, all, throughout, all along.'

**NOTE** 'For' is used for a period of time from the past to present. 'Since' is used for a particular point of time or some event in the past to present.

(B) Time expression can be used with both continuous and indefinite tenses as follows

- (a) Continuous + Time expression = Perfect continuous ( Present, Past, Future)  
(Action is not yet complete)

- (b) **Indefinite + Time expression = Perfect** (Present, Past, Future)  
(Action is complete)

**NOTE** Students should note the difference between **point of time** and **time expression**.

- (i) She goes to temple every Monday. (Point of time)  
 (ii) She visited her uncle yesterday. (Point of time)  
 (iii) She has completed two letters since last night. (Time expression)  
 (iv) She has been suffering from fever for two days. (Time expression)  
 (v) She had been playing Chess the whole day yesterday. (Time expression)

## Work Book Exercise K

**Directions** Make the sentences using **Perfect Continuous or Perfect tense** (Present, Past, Future) with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets.

### Present

1. She ..... me since 2004. (know)
2. For the last ten years he ..... this factory. (own)
3. He ..... in the same class for the last three years. (study)
4. Neena ..... nutritious food since morning. (not eat)
5. It ..... for two days now. (rain)

### Past

6. The whole day long he ..... at home and ..... a book yesterday. (sit, read)
7. His radio ..... since 8 a.m. yesterday. The neighbours were getting disturbed. (play)
8. He ..... this building for the last ten years when he sold it. (own)
9. Yesterday she ..... for her lost dog since morning. (search)
10. Last night the dog ..... for a long time. (bark)

### Future

11. How long Richa ..... in this house when the new guests arrive tomorrow? (stay)
12. My aunt ..... in England for five years when I go there. (live)
13. She still ..... for two hours when they reach there. (sleep)
14. She ..... as the Principal of that school for five years next month. (work)
15. She ..... me for ten years by next month. (know)

# Revision Exercises

(Based on Function of Tenses)

**Directions** Each set of the following sentences comprises three alternatives (a), (b) and (c). Choose the most suitable alternative in accordance with the correct use of tense.

## Exercise A

- (a) He seldom has fatty food.  
(b) He is seldom having fatty food.  
(c) He has seldom had fatty food.
- (a) Why are you cooking food today?  
(b) Why do you cook today?  
(c) Why have you been cooking food today?
- (a) She had brushed her teeth every night.  
(b) She brushes her teeth every night.  
(c) She is brushing her teeth every night.
- (a) It is looking that it may rain.  
(b) It is looked that it may rain.  
(c) It looks that it may rain.
- (a) At present she does not study because she plays in the garden.  
(b) At present she will not study because she plays in the garden.  
(c) At present she is not studying because she is playing in the garden.
- (a) She just had her lunch.  
(b) She just has had her lunch.  
(c) She has just had her lunch.
- (a) While they were having dinner, lights went out.  
(b) While they had dinner, lights went out.  
(c) While they were having dinner, lights have gone out.
- (a) In a week's time I will complete my work.  
(b) In a week's time I will have completed my work.  
(c) In a week's time I will be completed my work.
- (a) Since my father has joined this post, he did not take bribe.  
(b) Since my father joined this post, he did not take bribe.  
(c) Since my father joined this post, he has not taken bribe.
- (a) She did not cook her breakfast yet.  
(b) She has cooked her breakfast yet.  
(c) She has not cooked her breakfast yet.
- (a) She did not open the door because she had washed her hair.  
(b) She did not open the door because she washed her hair.  
(c) She did not open the door because she was washing her hair.

12. (a) I found that my pocket was picked.  
(b) I found that my pocket has been picked.  
(c) I found that my pocket had been picked.
13. (a) By tomorrow afternoon the plane will take off for Moscow.  
(b) By tomorrow afternoon the plane will be taking off for Moscow.  
(c) By tomorrow afternoon the plane will have taken off for Moscow.
14. (a) We did not go out as it still rained.  
(b) We have not gone out as it was still raining.  
(c) We did not go out as it was still raining.
15. (a) Since she started journey, she has felt sick.  
(b) Since she started journey, she is feeling sick.  
(c) Since she started journey, she has been feeling sick.
16. (a) He has scored a century a week ago.  
(b) He has scored a century before a week.  
(c) He scored a century a week ago.
17. (a) My sister has gone to England for higher study only a month ago.  
(b) My sister went to England for higher study only a month ago.  
(c) My sister had gone to England for higher study only a month ago.
18. (a) She left the hospital in 1980 and I did not see her since.  
(b) She has left the hospital in 1980 and I have not seen her since.  
(c) She left the hospital in 1980 and I have not seen her since.
19. (a) I found that he recently went out.  
(b) I found that he had recently gone out.  
(c) I found that he recently gone out.
20. (a) I know her since 1985.  
(b) I knew her since 1985.  
(c) I have known her since 1985.

## Exercise B

1. (a) By five o'clock yesterday I caught only one fish.  
(b) By five o'clock yesterday I will have caught only one fish.  
(c) By five o'clock yesterday I had caught only one fish.
2. (a) After she had rested for a while she started on her journey.  
(b) After she rested for a while she started on her journey.  
(c) After she rested for a while she had started on her journey.
3. (a) For the last six months I am working on the thesis.  
(b) For the last six months I have been working on the thesis.  
(c) For the last six months I have worked on the thesis.
4. (a) I have been writing six letters since morning.  
(b) I have written six letters since morning.  
(c) I am writing six letters since morning.
5. (a) He lived in London for two years when I went there.  
(b) He was living in London for two years when I went there.  
(c) He had been living in London for two years when I went there.

6. (a) I don't think we met before.  
(b) I don't think we have met before.  
(c) I don't think we had met before.
7. (a) The banks don't open on Sunday.  
(b) The banks had not opened on Sunday.  
(c) The banks are not opening on Sunday.
8. (a) I saw two robbers who prowled near the well.  
(b) I saw two robbers who are prowling near the well.  
(c) I saw two robbers who were prowling near the well.
9. (a) To this day I have not forgotten her good deeds.  
(b) To this day I don't forget her good deeds.  
(c) To this day I had not forgotten her good deeds.
10. (a) How long are you reading this biography?  
(b) How long have you read this biography?  
(c) How long have you been reading this biography?
11. (a) Before she comes the train will depart.  
(b) Before she comes the train will have departed.  
(c) Before she comes the train will be departing.
12. (a) The news of his death was not declared so far.  
(b) The news of his death has not been declared so far.  
(c) The news of his death has been declared so far.
13. (a) Deepak was married to her for five years by then.  
(b) Deepak had been married to her for five years by then.  
(c) Deepak has been married to her for five years by then.
14. (a) I have received your letter this morning.  
(b) I had received your letter this morning.  
(c) I received your letter this morning.
15. (a) They have been owning this property for the last twenty years.  
(b) They have owned this property for the last twenty years.  
(c) They own this property for the last twenty years.
16. (a) India has won freedom in 1947.  
(b) India had won freedom in 1947.  
(c) India won freedom in 1947.
17. (a) Which book have you read last year?  
(b) Which book had you read last year?  
(c) Which book did you read last year?
18. (a) Buses are running on this road every hour.  
(b) Buses run on this road every hour.  
(c) Buses have run on this road every hour.
19. (a) Last week I had gone to the cinema twice.  
(b) Last week I went to the cinema twice.  
(c) Last week I have gone to the cinema twice.
20. (a) When I called on her she did her home work.  
(b) When I had called on her she was doing her home work.  
(c) When I called on her she was doing her home work.

## Review Exercise

**Directions** *Correct the following sentences by using the correct function of the verb.*

1. She is often coming to me on Sundays.
2. She just completed the letter then.
3. It came to my notice lately.
4. My brother has returned from training two months back.
5. I know him for the last twenty years.
6. I never met him this morning.
7. She did not write the letter till now.
8. He was having a number of books.
9. The news of his death has been declared so far.
10. The dog was barking the whole night.
11. For the last six months he is working on this problem.
12. Last week I had met him twice.
13. I found that someone picked my pocket.
14. By the time she returned he typed all letters.
15. She rang me up after she decided to go.
16. How long is she working in the office?
17. The house is belonging to me for the last twenty years.
18. My house is facing the East.
19. Manav has broken a cup last evening.
20. My mother is rarely sleeping at noons.
21. They still write letters today.
22. I own this plot of land since my youth.
23. They found that the tap ran.
24. I cannot believe that he is wasting time all along his life.
25. They brought him home when he died.
26. We have written the letter last evening.
27. He worked for three hours when I met him.
28. Mahmood Gazanavi has invaded India many times.
29. When I met her last year, she was married for three years.
30. How long will you know Ritu on her next birthday?
31. What did you do since I saw you last night?
32. Where have you been an hour ago?
33. He has written this novel in 1985.
34. I didn't ask her what she is doing since.
35. In the morning I found it was raining the whole night.
36. The doctor found that he was bitten by a snake.
37. I try to contact you all these days.

38. I saw that Tom stood in a corner at the banquet.
39. She will leave before he comes.
40. She did not complete the composition yet when I arrived there.
41. How can I come as it still drizzles?
42. By two o'clock yesterday I called on her twice but she was not at home.
43. It is looking that he may not come tonight.
44. I found that he was recently discharged from the hospital.
45. A little later I realized that my luggage was stolen.
46. Where are you keeping your money when you go out?
47. I admired him since the day I met him.
48. When at last we reached school the bell was already rung.
49. I am sorry that you left your book in the library when you came here last time.
50. I am leaving for my office early every morning.
51. What do you look at the road? Does something happen there?
52. My wife paints furniture whenever she had time.
53. Of late she did not go to any movie.
54. This is the best book that he ever read.
55. I didn't know what she is writing for the last two years.
56. By the time she comes he will complete the work.
57. The book will be written by next year.
58. I saw that the book lay on the table.
59. She will already return home when he arrives.
60. Don't worry since she just had her breakfast.

# 2

## Voice

A verb may tell us about what a person or a thing does. Therefore, a verb is said to be an action on the part of a doer/subject. *For example*

- (i) They will **do** the work.
- (ii) The teacher **has punished** the boy.

The verbs 'do, punish' are transitive. The actions of the subjects 'They, The teacher' pass over to the objects 'work, the boy'. Therefore, these verbs are called transitive.

The verb may **also tell us what** is done to a person or a thing.

*Now read the following sentences*

- (iii) The work **will be done** by them. *(Passive Voice)*
- (iv) The boy **has been punished** by the teacher. *(Passive Voice)*

### How to Define a Voice?

- (a) In active voice a sentence begins with a subject (They, The teacher) sentence (i) & (ii).
- (b) In passive voice a sentence begins with an object (The work, The boy) sentences (iii) & (iv).

However, sentences only with **transitive verbs** admit of Passive Expressions.

*Now study the following sentences*

- (v) Jaya **came** here.
- (vi) Father is **going** out.

The verbs 'come, go' are **intransitive** because these verbs do not have objects. The effect of the action does not pass over to any object. Therefore, these verbs are called intransitive. Since they are not used with object, they do not admit of Passive Expression.

Therefore, before making a sentence, a student must note carefully whether the sentence is beginning with subject or object.

### How to Make a Passive Voice?

- (a) The passive voice of an active voice is formed by using the verb '**to be**'. However, the original active verb must be converted **into Past Participle**.
- (b) Object may be placed before the verb in passive expression.

**Now study the examples.**

The forms of 'Be' as used in passive voice are explained in the table below. In conclusion, the construction of these sentences may be represented as follows

- (a) (i) Subject + Transitive verb + Object (Active)  
 (ii) Subject + Intransitive verb. (Active)  
 (b) Object + To be + PP of Transitive verb + Subject (Passive Voice)  
 [Passive voice — Sentences (iii) and (iv)]

**The Verb 'To be'** (Study the following table)

*The verb 'To be' has following two uses*

- As an **auxilliary verb** it is used with other verbs both in active and passive voice.
- As an **ordinary/regular verb** it is used in 'No verb' sentences.

The forms of 'to be'	Tenses	The forms of verb in passive voice	No verb
be	Infinitive, Modals, Future Indefinite	PP (Past Participle) of Transitive verb	Noun Pronoun
is, am, are, was, were	Present Indefinite, Past Indefinite		Adjective Adverb
been	Perfect (Present, Past, Future)		
being	Continuous (Present, Past), Participle/Gerund		

*The use of 'To be' in the passive sentences*

Object + be (be + PP of Transitive Verb) + by Subject

- Infinitive**
- Modals**
- Future Indefinite**

- (i) He doesn't like to be punished.  
 (ii) The young persons should be taught good manners.  
 (iii) He will be punished for his misbehaviour.

**D. Present Indefinite—*is, am, are*****1. Present Indefinite Tense**

**Active** Subject + (Verb)<sub>1</sub> / (Verb)<sub>5</sub> + Object

**Passive** Subject + is/am /are + (Verb)<sub>3</sub> + by + Object  
 (Objective Case) (Subjective Case)

- (i) She is taught English daily by her class teacher.  
 (ii) I am often invited to attend party by my friends.  
 (iii) Elections are held every five years.

**E. Past Indefinite—was, were****Active** Subject + (Verb)<sub>2</sub> + Object**Passive** Subject +  $\frac{\text{was}}{\text{were}}$  + (Verb)<sub>3</sub> + by + Object  
(Objective Case) (Subjective Case)*(i)* She was punished for her negligence.*(ii)* Both the friends were selected for senior hockey team.**F. Perfect (Present, Past, Future)—been****Active** Subject + has/ have + (Verb)<sub>3</sub> + Object**Passive** Subject + has/ have + been + (Verb)<sub>3</sub> + by + Object  
(Objective Case) (Subjective Case)**Active** Subject + had + (Verb)<sub>3</sub> + Object**Passive** Subject + had + been + (Verb)<sub>3</sub> + by + Object  
(Objective Case) (Subjective Case)**Active** Subject + will/ shall + have + (Verb)<sub>3</sub> + Object**Passive** Subject + will/shall + have been + by + (Verb)<sub>3</sub> + Object  
(Objective Case) (Subjective Case)*(i)* He has just been elected as a member of the Committee.*(ii)* She had already been admitted to hospital.*(iii)* My friend will have been married by now.**G. Continuous (Present, Past)—being****Active** Subject + is/ am/ are + (Verb) + ing + Object**Passive** Subject + is/ am / are + being + (Verb)<sub>3</sub> + by + object  
(Objective Case) (Subjective Case)**Active** Subject + was/were + (Verb) + ing + Object**Passive** Subject + was/ were + being + (Verb)<sub>3</sub> + by + Object  
(Objective Case) (Subjective Case)*(i)* The match is being telecast now.*(ii)* The match was being telecast yesterday.**H. Participle/Gerund—being***(i)* Nobody likes being cheated.*(ii)* The murderer escaped being hanged.*(iii)* I saw her being taken to hospital.**NOTE** Future continuous and perfect continuous tenses do not admit of passive voice expressions.

## Work Book Exercise A

**Directions** Use the verbs given in brackets either in active or passive as the case may be.

1. The teacher ..... with the students yesterday for their misbehaviour. (*annoy*)
2. The criminals should ..... at the earliest. (*punish*)
3. I ..... then that he ..... working hard. (*convince, be*)
4. Prohibition in many states ..... lately by the State Governments. (*enforce*)
5. His parents ..... when he did not arrive at the function. (*disappoint*)
6. Our leaders ought to ..... honestly in the interest of common people. (*behave*)
7. Children should ..... with responsibility to make them feel responsible. (*entrust*)
8. I ..... to see my Aunt when I reached home. (*amaze*)
9. My father ..... when he sees my brother's report card. (*please*)
10. The eldest son ..... the burden of the whole family these days. (*bear*)

### Some Hints on Making Passive Voice

- (I) The objects used in the following sentences are used with verbs which do not agree with the common rules of verbs. Such nouns are given in chapter on Nouns under Rule (iv) & (v).

Study the following sentences

- (i) He gave me spectacles.  
Spectacles were given to me by him.
- (ii) They play Billiards.  
Billiards is played by them.

In these sentences the noun 'spectacles' is followed by plural verb and 'Billiards' by singular verb. Students should take note of such misleading nouns.

- (II) Study carefully the use of interrogative pronoun while changing active sentences into passive.

'Which, what' etc are placed as they are

However, when 'What/Which' is used as a subject, it is changed into 'By what'.

But 'Who' is changed into 'By whom' and 'Whom' is changed into 'Who'.

- (i) What are you writing?  
What is being written by you?
- (ii) What makes you angry?  
By what are you made angry?
- (iii) Who teaches you English?  
By whom are you taught English?  
Or Who are you taught English by?

(iv) Whom are you teaching?  
Who is being taught by you?

(v) Which girl helped you?  
By which girl were you helped?

(III) (a) **When the subjects are indefinite/vague pronouns or understood nouns, it is not necessary to use them in passive voice as 'by somebody'.**

(i) Somebody has picked my pocket.  
My pocket has been picked.

(ii) They will declare the result soon.  
The result will be declared soon.

(b) **Sentences beginning with negative indefinite pronouns are converted into negative.**

*For example*

(i) Nobody can change destiny.  
Destiny cannot be changed.

(ii) None saw her in the parlour.  
She was not seen in the parlour.

(IV) **When principle clause is followed by Noun clause as object the passive voice is made as follows.**

(i) People consider that he is honest.  
It is considered that he is honest.

(ii) We hope that he will pass.  
It is hoped that he will pass.

**Study these verbs carefully which are followed by Noun clause as object 'consider, believe, understand, suspect, report, say, claim, know, expect, allege, find', learn, require, suppose (appear, seem).**

(V) **Verbs with Two Objects** Sometimes verbs are used with two objects in active voice sentences. Passive Voice can be made with either of the objects.

(i) He gave me a book.  
(a) I was given a book by him.  
(b) A book was given to me by him.

(ii) They made him King.  
(Complement; King is complement of the verb 'make')  
He was made King.

(VI) **'By' is not used with certain verbs when making a passive voice, Instead we use at, with, in, to etc.**

(i) I know him.  
He is known to me.

(ii) Her sudden arrival surprised everyone.  
Everybody was surprised at her sudden arrival.

**(VII) Infinitives**

- (i) She is to write a letter.  
A letter is to be written by her.
- (ii) They were to complete the work.  
The work was to be completed by them.
- (iii) My sister has to buy a new car.  
A new car has to be bought by my sister.
- (iv) There is nothing to lose.  
There is nothing to be lost.
- (v) I would like someone to help me.  
I would like to be helped.
- (vi) I am not to blame for the loss.  
I am not to be blamed for the loss [Passive sense (responsible for)]

**(VIII) Participles/Gerund**

- (i) I remember my mother taking me to doctor.  
I remember being taken to doctor by my mother.
- (ii) I found his friends laughing at him.  
I found him being laughed at by his friends.

**(IX) If a preposition or an adverb is used with a verb to convey specific meaning, it should not be removed while making a passive voice.**

*For example*

- (i) Mothers **look after** their children.  
Children are looked after by their mothers.
- (ii) You should not **look down upon** the poor.  
The poor should not be looked down upon.

**(X) The Verbs, 'Let, bid, make, help, feel, see, watch, hear', are used with direct infinitive (without to) in active voice.**

In passive voice these verbs are used with Infinitive (to + verb)

'Let' is an exception. 'Let' is followed by direct infinitive both in active & passive voice sentences.

*For example*

- (i) I bade him go.  
He was bidden to go.
- (ii) I have made her sing a song.  
She has been made to sing a song.
- (iii) She let me go.  
I was let go by her.

**(XI) Imperative Sentences**

- (i) Command and order
- (ii) Permission, Request, Advice

**1. Command and Order**

(a) Passive – When object is given, use Let + object + be + Past Participle.

Bring a book

Let a book be brought.

Turn Payal out

Let Payal be turned out.

(b) Passive – When no object is given, begin in the sentence with

You are ordered/commanded to.....

(i) Go out at once

You are ordered to go out at once.

(ii) Don't stay here.

You are ordered not to stay here.

**2. Permission, Request, Advice**

(a) Passive – When object is given, make passive with object.

Object + Should + Past Participle

(i) Obey parents.

Parents should be obeyed.

(ii) Listen to me.

I should be listened to.

(iii) Prepare for war.

You should be prepared for war.

Or Be prepared for war.

**NOTE** Use of **let** is avoided in this type of sentences.

(b) Passive Voice – When no object is given, begin the sentence with

You are allowed, requested or advised.....

(i) Please come soon.

You are requested to come soon.

(ii) Please don't talk loudly.

You are requested not to talk loudly.

**(XII) Sentences Beginning with Let (Permission & Suggestion)**

(a) Passive – When object is given make passive voice as follows

(i) Let me play here (Permission)

I may be allowed to play here.

(ii) Let us help him. (Suggestion)

He should be helped.

(b) Passive – When no object is given, begin the sentence, with.....

It is suggested.....

(i) Let us stay here (Suggestion)

It is suggested that we should stay here.

(ii) Let us sleep here.

It is suggested that we should sleep here.

## (XIII) 'To be' is often allowed in the sense of 'have' in passive voice sentences of the following verbs

'Fall, rise, come, arrive, go, lose.'

- |                              |              |
|------------------------------|--------------|
| (i) Mighty Caesar is fallen. | (has fallen) |
| (ii) Summer is come.         | (has come)   |
| (iii) The book is lost.      | (has been)   |
| (iv) The sun is risen.       | (has risen)  |
| (v) Golden days are gone.    | (have gone)  |

## (XIV) Miscellaneous Sentences

Study these sentences carefully

- |   |           |
|---|-----------|
| 1. The police arrested a militant and sent him to jail.   | (Active)  |
| A militant was arrested by police and (was) sent to jail. | (Passive) |
| 2. It is necessary to help the poor.                      | (Active)  |
| The poor are required to be helped.                       | (Passive) |
| 3. It is time to wind up business.                        | (Active)  |
| It is time for the business to be wound up.               | (Passive) |
| 4. The fruit tastes sweet.                                | (Active)  |
| The fruit is sweet when (it is) tasted.                   | (Passive) |
| 5. I have to stay here.                                   | (Active)  |
| I am obliged to stay here.                                | (Passive) |
| 6. It is your duty to help your children.                 | (Active)  |
| You are supposed (bound in duty) to help your children.   | (Passive) |
| 7. It is impossible to do.                                | (Active)  |
| It is impossible to be done.                              | (Passive) |

**The Use of 'TO BE'** (As An Ordinary/Regular Verb)

**As an ordinary verb** It is used to denote a **state, condition, existence, quality, time, distance, weather etc.**

*There is no action in this kind of sentences.*

- (i) She **is** a naughty child.  
(ii) She **was** healthy.

In these sentences, 'To be' verb has been used alone. It is itself an ordinary verb.

For our convenience we may call them 'No verb sentences'.

## Work Book Exercise B

**Directions** *The use of 'To be' as an ordinary verb.*

1. I wonder where Atul ..... lately. (be)
2. Where ..... you an hour ago? (be)
3. Of late there ..... great improvements in the city. (be)
4. Mr. Bhargava ..... our family doctor since long. (be)
5. My friend ..... in Mumbai for ten years when I ..... there last month.  
(be, transfer)
6. Everybody presumes that she may ..... present at the time of her brother's marriage next month. (be)
7. He ..... ill for the last ten days when his wife ..... him yesterday.  
(be, visit)
8. He ..... 20 now, next year he ..... an adult. (be, be)
9. The milkman ..... absent since last Sunday. (be)
10. He ..... in Delhi for ten years when I went there. (be)

## Work Book Exercise C

**Directions** *Change the voice according to the corresponding rules explained above.*

- Rule I**
1. He bought new scissors.
  2. They have brought news for you.
  3. The minister has issued orders for his transfer.
  4. I received summons yesterday.
  5. He has repaired his quarters.
- Rule II**
1. Which book do you like most?
  2. Who did this work?
  3. What are you teaching?
  4. Whom do you like most?
  5. Who has taught you English?
- Rule III**
1. Nobody can mend this wall.
  2. Nobody saw him going out.
  3. Somebody has stolen my books.
  4. One should do one's duty.
  5. Somebody told us to wait outside.
- Rule IV**
1. They hope that he will pass.
  2. People believe that he will return soon.
  3. We decided that we would leave early.
  4. Nobody knows how rich he is.
  5. He expects that he will pass.

- Rule V**
1. He has given me a book.
  2. They will ask me a question.
  3. They made him Captain.
  4. She told me a story.
  5. He bought me a scooter.
- Rule VI**
1. I do not expect it from you.
  2. The angry mob thronged the roads.
  3. A blow of lathi killed the dog.
  4. Do you know the lady?
  5. The book contains much information.
  6. The servant annoyed the master.
  7. His behaviour surprised everyone.
  8. His insolence has annoyed the teacher.
  9. Their jokes disgusted me.
  10. Material life always disgusts him.
- Rule VII and VIII**
1. Arnav is to help his sister.
  2. Shaurya has to distribute sweets.
  3. They saw the police chasing a terrorist.
  4. She was to write a book on animals.
  5. They found him helping the poor.
- Rule IX**
1. What are you listening to?
  2. They were searching for the lost book.
  3. The Government cannot dispense with computers.
  4. I have never heard of such an accident.
  5. All his friends will laugh at him.
- Rule X**
1. I made him write a letter.
  2. She let me stay in her home.
  3. She bade me leave the room.
  4. They heard her sing a song.
  5. I saw him go.
- Rule XI**
1. Obey your teacher.
  2. Do it as early as possible.
  3. Do not go out.
  4. Prevent him from going out.
  5. Please enter by this door.
- Rule XII**
1. Let me sleep here.
  2. Let them watch the match.
  3. Let us watch TV.
  4. Let us not hurt anybody.
  5. Let us go now.

## Work Book Exercise D

**Directions** Below are given sentence in active/passive voice. Out of the four alternative suggested, select one which best expresses the same sentence in passive/active voice. [SSC MTS 2013]

1. The waiter filled the glasses with water.
  - (a) The glasses filled with water by the waiter
  - (b) The glasses were filled with water by the waiter
  - (c) The waiter was filled the glasses with water
  - (d) The water were filled in the glasses by waiter
2. She took the dog for a walk.
  - (a) The dog was taken for a walk by her
  - (b) The dog took her for a walk
  - (c) The dog was took for a walk
  - (d) The dog took a walk by her
3. He was driving the car so fast that it skidded on the snowy road.
  - (a) The car was driven by him so fast that it skidded on the snowy road
  - (b) The car was being driven by him so fast that it skidded on the snowy road
  - (c) The car had been driven by him so fast that it skidded on the snowy road
  - (d) The car has been driven by him so fast that it skidded on the snowy road
4. They will laugh at you.
  - (a) You can be laughed at by them
  - (b) You may be laughed at by them
  - (c) You will be laughed at by them
  - (d) You will have been laughed at by them

**Directions** Below are given sentences in active/passive voice. Out of the four alternative suggested, select one which best expresses the same sentence in passive/active voice. [SSC LDC 2013]

5. Then her face was bowed.
  - (a) Then she was being bowed her face
  - (b) Her face was bowed by then
  - (c) Then she bowed her face
  - (d) Then her face has been bowed
6. The walls had not been decorated by us.
  - (a) We have not been decorating the walls
  - (b) We had not been decorating the walls
  - (c) We have not decorated the walls
  - (d) We had not decorated the walls
7. I shall have written the letter.
  - (a) The letter will be written by me
  - (b) The letter has been written by me
  - (c) The letter is being written by me
  - (d) The letter will have been written by me

8. We must endure what we cannot cure.
- (a) What we cure must be endured
  - (b) What cannot be cured must be endured
  - (c) What cannot cured must endured
  - (d) What could be cure must be endured
9. A fresh batch of eggs was collected by the farmer's wife.
- (a) The farmer's wife was collecting a fresh batch of eggs
  - (b) The farmer's wife collected a fresh batch of eggs
  - (c) The farmer's wife had collected a fresh batch of eggs
  - (d) The farmer's wife will be collecting a fresh batch of eggs
10. They are going to build a new airport near the old one.
- (a) A new airport going to be built near the old one
  - (b) A new airport is being built near the old one
  - (c) A new airport will be built near the old one
  - (d) A new airport is going to be built near the old one
11. Rosemary was moved to tears at the sight of the miserable beggar.
- (a) The sight of the miserable beggar moved Rosemary to tears
  - (b) The sight of the miserable beggar has moved Rosemary to tears
  - (c) The sight of the miserable beggar moves Rosemary to tears
  - (d) The sight of the miserable beggar had moved Rosemary to tears
12. Could you pass the salt?
- (a) Could the salt been passed?
  - (b) Could the salt be passed by anyone?
  - (c) Could the salt be past?
  - (d) Could the salt be passed?
13. Don't subject the animals to cruelty.
- (a) The animals are not to be subjected to cruelty
  - (b) The animals shall not be subjected to cruelty
  - (c) The animals will not be subjected to cruelty
  - (d) The animals should not be subjected to cruelty
14. Who asked you to draft this letter?
- (a) By who you are asked to draft this letter?
  - (b) By who have you been asked to draft this letter?
  - (c) By whom were you asked to draft this letter?
  - (d) By whom you were asked to draft this letter?
15. The lightning caused a serious forest fire and damaged many nearby houses.
- (a) A serious forest fire has been caused by lightning and many nearby houses have been damaged
  - (b) A serious forest fire was caused by lightning and many houses are damaged
  - (c) A serious forest fire had been caused by lightning and many nearby houses had been damaged
  - (d) A serious forest fire was caused by lightning and many nearby houses were damaged

16. Today I accomplished my task successfully.  
(a) Today my task is accomplished successfully  
(b) Today my task has been accomplished successfully  
(c) Today my task accomplished successfully  
(d) Today my task was accomplished successfully
17. Look! They have painted the door.  
(a) Look ! The door's being painted  
(b) Look ! The door had been painted  
(c) Look ! The door has been painted  
(d) Look ! The door was painted
18. She was advised 15 days' rest after her surgery.  
(a) The doctor was advised her 15 days' rest after her surgery  
(b) The doctor has advised her 15 days rest after her surgery  
(c) The doctor advised her 15 days' rest after her surgery  
(d) The doctor had advised her 15 days' rest after her surgery
19. When did he return my books?  
(a) When were my books returned by him?  
(b) When will my books be returned by him?  
(c) When has he returned my books?  
(d) When are my books returned by him?
20. We had to stop all other work to complete our assignment.  
(a) All other work has to be stopped by us to complete our assignment  
(b) All other work had stopped by us to complete our assignment  
(c) All other work had to be stopped by us to complete our assignment  
(d) All other work was stopped by us to complete our assignment
21. Gandhiji started the Quit India Movement in 1942.  
(a) The Quit India Movement was started by Gandhiji in 1942  
(b) The Quit India Movement was been started by Gandhiji in 1942  
(c) The Quit India Movement had been started by Gandhiji in 1942  
(d) The Quit India Movement started by Gandhiji in 1942
22. Gagan Narang and Vijay won bronze medals in the London Olympics.  
(a) Bronze medals won by Gagan Narang and Vijay in the London Olympics  
(b) Bronze medals had been won by Gagan Narang and Vijay in the London Olympics  
(c) Bronze medals were won by Gagan Narang and Vijay in the London Olympics  
(d) Bronze medals have been won by Gagan Narang and Vijay in the London Olympics
23. The modern means of communication have made life so much easier.  
(a) Life had been made so much easier by the modern means of communication  
(b) Life is being so much easier by the modern means of communication  
(c) Life has been made so much easier by the modern means of communication  
(d) Life was made so much easier by the modern of communication
24. Thick clouds have overcast the sky.  
(a) The sky has been overcast by thick clouds  
(b) The sky overcast by thick clouds  
(c) The sky is overcast by thick clouds  
(d) The sky is being overcast by thick clouds

25. One should not give unsolicited advice.
- (a) Unsolicited advice is not to be given
  - (b) Unsolicited advice can't be given
  - (c) Unsolicited advice may not be given
  - (d) Unsolicited advice should not be given

**Directions** *Below are given sentences in active/passive voice. Out of the four alternative suggested, select one which best expresses the same sentence in passive/active voice.* [SSC CGL 2011]

26. Our task had been completed before sunset.
- (a) We completed our task before sunset
  - (b) We have completed our task before sunset
  - (c) We complete our task before sunset
  - (d) We had completed our task before sunset
27. The government has launched a massive tribal welfare programme in Jharkhand.
- (a) A massive tribal welfare programme is launched by the government in Jharkhand
  - (b) A massive tribal welfare programme has been launched by the government in Jharkhand
  - (c) Jharkhand government has launched a massive tribal welfare programme
  - (d) The government in Jharkhand has launched a massive tribal welfare programme
28. The burglar destroyed several items in the room. Even the carpet has been torn.
- (a) Several items were destroyed in the room by the burglar. Even the carpet he has torn
  - (b) Several items in the room were destroyed by the burglar. Even the carpet was torn
  - (c) Including the carpet, several items in the room have been torn by the burglar
  - (d) The burglar, being destroyed several items in the room, also carpet has torn
29. Has anybody answered your question?
- (a) Your question has been answered
  - (b) Anybody has answered your question
  - (c) Has your question been answered
  - (d) Have you answered your question
30. The shopkeeper lowered the prices.
- (a) The prices lowered the shopkeeper
  - (b) The prices were lowered by the shopkeeper
  - (c) Down went the prices
  - (d) The shopkeeper got down the prices
31. One must keep one's promises.
- (a) One's promises are kept
  - (b) One's promises must kept
  - (c) One's promises were kept
  - (d) One's promise must be kept
32. They have published all the details of the invention.
- (a) All the details of the invention have been published by them
  - (b) The publication of the details of invention was done by them
  - (c) All the details have been invented by the publishers
  - (d) All the inventions have been detailed by them

33. Please shut the door and go to sleep.  
(a) The door is to be shut and you are to go to sleep  
(b) Let the door be shut and you be asleep  
(c) You are requested to shut the door and go to sleep  
(d) The door is to be shut and you are requested to sleep
34. It is impossible to do this.  
(a) Doing this is impossible                      (b) This is impossible to be done  
(c) This must not be done                      (d) This can't be done
35. We must take care of all living species on Earth.  
(a) All living species on Earth are taken care of by us  
(b) All living species on Earth must be taken care of by us  
(c) All living species on Earth had been taken care of by us  
(d) All living species on Earth will be taken care of by us

**Directions** Below are given sentences in active/passive voice. Out of the four alternative suggested, select one which best expresses the same sentence in passive/active voice.

[SSC CPO, SI 2011]

36. It is being read by us.  
(a) We are reading it                      (b) It will be read by us  
(c) We can read it                      (d) We have to read it
37. He had committed a mistake.  
(a) A mistake had committed by him  
(b) A mistake was committed by him  
(c) A mistake had been committed by him  
(d) A mistake has been committed by him
38. The most useful training of my career was given to me by my boss.  
(a) My boss has been giving me the most useful training of my career  
(b) My boss gives me the most useful training  
(c) My boss is giving me the most useful training  
(d) My boss gave me the most useful training of my career
39. Why did she break the garden wall?  
(a) Why the garden wall was broken by her?  
(b) Why had the garden wall been broken by her?  
(c) Why was the garden wall broken by her?  
(d) Why will the garden wall be broken by her?
40. The students were laughing at the old man.  
(a) The old man was being laughed at by the students  
(b) The old man was laughed at by the students  
(c) The old man was being laughed by the students  
(d) The old man is laughing at the students
41. Can we send this big parcel by air?  
(a) Can this big parcel be sent by air?  
(b) Can this big parcel sent by air?  
(c) Could this big parcel be sent by air?  
(d) Could this big parcel sent by us by air?

# 3

## Modals

There are two classes of verbs.

- (i) Ordinary/Regular verbs,
- (ii) Auxiliary verbs

Auxiliary verbs are of two kinds

- (a) Primary Auxiliary  
Be, do, have
- (b) Modal Auxiliary  
May, might, should, must, will etc.

### What is Modal Auxiliary?

A verb used to express the mood (mode) or attitude of a speaker is called Modal Auxiliary. *For example*

- (i) You **should** regularly go for a morning walk.
- (ii) They **must** attend tomorrow's meeting.
- (iii) **May** I use your pen please?
- (iv) You **can** park the car in front of our house.
- (v) You **may** take these books home.
- (vi) **Could** you open the door please?

### Most Commonly Used Modals

Can	Could	May	Might
Should	Would	Must	Ought to
Am/Was to	Have/Had to	Used to	Need
Dare	Shall, Will		

### All these Modals Suggest

- (A) Permission
- (B) Ability
- (C) Possibility
- (D) Suggestion, Advice
- (E) Promise
- (F) Intention
- (G) Request
- (H) Necessity, Compulsion
- (I) Prohibition
- (J) Wish or Prayer
- (K) Duty, Obligation

## Different Uses of Modals

1. **May & Might** These modal auxiliary verbs 'may & might' are used to express

(A) **Possibility**

- (i) It *may/might* rain.
- (ii) He *may/might* go to Delhi tomorrow.
- (iii) You *may* fall.
- (iv) Teena said that she *might* go there.

(B) **Permission**

- (i) *May* I come in?
- (ii) Yes, you *may* come in.

(C) **Wish or Prayer**

- (i) *May* you enjoy marital happiness!
- (ii) *May* you live long!

(D) **Purpose**

- (i) She works hard so that she *may* pass.
- (ii) She came so that she *might* see me.

(E) **Remote Possibility**

'Might' is used in place of 'may' to express remote possibility.

- (i) It *might* rain.
- (ii) He **might** be sleeping now.

Normally both 'May & Might' can be used to express possibility present and future. However, 'might' is used when the reporting verb is in the past. See sentence no. (iv) in (A) and sentence no. (i) in (D).

(F) **May/Might+Have** They are used to express possibility/desirability relating to the past action. *For example*

- (i) He *may/might* have left yesterday. *(It is possible he left)*
- (ii) He *might* have failed. *(It is possible he failed)*
- (iii) Better, you *might* not *have* revealed the secret. *(The secret was revealed)*

**NOTE** Sometimes 'May/Might have' give the opposite sense of the action.

2. **Can & Could** (Able to) *They are used to express*

(A) **Ability** (Present, Past & Future)

- (i) She *can* write English well. (is able to)
- (ii) Meetu *could* play at cards. (was able to)
- (iii) She will be able to help me. (future of 'can')
- (iv) I have been able to do it. (perfect of 'can')

(B) **Polite Request**

- (i) *Could* you please do it for me? ('would' is also used for polite request)
- (ii) *Could* you please lend me some money?

**(C) Permission/Order**

- (i) Yes, you *can* go now.  
 (ii) You *can* take my book. (Here 'can' is an alternative to 'may')

**(D) Prohibition/Offer**

- (i) You *cannot* enter the room. (Prohibition)  
 (ii) *Can* I get you some fruits? (Offer)  
 (iii) *Can* I help you? (Offer)

**(E) Possibility**

- (i) Who is she with him?  
 She *could* be his wife. (possibly, she is)  
 (ii) How old is she?  
 She *could* be sixteen. (possibly, she is)

**(F) Could + Have** This form is used for past ability while indicating that the action did not take place. *For example*

- (i) I *could have* revealed the secret. (but I did not)  
 (ii) You *could have* borrowed money. (but you did not)  
 (iii) The police *could have* arrested him. (but they did not)

**NOTE** In all these sentences **the action** did not take place.

**3. Should** It is used to express**(A) Duty/Obligation**

- (i) You *should stand by* your brother. (ii) I *should* leave now.  
 (iii) Promises *should* be kept. (iv) He *should* be present here.

**(B) Future in the Past**

- (i) I told him that I *should* go there.  
 (ii) Did I not tell you that I *should* qualify?

**(C) Purpose**

Walk carefully lest you *should* fall.

**(D) Condition**

Should you work hard, you will get success. ('should' is used in the sense of 'if'.)

**(E) Should + Have** This form is used to express obligation in the past. It may imply the non-performance of the action. *For example*

- (i) You *should have* stood by your brother.  
 (ii) He *should have* left a message.  
 (iii) He *should have* been present at the party.  
 (iv) My brother *should have* replied politely.

**4. Must** It expresses**(A) Necessity or Obligation** (in place of 'should')

- (i) You *must* follow instructions.  
 (ii) I *must* leave now.

**(B) Order of the Speaker**

- (i) You *must not* leave now.                      (ii) They *must not* play here.

**(C) Strong Possibility** (in place of 'may')

- (i) It is ten. The teacher *must* be in the class.  
(ii) She *must* be working in the office now.

**(D) Determination**

I *must* help him.

**(E) Deduction, Inference**

- (i) He has a big house. He *must* be rich.  
(ii) She reads a lot. She *must* be learned.

**(F) Must + Have** This form is used for a past action or situation indicating non-performance of action. *For example*

- (i) You *must* have followed instructions.  
(ii) You *must* have left them.  
(iii) I *must* have helped him.

**5. Ought to** It expresses**(A) Duty or Moral Obligation** It is normally used for 'should & must', when there is strong sense of moral duty, advice or indication of **correct action**.

*For example*

- (i) You *ought to* serve your motherland.  
(ii) You *ought not to* take fatty food.  
(iii) You *ought to* take food before leaving.

**(B) Ought to + Have** This construction is used in relation to past action of duty that was not fulfilled or an action that was neglected in the past.

- (i) You *ought to have* taken care of your wife.  
(ii) You *ought to have* served your parents.  
(iii) He *ought to have* been present at the wedding of his friend.  
(iv) He *ought not to have* smoked in the bus.

**6. To be + Infinitive** This expression is used to**(A) Express plan**

- (i) I am to make a speech tomorrow.  
(ii) She is to leave for the States after marriage.  
(iii) I was to make a speech yesterday.  
(iv) She was to leave for the States for higher study.

The last two sentences do not state expressly about the implementation of the plan.

**(B) Express Order** (In the sense of 'must')

- (i) Students are to wait outside.  
(ii) The servant is to remain in the house till we return.

**(C) Obligation/Duty**

- (i) I am to help my ailing brother.  
(ii) My friend was to send money to his sister.

(D) **To be + have** This expression is used to express an action that could not take place according to plan.

- (i) He was to have attended marriage but fell ill.
- (ii) Deepu was to have appeared at the examination but she gave up the plan.

**7. To have + Infinitive** This expression is used to express compulsion as is expressed with 'Must'. It also expresses obligation (In the Present, Past and Future).

- (i) I have to leave for Delhi today.
- (ii) I don't have to meet him now. (need not)
- (iii) I have not to meet him now.
- (iv) I will have to get up early in the morning.
- (v) I had to leave for Delhi yesterday.
- (vi) I did not have to meet him there. (need not have)

**8. Used To : Would** They are used

**A. To Denote Habitual Action or the Past Routine of the Subject.**

- (i) He *used to* go to Delhi by car.
- (ii) He *used not to* go to Delhi.
- (iii) He did not *use to* go to Delhi.
- (iv) Dina *would* study at noon.
- (v) She *would* go out with me in the morning.

**B. To Denote Discontinued Action**

- (i) He *used to* play hockey. (now he has stopped)
- (ii) She *used to* work in office before marriage. (not now)

**C. 'Used to' is also used as an adjective** (be used to) It is equal to 'accustomed to' as

- (i) He is *used to* getting up early.
- (ii) I was *used to* driving through crowded streets.
- (iii) He will be *used to* taking dinner early.
- (iv) We are *used to* hot noons in the plains.

**9. Would** It is used in the following cases

- (i) *Would* you please help my son? (polite request)
- (ii) She told me that she *would* give me money. (future in the past)
- (iii) I *would/should* like to play now. (wish)
- (iv) I *would/should* be glad to help you. (wish)
- (v) I *would* rather stay. (wish)
- (vi) Who is she? She *would* be his sister. (possibly she is)
- (vii) She *would* be sixteen. (possibly she is)
- (viii) If only you *would* stay with me. (wish)
- (ix) He *would* go to Delhi by car. (habitual)

**10. Need & Need Not** 'Need' can be treated as an **auxiliary or as an ordinary verb**. As an auxiliary verb it is used mainly in the negative and the interrogative forms with direct infinitive. It has no past tense.

(A) **Need Not** It is used for an action which is not necessary.

*For example*

- |   |                  |
|---|------------------|
| (i) He <i>needs</i> to work hard.         | (Ordinary verb)  |
| (ii) <i>Need</i> I write to him?          | (Auxiliary verb) |
| (iii) He <i>need</i> not go there again.  | (Auxiliary verb) |
| (iv) Rohit <i>need</i> not phone her now. | (Auxiliary verb) |
| (v) You do not need to work now.          | (Ordinary verb)  |
| (vi) Do you need to work now?             | (Ordinary verb)  |

(B) **Need Not + Have** This form is used for an action which was not necessary but was performed.

*For example*

- (i) You *need not have* gone there.  
 (ii) Rohit *need not have* phoned her yesterday.

**11. Dare** 'Dare' can be treated as an auxiliary or as an ordinary verb. As an auxiliary verb, it is used mainly in the negative and the interrogative forms with direct infinitive.

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| (i) She <i>dared</i> her sister to touch her. | (Challenge, Ordinary verb)       |
| (ii) He does not <i>dare</i> me to fight.     | (Challenge, Ordinary verb)       |
| (iii) I <i>dare</i> to go outside now.        | (To have courage, Ordinary verb) |
| (iv) He <i>dares</i> to abuse his rivals.     | (To have courage, Ordinary verb) |
| (v) I <i>dare</i> not go outside now.         | (Auxiliary verb)                 |
| (vi) He <i>dare</i> not abuse his rivals.     | (Auxiliary verb)                 |
| (vii) <i>Dare</i> you go outside now?         | (Auxiliary verb)                 |
| (viii) <i>Dare</i> he say so?                 | (Auxiliary verb)                 |
| (ix) He <i>dared</i> not go outside then.     | (Auxiliary verb)                 |
| (x) <i>Dared</i> he say so?                   | (Auxiliary verb)                 |
| (xi) I <i>dare</i> say she will cheat you.    | (I suppose)                      |
| (xii) I <i>dare</i> say my friend will pass.  | (it is likely)                   |

**NOTE** 'S' is not used with **dare & need** as auxiliary verbs.

## Work Book Exercise A

**Directions** Complete the sentences with suitable alternatives.

### May & Might

1. She expects that her son .....  
(a) can return                      (b) may return                      (c) should return
2. If we request her she ..... to college.  
(a) must give a lift                      (b) might give a lift                      (c) can give a lift
3. It is possible Marlowe ..... plays for Shakespeare.  
(a) may write                      (b) might have written                      (c) might write
4. All felt that he ..... a cheat.  
(a) may be                      (b) can be                      (c) might be
5. .... I go out? asked her son.  
(a) Should                      (b) May                      (c) Must
6. "Yes, you .....", the mother answered.  
(a) should go                      (b) may go                      (c) must go
7. The son asked his mother if he .....  
(a) can go out                      (b) may go out                      (c) might go out
8. .... our king live long!  
(a) May                      (b) Must                      (c) Should
9. We eat so that we ..... live.  
(a) may                      (b) might                      (c) can
10. He went there so that he ..... borrow money.  
(a) may                      (b) can                      (c) might

### Should

11. She advised that I ..... curtail expenditure.  
(a) should                      (b) shall                      (c) should have
12. You ..... him that gambling would ruin him.  
(a) should warn                      (b) should have warned                      (c) must warn
13. We enjoyed the movie, you ..... there.  
(a) should have been                      (b) can be                      (c) should be
14. .... you work hard, you will pass.  
(a) Would                      (b) Will                      (c) Should
15. I told him that I ..... leave next day.  
(a) should                      (b) should have                      (c) could
16. Make haste lest you ..... late.  
(a) should get                      (b) should not get                      (c) may not get

**Must**

17. She ..... work hard if she wants to top the merit list.  
 (a) must have (b) must (c) must not
18. She ..... alone as it was raining heavily.  
 (a) must not leave (b) must not have left (c) should not leave
19. Principal to a student : You ..... with bad girls.  
 (a) must not mix (b) cannot mix (c) may not mix
20. She ..... alone as it is raining heavily.  
 (a) must not leave (b) must not have left (c) should not have left
21. There ..... something wrong with the cooker today.  
 (a) must be (b) should have been (c) must have been
22. Swati is gentle, her sister ..... it.  
 (a) should have done (b) must have done (c) should do
23. I am sure the Principal ..... in his room.  
 (a) should be (b) can be (c) must be

**Ought to**

24. You ..... obey your parents.  
 (a) should (b) ought to (c) must
25. You ..... stood by your sister, when she was in difficulties.  
 (a) ought to (b) ought to have (c) should have

**Work Book Exercise B**

**Directions** Complete the sentences with suitable alternatives.

**Can, Could**

1. Since the keys are with my brother, I ..... you money.  
 (a) will not lend (b) cannot lend (c) may not lend
2. She told me that she ..... English fluently and was very happy.  
 (a) could speak (b) could have spoken (c) can speak
3. .... you please help my son?  
 (a) Can (b) Was able to (c) Could
4. After we had changed the punctured tyre we ..... continue our journey.  
 (a) can (b) was able (c) were able to
5. My friend did not help me though he ..... helped.  
 (a) could (b) could have (c) should

**To Be + Infinitive**

6. He ..... catch the first train tonight.  
 (a) is to (b) was to have (c) is to have

7. How are you here? You ..... her marriage.  
 (a) are to attend (b) were to attend (c) were to have attended
8. She ..... the first flight so she hurried to the airport in a taxi.  
 (a) was to catch (b) am to catch (c) was to have caught

**Would, Used to, Be used to**

9. She told me that she ..... go to Mumbai next month.  
 (a) will (b) should (c) would
10. He ..... go to college daily by bus in his college days.  
 (a) should (b) would (c) will
11. .... you please help my son?  
 (a) Should (b) Can (c) Would
12. My friend ..... visit me every Sunday when I was ill.  
 (a) used to (b) is used to (c) was used to
13. Deepu ..... getting up early in the morning.  
 (a) used to (b) is used to (c) accustomed to

**Need not**

14. My sister ..... to Delhi in such circumstances.  
 (a) need not go (b) need not to have gone (c) need not to go
15. She ..... here last night as her friend was better then.  
 (a) need not have stayed (b) need not stay (c) should not have stayed
16. You ..... your note books from tomorrow.  
 (a) need not bring (b) need not to bring (c) need not have brought
17. .... there while my father had forbidden me?  
 (a) Do I need go (b) Need I go (c) Need I have gone

**Dare**

18. Yesterday she ..... her sister to touch her.  
 (a) dares (b) does not (c) dared
19. He dares ..... his rivals.  
 (a) abuse (b) to abuse (c) abusing
20. I dare not ..... outside now.  
 (a) go (b) to go (c) going

# Revision Exercise

(Based on Functions, Voice and Modals)

**Directions** Correct the following sentences (*Wrong part of the sentence is given in bold italics*)

1. **Did you ever go** to Appu Ghar in Delhi recently?
2. Mini **has left** for her husband's last weekend.
3. We observed that the policeman **chased** a thief at that moment.
4. Do it or you **punish**.
5. The police think that Neena **may be there** yesterday at the time of murder.
6. After he **murdered** the child, his **body threw** into the river.
7. I **just had** my bath and I am ready.
8. It is a beautiful night. The stars **twinkle** in the sky.
9. Don't worry. You **may leave** your purse in staff room yesterday.
10. The dinner **had prepared** yet when our guests arrived.
11. I can't hear what you **say** now.
12. How much money **did you waste** since the death of your uncle?
13. I can't remember when I **had seen** her last.
14. My friend will **select** in the interview next month.
15. Smoking **has to ban** to avoid risk to children.
16. When I called on her she **was mending** socks for one hour.
17. I think the news **might** true.
18. I told her that I **was understanding** her very well.
19. While she **strolled** in the garden, she came across her old friend.
20. The labourers **tired** after a day's work and are enjoying sound sleep.
21. The boss **satisfied** to see the neat work of the secretary yesterday.
22. Please wait for a while, my wife **prepares** coffee.
23. I wonder what Atul **had done** lately.
24. "**He may succeed** in his new venture", his friends prayed.
25. Before you started you **must check** your purse.
26. He **has finished** dinner yet.
27. Since she started journey, she **had been** feeling sick.
28. The book **has just lost** today.
29. I **am** to Mumbai recently with my family.
30. While you were young, you **ought to learn** good habits.
31. Then I realized that something **burnt**.
32. When I visited my friend she **had been sweeping** the floor.

33. He returned the money to the police though he **could keep it**.
34. She **was never** to such a nice movie before her marriage.
35. **Can you** please help my son in getting a job?
36. I could not open the lock because I **lost** the key.
37. If you get through the examination I **shall** very happy.
38. I **have been writing** six letters since morning.
39. I **was to catch** the first train, but had to cancel the programme.
40. When I met her last year she **was married** for three years.
41. You **ought to** honest in your dealings.
42. He is reading a biography which is the third he **read** this year.
43. On next Dussehra they **will live together for ten years**.
44. We left for Delhi after the function **was** over.
45. It was very hot, you **need not bring** your woollen clothes.
46. I **have been** to Bhopal last year.
47. Where **have you been** yesterday?
48. **Will** you please send me some money?
49. Who is she with him? I think she **will be** his wife.
50. Is Shiva **used to sleep** late?

# ANSWERS

## Part A

### Unit I Foundation Module

#### 1. The Function of Tenses

##### Work Book Exercise A

- |                  |           |
|------------------|-----------|
| 1. run           | 2. get    |
| 3. dances        | 4. leaves |
| 5. does not have |           |

##### Work Book Exercise B

- |                                |                            |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. is not working, is playing  | 2. is leaving              |
| 3. are you reading, am reading | 4. are having, is catching |
| 5. am doing                    |                            |

##### Work Book Exercise C

- |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. have just seen | 2. have ever read |
| 3. have you known | 4. have gone      |
| 5. has not mended |                   |

##### Work Book Exercise D

- |                      |               |         |
|----------------------|---------------|---------|
| 1. (a) have taken    | (b) took      |         |
| 2. (a) have prepared | (b) prepared  |         |
| 3. (a) haven't seen  | (b) have seen | (c) saw |
| 4. opened            |               |         |
| 5. (a) have known    | (b) knew      |         |

##### Work Book Exercise E

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. heard          | 2. celebrated   |
| 3. caught         | 4. did not find |
| 5. did not arrive |                 |

##### Work Book Exercise F

- |                |                                |
|----------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. was wearing | 2. were playing, were swimming |
| 3. was working | 4. was climbing                |
| 5. were doing  |                                |

##### Work Book Exercise G

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. had left     | 2. had typed    |
| 3. had finished | 4. had belonged |
| 5. had left     |                 |

##### Work Book Exercise H

- |                                |                          |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. will meet/am meeting        | 2. will join/are joining |
| 3. will come/will be coming    | 4. will come/is coming   |
| 5. will speak/will be speaking |                          |

**Work Book Exercise I**

- |                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| 1. will be working/will work | 2. shall be living                     |
| 3. will be behaving          | 4. will not be drinking/will not drink |
| 5. will be smoking           |  |

**Work Book Exercise J**

- |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. will have completed | 2. will have qualified |
| 3. will have left      | 4. will have lost      |
| 5. will have known     |                        |

**Work Book Exercise K**

- |                                       |                                   |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. has known                          | 2. has owned                      |
| 3. has been studying                  | 4. has not eaten                  |
| 5. has been raining                   |                                   |
| 6. had been sitting, had been reading | 7. had been playing               |
| 8. had owned                          | 9. had been searching             |
| 10. had been barking                  | 11. will have they been staying   |
| 12. will have been living             | 13. will have been still sleeping |
| 14. will have been working            | 15. will have known               |

**Revision Exercises**

(Based on Function of Tenses)

**Exercise A**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (a)  | 2. (a)  | 3. (b)  | 4. (c)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (c)  | 7. (a)  |
| 8. (b)  | 9. (c)  | 10. (c) | 11. (c) | 12. (c) | 13. (c) | 14. (c) |
| 15. (c) | 16. (c) | 17. (b) | 18. (c) | 19. (b) | 20. (c) |         |

**Exercise B**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (c)  | 2. (a)  | 3. (b)  | 4. (b)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (b)  | 7. (a)  |
| 8. (c)  | 9. (a)  | 10. (c) | 11. (b) | 12. (b) | 13. (b) | 14. (c) |
| 15. (b) | 16. (c) | 17. (c) | 18. (b) | 19. (b) | 20. (c) |         |

**Review Exercise**

- 'often comes' in place of 'is often coming'.
- 'had just completed' in place of 'just completed'.
- 'has come' in place of 'came'.
- Remove 'has'.
- 'have known' in place of 'know'.
- 'did not meet' in place of 'never met'.
- 'has not written' in place of 'did not write'.
- 'had' in place of 'was having'.
- Insert 'not' after 'has'.
- 'had been barking' in place of 'was barking'.
- 'has been working' in place of 'is working'.

12. Remove 'had'.
13. Insert 'had' after 'someone'.
14. Insert 'had' after 'he'.
15. 'had decided' in place of 'decided'.
16. 'has she been' in place of 'is she'.
17. 'has belonged' in place of 'is belonging'.
18. 'faces' in place of 'is facing'.
19. broke (remove 'has')
20. 'sleeps' in place of 'is sleeping'.
21. 'are still writing' in place of 'write'.
22. 'have owned' in place of 'own'.
23. 'was running' in place of 'ran'.
24. 'has been wasting' in place of 'is wasting'.
25. Insert 'had' after 'he'.
26. 'wrote' in place of 'have written'.
27. 'had been working'/'had worked' in place of 'worked'.
28. Remove 'has'.
29. 'had been married' in place of 'was married'.
30. 'will you have known' in place of 'will you know'.
31. 'have done'/'have been doing' in place of 'did do'.
32. 'were you' in place of 'have you been'.
33. 'wrote' in place of 'has written'.
34. 'had been doing' in place of 'is doing'.
35. 'had been raining' in place of 'was raining'.
36. 'had been bitten' in place of 'was bitten'.
37. 'have been trying' in place of 'trying'.
38. 'was standing' in place of 'stood'.
39. 'will have left' in place of 'will leave'.
40. 'had not completed' in place of 'did not complete'.
41. 'is drizzling' in place of 'drizzles'.
42. 'had called' in place of 'called'.
43. 'looks' in place of 'is looking'.
44. 'had been' in place of 'was'.
45. 'had been stolen' in place of 'was stolen'.
46. 'do you keep' in place of 'are you keeping'.
47. 'have admired' in place of 'admired'.
48. 'had been' in place of 'was'.
49. 'had left' in place of 'left'.
50. 'leave' in place of 'am leaving'.
51. 'are you looking' in place of 'do you look', 'Is something happening' in place of 'Does something happen'.
52. 'has' in place of 'had'.
53. 'has not gone' in place of 'did not go'.
54. 'has read' in place of 'read'.

55. 'had been writing' in place of 'is writing'.
56. 'will have completed' in place of 'will complete'.
57. 'will have been written' for 'will be written'.
58. 'was lying' is place of 'lay'.
59. 'will have already returned' in place of 'will already return'.
60. 'has just had' in place of 'had'.

## 2. Voice

### Work Book Exercise A

- |                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. was annoyed        | 2. be punished       |
| 3. was convinced, was | 4. has been enforced |
| 5. were disappointed  | 6. behave            |
| 7. be entrusted       | 8. was amazed        |
| 9. will be pleased    | 10. is bearing       |

### Work Book Exercise B

- |                              |                |
|------------------------------|----------------|
| 1. has been                  | 2. were        |
| 3. have been                 | 4. has been    |
| 5. had been, was transferred | 6. be          |
| 7. had been, visited         | 8. is, will be |
| 9. has been                  | 10. had been   |

### Work Book Exercise C

#### Rule I

1. New scissors were bought by him.
2. News has been brought for you by them.
3. Orders for his transfer have been issued by the minister.
4. Summons was received by me yesterday.
5. His quarters have been repaired by him.

#### Rule II

1. Which book is liked most by you?
2. (a) By whom was this work done?  
(b) Who was this work done by?
3. What is being taught by you?
4. Who is liked most by you?
5. (a) By whom have you been taught English?  
(b) Who have you been taught English by?

#### Rule III

1. This wall cannot be mended.
2. He was not seen going out.
3. My books have been stolen.
4. Duty should be done.
5. We were told to wait outside.

**Rule IV**

1. (a) It is hoped that he will pass.  
(b) He hopes to pass.
2. (a) It is believed that he will return soon.  
(b) He is believed to return soon.
3. It was decided that we would leave early.
4. It is not known how rich he is.
5. (a) It is expected that he will pass.  
(b) He is expected to pass.

**Rule V**

1. (a) I have been given a book by him.  
(b) A book has been given to me by him.
2. (a) I will be asked a question by them.  
(b) A question will be asked of me by them.
3. He was made captain.
4. (a) I was told a story by her.  
(b) A story was told to me by her.
5. (a) I was bought a scooter by him.  
(b) A scooter was bought for me by him.

**Rule VI**

1. It is not expected of you by me.
2. The roads were thronged with the angry mob.
3. The dog was killed with a blow of lathi.
4. Is the lady known to you?
5. Much information is contained in the book.
6. The master was annoyed with the servant.
7. Everyone was surprised at his behaviour.
8. The teacher has been annoyed at his insolence.
9. I was disgusted at their jokes.
10. He is always disgusted with material life.

**Rule VII**

1. Arnav's sister is to be helped by him.
2. Sweets have to be distributed by Shaurya.

**Rule VIII**

3. (a) A terrorist was seen being chased by the police.  
(b) The police were seen chasing the terrorist.
4. A book on animals was to be written by her.
5. (a) The poor were found being helped by them.  
(b) He was found helping the poor.

**Rule IX**

1. What is being listened to by you?
2. The lost book was being searched for by them.
3. Computers cannot be dispensed with by the Government.
4. Such an accident has never been heard of.
5. He will be laughed at by all his friends.

**Rule X**

1. He was made to write a letter by me.
2. I was let stay in her home.
3. I was bidden to leave the room by her.
4. She was heard to sing a song by them.
5. He was seen to go by me.

**Rule XI**

1. Your teacher should be obeyed.
2. It should be done as early as possible.
3. (a) You are ordered not to go out.  
(b) You are forbidden to go out.
4. He should be prevented from going out.
5. You are requested to enter by this door.

**Rule XII**

1. I may be allowed to sleep here.
2. They may be allowed to watch the match.
3. TV should be watched by us.
4. No body should be hurt by us.
5. It is suggested that we should go now.

**Work Book Exercise D**

1. (b) The glasses were filled with water by the waiter.
2. (a) The dog was taken for a walk by her.
3. (b) The car was being driven by him so fast that it skidded on the snowy road.
4. (c) You will be laughed at by them.
5. (c) Then she bowed her face.
6. (d) We had not decorated the walls.
7. (d) The letter will have been written by me.
8. (b) What cannot be cured must be endured.
9. (b) The farmer's wife collected a fresh batch of eggs.
10. (d) A new airport is going to be built near the old one.
11. (a) The sight of the miserable beggar moved Rosemary to tears.
12. (d) Could the salt be passed?
13. (d) The animals should not be subjected to cruelty.
14. (d) By whom you were asked to draft this letter?

15. (d) A serious forest fire was caused by lightning and many nearby houses were damaged.
16. (d) Today my task was accomplished successfully.
17. (c) Look ! The door has been painted.
18. (c) The doctor advised her 15 days' rest after her surgery.
19. (a) When were my books returned by him?
20. (c) All other work had to be stopped by us to complete our assignment.
21. (a) The Quit India Movement was started by Gandhiji in 1942.
22. (c) Bronze medals were won by Gagan Narang and Vijay in London Olympics.
23. (c) Life has been made so much easier by the modern means of communication.
24. (a) The sky has been overcast by thick clouds.
25. (d) Unsolicited advice should not be given.
26. (d) We had completed our task before sunset.
27. (b) A massive tribal welfare programme has been launched by the government in Jharkhand.
28. (a) Several items were destroyed in the room by the burglar. Even the carpet he has torn.
29. (c) Has your question been answered?
30. (b) The prices were lowered by the shopkeeper.
31. (d) One's promises must be kept.
32. (a) All the details of the invention have been published by them.
33. (c) You are requested to shut the door and go to sleep.
34. (b) This is impossible to be done.
35. (b) All living species on Earth must be taken care of by us.
36. (a) We are reading it.
37. (c) A mistake had been committed by him.
38. (d) My boss gave me the most useful training of my career.
39. (c) Why was the garden wall broken by her?
40. (a) The oldman was being laughed at by the students.
41. (a) Can this big parcel be sent by air?

### 3. Modals

#### Work Book Exercise A

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (b)  | 2. (b)  | 3. (b)  | 4. (c)  | 5. (b)  | 6. (b)  | 7. (c)  |
| 8. (a)  | 9. (a)  | 10. (c) | 11. (a) | 12. (b) | 13. (a) | 14. (c) |
| 15. (a) | 16. (a) | 17. (b) | 18. (b) | 19. (a) | 20. (a) | 21. (a) |
| 22. (b) | 23. (c) | 24. (b) | 25. (b) |         |         |         |

#### Work Book Exercise B

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (b)  | 2. (a)  | 3. (c)  | 4. (c)  | 5. (b)  | 6. (a)  | 7. (c)  |
| 8. (a)  | 9. (c)  | 10. (b) | 11. (c) | 12. (a) | 13. (b) | 14. (a) |
| 15. (a) | 16. (a) | 17. (c) | 18. (c) | 19. (b) | 20. (a) |         |

**Revision Exercise****(Based on Functions, Voice and Modals)**

1. Have you ever gone
3. was chasing
5. might have been there
7. have just had
9. may have left
11. what you are saying now
13. saw
15. has to be banned
17. might be
19. was strolling
21. was satisfied
23. has done
25. must have checked
27. has been
29. have been
31. was burning
33. could have kept
35. Could you
37. shall be
39. was to have caught
41. ought to be
43. will have been living for ten years
45. need not have brought
47. 'were' for 'have been'
49. 'would be' for 'will be'
2. left
4. you will be punished
6. had murdered, body was thrown
8. are twinkling
10. had not been prepared
12. have you wasted
14. will be selected
16. had been mending
18. understood
20. are tired
22. is preparing
24. May he succeed
26. has not finished
28. has just been lost.
30. ought to have learnt
32. was sweeping
34. had never been
36. had lost
38. have written
40. had been married
42. is reading
44. had been
46. 'went' for 'have been'
48. 'would' for 'will'
50. 'used to sleeping' for 'used to sleep'

## Unit II

# 4

# Kinds of Sentences and Clauses

---

## What is a Clause?

A group of words that forms a part of a sentence and has a subject and a finite verb of its own is called a **clause**. The number of finite verbs in a sentence joined by conjunctions determines the number of clauses.

## Kinds of Sentences

There are three kinds of sentences as mentioned below

### I. Simple sentence    II. Complex sentence    III. Compound sentence

I. **Simple Sentence** A sentence which has only one finite verb is a simple sentence. It may have non-finite verbs, if required. *For example*

- (i) She is walking.
- (ii) He has written a letter to help his son.

II. **Complex Sentence** A complex sentence consists of a principal/main clause with one or more subordinate clauses. It means that a complex sentence has more than one finite verb. Sub-ordinate clauses are joined by sub-ordinating conjunctions. *For example*

- (i) I know that he is a good man.
- (ii) I know the man who was here last month.
- (iii) When you do this work, I shall help you with money.

III. **Compound Sentence** A compound sentence consists of two or more principal clauses. These clauses are joined by co-ordinating conjunctions such as '**and, but, so, therefore, otherwise, or, else, nor, while, for, whereas, still, yet, nevertheless, however, as well as, all the same, indeed but**'. (otherwise = or else)

The clauses of a compound sentence are called co-ordinate clauses. *For example*

- (i) My brother came **and** he handed over money to me.
- (ii) She is rich **but** she is not vain.
- (iii) Speak **or** you will die.

- (iv) She is ill **so** she will not come.
- (v) She is intelligent **while** her sister is dull.
- (vi) It was dark, **however** we went out.
- (vii) He was convicted **as well as** fined.
- (viii) I was feeling tired **all the same** I went to office.
- (ix) It is cold **indeed**, **but** I will go out.

## More About a Complex Sentence

As stated earlier a complex sentence consists of more than one clause. A Principal clause with one or more sub-ordinate clauses forms a complex sentence. There are three kinds of sub-ordinate clauses joined by their respective sub-ordinating conjunction. *For example*

- (a) I know that he is a good boy.
- (b) I know the man who was here yesterday.
- (c) When you do this work, I shall give you money.

These sentences represent three kinds of sub-ordinate clauses

1. **Noun Clause** In the sentence (a) 'I know' is a principal clause. 'that he is a good boy' is a noun clause. Noun clause explains the verb, noun and pronoun of the main or some other clause. (Explanation)
2. **Adjective Clause** In the sentence (b) 'I know the man' is a principal clause. 'who was here yesterday' is an adjective clause. Adjective clause qualifies an antecedent (noun or pronoun) as the case may be. (Qualification)
3. **Adverb Clause** In the sentence (c) 'I shall give you money' is a principal clause. 'When you do this work' is an adverb clause. Adverb clause is required to modify a verb, adverb or adjective in the main or some other clause. (Modification)

## More about Sub-ordinate Clauses

### 1. Noun Clause

Take care of the rules given below while writing a noun clause

- (a) Use the conjunctions 'that, if, whether, when, where, how, why, what (whatever), who, whose, whom, which.'
- (b) Tense of the noun clause should be in the past if the verb of the main clause is in the past. The tense of **universal truth** does not change.
- (c) Noun clause should never be expressed in interrogative form.

## Work Book Exercise A

**Directions** A student is required to complete the following sentences with Noun clause.

### 1. Object to a Transitive Verb

- |                            |                                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. I say .....             | 2. I said .....                |
| 3. I cannot say .....      | 4. She refused .....           |
| 5. I don't know what ..... | 6. I know what .....           |
| 7. I wonder .....          | 8. I doubt .....               |
| 9. I am certain .....      | 10. The police suspected ..... |

**NOTE** When noun clause begins with interrogative pronouns (conjunctions of noun clause) and is followed by principal clause, 'that' is used before interrogative pronouns : 'what, when, where' etc.

*For example*

- (i) She says that when he will come is uncertain.  
 (ii) She said that whether she would pass was doubtful.

### 2. The Case in Apposition to a Noun or a Pronoun (Apposition means placing near)

1. She never believed in his statement .....
2. No one heard the news .....
3. It is true .....
4. It is not known .....

### 3. The Subject of a Verb

Noun clause as a subject is used in place of pronouns 'it, this, that'?

*For example*

It is true **what he knows**.

**What he knows** is true.

- |                              |                               |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. What you are doing .....  | 2. Whether he will come ..... |
| 3. How she disappeared ..... | 4. That he is honest .....    |

**NOTE** 5. Where she came from or where she lived is difficult to tell.  
 6. What he says and what he does are difficult to tell.

### 4. Object of Infinitive, Participle and Preposition

1. I was pleased by .....
2. Listen to .....
3. Everybody was pleased to note .....
4. Good students ought to realise .....
5. She kept on asking .....

### 5. Complement of a Verb

- |                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. The hope is ..... | 2. The fact is ..... |
|----------------------|----------------------|

**NOTE** Noun clause following the verbs—'to be, become, seem, appear, grow, taste, smell, prove, look, make' etc—performs the function of a complement of these verbs (in place of predicate).

## 2. Adjective Clause

While writing an adjective clause a student is required to observe the following rules

- Adjective clause should be placed after the **antecedent** (noun/pronoun) qualified by the adjective clause. **'Those' is used for 'They' and 'Them' as an antecedent.**
- The verb of the adjective clause should be (singular/plural) in accordance with the antecedent.
- Use of **connectives** (relative pronouns)

Who, whose, whom	for living beings.
Which, of which, which	for non-living things and animals.
'That' may be used	for 'who & which'. <b>But 'that' is usually used if the antecedent is preceded by 'the same, all, only, nothing, little, few, superlative degree, interrogative pronoun, some, any.'</b>
'As' is used	after <b>'the same or such' in place of who or which.</b> [Refer to Note (2) under the Box]
'Why' is used	after <b>reason</b> as an antecedent.
'When' is used	after <b>time</b> as an antecedent.
'Where' is used	after <b>place</b> as an antecedent.
'How' is used	after <b>manner</b> as an antecedent.

### NOTE

- Conjunctions **when, why, where, how** used in adjective clause are **relative adverbs**. They express their meanings as follows

- I remember the year **when** she was married. (*in which year*)
- She explained the reason **why** she had to tell a lie. (*for which reason*)
- Has he told you the place **where** the accident took place? (*at which place*)
- She told me the **manner** how her sister completed the work. (*in which manner*)

- The use of 'As' and 'That' with the 'Same' (*is what way/manner*)

- 'That' is used when 'The same' is used with a noun both in the case of qualification and resemblance.

- I shall buy the same perfume that my friend bought. (*resemblance*)
- She is the same girl that asked me for books yesterday. (*qualification*)

- 'As' is used when 'The same' is used either without a noun or when the verb is unexpressed in the case of resemblance.

- Just do the same as I do. (*resemblance*)
- I like the same perfume as she. (likes) (*resemblance*)
- I shall buy the same perfume that my friend bought. (*resemblance*)

[Refer to Rule on Pronouns]

## Work Book Exercise B

**Directions** A student is required to complete the following sentences with Adjective clause.

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. I know the man .....             | 2. This is my pen .....                   |
| 3. I don't know any man .....       | 4. He is such a man .....                 |
| 5. I have met all the boys .....    | 6. This is the best book .....            |
| 7. I have invited Mohan whose ..... | 8. I have invited Mohan whom .....        |
| 9. He is the man whose leg .....    | 10. It is the table the leg of which..... |

### 3. Adverb Clause

Adverb clause is one of the three sub-ordinate clauses. It does the work of an adverb. It modifies some verb, adverb or adjective in the main clause. Adverb clause may be classified as follows

- (A) Adverb Clause of Time
- (B) Adverb Clause of Condition
- (C) Adverb Clause of Purpose
- (D) Adverb Clause of Place
- (E) Adverb Clause of Result
- (F) Adverb Clause of Reason
- (G) Adverb Clause of Concession or Contrast
- (H) Adverb Clause of Manner
- (I) Adverb Clause of Comparison

**NOTE** Future tense in an adverb clause becomes **Present**.

#### (A) Adverb Clause of Time

- (a) This clause is introduced by conjunctions of time such as 'when, whenever, as soon as, as, while, before, after, by the time, until, till, since, ever since, as long as.'
- (b) One should be careful in distinguishing between simultaneous and preceding / succeeding actions. Preceding action should be expressed in perfect tense as the case may be.

**Study the following sentences carefully**

- (i) When she will arrive, she will tell us about the expedition.  
(Change 'will arrive' to 'arrives')
- (ii) When he completed the letter, he posted it.  
(Change 'completed' to 'had completed')
- (iii) As the teacher arrived, the students stood up. (Correct)
- (c) **Avoid the use of 'not' in the clause beginning with 'until'.**  
Please do not go until I return. (Correct)

- (d) Clause beginning with 'since, ever since' should be in Past Indefinite/Past Perfect and the main clause should be according to the rules of time expression. (Perfect tense or perfect continuous) *For example*
- (i) Since she came to Nagpur, she has not met me.
  - (ii) Since I returned from America, I have been working here.

**Study the following sentences carefully**

- (i) I can't say when he will go. (Noun clause)
- (ii) I know the time when he will go. (Adjective clause)
- (iii) I shall give you money when you return my book. (Adverb clause)
- (iv) It is (or it has been) a long time since we met. (Correct)
- (v) It was (or it had been) a long time since I had met her. (Correct)

**(B) Adverb Clause of Condition**

- (a) There are three types of conditional clauses. Each kind contains a different pair of sequences as follows

Condition	Conditional Clause	Principal Clause
(i) Present likely condition	Present Indefinite	Shall/will
(ii) Present unlikely condition/ Regret, wish	Subjunctive mood	Should/would
(iii) Past condition	Past Perfect	(Would, should, could, might) + have

**Present Likely**

- (i) If he runs, he will get here soon.
- (ii) You will pass if you work hard.

**Present unlikely/Regret, wish**

- (i) If I had a stamp, I would give it to you.
- (ii) If I were rich, I would help you.
- (iii) I wish I were a queen.
- (iv) If I knew her address, I would send her a message.

**Past Condition**

- (i) If she had written the letter, she would have got reply yesterday.
- (ii) If she had brought money, she could have enjoyed the picnic.

- (b) Conditional clauses are introduced with following connectives

**'If, unless, I wish, would that, I would, if only, suppose, on condition that, provided, in case.** *For example*

- (i) If you come by car, we will take you to temple.
- (ii) In case you don't waste time, you can live here.

- (c) Sometimes sub-ordinate conjunction 'if' is omitted in adverb clause of condition. ('Should, were, had' are used instead.) *For example*

- (i) **Should** you work hard, you will pass. (Present condition)
- (ii) **Were** she intelligent, she would not do it. (Present unlikely condition)
- (iii) **Had** I done it, I would not have repented. (Past condition)

- (d) **Avoid the use of 'not' in the clause beginning with 'unless'.**  
You will not pass unless you work hard.
- (e) **'Would that, I wish, I would & if only'** are used to express regret or dissatisfaction with the present. Such expressions are expressed in **subjunctive mood**. *For example*
- (i) Would that I were intelligent.
  - (ii) I wish I had money now.
  - (iii) If only I hadn't met her last year.
  - (iv) I wish I had had money then.

**NOTE** 'Would', should be used when the subjects of the clauses differ, e.g.,  
I wish you would help my brother.

### (C) Adverb Clause of Purpose

Adverb clause of purpose is introduced by the conjunctions **'that, so that, in order that, lest'**. *For example*

- (i) He goes to Delhi every month so that he **may** see his ailing father.
- (ii) She came in order that she **might** borrow money.
- (iii) Work hard lest you **should** fail.

**NOTE** 'Not' is avoided in a clause beginning with **lest**

### (D) Adverb Clause of Place

Adverb clause of place is introduced by the conjunctions **'where & wherever'** but Adverb clause of place does not qualify any place given in the main clause.

*For example*

- (i) I shall go to Delhi where my father lives. (It is an adjective clause because it qualifies the noun 'Delhi')
- (ii) I shall follow you where you go. (Adverb clause)
- (iii) I do not know where he lives. (Noun clause)

### (E) Adverb Clause of Result

Adverb clause of result is expressed by **'that'** in the adverb clause preceded by **'so', 'such'** in the main clause. *For example*

- (i) He was **so** late **that** he had to miss the dinner.
- (ii) He is **such** an intelligent boy **that** he can easily pass.

### (F) Adverb Clause of Reason

Adverb clause of reason is introduced by **'because, since, as, now that, that.'**

- (i) I did it because my father told me to do it.
- (ii) As he was absent, he was punished.
- (iii) Since she came late, so she was fined. (Remove 'so')
- (iv) I am happy that you are successful. ('That' means because)

**NOTE** 'So' and 'therefore' should be avoided in the main clause.

**(G) Adverb Clause of Concession or Contrast**

Adverb clause of contrast is introduced by ‘**Although, though, even if, however, whatever no matter what, no matter how, no matter where, no matter that etc notwithstanding that admitting that, as, whether, even though, much as, come what may, say what you will**’.

*For example*

- (i) Though she is rich, she is unhappy.
- (ii) Rich as she is, she is not happy.
- (iii) Even if it is cold, I shall go.
- (iv) Though he was intelligent but he failed. *(remove ‘but’)*
- (v) No matter what I say, no body listens to me.
- (vi) I shall do it whether you like it or not.
- (vii) Much as I like to give you money, I can’t do so.
- (viii) However rich he may be, he is not kind.

**NOTE** The main clause following the adverb clause of contrast should not begin with ‘**but, nevertheless and still**’. A student may write the main clause with ‘**yet**’.

**(H) Adverb Clause of Manner**

Adverb clause of manner is introduced by ‘**as, as if and as though**’.

Conjunctions ‘**as if**’ and ‘**as though**’ are used to express a **contrary to fact statement**. **Subjunctive mood** is used in this kind of statements.

*For example*

- (i) She did it as she was advised.
- (ii) She talks as if she were the landlady.
- (iii) She talks as if she had belonged to a very rich family before her marriage.
- (iv) He looks as if he is my brother. *(Resemblance) (Correct)*

*In sentence (iv), manner clause is not a contrary to fact statement. It means that he looks like my brother. (Resemblance)*

**(I) Adverb Clause of Comparison**

Adverb clause of comparison is introduced by ‘**than and as**’.

Comparison should be made **between the same cases of pronouns or between two persons or things being compared**.

*For example*

- (i) She is as good as he is. *(Affirmative)*
- (ii) She is **not so** active as they are. *(Negative)*
- (iii) She is as intelligent like her brother. *(‘like’ is a preposition, use ‘as’)*
- (iv) He is wiser than me. *(Use ‘I’ in place of ‘me’)*
- (v) My house is larger than her. *(Use ‘hers’/‘her house’ in place of ‘her’)*
- (vi) The price of my book is less than your book. *(Insert ‘that of’ after ‘than’)*
- (vii) I found her smarter than he. *(Use ‘him’ in place of ‘he’)*

## Work Book Exercise C

**Directions** Fill up the proper forms of verbs/alternatives to make Adverb clause.

1. When you ..... the book, I shall help you. (write)
2. I will do this work when you ..... me to do it. (ask)
3. As I ..... the bus stand, the bus arrived. (reach)
4. As soon as the teacher ..... the classroom, the boys will stand up. (enter)
5. When you ..... your exams, I shall take you to hill station. (take)
6. When she ..... the letter, she posted it. (write)
7. My brother ..... before we took our dinner. (come)
8. My brother ..... by the time we took our dinner. (come)
9. After we ..... our dinner, my brother came. (take)
10. My brother will come after we ..... our dinner. (take)
11. We already ..... our dinner when the guest arrived. (take)
12. Since my father .....for Mumbai, he has not written to me. (leave)
13. Since she arrived, she .....from cold. (suffer)
14. She .....ill since she arrived. (be)
15. While it ..... ,no one went out. (rain)
16. He will not come until you .....this place. (leave)
17. As long as you ..... in the town, he will not return. (be)
18. Many students .....by the time the match begins. (arrive)
19. Many students ..... by the time the match began. (arrive)
20. Please wait till I ..... (go)
21. If you .....hard, you will pass. (work)
22. If it .....tomorrow, we shall not sail. (rain)
23. Unless you ..... hard, you will not pass. (work)
24. If I ..... his address, I would tell you now. (know)
25. If I ..... money, I would give you. (have)
26. If it ..... possible, I would help him. (be)
27. I wish I ..... present there tomorrow. (be)
28. Were I a doctor, I .....him. (treat)
29. If I ..... his address, I would have told you then. (know)
30. If I ..... money , I would have given you. (have)

# Revision Exercises

(Based on Noun, Adjective and Adverb Clauses)

## Exercise A

(Based on Noun and Adjective Clauses)

**Directions** *Correct the following sentences*

1. He believed that he will turn out to be a cheat.
2. Why he came is difficult to understand.
3. I cannot say that he has passed.
4. It was difficult to pretend that I am penniless.
5. We did not see that man in the room who was standing in the corner.
6. Please go and ask him that he is going there.
7. I did not know that why is he not staying there.
8. No such boy who is living here will do this.
9. You should follow the same method which he does.
10. Let us help them who are in greater need than he.
11. What you did it cannot be pardoned.
12. All the books what you bought are not upto the mark.
13. There was every reason to believe that he has changed.
14. Tell me the reason that they could not marry.
15. It is better to write with a pen whose nib is smooth.
16. The boy who you know is not going there.
17. He gave me a book and which I like very much.
18. He told me that he saw his father last month.
19. I doubt that you can pass the examination.
20. I cannot say as to why he was annoyed.
21. Man is the only animal which can laugh.
22. The teacher who met us he teaches us Hindi.
23. Please find out that what he has done.
24. It was no use believing that he is honest.
25. She gave the reason that she was ill.
26. I asked him where he was going and he could give me a lift to college.
27. Those who have common sense should realise what is life.
28. He was talking of the women who, he told, he met in America.
29. He always tells me that If I work hard, I will pass.
30. My friend came to see me who was my classmate in school.

31. What you say and what you do is not tolerable.
32. I asked him that if he was still living in Delhi.
33. My problem is the same that yours.
34. They do not know anything what we know.
35. The teacher told the students that honesty is the best policy.

### Exercise B

(Based on Adverb Clause)

1. I shall do this work when you will pay me.
2. I shall lend you my car if you will not misuse it.
3. I would have believed if I saw with my own eyes yesterday.
4. If I were you, I shall never help him.
5. If she had a book yesterday she would not have refused to give.
6. Nothing is so good like we think.
7. You have done it because I forbade you.
8. Carry it carefully lest it will break.
9. Let us not behave as though we are indifferent to others.
10. When you complete this work, I shall buy you sweets.
11. By the time the sun set he typed all letters.
12. I have not seen her since she has come back from Delhi.
13. Unless she does not mend her behaviour, I shall send her out.
14. After you go through the book, please return it to me.
15. As she is obstinate so she will not obey you.
16. The child is out since her mother went to market.
17. Though he ran fast still he could not escape from the police.
18. He is a good student but I have much pleasure in granting him scholarship.
19. He started early because he might not get late.
20. He had reached office before it started raining.
21. She rang me up after she decided to go out.
22. She is as tall like her mother.
23. Supposing if he refuses you money, what will you do?
24. When the boys were playing, the teachers were watching them.
25. Don't go out until you do not hear gun shot.
26. You will not get well until you take medicine regularly.
27. If I know him, I would invite him.
28. I shall show you my garden after you take rest.
29. She is too weak that she cannot run.
30. She is very kind to me since I fell ill.

**Exercise ③**

(Based on Miscellaneous Clauses)

1. I know something what my mother told you.
2. I cannot say what is she doing these days.
3. Maruti is one of those motor car which are liked very much.
4. I doubt that my father will help you.
5. She was singing which I did not like.
6. Don't go out until you are not well.
7. Sanskrit is one of the oldest languages that was spoken by the Aryans.
8. Have you ever met such a boy who has not travelled by train?
9. She behaves with her neighbour as though she is the landlady.
10. He said that what he was doing was not correct.
11. I shall come back by the time you get up.
12. It is the tree whose fruit is not sweet.
13. Though he ran fast still he could not escape from the police.
14. When she will marry, she will invite you.
15. Who knows that when will the result be out?
16. When you complete your service, you will be retired on pension.
17. You must carry on so that you will succeed.
18. Twelve years passed since his uncle has died.
19. He cannot see clearly unless he will wear glasses.
20. Don't go out until you complete the work.
21. They are working hard so that they will pass.
22. If they had run faster, they could catch the thief last night.
23. Were she I, she will not allow you to go.
24. They stole the books before the lady returned.
25. As they were in trouble therefore they did not attend marriage.
26. Which you did cannot be pardoned.
27. When you take your food, see me in the office.
28. Her name is as glorious in our history as any other leader.
29. The location of your house is more suitable than my house.
30. If she had his intelligence, she would have made a mark in her early life.
31. Please explain the reason that you did not make the payment on time.
32. What India needs are honest leaders.
33. What your mother told me and why she told me is not clear to me.
34. I do not know that when will he like to go.
35. I told her when she went to Mumbai, I would give her money.

# 5

## Clause Analysis

---

As already stated in chapter on clauses a number of finite verbs in a sentence determine a number of clauses. Non- finite verbs are not considered for the purpose of clause analysis.

1. In a **simple sentence**, there is one finite verb and hence only one clause.

*For example*

- (i) She **is writing** a novel.
- (ii) Pearl **will examine** a patient.

2. In a **complex sentence**, there are more than one clause as follows

- (a) Principal/Main clause
- (b) Sub-ordinate clauses
  - (i) Noun clause,
  - (ii) Adjective clause and
  - (iii) Adverb clause.

These sub-ordinate clauses are joined by sub-ordinating conjunctions (Look up chapter 4, based on clauses)

3. In a **compound sentence**, there are more than one principal clause/co-ordinate clause related to each other.

- (a) Principal clause
- (b) Co-ordinate clause

Co-ordinate clause is joined by co-ordinating conjunctions (Look up chapter 4, based on clauses)

**NOTE** However, when co-ordinating conjunction joins two sub-ordinate clauses, the sentence remains a complex sentence. *For example*

- (i) I told her that she was polite and her sister was humble. (*Complex*)
- (ii) I told her that she was not polite and advised her to improve her behaviour. (*Compound*)

### How to Find out Clauses?

Now let us study how to analyse a sentence by pointing out the clauses separately and defining their functions.

### 1. Principal/Main Clause

While analysing a sentence, student is required to find out a **Principal clause**. It is easy to do so because the principal clause is not introduced by any joining conjunction.

Having found out the **principal clause** a student is expected to break up the rest of the sentence into **sub-ordinate /co-ordinate clauses**.

### 2. Sub-ordinate Clauses

- (i) Noun clause, (ii) Adjective clause and  
(iii) Adverb clause.

### 3. Co-ordinate Clause

**NOTE** Refer to Chapter 4 (on Clauses) for the detailed study of the clauses before attempting the following questions.

### The Manners of Conjunctions

Some of the conjunctions, denoting different meanings, have been used in the following sentences. As a result of this they form different clauses

1. I asked him **when he would go there**. (Noun clause)
2. I know the time **when he will come**. (Adjective clause)
3. He will give me money **when I go to Mumbai**. (Adverb clause)
4. I shall not tell you **where he lives**. (Noun clause)
5. I shall go to the place **where my friend lives**. (Adjective clause)
6. I shall go **where my friend lives**. (Adverb clause)
7. I do not know **if he will come**. (Noun clause)
8. You will pass **if you work hard**. (Adverb clause)
9. I do not know **who came here last night**. (Noun clause)
10. I know the boy **who came here last night**. (Adjective clause)
11. I know the man **whom every body likes**. (Adjective clause)
12. I do not know **whom she is teaching**. (Noun clause)
13. I cannot say **whose book this is**. (Noun clause)
14. I have invited my friends **whose parents are in India**. (Adjective clause)
15. Do you know **which his house is**. (Noun clause)
16. I know the house **which he got built last year**. (Adjective clause)
17. He gave me the same book **that I wanted**. (Adjective clause)
18. I know **that he will come**. (Noun clause)
19. I know the boy **that lives there**. (Adjective clause)
20. I am happy that **she is successful**. (Adverbs clause)
21. We come here **that we may study**. (Adverb clause)

22. He is so weak **that he cannot run.** *(Adverb clause)*
23. He is such a weak boy **that he cannot run.** *(Adverb clause)*
24. He is such a boy **as does not help any body.** *(Adjective clause)*
25. **Since my brother came,** he has been teaching. *(Adverb clause)*
26. **Since she is ill,** she cannot go out. *(Adverb clause)*
27. **As I arrived at the station,** the train left. *(Adverb clause)*
28. **As he was late,** he missed the bus. *(Adverb clause)*
29. She is as intelligent **as her brother is.** *(Adverb clause)*
30. **Rich as he is,** he is not happy. *(Adverb clause)*
31. She did it **as I advised her to do.** *(Adverb clause)*
32. My house is the same as **yours(is).** *(Adjective clause)*
33. I shall do **whatever he says.** *(Noun clause)*
34. I shall do it **whatever you may say.** *(Adverb clause)*
35. I cannot say **what he is talking about.** *(Noun clause)*
36. He told me **what his father had told him.** *(Noun clause)*
37. I do not know **whether he will come tomorrow.** *(Noun clause)*
38. I shall do it **whether you like it or not.** *(Adverb clause)*
39. **While it was raining,** nobody went out. *(Adverb clause)*
40. She is intelligent **while her brother is dull.** *(Co-ordinate clause)*
41. I do not know **why he will not come.** *(Noun clause)*
42. This is the reason **why he has not passed.** *(Adjective clause)*
43. It was dark, however we went out.
44. However honest he may be he is not respected.

## Work Book Exercise A

**Directions** Find out the *Noun clause* and mention the function as explained in the foregoing examples. Translate them in your mother language as well.

1. I say that she is intelligent.
2. I cannot say if she will go.
3. I did not know whether she would go.
4. It is certain that she will marry him.
5. I do not know what she is doing these days.
6. I shall not do what you want me to do.
7. What he says is not correct.
8. I was pleased by what she did for us.
9. She never believed in his statement that he would get her a job.
10. Everybody was pleased to note that she looked cheerful at the party.

## Work Book Exercise B

**Directions** Below are given the sentences for the students to find out *Adjective clause stating the Noun or Pronoun qualified by them. Translate them in your own mother tongue as well.*

1. I know the man who came here.
2. This is my pen which I gave you.
3. I don't know any man that is present here.
4. He is such a man as will never cheat you.
5. The boys that have been admitted to the hostel belong to Bhopal.
6. This is the best book that I have ever read.
7. I have invited Mohan whose father is a famous doctor.
8. I have invited Ashok all of us admire.
9. The table the leg of which is broken is very costly.
10. The news he gave is wrong.

## Work Book Exercise C

**Directions** Each of the following sentences contain an *Adverb clause. Pick out the Adverb clause stating its kind and the word it modifies. Translate them in your own mother tongue as well.*

1. When you write the book, I shall help you.
2. My brother had come before we took our dinner.
3. After we had taken our dinner, my brother came.
4. Since she arrived, she has been suffering from cold.
5. He will not come until you leave this place.
6. Please wait till I go.
7. He works hard so that he may stand first.
8. Walk carefully lest you should fall.
9. She worked so hard that she could get first class.
10. If you work hard, you will pass.

## Miscellaneous Exercise

**Directions** Analyse the following sentences pointing out the kind of clauses. A student is also required to state their functions.

1. The boy stated that his brother would not come.
2. The boy who lives here said that his brother would not come.
3. The boy who lives here told us that his brother who was a doctor and whom they had called would not come.
4. We don't know how our ancestors led their lives in great difficulties when there were no comforts of life.
5. We, who live in the present age do not know how our ancestors led their lives in ancient India.
6. We do not know whether our ancestors led their lives in great difficulties but we are certain of their problems.
7. The house that was constructed by me has been rented to the student who came yesterday.
8. The persons who do wrong to others are always humiliated by those whom they wrong.
9. Once he said that he could not do the work his brother was doing as he was illiterate.
10. He told us that he had read the book which was written by Tagore.
11. He was ordered that he would not go out until the rain had stopped.
12. Those who do not respect others don't know that others will not respect them unless they respect others.
13. I doubt if he said that those who would not come in time would not get food.
14. We cannot say anything about any religion unless we agree that all the religions teach us to be compassionate.
15. Those who do not help others unless their motive is fulfilled are called selfish.
16. I did not tell him that I would not help those boys who did not work hard.
17. I don't know how this came to be so although I must confess that if I had inquired I could have found out why he acted so selfishly.
18. He tells everybody that nobody will help and give him money because nobody believes him.
19. She told me that if I gave her book she would be grateful to me.
20. Satya knows very well that when her husband returns from office she will be asked to leave the house.
21. Will you ever forget her who stood by you when you were in trouble and will not write to her?
22. She hoped that she would inherit the property of her sister who had no offspring.
23. The statement that she was absent when the police came was not believed by her friends who suspected her complicity in the crime.
24. Hardy believed that the forces that govern human destiny were still in the making.
25. The robbers warned him that if he informed the police of the happening he would be in trouble again.
26. History is a witness to the fact that there had never been a strong central authority to rule over our country that remained under foreign domination for ages.
27. I have no pity for a man who, you know very well, told me that he had lost courage when disaster befell him.

28. Mr. Patel asked his party men to find out if they could launch agitation when the British Government was torn with internal problems.
29. He told the little girl that throwing banana on to a pavement was a bad habit because any pedestrian could slip on it.
30. You should be content and pleased with what you have these days since to complain of high prices does not speak well of you.
31. He could not utter a single word to his son who, when he arrived, was in a dejected mood.
32. She knew that as it was dark she would not be allowed to go to meet her friend she had promised to visit and give money.
33. It is remarkable to meet with success when one is actually expecting failure because desirable chance happenings are the spice of life.
34. Those in trouble should realise that life is not as easy as they thought it to be, though no difficulty is beyond solution.
35. I know that my son, if he had been sent to J.N.U., would have made a mark in life since the environment for mental make up is no less important than the inborn qualities.

## Miscellaneous Exercise

(Some Questions Worked Out)

1. (a) The boy stated.....Principal clause.  
(b) that his brother would not come.....Noun clause, object to the transitive verb 'stated'.  
*(The sentence is complex.)*
2. (a) The boy said.....Principal clause.  
(b) who lives here.....Adjective clause, qualifying the noun 'the boy'.  
(c) that his brother would not come.....Noun clause, object to the transitive verb 'said'.  
*(The sentence is complex.)*
3. (a) The boy told us.....Principal clause.  
(b) who lives here.....Adjective clause, qualifying the noun 'the boy'.  
(c) that his brother would not come.....Noun clause, object to the transitive verb 'told'.  
(d) who was a doctor.....Adjective clause, qualifying the noun 'brother'.  
(e) and whom they had called.....Co-ordinate clause to 'd'. *(The sentence is complex.)*
8. (a) The persons are always humiliated by those.....Principal clause.  
(b) who do wrong to others.....Adjective clause, qualifying the noun 'persons'.  
(c) whom they wrong.....Qualifying the pronoun 'those'. *(The sentence is complex.)*
12. (a) Those don't know.....Principal clause.  
(b) who do not respect others.....Adjective clause, qualifying the pronoun 'those'.  
(c) that others will not respect them—Noun clause, object to the transitive verb 'know'.  
(d) unless they respect others.....Adverb clause of condition, modifying the verb 'respect'.  
*(The sentence is complex.)*
17. (a) I don't know.....Principal clause.  
(b) how this came to be so.....Noun clause, object to the transitive verb 'know'.  
(c) although I must confess.....Adverb clause of contrast, modifying the verb 'don't know'.  
(d) that I could have found out.....Noun clause, object to the transitive verb 'confess'.  
(e) If I had inquired.....Adverb clause of condition, modifying the verb 'found'.  
(f) why he acted so selfishly.....Noun clause, object to the transitive verb 'found'.  
*(The sentence is complex.)*

19. (a) She told me.....Principal clause.  
 (b) that she would be grateful to me.....Noun clause, object to the verb 'told'.  
 (c) If I gave her a book.....Adverb clause, modifying 'would be grateful'.
23. (a) The statement was not believed by her friends.....Principal clause.  
 (b) that she was absent.....Noun clause, Apposition to the noun 'the statement'.  
 (c) when the police came.....Adverb clause of time, modifying the verb 'was'.  
 (d) who suspected her complicity in the crime—Adjective clause, qualifying the noun 'the friends'.  
*(The sentence is complex.)*
28. (a) Mr Patel asked his party men to find out.....Principal clause.  
 (b) if they could launch agitation.....Noun clause, object of the infinitive to 'find out'.  
 (c) when the British Government was torn with internal problems ..... Adverb clause of time, modifying the verb 'launch'.  
*(The sentence is complex.)*
30. (a) You should be content.....Principal clause.  
 (b) and pleased with.....Co-ordinate to principal clause.  
 (c) what you have these days.....Noun clause, object to the preposition 'with'.  
 (d) since to complain of high prices does not speak well of you..... Adverb clause of reason, modifying the verb 'should be'.  
*(The sentence is compound.)*
31. (a) He could not utter a single word to his son.....Principal clause.  
 (b) who was in a dejected mood.....Adjective clause, qualifying the noun 'son'.  
 (c) when he arrived.....Adverb clause of time, modifying the verb 'utter'.  
*(The sentence is complex.)*
35. (a) I know.....Principal clause.  
 (b) that my son would have made a mark in life.....Noun clause, object to the transitive verb 'know'.  
 (c) if he had been sent to J.N.U.....Adverb clause of condition, modifying the verb 'made' in (b).  
 (d) since the environment for mental make up is no less important.....Adverb clause of reason, modifying the verb 'sent' in (c).  
 (e) than the inborn qualities (are).....Adverb clause of comparison.  
*(The sentence is complex.)*



## Work Book Exercise A

Complete the followings by using suitable tags

1. He isn't going to do it, ..... ?
2. You enjoyed that, ..... .
3. He doesn't write very well, ..... .
4. We love it, ..... .
5. It doesn't work, ..... .
6. They don't live in Liverpool, ..... .
7. She works in sales, ..... .
8. It looks perfect there, ..... .
9. We went there last year, ..... .
10. I don't know him, ..... .

### Rules Regarding the Formation of Tags

**Rule 1** Subject of a tag can never be a noun. It is always a pronoun. *For example*

- (i)  $\frac{\text{Ram}}{\downarrow \text{Noun}}$  is doing maths, isn't  $\frac{\text{he}}{\downarrow \text{Pronoun}}$  ?
- (ii)  $\frac{\text{Parul}}{\downarrow \text{Noun}}$  has not eaten, has  $\frac{\text{she}}{\downarrow \text{Pronoun}}$  ?

**Rule 2** Question tag never starts with a capital letter.

**Rule 3** The auxiliary that is to be used in the formation of tag must be in the contracted form. This holds good only in the case of a negative tag. *Here is the list of those contracted auxiliaries*

do + not = don't	does + not = doesn't
did + not = didn't	is + not = isn't
are + not = aren't	has + not = hasn't
have + not = haven't	had + not = hadn't
was + not = wasn't	were + not = weren't
shall + not = shan't	will + not = won't
can + not = can't	may + not = mayn't
could + not = couldn't	might + not = mightn't
should + not = shouldn't	would + not = wouldn't
ought + not = oughtn't	must + not = mustn't
used + not = usedn't	need + not = needn't
dare + not = daren't	

**Exception** Am I not is not written as 'amn't I' but it is written as 'aren't I' students must be aware of this fact always.

**Rule 4** In case auxiliary is not there in the statement then [do/does/did] is used in the tag. *For examples*

(i) She plays chess beautifully.

In the above sentence, there is no auxiliary used. When we are to make its tag then we shall use one out of the three auxiliaries (do/does/did). *For example*

She plays chess beautifully, doesn't she?

↓  
↓  
Auxiliary

(ii) We play fair.

We play fair, don't they?

↓  
↓  
Auxiliary

(iii) They went to park.

They went to park, didn't they?

↓  
↓  
Auxiliary

**NOTE** (Verb)<sub>1</sub> → Do + (Verb)<sub>1</sub>  
(Verb)<sub>1</sub> + s / es → Does + (Verb)<sub>1</sub>  
(Verb)<sub>2</sub> → Did + (Verb)<sub>1</sub>

Apply the above method in writing tags for those sentences that don't have an auxiliary with them.

**Rule 5** Statements that use the followings are considered negative and hence, tag to these statements will be positive

**Barely, Hardly, No, Neither, None, Nobody, No one, Nothing, Seldom, Scarcely, Rarely.**

*For example*

(i) He had nothing , had he?  
                  ↓                                  ↓  
                  Negative word                  Positive tag

(ii) She seldom weeps , does she?  
                                  ↓                                  ↓  
                                  Negative word                  Positive tag

**Rule 6** If the statement has an introductory subject with it then the subject of the tag becomes as follows

Subject of Statement	Subject of Tag
This	It
That	It
These	They

Those	They
One	One
There	There
It	It

For example

(i) This is my pen.

<u>This</u>	is my pen, isn't	<u>it</u>	?
↓		↓	
Subject of statement		Subject of tag	

(ii) There is a cow.

<u>There</u>	is a cow, isn't	<u>there</u>	?
↓		↓	
Subject of statement		Subject of tag	

**Rule 7** If the statement has demonstrative or distributive adjectives with it then the subject of the tag will be chosen as per the number, gender and person of the noun being qualified by the adjective.

For example

(i) This girl was dancing.

<u>This</u>	<u>girl</u>	was dancing, wasn't	<u>she</u>	?
↓	↓		↓	
Demonstrative adjective	Noun		Subject of tag	

(3rd person, Feminine, Singular)

(ii) One man can do this.

<u>One</u>	<u>man</u>	can do this, can't
↓	↓	
Distributive adjective	Noun (III person, Masculine, Singular)	

<u>he</u>	?
↓	
Subject of tag	

**Rule 8** If the subject of the statement is an indefinite pronoun then the subject of the tag will be 'they'.

For example

(i) Somebody invited me.

<u>Somebody</u>	invited me, didn't	<u>they</u>	?
↓		↓	
Indefinite pronoun		Subject of tag	

(ii) None can ruin me.

<u>None</u>	can ruin me, can	<u>they</u>	?
↓		↓	
Indefinite pronoun		Subject of tag	

**Rule 9** If the subject of the statement is nothing, everything, something or anything then the subject of the tag will be 'it'.

*For example*

- (i) Everything is fine.  
Everything is fine, isn't it?
- (ii) Nothing has improved.  
Nothing has improved, has it?
- (iii) Something will be good.  
Something will be good, won't it?

**Rule 10** Some expressions that use objective case of the pronoun and are used as the subjects in the statement then the subject of the tag will be the subjective case of the pronoun.

*For example*

- (i) All of you are convict.  
All of you are convict, aren't you?
- (ii) None of us have gone there.  
None of us have gone there, have we?
- (iii) Neither of them is good.  
Neither of them is good, are they?

**Rule 11** Statements that have begun with 'let' take their subject of tag in the different ways.

Statement with 'Let'	Subject of Tag
Let us	We
Let him	You
Let them	You
Let her	You

*For example*

- (i) Let us go.  
Let us go, shall we?
- (ii) Let him dance.  
Let him dance, will you?

**Rule 12** If the imperative sentence is written with positive sense then the tag will be either 'will you' or 'won't you'.

Also, if the imperative sentence is written with negative sense then the tag will be 'will you'.

*For example*

- (i) Open the gate.  
Open the gate, will you?

- (ii) Open the door.  
Open the door, won't you?
- (iii) Mind your business.  
Mind your business, won't you?
- (iv) Don't break the glass.  
Don't break the glass, will you?

**Rule 13** If the imperative sentence expresses annoyance or irritation then the tag used is 'can't you'.

*For example*

- (i) Shut up.  
Shut up, can't you?
- (ii) Keep your mouth shut.  
Keep your mouth shut, can't you?

## Work Book Exercise B

*Complete the followings by using suitable tags*

1. There isn't an answer, ..... ?
2. He's really good-looking, ..... ?
3. It isn't any good, ..... ?
4. There's a pub on the corner, ..... ?
5. They weren't enjoying it, ..... ?
6. She isn't here, yet ..... ?
7. It's the last one, ..... ?
8. She's leaving tomorrow, ..... ?
9. It isn't what we wanted, ..... ?
10. He isn't very happy with it, ..... ?

## Revision Exercises

### 1. Match the tags with the statements

- |                                      |                   |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. You haven't got one,              | (a) should she?   |
| 2. It can't be them,                 | (b) mustn't he?   |
| 3. We should do it now,              | (c) can't he?     |
| 4. He has told you,                  | (d) can it?       |
| 5. They can't have finished yet,     | (e) shouldn't we? |
| 6. She shouldn't have said anything, | (f) have you?     |
| 7. He must have seen it,             | (g) can they?     |
| 8. Let's do that,                    | (h) mustn't it?   |
| 9. It must be him,                   | (i) shall we?     |
| 10. He can do it,                    | (j) hasn't he?    |

### 2. Match the tags with the statements

- |                                  |                   |
|----------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. She isn't very old,           | (a) is she?       |
| 2. She's very graceful,          | (b) isn't he?     |
| 3. He isn't very happy about it, | (c) is there?     |
| 4. He's really tall,             | (d) is it?        |
| 5. It's easy,                    | (e) isn't there?  |
| 6. It isn't very difficult,      | (f) wasn't he?    |
| 7. There's a lot to do,          | (g) weren't they? |
| 8. There isn't enough time,      | (h) isn't it?     |
| 9. He was angry,                 | (i) is he?        |
| 10. They were late,              | (j) isn't she?    |

### 3. Choose the correct options from the questions given below

- |  |                |
|--|----------------|
| 1. Do as I say, ..... ?                    |                |
| (a) didn't you                             | (b) won't you  |
| (c) needn't you                            | (d) shan't you |
| 2. Now you can make question tags, ..... ? |                |
| (a) can you                                | (b) won't you  |
| (c) can't you                              | (d) will you   |
| 3. I am working hard on this book, ..... ? |                |
| (a) don't I                                | (b) won't I    |
| (c) aren't I                               | (d) can't I    |
| 4. He was asleep , ..... ?                 |                |
| (a) was he                                 | (b) wasn't he  |
| (c) didn't he                              | (d) did he     |
| 5. Let us start now, ..... ?               |                |
| (a) shall we                               | (b) should we  |
| (c) could we                               | (d) would we   |

**4. Complete the following sentences by using the correct questions tags**

1. He doesn't want to go to college today, ..... ?
2. Let's pray to God, ..... ?
3. You had met me before, ..... ?
4. We couldn't enjoy the picnic, ..... ?
5. He is a rude man, ..... ?
6. Everybody was watching the TV, ..... ?
7. Mrs Saxena is a good lady, ..... ?
8. Something must be done for us, ..... ?
9. Someone might come, ..... ?
10. He needs money, ..... ?
11. I needn't write, ..... ?
12. Nisha need not go there, ..... ?

**5. Complete the following sentences by using the correct questions tags**

1. Delhi is not very far from Meerut, .....?
2. Shalini is very young, .....?
3. You are always punctual, .....?
4. Students are learning swimming, .....?
5. They don't like to bathe in winter, .....?
6. You should not drink wine, .....?
7. Miss Minu does not play chess, .....?
8. I am elder to you, .....?
9. You always have your lunch at 12 O'clock, .....?
10. I can do it for you, .....?

**6. Match the tags with the statements**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. You enjoyed that, didn't you?          | (a) Actually she doesn't. She's in accounts now. |
| 2. He doesn't write very well, does he?   | (b) No, we didn't. It was the year before.       |
| 3. We love it, don't we?                  | (c) Yes, I did. Very much.                       |
| 4. It doesn't work, does it?              | (d) No, he doesn't. I don't like his books.      |
| 5. They don't live in Liverpool, do they? | (e) No, you don't. He's new to the job.          |
| 6. She works in sales, doesn't she?       | (f) Yes, they do. They've been there for years.  |
| 7. It looks perfect there, doesn't it?    | (g) No, it doesn't. It never did.                |
| 8. We went there last year, didn't we?    | (h) Yes, it does. It looks great.                |
| 9. I don't know him, do I?                | (i) Yes, we do. It's great.                      |
| 10. He didn't say that, did he?           | (j) I'm afraid he did.                           |

**7. Complete the following sentences by using the correct question tags**

1. Everybody was watching the cricket match on TV, ..... ?
2. He is a very wise man, ..... ?
3. Mrs Meena is a good teacher, ..... ?
4. We saw a rainbow in the sky yesterday, ..... ?
5. Sita is a beautiful girl, ..... ?
6. You should not smoke, ..... ?
7. Miss Neha does not play tennis, ..... ?
8. I am older than you, ..... ?
9. You always have your lunch at 1 o'clock, ..... ?
10. I can do it for you, ..... ?
11. She doesn't want to go to college today, ..... ?
12. Let's pray to almighty, ..... ?
13. He had met you before, ..... ?
14. We couldn't enjoy the picnic, ..... ?

**8. Complete the sentences with appropriate tags**

1. There aren't any problems, ..... ?
2. She had another friend, ..... ?
3. I have got a new assignment , ..... ?
4. They have to go now, ..... ?
5. He can earn much money, ..... ?
6. The police caught the thief, ..... ?
7. I have a correct answer, ..... ?

# 7

## Non-Finite Verbs (Infinitives, Gerunds, Participles)

---

Study the following sentences carefully

- (i) I have given him money.
- (ii) I like to give him money today.

In the sentence (i) the verb 'have given' has 'I' as its subject. The verb 'have given' is limited by the number and person of its subject. It is, therefore, called a **finite verb**.

In sentence (ii) 'like' is a finite verb. But 'to give' has no separate subject and is not limited by number and person. It is, therefore, called a **Non-finite verb**.

### Forms of Non-Finite Verbs

The Non-finite verbs are divided into three forms

1. Infinitives
2. Gerunds
3. Participles

#### 1. Infinitive

Infinitive is a kind of noun with certain features of a verb. 'To' is used with infinitives. However, it is omitted sometimes.

#### Forms of Infinitive

As used in the following sentences

- (i) She comes here **to study**. (Purpose)
- (ii) Everyone desires **to be admired**. (Passive voice)
- (iii) He admitted **to have abused** him. (Perfect infinitive)
- (iv) He admitted **to have been arrested** last year. (Perfect passive)
- (v) He seems **to be running** out of money. (Continuous infinitive)
- (vi) He admitted **to have been spying** for the enemy for sometime. (Perfect continuous, time expression)
- (vii) Everyone desires **to be popular**. ('Be' as an ordinary verb)
- (viii) **To err** is human. (Subject)

## Rules of Infinitive

### Rule I

#### (A) (Verb/Adjective/Noun) + Infinitive

- (i) She comes here to study. (Active voice)  
 (ii) Nobody likes to be cheated. (Passive voice)  
 (iii) Everyone desires to be rich. (No verb)  
 (iv) To err is human. (It is human to err). (Subject)

#### (B) Some of the verbs and adjectives are followed by infinitives.

Agree, happy, desire, need, dare, hope, expect, decede, want, wish, refuse, eager, fail, glad, happy, herd, easy.

#### (C) How + Infinitive

When Infinitive is used to express manner, the full forms of infinitive is 'how to'.

The verbs implying manner/method are

**'know, learn, explain, teach, discover, wonder, show, ask, remember, forget etc.** For example

- (v) He knows how to write English.  
 (vi) We taught him how to cook food.

### Rule II Difference between 'To' and 'For'

Study the following sentences carefully

I went to see him. [Correct (purpose)]

I went for seeing him. (Incorrect)

'for seeing' cannot be used for purpose implying future because

#### (A) For + Gerund is used for actions showing cause. (Action in the past).

For example

- (i) He will punish you for breaking the pen.  
 (ii) He punished you for coming late.

#### (B) For + Gerund is used for showing purpose for which the subject is used.

For example

- (i) This book is to read. (Say for 'reading')  
 (ii) This machine is to measure height. (Say for measuring)  
 (iii) The house is to let. (Correct)

#### (C) For + Noun is used for purpose in place of **to + verb** when verb is made to serve as noun. For example

- (i) We come here for a drive.  
 (ii) Sameer requested for a rest.  
 (iii) Esha went for a walk.

#### (D) To + Gerund is also used with certain verbs and phrases. For example

- (i) She is used to swimming at dawn.  
 (ii) Esha came here with a view to studying. [Refer to Rule III (Gerunds)]

### Rule III Direct Infinitive

In certain cases the infinitive without 'to' is used. We may call it infinitive without 'to' or Direct Infinitive.

Direct Infinitive is used after

- (A) 'Need' and 'Dare' in the negative and interrogative sentences only when they are used as auxiliaries. *For example*

(i) You need to work hard.	(Affirmative)
(ii) You do not need to work hard.	(Negative as ordinary)
(iii) He need not work hard.	(Negative as auxiliary)
(iv) Do you need to work there now?	(Interrogative as ordinary)
(v) Need he work there now?	(Interrogative as auxiliary)
(vi) He dares to go outside in dark.	(Affirmative)
(vii) He does not dare to go in dark.	(Negative as ordinary)
(viii) He dare not go in dark.	(Negative as auxiliary)
(ix) Does he dare to go in dark?	(Interrogative as ordinary)
(x) Dare he go in dark?	(Interrogative as auxiliary)

**NOTE** 's' is not used with **dare/need** as auxiliary verbs.

- (B) 'Direct Infinitive' is used after the verbs—'let, bid, make, know, help, feel, hear, watch, see'.

'Direct Infinitive' is used only when these verbs are **used in active voice** (not in passive voice except the verb 'let'.) The verb 'let' is followed by direct infinitive both in active & passive voice. *For example*

(i) I made the student write an essay.	
(ii) The student was made to write an essay.	(Passive voice)
(iii) The teacher let him go out.	
(iv) He was let go out by the teacher.	(Passive voice)

- (C) The following phrases are also used with Direct Infinitive 'had better, had rather, would rather, would better, as soon, sooner than (prefer)'. *For example*

(i) I would/had better leave your house at once.	
(ii) She would/had rather stay than leave now.	
(iii) They had sooner stay than leave.	
(iv) I would as soon stay at home as go.	(with equal willingness)

- (D) Direct Infinitive is used with, 'but, than, and, except, as, or'. *For example*

(i) He did nothing but cry.	(correct)
(ii) She did no more than sleep the whole day.	(correct)
(iii) She had nothing to eat except to drink water.	(remove 'to')
(iv) Do you wish to watch TV or to go to bed early.	(remove to)

- (E) Direct infinitive is used with phrases, 'Why not & Why'. *For example*

(i) Why not rest now?	(Suggestion)
(ii) Why not stay here?	(Suggestion)
(iii) Why stay here?	(Question)

(F) 'Have + object' (used in the sense of 'wish') is followed by direct infinitive.

*For example*

- (i) I will have him **believe** it. *(I wish him to believe it)*  
 (ii) She will have me **recite** this poem.

(G) 'Won't' + have + object + gerund (Used in the sense of won't allow).

*For example*

- (i) I won't have you talking like that.  
 (ii) I won't have you staying at Meerut.

### Rule IV Perfective Infinitive

(A) Perfect infinitive should be used if the action expressed by the infinitive precedes the action of the finite verb. *For example*

- (i) Yesterday I intended to have gone to Delhi. *(Incorrect, say 'to go')*  
 (ii) He admitted to have uttered these words against me. *(Correct)*

In the above sentence (ii) the action 'uttered' is prior to the action of the finite verb. Hence, the use of perfect infinitive is justified.

(B) The verbs where perfect infinitive may be, if needed, used.

'Deny, confess, admit, recollect, remember, recall, claim, regret, seem, appear, report, believe, understand, say, allege, suspect' learn, require, suppose etc. *For example*

- (i) She denied to have seen him yesterday.  
 (ii) He appears to have been rich earlier.  
 (iii) I still remember to have met you in Shimla last year.  
 (iv) He appears to be poor these days.

**NOTE** (i) She denied seeing him yesterday. *(Correct - as 'seeing' is an earlier action)*  
 (ii) She denied having seen him yesterday. *(Correct)*

### Rule V

Use of infinitive after **Adjective and Noun** in active voice should be taken care of

(A) **Adjective 'enough'** is used after adjective or '**very**' before adjective when infinitive expresses affirmative meaning.

'too' is used before adjective when infinitive expresses negative meaning.

- (i) She is too ill **to go out**. *(cannot go out)*  
 (ii) She is good enough **to help me**. *(can help me)*

(B) **Noun Preposition** should be used, if required, after the infinitive when the infinitive qualifies the noun. *For example*

- (i) These days no airlines is safe **to travel**. *(Use 'by' after 'travel')*  
 (ii) I gave him a pen **to write**. *(Use 'with' after 'write')*  
 (iii) He gave me a paper **to read**. *(No preposition)*  
 (iv) I have no house **to live**. *(Use 'in' after 'live')*  
 (v) I have no book **to read**. *(No preposition)*

### Rule VI Split Infinitive

'To' should not be separated from its verb by inserting any adverb between the two.

The **split infinitive** is grammatically wrong. *For example*

- |   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| (i) You are requested to kindly stay for sometime.                  | (Use 'kindly' to stay)     |
| (ii) You are required at least to obey your parents.                | (Correct)                  |
| (iii) I advised him to carefully carry the bag.                     | (Say to 'carry carefully') |
| (iv) The students were required to seriously study for examination. | (Say 'to study seriously') |

### Rule VII Continuous Infinitive

Continuous Infinitive can be used with the following verbs and Modal auxiliaries.

(a) appear, seem, believe, consider, think, report, happen, arrange, hope, pretend, say etc.

(b) may be, might be, should be, could be, must be etc. *For examples*

Malini appears to be running temperature.	<i>It appears that.....</i>
I happened to be sitting with my daughters.	<i>When I was sitting.....</i>
She is reported to be working at Chandigarh.	<i>It is reported.....</i>
She is said to be always cursing her fate.	<i>It is said that.....</i>
She pretended not to be overhearing our talk	<i>She pretended as if.....</i>
I hope to be living in a large house in a few years.	<i>I hope that I shall.....</i>
She may be coming tomorrow.	<i>Perhaps will come</i>
She may be sleeping now	<i>Perhaps is sleeping</i>
He thought she might be waiting for her.	<i>Perhaps was waiting</i>
She could be going by car.	<i>(deduction)</i>
She must be waiting for her husband.	<i>(deduction)</i>
You should be sleeping now instead of watching T.V.	<i>(Advice)</i>

## 2. Gerund (Verbal Noun)

Gerund is a verb form which functions as a noun. It is formed by adding 'ing' with a verb. It is used in place of Infinitive in certain cases. *For example*

- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| (i) I do not believe <b>in talking</b> rubbish. | <i>(Preposition + gerund)</i> |
| (ii) I do not like <b>riding</b> .              | <i>(Direct gerund)</i>        |
| (iii) She is used <b>to swimming</b> .          | <i>(To + gerund)</i>          |
| (iv) <b>Smoking</b> is not good for health.     | <i>(Subject)</i>              |

#### NOTE

1. Infinitives and gerunds are easily replaceable. However, certain rules have to be followed for replacing **infinitives & gerunds** by each other. *For example*

- |                                  |                                     |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| (i) I like <b>to swim</b> today. | <i>(At a particular time)</i>       |
| (ii) I like <b>swimming</b> .    | <i>(General/habitual statement)</i> |

## 2. The difference between **participle and gerund**

Gerund is a kind of noun like infinitive. Participle is a verb/adjective (an action in progress). *For example*

- (i) I saw him **smoking** in the cinema hall. (Participle)  
 (ii) **Smoking** is injurious to health. (Gerund)  
 (iii) I am tired **of working** in this place. (Gerund)  
 (iv) We found him **working** even after the sun had set. (Participle)  
 (v) He was punished **for playing** carelessly. (Gerund, showing 'reason')

**NOTE** The verbs, 'need, require, want', are followed by gerund in place of passive voice infinitive.

## Rules of Gerund

### Rule I Preposition + Gerund

Gerund is used after certain verbs/phrases that are followed by appropriate prepositions instead of 'to'.

In case of **for + gerund** refer to **rule II on Infinitives**.

Let us study a few of them

desirous of	intent on	justified in
disqualify from	bent on	hesitate in
refrain from	keen on	a hope of
prevent from	aim at	hope to (infinitive)
debar from	confident of	fortunate in
desist from	confidence in	harm in
restrain from	insist on	assist in
prohibit from	persist in	a chance of
dissuade from	succeed in	fond of
abstain from	successful in	take/feel pleasure in
point in	sense in	give pleasure to (infinitive)
deter from	interested in	

*For example*

- (i) I prohibited him to go there. (Use 'from going' in place of 'to go')  
 (ii) She is bent to harm her friend. (Use 'on harming' in place of 'to harm')  
 (iii) She is confident to get success. (Use 'of getting' in place of 'to get')  
 (iv) She insisted to pay money to her mother. (Use 'on paying' in place of 'to pay')

### Rule II Direct Gerund

(A) The following phrases and certain verbs are followed by **direct gerund**.

'Avoid, mind, detest, can't help, can't bear, resist, enjoy, resent, stop, start, postpone, defer, worth, prefer, consider, practise, finish, risk, pardon, excuse, forgive, it is no use/good, propose, miss, imagine, regret, means, anticipate, love, like, hate, dislike.'

(B) **Phrasal verbs** are also followed by direct gerunds such as

'give up, put off, set about' etc. *For example*

- (i) We stopped to write. (Say 'writing' for 'to write')
- (ii) He has given up to play hockey. (Say 'playing')
- (iii) She enjoyed to ride on the hills. (Use 'riding' in place of 'to ride')
- (iv) You should avoid to spend extra money. (Use 'spending' in place of 'to spend')
- (v) She cannot help to tell a lie. (Use 'telling' in place of 'to tell')
- (vi) Suhani does not mind helping me. (Correct)
- (vii) It is no use/good waiting for her. (Correct)
- (viii) There is no use/good of spending on luxuries. (Correct)

**NOTE** Sentence (v) can also be written as 'She cannot help but tell a lie.' (but tell = telling)

### Rule III To + Gerund

Note the use of gerund correctly with

'be used to, accustomed to, averse to, with a view to, addicted to, devoted to, in addition to, look forward to, object to, owing to, given to, taken to, disposed to, prone to. *For example*

- (i) He is addicted to smoke heavily. (Use 'smoking' for 'smoke')
- (ii) We go there with a view to study Science. (Use 'studying' for 'study')
- (iii) He is used to getting up early in the morning. (Correct)
- (iv) She used to dance before her marriage. (Correct habit in the past)

### Rule IV

The noun or pronoun before a Gerund (verbal noun) should be in the possessive case.

*For example*

- (i) I don't like him wasting time. (Use 'his' for 'him')
- (ii) Geeta insisted on Rohan going with her. (Say 'Rohan's' for 'Rohan')
- (iii) I saw him wasting time. ('him' is correct 'wasting' is participle.)

## 3. Participle

Participle is the form of a verb that ends with **ing, ed, en, t**.

(A) It is used both as a verb (progressive) and an adjective.

Present	Past	Past Participle	Present Participle	Perfect Participle
Burn	burnt	burnt	burning	having burnt

*For example*

- (i) We found a candle **burning**. (Verb, Present Participle)
- (ii) A **burning** candle was extinguished. (Adjective, Present Participle)
- (iii) A **burnt** paper was discovered. (Adjective, Past Participle)
- (iv) She returned **disappointed**. (Past Participle)
- (v) **Having taken food** she left for office. (Perfect Participle)

(B) Past participle is used as passive voice of present participle. It is also used to make perfect participles.

A burning candle	—	That is burning.	<i>(Adjective)</i>
A burnt paper	—	That is burnt.	<i>(Adjective)</i>
Having burnt paper	—	After burning paper.	<i>(Verb)</i>
Having been burnt	—	Passive voice.	<i>(Verb)</i>

## Rules of Participles

### Rule I

**Participle Clause/Absolute Phrase** (Nominative Absolute)

A participle is used as participle clause. It is a kind of clause containing participle in place of a finite verb.

**Absolute Phrase/Nominative Absolute** It is a kind of participle with a Noun/Pronoun going before it.

- (i) **Walking in the garden** I came across an old friend.  
*(Present Participle, Active voice)*
- (ii) **Surprised at the news** I rushed to the airport. *(Past Participle, Passive voice)*
- (iii) **Having taken food** I left for office. *(Perfect Participle, Active voice)*
- (iv) **Having been arrested the thief** was taken to prison.  
*(Perfect Participle, Passive voice)*
- (v) **The Sun having risen**, we left the town. *(Absolute Phrase)*

### Rule II

Participles can be changed into following clauses

- (a) Adverb Clause of Time
- (b) Adverb Clause of Condition
- (c) Adverb Clause of Reason
- (d) Adverb Clause of Contrast
- (e) Adjective Clause
- (f) Co-ordinate Clause

(a) **Adverb Clause of Time** (while, having, on)

- (i) As I was wandering in the street, I met my old friend.  
(While) wandering in the street I met my old friend.

- (ii) After I had passed High school, I got a job.  
Having passed High school I got a job.

- (iii) When she saw me, she called me.  
(On) seeing me she called me.

(b) **Adverb Clause of Condition** (by, without, but for)

- (i) If you go out, you will catch cold.  
By going out you will catch cold.

- (ii) If you don't work hard, you will not pass.  
Without working hard you will not pass.

- (iii) If you had not worked hard, you would have failed.  
But for working hard you would have failed.

- (c) **Adverb Clause of Reason** (owing to, because of, on account of)
- (i) As she ran very fast, she was able to overtake me.  
On account of running very fast she was able to overtake me.
- (ii) Since she was late, she was punished.  
Being late she was punished.
- (d) **Adverb Clause of Contrast** (In spite of, despite, notwithstanding, for all)
- (i) Although she came late, she was not punished.  
In spite of coming late she was not punished.
- (ii) Though she is rich, she is not happy.  
Despite being rich she is not happy.
- (iii) Though she was punished, she did not feel sorry.  
In spite of being punished she did not feel sorry.
- (e) **Adjective Clause**
- (i) I saw a girl who was singing a song.  
I saw a girl singing a song.
- (ii) The students who are studying English here will be successful.  
The students studying English here will be successful.
- (iii) The book which was presented to me by my mother is very interesting.  
The book presented to me by my mother is very interesting.
- (iv) A burning candle fell off the table.  
A candle that was burning fell off the table.
- (f) **Co-ordinate Clause**  
A participle can replace a co-ordinate clause
- (i) He returned and he was smiling.  
He returned smiling.
- (ii) She went out and she was disappointed.  
She went out disappointed.

### Rule III

Present participle should be used only to express an action which coincides with the action of the finite verb.

He left for Mumbai on Monday, reaching there on Tuesday. (Incorrect, 'reaching' is not a simultaneous action)

He left for Mumbai on Monday and reached there on Tuesday. (Correct)

### Rule IV Misrelated/Unrelated Participles

When the participle clause/phrase is not followed by a subject of its own, the participle is called **misrelated, dangling or unattached**.

- (i) Wandering in the street a dog bit him. (Wrong)
- (ii) Wandering in the street he was bitten by a dog. (Correct)

**NOTE** 'Wandering' should have a proper subject '**he**' and not '**a dog**'.

## How to Correct a Misrelated Participle?

Misrelated participle can be corrected in three ways.

1. Expand the participle into a clause. *(Already explained in Rule II)*
2. Bring the proper subject immediately after the participle. *(by changing voice)*
3. Place the proper subject before the participle. *(only before 'being' and 'having')*

Let us study the problem by working out some questions.

1. Walking along the road a scooter knocked him down. *(Incorrect)*
  - (i) While he was walking along the road a scooter knocked him down. *(Correct)*
  - (ii) Walking along the road he was knocked down by a scooter. *(Correct)*
2. Having taken food my father sent me to market. *(Incorrect)*
  - (i) When I had taken food, my father sent me to market. *(Correct)*
  - (ii) I having taken food my father sent me to market. *(Absolute Phrase)*
  - (iii) Having taken food I was sent to market by my father. *(Correct)*
3. Being cloudy we enjoyed picnic. *(Incorrect)*
  - (i) As it was cloudy, we enjoyed picnic. *(Correct)*
  - (ii) It being cloudy we enjoyed picnic. *(Absolute Phrase)*
4. Being honest the teacher rewarded him. *(Incorrect)*
  - (i) As he was honest, the teacher rewarded him. *(Correct)*
  - (ii) He being honest, the teacher rewarded him. *(Correct)*
  - (iii) Being honest he was rewarded by the teacher. *(Correct)*
5. Possessing huge wealth people do not like him. *(Incorrect)*
  - (i) Although he possesses huge wealth, people do not like him. *(Correct)*
  - (ii) Possessing huge wealth he is not liked by people. *(Correct)*

## Rule V

However, participles such as

'regarding, concerning, considering, speaking', do not refer to any particular subject. They can do without agreement with any noun or pronoun.

- (i) Considering his problems he was advised to leave Jalgaon. *(Correct)*
- (ii) Roughly speaking two hundred persons died in the earthquake. *(Correct)*

In these sentences the unexpressed subject is indefinite. Therefore, participle need not be in agreement with the Noun or Pronoun it refers to.

## Some Important Uses of Non-Finites

Study the following sentences carefully & note the difference in their sense.

1. I regret being late/to be late. *(Present Infinitive)*
2. I regret to have been late/having been late. *(Perfect Infinitive)*
3. She prided herself on being Indian. *('Pride' is verb here)*
4. Take Pride in serving your motherland. *('Pride' is noun here)*

- |   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 5. I feel pleasure in inviting you to dinner tonight. | <i>(No difference in meaning)</i> |
| 6. It gives me pleasure to send you greetings.        | <i>(No difference in meaning)</i> |
| 7. Leaving home is difficult.                         | <i>(Experience)</i>               |
| 8. To leave home is difficult.                        | <i>(Opinion)</i>                  |
| 9. I would like to attend marriage tomorrow.          | <i>(Enjoy)</i>                    |
| 10. I would like you to study.                        | <i>(Think it right)</i>           |
| 11. I like to get myself examined.                    | <i>(Think it wise)</i>            |
| 12. I like attending marriages.                       | <i>(Habit)</i>                    |
| 13. My mother loves telling us stories.               | <i>(Habit)</i>                    |
| 14. I would love to do it for your sake.              | <i>(Enjoy)</i>                    |
| 15. I propose to go there.                            | <i>(Intend)</i>                   |

## Work Book Exercise A

(Based on Infinitive & Gerund)

**Directions** Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences.

1. The teacher made the students to solve their problems.
2. His aim is no more than to use unfair means to attain success in life.
3. He goes every Sunday to Delhi with a view to buy raw material.
4. The teacher asked them to stop write as soon as the bell rang.
5. She can't help to visit her sister every Sunday.
6. He is rich today but he appears to be poor in the past.
7. The scientists claim to discover cure for AIDS and the medicine will be put on sale very soon.
8. She started to cry when she was left alone.
9. She did not dare enter the room without his permission.
10. I always resent my brother wandering about and doing nothing.
11. You should always aim to achieve higher goal to succeed in life.
12. She was confident to qualify the examination.
13. The civilians were prohibited to attend the shooting competition in the Military area.
14. You are requested to carefully carry the bag because it contains fragile material.
15. Last night she intended to have left.
16. She was let to do whatever she liked.
17. She was forbidden from moving out with her friends.
18. He can't tolerate/bear anybody talking nonsense.
19. He is understood to leave India for good last year.
20. How dare he to abuse my friend?

## Work Book Exercise B

**Directions** Use the most suitable form of Infinitive/Gerund in the following sentences.

1. Today everyone wishes ..... money quickly.  
(a) earn (b) to earn (c) for earning
2. She is very keen ..... modelling.  
(a) to take up (b) on taking up (c) taking up
3. The director made the officers ..... longer than usual.  
(a) to wait (b) wait (c) waiting
4. My brother is interested ..... in Army.  
(a) to serve (b) in serving (c) to serving
5. The boys in the hostel are averse ..... part in the strike.  
(a) to take (b) to taking (c) for taking
6. He never minds ..... the deserving persons.  
(a) to help (b) helping (c) in helping
7. She resented ..... late at night.  
(a) my returning (b) me returning (c) against my returning
8. I feel pleasure ..... you of my success.  
(a) to inform (b) to informing (c) in informing
9. I don't remember ..... in Kashmir last year.  
(a) to meet you (b) to have met you (c) of meeting you
10. Throughout the day she did nothing but ..... illness.  
(a) feigning (b) feign (c) to feign
11. She intended ..... in for teaching profession.  
(a) to have gone (b) to go (c) for going
12. For modern man there are a number of diseases .....  
(a) to suffer from (b) for suffering (c) to suffer
13. You had better ..... in her house overnight.  
(a) not stayed (b) not stay (c) not to stay
14. You must know ..... in society.  
(a) to conduct yourself (b) how to conduct yourself (c) to conduct
15. It gives me immense pleasure ..... you of her engagement.  
(a) to inform (b) in informing (c) to informing
16. She comes ..... me daily in the evening.  
(a) for seeing (b) seeing (c) to see
17. His mother always forbids him ..... with Nisha.  
(a) from speaking (b) to speak (c) not to speak
18. The carpet needs ..... before we use it.  
(a) to clean (b) cleaning (c) to be cleaned
19. The police officer denied ..... callous to the undertrial.  
(a) to be (b) being (c) to have been

20. I have ever looked forward ..... the President of the District Rotary Club.  
 (a) to be (b) to being (c) to have been
21. We expected ..... to the celebration.  
 (a) to invite (b) to have been invited (c) to be invited
22. She has given up ..... on her friend's advice.  
 (a) smoke (b) smoking (c) to have smoked
23. Remember, this is not a safe road .....  
 (a) to travel (b) to travel by (c) travelling
24. Classical music is worth .....  
 (a) to listen (b) to listen to (c) listening to
25. The officer always bade me ..... fast.  
 (a) work (b) to work (c) to working
26. He is reported ..... Mumbai for good last year.  
 (a) to leave (b) leaving (c) to have left
27. My mother always detests ..... with shady children.  
 (a) in dealing (b) dealing (c) to deal
28. How dare you ..... to your teachers like this?  
 (a) to talk (b) talk (c) talking
29. They need not ..... for their turn.  
 (a) to wait (b) to have waited (c) wait
30. You don't need ..... here any more in the sun.  
 (a) to stand (b) standing (c) stand
31. He is rich today but he seems ..... in the past.  
 (a) to be poor (b) to have been poor (c) to being poor

## Work Book Exercise C

**Directions** Use these Participle Clauses/Absolute Phrase correctly.

1. Writing a letter a beggar disturbed her.
2. Being fine we decided to go on picnic.
3. Being late the teacher punished her.
4. But for working hard she would have passed.
5. In spite of being late the teacher did not punish her.
6. Climbing up the stairs her sandal broke and she fell.
7. Having passed B.A. examination he offered me a job.
8. In spite of being a miser everybody likes to spend money on her.
9. While taking admission to a school, a birth certificate must be shown.
10. Cooking my dinner in the kitchen a strange sound attracted my attention.



# Verb

## What is a Verb?

A verb is a word that is used to tell something about a person or a thing as follows

- (a) What a person or a thing does *(Active)*  
(i) She teaches in our school.  
(ii) He often visited his village.
- (b) What is done to a person or a thing. *(Passive)*  
(i) He was punished.  
(ii) Shikha was taught a lesson.
- (c) What a person or a thing is *(‘Be’ as a regular/ordinary verb)*  
(i) She is a pretty village girl.  
(ii) My brother is a Chemist.

## There are two classes of verbs

(A) The auxiliary verbs

(B) The ordinary/regular verbs

### (A) The auxiliary verbs are of two types

#### I. Primary auxiliaries

- (i) To be is, are, am, was, were, been, being.  
(ii) To have has, have, had.  
(iii) To do do, does, did.

II. **Modal auxiliaries** will, must, should, may etc.

### (B) The ordinary verbs

to work, to play, to write.

## The Use of ‘To Be’

### (1) As an auxiliary verb.

- (i) She is writing a letter. *(Active)*  
(ii) Arjun was called back. *(Passive)*

### (2) As an ordinary/regular verb.

- (i) She is a doctor.  
(ii) She was present.

*(For further details look up the chapter on Voice.)*

## Kinds of Verbs

### 1. Finite verbs

### 2. Non-finite verbs

1. **Finite Verbs** Finite verb has a subject of its own and is limited by the person and the number of the subject. *For example*

(i) She is **playing** Tennis.

(ii) They were **watching** television.

(a) **Transitive Verbs** Transit means 'to move'. The action of transitive verbs passes over to the object. *For example*

(i) She **writes** a letter.

(ii) She **teaches** me.

(b) **Intransitive Verbs** The action of the intransitive verbs does not pass over to the object. It goes back to the subject. *For example*

(i) She **cried** a lot.

(ii) She **came** on time.

**NOTE** Transitive verbs alone can be used in passive voice.

2. **Non-finite Verbs** Non-finite verbs are not limited by the person and the number of any subject. They are used without mentioning any subject.

Non-finite verbs are of three kinds.

(a) Infinitive

(b) Gerund

(c) Participle

*For example*

(i) She comes here to **study**.

(ii) We saw them **waiting** for the bus.

(iii) She likes **reciting** poems.

## Rules of Verbs

### Rule I

When two or more subjects are joined by 'as well as, like, unlike, besides, in addition to, with, together with, along with, and not, rather than, no less than, except, nothing but, more (men) than one', the verb is used according to the first subject. *For example*

(i) The director as well as the dancers were honoured by the public.

(Use 'was' in place of 'were')

(ii) The mother, and not her children have been arrested for committing theft.

(Use 'has' in place of 'have')

(iii) More men than one were absent yesterday.

(Correct)

(iv) Nothing but truth is immortal.

(Correct)

(v) My mother no less than my father is strict.

(Correct)

### Rule II

When two or more subjects are connected by 'not only-but also, neither-nor, either-or, none-but' the verb is according to the nearest subject. *For example*

(i) Neither the students nor their guide were found present in the common room.

(Use 'was' in place of 'were').

- (ii) None but the leaders of our country is responsible for this state of affairs. (Use 'are' in place of 'is')
- (iii) One or two books are needed. (Correct)
- (iv) I or he is to be rewarded. (Correct)
- (v) Am I or he to be rewarded? (Correct)

### Rule III

- (a) 'Neither, either, none, anyone, each, every' used as pronoun or adjective should be followed by third person singular verbs. *For example*
- (i) Neither of the two boys have done it. (Use 'has' in place of 'have')
- (ii) Each of the students are obedient. (Use 'is' in place of 'are')
- (iii) Either of us has done his work. (Correct)
- (iv) Every boy and every girl has been invited. (Correct)
- (b) When **None** is used with countable nouns both singular and plural verbs are correct. But with uncountable noun singular verb is correct.
- (i) None of the boys has/have done home work. (Correct)
- (ii) None of the work is completed. (Correct)
- (c) When 'each' is used after subject the verb is plural. *For example*
- (i) We each have taken our bags.
- (ii) They each are honest.

### Rule IV

When plural nouns explain specific 'amount, sum, distance, quantity, time, period' as a whole the verb should be singular. *For example*

- (i) Four miles are not a long distance. (Use 'is' in place of 'are')
- (ii) Two hundred rupees were a large amount fifty years ago. (Use 'was' in place of 'were').
- (iii) Two hundred rupees were lost. (Correct)

### Rule V

The expression 'many a/an, more than one' should be followed by a singular noun and singular verb. *For example*

- (i) Many accidents have recently taken place. (Correct)
- (ii) Many an accidents have recently taken place. (The correct usage is 'many an accident has')
- (iii) More than one man was absent. (Correct)
- (iv) More men than one were burnt. (Correct. Refer to Rule I)

### Rule VI

In a **compound sentence** both auxiliary verbs and principal verbs should be mentioned separately if they differ in **number, form** or **voice**. In such cases one verb cannot act for both the clauses. *For example*

- (i) He has not and will not marry in near future. (Place 'married' after 'has not')
- (ii) She is intelligent but her sisters dull. (Place 'are' after 'sisters')

- (iii) He surrendered before the court and sent to jail. (Use 'was' before 'sent')
- (iv) She disappeared last month and found dead near a well last night. (Place 'was' after 'and')
- (v) She is intelligent but her sister dull. (Correct)
- (vi) I did not and will not go there. (Correct)

### Rule VII

The inverted form of the verb is used in the following cases

- (A) When the sentence is introduced by adverb.  
 (B) When the verb is meant to express a wish or prayer.

For example

- (i) So quickly did she finish her work that we were surprised. (Correct)
- (ii) May you succeed in life. (Correct)
- (iii) Hardly/scarcely had I reached the airport when the plane arrived. (Correct)
- (iv) No sooner did she arrive than she started laughing. (Correct)

### Rule VIII

The verb in the following cases is used in singular form.

- (A) When two singular nouns refer to the same person denoted by one article.  
 (B) In certain phrases or idiomatic pair of words suggesting the same meaning, though not synonyms. For example

- (i) The Collector and District Magistrate are on a visit to the Tehsil today. (Use 'is' in place of 'are')
- (ii) What is the aim and object of his costly plan? (Correct)
- (iii) The sum and substance of the passage is given below. (Correct)
- (iv) Bread and butter are sold here. (Correct)
- (v) Bread and butter is difficult to earn. (Correct)
- (vi) Two and two is/are four. (makes four) (Correct)
- (vii) No student and no teacher was present. (Correct)
- (viii) Three fives are fifteen. (Correct)
- (ix) Five times ten is fifty. (Correct)
- (x) Slow and steady wins the race. (Correct)
- (xi) Time and tide wait for none. (Correct)

### Rule IX

- (a) When the sentence begins with 'It' the verb is according to the subject 'It'.  
 (b) In the case of a sentence beginning with 'there' and Interrogative pronoun, the verb is according to the predicate/complement.

However verb should not be used according to complement in other than these cases. For example

- (i) It is the stars that guide our destiny. (Correct)
- (ii) It is I who am helping you. (Correct)
- (iii) There was a boy in the classroom. (Correct)

- (iv) There were a boy and a teacher in the classroom. (Correct)
- (v) There lives a boy who is my best friend. (Correct)
- (vi) What evidence are these acts? (Correct)
- (vii) What have the boys thought about this plan? (Correct)

### Rule X

(A) A singular or a plural verb with the nouns in the following cases is used according to the sense which they convey.

- (a) Number (b) Means, wages
- (c) Variety, plenty, rest, deal of, a lot of (lots of), a heap of, two thirds of, most of, some of, a half of, per cent of.

(a) **Number**

1. A large number of boys were absent on account of bad weather. (Correct)
2. The number of admissions have gradually fallen off. (Use 'has')

(b) **Means, Wages**

3. She could not continue her study because her means were poor. (Correct)
4. A fair means is always preferable to the foul one. (Correct)
5. Means are more important than the ends. (Correct)
6. The wages in India are quite meagre. (Correct)
7. "Wages of sin is death", says the Bible. (Correct)

(c) **Variety, Plenty etc.**

8. A variety of books on the subject are available in the market. (Correct)
9. A variety of food is available in this hotel. (Correct)
10. Plenty of milk is available in this part of the country. (Correct)
11. Plenty of books were donated to the library by him. (Correct)
12. The rest of the lesson has been completed. (Correct)
13. The rest of the students have left for their homes. (Correct)
14. A lot of (lots of) guests were attended upon by the host. (Correct)
15. A lot of work is yet to be done. (Correct)
16. A great deal of labour is required to complete the job. (Correct)
17. A good deal of boys have joined our club. (Correct)
18. Two thirds of the actors are unsuccessful. (Correct)
19. Two thirds of the book is easy to read. (Correct)
20. The seventy per cent of the students are hard working. (Correct)
21. The seventy per cent of our population is poor. (Correct)

**NOTE** (a) But with 'percentage' in the subject the verb is singular. For example  
The percentage of successful candidates is very high.

(b) A singular verb is used with collective nouns when they denote unity/a group.

"A set of books, a pair of spectacles, a bouquet of flowers, a kind of.

**A series** of events, A gang of robbers" etc. For example

- (i) A pair of spectacles is broken. (Correct)
- (ii) A series of matches is likely to be played next month. (Correct)

### Rule XI Unreal Past/Subjunctive Mood

A wish, a regret, unlikely condition and contrary to fact statements are expressed in subjunctive mood.

(A) In subjunctive mood (present situation) we may use 'was/were', though 'were' is more correct form. (Simple past plural)

(a) **To express regret/wish for a present situation.** (at the time of speaking)

(i) I wish I had a house of my own now = I am sorry I don't have a house.

(ii) I wish I were rich now = I am sorry I am not rich.

I wish = would that, I would, If only.

(b) **To express unlikely condition.** For example

(i) If I had a house, I would not hire yours.

(ii) If I were a teacher, I would help you.

(c) **'As if/as though'**

The subjunctive can be used in a clause beginning with 'as if/as though' to express a statement contrary to the fact. For example

She behaves as if she were the landlady.

(B) After **'It is high time'** For example

It is high time you did something now.

(In the sense of 'should')

(C) After **'would rather/had rather' + Clause**

These phrases are followed by a clause in a subjunctive mood. Otherwise direct infinitive is used. For example

(i) I would rather you helped my brother.

(ii) I had rather you stayed with me.

(Say 'would stay')

(iii) I would rather go to Mumbai.

(Direct Infinitive)

(D) In subjunctive mood referring to Past situation use Past Perfect Tense.

For example

(i) I wish I had had a gun then.

(Past situation)

(ii) I wish I had a gun now.

(Present situation)

(iii) I wish I had not met her last year.

(Regret for a past situation)

### Rule XII

The use of causative verbs. (Make, Get, Have Cause)

(i) I made my friend write a letter.

(ii) My friend was made to write a letter.

(iii) He got his house painted by expert painters.

(iv) He had a house demolished.

**NOTE** In sentence (i) the causative verb 'make' is followed by direct infinitive 'write'. In sentence (ii) 'make' is followed by 'to write' because it is in passive voice.

But we can say **'They caused him to leave India'**.

[Refer to Rule II (b) on Non-finite verbs.]

**Rule XIII**

When negative ideas are introduced in a noun clause with the following verbs in principal clause, it is advisable to make principal clause in negative.

'imagine, think, believe, suppose'.

**NOTE** This rule doesn't apply to 'I hope'. *For example*

- |                                     |             |
|-------------------------------------|-------------|
| (i) I don't think he will pass.     | (Correct)   |
| I think he will not pass.           | (Incorrect) |
| (ii) I don't suppose she will pass. | (Correct)   |
| I suppose she will not pass.        | (Incorrect) |

**Rule XIV**

The position of verb in the clause beginning with 'As' and 'Than', when the subject is hidden. *For example*

- |  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| (i) The guests came on time <b>as were hoped</b> .             | [say, (it) was hoped]       |
| (ii) The guests came more in number <b>than was expected</b> . | [say, (they) were expected] |
| (iii) There were more mangoes than were expected.              | [say, (it) was expected]    |
| (iv) There were more servants than was required.               | [say, (they) were required] |

**Rule XV****Verbs Often Confused**

The Base Form (Present)	Past	Past Participle (PP)
1. Swing	Swung	Swung
2. Wring	Wrung	Wrung
3. Sting	Stung	Stung
4. Find	Found	Found
5. Found	Founded	Founded
6. Fall	Fell	Fallen
7. Fell	Felled	Felled
8. Befall	Befell	Befallen
9. Fly	Flew	Flown
10. Blow	Blew	Blown
11. Flow	Flowed	Flowed
12. Strike	Struck	Struck
13. Stick	Stuck	Stuck
14. See	Saw	Seen
15. Saw	Sawed	Sawed/Sawn
16. Flee	Fled	Fled
17. Affect	Affected	Affected
18. Effect	Effected	Effected
19. Rend	Rent	Rent
20. Rent	Rented	Rented

The Base Form (Present)	Past	Past Participle (PP)
21. Awake	Awoke	Awoke/Awaken
22. Wake	Woke	Woken
23. Lie	Lied	Lied
24. Lie	Lay	Lain
25. Lay	Laid	Laid
26. Hang	Hanged	Hanged
27. Hang	Hung	Hung
28. Cast	Cast	Cast
29. Telecast	Telecast	Telecast
30. Forecast	Forecast	Forecast
31. Cost	Cost	Cost
32. Lose	Lost	Lost
33. Rise	Rose	Risen
34. Raise	Raised	Raised
35. Arise	Arose	Arisen
36. Rouse	Roused	Roused
37. Bind	Bound	Bound
38. Bound	Bounded	Bounded
39. Practise	Practised	Practised
40. Advise	Advised	Advised
41. Devise	Devised	Devised
42. Prophesy	Prophesied	Prophesied
43. Grind	Ground	Ground
44. Ground	Grounded	Grounded
45. Bear	Bore	Borne
46. Bear	Bore	Born
47. Wind	Wound	Wound
48. Wound	Wounded	Wounded
49. Forego	Forewent	Foregone
50. Forgo	Forwent	Forgone

## Work Book Exercise A

**Directions** Spot the error, if any, in the following sentences.

1. None but cowards is afraid of fighting.
2. Many a bride have been burnt and killed for dowry.
3. Each of these players have been warned not to repeat the silly mistake.
4. Lime and soda is a digestive drink.
5. The mother as well as her children were brought to the police station for interrogation.
6. His benevolence and kindness are admired by his firends.
7. She never has and never will allow her only son to join Army.
8. Three parts of the lesson are yet to be completed.
9. She is intelligent but her sister dull.
10. Intelligence, as well as knowledge of the subject are required to grasp the meaning of the book.
11. Twenty officers have been dismissed and thirty left on their own.
12. Every word and every line in the poems of Wordsworth sings about the blessings of nature.
13. So honestly he worked that he was rewarded by the chairman of the company.
14. Riches and not character bring you respect these days.
15. The sum and substance of the passage is beyond my understanding.
16. None but those with honest record needs to come to me for help.
17. Four miles are not a long distance for a young person like you.
18. No sooner he was brought here than he began to feel uneasy.
19. Not only will he go there but also he will stay.
20. He, like the other members of his family were left shelterless as a result of flood in the town.

## Work Book Exercise B

**Directions** Spot the error, if any, in the following sentences.

1. In old age neither of his two sons are prepared to come to his help.
2. I don't think ten thousand rupees are a large sum for the work you are going to undertake.
3. It were the students who wanted the teacher to declare holiday.
4. So fast did he drive motor car that even the best driver could not overtake him.
5. Everyone of the new Nursing Homes coming up in the urban areas need a lot of improvement.
6. Never I have come across a man who is foolish to such an extent.

7. He will be likely to take part in the wedding ceremony of his brother provided he is granted leave.
8. Two thirds of the members are needed to pass the resolutions for the impeachment of the President.
9. During freedom struggle many a patriot were fired with patriotism and sacrificed everything for the sake of the motherland.
10. There are a dozen of history books lying in the shelf of my personal library and you can use them whenever you like.
11. The number of amendments to our constitution have been very large since independence.
12. Just outside the village is a Panchayat House with dedicated workers working here.
13. Just to the North of India is the Himalayas that were once impregnable.
14. Who does go there now-a-days?
15. Our source of information was the spies captured during the raid.
16. I had been to Delhi last month to visit my ailing father.
17. Either she or you is to blame for the mismanagement of the domestic affairs.
18. It were the children that caused a lot of problems to their parents during long railway journey.
19. He will be likely to leave for the States last year to visit his wife.
20. The soldiers along with the commander was court-martialled for defying the orders of Army High-command.

### Work Book Exercise C

(Based on verbs often confused)

**Directions** Choose the most suitable alternative to make the sentence logical in sense. The alternatives are marked as (a), (b), (c) below the sentence.

1. The police..... into action on receiving telephone call yesterday.  
(a) swang                      (b) swung                      (c) swing
2. Being a philanthropist he ..... this institution.  
(a) founded                      (b) was founded                      (c) found
3. No one is allowed to ..... the trees in the forest.  
(a) fall                      (b) fell                      (c) fallen
4. When calamity ..... the family, he faced it boldly.  
(a) fell                      (b) fall                      (c) befell
5. I think she ..... the clock this week.  
(a) wounded                      (b) wind                      (c) wound
6. The bridge ..... up by the terrorists only last week.  
(a) blowed                      (b) was blowed                      (c) was blown
7. During rainy season this stream was .....  
(a) overflowed                      (b) overflow                      (c) overflown

8. When he was .....with stone he did not retaliate.  
(a) strike (b) striked (c) struck
9. The wood cutter ..... the log of the wood to make a cot.  
(a) saw (b) sew (c) sawed
10. When the robbers had put all the money in the bag they.....  
(a) fled (b) fleed (c) flee
11. When the village was attacked, loud cries ..... the air.  
(a) rended (b) rented (c) rent
12. She always ..... illness, when she is asked to study.  
(a) affects (b) effects (c) effected
13. Indian Government is planning to ..... many changes in the constitution.  
(a) affect (b) effect (c) effected
14. Hard work is bound to .....your health.  
(a) effect (b) affect (c) effected
15. Corruption has tremendous ..... on our political system.  
(a) effect (b) affect (c) affected
16. Inflationary trends in the market have ..... the prices adversely.  
(a) effected (b) affected (c) infected
17. The poor woman ..... the kettle on the fire and went outside.  
(a) lain (b) lay (c) laid
18. These lawns ..... with velvet grass.  
(a) are laid (b) are lain (c) were lain
19. The mother asked me ..... the table for the guests.  
(a) to lie (b) to lay (c) laid
20. She has ..... in the bed for two hours.  
(a) laid (b) lain (c) lay
21. She ..... the child on the bed to keep him warm.  
(a) lain (b) lay (c) laid
22. My mother asked me to .....down and take rest for sometime.  
(a) lie (b) laid (c) lay
23. Bhagat Singh ..... his life for his motherland.  
(a) lie down (b) lay down (c) laid down
24. The executioner.....him till he died.  
(a) hanged (b) hung (c) hang
25. As soon as we arrived in the dormitory we ..... our pullovers.  
(a) hang (b) hanged (c) hung
26. Colour T.V ..... me ₹ 10,000 last year.  
(a) costed (b) cost (c) has costed
27. Nobody could have.....future correctly.  
(a) forecast (b) forcast (c) forecasted
28. Remember ..... your temper even when provoked.  
(a) not to loose (b) not to lose (c) not to loss

29. The traders suddenly ..... the prices of crude oil last year.  
(a) rose (b) raised (c) rise
30. He ..... suddenly and knocked him down.  
(a) arose (b) raised (c) rose
31. Difficulty after difficulty ..... in his way to success.  
(a) arose (b) rose (c) roused
32. When the villagers were attacked, they were ..... to violent acts.  
(a) raised (b) roused (c) rose
33. When the villagers were attacked, they were ..... to violence.  
(a) raised (b) roused (c) rose
34. ...., our freedom is in danger.  
(a) Arise (b) Rise (c) Raise
35. The noise in the bedroom ..... me up.  
(a) awoke (b) awake (c) woke
36. When he ..... to reality, all had been lost.  
(a) woke (b) awake (c) awoke
37. One is ..... in duty to help the ageing parents.  
(a) bound (b) bounded (c) binding
38. India is ..... in the North by the mountains.  
(a) bound (b) bounded (c) binding
39. You may ask someone where the ship is ..... for.  
(a) bound (b) bounded (c) binding
40. After she had ..... dancing, she went to bed.  
(a) practiced (b) practised (c) practice

# Revision Exercises

(Based on Functions, Voice, Modals, Non-finites and Clauses)

**Directions** Fill in the proper form of verbs given in the brackets.

## Exercise A

1. I don't think we ..... (meet) two years ago.
2. Well, I ..... (see) you once at a party, but we (introduce) then.
3. His health ..... (improve) since he ..... (go) to Switzerland.
4. A man ..... (knock) down here by bus yesterday.
5. I ..... (write) six letters since 8 a.m.
6. His father ..... (die) five years ago and he ..... (live) alone since.
7. You should ..... (behave) properly with your elders.
8. If you ..... (buy) a car last year, it ..... (cost) you much less.
9. I wish I ..... (be) at the party tomorrow.
10. After the soldiers ..... (slay) they were buried.
11. Why can't he ..... (hold) guilty, if all the evidence is against him.
12. I ..... (work) hard lately to achieve higher grade.
13. The news ..... (broadcast) in the 9 p.m. bulletin yesterday.
14. I ..... (know) him for a very long time.
15. He ..... (kneel) before the deity when I visited the temple.
16. I am sorry, I should ..... (buy) motor car last year.
17. I am not sure she may ..... (divorce) Pratap soon.
18. It is time you started ..... (earn) now.
19. When you meet him, you ..... (please), I am sure.
20. He ..... (walk) very quickly when I ..... (meet) him yesterday.
21. I ..... (have) a small house to live in these days.
22. He ..... (know) her for a long time before he finally (get) married to her.
23. Many more tourists ..... (arrive) by the time the week is over.
24. You must see me after you ..... (take) lunch.
25. He ..... (be) 20 now, next year he ..... (be) an adult.
26. The milkman ..... (be) here yesterday when we ..... (be) out.
27. The milkman ..... (give) milk to our neighbour at the moment.
28. The Red Fort ..... (stand) beside the Yamuna in Delhi.
29. Milton ..... (write) much of his great poetry after he ..... (become) blind.
30. His house ..... (face) the East and is spacious.

**Exercise B**

1. I have not heard from him, he may ..... (divorce) his wife last year.
2. Buses usually ..... (run) along this street, but today they ..... (not run) because the road is under repairs.
3. It still ..... (rain) but it ..... (stop) soon.
4. I already ..... (study) your proposals but regret I cannot accept them.
5. We ..... (play) Tennis yesterday, if it ..... (not rain).
6. If I ..... (have) a typewriter I would have typed this letter myself.
7. He .....(arrive) after I .....(finish) my last letter to you.
8. While he ..... (examine) the papers, he found that one paper ..... (disappear) from the room.
9. In 1954, after she ..... (work) in the hospital for two years, she ..... (compel) to give up the job.
10. I ..... (work) at my present job since the day a son ..... (bear) to my sister.
11. I can't say where Sheena ..... (be) lately.
12. If I ..... (have) a typewriter now, I ..... (type) this letter in no time.
13. If you ..... (be) able to solve this problem you ..... (reward) generously by the Chief tomorrow.
14. If I ..... (be) God, I ..... (eliminate) all sufferings.
15. Ram's career ..... (ruin) if he ..... (not succeed) in the examination last year.
16. I wish, I ..... (know) the answer yesterday.
17. She ..... (treat) me so well when I was a boy that to this day I ..... (forgot) her kindness.
18. The light ..... (burn) the whole night, I must ..... (forget) to switch it off.
19. I am sure he hardly need ..... (spend) money.
20. Ancient India must ..... (enjoy) spiritual grace.
21. He started saving money lest he ..... (starve) in old age.
22. He came in looking as if he ..... (see) a ghost.
23. My friend often comes here with a view to ..... (meet) his parents.
24. The Taj ..... (stand) here for centuries.
25. Ashok began writing his autobiography but he ..... (die) before it ..... (complete).
26. Since Babu cannot swim, I am sure he would have been drowned if he ..... (fall) overboard.
27. He ..... (write) this book for eleven months by next July.
28. The milkman ..... (be) absent since last Sunday.
29. While I was writing the letter I ..... (hear) a knock on the door.
30. You must tell me where you ..... (be) since you ..... (leave) this place last month.

**Exercise G**

1. The police ..... (look) for the robber for a long time but they ..... (fail) to find him so far.
2. One day, while his mother ..... (stay) at her brother's house she ..... (turn) out of the house.
3. Last year my friend ..... (reject) by the committee, because he ..... (complete) education yet.
4. I believe he knows English well but he acts as if he ..... (not know).
5. If I ..... (meet) you earlier, I ..... (send) you invitation to the play yesterday.
6. My friend usually ..... (have) lunch at one, but today he already ..... (have) it.
7. By the end of this month she ..... (spend) the whole money she has.
8. He ..... (be) in Delhi for ten years when I ..... (transfer) there.
9. Promise that you ..... (help) him if he ..... (do) his job well.
10. She is rather young now, but if she ..... (be) older, she ..... (have) more sense.
11. She will be arriving quite late. So by the time she ..... (come) the play ..... (begin).
12. I ..... (convince) now that his political views ..... (be) worth listening to.
13. If I ..... (have) the courage, I would have answered him back.
14. I wish he ..... (speak) louder, I can't hear what he ..... (say) at present.
15. I wish he ..... (recite) louder, it was a touching poem.
16. He was honest and so he ..... (respect) by his colleagues.
17. Yesterday, Raman ..... (wait) for his guests for the last two hours but they ..... (arrive).
18. You committed a mistake, you could ..... (try) your luck.
19. He just ..... (go) out for a walk, he will return late.
20. Rita ..... (cry) the whole night when her dog ..... (lose).
21. No book ..... (lie) on the table when the principal entered the classroom.
22. She ..... (be) to Mumbai lately with her father for treatment.
23. If you get through the examination, I ..... (be) very happy.
24. She left Jaipur so that she ..... (join) her parents at Mumbai.
25. They had to agree to the request lest the boss ..... (annoy) with them.
26. He ..... (wait) for a long time until she arrived.
27. He married her long after her father ..... (die).
28. Before she arrived her children ..... (go) on picnic.
29. No sooner my friend ..... (phone) me than I left for his residence.
30. Hardly I ..... (step) out when it started raining.

**Exercise ①**

1. Never I ..... (dream) that he would treat me shabbily.
2. Sometime I wonder if she ..... (live) peacefully with her husband these days.
3. How come, you ..... (not succeed) last year.
4. Never mind, it ..... (be) the stars that act on our destiny.
5. I ..... (complete) my work yet when he arrived.
6. There is a lot of money for you if you ..... (work) hard.
7. He ..... (be) in bed for the last ten days when his wife visited him.
8. It ..... (know) to all that she ..... (demote) soon.
9. How long you ..... (be) in this job?
10. The dinner ..... (be) ready before we arrived.
11. My brother made me ..... (promise) for providing shelter to his children.
12. I prefer ..... (swim) to ..... (fish).
13. Don't resent ..... (obey) the advice of your well meaning friends.
14. They advised me to give up ..... (try) to set up business of my own son.
15. You had better ..... (stop) there and ..... (see) what you can do to help her.
16. I don't remember ..... (post) the letter but I think I must ..... (do) it.
17. I agreed ..... (accompany) them to picture though they ..... (annoy) with me.
18. Don't avoid ..... (write) to your parents regularly.
19. I was let ..... (play) the match when I had completed my home work.
20. She denied ..... (do) anything with the affairs of her neighbours.
21. They were made ..... (write) an essay on the economic condition of the country.
22. They are used to ..... (interfere) in the affairs of their neighbours.
23. They enjoy ..... (play) video games and are not interested ..... (study) their books.
24. At last he succeeded ..... (get) a good job in his home town.
25. I look forward to ..... (visit) my village next month.
26. We left for Delhi after the function ..... (be) over.
27. Leave this place otherwise you ..... (turn) out soon.
28. They ..... (frighten) last night when they heard uproar in the street.
29. Please see that the patient ..... (not disturb).
30. When the book ..... (lose), she was disturbed.



16. Along the northern frontier of India is seen the Himalayas  
 a b c  
mighty in their splendour. No error  
 d e
17. The recommendations of the committee that the age should be lowered down  
 a b  
immediately was not accepted. No error  
 c d e
18. He is overworked and that seems to have seriously effected his health. No error  
 a b c d e
19. Each of the students whom I have chosen to take part in the discussion  
 a b  
have indicated that he will be happy to do so. No error  
 c d e
20. Honestly speaking I like him not because he is handsome and charming but  
 a b  
that he is exceedingly kind. No error  
 c d e
21. The father with the son were mysteriously missing from the house. No error  
 a b c d e
22. It is in 1929 when we first flew to the United States. No error  
 a b c d e
23. Our country need a number of self sacrificing and devoted political leaders. No error  
 a b c d e
24. The constant shouting of slogans do not solve the problems  
 a b c  
of the country. No error  
 d e
25. Crossing the road a car knocked him down. No error  
 a b c d e
26. We erect monuments in the memory of the great lest  
 a b  
their achievements might be forgotten. No error  
 c d e
27. The alarmed report of an earthquake frightened everyone in that  
 a b c  
disaster prone village. No error  
 d e
28. He used rather harsh words in denouncing her but he must have had  
 a b c  
 some very strong reasons to do so. No error  
 d e
29. Instead of his busy and hard life. he still retains freshness and robustness.  
 a b c d  
 No error  
 e

30. The issues are complex and has been obscured by other factors. No error  
 a b c d e
31. He is working hard with a view to compete with Mohan. No error  
 a b c d e
32. Since he has not yet attained the age of eighteen, he had no right to  
 a b c  
vote in the present election. No error  
 d e
33. He was so tired that he fell asleep on the bed fully dressed. No error  
 a b c d e
34. Is there further reasons you can give me for your failure to do  
 a b c d  
as you promised? No error  
 e
35. If anyone of the guests choose to leave before the ceremony is over  
 a b c  
lead him to exit quickly. No error  
 d e
36. While proceeding on leave he had orally committed that he will resume  
 a b c d  
after two days. No error  
 e
37. I am disappointed in not having saw any place while I was in Delhi  
 a b c  
on vacation. No error  
 d e
38. Now-a-days he along with his friends go for a ride every evening. No error  
 a b c d e
39. They treated us not even to cocktails but also to dinner. No error  
 a b c d e
40. What India needs today are more scientists technicians and planners. No error  
 a b c d e
41. Him not agreeing to accept the proposals outlined by the committee  
 a b c  
is baffling. No error  
 d e
42. If you had work hard you would have certainly got the scholarship. No error  
 a b c d e
43. No sooner did the thief saw the policeman than he ran away. No error  
 a b c d e
44. Until I do not inform my teacher I shall not go out of the school. No error  
 a b c d e
45. Neither the size nor the colour of the gloves were right. No error  
 a b c d e

46. Bangladesh has come into existence thirty-six years ago. No error  
 a b c d e
47. If it was possible to get near where one of these eruptions took place, we  
 a b c  
could have a grand sight. No error  
 d e
48. By the time the plane had arrived I nearly had despaired of being able  
 a b c d  
 to board it. No error  
 e
49. Neither your earnest pleadings nor your profuse tears have made me to change  
 a b c d  
 my decision. No error  
 e
50. The gentleman together with his wife and children were drowned. No error  
 a b c d e
51. Sometimes the ministers behave as if they are ministers for all time. No error  
 a b c d e
52. Entering the crowded store I saw two vaguely familiar faces. No error  
 a b c d e
53. The Director knowing of my interest in linguistics asked me that  
 a b c  
 I would like to attend the national seminar. No error  
 d e
54. Hardly had I left the house than it began to rain. No error  
 a b c d e
55. Turning to the right the town hall at once catches your eye. No error  
 a b c d e
56. The request of the student union president that fee be lowered were  
 a b c d  
 immediately supported by vast majority. No error  
 e
57. Most of us are not aware that eating some varieties of mushrooms result  
 a b c d  
 in death. No error  
 e
58. After Napoleon had lost the battle of Waterloo in 1815, he had been exiled  
 a b c  
to the Island of St Helena. No error  
 d e
59. We always complain that prices are too high and that we were not getting  
 a b c  
 our money's worth. No error  
 d e

60. Please rest for a while and when you rest I'll take you round the garden to show you our new roses. No error  
 a b c  
 d e
61. Imagine a town which lacks not only phased growth but is burdened with unauthorised colonies. No error  
 a b c  
 d e
62. The manager asked Sunil if he was free to go on tour immediately. No error  
 a b c d e
63. Sixty years have passed since India became free. No error  
 a b c d e
64. It is easy distinguishing this pen from that. No error  
 a b c d e
65. When asked a question he rose his hand to catch the teacher's attention. No error  
 a b c d  
 e
66. The reason for the train being late was because the train was involved in an accident. No error  
 a b c  
 d e
67. He never has and never will play at cards. No error  
 a b c d e
68. Boys study in order that they could earn their livelihood. No error  
 a b c d e
69. Would you please request him not to tore open the envelope without my consent?. No error  
 a b c  
 d e
70. Consider his young age the achievement of the player is really admirable and appreciable. No error  
 a b c  
 d e
71. Your statement that you find this bag in the street will not be trusted. No error  
 a b c d e
72. To be elated in the moments of success or to be disconsolate in the moments of failure are a sign of immaturity. No error  
 a b c  
 d e
73. The man who was killed he was my cousin. No error  
 a b c d e
74. I think everyone of these men are incompetent. No error  
 a b c d e

75. He was reading very hard for six months still he failed. No error  
 a b c d e
76. Please believe that money and peace of mind does not go hand in hand. No error  
 a b c d e
77. He who possess good qualities is bound to impress others. No error  
 a b c d e
78. Mother asked me where was I going in such a hurry. No error  
 a b c d e
79. Despite of his repeated requests the thieves beat him mercilessly. No error  
 a b c d e
80. People like Mahesh looks always cheerful not because of the peace of mind  
but merely because of successful gestures. No error  
 a b c d e
81. She had been a nurse for three years and then she wants to study medicine.  
No error  
 a b c d e
82. It is undeniably true that many amongst us felt that the whole building is  
vibrating. No error  
 a b c d e
83. Everyone of those who came here are foolish and cannot be relied upon. No error  
 a b c d e
84. If I fail in this examination I shall give the next examination. No error  
 a b c d e
85. He hanged his head in shame when he came to know of his son's mischief.  
No error  
 a b c d e
86. The reason why he was late was because he had been caught in rain. No error  
 a b c d e
87. They are going to start early in order that they will not be late. No error  
 a b c d e
88. Each of the boys whom I had invited to dinner have indicated that  
he would be happy to come. No error  
 a b c d e
89. They have been very close friends until they quarrelled. No error  
 a b c d e
90. The number of students appearing at the written examination  
increases every year. No error  
 a b c d e

# ANSWERS

---

## UNIT II

### 4. Kinds of Sentences and Clauses

#### Work Book Exercise A

##### Object to a Transitive Verb

1. I say that she is intelligent.
2. I said that he was intelligent.
3. I cannot say if/whether she will go.
4. She refused that she would not go.
5. I don't know what she is doing these days.
6. I know what you like.
7. I wonder what she is doing.
8. I doubt whether/if she will marry him.
9. I am certain that she will marry him.
10. The police suspected that he was a culprit.

##### The case in Apposition to a Noun or a Pronoun

1. She never believed in his statement that he would get her a job.
2. No one heard the news that the Prime Minister had resigned.
3. It is true that she will succeed.
4. It is not known how she arrived.

##### The Subject of a Verb

1. What are you doing is not desirable.
2. Whether he will come is not certain.
3. How she disappeared is a mystery.
4. That he is honest is known to us.

##### Object of Infinitive, Participle and Preposition

1. I was pleased by what she did for us.
2. Listen to what your parents advise.
3. Everybody was pleased to note that she looked cheerful at the party.
4. Good students ought to realise that hard work is key to success.
5. She kept on asking where I was going.

##### Complement of a Verb

1. The hope is that his son will return.
2. The fact is that he is honest.

#### Work Book Exercise B

1. I know the man who came here.
2. This is my pen which I gave you.
3. I don't know any man that is present here.
4. He is such a man as will never cheat you.
5. I have met all the boys that have been admitted to the hostel.

6. This is the best book that I have ever read.
7. I have invited Mohan whose father is a famous doctor.
8. I have invited Mohan whom all of us admire.
9. He is the man whose leg is defective.
10. It is the table the leg of which is broken.

**Work Book Exercise C**

- |                        |               |                       |
|------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| 1. write               | 2. ask        | 3. reached            |
| 4. enters              | 5. have taken | 6. had written        |
| 7. had come            | 8. had come   | 9. had taken          |
| 10. have taken         | 11. had taken | 12. left              |
| 13. has been suffering | 14. has been  | 15. was raining       |
| 16. leave              | 17. are       | 18. will have arrived |
| 19. had arrived        | 20. go        | 21. work              |
| 22. rains              | 23. work      | 24. knew              |
| 25. had                | 26. were      | 27. were              |
| 28. would treat        | 29. had known | 30. had had           |

**Revision Exercises**

(Based on Noun, Adjective and Adverb Clause)

**Exercise A**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. 'would' in place of 'will'                          | 2. No error.                                   |
| 3. 'if/whether' in place of 'that'                     | 4. 'was' in place of 'am'                      |
| 5. Place 'in the room' before 'we'                     | 6. 'if' in place of 'that'                     |
| 7. Say 'why he was not staying there'                  | 8. 'as' in place of 'who'                      |
| 9. 'that' in place of 'which'                          | 10. 'those' in place of 'them'                 |
| 11. Drop 'it'  | 12. 'that' in place of 'what'                  |
| 13. 'had' in place of 'has'                            | 14. 'why' in place of 'that'                   |
| 15. 'the nib of which' in place of 'whose nib'         |  |
| 16. 'whom' in place of 'who'                           |  |
| 17. Delete 'and'.                                      | 18. 'had seen' in place of 'saw'               |
| 19. 'if' in place of 'that'                            | 20. Drop 'as to'                               |
| 21. 'that' in place of 'which'                         | 22. Drop 'he'                                  |
| 23. Drop 'that'  | 24. 'was' in place of 'is'                     |
| 25. Correct  | 26. Say 'if he could give'                     |
| 27. 'what life is' in place of 'what is life'          | 28. 'whom' in place of 'who'                   |
| 29. 'that' before 'if' is correct.                     | 30. Place 'adjective clause' after 'my friend' |
| 31. 'are' for 'is'                                     | 32. Remove 'that'                              |
| 33. 'as' in place of 'that'                            |  |
| 34. Remove 'anything' or use 'that' in place of 'what' |  |
| 35. Correct  |  |

**Exercise B**

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. Drop 'will'                               | 2. 'do not' in place of 'will not' |
| 3. 'had seen' in place of 'saw'              | 4. 'should' in place of 'shall'    |
| 5. 'if she had had' in place of 'if she had' | 6. 'as' in place of 'like'         |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 7. 'although' in place of 'because'     | 8. 'should' in place of 'will'               |
| 9. 'were' in place of 'are'             | 10. 'have completed' in place of 'complete'. |
| 11. 'had typed' in place of 'typed'     | 12. 'came' in place of 'has come'            |
| 13. Drop 'does not'                     | 14. 'have gone' in place of 'go'             |
| 15. Drop 'so'                           | 16. 'has been' in place of 'is'              |
| 17. Drop 'still'                        | 18. 'and' in place of 'but'                  |
| 19. 'so that' in place of 'because'     | 20. No error                                 |
| 21. 'had decided' in place of 'decided' | 22. 'as' in place of like                    |
| 23. Drop 'supposing'                    | 24. 'while' in place of 'when'               |
| 25. Drop 'do not' after 'you'           | 26. 'unless' in place of 'until'             |
| 27. 'knew' in place of 'know'           | 28. Say 'have taken rest'                    |
| 29. 'so' in place of 'too'              | 30. 'has been' in place of 'is'.             |

**Exercise C**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. 'that' in place of 'what' or remove 'something' |  |
| 2. 'she is doing' in place of 'is she doing'       |  |
| 3. 'cars' in place of 'car'                        | 4. 'if' in place of 'that'                         |
| 5. 'and' in place of 'which'                       | 6. Drop 'not'                                      |
| 7. 'were' in place of 'was'                        | 8. 'as' in place of 'who'                          |
| 9. 'were' in place of 'is'                         | 10. Correct  |
| 11. 'shall have' in place of 'shall'               | 12. 'the fruit of which' in place of 'whose fruit' |
| 13. Drop 'still'                                   | 14. 'marries' in place of 'will marry'             |
| 15. Drop 'that' and 'will' after 'result'.         | 16. 'have completed' in place of 'complete'        |
| 17. 'may' in place of 'will'                       | 18. Insert 'have' after 'years' and remove 'has'   |
| 19. 'wears' in place of 'will wear'                | 20. 'have completed' in place of 'complete'        |
| 21. 'may' in place of 'will'                       | 22. 'could have caught' in place of 'could catch'  |
| 23. 'would' in place of 'will'                     | 24. 'had stolen' in place of 'stole'               |
| 25. Remove 'therefore'                             | 26. 'what' in place of 'which'                     |
| 27. 'have taken' in place of 'take'                | 28. 'leader's' in place of 'leader'                |
| 29. Insert 'that of' after 'than'                  | 30. Insert 'had' after 'had'                       |
| 31. 'why' in place of 'that'                       | 32. 'is' in place of 'are'                         |
| 33. Say 'are' for 'is'                             | 34. Place 'will' after 'he' & remove 'that'        |
| 35. Place 'that' before 'when'                     |  |

**5. Clause Analysis****Work Book Exercise A**

1. that she is intelligent ..... 'Noun Clause', object to the verb 'say'.
2. if she will go ..... 'Noun Clause', object to the verb 'say'.
3. whether she would go ..... 'Noun Clause', object to the verb 'know'.
4. that she will marry him ..... 'Noun Clause', In apposition to 'it'.
5. what she is doing ..... 'Noun Clause', object to the verb 'know'.
6. what you want me to do ..... 'Noun Clause', object to the verb 'do'.
7. what he says ..... 'Noun Clause', subject of the verb 'is'.
8. what she did for us ..... 'Noun Clause', object to the preposition 'by'.
9. that he would get her a job ..... 'Noun Clause', case in apposition to the 'statement'.
10. that she looked cheerful at the party ..... 'Noun Clause', object to infinitive 'to note'.

**Work Book Exercise B**

1. who came here ..... 'Adjective Clause' qualifying the noun 'man'.
2. which I gave you ..... 'Adjective Clause' qualifying the noun 'pen'.
3. that is present here ..... 'Adjective Clause' qualifying the noun 'any man'.
4. as will never cheat you ..... 'Adjective Clause' qualifying the noun 'such a man'.
5. that have been admitted to the hostel ..... 'Adjective Clause' qualifying the noun 'all the boys'.
6. that I have ever read ..... 'Adjective Clause' qualifying the noun 'the best book'.
7. whose father is a famous doctor..... 'Adjective Clause' qualifying the noun 'Mohan'.
8. (Whom) all of us admire ..... 'Adjective Clause' qualifying the noun 'Ashok'.
9. the leg of which is broken ..... 'Adjective Clause' qualifying the noun 'the table'.
10. (That) he gave ..... 'Adjective Clause' qualifying the noun 'the news'.

**Work Book Exercise C**

1. when you write the book ..... 'Adverb Clause' of time, modifying the verb 'help'.
2. before we took our dinner..... 'Adverb Clause' of time, modifying the verb 'had come'.
3. after we had taken our dinner..... 'Adverb Clause' of time, modifying the verb 'came'.
4. since she arrived ..... 'Adverb Clause' of time, modifying the verb 'suffering'.
5. until you leave this place ..... 'Adverb Clause' of time, modifying the verb 'come'.
6. till I go ..... 'Adverb Clause' of time, modifying the verb 'wait'.
7. so that he may stand first ..... 'Adverb Clause' of purpose, modifying the verb 'work hard'.
8. lest you should fall ..... 'Adverb Clause' of purpose, modifying the verb 'walk'.
9. that she could get first class ..... 'Adverb Clause' of result, modifying the verb 'worked'.
10. If you work hard ..... 'Adverb Clause' of condition, modifying the verb 'pass'.

**6. Question Tags****Work Book Exercise A**

- |              |               |                |               |
|--------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. is he     | 2. didn't you | 3. does he     | 4. don't we   |
| 5. does it   | 6. do they    | 7. doesn't she | 8. doesn't it |
| 9. didn't we | 10. do I      |                |               |

**Work Book Exercise B**

- |              |             |             |                |
|--------------|-------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1. is there  | 2. isn't he | 3. is it    | 4. isn't there |
| 5. were they | 6. is she   | 7. isn't it | 8. isn't she   |
| 9. is it     | 10. is he   |             |                |

**Revision Exercises**

1.

- |        |        |         |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. (f) | 2. (d) | 3. (e)  | 4. (j) | 5. (g) | 6. (a) | 7. (b) |
| 8. (i) | 9. (h) | 10. (c) |        |        |        |        |

2.

- |        |        |         |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. (a) | 2. (j) | 3. (i)  | 4. (b) | 5. (h) | 6. (d) | 7. (e) |
| 8. (c) | 9. (f) | 10. (g) |        |        |        |        |

3.

1. (b)    2. (c)    3. (c)    4. (b)    5. (a)

4.

1. does he            2. shall we            3. hadn't you            4. could we  
5. isn't he            6. weren't they        7. isn't she            8. mustn't it  
9. mightn't they    10. doesn't he        11. need I            12. need she

5.

1. is it            2. isn't she            3. aren't you            4. aren't they  
5. do they        6. should you        7. does she            8. aren't I  
9. haven't you    10. can't I

6.

1. (c)    2. (j)    3. (i)    4. (h)    5. (f)    6. (a)    7. (g)  
8. (b)    9. (e)    10. (d)

7.

1. weren't they    2. isn't he            3. isn't she            4. didn't we  
5. isn't she        6. should you        7. does she            8. aren't I  
9. don't you        10. can't I            11. does she            12. shall we  
13. hadn't he        14. could we

8.

1. are there        2. hadn't she        3. haven't I            4. haven't they  
5. can't he        6. didn't they        7. haven't I

## 7. Non-Finite Verbs

### Work Book Exercise A

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Drop 'to' before 'solve'                       | 2. Drop 'to' before 'use'                 |
| 3. 'buying' in place of 'buy'                     | 4. 'writing' in place of 'write'          |
| 5. 'visiting' in place of 'visit'                 | 6. 'to have been' in place of 'to be'     |
| 7. 'to have discovered' in place of 'to discover' | 8. 'crying' in place of 'to cry'          |
| 9. 'to enter' in place of 'enter'                 | 10. 'brother's' in place of 'brother'     |
| 11. 'at achieving' in place of 'to achieve'       | 12. 'of qualifying' in place of 'qualify' |
| 13. 'from attending' in place of 'to attend'      | 14. Say 'to carry the bag carefully'      |
| 15. 'to leave' in place of 'to have left'         | 16. Drop 'to' before 'do'                 |
| 17. 'to move' in place of 'from moving'           | 18. 'anybody's' in place of 'anybody'     |
| 19. 'to have left' in place of 'to leave'         | 20. Drop 'to' before 'abuse'              |

### Work Book Exercise B

1. (b)    2. (b)    3. (b)    4. (b)    5. (b)    6. (b)    7. (a)  
8. (c)    9. (b)    10. (b)    11. (b)    12. (a)    13. (b)    14. (b)  
15. (a)    16. (c)    17. (b)    18. (b)    19. (c)    20. (b)    21. (c)  
22. (b)    23. (b)    24. (c)    25. (a)    26. (c)    27. (b)    28. (b)  
29. (c)    30. (a)    31. (b)

**Work Book Exercise C**

1. While she was writing a letter.
2. Place 'it' before 'being'
3. Place 'she' before 'being' or she was punished by the teacher.
4. Place 'not' after 'would'
5. she was not punished by the teacher
6. While she was climbing
7. Place 'I' before 'having'
8. Although she is a miser.
9. 'When one takes' in place of 'While taking'
10. While I was cooking

**8. Verb****Work Book Exercise A**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Use 'are' in place of 'is'                 | 2. 'has' in place of 'have'                       |
| 3. 'has' in place of 'have'                   | 4. No error                                       |
| 5. 'was' in place of 'were'                   | 6. 'is' in place of 'are'                         |
| 7. Insert 'allowed' after 'has'               | 8. No error                                       |
| 9. No error                                   | 10. 'is' in place of 'are'                        |
| 11. Insert 'have' before 'left'               | 12. No error                                      |
| 13. 'did he work' in place of 'he worked'     | 14. No error                                      |
| 15. No error                                  | 16. 'need' in place of 'needs'                    |
| 17. 'is' in place of 'are'                    | 18. 'was he brought' in place of 'he was brought' |
| 19. 'will he stay' in place of 'he will stay' | 20. 'was' in place of 'were'                      |

**Work Book Exercise B**

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1. 'is' in place of 'are'       | 2. 'is a large sum' in place of 'are a large sum' |
| 3. 'was' in place of 'were'     | 4. No error                                       |
| 5. 'needs' in place of 'need'   | 6. 'never have I' in place of 'never I have'      |
| 7. 'is' in place of 'will be'   | 8. No error                                       |
| 9. 'was' in place of 'were'     | 10. 'is' in place of 'are'                        |
| 11. 'has' in place of 'have'    | 12. No error                                      |
| 13. 'are' in place of 'is'      | 14. 'goes' for 'does go'                          |
| 15. No error                    | 16. 'went' in place of 'had been'                 |
| 17. 'are' in place of 'is'      | 18. 'was' in place of 'were'                      |
| 19. 'was' in place of 'will be' | 20. 'were' in place of 'was'                      |

**Work Book Exercise C**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (b)  | 2. (a)  | 3. (b)  | 4. (c)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (c)  | 7. (a)  |
| 8. (c)  | 9. (c)  | 10. (a) | 11. (c) | 12. (a) | 13. (b) | 14. (b) |
| 15. (a) | 16. (b) | 17. (c) | 18. (a) | 19. (b) | 20. (b) | 21. (c) |
| 22. (a) | 23. (c) | 24. (a) | 25. (c) | 26. (b) | 27. (a) | 28. (b) |
| 29. (b) | 30. (c) | 31. (a) | 32. (b) | 33. (b) | 34. (a) | 35. (c) |
| 36. (c) | 37. (a) | 38. (b) | 39. (a) | 40. (b) |         |         |

## Revision Exercises

(Based on Functions, Voice, Modals, Non-finites and Clauses)

### Exercise A

- |                           |                                |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. met                    | 2. saw, were not introduced    |
| 3. has improved, went     | 4. was knocked                 |
| 5. have written           | 6. died, has been living       |
| 7. behave                 | 8. had bought, would have cost |
| 9. were                   | 10. had been slain             |
| 11. be held               | 12. have worked                |
| 13. was broadcast         | 14. have known                 |
| 15. was kneeling          | 16. have bought                |
| 17. divorce               | 18. earning                    |
| 19. meet, will be pleased | 20. was walking, met him       |
| 21. have                  | 22. had known, got             |
| 23. will have arrived     | 24. have taken                 |
| 25. is, will be           | 26. was, were                  |
| 27. is giving             | 28. stands                     |
| 29. wrote, had become     | 30. faces                      |

### Exercise B

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. may have divorced                          | 2. run, are not running                   |
| 3. is raining, will stop                      | 4. have studied                           |
| 5. would have played, had not rained          | 6. had had                                |
| 7. arrived, had finished                      | 8. was examining, had disappeared         |
| 9. had worked, was compelled                  | 10. have been working , was born          |
| 11. has been                                  | 12. had, would type                       |
| 13. are, will be rewarded                     | 14. were, would eliminate                 |
| 15. would have been ruined, had not succeeded |   |
| 16. had known                                 |   |
| 17. treated, have not forgotten               | 18. had been burning, must have forgotten |
| 19. spend                                     | 20. have enjoyed                          |
| 21. should starve                             | 22. had seen                              |
| 23. meeting                                   | 24. has stood                             |
| 25. had died, was completed                   | 26. had fallen                            |
| 27. will have written                         | 28. has been                              |
| 29. heard                                     | 30. have been, left                       |

### Exercise C

- |                                    |                              |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. have been looking, have failed  | 2. was staying, was turned   |
| 3. was rejected, had not completed | 4. did not know              |
| 5. had met, would have sent        | 6. has, has had              |
| 7. will have spent                 | 8. had been, was transferred |
| 9. will help, does                 | 10. were, would have         |
| 11. comes, will have begun         | 12. am convinced, are        |
| 13. had had                        | 14. spoke, is saying         |

- |                         |                                 |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 15. had recited         | 16. was respected               |
| 17. did not             | 18. could have tried            |
| 19. has just gone       | 20. had been crying, was lost   |
| 21. was lying           | 22. has been                    |
| 23. shall be            | 24. might join                  |
| 25. should be annoyed   | 26. had been waiting/had waited |
| 27. had died            | 28. had gone                    |
| 29. did my friend phone | 30. had I stepped               |

**Exercise D**

- |                                |                               |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. did I dream                 | 2. is living                  |
| 3. did not succeed             | 4. is                         |
| 5. had not completed           | 6. work                       |
| 7. had been                    | 8. is known, will be demoted  |
| 9. have you been               | 10. had been                  |
| 11. promise                    | 12. swimming, fishing         |
| 13. obeying                    | 14. trying                    |
| 15. stop, see                  | 16. to have posted, have done |
| 17. to accompany, were annoyed | 18. writing                   |
| 19. play                       | 20. to have done/having done  |
| 21. to write                   | 22. interfering               |
| 23. playing, in studying       | 24. in getting                |
| 25. visiting                   | 26. had been                  |
| 27. will be turned             | 28. were frightened           |
| 29. is not disturbed           | 30. was lost                  |

**Review Exercise**

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. (e) No error                              | 2. (c) Use 'was very negligent'       |
| 3. (c) 'on asking' for 'to ask'              | 4. (b) 'laden with' for 'loaded with' |
| 5. (a) Say 'comes' for 'will come'           | 6. (d) Say 'rising'                   |
| 7. (b) Say 'connected with'                  | 8. (a) Say 'Weather permitting'       |
| 9. (b) Drop 'he'                             | 10. (c) Say 'left'                    |
| 11. (a) Add 'understand' after 'did not'     | 12. (c) Use 'has'                     |
| 13. (c) Say 'but because'                    | 14. (e) No error                      |
| 15. (c) to be attended                       | 16. (c) Say 'are seen'                |
| 17. (d) Say 'were not'                       | 18. (d) Use 'affected'                |
| 19. (c) Say 'has'                            | 20. (c) Say 'because'                 |
| 21. (b) Say 'was'                            | 22. (a) Say 'it was'                  |
| 23. (a) Say 'needs'                          | 24. (b) Say 'does not'                |
| 25. (a) Say 'While he was crossing'          | 26. (d) Say 'should be'               |
| 27. (a) Say 'alarming'                       | 28. (d) Say 'for doing so'            |
| 29. (a) Say 'inspite of'                     | 30. (c) Say 'have been'               |
| 31. (c) Say 'a view to competing'            | 32. (c) Say 'he has'                  |
| 33. (d) Place 'fully dressed' after 'asleep' | 34. (a) Use 'Are' for 'Is'            |
| 35. (a) Use 'chooses'                        | 36. (d) Use 'would' for 'will'        |

37. (b) Say 'in not having seen'  
39. (b) Say 'not only'  
41. (a) Say 'his not agreeing'  
43. (b) Say 'see'  
45. (d) Say 'was'  
47. (a) Say 'if it were possible'  
49. (d) Delete 'to'  
51. (c) Say 'as if they were'  
53. (c) Say 'if'  
55. (a) Say 'when you turn'  
57. (d) Say 'results'  
59. (c) Say 'are' for 'were'  
61. (c) Say 'but also'  
63. (e) No error  
65. (b) Say 'raised'  
67. (a) Add 'played' after 'has'  
69. (c) Say 'to tear'  
71. (b) Say 'found'  
73. (c) Remove 'he'  
75. (a) Say 'had been reading'  
77. (a) Say 'possesses'  
79. (a) Say 'Despite' remove 'of'  
81. (d) Say 'wanted'  
83. (b) Say 'is' for 'are'  
85. (a) Use 'hung' for 'hanged'  
87. (d) Say 'may' for 'will'  
89. (a) Say 'had been'
38. (b) Say 'goes'  
40. (b) Say 'is'  
42. (b) Say 'worked hard'  
44. (a) Delete 'do not'  
46. (a) Say 'came' for 'has come'  
48. (b) Say 'arrived'  
50. (c) Use 'was'  
52. (e) No error  
54. (c) Say 'when' for 'than'  
56. (d) Say 'was'  
58. (c) Say 'was exiled'  
60. (b) Say 'when you have rested'  
62. (e) No error  
64. (b) Say 'to distinguish'  
66. (d) Say 'was that the train was involved'  
68. (b) Use may  
70. (a) Say 'Considering his age'  
72. (d) Say 'is a sign of'  
74. (c) Say 'is' for 'are'  
76. (c) Say 'do not'  
78. (c) Say 'I was going'  
80. (b) Say 'look'  
82. (d) Say 'was vibrating'  
84. (c) Say 'take' for 'give'  
86. (c) Say 'that' for 'because'  
88. (c) Delete 'have'  
90. (e) No error

## Unit III

# 9

# Articles

## What is an Article?

Articles are very important words in English and so is their knowledge. Articles are used before only nouns to limit or define their (Nouns) uses in the context of the sentence. They impart effectiveness and accuracy to the nouns. In fact, articles are used as **demonstrative adjectives and determiners before nouns**.

There are two kinds of articles.

1. **Indefinite Articles** A, An (in the sense of 'one' and 'any')
2. **Definite Articles** The (in the sense of 'this' and 'that')

## Rules of Articles

### The Use of Indefinite Articles 'A', 'An'

#### Rule I

A student must note that the choice between 'A' and 'An' is determined primarily by **Sound**

(A) 'A' is used before a word beginning.

(i) With consonant. *For example*

a boy	a child
a student	a book

(ii) With a vowel giving the sound of a consonant. *For example*

a one eyed man	a university student
a European	a unique book
a uniform	a universal problem

(B) 'An' is used before a word beginning.

(i) With a vowel. *For example*

an elephant	an apple
an ass	an umbrella

(ii) With a mute 'h'. *For example*

an hour	an heir
an honourable person	an honest man
an honorary post	an hourly visit

- (iii) With a consonant pronounced with the sound of a vowel. *For example*
- |                 |           |
|-----------------|-----------|
| an LL.B student | an M.P.   |
| an M.L.A.       | an S.P.   |
| an X-ray        | an F.I.R. |

### Rule II

(I) Indefinite article 'A'/'An' is used when we talk of a thing or a person that is indefinite or that is mentioned for the first time. (in the sense of 'one').

(II) Indefinite article is also used to express a class (in the sense of 'any')[Rule III (B)]

(A) Before a singular/countable common noun when it is mentioned for the first time representing no particular person or a thing. *For example*

- |                                 |       |
|---------------------------------|-------|
| (i) I need a book.              | (one) |
| (ii) Twelve inches make a foot. | (one) |
| (iii) A beggar came to my door. | (one) |
| (iv) Please get me a scooter.   | (one) |
| (v) She gave her a note book.   | (one) |

(B) Before a singular countable noun which is used to single out some person/something as a representative of a class of things, animals and persons. [Rule III (C)] *For example*

- |                                     |                             |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (i) A cow is a useful animal.       | (any in the sense of class) |
| (ii) A beggar cannot be a chooser.  | (any in the sense of class) |
| (iii) A rose is a beautiful flower. | (any in the sense of class) |
| (iv) A son should be obedient.      | (any in the sense of class) |

(C) To make a common noun of a proper noun to express quality.

- |   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| (i) A Shylock is living in my neighbourhood.      | (a cruel miser) |
| (ii) He is a Vikramaditya known for his fairness. | (a just man)    |
- [Refer to Rule III (H)]*

(D) In certain expressions of quantity with certain numbers and expressions of 'Price/rate, speed, ratio'. *For example*

- |                        |                                |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| (i) Rupees ten a kilo. | (ii) A dozen mangoes.          |
| (iii) Half a dozen.    | <i>[Refer to Rule III (L)]</i> |

(E) When 'A/An' represents a weakened form of preposition 'in'.

*For example*

- |   |
|---|
| (i) He earns fifty thousand rupees a year.      |
| (ii) We should brush our teeth two times a day. |

(F) In exclamations with 'what' or 'how' before singular countable nouns.

*For example*

- |  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| (i) What a hot day!  | (ii) What a pretty girl!     |
| (iii) What a naughty child!                                | (iv) How fine a day!         |
| (v) What a fool he is.                                     | (vi) What kind of a teacher. |
| (vii) What fool will believe it? [Correct (Interrogative)] |                              |

\* But we don't say 'What a kind of'.



## The Use of Definite Article 'The'

### Rule III

(A) When we talk of a particular person or a thing as already mentioned, known or under discussion. *For example*

- (i) The book (which you mentioned) is not available in the market.  
 (ii) Let us study the lesson carefully. (lesson in hand)

(B) Before **proper nouns** (unique objects) when they refer to the names of historical buildings, mountain ranges, planets, rivers, oceans, gulfs, groups of islands, holy books, ordinals, descriptive names of countries, states, newspapers, magazines, deserts, superlative degree, names of trains, hotels, shops, trains. *For example*

The Persian Gulf	The Taj Mahal	The Netherlands
The Indian Ocean	The best picture	The Sudan
The Ganges	The first man	The USA
The Himalayas	The Sahara	The Maurya Sheraton
The Ramayana	The Bay of Bengal	The Ranjit
The Vedas	The Rajdhani Express	
The Moon	The Times of India	
The Sun	The Frontline	
The Earth	The North Pole	

**NOTE** 'The' is not used before **Aravali** and **Everest** because they are not mountain ranges.

(C) When a singular noun expresses a class of animal or things. But 'the' is avoided with their plural forms and persons to express a class. *For example*

- (i) The dog is a faithful animal.      (ii) The rose is a sweet flower.  
 (iii) The cow is economically useful.      (iv) Dogs are faithful.  
 (v) The cows are economically useful.      (*Delete 'the'*)  
 (vi) The son should be obedient.      (*Delete 'The', use 'A'. 'The' before a person does not express a class of persons*)

**NOTE** Indefinite article 'A' is used

(1) In the sense of 'any' to single out a person, a thing or an animal as a representative of a class. [*Refer to Rule II (B)*]

- (i) A son should be obedient.      (ii) A cow is a useful animal.  
 (iii) A mango is a sweet fruit.      (iv) Sons should be obedient.

(2) 'Man/Woman/Mankind' used in general sense to represent human race are used without article. *For example*

- (i) Man is mortal.      used in general sense.

(D) Before an adjective when it represents a class of persons. *For example*

- (i) The rich should help the poor.  
 (ii) The old are respected by the young.

- (E) Before musical instruments. *For example*  
 (i) He can play the flute.  
 (ii) She is fond of playing the harmonium.
- (F) As an adverb with a comparative sense. (Double comparison) *For example*  
 (i) The sooner, the better  
 (ii) The higher you go, the colder it is.
- (G) Before comparative degree in case of a choice. *For example*  
 (i) She is the weaker of the two sisters.  
 (ii) Which is the more beautiful of the two sisters?
- (H) Before proper noun for the sake of comparison. *For example*  
 (i) Surdas is the Milton of India.  
 (ii) Kalidas is the Shakespeare of India. *[Refer to Rule II (C)]*
- (I) Before sports cups and trophies. *For example*  
 (i) India won the Singer Cup last year.  
 (ii) A number of teams are taking part in the World Cup.
- (J) Before physical positions. *For example*  
 (i) The top of the mountain. (ii) The back of the house.  
 (iii) The centre of the market. (iv) The front of the house.
- (K) With the cardinal points. *For example*  
 (i) The Sun rises in the East.  
 (ii) The Himalayas are to the North of India.
- (L) Before a unit of measurement. *For example*  
 (i) Cloth is sold by the metre.  
 (ii) Eggs are sold by the dozen. *[Refer to Rule II (D)]*
- (M) Before caste and communities. *For example*  
 (i) The Rajputs are brave people.  
 (ii) The Marathas are hard working.
- (N) Before the adjectives 'same & whole' and after the adjective 'all & both' used with plural nouns. *For example*  
 (i) This is the same book that you gave me.  
 (ii) The whole class was absent. (iii) All the boys were present there.  
 (iv) Both the brothers were honest. (v) All sugar is wasted.
- (O) In certain idiomatic phrases. *For example*  
 (i) In the wrong. (ii) On the contrary.  
 (iii) In the town. (iv) The benefit of the doubt.  
 (v) In the air. (vi) Speak the truth.  
 (vii) Out of the question. (viii) In the right.
- (P) Before a common noun to give it the force of a superlative. *For example*  
 (i) She is the woman. (ii) Netaji was the leader.  
 (iii) He is the man for this job.

- (Q) Before a common noun to give it the sense of an abstract noun (feelings, qualities etc.) *For example*
- (i) The judge in him. (sense of justice)  
(ii) The mother in her. (feelings of a mother)  
(iii) The beast in him. (cruelty of a beast)
- (R) Before inventions. *For example*
- (i) The telephone.  
(ii) The wireless.  
(iii) The television. (as an invention)  
(iv) He was watching television. ('television' is used just as a set.)  
(v) He was listening to the radio.
- (S) Before the name of professions used collectively. *For example*
- (i) The Press. (ii) The Bench.
- (T) Before a noun, qualified by adjectives. *For example*
- (i) The former President Abdul Kalam  
(ii) The immortal Shakespeare.  
(iii) The late Shri S.C. Bose.
- (U) Before the case in apposition. *For example*
- (i) Netaji, the hero of Modern India, ought to be remembered.  
(ii) Who can underestimate Mr. Vajpayee, the former Prime Minister?
- (V) Before the dates. *For example*
- (i) The 10th of May. (ii) The 5th of September.
- (W) Before the organs of government. *For example*
- (i) The Judiciary (ii) The Legislature
- (X) Before the parts of a body of a person in place of possessive adjectives. *For example*
- (i) He hit me on the back. (ii) She caught me by the arm.
- (Y) Before the political parties. *For example*
- (i) The BJP. (ii) The Labour Party.  
(iii) The Janta Party.
- (Z) Before the Armed forces. *For example*
- (i) The Army. (ii) The Police.  
(iii) The Air force.
- (Z) (a) Before the dynasties, empires, wars, revolutions, centuries. *For example*
- (i) The Gupta dynasty. (ii) The British empire.  
(iii) The Red revolution. (iv) The Middle ages.  
(v) The Civil war. (vi) The Vedic ages.  
(vii) The Sixth century.
- (b) Before language to signify nationality. *For example*
- (i) The Chinese are hard working.  
(ii) The Japanese are patriots out and out.

(c) Before nationality (plural) *For example*

- (i) The Greeks. (ii) The Indians.  
(iii) The Asians.

**NOTE** But we say.  
An Indian, An Asian, A Greek.

(d) Before little and few.

[Refer to Rule II (L)]

- (i) The little – some but all (ii) The few – some but all

#### Rule IV The Omission of Articles

The article 'A/An, The' are omitted

(A) Before proper noun. *For example*

- (i) Shakespeare was the greatest dramatist.  
(ii) Delhi is the capital of India.

**NOTE** (a) When indefinite article is used before proper nouns they become **common nouns**.

(b) 'The' before a proper noun is used for the sake of comparison. *For example*

- (i) This man is a Shylock. (a miser)  
(ii) Samudra Gupta was the Napoleon of his age.  
(*The greatest general of his time.*)

(B) Before names of materials. *For example*

- (i) Silver is a useful metal. (ii) Tea grows in India.  
\* But we can say  
(iii) The tea of Assam is very famous. (*particular tea*)  
(iv) The water of the Ganga is sacred. (*particular water*)

(C) Before common noun used in its widest sense. *For example*

- (i) Man is Mortal. (ii) God is omnipresent.  
\* But we say 'the devil'.  
(iii) The gods and the goddesses are kind to him. (in the sense of deities).

(D) Before abstract nouns as qualities, feelings and states used in general sense.

*For example*

- (i) Truth is a noble quality. (ii) Love is a natural feeling.  
(iii) Honesty is the best policy.

**NOTE** But we can say. *For example*

- (i) The honesty of my brother is beyond any doubt.  
(ii) He always tells a lie.  
(iii) He always speaks the truth.

(E) Before noun complement. (appoint, make, elect, select etc.) *For example*

- (i) The committee appointed him Captain.  
(ii) They elected him President.

- (F) Before collective nouns in general sense. *For example*  
 (i) Life is complex. (ii) Society does not allow this.
- (G) Before uncountable nouns. (Refer to Rule I in the chapter on Nouns). *For example*  
 (i) He gave me advice. (ii) He passed on information to me.
- (H) Before languages. *For example*  
 (i) Chinese is a difficult language.  
 (ii) He knows Russian very well. [Rule III Z(b)]  
 He knows the Sanskrit language.
- (I) Before 'school, college, home, church, temple, sea, work, bed, table, hospital, market, prison, court' when their purpose is thought of rather than the actual building/place. *For example*  
 (i) We go to temple on Mondays. (for prayer)  
 (ii) The thief went to the bed. (upto the bed)  
 (iii) I go to bed early. (to sleep)  
 (iv) He was sent to prison after conviction. (as a prisoner)  
 (v) He went to Sea in his early youth. (as a sailor)  
 (vi) He went to the Sea alone. (travel & other purposes)

**NOTE** 'The' is used before  
 'Office, cinema, movie, theatre, picture, circus, station, bus stop' etc.

- (J) Before 'hobbies, professions and sports'. *For example*  
 (i) Dancing is her profession. (ii) Gardening is his hobby.
- (K) Before names of diseases. *For example*  
 (i) Cancer is a dreaded disease. (ii) AIDS is spreading like wild fire.

**NOTE** But we can say the Measles, the Mumps, the Rickets, the Plague, the Flu.

- (L) Before regular meals except when preceded by an adjective. *For example*  
 (i) I take breakfast at 8 a.m. (ii) You should take dinner early.  
 (iii) They gave us a good breakfast. (iv) A good breakfast is necessary.  
 (v) A dinner in honour of the President will be held. (in the sense of Party)
- (M) Before parts of the body. *For example*  
 Liver is the largest organ of human body.
- (N) Before modes of travel. *For example*  
 (i) He will go by air.  
 (ii) A journey by road is very comfortable.
- (O) Before names of relations like  
 'Uncle, mother, father' etc in place of possessive adjectives. *For example*  
 (i) Father will go to Delhi tomorrow.  
 (ii) Aunt is expected any moment.

**NOTE** 'Father' and 'Aunt' implies 'our father' and 'our aunt'.

(P) In certain phrases. *For example*

- |                    |                     |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| (i) To lose heart. | Last but not least. |
| (ii) To set foot.  | To catch fire.      |
| (iii) To give ear. | To send word.       |
| (iv) By day.       | In hand.            |
| (v) At sunrise.    | By name.            |
| (vi) At home.      | At last.            |

(Q) Study the following phrases carefully

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| (i) In summer, winter                               | + | in the summer season   |
| (ii) From beginning to end                          | + | from the beginning of the day to the end of the day.           |
| (iii) From right to left                            | + | keep to the left.  |
| (iv) At dawn, at midday, at noon, at night, at dusk | + | during the day, in the afternoon, in the evening, in the night |
| (v) Next week (time)                                | - | the next question (number)                                     |
| Last week (time)                                    | - | the last question (number)                                     |

(R) Before such nouns as

'Cattle, gentry, people' etc. When they are used in general sense.

*(Refer to Rule II on Nouns)*

(S) Before little, few. (in negative sense).

- |                   |                  |                               |
|-------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|
| (i) Little sugar  | (hardly any)     |                               |
| (ii) Few students | (hardly any one) | <i>[Refer to Rule II (L)]</i> |

## Rule V

(A) When two or more connected nouns refer to the same person or thing, the article should be used before the first noun. However, the article is used before each noun if they refer to two different persons or objects. *For example*

- (i) The Prime Minister and the President are visiting the town today.  
*(Two different persons holding two different posts.)*
- (ii) The Prime Minister and President of the party is on a visit to the town today.  
*(One person holding two posts.)*

(B) Similarly, one article before the first adjective is used when two or more adjectives qualify the same noun. *For example*

She is wearing a black and a white saree. *(Omit 'a' before 'white')*

(C) If there are two articles before ordinals, use singular noun. In the case of article before one ordinal, noun should be used in plural form. *For example*

- (i) The first and the second **chapter** are very difficult.
- (ii) The first and second **chapters** are very difficult.

**NOTE** The article is not repeated with plural nouns. Verb is plural form in the sentences given in 'C'.

## Work Book Exercise A

**Directions** Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences.

1. My friend always likes to travel by the air since he is a very busy man.
2. Dr. Radha Krishnan was a more famous philosopher than a politician.
3. The Manager and the Executive Director of our hotel is a very energetic person.
4. Whenever I meet him he always makes a mention of his father.
5. Although he has undergone a very costly treatment, he has not been cured of a headache.
6. Those in hurry should realise that speed is no key to success in life.
7. God made country and man made town.
8. It is pity that he does not behave humbly with his parents and friends.
9. Being M.A. only he could not be appointed to the post of a lecturer.
10. He always takes a heavy breakfast because he generally skips lunch.
11. Please go and find out dog so that you may not lose it forever.
12. Snake we saw was very deadly though it left the kitchen quietly.
13. Tonight I shall go to the bed early because I have to leave for Mumbai at dawn tomorrow.
14. Child needs love and affection if he is to be brought up as a healthy young man.
15. It is said that elephant is vindictive by nature and never forgets his enemy.
16. It is very difficult to get a taxi at such a hour as it is already 11 p.m.
17. Do you take a sugar and if so, how much?
18. She lives in first storey of the house and she has to come down quite often.
19. He knows how to play flute. He learnt it while he was a student.
20. It is said that he is a wise man. He cannot err, Vedas may err.
21. These days only rich can afford the hospitality of the costly nursing homes and hospitals coming up all over the country.
22. Rajputs belong to a martial race since they were organised into the force to fight against the oppression of the rulers.
23. What nice mother she is, because she takes care of every small need of her children.
24. What a kind of fellow he is, if his enemies are to be believed.
25. Kapil Dev brought glory to India by winning World Cup in 1983.

## Work Book Exercise B

**Directions** *Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences.*

1. He is as a weak boy as my brother.
2. It is futile to give an advice to a person who would not listen to you.
3. The pride hath a fall, 'Says the Bible.'
4. She is both a virtuous and a beautiful daughter of a successful working mother.
5. He has been sent to the prison several times but has not shown any sign of improvement in his conduct.
6. He was watching the television when I called on him last night.
7. Prince William is a heir to the throne of the Great Britain.
8. Tea we used to get in the Scouting Camp was never to our taste.
9. It was a so hot day that it was impossible to go out shopping.
10. I shall never forget a good deed you did to me, when I was in crisis.
11. The singing is both my vocation and avocation because it is a source of joy and bread to me.
12. Surdas is often called Milton of India although unlike Milton, Surdas had no political ambitions.
13. Higher you go, colder it is.
14. The old woman placed kettle on fire and come back to the bedroom.
15. Never give the ear to the slanderous talk of others because they are always motivated by jealousy.
16. The District Magistrate possesses both the civil and criminal jurisdiction.
17. You must enjoy classical music on radio even if you are not able to understand its true spirit.
18. I have a work to do and so I will reach late.
19. You should be true to a word because it is a characteristic of a gentleman.
20. This young man is in search of an employment because he is in grave financial crisis.
21. Although he is a hard working student, his success in the examination is out of question.
22. Wisdom of Vikramaditya solved many riddles that pepole brought to him for solution.
23. The Chinese is a very difficult language to understand for those who have never been to China.
24. News you broke to his wife made her nervous and she broke down.
25. The lions are carnivorous.



## Rules of Noun

### Rule I

- (A) (a) Uncountable Nouns are used in the singular forms only.  
 (b) Indefinite article is not used before them.  
 (c) They are not used with plural verbs.  
 (d) 'Much' or 'Some' are used in place of 'Many' for denoting plurality.

Some of the important Nouns of this kind are

'Advice, information, hair, luggage, business, work, word (in the sense of promise, message, discussion) mischief, bread, scenery, abuse, vacation, evidence, employment, alphabet, poetry, food, furniture, baggage, fuel, paper, equipment, machinery, material etc'. For example

- (i) He gave me an information. (Omit 'an')  
 (ii) You should be true to your words. (Use 'word' in place of 'words')  
 (iii) He was punished for committing many mischiefs.  
(Use 'much mischief' in place of 'many mischiefs')  
 (iv) Young persons dislike the advices of the elderly people.  
(Use 'advice' in place of 'advices')

- (B) These nouns may be used to denote singularity as follows

- (i) a piece/a word of advice. (ii) a word of abuse  
 (iii) an act of mischief. (iv) a piece of work.  
 (v) a piece/loaf of bread. (vi) an article of luggage.

- (C) These nouns may be used to denote plurality as follows

- (i) much/some advice.  
 (ii) a lot of/many words/many pieces of advice.  
 (iii) two pieces/loaves of bread. (iv) words of abuse.

### Rule II

There are some of the collective nouns which are used with plural verbs. For example

- (a) 'cattle, gentry, peasantry, poultry, clergy, people, majority, folk.'  
 (b) The nouns 'committee, jury, house, ministry, family, mob, crowd, audience, police, team, number, board, staff, public' are used with singular verbs when they are used as a body or group and not as members.  
 (c) When these nouns denote members or individuals, the verb is used in Plural form.  
 (i) Cattles **are** grazing in the field. (Use 'cattle' in place of 'cattles')  
 (ii) Majority **is** in favour of this proposal. (Use 'are' in place of 'is')  
 (iii) The committee **is** unanimous on this issue. (Correct)  
 (iv) The committee **are** divided and there is bitterness among the members. (Correct)  
 (v) The peoples of all the countries should work for peace. (Correct)  
 (vi) The average Hindu family in India **consists** of four members. (Correct)

- (vii) His family **are** not agreed on this point. (Correct)
- (viii) The audience **was** spell bound. (Correct)
- (ix) The audience **were** forbidden to occupy chairs. (Correct)
- (x) The Police **has** become insensitive. (Correct)
- (xi) The Police **were** posted all over the route. (Correct)
- (xii) The team **are** full of high spirits. (Correct)
- (xiii) The team is **at** the top in this competition. (Correct)

**NOTE** 'Peoples' is used when we talk of the people of different countries.

### Rule III

'Offspring, deer, fish, sheep' are expressed as singular or plural only by the use of verb. Both in singular and the plural they have the same form.

- (i) Sheeps are economically useful. (Use 'Sheep' in place of 'Sheeps')
- (ii) A sheep is grazing in the field. (Correct)

**NOTE** 'Fishes' may be used in the sense of different number and kind.

### Rule IV

Some of the nouns (ending in 's' or 'es') are used with singular verb.

- (A) Branches of learning. *For example*  
Mathematics, Physics, Mechanics, Politics, Statistics, Statics, Economics.

**NOTE** Statistics as subject is used with **singular verb**. Statistics when taken as a collection of data is used with **plural verb**.

- (B) Diseases. *For example*  
Mumps, Measles, Rickets etc.
- (C) Games and sports. *For example*  
Billiards, Aquatics, Gymnastics, Athletics etc.
- (D) Titles of books. *For example*  
Three Musketeers, Gulliver's Travels, Arabian Nights, War and Peace, Tales from Shakespeare.
- (E) Descriptive names of countries. *For example*  
United States, United Arab Emirates etc.
- (F) Some other nouns are  
Innings, Series, News, Summons. *For example*
- (i) The measles have broken out in the town. (Use 'has' in place of 'have')
- (ii) Politics are a dirty game. (Use 'is' in place of 'are')
- (iii) These news are disappointing. (Say 'this news is')
- (iv) A/The summons has been served on him. (Correct)
- (v) A series of matches are being played. (Use 'is' in place of 'are')
- (vi) Two series of matches was played last year. (Use 'were' in place of 'was')

**Rule V**

Study the uses of Nouns as singular and plural in forms.

Noun	Used as	Noun	Used as
Wood	Material	Woods	Forest
Water	Material	Waters	Sea
Asset	Quality	Assets	Property
Sand	Material	Sands	Land
Iron	Material	Irons	Chains
Cloth	Material	Clothes	Dress
Abuse	Indecent words	Abuses	Misuses
Work	Labour	Works	Literary writings
Air	Element	Airs	Behaviour
Advice	Suggestion	Advices	Bills
Custom	Habit	Customs	Tax
Effect	Result	Effects	Goods
Colour	Material	Colours	Flag
Fruit	Edible thing	Fruits	Results
Wit	Ability to talk	Wits	Intelligence
Arm	Organ	Arms	Weapons
Good	Advantage/use	Goods	Articles

**Rule VI**

Some of the nouns are generally used in the plural form with plural verb.

- (a) Articles of dress.  
'Trousers, breeches, Jeans'
- (b) Names of instruments.  
'Scissors, spectacles, shears, scales'
- (c) Other nouns such as  
'Alms, thanks, proceeds, riches, contents, credentials, orders, refreshments, requirements, customs, rations, archives, annals, ashes, arrears, assets, stairs, spirits, statistics (data), quarters, earnings, manners, outskirts, savings, auspices (support), surroundings. For example
- (i) My scissors is not sharp. (Use 'are' in place of 'is')
- (ii) My spectacles is very costly. (Use 'are' in place of 'is')
- (iii) A pair of spectacles has been bought by me. (Correct)
- (iv) Order for his transfer has been issued. (Incorrect)
- (v) Orders for his transfer have been issued. (Correct)

**Rule VII**

A **compound noun** (numerical + noun) is not used in plural if a noun does the work of an adjective. For example

- (i) Ten-day tour (ii) A ten-mile race
- (iii) A ten-year old boy (iv) He is ten years old. (Correct)
- (v) A five-rupee note (vi) Five-foot long room

**Rule VIII**

**Nouns expressing number** are used in singular with numerical adjectives.

'Two hundred, two thousand, five dozen, two score, two million, three lakh.'

*For example*

- |   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| (i) I gave him two hundreds rupees.                 | (Omit 's' in 'hundreds') |
| (ii) I gave him five dozens pencils.                | (Omit 's' in 'dozens')   |
| (iii) There are hundreds of partially built houses. | (Correct)                |

**Rule IX****Use of Apostrophe with 's'**

(A) The use of apostrophe with 's' is not correct in the case of non-living things. It is restricted only to living things, time, weight, distance, amount or personified nouns.

- (i) The table's wood. (*Incorrect*)
- (ii) Boy's hand.
- (iii) Time's march.
- (iv) A one-kilometre's journey.
- (v) A rupee's worth.
- (vi) A night's journey.
- (vii) A metre's length.
- (viii) Nature's laws.
- (ix) A week's holiday.

(B) Two nouns in the possessive case denote plural form. When apostrophe with 's' is used with one noun, it expresses singular form. *For example*

- (i) Sheela and Rohit's father. (*the father of both Sheela and Rohit*)
- (ii) Sheela's and Rohit's fathers are meeting today. (*fathers of Sheela and Rohit*)

(C) With compound nouns apostrophe with 's' should be added only with the last word.

- (i) Mother-in-law's behaviour
- (ii) Maid-servant's absence.

(D) Pronouns are written by omitting apostrophe but 's' is added. *For example*

- |                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| (i) Yours truly | (ii) Its colour   |
| (iii) Hers      | (iv) It's (It is) |

(E) Possessive case is indicated by apostrophe without 's' after Plural nouns or words ending with 's'.

- (i) John Keats' poems.
- (ii) Girls' Hostel.
- (iii) Dickens' novels.
- (iv) Jesus' sake.
- (v) Kalidas' works.

(F) (a) 'Else' combined with indefinite pronouns (somebody, any body, nobody etc) is expressed in possessive case as **somebody else's** in place of somebody's else.

(b) The correct expression 'whose else' should be used in place of the wrong expression 'who else's'. However 'who else' is correct.

- (i) This is not my book. This is somebody's else (Say somebody else's)  
 (ii) Who else is coming? (Correct)  
 (iii) Who else's book is this? (Use 'whose else' in place of 'who else's')

**NOTE** 'Who' should be converted into possessive 'whose'. So 'whose else' is correct.

### Rule X

Two adjectives denoting different meanings and qualifying the same noun are considered plural and are used with plural verbs. *For example*

- (i) Cultural and social life in India are changing.  
 (ii) Summer and winter vacation are compulsory in our schools.  
 (Look up Rule V on Articles)

### Rule XI

Noun after preposition is repeated in singular form. *For example*

- (i) Word for word. (ii) Hour after hour.  
 (iii) Door to door.

### Rule XII

The use of fractions.

- (i) One and a half years are wasted. (ii) One and a half hours are wasted.  
 (iii) A year and a half is wasted. (iv) An hour and a half is wasted.

### Rule XIII

A student is required to study the plural forms of certain nouns carefully.

Such nouns alongwith their plural forms are given below

Singular Form	Plural Form	Singular Form	Plural Form
Commander-in-chief	Commanders-in-chief	Medium	Media
Major General	Major Generals	Forum	Forums, Fora
Attorney General	Attorneys General	Stadium	Stadia
Maid servant	Maid servants	Criterion	Criteria
Looker-on	Lookers-on	Phenomenon	Phenomena
Passer by	Passers by	Formula	Formulae
Mother-in-law	Mothers-in-law	Oasis	Oases
Man servant	Men servants	Lacuna	Lacunae
Woman servant	Women servants	Erratum	Errata
M.A.	M.A.'s	Memorandum	Memoranda
Mouse	Mice	Alumnus	Alumni
Ox	Oxen	Syllabus	Syllabi
Datum	Data	Addendum	Addenda

## Work Book Exercise A

**Directions** Spot the error, if any, in the following sentences.

1. Cattles are not allowed to enter this ground.
2. The enemy has received many informations regarding the activities of the army of our neighbouring country.
3. Order has been issued for his transfer to another district but he has not received them so far.
4. The hills of the Uttar Pradesh abound in beautiful sceneries and visitors are attracted to it every year.
5. Although she has studied English for almost a year, she has yet to learn the alphabets.
6. There are two scores of books which are lying unused in the library.
7. Children are prone to making mischiefs if they have nothing to do.
8. Sheeps are economically useful and so they are reared in the hills.
9. I have not gone through the letter and so I am not aware of its content.
10. Twenty cattles were found wandering on the road.
11. I shall not attend the meeting since I have many works to complete within allotted time.
12. It is difficult to find man servants in big cities because they are engaged in other profitable professions.
13. All his sister-in-laws are married and settled in U.K.
14. You should always be true to your words if you are to succeed in life.
15. It is a pity that even five years old boys are engaged in hazardous factories.
16. I gave him two five hundred-rupees notes for depositing in my saving account.
17. It is never my business to give an advice to those who are not sensible enough to deal with their own problems.
18. The committee is divided over the issue of his appointment and this has resulted in much rancour among its members.
19. I don't think it is your house. It is somebody's else.
20. There is a lack of girl's schools in the town and many parents don't like to send their children to co-educational institutions.

## Work Book Exercise B

**Directions** *Spot the error, if any, in the following sentences.*

1. Ration has run out and the District Magistrate has been informed.
2. The table's wood is infested with mite and I am likely to dispose it of.
3. The morale of the army was high because the news coming from the front were very encouraging.
4. The majority likes reading sensational stories and watching western movies.
5. A variety of books is available in the market to help the students qualify the competitive examinations.
6. Variety are the spice of life otherwise life may become dull and drab.
7. Lots of friends come to meet him whenever he visits his home town.
8. He never believes in using a fair means because they are not acceptable in this materialistic age.
9. A plenty of informations about his activities was passed on to his boss.
10. I can't come to you now because a lot of works remains to be done.
11. All the evidences against him were rejected by the High Court.
12. Commander's-in-chief orders arrived late and the forces had to retreat.
13. Have you deposited the proceed in the Bank or not?
14. You can buy the scissors that is sharp.
15. He goes fishing everyday and brings a lot of fishes that his wife cooks for him.
16. The house is made of bricks and stones, not of marbles.
17. A pair of spectacles have been found in the library.
18. This data are very useful to arrive at correct conclusion.
19. What is the criteria of selection in the examination?
20. A farmer was leading oxes to his field for ploughing early in the morning.

# Pronoun

## What is a Pronoun?

Pronoun is a word used in place of a noun in order to avoid repetition of the latter.

### Kinds of Pronoun

1. **Personal Pronouns** Words used in place of nouns referring to persons.

'I, we, you, he, she, it, they' etc.

The Case of Personal Pronouns		Subject	Object	Possessive Adjectives	Possessive Pronouns
Singular	First Person	{ I	me	my	mine
	Plural	{ We	us	our	ours
	Second Person	You	you	your	yours
Singular	Third Person	{ She	her	her	hers
		{ He	him	his	his
		{ It	It	Its	—
Plural		They	them	their	theirs

2. **Demonstrative Pronouns** Words used for nouns to point out objects.

'This, that, these, those' etc.

(i) **This** is my book.

(ii) **That** is her house.

But in the following examples 'This' and 'That' are used as demonstrative adjectives.

(i) This book

(ii) That house

3. **Relative Pronouns** Words used for nouns to express functions relating to 'who, which, that, whose, whom' etc.

(i) The man **who** has just entered the room is my friend.

(ii) The book **that** I bought is very costly.

4. **Interrogative Pronouns** Words used for nouns to ask questions.

**Who? What? Which? Whose? Whom?**

(i) **Who** took my bag?

(ii) **Whom** did you meet?

(iii) **Whose** books are these?

(iv) **What** are you doing?

(v) **What** shirt is this?

(Interrogative adjective)

(vi) **Whose** book is this?

(Interrogative adjective)

5. **Indefinite Pronouns** Words used for nouns in vague and general meaning 'everybody, nobody, somebody, either, neither, all, much, several, each, others, another' etc.

6. **Reflexive Pronouns** Words used as forms of Personal pronouns for emphasis. 'myself, ourselves, himself, themselves, yourself' etc.

7. **Distributive Pronouns** Used for individuals and objects referring to them as one at a time.

'either, neither, each, every, none, anyone' etc.

(i) **Either** of the two sisters is staying here.

(ii) **Neither** of his arms is defective.

(iii) You can take **either** room.

(Distributive adjective)

(iv) You can talk to **each** boy.

(Distributive adjective)

8. **Reciprocal Pronouns** Words used to point out mutual relationship.

'each other, one another' etc.

(i) Both the brothers love **each other**.

(ii) Indians should not fight with **one another**.

## Rules of Pronoun

### Rule I

When the subject of the verb is the receiver of the action, the action is said to be reflected. Such verbs are used reflexively.

'Acquit, absent, avail, reconcile, amuse, resign, avenge, revenge, enjoy, exert, apply, adapt, adjust, pride' overreach etc are used reflexively. For example

(i) You should avail yourself, of every chance in life.

(Correct)

(ii) They enjoyed picture last evening.

(No reflexive pronoun is needed)

(iii) They enjoyed during summer vacation.

(Place 'themselves' after 'enjoyed')

(iv) He resigned himself to his failure.

(Correct)

(v) The former DM acquitted very efficiently.

(Place 'himself' after 'acquitted')

(vi) He was determined to avenge the death of his wife.

(Correct)

### Rule II

The following verbs are not used reflexively.

'Keep, stop, turn, qualify, bathe, move, rest, hide' are not used reflexively.

For example

(i) You should keep yourself from bad boys.

(Drop 'yourself')

(ii) He has qualified himself for the post.

(Drop 'himself')

(iii) He hid himself in the room.

(Drop 'himself') (Int. Verb)

(iv) The thief hid money under the carpet.

(Correct) (Tran. Verb)

**Rule III**

A reflexive pronoun cannot act as a subject or object of a verb unless it is preceded by pronoun or noun concerned. *For example*

- (i) Myself will see to it that you get your share of property. (*Change 'myself' into 'I'*)
- (ii) Yourself and he reached there in time. (*Change 'yourself' into 'you'*)
- (iii) I myself like him. (*Correct*)
- (iv) Raj will do it for myself and my sister. (*Change 'myself' to 'me'*)

**Rule IV**

(a) The verb **'to be'** should be followed by subjective form when the complement is pronoun. *For example*

- (i) It is me who have brought you home. (*Change 'me' into 'I'*)
- (ii) Was it her who did it for you? (*Change 'her' into 'she'*)
- (iii) It will be us who will buy a new house. (*Change 'us' into 'we'*)

**Rule V**

Verbs and Prepositions are followed by objective case of a pronoun.

- (i) Between you and I Suhani is intelligent. (*Say 'me'*)
- (ii) She is teaching Rohit and 'she'. (*Say 'her'*)
- (iii) Let they go. (*Say 'them'*)

**Rule VI**

(a) Good manners require that the order of singular pronouns should be **second person, third person and first person** (231).

(b) **But in plural 'we' is used before 'you' and 'they' after 'you'** (123). The latter order is also observed while referring to unpleasant acts. *For example*

- (i) I and you will attend her wedding tomorrow. (*Correct use is 'You' and 'I'*)
- (ii) He and you will share the mangoes. (*Use 'You' and 'he'*)
- (iii) You, Mohan and I will watch movie tonight. (*Correct*)
- (iv) We, you and they are leaving for Mumbai tomorrow. (*Correct*)
- (v) You and I will be punished. (*Unpleasant act, use 'I and you'*)

**Rule VII**

Use of possessive adjectives (Possessive case of the pronoun)

(A) When two subjects are joined by

**'As well as, together with, along with, and not, in addition to, like, unlike, with' rather than, except, no less than, nothing but, more** (noun) **than one**, the possessive case of the pronoun (possessive adjective) is used in accordance with the first subject.

(B) When two subjects are joined by

**'Either-or, neither-nor, not only-but also, none-but.'** the possessive case of pronoun (possessive adjective) is used according to the nearest subject.

(C) When the pronouns

'Each, every, neither, either, anyone' many a, more than one (possessive adjective) are used as subject, the possessive case should be third person singular. They may refer to two or more than two objects or persons.

(D) When 'one' is used as a subject, the possessive case of the pronoun should be according to one. (*i.e.*, one's)

(E) When a pronoun is used for more than one noun or pronouns of different persons, the possessive case is in the form of first person plural (**our**) and second person plural (**your**). *For example*

- (i) Each boy and each teacher is required to bring their luggage. *(Use 'his' in place of 'their')*
- (ii) One should do his duty sincerely. *(Use 'one's' in place of 'his')*
- (iii) Neither the students nor-the teacher was playing in their proper uniform. *(Use 'his' for 'their')*
- (iv) Reena as well as her children has returned to their home. *(Use 'her' for 'their')*
- (v) Only you and I have brought your books. *(Use 'our' for 'your')*
- (vi) You and he completed their work. *(Use 'your' for 'their')*
- (vii) Have you, he and I received their letters? *(Use 'our' for 'their')*
- (viii) Neither of the two brothers has brought their bedding. *(Use 'his' for 'their')*
- (ix) Each one of us is doing our duty properly. *(Use 'his' for 'our')*
- (x) Every one should do one's duty. *(Use 'his' for 'one's')*
- (xi) My sister along with her friends is doing her job at Delhi. *(Correct)*

### Rule VIII

A noun or pronoun in the possessive case should not be used sometimes with the nouns such as

'Separation, leave, excuse, mention, report, pardon, sight, favour.' *For example*

- (i) Your separation is very painful to me. *(Say 'separation from you')*
- (ii) At his sight the robbers fled. *(Say 'At the sight of him')*
- (iii) I beg your favour, please. *(favour off/from you)*
- (iv) She did make mention of you. *(Correct, 'your mention' is wrong)*

### Rule IX

'Either, neither, each other'

are used in speaking of two persons or things. *For example*

'Anyone, none, one another'

are used while referring to more than two persons or things. *For example*

- (i) Indians should never fight with each other. *(Use 'one another' in place of 'each other')*
- (ii) Anyone of his eyes is defective. *(Use 'either' in place of 'anyone')*
- (iii) None of his arms was wounded in the accident. *(Use 'neither' for 'none')*
- (iv) Either of his four sons has sold his property after his death. *(Use 'anyone' for 'Either')*

**Rule X**

While writing question tag the subject and verb must be according to the main sentence. For example

- |  |                         |
|--|-------------------------|
| (i) Our teacher is intelligent, isn't it?        | (Use 'isn't he?')       |
| (ii) The boys are not going on picnic, are they? | (Correct)               |
| (iii) They went to Delhi yesterday, isn't it?    | (Use 'didn't they?')    |
| (iv) She comes here daily, does she?             | (Use 'doesn't she?')    |
| (v) She will help me, won't she?                 | (Correct)               |
| (vi) I shall not play Shan't I?                  | (Shan't is not correct) |
| (vii) Shall not play,                            | (Correct)               |
| (viii) He is seldom absent, is he?               | (Correct)               |
| (ix) We need not worry, need we?                 | (Correct)               |
| (x) I used to write poetry, didn't I?            | (Correct)               |
| (xi) We have a book, don't we?                   | (Correct)               |
| (xii) You have taken food, haven't you?          |                         |

**Imperative Sentence**

- |   |           |
|---|-----------|
| (xiii) Don't close the room, will you?    | (Correct) |
| (xiv) Close the room, won't you/will you? | (Correct) |
| (xv) Let them stay here, will they?       | (Correct) |
| (xvi) Let us stay here, shall we?         | (Correct) |
| (xvii) Let us play, shall we?             | (Correct) |

**Indefinite Pronouns**

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| (xviii) Everything is settled, isn't it?                     | (Correct) |
| (xix) Nothing is settled, Is it?                             | (Correct) |
| (xx) None of your friends likes her, do they?                | (Correct) |
| (xxi) Few students are working hard, are they?               | (Correct) |
| (xxii) Everybody can speak English, can't they?              | (Correct) |
| (xxiii) No one can speak English, can they?                  | (Correct) |
| (xxiv) One of/most of/all of you will go there, won't you?   | (Correct) |
| (xxv) One of/most of/all of us shall go there, shan't we?    | (Correct) |
| (xxvi) One of/most of/all of them will go there, won't they? | (Correct) |

- NOTE**
- (i) The negative statements having words such as '**hardly, seldom, barely, scarcely, few, little**' are followed by ordinary question tag. (Affirmative)
  - (ii) With '**everybody, everyone, somebody, someone, nobody, no one, anybody, none, neither, either**'. 'They' is used in question tag.

**Rule XI Use of Both**

'Both' should be followed by 'and' and not by 'as well as', Negative is avoided with Both. For example

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| (i) Both you as well as my brother are going to attend her marriage tomorrow. | (Use 'and' in place of 'as well as') |
| (ii) Both of them are not going there.  | (Incorrect)                          |
| Neither of them is going there.   | (Correct)                            |

**Rule XII**

'Which' is used in place of 'Who' when we are referring to a choice between two or more than two things or persons. *For example*

- (i) Of the two sisters who is the more intelligent. *(Use 'which' in place of 'who')*
- (ii) Who is your father in the crowd? *(Use 'which' in place of 'who')*
- (iii) Who is better of the two dancers in our society?  
*(Place 'the' before better and change 'who' into 'which')*

**Rule XIII**

Possessive case We don't use noun after possessive case of a pronoun. *For example*

- (i) This book is mine = This is **my** book.
- (ii) This shirt is yours = This is **your** shirt.
- (iii) **Our** is a populous country. *(Say 'Ours')*

**Rule XIV**

The relative pronoun should be expressed according to its relation with the verb of the adjective clause. 'Who' is used as a subject of a verb of adjective clause and 'whom' is used as an object of a verb of adjective clause. *For example*

- (i) He was talking of the women who, he said, he met in America.  
*(Use 'whom' in place of 'who')*
- (ii) She is the kind of lady whom, every body knows, is intelligent.  
*(Use 'who' in place of 'whom')*

**Rule XV**

The use of '**But**' as a relative pronoun. *For example*

- (i) There was none but wept. *(Who did not weep)*
- (ii) There is no country but is corrupt. *(Which is not corrupt)*

**Rule XVI**

The use of the 'same' as pronoun is wrong. *For example*

- (i) I shall give you a book and **the same** is very useful. (Say 'it' for the 'same')
- (ii) He bought a house and is living **in the same**. (Say 'it' for the 'same')

**Rule XVII**

'What' is used without an antecedent and it refers to things only. *For example*

- (i) It is incredible what she said.
- (ii) I don't believe in the words what she uttered. *(Use 'which'/'that' in place of 'what')*
- (iii) I don't believe in what you say. (Correct)
- (iv) I know which you say. (Say 'what')

**NOTE** For detailed study of relative pronouns look up **adjective clause** in the chapter on **Clauses**.

## Work Book Exercise A

**Directions** Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences.

1. He bought the books and put it in the bag.
2. Civil servants should acquit efficiently in the service of a common man.
3. My father always advises me that I should keep myself from bad boys.
4. Avail every chance that comes your way lest you should repent in the long run.
5. There should be no misunderstanding between your father and she.
6. It was Mohan or her who came here last night and kept on knocking at the door.
7. Let Rohit and she complete this job as they like to do it.
8. Was it him who gave money to buy new books?
9. He and myself alone will complete this work because we don't need the help of anyone.
10. You, I and he should take examination seriously.
11. It was with great difficulty that each of the brothers could get their share of property.
12. They that hanker after fame and money are likely to be disappointed.
13. I am sad to learn that you and your brother have lost their money in share market.
14. Both he as well as I are going to Delhi tomorrow to buy new motorbike.
15. This is only one of her novels that have been published till date.

## Work Book Exercise B

**Directions** Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences.

1. Which we saw surprised all and one present at the function.
2. She is the woman who, I know, you can always rely upon.
3. Don't respect such persons who have no respect for elders.
4. When warned he stopped himself at once.
5. He is the same person who was present at the wedding party last night.
6. The only person who can read and write English well is my friend.
7. The Saraswati is a river whose origin has always been a matter of conjecture.
8. They that tell a lie should not be depended upon for doing anything right.
9. My friend is honest and hard working, isn't it?
10. They did not go to attend the marriage of their neighbours' daughter, didn't they?
11. Your separation is very painful to me.
12. It is difficult to say who is the better of the two sisters.
13. He is the same man who always likes to boast of his bravery.
14. All which glitters is not gold.
15. I never expected that you would provide me with such a servant that was not reliable at all.



14. In evaluating your progress I have taken into account your classroom  
 a b  
performance, your receptivity and how you have improved. No error  
 c d e
15. A body of volunteers has been organised to help the faculty in their attempt  
 a b c d  
 to raise funds. No error  
 e
16. Everyone of the men present here has given a day's pay  
 a b c  
as their contribution to the fund. No error  
 d e
17. Neither he nor his brother can walk faster than me. No error  
 a b c d e
18. Whom did you mean to hurt by your unkind remarks except Sita and I. No error  
 a b c d e
19. Two external men and yourself will correct the answer-books. No error  
 a b c d e
20. Who, of the two do you think, will be dismissed first? No error  
 a b c d e
21. We will learn a lot by attending the English course, isn't it? No error  
 a b c d e
22. I would like you to meet my cousin brother who has just returned from  
 a b c  
the States. No error  
 d e
23. India is one of the leading film producing country in the world. No error  
 a b c d e
24. This is the man whom, I remember, had picked my pocket. No error  
 a b c d e
25. He tried all the drawers in his old desk but could not find his purse in  
 a b c  
anyone of it. No error  
 d e
26. I will have both the blue or the black pen. No error  
 a b c d e
27. A legislation that restricts the fundamental rights of a citizen has  
 a b c  
no legal force. No error  
 d e
28. After every participant had had three minutes to express their opinion the  
 a b c d  
 debate was thrown open to the audience. No error  
 e

29. My choice is quite different from your's. No error  
 a b c d e
30. The great poet and dramatist the Kalidas is quite often described as the  
 a b c  
Shakespeare of Sanskrit literature. No error  
 d e
31. You should make it a rule never to interfere with other affairs. No error  
 a b c d e
32. At that very moment they were showing signs of growing nervousness,  
 a b c  
isn't it? No error  
 d e
33. She has a remarkably kindly disposition who wins her friends whenever  
 a b c d  
she goes. No error  
 e
34. It was generally agreed that the speeches of their Prime Minister were better  
 a b c  
than the Ministers. No error  
 d e
35. She is not leaving Dehradun tomorrow as order for her transfer have been  
 a b c d  
cancelled. No error  
 e
36. Myself and Gopalan will take care of the function on Sunday. No error  
 a b c d e
37. Whatever work that which you undertake put your best efforts in it. No error  
 a b c d e
38. As it was Ranjan's first interview he dressed himself in his most formal suit.  
 a b c d  
No error  
 e
39. The party chief made it a point to state that the Prime Minister and the Union  
 a b  
Home Minister should also come and see what his party men had seen. No error  
 c d e
40. If the teacher is good the students will respond positively to them. No error  
 a b c d e
41. Mr. Sunil Pawar, our representative, he will attend the meeting on our behalf.  
 a b c d  
No error  
 e
42. He could not plan his strategy until he knew whom his opponents could be.  
 a b c d  
No error  
 e

43. Last summer he went to his uncle's village and enjoyed very much. No error  
 a b c d e
44. May I know who you want to see please? No error  
 a b c d e
45. The scientist must follow his hunches and his data wherever it may lead. No error  
 a b c d e
46. Wherever they go, Indians easily adapt to local circumstances. No error  
 a b c d e
47. The ruling party stood for implementation of the Bill and was ready to stake  
their political existence. No error  
 a b c  
 d e
48. The teacher was busy and asked three of us to divide the work and do it. No error  
 a b c d e
49. He was fascinated by insects and the more he studied their habits  
greater was his fascination. No error  
 a b c  
 d e
50. I go to the bed at eight every night. No error  
 a b c d e
51. Troy was taken by Greeks; this formed the basis of a story  
which has become famous. No error  
 a b c  
 d e
52. A person I met in the theatre was the playwright himself. No error  
 a b c d e
53. Dr. Chandra is only dentist in our village. No error  
 a b c d e
54. The majority of the computer professionals recommends  
that effective measures should be taken against software piracy. No error  
 a b  
 c d e
55. On my request Lalit introduced me to his friend who is singer and a scientist.  
 a b c d  
No error  
 e

# ANSWERS

## UNIT III

### 9. Articles

#### Work Book Exercise A

1. Drop 'the' before 'air'
2. Drop 'a' before 'politician'
3. Drop 'the' before 'executive'
4. Drop 'a' before 'mention'
5. Drop 'a' before 'headache'
6. Insert 'a' before 'hurry'
7. Insert 'the' before 'country and town'
8. Insert 'a' before 'pity'
9. Insert 'an' before 'MA'
10. No error
11. Insert 'the' before 'dog'
12. Insert 'the' before 'snake'
13. Drop 'the' before 'bed'
14. Insert 'a' before 'child'
15. Insert 'the' before 'elephant'
16. Insert 'an' before 'hour'
17. Drop 'A' before 'sugar'
18. Insert 'the' before 'first'
19. Insert 'the' before 'flute'
20. Insert 'the' before 'Vedas'
21. Insert 'the' before 'rich'
22. Insert 'the' before 'Rajputs'
23. Insert 'a' before 'nice'
24. Drop 'a' before 'kind' and insert it before 'fellow'
25. Insert 'the' before 'World Cup'

#### Work Book Exercise B

1. Add 'a' before 'boy' by removing 'a' before weak
2. Drop 'an' before 'advice'
3. Drop 'the' before 'pride'
4. Drop 'a' before 'beautiful'
5. Drop 'the' before 'prison'
6. Drop 'the' before 'television'
7. 'an' in place of 'a'
8. Insert 'the' before 'tea'
9. Insert 'a' before 'day'
10. 'the' in place of 'a' before 'good'
11. Drop 'the' before 'singing'
12. Insert 'the' before 'Milton'
13. Insert 'the' before 'higher and colder'
14. Insert 'the' before 'fire'
15. Drop 'the' before 'ear'
16. Insert 'the' before 'criminal'
17. Insert 'the' before 'radio'
18. Drop 'a' before 'work' or use 'a piece of work'
19. Drop 'a' before 'word'
20. Drop 'an' before 'employment'
21. Insert 'the' before 'question'
22. Insert 'the' before 'wisdom'
23. Drop 'the' before 'Chinese'
24. Insert 'the' before 'news'
25. Drop 'the' before 'lions'.

### 10. Noun

#### Work Book Exercise A

1. 'Cattle' in place of 'Cattles'
2. 'many pieces of information'/much information
3. 'Orders have' in place of 'Order has'
4. 'scenery' in place of 'sceneries'
5. 'alphabet' in place of 'alphabets'

6. 'score' in place of 'scores'
7. 'mischief' in place of 'mischiefs'
8. 'Sheep are' in place of 'Sheeps are'
9. 'contents' in place of 'content'
10. 'Twenty head of cattle' in place of 'Twenty cattles'
11. 'much work' in place of 'many works'
12. 'men servants' in place of 'man servants'
13. 'sisters-in-law' in place of 'sister-in-laws'
14. 'word' in place of 'words'
15. 'five year old boys' in place of 'five years old boys.'
16. 'rupee' in place of 'rupees'
17. 'advice'/'a piece of advice'
18. 'are' in place of 'is'
19. 'somebody else's' in place of 'somebody's else'
20. 'girls' school' in place of 'girl's school'

### Work Book Exercise B

1. 'Rations have' in place of 'Ration has'
2. 'The wood of the table' in place of 'Table's wood'
3. 'was very encouraging' in place of 'were very encouraging'
4. 'like' in place of 'likes'
5. 'are' in place of 'is'
6. 'is' in place of 'are'
7. No error, 'a lot' of and 'lots of' (both are correct)
8. Remove 'a' before 'fair means'
9. 'information' in place of 'informations'
10. 'work' in place of 'works'
11. 'evidence' in place of 'evidences' and 'was' in place of 'were'
12. 'Commander-in-Chief's' in place of 'commander's-in-chief'
13. 'proceeds' in place of 'proceed'
14. 'are' in place of 'is'
15. 'fish' in place of 'fishes'
16. Say 'brick and stone marble'
17. 'has been' in place of 'have been'
18. 'These data' in place of 'This data'
19. 'criterion' in place of 'criteria'
20. 'oxen' in place of 'oxes'

## 11. Pronoun

### Work Book Exercise A

- |                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 1. 'them' in place of 'it'  | 2. 'acquit themselves' in place of 'acquit'     |
| 3. Drop 'myself'            | 4. 'Avail yourself of' in place of 'Avail of'   |
| 5. 'her' in place of 'she'  | 6. 'she' in place of 'her'                      |
| 7. 'her' in place of 'she'  | 8. 'Was it he' in place of 'Was it him'         |
| 9. 'I' in place of 'myself' | 10. 'You, he and I' in place of 'You, I and he' |

- |                                |                                    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 11. 'his' in place of 'their'  | 12. 'those' in place of 'they'     |
| 13. 'your' in place of 'their' | 14. 'and' in place of 'as well as' |
| 15. 'has' in place of 'have'   |                                    |

**Work Book Exercise B**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. 'What' in place of 'which'                           | 2. 'whom' in place of 'who'                |
| 3. 'as' in place of 'who'                               | 4. Drop 'himself'                          |
| 5. 'that' in place of 'who'                             | 6. 'that' in place of 'who'                |
| 7. 'origin of which' in place of 'whose origin'         | 8. 'those' in place of 'they'              |
| 9. 'isn't he ?' in place of 'isn't it?'                 | 10. 'did they?' in place of 'didn't they?' |
| 11. 'separation from you' in place of 'your separation' |  |
| 12. 'which' in place of 'who'                           | 13. 'that' in place of 'who'               |
| 14. 'that' in place of 'which'                          | 15. 'as' in place of 'that'                |

**Review Exercise**

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. (a) Say 'this kind'               | 2. (d) 'his arrival' for 'their arrival' |
| 3. (a) Place 'The' before 'book'     | 4. (d) Use 'they'                        |
| 5. (c) Say 'he' for 'you'            | 6. (d) Use 'one's'                       |
| 7. (d) Say 'their picnic'            | 8. (c) Say 'seat'                        |
| 9. (b) Say 'had been I'              | 10. (b) Use 'who' for 'whom'             |
| 11. (d) Say 'the flue'               | 12. (b) Say 'so much work'               |
| 13. (b) Say 'Mohan's'                | 14. (a) Use 'while' for 'in'             |
| 15. (d) Say 'in its attempt'         | 16. (d) Say 'his contribution'           |
| 17. (d) Say 'than I'                 | 18. (d) Say 'me'                         |
| 19. (b) Say 'you'                    | 20. (a) say 'which' for 'who'            |
| 21. (d) Say 'won't we'               | 22. (c) Delete 'brother'                 |
| 23. (c) Say 'countries'              | 24. (c) Say 'who' for 'whom'             |
| 25. (d) Say 'anyone of them'         | 26. (d) Use 'and' for 'or'               |
| 27. (a) Use 'The' for 'A'            | 28. (d) Say 'his'                        |
| 29. (d) Correct form is 'yours'      | 30. (b) Delete 'the' before 'Kalidas'    |
| 31. (d) Say 'other's' for 'other'    | 32. (d) Say 'weren't they'               |
| 33. (c) Say 'that' or 'which'        | 34. (d) Say 'than those of Ministers'    |
| 35. (c) Say 'orders'                 | 36. (a) Say Gopalan and I.               |
| 37. (b) Remove 'that'                | 38. (b) Delete 'himself'                 |
| 39. (d) Say 'their'                  | 40. (d) Say 'him' for 'them'             |
| 41. (b) Omit 'he'                    | 42. (c) Say 'who' for 'whom'             |
| 43. (d) Say 'enjoyed himself'        | 44. (b) Say 'whom'                       |
| 45. (d) Say 'they/these' for 'it'    | 46. (c) Add 'themselves' after 'adapt'   |
| 47. (d) Say 'its' for 'their'        | 48. (c) Say 'of us'                      |
| 49. (d) Say 'the greater'            | 50. (b) Say 'go to bed'                  |
| 51. (b) Say 'the Greeks'             | 52. (a) Say 'The person'                 |
| 53. (b) Say 'the only'               | 54. (b) Say 'recommend'                  |
| 55. (d) Say 'a singer and scientist' |  |

## Unit IV

# 12

# Adjective

## What is an Adjective?

Adjective is a word that tells us about or add to the meaning of a noun. *For example*

- (i) She is a kind lady. (ii) I like this pen.  
(iii) She lives in a large house. (iv) He is a strong player.

There are following two classes of adjectives

- (i) Descriptive adjective (ii) Determiner adjective

Descriptive adjective denotes the quality, size, colour, shape etc of a noun.

**Position of Adjectives** Descriptive adjectives are used both attributively and predicatively while Determiner adjectives are used only before the noun.

- She is an honest girl. (Attributive use)  
The girl is honest. (Predicative use)

## Kinds of Adjectives

### (A) Descriptive Adjectives

Adjective of Quality

Ugly, heavy, dry, good, red

### (B) Determiner Adjectives

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (i) <b>Demonstrative Adjectives</b>             | This, that, these, those                                    |
| (ii) <b>Distributive Adjectives</b>             | Each, every, either, neither                                |
| (iii) <b>Quantitative Adjectives</b>            | Some, any, no, little                                       |
| (iv) <b>Numerical Adjectives</b>                | few, many all, several, one, first                          |
| (v) <b>Interrogative Adjectives</b>             | Which, what, whose  |
| (vi) <b>Possessive Adjectives</b>               | My, our, your, his, her, their, its                         |
| (vii) <b>Present/Past Participle Adjectives</b> | A moving bus, a wounded driver, a burnt man, tiring journey |
| (viii) <b>Relative Adjectives</b>               | who, which, that  |
| (ix) <b>Emphatic Adjectives</b>                 | Own, such, same, very                                       |
| (x) <b>Proper Adjectives</b>                    | Indian, Asian, American                                     |
| (xi) <b>Exclamatory Adjectives</b>              | What, which, how  |

### (C) Articles as Determiners

A, An, The (See Chapter on Articles)

**Distinction between Adjectives and Pronouns****1. Demonstrative Adjectives and Demonstrative Pronouns**

- (i) Please get me that book. (Adjective)  
 (ii) That is my book. (Pronoun)

**2. Possessive Adjectives and Possessive Pronouns**

- (i) This is my book. (Adjective)  
 (ii) This book is mine. (Pronoun)  
 (iii) It is her vanity box. (Adjective)  
 (iv) This vanity box is hers. (Pronoun)

**3. Distributive Adjectives and Distributive Pronouns**

- (i) Either boy has stolen my book. (Adjective)  
 (ii) Neither book will serve my purpose. (Adjective)  
 (iii) I do not like either of the sisters. (Pronoun)  
 (iv) We bought neither of the bikes. (Pronoun)

**NOTE** **Every** is only adjective and it cannot be used as determiner. But each can be used both as adjective and pronoun.

- (v) Every boy was present. (Adjective)  
 (vi) Each boy was present. (Adjective)  
 (vii) Each of the boys will come. (Pronoun)  
 (viii) Everyone of them is wasting money. (Pronoun)

**Rules of Adjective****Rule I**

Generally speaking **adjective** is used when the quality of a noun and pronoun rather than the action of a verb is expressed.

**Adverb** is used to modify the action of a verb, an adjective, an adverb. *For example*

- (i) She is a skilful dancer. (quality)  
 (ii) She dances skilfully. (action)  
 (iii) Sonu's act was thoughtful. (quality)  
 (iv) Sonu acted thoughtfully. (action)

**Rule II**

The verbs given below are **linking verbs**

Some verbs are not modified by adverbs. 'Be, become, seem, appear, taste, smell, sound, feel, turn, get, grow, keep, look, make, prove etc.

- (i) Her voice sounds harsh.  
 (ii) She appears sad.  
 (iii) I feel sick.  
 (iv) She has grown wise.  
 (v) Mona is smart.

**NOTE** The distinction between the following sentences

1. (a) She **looked** calm and quiet. *(Linking verb, Correct)*  
 (b) She looked at her angry husband calmly and quietly. *(In a calm and quiet manner, Correct)*
2. (a) The mangoes taste sweetly. *(Use sweet)*  
 (b) She talks sweetly. *(Correct)*

### Rule III

There are some adjectives which don't admit of any comparative and superlative degree. Such adjectives denote absolute position.

'Perfect, unique, ideal, chief, universal, extreme, complete, entire, excellent, absolute, impossible, eternal, supreme' etc. *For example*

- (i) I have never seen a more complete book on General Studies. *(Drop 'more')*
- (ii) Happiness is the chiefest aim of mankind. *(Use 'chief')*
- (iii) How can divided India become the most supreme power? *(Remove 'the most')*

### Rule IV

The comparative adjectives such as

'Prior, junior, senior, superior, inferior, prefer (verb), preferable, elder' etc are followed by 'to' instead of 'than'.

Nor are they used in comparative degree.

- (i) He is senior than me in service. *(Use 'to' in place of 'than')*
- (ii) Lemon juice is preferable than tea. *(Use 'to' in place of 'than')*
- (iii) My sister is elder than me by two years. *(Use 'to' in place of 'than')*
- (iv) She prefers coffee rather than tea. *('rather than' in place of 'to' is correct.)*
- (v) She is comparatively smarter than her husband. *(Use smart)*
- (vi) She is more senior to her boss in service. *(Remove 'more')*
- (vii) Milk is more preferable to tea. *(Remove 'more')*

**NOTE** 'Rather than' may be used for 'to' after 'prefer'. (iv)

### Rule V

Note carefully the distinction among the following adjectives

<b>Little</b> is used for quantity. (Little, less, least)	<b>Few</b> is used for number. (Few, fewer, fewest)
<b>Little</b> means hardly any. (Negative sense)	<b>Few</b> means hardly anyone/anything. (Negative sense)
<b>A little</b> means not much (some). (Affirmative meaning)	<b>A few</b> means not many (some). (Affirmative meaning)
<b>The little</b> means not much but all.	<b>The few</b> means not many but all.
<b>Some</b> is used in affirmative and while making request	<b>Any</b> is used for negative and interrogative sentences and in the sense of every

in interrogative.	( <b>No any/Not any</b> are wrong expressions.)
<b>Some</b> is used as an adjective.	if any
<b>Somewhat</b> is used as an adverb.	<b>Further</b> means additional.
<b>Farther</b> means more distant. ( <i>Far, farther, farthest</i> )	<b>Another</b> means additional one. ( <i>More</i> )
<b>Other</b> means the second of the two.	<b>Elder/Eldest</b> is used for persons only in the case of blood relations. ( <i>Old, elder, eldest</i> )
<b>Older/Oldest</b> is used for persons ( <i>not blood relation</i> ) and things. ( <i>Old, older, oldest</i> )	It refers to age only.
It refers both to age and time.	<b>Latter</b> is the opposite of former. ( <i>Refers to position</i> )
<b>Later</b> is the opposite of earlier. ( <i>Refers to time</i> )	Last means last of all.
<b>Latest</b> means recent, last up to now only. ( <i>Late, later, latest</i> ) [ <i>Time</i> ]	( <i>Late, latter, last</i> ) ( <i>Position</i> )

**NOTE** Little and few cannot qualify the words 'quantity' and 'Number' Small is used to qualify these words.

### Now study these sentences

- (i) Little common sense can bring success to you. (Use 'a little')
- (ii) Little that she did for me is unforgettable. (Use 'The' before 'little')
- (iii) Little knowledge is a dangerous thing. (Use 'a' before 'little')
- (iv) I requested him to bring me few books. (Use 'a few')
- (v) Few days I passed in her company were exciting. (Use 'The few')
- (vi) There are less passengers in the compartment today. (Use 'fewer')
- (vii) There are five students less in the class. (Correct)
- (viii) I have ten rupees less to pay. (Correct)
- (ix) Could you please give me some money? (Correct)
- (x) Have you brought some gold for her? (Use 'any' in place of 'some')
- (xi) Little money you are earning should not be wasted (use the before little)
- (xii) She was some angry. (Use 'somewhat' in place of 'some')
- (xiii) She expressed somewhat anger (say 'some anger')
- (xiv) I have no any money in my pocket. (Drop 'any')
- (xv) Moradabad is further from Delhi than Meerut. (Use 'farther' in place of 'further')
- (xvi) No farther help from government is required. (Use 'further' in place of 'farther')
- (xvii) I am still thirsty, please give me other glass of water. (Say 'another' in place of 'other')
- (xviii) My oldest sister is living in Chicago these days. (Use 'eldest' in place of 'oldest')
- (xix) My sister is elder to me. (Correct)
- (xx) My friend is older than I. (Correct)
- (xxi) She came latter than I. (Use 'later' for time)

- (xvii) Reena and Heena are two sisters but the later is more intelligent than the former. *(Use 'latter' for position)*
- (xviii) Jeans are the last rage of young generation. *(Use 'latest' in place of 'last')*

**NOTE** In sentence (vii) & (viii) 'less' has been used in place of 'few' (number) because 'definite numerical adjectives + plural nouns' are followed by 'less'.

### Rule VI

When two adjectives qualify the same noun, both the adjectives should be expressed in the same degree. *For example*

- (i) She is the most active and energetic social worker in our club. *(Use 'most' before 'energetic')*
- (ii) She is both cleverer and intelligent than her sister. *(Use 'more' before 'intelligent')*

### Rule VII

**Ordinal is placed before numerical adjective.** *For example*

- (i) You must study the two first chapters of the book. *(Use 'the first two')*
- (ii) The two or last three lessons of your book are worth reading. *(Use 'The last two or three')*

### Rule VIII

The comparative adjectives ending in 'er' (*i.e.*, cleverer) should be used as 'more clever' while comparing the two qualities of one and the same thing or a person.

*For example*

- (i) She is cleverer than honest. *(Use 'more clever')*
- (ii) She is more clever than her sister. *(Use 'cleverer' in place of 'more clever')*

### Rule IX

The expression 'these' and 'those' should not be used with the singular nouns '**kind**', '**type**' and '**sort**'. *For example*

- (i) I will not do these kind/sort of acts. *(Use 'this kind/sort' for 'these kind/sort')*
- (ii) This type of articles are not allowed into the hall. *(Use 'is' for 'are')*

### Rule X

**Note Carefully the use of 'other & else' in comparative and superlative degrees.** *For example*

- (i) She is a best teacher. *(Use 'a very good teacher')*
- (ii) She is the most intelligent person. *(Use 'a most' in the sense of very)*
- (iii) My brother is the smartest player of all others in the team. *(Remove 'others')*
- (iv) She is better than anybody in the class. *(Use 'anybody else')*
- (v) The Ganga is more sacred than any river of India. *(Use 'other' after 'any')*
- (vi) He is the most corrupt politician than anybody in the country. *(Use 'of all' in place of 'than anybody')*

- (vii) This novel is the most interesting of any in the library. (Use 'of all' in place of 'of any')
- (viii) No writer in India was so famous as RK Narayan. (Use 'other' after 'No')
- (ix) His condition is good today. (Say 'better' in place of 'good').
- (x) She is equally intelligent as my brother. (Use 'as' in place of 'equally')
- (xi) The Nile is longer than any other river in India. (Remove 'other')
- (xii) The Nile is longer than any other river in the world. (Correct)
- (xiii) She is taller than any other boy in the class. (Remove 'other')
- (xiv) The weather is as cold as last year. (Say 'as that of' or 'last year's')
- (xv) I found this book the most interesting. (Delete 'the')
- (xvi) Her shirt is cheaper than you. (Say 'yours'/your shirt)
- (xvii) The climate of Chennai is warmer than Delhi. (Say 'that of Delhi')

### Rule XI

The use of 'all, both & whole' as adjectives.

- (A) Place 'the' after 'all' and 'both' when used as adjectives for plural nouns. But 'the' is used before 'whole'. For example
- (i) All the students were present. (Correct)
- (ii) Both the boys left soon. (Correct)
- (iii) Whole country is suffering from drought. (Say 'The whole')
- (iv) All sugar is wasted. (Uncountable noun, Correct)
- (B) Place possessive case after 'all' and 'both'. For example
- (i) My all efforts ended in smoke. (Say 'All my')
- (ii) Both my friends are honest. (Correct)
- (iii) He is a fortunate person whose all efforts succeed. (Say 'all whose')

### Rule XII

'Either, neither, only, both, even, but also' should be placed immediately before the words they emphasize. (qualify/ modify). For example

- (i) She not only came to see me but also to take her old books. (Use 'not only' before 'to see')
- (ii) Neither she is intelligent nor honest. (Use 'neither' before 'intelligent')
- (iii) Her sister and her brother are both living with her. (Use 'both' before 'her sister')
- (iv) Not only he likes to take coffee but also tea. (Use 'Not only' before 'coffee')

### Rule XIII

'As' is used in the positive degree to denote equality while 'than' is used in the comparative degree. Both 'as' and 'than' are required to be used when a sentence contains adjectives in positive and comparative forms. For example

- (i) She is as honest, if not more honest than her brother. (Incorrect)  
She is as honest as, if not more honest than her brother. (Correct)
- (ii) I am as strong or even stronger than my foe. (Incorrect)  
I am as strong as or even stronger than my foe. (Correct)

**Rule XIV**

When two adjectives require different prepositions, appropriate prepositions should be used with both adjectives. *For example*

- (i) He is senior and older than I. *(Use 'to' after 'senior')*
- (ii) His dress is different and cheaper than mine. *(Use 'from' after 'different')*
- (iii) She is stronger and younger than her sister. *(Correct)*

**Rule XV**

Place an adjective after noun when the noun is followed by preposition. *For example*

- (i) The subject is a worthy matter of note. *(Say 'matter worthy of')*
- (ii) He is a suitable man for any post. *(Say the 'man suitable for any post')*

**Rule XVI****Comparison of weight, quantity & number.**

No comparison is implied in the following sentences, when there is 'time' used for comparison. So positive degree is used. *For example*

But we use comparative degree when the sentence is without 'times'

- (i) My book is three times cheaper than yours. *(Say 'as cheap as')*
- (ii) Your income is many times higher than Tushar's. *(Incorrect, say 'as high as')*
- (iii) This book is five rupees cheaper than yours. *(Correct)*
- (iv) This table is ten kilos lighter than that. *(Correct)*

**Rule XVII**

The following adjectives cannot be used before nouns (attributively), '**Afraid, asleep, due, ready, unable, alike, aware, glad, sorry, well, alone, ill, sure, worth**'. *For example*

'Ill man, asleep boy, alone lady, afraid man, alike situation' are wrong expressions.

- (i) She alone is responsible for my problems. *(Correct)*
- (ii) I found a boy asleep. *(Correct)*
- (iii) The man is ill. *(Correct)*
- (iv) The man is afraid of my dog. *(Correct)*
- (v) This book is worth reading. *(Correct)*

**Rule XVIII****The order of adjectives qualifying a noun (S S A C N M)**

**Size → Shape → Age → Colour → Nationality → Material → Noun**

- (i) Twenty year old black American Negro.
- (ii) A small Indian Stadium.
- (iii) A big round black Indian plastic table.
- (iv) A spacious dark cell.
- (v) A large glass room.

## Work Book Exercise A

**Directions** *Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences.*

1. There were no less than fifty persons in the dining hall.
2. Few remarks that he made were offensive to my brother.
3. It is a worth seeing movie and you must not miss it.
4. Of all the students Rita was less worried when the date for the annual examination was announced.
5. Even the most perfect person in the world is said to have erred when there was time to act.
6. I was surprised to see every student sitting quietly in the class, even though the teacher was not present.
7. Whole India expressed anger over the hijacking of Air India Boeing Jet by militant at Karachi.
8. I like him because he is the most interesting fellow because of his amiable nature.
9. The meeting was postponed because only the few persons were present there.
10. In the opinion of everyone she is wiser than beautiful.

## Work Book Exercise B

**Directions** *Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences.*

1. He is as intelligent if not more intelligent than his brother.
2. She is better than any girl that studies in our class.
3. The latest chapter of this novel is the most comprehensive of all the chapters in the book.
4. She was not punished though she came latter than I.
5. She is the best and beautiful girl of our village.
6. My book is superior than yours although it has cost me much less.
7. Of all other my neighbours he is the kindest and most considerate to others.
8. 'Arabian Nights' is the most adventurous of any books written so far.
9. The works of Shakespeare are more famous than any other English dramatist.
10. It is all the more better if you work in my company.
11. These kind of roses are very popular.
12. He doesn't need your help because he is too intelligent.
13. Modinagar is further from Dehradun than Meerut.
14. It was bitter cold and we preferred not to go out that night.
15. No animal is so sacred to the Hindus as the cow is.

# 13

## Adverb

### What is an Adverb?

An adverb is a word used to add something to the meaning of a verb, adjective or another adverb. It is said to modify verbs, adjectives and adverbs. *For example*

- (i) She is walking slowly. (ii) She is very intelligent.  
(iii) She is walking very slowly.

### Kinds of Adverb

1. **Adverb of time** Before, ago, lately, yet, now, soon, yesterday, already, never.
2. **Adverb of frequency** Always, once, seldom, usually, rarely etc.
3. **Adverb of place** Here, everywhere, down, near, away, backward, upward.
4. **Adverb of manner** Slowly, so, soundly, delightfully.
5. **Adverb of affirmation and negation** Certainly, apparently, obviously, no, undoubtedly.
6. **Adverb of degree** Almost, fully, very, enough, rather, quite, too, really.
7. **Interrogative adverb** How, what, when, why.
8. **Relative adverb** When, where, why, how.

Relative adverbs are used to make an adjective clause.

He was born in the year **when** I left India. (*'in which/on which'*)

He does not like to stay at the hotel **where** they are staying. (*'in which/at which'*)

Don't you know the reason **why** she did not marry? (*'for which'*)

You are supposed to know the manner **how** they cheated you. (*'in which/by which'*)

### Rules of Adverb

#### Rule I

**Adjective** qualifies a noun and a pronoun whereas **adverb** modifies a verb, an adjective and an adverb. *For example*

- (i) Her act was remarkable. (*Correct*)  
(ii) She acted remarkably to achieve success. (*Correct*)

- (iii) She ran quicker than I. (Say 'more quickly' for 'quicker')
- (iv) She is a very skilful dancer. (Correct)
- (v) She dances very skilfully. (Correct)

### Rule II

#### Adverbs of time such as

'Always, often, already, just, never, ever, sometimes, frequently, generally, recently, usually, seldom, hardly', rarely, normally etc are generally placed before the verb they modify. *For example*

- (i) My brother comes often every Sunday. (Place 'often' before 'comes')
- (ii) He goes usually to the movie every Friday. (Place 'usually' before 'goes')
- (iii) He never talks ill of friends. (Correct)
- (iv) He is always satisfied. (Correct)

### Rule III

Adverbs of manners are placed only after the Intransitive verb. However, the adverb can be placed **either before or after the transitive verb**. *For example*

- (i) He returned immediately. (Correct)
- (ii) He briefly narrated the incident to me. (Correct)
- (iii) He narrated to me the incident briefly. (Correct)
- (iv) He soundly slept last night. (Place 'soundly' after 'slept')

### Rule IV

If the sentence is introduced by an adverb, inverted form of the verb is used for the sake of emphasis. *For example*

- (i) Seldom he visits his parents. (Incorrect)
- (ii) Seldom does he visit his parents. (Correct)
- (iii) He seldom visits his parents. (Correct)
- (iv) Not seldom does he visit his parents. (Correct)
- (v) Never I'll see her again. (Incorrect)
- (vi) Never will I see her again. (Correct)
- (vii) I'll never see her again. (Correct)
- (viii) She no sooner reached the station **than** she met her friend. (Correct)
- (ix) No sooner did she reach the station **than** she met her friend. (Correct)
- (x) She had hardly reached the station **when** the train arrived. (Correct)
- (xi) Hardly/scarcely had she reached the station **when** the train arrived. (Correct)
- (xii) So quickly she ran that she overtook her rivals. (Use 'so quickly did she run')

### Rule V Use of Else and Other

'Else' should be followed by 'but'.

'Other' and 'otherwise' are followed by 'than'. For example

- (i) It is nothing else than sheer madness. (Use 'but' in place of 'than')
- (ii) She had no other alternative but stay here. (Use 'than' in place of 'but')
- (iii) She has no one else to look after her except me. (Use 'but' in place of 'except')

### Rule VI

Both 'never' and 'not' are adverbs. The use of 'never' for 'not' is incorrect. For example

- (i) I never went to Ooty last year. (Use 'did not' go in place of 'never')
- (ii) I never remember to have said so. (Use 'do not' in place of 'never')
- (iii) I remember never to have said so. (Correct)

Or

I don't remember to have said so.

- (iv) I never allow my son to go out in dark. (Correct/habitual action)

### Rule VII

Note the use of phrases.

'Seldom or never', 'seldom, if ever', 'little or nothing', 'little, if anything'.

The phrases 'seldom or ever' and 'little or anything' are wrong in use. For example

- (i) We seldom or ever meet our relatives these days. (Incorrect)
- (ii) We seldom or never (seldom, if ever) meet our relatives these days. (Correct)

### Rule VIII

Negative adverbs should not be used with the words negative in meaning. So, two negatives should be avoided.

'Seldom, nowhere, never, nothing, hardly, scarcely, neither, barely, rarely' are some of the adverbs expressing negative meaning. For example

- (i) I rarely went to meet nobody across the road. (Use 'anybody' in place of 'nobody')
- (ii) She hardly knows nothing about the family. (Use 'anything' in place of 'nothing')
- (iii) I hardly know somebody in the town. (Say 'anybody' in place of 'somebody')
- (iv) He does nothing without never consulting me. (Use 'ever' for 'never')
- (v) They do not seldom come here. (Remove 'do not')
- (vi) This will not help him, nothing never does. (Use 'ever' for 'never')
- (vii) He does not write well and I do not write neither. (Say 'either')

**NOTE I.** Avoid the use of negative, with 'deny, forbid' and 'both'.

- (i) She denied that she had not given him books. (Delete 'not')
- (ii) (a) Both of us are not going there. (Incorrect)
- (b) Neither of us is going there. (Correct)

**NOTE II.** Avoid the use of negative with Conjunctions  
**until, unless, lest.**

**Rule IX**

Given below are some of the examples of the words being treated as adverbs whereas they are adjectives or nouns. *For example*

- (A) **Manly, masterly, slovenly, monthly, weekly, sickly, friendly, orderly, gentlemanly** are adjectives and should not be confused with adverbs.
- (B) **Coward, miser, niggard** are nouns.  
‘Cowardly, miserly, niggardly’ are adjectives.  
‘In a cowardly, miserly, niggardly manner’ are used as adverbs.
- (C) **Fast, straight, outright, direct, hard, hardly, late, light, high, safe, quiet** etc are used both as an adjective and adverb.
- (D) **‘Loudly’ and ‘Aloud’** are adverbs though different in meanings. ‘Loud’ is an adjective.
- (E) **Late, lately**  
Late is both an adjective & an adverb  
Lately is an adverb. (*Recently*)
- (F) **Hard** is both an adjective and adverb used in affirmative sense.  
**Hardly** is an adverb used in negative meaning. *For example*
- (i) A soldier is trained never to fight cowardly. (*Use ‘in a cowardly manner’*)
- (ii) I have never come across a coward Indian soldier.  
(*Use ‘cowardly’ in place of ‘coward’*)
- (iii) The darkness closed in even as she was returning home fastly.  
(*Use ‘fast’ in place of ‘fastly’*)
- (iv) You must learn to behave manly in the face of danger.  
(*Use ‘manfully’ in place of ‘manly’*)
- (v) He is earning five hundred rupees monthly. (*Say ‘a month’*)
- (vi) She is doing this work good these days. (*Say ‘well’ for ‘good’*)
- (vii) Rohit always comes lately to school. (*Say ‘late’ for ‘lately’*)
- (viii) He is coward. (*Use ‘a’ before ‘coward’*)
- (ix) The teacher asked the students to talk loudly. (*Say ‘aloud’*)
- (x) We must try to preserve hardly won freedom. (*Use ‘hard’ in place of ‘hardly’*)
- (xi) Please keep the things in the room orderly.  
(*Use ‘in order’ or ‘in an orderly manner’ in place of ‘orderly’*)
- (xii) She rejected my application outrightly. (*Say ‘outright’*)
- (xiii) Outright rejection of my plan disappointed me. (*Correct*)

**Rule X**

The use of **‘very, much, so, too, enough, rather’**.

- (A) **‘Very’** modifies present participle used as adjective, adverb and adjective in positive degree. **‘Much’** is used with comparative degree and past participle.

*For example*

- (i) It is a much interesting picture. (*Use ‘very’ in place of ‘much’*)
- (ii) I was very exhausted in the evening. (*Use ‘much’ in place of ‘very’*)

- (iii) She did this work very quickly. (Correct)  
 (iv) She is much wiser than her mother. (Correct)  
 (v) She is very tired after a day's work. (Correct)

**NOTE** Students should note the use of 'very' and 'much' in superlative degree.  
 For example

- (i) She is **the very best** teacher in our school. (Here 'very' means 'really')  
 (ii) She is **much the best** teacher in our school. (Here 'much' means 'decidedly')  
 (iii) She is **by far the best** teacher in our college. ('by far' means 'to a large extent')

(B) 'So' and 'too' should not be used without 'that' (Adverb clause) and 'to' (Infinitive) respectively.

'Very' and 'much' may be used in the place of so and too.

- (i) My brother is so healthy. (Use 'very' in place of 'so')  
 (ii) She is very kind. (Here 'very' means 'to a great extent')  
 (iii) She is too poor to study further. (Correct)  
 (iv) She is so poor that she cannot study further. (Correct)  
 (v) She is too healthy. (Over healthy) say 'very' for too  
 (vi) It is too bad. (Correct)

(C) 'Enough' is both an adjective and adverb. As an **adverb** it is always placed after the adjective it modifies.

As an **adjective** it is placed before a noun. For example

- (i) She is enough wise to allow her son to go. (Place 'enough' after 'wise')  
 (ii) He has enough money to spend. (Correct)  
 (iii) She is too kind to help everybody. (Say 'kind enough' very kind in place of 'too')  
 (iv) She is too weak to pass. (Correct)

(D) The use of 'rather'

(a) 'Rather' is an adverb of degree like 'fairly, quite, pretty (to some degree)'.  
 For example

- (i) She is rather intelligent.  
 (ii) He is walking rather slowly.

(b) 'Rather' can also be used before a noun. For example

- (i) It is rather a nuisance.  
 (ii) It is rather a good step. (or a rather good step)

**NOTE** Article 'a', 'an' should be placed before a noun. If there is an adjective with a noun, articles 'a', 'an' may be placed either before or after 'rather'.

(c) 'Rather' is also used in case of preference  
 'would rather, had rather, rather than' are used to express preference.

For example

(Refer to Rule III(c) on Infinitive)

**Rule XI**

Note the difference between **too, as well, also.**

- (a) 'Too, as well, also', are used in the sense of "besides", "in addition to" in affirmative sentences. But 'also' cannot be used at end position.
- (i) She found her bag and money too/as well.
  - (ii) She plays the piano and the harmonium as well/too.
  - (iii) She found her bag and money also. (say 'also money')
- (b) So + auxiliary + subject is used in affirmative sentences in relation to two persons doing one action.
- (i) She won the prize and so did her sister. (win)
  - (ii) His wife plays piano and so does he. (play)
- (c) Neither + auxiliary + subject is used in negative sentences in relation to two persons doing one action.
- (i) He does not write well and neither do I. (write)
  - (ii) She will not lend money and neither will he. (lend)

**Rule XII**

While answering a question the adverb 'yes' or 'no' should be used according to the affirmative and negative answer. *For example*

- (i) Have you taken food?
- (ii) Yes, I have not taken so far? (Use 'No' in place of 'Yes')

**Rule XIII**

- (A) **Adverb 'as' should** be used to introduce predicative of the verbs '**regard, describe, define, treat, view, know**'.
- (B) **Adverb 'as' should** be avoided to introduce predicative of the verbs '**name, elect, think, consider, call, appoint, make, choose**'.

*For example*

- (i) I regard him my brother. (Add 'as' after 'him')
- (ii) Science has been defined the study of nature. (Add 'as' after 'defined')
- (iii) She is considered as the best dancer in the town. (Drop 'as' after 'considered')
- (iv) The teacher called him as stupid. (Drop 'as')
- (v) The principal appointed him as peon. (Remove 'as')
- (vi) He thinks her as a fool. (Remove 'as')
- (vii) He was elected as the secretary of our club. (Remove 'as')

## Work Book Exercise A

**Directions** *Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences.*

1. Although I was in Delhi last month I never met him.
2. One should face the misfortunes of life manly.
3. When I got home I was too exhausted.
4. I did not know hardly anyone in the city and so felt lonely.
5. I rarely find something in his character that I can admire.
6. You have acted nobler than all of us.
7. He is enough kind to help everybody in need.
8. Don't stop anywhere. Go home fastly.
9. He has no time to read novels and no desire neither.
10. He has not seldom visited his parents since he left this place.
11. It was much hot yesterday and we didn't go out.
12. I meet him often near the District Library.
13. I told her as blunt as I could but she was not convinced.
14. What to talk of tea they did not offer us even water.
15. My mother works very quicker than I at embroidery.

## Work Book Exercise B

**Directions** *Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences.*

1. I never remember to have met a more interesting man in my life.
2. I refused to accompany him because I was so tired.
3. She did this work as good as she could do.
4. This fruit tastes more sweetly than any other fruit.
5. Raja Ram Mohan Roy tried to eradicate social evils with tooth and nail.
6. We seldom or ever go to the movie these days because we don't like moving out.
7. The student came to the classroom lately and was punished by the teacher.
8. He looks full of energy today because he soundly slept last night.
9. I care a fig for such a worthless fellow.
10. She had barely nothing to eat when she came to me last month.
11. Have you secured first class? Yes, I have not secured it.
12. It had been bitter cold the whole month and we preferred staying in the plains.
13. Don't be unreasonable angry with me because I understand your problem.
14. Never in the history of India there has been as brave a lady as Rani Lakshmi Bai.
15. They pay him hadsome salary and he is earning fifteen thousand rupees monthly.

# Prepositions

## What is a Preposition?

The word **Preposition** (as is indicated by Prefix '**Pre**') is a word or a group of words that is placed before a noun or pronoun to indicate direction, method, place, source etc. In other words, the noun or pronoun is shown to have a kind of relation with regard to something else with the help of a Preposition. *For example*

- (i) The Preposition may join one noun to another.  
Sheena was in the **kitchen**. (*'Sheena' and 'kitchen'*)
- (ii) It may join noun to a verb.  
She **slipped** off the **stairs**. (*'slipped' and 'stairs'*)
- (iii) It may join noun to an adjective.  
We are **proud** of our **country**. (*'proud' and 'country'*)

1. '**At, in, on, of, off, through, below, with**' etc are some of the prepositions.

2. The noun or pronoun used with the preposition is in the **accusative case**.

*For example*

- (i) The book is on the **table**.
- (ii) I did not talk to **him**.  
Here '**table**' and '**him**' have been used in the accusative case because these are words the objects of the preposition.

3. A Preposition sometimes may have more than one object. *For example*

- (i) I gave money to Ritu and her brother.
- (ii) Distribute the mangoes among the boys and the girls.

4. A clause can also be the object to a preposition. *For example*

- (i) I was pleased with what she did for me.
- (ii) Pay attention to what your parents say.

5. Adverbs of time and place can also be the object of preposition. *For example*

- (i) I don't like to go from here.
- (ii) She had returned by then.

6. When verbs are placed after prepositions (other than 'to') they should be in the gerund form except when they are used in infinitive form. *For example*

- (i) I am confident of winning her love.
- (ii) She does not believe in wasting time.
- (iii) She insisted on going to Pune.

### Prepositions before Particular Words

#### (A) Travel, movement

- (a) From, to, at, in, by, on, into, onto, off, out, out of. *For example*  
We travel daily from Meerut to Delhi.
- (b) Arrive at/in, get to (reach). *For example*  
(i) They arrived in India in March. (ii) I arrived at Patel Bridge.  
(iii) I go to the Bus stand late.
- (c) Home (Without preposition) *For example*  
(i) They went home by bus. *(Without Preposition)*  
(ii) She returned to her home late. *(With Preposition)*

#### (B) Above and over

- (a) 'Above', 'over' mean higher than
- (b) But 'over' can also mean 'covering on the other side of', across, from one side to the other and in every part of the region. *For example*  
(i) We put a sheet over his body. (ii) There is a bridge over the river.  
(iii) He has friends all over the world.

#### (C) Under, below beneath

- (a) 'Below', 'under', mean lower than, but 'under' can indicate contact. *For example*  
(i) She kept money under the bed.  
(ii) The old man was crushed under the car.
- (b) However, 'below' is used when there is a space between the two surfaces.  
*For example*  
They live below us. *(We live above them)*
- (c) 'Under' can mean junior in ranks. *For example*  
He is under me. *(I am his superior, below doesn't have this meaning)*
- (d) 'Beneath' has the same meaning as under, but it is better to use it for abstract meanings. *For example*  
He would think it beneath him to do such a small work. *(Unworthy of him)*

#### (D) Time and date

- (Use at, on, by, in) at dusk, at noon, at dawn, at midnight, at midday, at sixteen (the age) at night, at six, at 7.30, in/on the morning/afternoon/evening/night (of a certain date) *For example*  
We left on the evening of the sixth at 5.30 p.m.  
We left in the evening/afternoon.

#### (E) On time, in time, in good time

- (a) 'On time' (at time arranged, neither before nor after) *For example*  
The train is running on time.
- (b) 'In time' (not late) *For example*  
Passengers should be in time for their train.
- (c) 'In good time' (with comfortable margin) *For example*  
I arrived at the theatre in good time.

- (F) **At the beginning/at the end, in the beginning/in the end, at first, at last**
- (a) At the beginning of a book, there is a foreword. (Literally at the beginning)
- (b) At the end, there may be an index.
- (c) 'In the beginning/at first' = In the early stage. It implies that later there was a change. *For example*  
In the beginning we used hand tools, later we had machines.
- (d) 'In the end/At last' = eventually/after sometime. *For example*  
At first he opposed marriage, but in the end he gave his consent.
- (e) in, on, at, the back of
- (i) What is there at the back of the table. (behind)
- (ii) There is glossary at the back of the book. (few pages)
- (iii) There is a room on the back of the house. (back of as part/area)
- (iv) He was stabbed in the back.
- (G) **By, before**
- By time/date (not later than)
- Please be at home by 8.00 p.m.
- By the end of this year my study will have finished.

## Rules of Preposition

### Rule I

A preposition is usually placed before its object but sometimes it is placed after it in the following cases

- (A) When the object in the interrogative pronoun is understood. *For example*
- (i) To whom are you talking? (Incorrect)  
Who are you talking to? (Correct)  
Whom are you talking to? (Correct)
- (ii) About what are you talking? (Incorrect)  
What are you talking about? (Correct)
- (iii) For what are you looking? (Incorrect)  
What are you looking for? (Correct)
- (iv) For what are you waiting? (Incorrect)  
What are you waiting for? (Correct)
- (B) When the object of the preposition is a relative pronoun 'that'. *For example*
- (i) This is the book for that I have been looking. (Incorrect)  
This is the book that I have been looking for. (Correct)
- (ii) This is the picture of that she always talks. (Incorrect)  
This is the picture that she always talks of. (Correct)
- (C) When an infinitive qualifies a noun, the preposition should be placed after the infinitive, if required. *For example*
- (i) It is not a safe place to live. (Say 'live in')
- (ii) He gave me a pen to write. (Say 'write with')
- (iii) He gave me money to spend. (Correct)

**Rule II**

**(A)** As a rule no preposition is placed after the following verbs when these verbs are used in active voice.

'Stress, emphasise, discuss (matter), investigate, comprise, accompany, consider, violate, demand, resemble, pervade, precede, succeed, reach (at), resign (post), attack, invade, resist, enter (come into), eschew, befall, order, direct, join, sign, affect, ensure, board, describe, await, lack, regret, concern. For example

- |  |                |
|--|----------------|
| (i) The police are investigating into the case.                | (Drop 'into')  |
| (ii) The teacher emphasised on the need of discipline in life. | (Drop 'on')    |
| (iii) I have ordered for his transfer.                         | (Drop 'for')   |
| (iv) I shall discuss about the problem with you.               | (Drop 'about') |
| (v) Soni resembles with her mother.                            | (Drop 'with')  |
| (vi) Our college comprises of class rooms.                     | (Drop 'of')    |
| (vii) India has never attacked on any country.                 | (Drop 'on')    |
| (viii) She promised to accompany with me to the park.          | (Drop 'with')  |
| (ix) The Committee is comprised of five members.               | (Correct)      |

**(B)** Omission of 'to' with verbs of communication before the object, 'advise, tell, ask, beg, command, encourage, request, inform, order, urge. For example

- |  |             |
|--|-------------|
| (i) I advised to him to go.                    | (Drop 'to') |
| (ii) I informed to the police of the accident. | (Drop 'to') |
| (iii) I enquired of him.                       | (Correct)   |

**Rule III**

**Use of preposition in relation to its object**

**(A)** Omission of preposition before Indirect Object.

**Study the following verbs.**

'bring, give, lend, promise, leave, sell, buy, show, take, fetch, tell, hand, send, sing, read, cost, play (an instrument), find, get, ask, offer etc.' For example

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (i) I shall fetch you books from market. |  |
| Or                                       |  |
| I shall fetch books for you from market. |  |
| (ii) Her father left him large property. |  |
| Or                                       |  |
| Her father left large property to him.   |  |
| (iii) I shall buy you this necklace.     |  |
| Or                                       |  |
| I shall buy this necklace for you.       |  |
| (iv) I shall find Robin a nice job.      |  |
| Or                                       |  |
| I shall find a nice job for Robin.       |  |
| (v) Will you sing me a song?             |  |
| Or                                       |  |
| Will you sing a song for me?             |  |

**(B)** Note the placement of proper object (Direct/Indirect) with the use of the following verbs with special reference to the preposition.

The use of verbs '**provide, supply, furnish, entrust, present**'. *For example*

I provided him money. *(Incorrect)*

I provided him with money. *(Correct)*

*Or*

I provided money to him. *(Correct)*

**(C)** The correct use of '**rob, fine, inform, explain, recommend, compensate, suggest, propose**', in relation to objects. *For example*

(a) Rob a person of something.

(b) Fine someone (ten rupees etc).

(c) Inform someone of something.

(d) Explain something to a person.

(e) Recommend/Suggest/Propose something/some-body to others.

(f) Compensate someone for something.

**Examples worked out**

(i) He robbed the old woman of all her ornaments.

(ii) The teacher fined him ten rupees.

(iii) We informed the police of the accident.

(iv) The teacher explained the meaning of the poem to us.

(v) He recommended me for promotion to the Principal.

(vi) He recommended this book to his students.

(vii) I shall compensate you for the loss.

## Rule IV

A student should take special note of the following Prepositions

(A) '**Than & but**' as Preposition

'**Than & but**' are usually conjunctions. However, they may be sometimes used as Prepositions. *For example*

(i) I did not see any other person than your brother.

(ii) I did not see any body else but your brother.

(B) '**A**' in the following sentences has been used as a Preposition, though in a weakened form of (in) *For example*

(i) He earns fifty rupees a day.

(ii) She visits me once a month.

(C) **Between, Among**

'**Between**' is used while referring to two persons/things. It may also be used for two or more in choice.

'**Among**' is used while referring to more than two persons/things. *For example*

(i) The two brothers divided the property between themselves.

(ii) The two brothers and their sisters divided the property among themselves.

**NOTE** Between the students in the class which is the best?  
(*between is correct in choice for more than two*)

**(D) Beside, Besides**

'Beside' means 'by the side of'.

'Besides' means 'in addition to'. *For example*

- (i) Besides studying he is also working somewhere.
- (ii) She sat beside him at the party.

**(E) By, With**

'By' is used for 'doer' of the action.

'With' is used to denote the instrument. *For example*

- (i) He struck the dog with a stick.
- (ii) A dog was struck by him.

**(F) Since (as a preposition)****(a) Since is used for Time Expression (time from the past to the present.)**

Since is used for a definite time in the past or some past occasion. *For example*, since birth, since last Sunday, since Diwali, since 2'o clock.

- (i) I have not met him since last month. *(From last month till now)*
- (ii) She has been doing home work since morning. *(From morning till now)*

**(b) Since as a Conjunction**

- (i) It is ten years since I saw him. *(or has been)*
- (ii) I have not met him since he came back.

**(c) Since as an Adverb**

- (i) She went to the USA in 2003 and I have not seen her since. *(From 2003 till now)*
- (ii) It was indeed a shock but she has since recovered from it. *(long before now)*

**(G) 'For' is used for time expression (indefinite) and a specific period of time (for two months/six years/two hours etc.) *For example***

- (i) I shall go to Delhi for two weeks. *(Period of time)*
- (ii) He stayed with me for two hours daily.
- (iii) She has been sleeping for two hours. *(Time Expression)*
- (iv) She has been in Delhi for one week.

**(H) From, Between**

'From' is normally used with 'to/till/until'.

'Between' is used with 'and'. *For example*

- (i) He works in the office from ten to five.
- (ii) The reception will be held between 5 p.m. and 9 p.m.

**(I) Before, Ago**

'Before' denotes the preceding action and can also be used in place of 'Ago'.

'Ago' refers to the past action. *For example*

- (i) She left India two days ago/before.
- (ii) She had left India before she was married. (Conjunction) (Preceding action)

**(J) In, At**

'In' refers to towns, cities and countries in a wider sense while 'at' is used for speaking of comparatively smaller places. *For example*

- (i) He lives in Delhi.
- (ii) He lives at Rohini in Delhi.

**(K) In, Into**

'In' denotes position whereas 'into' shows movement and entrance. *For example*

- (i) The students are in the classroom.
- (ii) The students came into the classroom.

**(L) On, Upon**

'On' denotes position, 'upon' denotes movement. *For example*

- (i) The book is on the table.
- (ii) He threw the book upon the table.

**(M) Within, In, On, In good time**

'Within' means before the end of time, 'In' means at the end of time while denoting a period of time. *For example*

- (i) He will return in ten minutes.
- (ii) He will return within ten minutes.
- (iii) The train is running on time. *(Neither before nor after)*

**(N) Till, To (upto)**

(a) 'Till' is used of time. *For example*

He studied till 11 p.m.

(b) To (upto) is used of place/distance. *For example*

I went upto Rani Bagh.

**Rule V**

When two words or adjectives require different prepositions, appropriate prepositions should be used with both the words. *For example*

- (i) He is senior and older than I. *(Use 'after' 'senior')*
- (ii) His dress is different and cheaper than mine. *(Use 'from' after 'different')*
- (iii) She is younger and taller than her sister. *(Correct)*

## Important Prepositions

### Preposition

1. **Abound in** (V) (*rich in*) Uttar Pradesh *abounds in* water resources.
2. **Abound with** (Adj) (*full of*) The forest is *abound with* streams. (*teeming with*)
3. **Absolve from** (*declare free from guilt, promise, duty etc.*) The court has *absolved* him *from* the crime.
4. **Absorb in** (*busy in work*) He is completely *absorbed in* his work.
5. **Abstain from** (*hold oneself back, used for food habits*) His doctor asked him to *abstain from* drinks.
6. **Abstemious in** (*eating & drinking*) Those who are *abstemious* in food habits enjoy good health.
7. **Accede to** (*a request or proposal*) He *acceded to* my request.
8. **Access to** (*means of reaching, approaching*) I have no *access to* the Prime Minister.
9. **Adhere to** (*stick to*) We decided to *adhere to* the programme already agreed upon.
10. **Approve of** (*give one's approval*) She *approved of* my proposal in no time.
11. **Assent to** (*official agreement e.g., to a proposal*) The President has given *assent to* the Bill.
12. **Abhorrent of** (*abhor, to hate*) He is *abhorrent of* dowry system.
13. **Acquaint with** (*familiar with*) I am not *acquainted with* this lady.
14. **Addicted to** (*be given to something harmful*) He is *addicted to* alcohol.
15. **Assured of** (*positive about*) I am *assured of* his help in need.
16. **Attain to** (*arrive at a position/post*) He *attained to* this status after hard struggle.
17. **Attraction for** (*a thing or person*) He has *attraction for* her.
18. **Attracted to** (*thing or person*) He was *attracted to* her at first sight.
19. **Avail of** (*take advantage of*) She *availed herself of* this opportunity and got success.
20. **Aloof from** (*keep from*) Keep *aloof from* bad boys.
21. **Advance for** (*mature*) He is *advanced for* his years.
22. **Advance by** (*prepone by*) The visit of Viru has been *advanced by* two days.
23. **Abide by** (*rules, comply with*) You should *abide by* the rules laid down by the committee.
24. **Accused of** (*a crime, charge with*) He was *accused of* theft and convicted.

25. **Acquit of** (*crime, fault*) He was *acquitted of* the crime.
26. **Admit to** (*admission*) He was *admitted to* the school on merit.
27. **Admit of** (*scope for*) Your crime does not *admit of* any excuse.
28. **Admit into** (*admittance*) He was *admitted into* the room of the Principal.
29. **Alight on** (*the ground*) The birds *alighted on* the roof of my house.
30. **Alight from** (*a bus, car, train*) When he *alighted from* the car, he was welcomed with open arms.
31. **Alight at** (*site, a place*) The birds *alighted at* the antenna.
32. **Annoy with** (*a person*) Noddy was *annoyed with* his friends an account of their misbehaviour.
33. **Annoy at** (*an act*) Suhani was *annoyed at* the misbehaviour of her friends.
34. **Aspire after** (*fame*) It is human nature to *aspire after* fame.
35. **Aspire to** (*the post*) All the candidates *aspire to* the post of commissioned officers.
36. **Amuse at** (*mock at, laugh at*) Everyone was greatly *amused at* his awkward behaviour during the ceremony.
37. **Amuse with** (*enjoy*) They *amused themselves with* playing video games.
38. **Answer (to)** (*a person*) What will you *answer to* your father?  
(a) She did not *answer* my question.  
(b) She did not give *answer to* my question. (*Used as a noun*)
39. **Answer for** (*explain, account for*) You will have to *answer for* your misdeeds.
40. **Account for** (*explain*) You should *account for* your absence from the office.
41. **Antipathy to** (*averse to a thing*) I have great *antipathy to* wine.
42. **Antipathy against** (*a person*) We should not have *antipathy against* the poor.
43. **Ask for** (*demand*) I *asked him for* help but he refused.
44. **Affiliated to** (*a university or board*) Agra college is *affiliated to* the B.R. Ambedkar University.
45. **Affiliated with** (*a party*) Indian Communists are *affiliated with* the Communist Parties of Russia & China.
46. **Attend to** (*pay attention to*) He did not *attend to* what his mother advised him.
47. **Attend upon** (*serve, wait upon*) He has no servant to *attend upon* him in old age.
48. **Antidote to** (*that counteracts the effect of poison*) There is no effective *antidote to* poison.

49. **Antidote against** (*cure for*) Quinine is an effective *antidote against* Malaria.
50. **Agree with** (*a person*) I do not *agree with* you.
51. **Agree on** (*a point*) After much discussion they *agreed on* the terms of Partnership.
52. **Agree to** (*views*) He *agreed to* all my views but his father did not.
53. **Afflicted with** (*disease, problem, mental trouble*) India is *afflicted with* extreme poverty.
54. **Allowance for** (*allow for*) Always make *allowance for* the mistake of others and pardon them.
55. **Atone for** (*a fault, sin*) The Hindus go to the Ganga to *atone for* their sins.
56. **Aptitude for** (*talent*) He shows some *aptitude for* languages.
57. **Alliance with** (*joined or united*) China has entered into *alliance with* Pakistan against India.
58. **Acquiesce in** (*accept passively*) I had no alternative but to *acquiesce in* his unfair demand.
59. **Apprise of** (*inform*) I *apprised* him of the serious food situation in the state.
60. **Act upon** (*comply with*) Always *act upon* the advice of your elders.
61. **Adept in** (*proficient in*) He is *adept in* the art of dancing.
62. **Adept at** (*thing*) My brother is *adept at* classical music.
63. **Adapt to** (*make suitable*) You must *adapt* yourself to new situations for attaining to high position in life.
64. **Accustomed to** (*be used to*) I am *accustomed to* early rising.
65. **Akin to** (*similar to*) Your behaviour of indifference is *akin to* jealousy.
66. **Alien to** (*foreign to*) French is *alien to* me because I have never studied it.
67. **Alive to** (*aware of*) He is fully *alive to* the danger of the situation.
68. **Amenable to** (*advice, willing to be guided*) Now-a-days majority of the student are not *amenable to* discipline.
69. **Analogous to** (*similar to*) Jahanara's wisdom was *analogous to* her beauty.
70. **Aware of** (*know about*) I am *aware of* your success.
71. **Beware of** (*cautious*) *Beware of* dogs lest you should be bitten.
72. **Blush at** (*praise*) She *blushed at* the mention of her qualities.
73. **Blush for** (*a fault, ashamed of*) I *blush for* the vices of my son who has disgraced the family.
74. **Blind in** (*the eye*) He is *blind in* left eye and needs major surgery.

75. **Blind to** (*defects*) We should not be *blind to* the fault of our children.
76. **Born of** (*parents*) She was *born of* a beautiful mother/parents.
77. **Born to** (*passive voice*) A son was *born to* her.
78. **Bearing on** (*relation to*) Your speech has no *bearing on* the subject we are discussing.
79. **Beset with** (*surrounded with*) India is *beset with* many problems these days.
80. **Believe in** (*to have faith*) I *believe in* him because he is honest.
81. **Believe** (*regard as true*) I *believe* him because he is speaking the truth.
82. **Benefit by** (*Verb*) You should *benefit by* the experience of others.
83. **Benefit from** (*Noun*) You should derive *benefit from* the experience of others.
84. **Compensate for** (*give something to make up*) He *compensated* me *for* the damage to my scooter.
85. **Cure of** (*a disease*) He is *cured of* illness after long treatment.
86. **Cure for** (*treatment*) There is no *cure for* AIDS yet.
87. **Compete with** (*person*) He will *compete with* me for the first position in the college.
88. **Compete for** (*trophy etc.*) Our team will not *compete for* Roman Trophy.
89. **Conformity with** (*views*) I acted in *conformity with* the opinion of the majority.
90. **Conformity to** (*rules, according to*) I did that in *conformity to* the traditions of the family.
91. **Cling to** (*to hold tight*) The child was *clinging to* her mother.
92. **Comply with** (*act in accordance with*) You must *comply with* the rules laid down by the committee.
93. **Condemn to** (*punishment*) The accused was *condemned to* death.
94. **Congratulate on** (*success*) Arnav *congratulated* his friend *on* success.
95. **Certain of** (*sure of*) Those who work hard should be *certain of* their success.
96. **Confident of** (*success*) My sister is always *confident of* success.
97. **Count on** (*depend on*) You should never *count on* unreliable persons.
98. **Charge of** (*Noun*) (*crime*) *Charge of* murder was framed against him.
99. **Charge with** (*Verb*) (*crime*) He was *charged with* the murder of his neighbour.
100. **Cope with** (*manage work*) My advocate cannot *cope with* heavy court work.
101. **Contrast to** (*Noun*) Her character is a *contrast to* her husband's.

102. **Contrast with** (Verb) *They tried to contrast the character of their father with mine.*
103. **Cash in on** (*avail of*) Every body of them was trying to *cash in on* reservation of posts announced for the community.
104. **Contribute to** (*add to a thing*) Every Indian should *contribute to* the success of Indian economy.
105. **Complain against** (*a person*) He *complained to* the Principal *against* me.
106. **Complain of** (*a thing*) The teacher *complained of* his rude behaviour.
107. **Cordone off** (*protect*) The dias of the P.M. was *cordoned off*.
108. **Commit to** (*a promise, pledge, sentence*) He has *committed himself to* the service of the society.
109. **Confide in** (*a person*) I have always *confided in* him and he has never deceived me.
110. **Confide to** (*a person*) Do not *confide* your secrets *to* unreliable friends.
111. **Consist in** (*remain*) Beauty *consists in* the character of a person.
112. **Consist of** (*comprise*) The house *consists of* four rooms.
113. **Commence** (*on a day, at time, in a month*) The examinations will *commence* on monday next at 10 o'clock.
114. **Commence with** (*as first item*) He *commenced with* grammar when he started teaching English.
115. **Clamour for** (*demand*) The labourers are *clamouring for* the rise in their wages.
116. **Clamour against** (*complain against*) The residents are *clamouring against* the negligence of the police.
117. **Cause for** (*reason for*) There is no *cause for* anxiety.
118. **Cause of** (*result from*) The *cause of* Cancer is still unknown.
119. **Concerned for** (*worried*) I am greatly *concerned for* the safety of his money.
120. **Concerned with** (*have anything to do*) I am not *concerned with* his business.
121. **Condole with** (*a person*) I *condoled with* my friend in the death of his father.
122. **Disappoint of** (*hopes*) I was *disappointed of* my success in the new venture.
123. **Despair of** (*hopes*) He was *despaired of* the hope of early marriage of her daughter.
124. **Dabble in/at** (*art, politics etc.*) Though he belonged to the family of politicians, he never *dabbled in* politics.
125. **Destined for** (*some future*) He is *destined for* the post of D.M. and is expected to be promoted soon.
126. **Disgrace on** (*dishonourable*) He is a *disgrace on* his family.

127. **Dwell on/upon** (*speak/write in detail*) The teacher *dwelt on* the need of discipline.
128. **Die of** (*a disease*) He *died of* malaria after a few days' illness.
129. **Die from** (*some cause*) He *died from* over work because hard work had affected his health adversely.
130. **Differ with** (*a person in views*) I *differ with* you on the views of life.
131. **Differ from** (*in something*) She *differs from* me both in habits and looks.
132. **Deal in** (*trade in*) My friend *deals in* cloth.
133. **Deal with** (*a matter, a person*) You must learn how to *deal with* customers.
134. **Dispense with** (*to remove, to do without*) You cannot *dispense with* the use of fan in summer.
135. **Dispense** (*to deal out, distribute*) As a judge he *dispenses* equal justice to all and one.
136. **Dispose of** (*sell*) I shall *dispose of* my old furniture and buy new one.
137. **Disposed to** (*inclined to*) He is *disposed to* travelling abroad.
138. **Decamp with** (*booty*) The robbers had *decamped with* the booty before the police arrived.
139. **Disgust with** (*person, life*) Being spiritual he is *disgusted with* materials lie life.
140. **Disgust at** (*an act*) Every one felt *disgusted at* his jokes.
141. **Discriminate against** (*not to treat well*) No one should *discriminate against* the poor.
142. **Discriminate between** (*difference between*) We should always *discriminate between* right and wrong.
143. **Embark on** (*venture, undertake*) He has decided to *embark on* new business undertaking.
144. **Enter** (*place, no preposition*) He *entered* my room without my permission.
145. **Enter into** (*alliance, agreement*) India and America have *entered into* various agreements.
146. **Enter upon/on** (*undertake*) My brother has decided to *enter upon* expansion programme of his business.
147. **Enlarge on/upon** (*write or say more*) I need not *enlarge on* the problem and waste your time.
148. **Endowed with** (*gifted with*) His wife is *endowed with* both charms and talents.
149. **Enamoured with** (*a person*) Rosalind was *enamoured with* Orlando at first sight.

150. **Enamoured of** (*a thing*) Though it was their first meeting, he was *enamoured of* her talents.
151. **Enrage at** (*a thing, an act*) The teacher was *enraged at* the student's insolence.
152. **Enrage with** (*a person*) The teacher was *enraged with* the student for his insolence.
153. **Exult over** [*enjoy (bad sense)*] The spectators *exulted over* the defeat of Pakistani team.
154. **Exult at** (*enjoy*) The spectators *exulted at* the victory of Indian team.
155. **Eligible for** (*a post*) Only graduates are *eligible for* the post.
156. **Familiar to** (*to know*) Her face is quite *familiar to* everyone.
157. **Familiar with** (*knowledge*) I am not very *familiar with* botanical names.
158. **False of** (*heart*) He is not *false of* heart.
159. **False to** (*friends or principles*) We should not be *false to* our friends.
160. **Fascinated by** (*a thing*) The children were *fascinated by* all the toys in the shop windows.
161. **Fascinated with** (*a person*) I was *fascinated with* her because of her admirable manners.
162. **Fly into** (*anger*) On hearing my remarks she *flew into* a rage.
163. **Feed on** (*live on*) Carnivorous animals *feed on* flesh.
164. **Fondness for** (*liking for*) He has *fondness for* classical music.
165. **Fond of** (*liking for*) He is *fond of* classical music.
166. **For lack of/For want of/For short of/** (*something*) *For lack of* money he could not continue study further.
167. **Grieve for** (*a person*) He *grieved for* the victims of the storm.
168. **Grieve over** (*a thing*) He *grieved over* the loss of money in business.
169. **Grieve at** (*an event*) He *grieved at* my father's death when I informed him of my personal tragedy.
170. **Guard against** (*mistakes, temptations*) You should *guard against* the wrong use of words.
171. **Guard from** (*a danger, of a thing etc.*) You should *guard from* him because he is false of heart.
172. **Glance at** (*take a quick look*) He *glanced at* her face and started noting down her address.
173. **Glance through** (*go through*) He *glanced through* the letter in a hurry and handed it back to me.
174. **Good at** (*expert*) He is *good at* piano.

175. **Good for** (nothing) He is *good for* nothing fellow.
176. **Hear from** (a person) I have not *heard from* you for a long time.
177. **Hear of** (something) I *heard of* this event in Mumbai and rushed back to Delhi.
178. **Hear by** (post, through communication) I *heard by* a letter about his uncle's death.
179. **Hard by** (near) The college is *hard by* and I go to college on foot.
180. **Hard up** (financially tight) He is *hard up* these days.
181. **Hanker after** (run after, hunger after) Don't *hanker after* money and fame.
182. **Healed of** (a disease, cured of) He is *healed of* illness after long treatment.
183. **Infer from** (statement) You cannot *infer* anything *from* his statement.
184. **Insight into** (reality, situation) Wise persons have *insight into* the reality of life.
185. **Impress upon** (a person, advice) The Principal *impressed upon* the students the need of discipline.
186. **Impress with** (with a thing) He *impressed* me very much *with* his good manners.
187. **Inquire for/about** (a thing) He has just gone to *inquire for* the supply of rations.
188. **Inquire after** (welfare, ask after) I *inquired after* his father's health.
189. **Inquire of** (ask a person) I *inquired of* him the name of his father.
190. **Inquired into** (investigate) The police are *inquiring into* the case.
191. **Interfere in** (a thing) Don't *interfere in* my private affairs.
192. **Interfere with** (hinder) Refrain from *interfering with* the course of justice.
193. **Invest with** (authority) The Principal was *invested with* powers to deal with this problem.
194. **Influence with** (a person) He has immense *influence with* the police.
195. **Influence over** (the people) The P.M. has great *influence over* the people of tribal regions.
196. **Influence on** (a thing) The *influence* of books *on* young children is great.
197. **Intrude into** (forcibly) He *intruded into* the room but was turned out.
198. **Intrude on** (privacy) Don't *intrude on* the privacy of anyone.
199. **Intimate with** (friendly) She is *intimate with* my family.
200. **Irritated at** (thing) He seems greatly *irritated at* my refusal.
201. **Incensed at** (thing) He was greatly *incensed at* his conduct.
202. **Indignant at** (thing) Instead of being happy he is *indignant at* my offer.

203. **Judge of** (*give opinion*) Don't *judge of* things by their outward appearance.
204. **Judge by** (*test by*) He was *judged by* his academic qualifications.
205. **Jump to** (*conclusion*) Don't *jump to* conclusion without giving due consideration to the facts.
206. **Jump at** (*an offer*) He *jumped at* the offer and was highly pleased.
207. **Jeer at** (*an act, a person*) The spectators *jeered at* their team on their fourth defeat.
208. **Jest at** (*an act, a person*) Never *jest at* those who are in trouble.
209. **Known to** (*passive voice*) You are *known to* her very well.
210. **Known by** (*recognize*) A man is *known by* the company he keeps.
211. **Known for** (*a quality*) Arnav is well-*known for* his benevolence.
212. **Knocked at** (*the door*) I *knocked at* the door but there was no reply.
213. **Knock on** (*Noun*) Mala heard a *knock on* the door.
214. **Key to** (*success*) Hard work is *key to* success.
215. **Lean on** (*depend on*) I had to *lean on* him in difficulties.
216. **Lean to** (*inclined towards*) He seems to *lean more to* his daughter than his son.
217. **Live in** (*region, area, country*) He is *living in* America.
218. **Live at** (*indicate the place*) He is *living at* Agra.
219. **Live on** (*food*) He *lives* entirely *on* vegetables these days.
220. **Live by** (*livelihood, manner*) I have to *live by* the labour of my own hands.
221. **Live off** (*source*) Now-a-days he is *living off* rental income.
222. **Listen to** (*advice*) You should *listen to* my advice.
223. **Liabile for** (*responsible for*) I hold you *liable for* the murder.
224. **Liabile to** (*deserve*) He is *liable to* imprisonment and fine.
225. **Laugh with** (*enjoy with others*) It is better to *laugh with* than to laugh at others.
226. **Laugh at** (*an act, person*) Never *laught at* the old persons.
227. **Lacking in** (*something, wanting in*) Even educated persons were *lacking in* table manner.
228. (Have) **Liking for** (*a person, a thing*) She has great *liking for* children.
229. (Take) **Liking to** (*a person, a thing*) My friend took *liking to* Arnav and married him.
230. **Likeness between** (*similarity*) There is *likeness between* the Chinese and the Koreans.
231. **Limit to** (*extent*) There is always a *limit to* friendship.

232. **Move to** (*tears*) On listening to the tale of my sufferings Pearl was *moved to* tears.
233. **Move with** (*pity*) Pearl was *moved with* pity at his plight.
234. **Move by** (*condition*) We were *moved by* her pathetic condition.
235. **Married to** (*a woman*) Arnav was *married to* a famous doctor.
236. **Married with** (*a man*) She was *married with* Arnav.
237. **Mix with** (*a thing*) Please don't mix water with milk.
238. **Menace to** (*treat to*) Terrorists are *menance to* the security of the country.
239. **Match for** (*a person in quality*) His father is no *match for* my uncle.
240. **Mock at** (*an act, a person*) Never *mock at* the poverty of others.
241. **Meditate on** (*past act*) She was in tears when she *meditated on* her humiliation.
242. **Meditate** (*future act*) She is *meditating* revenge for her humiliation.
243. **Neglectful of** (*a person, work, a thing*) He has been *neglectful of* his business.
244. **Negligent in** (*careless in duty*) Don't be *negligent in* your duty.
245. **Need for** (*something*) There is no *need for* further action in the matter.
246. **(In) need of** (*something*) I am not in *need of* money (*feelings*).
247. **Originate in** (*place as a source*) Modern civilization *originated in* Europe.
248. **Originate with** (*a person*) This scheme *originated with* the Finance Minister.
249. **Occupied in** (*doing a thing*) I am just now *occupied in* solving the problems.
250. **Occupied with** (*a thing*) My father is *occupied with* the expansion of his business.
251. **Operate on/upon** (*in the sense of operation*) The doctor decided to *operate on* her leg immediately.
252. **Oblivious of** (*having no memory, ignorant of*) *Oblivious of* danger, they kept on marching ahead.
253. **Offend at** (*thing*) He was *offended at* my words.
254. **Offend with** (*person*) Please don't get *offended with* her as she is honest.
255. **Overwhelm with** (*feelings*) Her mother was *overwhelmed with* love for his son.
256. **Overwhelm by** (*defeated by*) The enemy was *overwhelmed by* our army.
257. **Part with** (*a thing*) A miser cannot *part with* a single penny.
258. **Part from** (*a person*) I *parted from* my friend in Delhi.
259. **Preface to** (*a book*) He wrote a *preface to* his book.

260. **Profit by** (*learn*) You will *profit by* experience.
261. **Profit from** (*gain*) We may *profit from* new pension policy.
262. **Partiality for** (*a thing, liking*) She has *partiality for* sweets.
263. **Partiality to** (*a person's favour*) He always shows *partiality to* his relatives.
264. **Prone to** (*inclined to*) Thickly populated areas are *prone to* riots and diseases.
265. **Perish by** (*destroy, famine, sword*) The tyrants *perish by* sword.
266. **Perish with** (*suffer from*) They are *perishing with* starvation.
267. **Prevail against** (*a thing, face*) They *prevailed against* all odds in life.
268. **Prevail on/upon** (*a person, to compel*) I have *prevailed on* him to come to attend the function.
269. **Point out** (*reveal*) I *pointed out* his errors and he got annoyed with me.
270. **Point at** (*blame*) No one can *point at* his character because he is quite honest.
271. **Point to** (*refer to*) His speech *pointed to* a few problems relating to poverty.
272. **Preside at** (*a party, chief guest*) The Governor *presided at* the feast.
273. **Preside over** (*meeting, president*) He *presided over* the meeting in the absence of the chairman.
274. **Provided against** (*adversity*) We should always *provide against* a rainy day.
275. **Provided for** (*arrange what is necessary*) He died without *providing for* his family.
276. **Popular for** (*a good quality*) He is *popular for* his honesty.
277. **Popular with** (*the people*) He is *popular with* the students of the class.
278. **Pine for** (*crave for a person*) She is *pinning for* the return of her lost son.
279. **Pine away** (*die away with grief*) She *pined away* in the memory of her lost son.
280. **Play at** (*cards*) We are *playing at* cards.
281. **Play upon** (*a musical instrument*) She is *playing upon* the piano.
282. **Partake of** (*share any thing*) They *partook of* our food and were satisfied.
283. **Prey on** (*exploit*) The rich *prey on* the poor.
284. **Passion for** (*strong desire*) He has *passion for* writing poetry.
285. **Peculiar to** (*particular*) This habit is *peculiar to* my father.
286. **Pity for** (*Noun*) We should feel *pity for* the poor.
287. **Pity on** (*Noun*) He should take *pity on* the poor.

288. **Pity** (*Verb*) We should *pity* the poor.
289. **Pride on** (*Verb*) They *prided* themselves *on* their wealth.
290. **Pride in** (*Noun*) They take *pride in* their wealth.
291. **Proud of** We should be *proud of* our country.
292. **Prompt in** (*quick in*) You should be *prompt in* doing your duty.
293. **Quick at** (*a thing*) The dog is *quick at* smelling.
294. **Quick in** (*doing a thing*) The boy is *quick in* working out the problems.
295. **Quick of** (*understanding*) The child is very *quick of* understanding.
296. **Quarrel over** (*a thing*) They *quarrelled over* the division of their ancestral property.
297. **Quarrel with** (*a person*) Don't *quarrel with* your friends over trifles.
298. **Reputation for** (*a quality*) My brother has a *reputation for* honesty.
299. **Remorse for** (*wrong doing*) She felt *remorse* later *on for* neglecting her old parents.
300. **Respite from** (*relief from*) People have felt no *respite from* cold wave.
301. **Replace by** (*a new object*) Old furniture will be *replaced by* new one.
302. **Repent of** (*an action*) He *repented of* the misdeeds of his youth.
303. **Recourse to** (*resort to, adopt as means*) They took *recourse to* wrong means for success.
304. **Revenge oneself on** (*a person*) He *revenged himself on* his enemy for the murder of his brother.
305. **Revenge for** (*Noun*) (*an injury*) She took *revenge on* him for his misdeeds.
306. **Reconcile oneself to** (*a thing*) You must *reconcile yourself to* the circumstances to and endure them.
307. **Reconcile with** (*a person*) He has not yet been *reconciled with* his wife.
308. **Reason with** (*a person*) I *reasoned with* him but could not bring him round.
309. **Reckon on/upon** (*depend on*) You can safely *reckon upon* the books for advice.
310. **Remonstrate with** (*a person*) The players *remonstrated with* the umpire against his L.B.W. decision.
311. **Remiss in** (*duty*) Those found *remiss in* duty will be punished.
312. **Sure of** (*a thing*) We are *sure of* victory in the game.
313. **Sequel to** (*as a result*) *Sequel to* success in life he become extremely rich.
314. **Smile at** (*mock at*) All his friends *smiled* mockingly *at* his failure.
315. **Smile on** (*favour*) At last fate *smiled on* him and he was successful.
316. **Slow at** (*doing something*) On account her old age she is *slow at* cooking.

317. **Substitute for** (old thing) New furniture will be *substituted for* old one.
318. **Scare of** (afraid of) I got *scared of* the sound of bomb blast.
319. **Shoot at, strike at, (unsuccessful attempt)** The police *shot at* the thief who  
**catch at, Hit at** escaped in darkness.
320. **Shoot at, Strike at, (successful in attempt)** The police *shot* the robber dead.  
**Catch at, Hit at**
321. **Speak for** (favour) I shall *speak for* you to the Commander.
322. **Speak of** (praise) There is no scenic spot here to *speak of*.
323. **Start on** (journey) He *started on* journey for Mumbai though he did not have enough money.
324. **Strive for** (try for) It is futile to *strive for* permanent joy in life.
325. **Strive with** (compete with) Don't *strive with* the rich and the powerful.
326. **Side with (Verb)** (favour) He would never *side with* those who are unjust.
327. **Search for** (a thing) He is still *searching for* a good house.
328. **Search** (frisk) He was *searching* his pocket.
329. **Seek** (try to find) He *sought* shelter in the house of his friend when there were riots.
330. **Seek after** (in demand) He is much *sought after* actor these days.
331. **Seek for** (try to win) He always *sought for* his aim in his life.
332. **Seething with** (anger, discontent) The residents of the locality were *seething with* anger over the apathy of the police.
333. **Suffer** (loss) He *suffered* heavy loss in business.
334. **Suffer from** (disease) He is *suffering from* cancer and is not likely to survive long.
335. **Show off** (display) The modest persons do not *show off* their wealth.
336. **Sentence to** (punishment) Madho was *sentenced to* death by the judge.
337. **Spark off** (give rise to, trigger off) Communal speech will *spark off* riots in the town.
338. **Think of** (remember a subject) *Think of* a plan and let me know tomorrow.
339. **Think over** (to consider) I will *think over* your case after sometime.
340. **Tantamount to** (equal in effect) His remarks are *tantamount to* insult.
341. **Tired of** (sick of, fed up with, weary) I am *tired of* listening to his flattering words.
342. **Treat of** (a subject, deal with) You should *treat of* this problem patiently.
343. **Tresspass on** (encroach on, land) Do not *tresspass on* government land.
344. **Tresspass against** (law) He was punished for *tresspassing* the rules of the road.

345. **Triumph over** (*difficulties*) At last he *triumphed over* his difficulties.
346. **Trifle with** (*make fun of*) Don't *trifle with* the feelings of the poor.
347. **Usher in** (*begin, bring out*) Globalisation has *ushered in* an era of market economy.
348. **Verse in** (*thing, expert in*) She is *versed in* the art of cooking.
349. **Vote for** (*a person*) I don't *vote for* worthless politicians.
350. **Vote on** (*resolution*) The members *voted on* the resolution which was passed by majority.
351. **Vote to** (*win*) He was *voted to* power with thumping majority.
352. **Venture upon** (*an undertaking*) He did not dare to *venture upon* new enterprise.
353. **Vain of** (*proud of*) Though rich, she is not *vain of* her wealth.
354. **Vexed with** (*person*) Don't get *vexed with* me.
355. **Vexed at** (*a thing*) I am *vexed at* my brother's absence.
356. **Wait upon** (*attend upon, to serve*) Who is *waiting on* this table?
357. **Wait for** (*person, thing*) He is *waiting for* her.
358. **Weary of** (*a thing*) He was *weary of* study and retired to bed.
359. **Warn against** (*fault, danger*) I have already *warned you against* your carelessness.
360. **Warn of** (*danger*) He *warned* the nation of financial crisis.
361. **Wish for** (*a thing*) I don't *wish for* anything in life.
362. **Worthy of** (*praise, note*) Your remarks are really *worthy of* note.
363. **Wanting in** (*lacking in*) She is *wanting in* common sense.
364. **Ward off** (*keep at a distance*) Hindus believe in many rituals to *ward* the evils *off*.
365. **Wary of** (*something, Chary of*) We should be *wary of* strangers.
366. **Yearn for** (*acute desire, long for*) She *yearned for* the return to her own home.
367. **Zealous for/about** (*a thing*) A good soldier is always *zealous for* his country's honour.

## Work Book Exercise A

**Directions** Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences.

1. We should always listen the advice of our well wishers.
2. He closely resembles with his father in facial features.
3. While taking examinations, always write with dark ink.
4. The Insurance Company has promised to compensate the damage to my house.
5. You must revise your answer sheet again.
6. He suffered from heart attack last year.
7. Everybody complains against callous treatment of the police.
8. She is very popular among her friends and relatives.
9. The highway robbers robbed all their belongings.
10. Would you please ring me up on next Monday?
11. Don't quarrel on trifles with your friends.
12. My house comprises of five rooms and is spacious enough for two families.
13. There is no cause of anxiety about his health.
14. Children should be taught to write by a fountain pen.
15. Pakistan invaded on India in 1965.
16. His employers were compelled to dispense his services.
17. On Diwali he will order for a new pair of shoes.
18. You should at least congratulate your friend for his grand success in the elections.
19. The accused was bound by a chain and taken to prison.
20. My father has assured me to present me a new scooter on my next birthday.

## Work Book Exercise B

**Directions** Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences.

1. In a democratic society no one should be discriminated because of caste and creed.
2. A summons was served to him last week.
3. As a responsible officer you should dispense with justice to the poor and the needy.
4. Whenever she goes out her chaperon accompanies with her.
5. The meeting began at about 2 p.m. and he had arrived quite earlier.
6. The news of the Prime Minister's death spread in all over the country.
7. He always travelled in second class with a view to understanding the pulse of his countrymen.
8. She was admitted in the hospital when she met with a serious accident.
9. After his death, his wife and children died of misery and starvation.

10. While going to college, I met my old friends in the way.
11. My friends entrusted me his valuables when he went abroad.
12. Our neighbour was charged of murder last year.
13. You must comply by the orders of your seniors.
14. The father of my friend deals with medicine.
15. She has been ill from fever since Monday.
16. Real beauty consists of good character.
17. The dacoits set fire on the house.
18. There was warning on the notice board "No admission without permission."
19. While returning back from Delhi, he lost his purse.
20. He was overwhelmed by grief on the demise of his father.

### Work Book Exercise C

**Directions** Spot the errors, if any, in the following sentences.

1. She is very arrogant because she comes from a rich family.
2. He has not come to meet me although he came back before a week.
3. I saw him climbing on the tree to pluck mangoes.
4. Everybody knows what for Kanpur is famous.
5. He has never wished any reward although he has served suffering humanity throughout his life.
6. Do you know he will be operated tomorrow in a Delhi hospital?
7. Six teams are competing the Singer World Cup.
8. They were talking something but I don't know what they were talking.
9. She prays God everyday for the safe return of her son.
10. In a short time the new staff will be substituted by those who are on long leave.
11. You should not leave now because this road is not safe to travel.
12. My father has promised to provide me a scooter next year.
13. He always differs from his friends in views on life.
14. Indians should learn to remain united together.
15. She has a great liking to sweets.
16. He is wanting of honesty and nobody trusts him.
17. In accordance to my advice she did not go there.
18. After he had struggled, fate smiled at him at last.
19. Such a glorious success has never been dreamt by us.
20. In the meanwhile she kept on waiting outside.

## Work Book Exercise D

**Directions** Fill up the blanks with suitable prepositions from the alternatives given under each sentence.

1. His professional ability proves that he is cut ..... for this job.  
(a) out (b) up (c) down
2. The history of Hindu religion dates ..... ancient times.  
(a) from (b) since (c) for
3. Now government servants have the day ..... every Saturday.  
(a) out (b) off (c) since
4. Nothing can deter him ..... pursuing his aim of life.  
(a) for (b) from (c) in
5. After the death of his father the responsibility has devolved ..... him.  
(a) on (b) at (c) from
6. In accordance with the advice of a doctor she is ..... diet.  
(a) on (b) at (c) off
7. Normally he stays ..... until 11 p.m. these days.  
(a) up (b) out (c) on
8. No one believes him because he is false ..... heart.  
(a) to (b) at (c) of
9. The officials have the habit of fawning ..... ministers.  
(a) above (b) at (c) on
10. The problem of communal harmony cannot be glossed ..... by government.  
(a) at (b) on (c) over
11. Kanishka was initiated ..... Buddhism by Buddhist monks.  
(a) to (b) into (c) in
12. Consequent upon heavy loss he is worse ..... these days.  
(a) upon (b) off (c) over
13. Co-operation between friends stems ..... mutual consideration.  
(a) in (b) out (c) from
14. Many Russians name their children ..... Indians.  
(a) after (b) to (c) for
15. Indians have pinned their hopes ..... the emergence of some superman.  
(a) on (b) in (c) at
16. She could not muster ..... courage to stand against the maltreatment.  
(a) to (b) up (c) about
17. Strangely her name did not occur ..... me on the second meeting.  
(a) to (b) on (c) about
18. The whole town was plunged ..... sorrow after the massacre of the students.  
(a) in (b) into (c) to

19. On seeing a robber he at once reached ..... his pistol in his pocket.  
 (a) to (b) for (c) on
20. The government acted judiciously to stave ..... the crisis.  
 (a) of (b) out (c) off

### Work Book Exercise E

**Directions** Fill up the blanks with suitable prepositions from the alternatives given under each sentence.

- You cannot expect respect from him because he is lost ..... sense of shame.  
 (a) in (b) to (c) into
- You have not to get up because the book is lying ..... hand.  
 (a) at (b) in (c) on
- After all hard work has come to tell ..... your health.  
 (a) on (b) upon (c) at
- Dishonesty is always detrimental ..... progress in life.  
 (a) to (b) for (c) in
- He made insulting remarks that are derogatory ..... his reputation.  
 (a) for (b) to (c) in
- In the long run, drinking proved fatal both ..... his reputation & health.  
 (a) for (b) to (c) of
- The rich are not inured ..... manual labour.  
 (a) of (b) on (c) to
- Disintegration of the country is inimical ..... the progress of the people.  
 (a) to (b) for (c) from
- The court has absolved him ..... all the charges levelled against him.  
 (a) of (b) from (c) to
- Children, by the force of habit, are attracted ..... anything that glitters.  
 (a) by (b) to (c) with
- Anyone who comes in contact with him is enamoured ..... his charismatic personality.  
 (a) with (b) of (c) by
- Encouraged by the success of his ventures he has decided to embark ..... the expansion programme.  
 (a) for (b) upon (c) at
- At the sight of his former wife he flew ..... a rage.  
 (a) in (b) into (c) to
- Now-a-days there is rage ..... pop music among the Indian youth.  
 (a) for (b) with (c) of
- Most of the family members dissented ..... the suggestion he made.  
 (a) to (b) from (c) of

16. The President dwelt ..... the problems facing the country.  
(a) on (b) for (c) with
17. The robbers not only injured the landlord but also decamped ..... booty.  
(a) with (b) off (c) about
18. The labourers are clamouring ..... hike in their wages.  
(a) against (b) for (c) about
19. On the eve of the Prime Minister's visit, Civil Line has been cordoned .....  
(a) off (b) in (c) for
20. .... the campus there is much indiscipline for want of proper management.  
(a) In (b) On (c) At

### Work Book Exercise F

**Directions** Fill up the blanks with suitable prepositions from the alternatives given under each sentence.

1. As a step to renovation he has decided to replace old furniture ..... new one.  
(a) with (b) by (c) for
2. During the course of speech the Principal enlarged ..... the need of improving college library.  
(a) upon (b) to (c) in
3. He was in a hurry and just glanced ..... the letter.  
(a) over (b) at (c) through
4. Now-a-days the rich persons enjoy influence ..... the police authorities.  
(a) with (b) over (c) on
5. Nobody likes anyone to intrude ..... his privacy.  
(a) in (b) into (c) on
6. Think over the matter. Please don't jump ..... conclusions in a hurry.  
(a) to (b) at (c) for
7. The scheme of Rozgar Yojna originated ..... the Prime Minister.  
(a) in (b) with (c) by
8. We must not show partiality ..... our relatives.  
(a) to (b) for (c) of
9. The Hindus believe in many rituals toward ..... evils.  
(a) against (b) off (c) out
10. There is no limit ..... the wants of man.  
(a) for (b) to (c) of
11. The mosquito is a menace ..... the health of mankind.  
(a) for (b) to (c) of
12. Don't think that there is any exception ..... the rules of moral conduct.  
(a) to (b) for (c) in
13. Cold climate is conducive ..... working conditions for man.  
(a) for (b) to (c) on

14. We have decided to adhere ..... the original programme.  
(a) by (b) for (c) to
15. Those abstemious ..... habits are known to live long.  
(a) for (b) in (c) of
16. Don't mix with those who don't approve ..... your style of living.  
(a) with (b) by (c) of
17. The visit of the P.M. has been advanced ..... two days.  
(a) for (b) by (c) to
18. Since her failure in the exams, she prefers to remain aloof ..... her friends.  
(a) from (b) by (c) of
19. Everyone was greatly amused ..... her ignorance of simple facts of life.  
(a) with (b) by (c) at
20. We have the habit of exulting ..... the discomfiture of our rivals.  
(a) at (b) over (c) by

## Work Book Exercise G

**Directions** Fill up the blanks with appropriate preposition.

1. Disruptive forces in the country are fatal ..... the integrity of the nation.
2. Politeness is a quality that is alien ..... Mrs. Kapoor.
3. Liquor is not the best means to gain respite ..... sufferings in life.
4. I think his long silence is tantamount ..... a refusal.
5. Never in life has he been beset ..... grave financial problems.
6. Heedless ..... consequences he remained deaf ..... her request.
7. Temperance in life is conducive ..... health.
8. As a literary artist he is indifferent ..... praise or blame.
9. There is no need ..... helping a reckless fellow like him.
10. For want ..... experience he was easily taken in by his sweet words.
11. The newspaper will issue a supplement ..... the issue of August 15.
12. Pollution is growing as a potential menace ..... human survival.
13. Sequal ..... the announcement of new fiscal policy the industrial sector has started looking up.
14. Pakistan has ever been hostile ..... India since it came ..... being.
15. The Yadavs claim their descent ..... the clan of Lord Krishna.
16. As an educated lady she is very much alive ..... her rights.
17. Afflicted ..... penury he died a miserable death.
18. Pre-independent India had given birth to a number of sons fired ..... patriotism.
19. She was overcome ..... fatigue and went to bed.
20. How can a highly successful person like him be devoid ..... common sense.

## Work Book Exercise H

**Directions** Fill up the blanks with appropriate prepositions.

1. He is always distrustful ..... the prejudicial motives of his partners.
2. The attitude of the fanatics is always prejudicial ..... other religion.
3. The way she uses cosmetics is offensive ..... good taste.
4. The competitive exams should never be allowed to coincide ..... university examinations.
5. At the fag end of his life he was bereft ..... wealth and home.
6. Extremism is detrimental ..... the progress of a country.
7. The Minister has decided to sue the newspaper ..... libellous writing.
8. You have no right to trespass ..... the law of the land.
9. The government has decided to impose enhanced excise duty ..... luxury goods.
10. Aurangzeb divested Shahjahan ..... royal powers.
11. He is a cosmopolitan and tolerant ..... the religious views of others.
12. Your behaviour of indifference smacks ..... jealousy.
13. Now-a-days the majority of students are not amenable ..... discipline.
14. The D.M. has consented to preside ..... the function.
15. The rich are always susceptible ..... flattery.
16. Since the death of his son he remains confined ..... his home.
17. This year the result is contrary ..... the expectations of everyone.
18. The thickly populated localities are prone ..... communal riots.
19. "Have compassion ..... every creature", preached Buddha.
20. Those found remiss ..... duty will not be pardoned.

## Work Book Exercise I

**Directions** Fill up the blanks with appropriate preposition.

1. Don't side ..... those who act contrary ..... national interests.
2. She took exception ..... his oblique reference to her parents.
3. Mr. Narayan has been overwhelmed ..... grief since his young son met with a fatal accident.
4. At last she acceded ..... his proposal of marriage after long courtship.
5. The team was elated ..... joy ..... their victory.
6. Despite financial programme they could not adhere ..... it.
7. The emergency meeting of the college staff approved ..... the budget proposals for the coming year.
8. They have apprised the authorities concerned ..... the failure of the plan.

9. Never judge ..... a metal ..... its glitter as all that glitters is not gold.
10. My guest had to pay for lunch since I had no money ..... me.
11. His head is teeming ..... brilliant ideas.
12. At present the country is agog ..... rumours of civil war.
13. You must account ..... your absence ..... the hostel warden.
14. "Who is waiting ..... this table?" The customer asked.
15. At present India is beset ..... many problems.
16. He is dead ..... all sense of honour.
17. No noble act is prompted ..... selfish motives.
18. She is proficient ..... the art of cooking.
19. Now-a-days material values take precedence ..... spiritual values.
20. Mr. Kakkar has a retinue of servants working ..... him.

## Review Exercise

**Directions** Some of the following sentences are grammatically incorrect and some are correct. Find out which part of a sentence has an error and mark that part. If there is no error mark that part as your answer.

1. He does not seem to be aware as to his merits. No error  
a b c d e
2. Between every blow of the hammer the blacksmith looked up at the door. No error  
a b c d e
3. As we see, she appears to be unreasonable anxious about pleasing her  
a b c d  
husband. No error  
e
4. The landscape of Kashmir is by far more enchanting of all. No error  
a b c d e
5. She stated to me as blunt as she could the reasons why she was opposed to  
a b c d  
my thoughtless suggestion. No error  
e
6. They were charged of having sheltered anarchists. No error  
a b c d e
7. It was barely midnight when I arrived home but I found them both sitting at  
a b c  
the table waiting on me. No error  
d e
8. She can understand Marathi but she cannot speak it proper or fluent. No error  
a b c d e
9. Hardly any other monument in the world is beautiful as the Taj Mahal. No error  
a b c d e

10. She was noticeably upset by how indignant he responded to her  
 a b c  
final question. No error  
 d e
11. I don't know why he has been unreasonably anxious to solve this problem. No error  
 a b c d e
12. The two or three first chapters of most of the novels are dull reading. No error  
 a b c d e
13. He had no other wish but to see his son fixed up in a steady job. No error  
 a b c d e
14. This widely publicised detergent is not much different than the one which  
 a b c  
I have been using. No error  
 d e
15. Lata parted with her mother with tears but the journey to Delhi amused her.  
 a b c d  
No error  
 e
16. After toiling very hardly over a long period of time he found that people  
 a b c  
recognised him as a successful person. No error  
 d e
17. Sorry I cannot drink this tea There is too many sugar in it. No error  
 a b c d e
18. Although there are some similarities in the qualifications of  
 a  
both the candidates the differences among them are considerably pronounced.  
 b c d  
No error  
 e
19. The woman who is certain of her judgement is sure a match for a man who  
 a b c  
 doesn't know his own mind. No error  
 d e
20. During the final minutes of his speech the speaker requested to the audience  
 a b  
to hold its applause. No error  
 c d e
21. He has been trying to search the lost book since Monday. No error  
 a b c d e
22. Journey by Car is as quick or perhaps quicker than by train. No error  
 a b c d e
23. Like the committee has written in its current report the rules need to be  
 a b c  
 enforced more strictly. No error  
 d e

24. There is no other way to end war except disarmament. No error  
 a b c d e
25. Found guilty on murder the accused was sentenced to death. No error  
 a b c d e
26. The smuggler yielded for the temptation and fell into the Police trap. No error  
 a b c d e
27. The girl said that she preferred the blue gown than the black one. No error  
 a b c d e
28. She is either intelligent or honest, if not both. No error  
 a b c d e
29. The students repeated the lesson word by word. No error  
 a b c d e
30. I complimented him for his brilliant success in the examination. No error  
 a b c d e
31. He returned quicker than I expected. No error  
 a b c d e
32. The extent to which he is guilty is not a matter of our consideration. No error  
 a b c d e
33. The real important thing to remember is that language learning requires a lot of practice. No error  
 a b c d e
34. These days one hears of less railway accidents than motor accidents. No error  
 a b c d e
35. Everyone looked uneasy while I was trying to explain why we ought to protest but in the end no one had any objection of it. No error  
 a b c d e
36. They found themselves in competition with men who were as good if not better than themselves. No error  
 a b c d e
37. We should appreciate that the telephones here have been working as efficient as in the past. No error  
 a b c d e
38. The mission in his life is to improve the lot of the economically deprived and the socially oppressed. No error  
 a b c d e
39. I was promoted to the post of Principal though I was junior than all the other members of the staff. No error  
 a b c d e

40. My friend is equally intelligent and hard working as your sister. No error  
 a b c d e
41. Merely speeches made from all sorts of public platforms cannot bring  
about an economic revolution. No error  
 a b c d e
42. Do you insist that we met at least once tomorrow to discuss about the subject.  
 a b c d  
No error  
 e
43. Our people must work hard with a view to improving our national economy.  
 a b c d  
No error  
 e
44. The tallest among them expressed a keen desire to sit under the shade of a  
tree. No error  
 a b c d  
 e
45. Except he and possibly our mother, all others have agreed to come back soon.  
 a b c d  
No error  
 e
46. Believe me I couldn't hardly believe what anyone of them had said. No error  
 a b c d e
47. The Socialist Party is as good if not better than any other political party.  
 a b c d  
No error  
 e
48. I got much less marks in my History paper which I had offered as an  
alternative to Economics. No error  
 a b c d e
49. The principal forbade us not to use the entire central hall. No error  
 a b c d e
50. The interviewer asked the candidate to what district he came from. No error  
 a b c d e

# ANSWERS

## Unit IV

### 12. Adjective

#### Work Book Exercise A

1. 'fewer' in place of 'less'
2. 'The few' in place of 'Few'
3. Say 'movie worth seeing'
4. 'the least' in place of 'less'
5. Drop 'most'
6. 'quiet' in place of 'quietly'
7. Insert 'the' before 'whole'
8. 'a most' in place of 'the most'
9. delete 'The' before 'few'
10. 'more wise' in place of 'wiser'

#### Work Book Exercise B

1. Insert 'as' after 'intelligent'
2. Insert 'other' after 'any'
3. 'the last' in place of 'latest'
4. 'later' in place of 'latter'
5. Insert 'most' before 'beautiful'
6. 'to' in place of 'than'
7. Drop 'other' before 'my neighbours'
8. 'all' in place of 'any'
9. Insert 'those of' after 'than'
10. Drop 'all the more' before 'better'
11. Say, 'this kind' and 'is'
12. 'very' in place of 'too'
13. 'farther' in place of 'further'
14. 'bitterly' in place of 'bitter'
15. Insert 'other' after 'No'

### 13. Adverb

#### Work Book Exercise A

1. 'did not meet' in place of 'never met'
2. 'manfully' in place of 'manly'
3. 'much' in place of 'too'
4. 'knew' in place of 'did not know'
5. 'anything' in place of 'something'
6. 'more nobly' in place of 'nobler'
7. 'kind enough' in place of 'enough kind'
8. say 'fast'
9. 'either' in place of 'neither'
10. Drop 'not'
11. 'very' in place of 'much'
12. Place 'often' before 'meet'
13. 'bluntly' in place of 'blunt'
14. 'not to talk of' in place of 'what to talk of'
15. 'more quickly' in place of 'very quicker'

#### Work Book Exercise B

1. 'don't' in place of 'never'
2. 'very' in place of 'so'
3. 'well' in place of 'good'
4. 'sweeter' in place of 'more sweetly'
5. Drop 'with'
6. 'never' in place of 'ever'
7. 'late' in place of 'lately'
8. 'slept soundly' in place of 'soundly slept'
9. Add 'don't' after 'I'
10. 'anything' in place of 'nothing'
11. 'No' in place of 'Yes'
12. Say 'bitterly cold'
13. 'unreasonably' in place of 'unreasonable'
14. 'has there been' in place of 'there has been'
15. 'a month' in place of 'monthly'

## 14. Prepositions

### Work Book Exercise A

- |   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. listen to                            | 2. Drop 'with'                    |
| 3. write in dark ink                    | 4. compensate me for damage       |
| 5. Drop 'again'                         | 6. drop 'from'                    |
| 7. 'of' in place of 'against'           | 8. 'with' in place of 'among'     |
| 9. robbed them all of the belongings    | 10. Drop 'on'                     |
| 11. 'over' in place of 'on'             | 12. Drop 'of'                     |
| 13. 'for' in place of 'of'              | 14. write with                    |
| 15. invaded India                       | 16. dispense with                 |
| 17. Drop 'for' after 'order'            | 18. on his grand success          |
| 19. 'bound with' in place of 'bound by' | 20. present me with a new scooter |

### Work Book Exercise B

- |   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1. discriminated against                    | 2. 'on' in place of 'to'       |
| 3. dispense justice                         | 4. accompanies her             |
| 5. began at 2 p.m./about 2 p.m.             | 6. spread all over the country |
| 7. travelled second class                   | 8. admitted to the hospital    |
| 9. died from                                | 10. on the way                 |
| 11. entrusted me with his valuables         | 12. 'with' in place of 'of'    |
| 13. 'with' in place of 'by'                 | 14. 'in' in place of 'with'    |
| 15. 'with' in place of 'from'               | 16. 'in' in place of 'of'      |
| 17. 'to' in place of 'on'/set house on fire | 18. say 'admittance'           |
| 19. Drop 'back'                             | 20. 'with' in place of 'by'    |

### Work Book Exercise C

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1. 'of' in place of 'from'        | 2. a week before/ago                                 |
| 3. 'up' in place of 'on'          | 4. what Kanpur is famous for                         |
| 5. Insert 'for' after 'wished'    | 6. 'on/upon' after 'operated'                        |
| 7. Insert 'for' after 'competing' | 8. Insert 'about' after 'talking' on both the cases. |
| 9. Insert 'to' after 'prays'      | 10. 'for' in place of 'by'                           |
| 11. Insert 'by' after 'travel'    | 12. Insert 'with' after 'me'                         |
| 13. 'with' in place of 'from'     | 14. Remove 'together'                                |
| 15. 'for' in place of 'to'        | 16. 'in' in place of 'of'                            |
| 17. 'with' in place of 'to'       | 18. 'on' in place of 'at'                            |
| 19. Insert 'of' after 'dreamt'    | 20. Delete 'In'                                      |

### Work Book Exercise D

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (a)  | 2. (a)  | 3. (b)  | 4. (b)  | 5. (a)  | 6. (a)  | 7. (a)  |
| 8. (c)  | 9. (c)  | 10. (c) | 11. (b) | 12. (b) | 13. (c) | 14. (a) |
| 15. (a) | 16. (b) | 17. (a) | 18. (b) | 19. (b) | 20. (c) |         |

### Work Book Exercise E

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (b)  | 2. (a)  | 3. (b)  | 4. (a)  | 5. (b)  | 6. (b)  | 7. (c)  |
| 8. (a)  | 9. (b)  | 10. (b) | 11. (b) | 12. (b) | 13. (b) | 14. (a) |
| 15. (b) | 16. (a) | 17. (a) | 18. (b) | 19. (a) | 20. (b) |         |

**Work Book Exercise F**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (b)  | 2. (a)  | 3. (c)  | 4. (a)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (a)  | 7. (b)  |
| 8. (a)  | 9. (b)  | 10. (b) | 11. (b) | 12. (a) | 13. (b) | 14. (c) |
| 15. (b) | 16. (c) | 17. (b) | 18. (a) | 19. (c) | 20. (b) |         |

**Work Book Exercise G**

- |          |        |          |          |         |           |              |
|----------|--------|----------|----------|---------|-----------|--------------|
| 1. to    | 2. to  | 3. from  | 4. to    | 5. with | 6. of, to | 7. to        |
| 8. to    | 9. for | 10. of   | 11. to   | 12. to  | 13. to    | 14. to, into |
| 15. from | 16. to | 17. with | 18. with | 19. by  | 20. of    |              |

**Work Book Exercise H**

- |            |        |        |         |         |        |        |
|------------|--------|--------|---------|---------|--------|--------|
| 1. of      | 2. to  | 3. to  | 4. with | 5. of   | 6. to  | 7. for |
| 8. against | 9. on  | 10. of | 11. of  | 12. of  | 13. to | 14. at |
| 15. to     | 16. to | 17. to | 18. to  | 19. for | 20. in |        |

**Work Book Exercise I**

- |             |           |         |          |               |             |        |
|-------------|-----------|---------|----------|---------------|-------------|--------|
| 1. with, to | 2. to     | 3. with | 4. to    | 5. with, over | 6. to       | 7. of  |
| 8. with     | 9. of, by | 10. on  | 11. with | 12. with      | 13. for, to | 14. on |
| 15. with    | 16. to    | 17. by  | 18. in   | 19. over      | 20. for     |        |

**Review Exercise**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. (d) 'of' for 'as to'                 | 2. (a) Say 'after' for 'between'       |
| 3. (c) Say 'unreasonably anxious'       | 4. (d) Use 'the most enchanting'       |
| 5. (b) Say 'bluntly'                    | 6. (b) Use 'charged with'              |
| 7. (d) Say 'waiting for'                | 8. (d) Say 'properly or fluently'      |
| 9. (c) Add 'as' before 'beautiful'      | 10. (c) Say 'indignantly'              |
| 11. (e) no error                        | 12. (a) Say 'the first two or three'   |
| 13. (c) Use 'than' for 'but'            | 14. (c) Use 'from'                     |
| 15. (b) Say 'part from'                 | 16. (a) Say 'hard'                     |
| 17. (d) Say 'too much'                  | 18. (c) Use 'between' for 'among'      |
| 19. (b) Say 'surely'                    | 20. (b) Omit 'to'                      |
| 21. (c) 'search for' in place of search | 22. (b) Place 'as' after 'quick'       |
| 23. (a) Say 'As' for 'Like'             | 24. (d) Say 'than' for 'except'        |
| 25. (b) Use 'of' for 'on'               | 26. (b) Say 'to the temptation'        |
| 27. (d) Say 'to' for 'than'             | 28. (d) Say 'neither' for 'not both'   |
| 29. (d) Say 'word for word'             | 30. (b) Use 'on' in place of 'for'     |
| 31. (b) Say 'more quickly'              | 32. (d) Say 'for our consideration'    |
| 33. (a) Say 'the really important'      | 34. (c) Say 'fewer'                    |
| 35. (d) Say 'to' for 'of'               | 36. (c) Add 'as' after 'good'          |
| 37. (d) Say 'efficiently'               | 38. (b) Use 'of' in place of 'in'      |
| 39. (c) 'junior to' is correct          | 40. (b) Use 'as' for 'equally'         |
| 41. (a) Say 'Mere' for 'Merely'         | 42. (d) Delete 'about' after 'discuss' |
| 43. (d) Say 'their' for 'our'           | 44. (d) Say 'in the shade'             |
| 45. (a) Say 'him' for 'he'              | 46. (b) Remove 'not'                   |
| 47. (b) Add 'as' after 'good'           | 48. (a) Say 'fewer' for 'less'         |
| 49. (c) Delete 'not'                    | 50. (c) Delete 'to'                    |

# Phrasal Verbs

## What are Phrasal Verbs?

English language abounds in the use of verbs with prepositions or adverbs to obtain a variety of meanings. The verbs used with prepositions, adverbs or both are defined as phrasal verbs and they denote idiomatic meaning only **when taken as a whole**. These prepositions and adverbs are known in grammar as Particles.

For example

- (i) Set in ..... start. (verb + preposition)
- (ii) Set up ..... establish. (verb + adverb)
- (iii) Put up with ..... tolerate. (verb + adverb + preposition)

**NOTE** These expressions are to be taken **as a whole** ..... verb + particles.

When particle is separated from its verb, both verb & particle revert to their individual meanings separately.

- (i) Set, in (ii) Set, up
- (iii) Put, up, with

There are two types of expressions of phrasal verbs

- 1. Transitive expressions
- 2. Intransitive expressions

### 1. Transitive Expressions

I. Nouns (as direct objects) are usually placed at the end of transitive expressions or immediately after the verb & before the particle.

- (i) She **took off** her apron.
- (ii) She **took her apron off**.

II. Pronoun objects are more often used after the verb or before the short words 'off, on, up, down, in, out, away' etc.

- (i) I went to **see him off**.
- (ii) She **brought him up**.

III. Pronoun objects are placed at the end of such expressions when verbs cannot be split such as 'look for, account for, call at, call on, look after' etc.

- (i) I am **looking for** him.
- (ii) You should **look after** her.
- (iii) I **called on** him yesterday.
- (iv) You have to **stand by** me.

## 2. Intransitive Expressions

Intransitive expressions of phrasal verbs **do not** admit of any object.

- (i) She **broke down** in the court.
- (ii) His father **came round** at last.
- (iii) Their marriage **comes off** next month.
- (iv) The meeting **broke up** suddenly.

Now, study the following phrasal verbs that are currently in use.

1. **Account for** (*explain the reason, answer for*) I can't *account for* his unusual behaviour in this matter.
2. **Ask after** (*ask about the welfare, inquire after*) I met your brother at the party, he *asked after* you.
3. **Ask for** (*request for*) She *asked for* a glass of water.
4. **Back out** (*go back on, withdraw from promise*) He agreed to help but *backed out* at the last moment.
5. **Be in for** [about to take place (*unpleasant*)] On account of his bad habits he *is in for* trouble.
6. **Bear away** (*win*) Suhani *bore away* the first prize in the dance competition.
7. **Bear on/upon** [relevant, (*bearing on*)] Your remarks have no *bearing on* the main problem.
8. **Bear out** (*support the argument, corroborate*) I am sure my classmates will *bear out* my statement.
9. **Bear with** (*to show patience, co-operate*) In view of the heavy losses suffered by the company, the shareholders were requested to *bear with*.
10. **Blow out** (*extinguish*) The candle *blew out* as the gust of wind came in.
11. **Blow over** (*pass off without harm, come to an end*) Don't worry, the crisis are likely to *blow over*.
12. **Blow up** (*explode, start suddenly*) The plan of the enemy to *blow up* the fly-over was foiled by the police.
13. **Break down** (*emotional collapse, stop functioning*) While giving evidence in the court, she *broke down*.
14. **Break into** (*enter by force*) The robbers *broke into* his house last night.
15. **Break off** (*come to an end, unsuccessfully*) The talks between India and China *broke off*.
16. **Break out** [*spread (war, epidemic, fire, riots)*] The fear that aids has *broken out* in India is not unfounded.
17. **Break through** (*discover a secret, major achievement*) There is no hope of *break through* in the murder case.
18. **Break up** [terminate (*meeting, school, session*)] The college will *break up* next week for summer vacation.

19. **Break up with** (*quarrel*) After long and fruitful friendship the two friends *broken up with* each other.  
**Break open** (*open by force*) The thief *broke open* the lock and stole money.
20. **Bring about** (*cause to happen*) The administration helped to *bring about* a peaceful settlement.
21. **Bring out** (*explain the meaning, publish*) When asked to explain, she could not *bring out* the meaning of the poem.
22. **Bring round** (*to make one agree, bring to senses*) I was able to *bring* my mother *round* to my views with great difficulty.
23. **Bring up** (*rear, educate*) Fathers are beginning to play a bigger role in *bringing up* their children.
24. **Call at** (*visit a place to meet*) I *called at* the residence of my boss yesterday.
25. **Call for** (*necessary, require*) For the unity of the country discipline among the people is *called for*.
26. **Call in/call out** (*send for help*) The police were *called in* without delay by the residents.
27. **Call off** (*suspend or abandon*) We decided to *call off* the strike.
28. **Call on** (*go and visit a person*) It is a tradition for the Prime Minister to *call on* the President.
29. **Call out** (*ask to come for help*) The National Guards has been *called out*.
30. **Call up** (*to telephone, recall*) Many of my friends *called me up* to congratulate me.
31. **Call upon** (*appeal, exhort*) He was *called upon* to prove the correctness of the press reports.
32. **Carry away by** (*lose control*) On hearing the news of his success he was *carried away by* joy.
33. **Carry on** (*continue*) Now it is difficult to *carry on* this business in the teeth of stiff competition.
34. **Carry out** (*implement, obey, execute*) It is not likely that your father will *carry out* the threat of disinheriting you.
35. **Cast away** (*throw away as useless*) We usually give our servants the old clothes which we *cast away*.
36. **Cast down** (*dejected, down cast*) Now-a-days he is *cast down* as a result of his failure in the examination.
37. **Cast off** (*release, remove*) Organization must *cast off* old fashioned practices in order to survive.
38. **Catch up with** (*make up for deficiency, overtake*) He remained ill for many days but *caught up with* the pending work very soon.
39. **Come about** (*happen*) It is not good that such an unfortunate accident *came about*.
40. **Come across** (*meet by chance*) I *came across* my old friend in the market yesterday.

41. **Come by** (*get*) How have you *come by* such a precious diamond?
42. **Come of** (*belong to*) Reeta *comes of* a family of freedom fighters.
43. **Come off** (*take place as arranged, fade, get separated*) I was surprised to see that plaster had *come off* the walls.
44. **Come over** (*get over, overcome*) You can *come over* your problems by honest means.
45. **Come round** (*agree, recover from illness*) My father at first refused to let me continue study but he *came round* in the end.
46. **Come upon** (*come across, get by chance*) My friend *came upon* the evidence just by chance.
47. **Cope with** (*manage*) They *coped with* all their problems cheerfully.
48. **Cut down** (*curtail, reduce*) Since you are out of job these days, you must *cut down* your expenditure.
49. **Cut off** (*discontinue, die, remove*) Gas supplies have now been *cut off*.
50. (Be) **Cut out for** (*suitable*) He is *cut out for* an administrative career.
51. **Cut out** (*to take a piece from the whole*) He *cut out* a piece of the cake and put it in my plate.
52. **Cut up** (*distressed, cut into small pieces*) She was *cut up* because she had been scolded by her teacher.
53. **Die down** [*gradually disappear (riots, excitement, storm etc.)*] The wind has *died down*.
54. **Die out** (*become out of use or existence*) He thought that the custom had *died out* a long time ago.
55. **Dispose of** (*sell off*) She has decided to *dispose of* her old house.
56. **Dispose to** (*willing, inclined favourably*) My friend is *disposed to* discussing the problems thoroughly.
57. **Do away with** (*eradicate*) We should *do away with* social evils.
58. **Do for** (*serve the purpose*) This book will *do for* the SSC examination.
59. (Have) **Done with** (*have no relation*) I have *done with* him because of his dishonesty.
60. **Do without** (*dispense with, to manage without*) We cannot *do without* fan in summer.
61. **Done for, done in** (*be ruined*) He appears to be *done for* since he has lost heavily in gambling.
62. **Draw up** (*to write, compose, draft*) I was busy *drawing up* plans for the new course.
63. **Draw on or upon** (*to get money from*) He was able to *draw on* vast reserves of talent.
64. **Drop in** (*to pay a short visit*) I thought I'd just *drop in* and see how you were.
65. **Drop out** (*retire in the midst of doing something*) She could not qualify for the selection as she *dropped out* while the race was in progress.

66. **Fall back** (*retreat*) The rioters *fell back* when the police arrived.
67. **Fall back on** (*depend on*) You must save money *to fall back on* it in old age.
68. **Fall off** (*decrease in number, get separated*) In the wake of roof tragedy the admissions in the school have *fallen off*.
69. **Fall out** (*quarrel*) The two friends appear to have *fallen out* over a minor issue.
70. **Fall in with** (*agree with*) Instead of challenging the lie, she *fell in with* their views.
71. **Fall through** (*to remain incomplete, fail*) For want of sufficient funds your new project is likely to *fall through*.
72. **Follow up** (*pursue after the first attempt*) The idea has been *followed up* by a group of researchers.
73. **Get ahead** (*go forward*) You can *get ahead* of your rivals only by hard work.
74. **Get along** (*be friendly*) They just can't *get along* together because of temperamental differences.
75. **Get at** (*reach, understand*) It is very difficult to *get at* the truth etc.
76. **Get away** (*escape*) They *got away* on scooter.
77. **Get away with** (*without being punished or with little punishment*) Although his fault was serious, he *got away with* light punishment.
78. **Get on** (*progress*) How is your son *getting on* with your study?
79. **Get on with** (*live together, pull with*) Both husband and wife are *getting on* well *with* each other.
80. **Get over** (*recover from illness or shock, come over*) He is still trying to *get over* the financial crises.
81. **Get through** (*pass through, succeed*) It is not possible to *get through* examination without labour.
82. **Get up** (*rise from bed, dressed*) The woman *got up* from her chair with the baby in her arms.
83. **Give away** (*distribute*) She has *given away* jewellery worth thousands of Rupees.
84. **Give in** (*surrender, agree*) At first she was adamant but at last she *gave in* to the request of her friend.
85. **Give out** (*announce verbally, emit*) It was *given out* that she had failed.
86. **Give up** (*stop, abstain from*) He *gave up* smoking to save money.
87. **Give way** (*collapse under pressure, break*) The contractor was charged with negligence when the roof of a new building *gave way*.
88. **Given to** (*accustomed to*) He is *given to* smoking.
89. **Go back on** (*withdraw, back out*) One should not *go back on* one's promise.
90. **Go down** (*be believed*) Your excuse will not *go down*.
91. **Go in for** (*buy, practise, to enter a contest*) I thought of *going in for* teaching.
92. **Go off** (*explode and be discharged*) When he was cleaning his gun it *went off* and killed him.

93. **Go on** (*continue*) There is no need to *go on* arguing about it.
94. **Go over** (*examine carefully, look over*) On *going over* the balance sheet of the company the auditors have found serious mistakes.
95. **Go through** (*read hurriedly, endure*) He didn't lend me the newspaper because he was *going through* it.
96. **Go up** (*rise, increase*) As a result of a sharp rise in prices the price of washing soap has *gone up*.
97. **Hand out** (*distribute*) *Hand out* the books to the students.
98. **Hand over** (*give charge or authority*) He has not *handed over* charge to the new manager.
99. **Hang about** (*stay waiting, roam about*) The boys *hanging about* girls' hostel were rounded up by the police.
100. **Hold on** (*carry on, bear difficulties, persist*) In spite of financial difficulties he *held on* and succeeded in the long run.
101. **Hold out** (*resist*) When the robbers ran short of ammunition, they could no longer *hold out*.
102. **Hold over** (*postpone*) Most of the bills are *held over* till the next session of the Parliament.
103. **Hold up** (*to stop in order to rob, delay*) The terrorists *held up* the motor car and kept the ladies as hostages.
104. **Jump at** (*accept happily*) He *jumped at* the offer of his boss to accept the job abroad.
105. **Jump to** (*arrive suddenly [conclusion]*) You should never *jump to* conclusions.
106. **Keep from** (*refrain from, not to mix with*) Always *keep from* selfish people because they can harm you anytime.
107. **Keep off** (*keep at a distance*) There was a notice at the site, "*Keep off* the bushes."
108. **Keep on** (*continue*) She *kept on* crying in spite of my assurance of help.
109. **Keep up** (*maintain*) Always try to *keep up* the standard of life even in the face of crises.
110. **Keep up with** (*try to move with, not to fall behind*) Young men should *keep up with* the latest development in international field.
111. **Lay by** (*save money*) The wise men always *lay by* money for their old age.
112. (Be) **Laid up with** (*confined to bed*) She is not going out as she is *laid up with* the flu.
113. **Lay down** (*establish a rule, sacrifice, surrender*) The conditions *laid down* by the Department of Health were violated by the nursing homes.
114. **Lay off** (*to discontinue work, dismiss temporarily*) The workers have been *laid off* for want of raw material.
115. **Lay out** (*plan building, garden etc.*) A number of gardens were *laid out* by the Moghuls.
116. **Let down** (*humiliate, to lower down*) We should never *let down* our friends.

117. **Let into** (*allow to enter*) After repeated requests he was *let into* the classroom.
118. **Let off** (*to free from punishment, pardon*) She was *let off* by the Principal with light punishment.
119. **Let (somebody) in on** (*share a secret*) I will not *let her in on* my plans.
120. **Let up** (*cessation, respite*) There is no *let up* in heat during May.
121. **Live on** (*depend for food (staple food)*) The lion is carnivorous and *lives on* flesh.
122. **Live by** (*means/manner*) You must learn to *live by* honest means.
123. **Live off** (*source of income*) They were *living off* rental income.
124. **Look about** (*in search of, on the watch*) The thirsty crow was *looking about* water here & there.
125. **Look after** (*take care of*) In her old age she has no one to *look after* her.
126. **Look at** (*see carefully*) The boys are *looking at* the sky.
127. **Look back on** (*to think of the past*) People can often *look back* and reflect on happy childhood memories.
128. **Look for** (*search for a lost thing*) She was *looking for* her lost books.
129. **Look down upon** (*hate, despise*) It is folly on your part to *look down upon* the poor students.
130. **Look into** (*investigate the matter*) A committee was set up to *look into* the problem.
131. **Look on** (*to see as a spectator*) His parents *looked on* with a triumphant smile.
132. **Look over** (*examine carefully, go over*) The examiner has yet to *look over* practice note books.
133. **Look out** (*watch out, careful, beware*) *Look out*, there is a snake under the bush.
134. **Look out for** (*in search of, on the watch*) He is *looking out for* a decent job.
135. **Look to** (*rely upon, be careful*) The poor *look to* financial help from the government.
136. **Look up** (*consult some book for a word, rise*) Please *look up* this word in the dictionary.
137. **Look upto** (*respect*) His younger brother *looks upto* him and obeys his every order.
138. **Look upon** (*consider, regard*) We must *look upon* social evils as nuisance.
139. **Make off with/away with** (*run away, destroy*) They *made off with* the cash and fled.
140. **Make out** (*understand the meaning*) The police could not *make out* the coded message they intercepted.
141. **Make over** (*transfer possession, convert*) Since she had no legal heir, she *made over* her house in charity.
142. **Make up** (*to end (quarrel), compose*) You should make an effort to *make up* a quarrel with your friend.

143. **Make up for** (*compensate for*) After her long illness she is trying her best to *make up for* her deficiency in study.
144. **Pass away** (*die, expire*) On the *passing away* of his father I sent him a message of condolence.
145. **Pass for** (*regarded to be*) The TATAs *pass for* philanthropists in the country.
146. **Pass off** (*take place*) The elections are likely to *pass off* peacefully.
147. **Pass oneself off** (*show off*) The hypocrites always *pass themselves off* as honest persons.
148. **Pass through** (*go through, undergo, endure*) He is *passing through* financial difficulties these days.
149. **Pass out** (*leave after completing education*) The cadets will *pass out* next month after completing their training.
150. **Pull down** (*demolish a structure*) Why did they *pull* the shops *down*?
151. **Pull off** (*succeed*) India *pulled off* victory in the last stage of the match.
152. **Pull through** (*recover from illness*) I think she'll *pull through* her serious illness very soon.
153. **Pull up** (*stop, scold*) The students were *pulled up* by the Principal for their misbehaviour with the class teacher.
154. **Pull with** (*live together, get on with*) He is *pulling well with* his wife these days.
155. **Put down** (*crush, keep down*) The riots were *put down* by the local police.
156. **Put off** (*postpone, avoid, discourage*) The meeting had to be *put off* because the President could not come.
157. **Put on** (*wear, pretend*) It is difficult to *put on* the appearance of innocence for a long time.
158. **Put out** (*extinguish*) The fire was *put out* suddenly.
159. **Put up** (*stays, question*) He is *putting up* at a hostel these days.
160. **Put up with** (*tolerate patiently*) For an honourable person it is difficult to *put up with* the haughty behaviour of the Directors.
161. **Round up** (*arrest*) The police *rounded up* anti-social elements last night.
162. **Run after** (*pursue, hanker after*) We should not *run after* money.
163. **Run down** (*criticise, poor health*) As a result of long illness she has *run down* a lot.
164. **Run into** (*come across, meet by chance*) While walking along the roadside, I *ran into* my old schoolmates.
165. **Run out** (*come to an end*) When the rations *ran out*, the head office was informed.
166. **Run over** (*crush under*) He was *run over* by a speeding car.
167. **Run through** (*waste money*) It is a pity that he has *run through* his fortune over gambling and drinking.
168. **See off** (*to escort a guest for his departure*) His friends were present at the station to *see him off*.

169. **See through** (*discover something hidden, motive*) Man has grown so clever that it is difficult to *see through* his tricks.
170. **Send for** (*summon*) She *sent for* a doctor when her husband fell ill.
171. **Set about** (*start doing*) As soon as she reached home, she *set about* calling up her friends.
172. **Set aside** (*allocate, strike down, turn down*) The High court *set aside* the verdict of the lower court in this sensitive matter.
173. **Set in** (*begin*) As soon as the summer *sets in*, the reptiles come out of hibernation.
174. **Set off** (*to start a series of events, process, improve*)  
(i) Cosmetics *set off* the natural grace.  
(ii) Privatisation has *set off* the process of liberalisation in foreign trade.
175. **Set up** (*establish*) The factory was *set up* by his uncle.
176. **Set forth** (*start on a journey, explain*) The party will *set forth* its views on globalisation at a public rally.
177. **Set out** (*start on a journey, set forth*) No sooner was the hunter informed of a lion's presence in the forest than he *set out*.
178. **Sit back** (*relax*) He believes that he has the right to *sit back* while others should work hard.
179. **Sit up** (*stay out of bed, stay up*) She *sat up* till her son returned.
180. **Stand by** (*support, help*) Although he promised to *stand by* me in difficulties, he did not live up to it.
181. **Stand for** (*represent*) T.E.C. *stands for* Technical Education Certificate.
182. **Stand out** (*to be conspicuous*) She *stood out* from the crowd because of her amiable manners.
183. **Stand up for** (*defend*) It is your duty to *stand up* always *for* the poor.
184. **Strike off** (*remove from the list*) His name has been *struck off* the admission list.
185. **Take after** (*resemble*) She always reminds me of her mother since she *takes after* her mother.
186. **Take down** (*write*) She was busy in *taking down* the dictation which the teacher was giving.
187. **Take off** (*remove, leave the ground, improve*) It is difficult for Indian economy to *take off* in the absence of heavy investment.
188. **Take over** (*take up responsibility*) The agency tried to *take over* another company.
189. (Be) **Taken to** (*form a habit*) He *took to* wearing black leather jackets.
190. **Take up** (*start a hobby or study, occupy*) He has *taken up* modelling as a career.
191. **Tell upon** (*affect adversely*) I have warned him that heavy work will *tell upon* his health.
192. (Be) **Taken in** (*be deceived*) For all your intelligence you are likely to be *taken in* by impostors.

193. **Take for** (*suppose to be, identify*) I *took* the scoundrel *for* a noble person.
194. (Be) **Taken aback** (*be surprised*) I was *taken aback* to hear of the news of his failure.
195. **Talk over** (*discuss a matter*) I agreed to go home and *talk over* the matter.
196. **Turn down** (*reject, strike down*) I *turned down* the request of my friend to go to Simla.
197. **Turn off** (*stop, switch off*) Please make it a point to *turn off* water tap before you go out.
198. **Turn on** (*switch on, start*) She *turned on* the shower to take bath.
199. **Turn over** (*change, capsize, upset*) The boat *turned over* and ten persons were drowned.
200. **Turn out** (*prove, reveal, expel*) Nothing ever *turned out* right for me in life.
201. **Turn up** (*arrive, take place*) Who can say what will *turn up* next?
202. **Watch out** (*look out, careful*) If you do not *watch out*, he might harm you.
203. **Wipe away** (*cleanse, remove*) The marks of blood were *wiped away* by the accused.
204. **Wipe out** (*destroy completely*) We must try to *wipe out* poverty from the country.
205. **Wind up** (*bring to an end*) We were forced to *wind up* the business on account of heavy loss.
206. **Work out** (*solve the problem*) He is very intelligent and can *work out* any difficult problem.
207. **Work up** (*incite, instigate*) The politicians should not try to *work up* communal frenzy.
208. **Work upon** (*influence*) The leader tried to *work upon* the mob.

### Addenda

209. (Get the) **Hang of something** (*learn about*) As I entered the conference hall I got the hang of conspiracy.
210. **Hang together** (*fit together*) Your present statement does not *hang together* with the past one.
211. **Hang round with** (*spend time together*) I used to *hang round with* my friends on the Mall road.
212. **Pull in** (*enter*) As the train *pulled in*, the passengers ran here and there.
213. **Set to** (*determined*) If we really *set to*, we can get the work done within time.
214. **Break with** (*tradition and customs*) It is very difficult to *break with* past customers.

## Phrasal Verbs used as Nouns, Verbs, Adjectives

### Break

- Breakout** (*noun*)      escape from prison  
The news of prison *breakout* has been confirmed.
- Outbreak** (*noun*)      beginning  
The *outbreak* of the third world war will prove to be a universal disaster.
- Breakdown** (*noun*)      of machinery, mental collapse  
The *breakdown* of the car delayed our departure.
- Break-through** (*noun*)      major achievement  
There is no sign of any *break-through* in the negotiations.

### Beat

- Offbeat** (*adj.*)      different, unusual  
They like *offbeat* themes of the novels.

### Bring

- Upbringing** (*noun*)      bringing up of a person.  
His *upbringing* has been very simple.

### Call

- Call-up** (*noun*)      a summons for military service.  
He avoided *call-up* pretending illness.

### Come

- Outcome** (*noun*)      result of an action  
We are not aware of the *outcome* of the meeting.
- Overcome** (*verb*)      solve problem, succeed, defeat  
Have you *overcome* your financial problems?

### Fall

- Fall-out** (*noun*)      dangerous radioactive dust, bad result  
The *fall out* of globalisation has not proved a blessing for a common man.

### Hold

- Hold-up** (*noun*)      attempt for robbery  
The news of *hold-up* made us turn our route.
- Uphold** (*verb*)      support what is right, confirm  
We should *uphold* the dignity of our profession.

### Keep

- Upkeep** (*noun*)      maintenance  
The *upkeep* of my office costs me a lot these days.

**Let**

**Outlet** (*noun*) way of expressing feelings of energy, a place for selling goods.  
Children must have *outlet* to spend their energy.

**Lay**

**Layout** (*noun*) The way a building or book is planned  
He does not like the *layout* of this building.

**Outlay** (*noun*) expenditure

The *outlay* on the plan is exorbitant.

**Lay-off** (*noun*) a period when labour is unemployed, an account of no work.

There is six month *lay-off* in our sugar factory.

**Look**

**Look-out** (*noun*) on watch  
He is on the *look-out* for a good job.

**Outlook** (*noun*) attitude to life & the world  
You must have optimistic *outlook*.

**Overlook** (*verb*) fail to see, pardon  
He was kind enough to *overlook* my fault.

**Make**

**Make-up** (*noun*) use of cosmetics  
It takes her long to put on her *make-up*.

**Mix**

**Mix-up** (*noun*) confusion  
The *mix-up* of the luggage in the cloak room caused the confusion.

**Round**

**Round-up** (*noun*) bringing people together, arrest  
The government ordered a *round-up* of the miscreants.

**Run**

**Runaway** (*noun, adj*) one who has escaped.

**Noun** The *runaways* from the prison were arrested again.

**Adj** The *runaway* prisoners were arrested again.

**Sell**

**Sell-out** (*noun*) not a single article left  
The new edition of the book has been a complete *sell-out*.

**Set**

**Outset** (*noun*) start, beginning  
The trainees were warned of the danger at the *outset*.

<b>Offset</b> ( <i>verb</i> )	do something to reduce the effect of others The rise in income is generally <i>offset</i> by Income Tax.
<b>Upset</b> ( <i>noun, verb</i> )	an unexpected situation, unhappy, anxious
<b>Noun</b>	The <i>upset</i> in the semi finals has completely dashed our hopes.
<b>Verb</b>	The behaviour of her daughter has <i>upset</i> her.

**Take**

<b>Intake</b> ( <i>noun</i> )	The quantity or number taken in a period. The famous institute in our city has a yearly <i>intake</i> of 1,500 students.
<b>Take-off</b> ( <i>noun</i> )	leaving ground (plane) The <i>take-off</i> of the aeroplane has been delayed.
<b>Take-over</b> ( <i>noun</i> )	an offer to buy company The <i>take-over</i> of Sahara Airlines has been finalised.
<b>Overtake</b> ( <i>verb</i> )	to go past a vehicle <i>Overtaking</i> heavy vehicles is sometimes fatal.

**Turn**

<b>Turnover</b> ( <i>noun</i> )	amount received for sale He has a <i>turnover</i> of about 5 lakh a year.
<b>Overturn</b> ( <i>noun</i> )	capsize The boat <i>overturned</i> and sank.
<b>Turn-out</b> ( <i>noun</i> )	attendance There was a heavy <i>turn-out</i> for the opening ceremony.

**Work Book Exercise A**

**Directions** Fill up the blanks with suitable prepositions from the alternatives given under each sentence.

- He didn't lend me the newspaper because he was going ..... it.  
(a) over (b) through (c) about
- For want of sufficient funds your new project is likely to fall .....  
(a) out (b) through (c) under
- How have you come ..... such a precious diamond?  
(a) across (b) upon (c) by
- We usually give our servants the old clothes we cast .....  
(a) off (b) aside (c) away
- He was called ..... to prove the correctness of the press reports.  
(a) up (b) on (c) upon
- For the unity of the country discipline among the people is called .....  
(a) forth (b) for (c) out

7. Now it is difficult to carry ..... this business in the teeth of stiff competition.  
(a) out (b) on (c) off
8. The fear that AIDS has broken ..... in India is not unfounded.  
(a) up (b) about (c) out
9. The plan of the enemy to blow ..... the fly-over was foiled by the police.  
(a) over (b) down (c) up
10. In view of the heavy losses suffered by the company, the shareholders were requested to bear .....  
(a) over (b) with (c) out
11. The two friends appear to have fallen ..... over a minor issue.  
(a) down (b) out (c) into
12. When the robbers ran short of ammunition, they could no longer hold .....  
(a) on (b) up (c) out
13. The wise men always lay ..... money for their old age.  
(a) down (b) by (c) aside
14. The robbers made ..... with whatever they could lay their hands on.  
(a) out (b) off/away (c) for
15. The detectives arrested him while he was palming ..... counterfeit currency notes.  
(a) off (b) over (c) by
16. After her long illness she is trying her best to make ..... her deficiency in study.  
(a) out (b) up for (c) for
17. On the passing ..... of his father I sent him a message of condolence.  
(a) by (b) over (c) away
18. Please make it a point to turn ..... water tap before you go out.  
(a) down (b) about (c) off
19. Although he promised to stand ..... me in difficulties he did not live up to it.  
(a) for (b) by (c) over
20. For an honourable person it is difficult to put ..... the haughty behaviour of the Directors.  
(a) up (b) up with (c) on

## Work Book Exercise B

**Directions** Fill up the blanks with suitable prepositions from the alternatives given under each sentence.

1. The Tatas pass ..... philanthropists in the country.  
(a) off (b) for (c) of
2. As a result of long illness she has run ..... a lot.  
(a) out (b) down (c) over

3. Who can say what will turn ..... next?  
(a) down (b) up (c) out
4. His friends were present at the station to see him .....  
(a) through (b) into (c) off
5. Cosmetics help to set ..... the natural grace of the face.  
(a) forth (b) up (c) off
6. The sessions court has held ..... the verdict till the next date.  
(a) on (b) over (c) out
7. The newly married couple is not getting ..... well with each other.  
(a) on (b) up (c) over
8. The students were pulled ..... by the Principal for their misbehaviour with the class teacher.  
(a) up (b) down (c) off
9. The police were called ..... without delay by the residents.  
(a) up (b) for (c) in
10. The college will break ..... next week for summer vacation.  
(a) out (b) in (c) up
11. The candle blew ..... as the gust of wind came in.  
(a) over (b) out (c) up
12. Reeta comes ..... a family of freedom fighters.  
(a) of (b) by (c) off
13. It was given ..... that he had failed.  
(a) in (b) over (c) out
14. I can't understand how these undesirable events came .....  
(a) over (b) of (c) about
15. We should try to ..... the evil practices in the society.  
(a) do with (b) do away with (c) do away
16. It is difficult for Indian economy to take ..... in the absence of heavy investment.  
(a) on (b) off (c) up
17. Take your shoes ..... when you enter my room.  
(a) on (b) off (c) with
18. The number of members absent was large so the meeting had to be put .....  
(a) off (b) out (c) down
19. He is still trying to get ..... the financial crises.  
(a) on (b) off (c) over
20. He jumped ..... the offer of his boss to accept the job abroad.  
(a) over (b) at (c) on

# Idioms and Phrases

---

The command of idiomatic expressions in any language is pre-requisite for expressive writing and comprehension. Phrasal verbs, idiomatic adjectives and noun phrases and idiomatic pairs of nouns, adjectives and adverbs comprise such a vast portion of idiomatic expressions that it is nearly impossible to deal with them comprehensively in such a short space. However, this chapter contains the most important usages that are indispensable for any competitive examination. Students would do well to consult the dictionary for further improvement in this field.

## A

1. **At one's wit's end** (*perplexed*) Sohan was **at his wit's end** to find that his younger brother has taken poison.
2. **At one's fingertips** (*complete knowledge*) All the rules of synthesis are **at his fingertips**.
3. **At the spur of the moment** (*without delay*) In an interview we must reply **at the spur of the moment**.
4. **All in all** (*most important*) As he was the only son in a big family, he was **all in all** in his home.
5. **At close quarters** (*close examinations*) Many of my friends proved selfish **at close quarters**.
6. **Apple-pie order** (*in perfect order*) On the eve of inspection everything was kept in **apple-pie order**.
7. **Above board** (*honest and straightforward*) He is known for his **above board** conduct.
8. **Above all** (*before everything else*) **Above all**, he is blunt and dare devil.
9. **As fit as a fiddle** (*strong and healthy*) He has recovered from illness and now he is **as fit as a fiddle**.
10. **At random** (*aimlessly*) The militants fired **at random** killing a lot of innocent persons.
11. **At a loose end** (*unoccupied, idle*) Now-a-days he is **at a loose end** because he has wound up his business.

12. **At logger heads** (*to be at strife*) The partners of our firm are **at logger heads** these days.
13. **At odds** (*in dispute*) The members of the group were **at odds** over the selection procedure.
14. **An apple of discord** (*cause of quarrel*) Ancestral property is **an apple of discord** between two sisters.
15. **At cross purposes** (*have conflicting intentions*) How can there be peace in their family when husband and wife are **at cross purposes**.
16. **After one's own heart** (*to one's liking*) When Deepa met a man **after her own heart**, she got married to him.
17. **At the bottom of** (*to be mainly responsible for*) It was found later that Shanu was **at the bottom of** the whole trouble.
18. **At a loss** (*to be unable to decide*) I am **at a loss** to know what to do.
19. **At dagger's drawn** (*to have bitter enmity*) The quarrel between the two brothers has grown more bitter now and they are **at dagger's drawn**.
20. **At large** (*abscond, to keep unchained*) People keep their dogs **at large** at night.
21. **At sea** (*applied to a person confused*) My sister is quite **at sea** in Maths; she cannot solve a single problem.
22. **Add fuel to the flame or fire** (*to make matter worse*) The attempt to suppress the agitation of the strikers only **added fuel to the flame**.
23. **At sixes and sevens** (*in disorder*) There was a robbery in our neighbourhood last night and when I entered the house to inquire, everything was **at sixes and sevens**.
24. **Assume airs** (*to pretend superiority*) The rich are in the habit of **assuming airs** in the presence of their poor relations.
25. **Argus eyed** (*careful, observant*) As a politician, he is **Argus eyed** and never overlooks even a small matter.
26. **At a stone's throw** (*very close*) My friend's house is **at a stone's throw** from mine.

**B**

1. **By hook or by crook** (*by one means or another*) He is determined to obtain first division in his class **by hook or by crook**.
2. **Bear the brunt of** (*to bear the main shock of*) The poor have to **bear the brunt of** increasing prices.
3. **Bell the cat** (*to take first step at personal risk*) Many people can boast of their bravery, but very few can **bell the cat**.
4. **Bid defiance** (*to ignore*) Rohan **bade defiance** to his father's wish of becoming a doctor and instead became an engineer.
5. **Blow one's trumpet** (*to praise oneself*) No one likes to talk to those who are always **blowing their own trumpet**.

6. **Break the news** (*to give bad news*) He **broke the news** of her husband's death very gently so as to lessen the intensity of the shock.
7. **Burn a hole in one's pocket** (*money spent quickly*) Money given to a spendthrift only **burns a hole in his pocket**.
8. **Bury the hatchet** (*to make peace*) India and Pakistan must **bury the hatchet** to bring about peace to the region.
9. **Beside oneself** (*to feel excessively*) Due to the accidental death of his wife he was **beside himself** with grief.
10. **Bad blood** (*bitter relations*) The riots have created **bad blood** between the two communities in India.
11. **Black and blue** (*to beat mercilessly*) The thief was beaten **black and blue** by the police.
12. **Beat about the bush** (*to talk in a round about manner*) We should always come to the point and should not **beat about the bush**.
13. **Beat the air** (*to make useless efforts*) Some speakers merely **beat the air** in speech while preaching.
14. **Build castles in the air** (*to make visionary schemes*) Many people who live in dreams **build castles in the air** and do not succeed in life.
15. **Break the ice** (*to speak first after prolonged silence*) In the meeting Rajesh **broke the ice** and suggested the plan to solve the problem.
16. **Bring to book** (*to punish, to call to account*) The manager was **brought to book** for his negligence.
17. **Breathe one's last** (*to die*) He **breathed his last** in the prime of his life.
18. **Back stairs influence** (*by unfair means*) These days many persons are given good posts through **back stairs influence**.
19. **Bird's eye view** (*concise view*) We had a **bird's eye view** of the whole fair from the top of a giant wheel.
20. **Bolt from the blue** (*sudden or unexpected shock*) The news of her husband's death in the air crash came to her as a **bolt from the blue**.
21. **Burn one's boats** (*point of no return*) We had **burnt our boats** by declaring that we were not going to sign C.T.B.T.
22. **By the by** (*by the way*) **By the by**, what is your age?
23. **Be upto** (*to be equal to*) He is **upto all** the tricks of the trade to grind his own axe.
24. **Bated breath** (*in anxiety, expectancy*) The fate of the match hung in balance and every body waited for the result with **bated breath**.
25. **Bandy words** (*to wrangle, to argue*) Obedient children don't **bandy words** with their parents when they are advised.
26. **Bee in one's bonnet** (*to be fussy*) She seems to have a **bee in her bonnet** because she is always finding faults with others.

27. **Bite the dust** (*to be defeated*) Pakistan had to **bite the dust** in the final of the World Cup.
28. **Blue stocking** (*educated but pedantic lady*) No body likes to mix with her because she is a **blue stocking**.
29. **Book worm** (*a person in the habit of pouring over books*) He has no time for social activities because he is a **book worm**.
30. **Bring down the house** (*receive applause*) Though it was his maiden speech, he **brought down the house** because of his oratory skill.
31. **Brow beat** (*to bully*) The President of the college union always tries to **brow beat** the students opposed to him.
32. **Bad egg** (*a worthless*) He comes of a noble family but he himself is a **bad egg**.
33. **Beside the mark** (*irrelevant*) No body agreed with him because his arguments were **beside the mark**.
34. **Burn one's fingers** (*to get into trouble*) Those who interfere in the affairs of others, often **burn their fingers**.
35. **Brown study** (*reverie, day-dream*) He could not follow the significance of my offer. He was in **brown study**.
36. **Bank on** (*depend on, count on*) The rich always **bank on** money to get things done.
37. **Blaze the trail** (*to start a movement*) Surinder Nath Bannerjee **blazed the trail** of Indian National Movement.
38. **Bull in a China shop** (*one who causes damage*) Most of the leaders of the freedom struggle have proved **bulls in a China shop**.
39. **By the rule of thumb** (*according to practical experience*) In older times business was run **by the rule of thumb**.
40. **Big draw** (*a huge attraction*) The match between India and Pakistan is always a **big draw**.
41. **Broken reed** (*support that failed*) When he needed help, his friend proved a **broken reed**.
42. **By the skin of the teeth** (*narrowly*) He escaped death in the accident **by the skin of the teeth**.
43. **Bone of contention** (*cause of quarrel*) Since India got independence, Kashmir problem has been a **bone of contention** between India and Pakistan.
44. **Bit/piece of one's mind** (*to scold*) My father wrote to my brother giving a **piece of his mind** about his insulting conduct.
45. **Born with silver spoon** (*to be born in a rich family*) My friend does not have to worry about spending any amount of money as she is **born with a silver spoon** in her mouth.
46. **Burn candle at both ends** (*squander*) After the death of his father he is **burning candle at both ends**.

47. **By fits and starts** (*irregularly*) If we study **by fits and starts** we can never be successful in our exams.
48. **By dint of** (*by force of*) He achieved success in life **by dint of** hard work.
49. **Blow hot and cold** (*to speak in favour and against at the same time*) Do not trust those who **blow hot and cold** in the same breath.
50. **By and by** (*gradually*) He is recovering **by and by** after long illness.
51. **Blue blood** (*aristocratic blood*) Though my friend has **blue blood** yet her conduct is very mean and vulgar.

**C**

1. **Carry matters with a high hand** (*to deal with a person strictly*) The owner of the industry **carried matters with a high hand** and expelled two workers who were caught doing mischief in the office.
2. **Clip one's wings** (*to weaken the power*) My elder sister is very ambitious but my mother will surely **clip her wings**.
3. **Come home to** (*to understand*) Seema wanted to be a teacher in the college but soon it **came home to** her that she was not fit for the job as she was only a graduate.
4. **Come to a standstill** (*come to a sudden stop*) When we were going to Mussourie yesterday, our car **came to a standstill** right in the middle of the journey.
5. **Come off with flying colours** (*to come out successfully*) The final football match was very crucial but finally we won and **came off with flying colours**.
6. **Cross one's mind** (*to occur to oneself*) In the examination hall it **crossed my mind** that I had left my pen outside on the table.
7. **Cry for the moon** (*to wish for something impossible*) The hope of winning the lottery amounting to lakhs of rupees is simply **crying for the moon**.
8. **Curry favour with** (*win favour of somebody*) Neena gave a lot of costly presents to her science teacher to **carry favour with** him.
9. **Call a spade a spade** (*to speak plainly*) People often get angry when one **calls a spade a spade**.
10. **Carry the day** (*to win a victory*) After initial setback India **carried the day** in the Test match.
11. **Cut a sorry figure** (*to give a poor show*) The speaker **cut a sorry figure** in the meeting.
12. **Cry over spilt milk** (*repent*) Careless students often have to **cry over spilt milk** during the exams.
13. **Cut one's coat according to one's cloth** (*to live within one's means*) A wise man always **cuts his coat according to his cloth** if he wants to be successful in his life.

14. **Call names** (*to abuse*) Neeta **called** me **names**, so she was severely punished by the teacher.
15. **Curtain lecture** (*a reproof by wife to her husband*) My brother never pays any attention to his wife's **curtain lecture** and does what he thinks.
16. **Chip of the old block** (*resembling one's parents in habits*) My friend is quite helpful like her father, so she is a **chip of the old block**.
17. **Cave in** (*yield*) Although our team fought bravely, yet had to **cave in** before the superior power play of the opposite team.
18. **Cloven hoof** (*the evil intention*) The Chinese showed the **cloven hoof** in 1962.
19. **Cut throat** (*tough*) It is very difficult for Indian Industry to survive in the teeth of international **cut throat** competition.
20. **Call in question** (*doubt*) You should not **call in question** my honesty.
21. **Cheek by jowl** (*close together*) In metropolitan cities it is common that affluence and poverty exist **cheek by jowl**.
22. **Come to a pass** (*a difficult situation*) The things have **come to** such a pretty **pass** that he is financially ruined.
23. **Close shave** (*a narrow escape*) As he was driving recklessly in a crowded street, he had a **close shave**.
24. **Cut and dried** (*readymade form*) There is no **cut and dried** formula for success in life.
25. **Clinch the issue** (*decide the matter*) When he agreed to leave the house for good, it **clinched the issue** in favour of his wife.
26. **Carry one's point** (*win approval*) After heated discussion he was able to **carry his point**.
27. **Chequered/Checkered career** (*full of ups and downs*) Politicians have generally **chequered career** all along.
28. **Cut both ends** (*argue in favour of both sides*) He is ambiguous because he always **cuts both ends**.
29. **Cock sure** (*very sure and certain*) He was so **cock sure** of his success that he applied for the job before the declaration of the result.
30. **Cock a snook** (*to show impudent contempt*) She is so proud of her wealth that she always **cocks a snook** at the acts of her husband.
31. **Chapter and verse** (*in full detail, to give proof*) He has such a sharp memory that he can narrate the story **chapter and verse**.
32. **Cool one's heels** (*to be kept waiting*) He had to **cool his heels** before he could meet the President of the party.
33. **Carrot and stick policy** (*reward and punishment*) A successful businessman follows the **carrot and stick policy** towards his employees.
34. **Come in handy** (*to be useful*) Take some woollen clothes. They may **come in handy** in Simla.

**D**

1. **Dig the grave** (*to tarnish, to destroy*) By taking side of the culprit he **dug the grave** of his reputation.
2. **Draw the long bow** (*exaggerate*) In calling him the best politician of the world, his followers **draw the long bow**.
3. **Die in harness** (*die while working*) Our Principal **died in harness**.
4. **Dutch courage** (*bravery under alcoholic influence*) Drunkards often indulge in **Dutch courage** and boast of their imaginary qualities.
5. **Dare devil** (*fearless person*) Only a **dare devil** can face the land mafia.
6. **Dead broke** (*penniless*) On account of reckless spending he is **dead broke** these days.
7. **Down and out** (*poor and ruined*) After a slump in share market he is **down and out** these days.
8. **Draconian law** (*extremely severe law*) During emergency in 1975 the government imposed **Draconian laws** to subdue opposition.
9. **Die-hard** (*persistent in struggle*) He is a **die-hard** person and will not easily surrender.
10. **Days of reckoning** (*time to answer for one's actions*) You may commit crime after crime but **days of reckoning** are never far off.
11. **Down in the mouth** (*out of elements*) Now-a-days he is **down in the mouth** because he has suffered heavy loss in business.
12. **Dog in the manger** (*a person who prevents others from enjoying what he himself cannot*) By disrupting Parliament Session the Congress is following a **dog in the manger** policy.
13. **Damp squib** (*complete failure*) The visit of our Foreign Minister to China proved a **damp squib** on border issue.

**E**

1. **Eat humble pie** (*to apologize*) In spite of his constant bragging he lost the match and had to **eat humble pie**.
2. **Eat one's words** (*take a statement back*) I warned my friend to be very careful in her speech otherwise she would have to **eat her own words**.
3. **End in smoke/fiasco** (*come to nothing*) He spoke a lot about his new film but it all **ended in smoke** and it flopped on box office.
4. **Egg on** (*to urge somebody*) The Captain **egged** the players **on** to continue to play foul till the end of the match.
5. **Eke out** (*supplement income*) To **eke out** his income he also works as a part time accountant in the evening.

6. **Every dog has his day** (*good fortune comes sooner or later*) Don't be disappointed. It is truly said that **every dog has his day**.
7. **Ever and Anon** (*now and then, sometimes*) He visits his parents **ever and anon**.
8. (An) **eye wash** (*a pretence*) My friend's promise to help me just proved an **eye-wash**.

**F**

1. **Flesh and blood** (*human nature*) People in some villages are so poor that their sufferings are more than a **flesh and blood** can endure.
2. **Fish in troubled waters** (*to take advantage of the trouble of others*) Shrewd businessmen **fish in troubled waters** when there is scarcity of things.
3. **Follow suit** (*to act in a like manner*) If you do not obey your elders, your children will **follow suit**.
4. **Fall flat** (*to have no effect*) The minister's speech **fell flat** on the audience.
5. **Fight shy of** (*to attempt to avoid a thing or a person*) I generally **fight shy of** confronting my elder sister as she is in the habit of making sickening comments.
6. **Fabian policy** (*policy of delaying decisions*) Politicians generally follow a **Fabian policy** in order to keep everyone satisfied.
7. **For no rhyme or reason** (*any reason whatsoever*) Seema did not appear for her final examinations **for no rhyme or reason**.
8. **Fight to the finish** (*fight to the end*) Indian Army has vowed to **fight to the finish** and turn every intruder out of Indian territory.
9. **Few and far between** (*very rare*) His visits to his home town are **few and far between** because of his expanding business.
10. **Flog a dead horse** (*to revive interest in old matters*) The rivals always **flog a dead horse** to insult their enemies.
11. **Fool's errand** (*useless undertaking*) His visit to the States to earn money proved to be a **fool's errand**.
12. **Fall foul of** (*to quarrel*) They were once bosom friends but now they have **fallen foul of** each other.
13. **Fly off the handle** (*to lose one's temper*) When his father questioned him about money, he **flew off the handle**.
14. **French leave** (*to be absent without permission*) Those who take **french leave** should not be pardoned.
15. **Fair and square** (*upright*) My father advised me to be **fair and square** in business dealings.
16. **Feather one's own nest** (*to provide first for one self*) Our leaders are busy **feathering their own nests** and have no concern for the poor.

17. **From pillar to post** (*rush in all directions and suffer much harassment*) You may rush **from pillar to post**, but you stand no chance of getting what you want without a bribe.
18. **Foot the bill** (*bear expenses*) Although he hosted the feast, his brother had to **foot the bill**.
19. **Fair weather friend** (*selfish friend*) A **fair weather friend** will never stand by you in difficulty.
20. **Flash in the pan** (*sudden success*) The success of Indian cricket team is never constant and steady. It is generally a **flash in the pan**.
21. **Fit to hold a candle to** (*match for, equal in quality*) He is the son of a famous writer but he is not **fit to hold a candle to** his father.
22. **The Fourth Estate** (*the press*) The newspaper is regarded as **the Fourth Estate** of the state.
23. **Feather in one's cap** (*additional success*) His success in his M.A. exams has added a new **feather in his cap**.
24. **Fly in the face of** (*to defy*) It is disobedience on their part to **fly in the face of** the orders of the Principal.

**G**

1. **Gain ground** (*to succeed slowly & steadily*) The belief in the abolition of dowry system is **gaining ground**.
2. **Get off scot free** (*to escape without punishment*) A murderer can also very easily **get off scot free** for lack of evidence.
3. **Grease the palm** (*to bribe*) Now-a-days if you want to get your work done, you will have to **grease the palm** of someone or the other.
4. **Gird up the loins** (*to prepare for hard work*) Indians must **gird up the loins** to face any foreign attack on their country.
5. **Go to the dogs** (*to be ruined*) The rich industrialist will **go to the dogs** because of his son's bad habits.
6. **Get oneself into a mess** (*to drift into trouble*) Due to sheer ignorance, Vijay seems to have **got himself into a mess** in his office.
7. **Give a wide berth** (*to avoid*) We should always **give a wide berth** to all selfish and mean persons.
8. **Gentleman at large** (*an unreliable person*) We must not believe a **gentleman at large**.
9. **Good Samaritan** (*one who helps strangers*) He is a **good Samaritan** because he always comes to the help of the old and the children in difficulties.
10. **Give a good account of oneself** (*to act creditably*) As the eldest son of his family he **gave a good account of himself** when calamity befell the family.

11. **Give the devil his due** (*give credit to a worthless person for his good qualities*) We should **give the devil his due** for his good qualities.
12. **Green horn** (*inexperienced*) Though a **green horn** in political field, he appears to have a bright future.
13. **Give up the ghost** (*pass away, die*) After long illness he **gave up the ghost** last week.
14. **Go the whole hog** (*to do something thoroughly*) You will have to **go the whole hog** to come out of this mess.
15. **Get into a scrape** (*awkward situation*) He **got into a scrape** when his wife refused to let him help his sister.
16. **Go broke** (*become bankrupt*) As a result of heavy gambling he had to **go broke** in the long run.
17. **Get into hot waters** (*get into trouble*) He **got into hot waters** by marrying a girl of another caste.
18. **Give currency** (*to make publicly known*) The Government has refused to **give currency** to a number of scams.
19. **Great hand** (*expert*) He is a **great hand** at organising social parties.
20. **Get down to brass tacks** (*to deal with the matter straight*) Instead of wasting time in discussion, please **get down to brass tacks**.
21. **Give one a long rope** (*to let someone commit mistakes*) He never **gives his employees a long rope**.
22. **Good turn** (*an act of kindness*) He did me a **good turn** by recommending me for the post of Vice-President.

### H

1. **Hold water** (*sound, tenable*) His statement will not **hold water** as it is not based on facts.
2. **Hang together** (*support one another*) The two statements delivered by the leader of the party do not **hang together**.
3. **Hope against hope** (*hope inspite of disappointment*) Sohan's case is very weak and everybody knows that finally he will lose, but he is still **hoping against hope**.
4. **Have an axe to grind** (*to have a selfish interest*) Reema is very selfish but the way she is being polite with everyone gives the impression that she **has an axe to grind**.
5. **Have the gift of the gab** (*art of speaking*) Meena is not highly qualified but she **has the gift of the gab**.
6. **Hit below the belt** (*to strike unfairly*) We should always face the enemy boldly and never **hit him below the belt**.
7. **Hold one's tongue** (*to keep quiet*) We should always **hold our tongue** before our elders.

8. **Herculean task** (*very difficult*) It is a **Herculean task** to root out corruption in India.
9. **Haul over the coals** (*to take to task*) She was **hailed over the coals** by her parents for her misconduct.
10. **Have one's finger in everyone's pie** (*to partake of something*) My best friend likes to **have her finger in everyone's pie** as she is in the habit of meddling with the affairs of others.
11. **Halcyon days** (*peaceful days*) The days we spend in our school life are the **halcyon days** of our life.
12. **Have an iron will** (*strong will*) If we have to live among the mean and selfish people, we must **have an iron will**.
13. **Hold out an olive branch** (*offer of peace*) The terrorists are not prepared to **hold out an olive branch** to the Government of India.
14. **Hanky panky** (*jugglery*) None of this **hanky panky**, tell me the truth.
15. **Have feet of clay** (*full of faults*) The C.B.I. inquiry has revealed that many ministers **have feet of clay**.
16. **Heart and soul** (*devotedly*) He took part in the annual function **heart and soul**.
17. **Hard and fast** (*strict*) No **hard and fast** rule is laid down about being regular in the college.
18. **Hang fire** (*remain unsolved*) Kashmir problem has been **hanging fire** for many years.
19. **High & dry** (*a difficult situation*) He was left **high & dry** by his business partners.
20. **Hit the nail on the head** (*to do the right thing at the right time*) He **hit the nail on the head** by resigning his job.
21. **Hobson's choice** (*no alternative*) The employees in the private sector have **Hobson's choice** because they are forced to accept what they are ordered to do.
22. **Have too many irons in the fire** (*doing many things at a time*) He is fickle minded and **has too many irons in the fire**.
23. **Hold in abeyance** (*postpone*) For lack of funds the district administration has **held** the construction of road **in abeyance**.
24. **High and mighty** (*proud persons*) The **high and mighty** forget that everything in the world is transient.
25. **Hard nosed attitude** (*aggressive*) I don't know why my teacher always has a **hard nosed attitude** towards me.
26. **Hold in leash** (*to restrain*) As a responsible leader of a party you must **hold** criticism of party workers **in leash**.
27. **Head and shoulders** (*superior*) Shri Atal Behari Vajpayee is **head and shoulders** above his predecessors.

28. **Hold a brief** (*to defend someone*) It is very improper for parents to **hold a brief** for their children who are in the wrong.
29. **Hush money** (*a bribe*) He managed to escape punishment by paying **hush money**.
30. **Hold at bay** (*to prevent enemy from coming*) Maharana Partap could not **hold** the Mughal army **at bay** for long.
31. **Hit the jack pot** (*unexpected success*) He **hit the jack pot** by investing his money in shares.
32. **Helter skelter** (*here and there*) When the police arrived the rioters ran **helter skelter**.
33. **Have a brush with** (*to have encounter*) Our principal **had a brush with** the Vice Chancellor over the appointment of a lecturer.
34. **Hornet's nest** (*raise controversy*) The speaker stirred up **hornet's nest** by referring to impending changes in the rules.
35. **Hold somebody to ransom** (*to demand concession by making someone captive*) It is a pity that a handful of militants are **holding the nation to ransom**.
36. **Hole and corner** (*secret*) I have come to know of your **hole and corner** method of dealing with people.



1. **Ill at ease** (*uncomfortable*) A student is often **ill at ease** when he has to see the Principal after he has done something wrong.
2. **In a fix** (*In a dilemma*) The whole police department is **in a fix** about the threatening letters written by the kidnappers.
3. **In a fair way** (*hopeful*) The doctor feels that patient is **in a fair way** on to recovery.
4. **In the good books of** (*to be in favour with a person*) Sunita's brilliant success in her final examination has led her to be **in the good books of** her teachers.
5. **In tune** (*in a mood*) The teacher asked the students if they were **in tune** for study.
6. **In the lurch** (*to leave a friend in difficulty*) You must never leave your best friend **in the lurch**.
7. **Ins and outs** (*secrets*) The servants are generally familiar with the **ins and outs** of the family.
8. **In the blues** (*in dumps, depressed*) After his failure in the Examination he is **in the blues** these days.
9. **In the red** (*suffer a loss*) Most of our Public Sector Undertakings are **in the red** for lack of efficient administration.
10. **In the limelight** (*prominent*) After being out of favour with the leader of the party he is again **in the limelight** these days.

11. **In the teeth of** (*inspite of bitter opposition*) Hindu Code Bill was passed **in the teeth of** opposition by various organizations.
12. **In a tight corner** (*in difficult situation*) After losing in gambling heavily, he is **in a tight corner**.
13. **In cold blood** (*to do something deliberately*) The child was murdered **in cold blood**.
14. **In doldrums** (*to be depressed*) After his failure in the examination he is **in doldrums** these days.
15. **In the family way** (*pregnant*) She has been advised complete rest because she is **in the family way**.
16. **Ivory tower** (*imaginary world*) Those who talk of non-violence as a useful tool in international politics live in **ivory tower**.
17. **In the dumps** (*in low spirits*) Her visit cheered me up as I was **in the dumps** before her visit.
18. **In a flutter** (*excited*) My sister is **in a flutter** today because she is going for the interview.

**J**

1. **Jaundiced eye** (*prejudice*) You must not evaluate the success of your rivals with a **jaundiced eye**.

**K**

1. **Keep body and soul together** (*to maintain life*) These days because of rising prices it is difficult to **keep body and soul together**.
2. **Keep at an arm's length** (*to keep at a distance*) Selfish people should always be **kept at an arm's length**.
3. **Keep the wolf from the door** (*to avoid starvation*) In India millions of people struggle hard to **keep the wolf from the door**.
4. **Kith and kin** (*blood relation*) If we have no love for our **kith and kin**, we cannot be expected to love humanity.
5. **Knit the brow** (*to frown*) Her mother-in-law always **knits the brow** at everything she does.
6. **Kick the bucket** (*to die*) He **kicked the bucket** after long illness in the prime of his life.
7. **Keep up appearances** (*to maintain outward show*) Though he is in financial crisis, he is able to **keep up appearances**.
8. **Keep one's fingers crossed** (*to wait expectantly*) We had to **keep our fingers crossed** till the last ball was bowled.
9. **Keep the pot boiling** (*earn hardly enough for living*) He is earning only to **keep the pot boiling**.

10. **Kick one's heels** (*to waste time in waiting*) As the train was late we had to **kick our heels** at the station.
11. **Keep abreast of** (*not to fall behind*) It is very important for the young persons to **keep abreast of** political developments in the country.

**L**

1. **Lost in the clouds** (*confused*) My psychology teacher is often **lost in the clouds** as she sometimes is unable to explain the questions clearly.
2. **Lose ground** (*fail to keep position*) The belief in prophecies and horoscopes is **losing ground** these days.
3. **Laugh in one's sleeves** (*to laugh secretly*) The students **laughed in their sleeves** at the teacher's ignorance of the subject.
4. **Leave no stone unturned** (*to make all possible efforts*) The minister assured the poor that he shall **leave no stone unturned** to uplift their condition.
5. **Leap in the dark** (*to take a risk deliberately*) You must not **leap in the dark** by entering the business without experience.
6. **Look sharp** (*to make haste*) **Look sharp**, the bus is moving.
7. **Let the cat out of the bag** (*to disclose*) Sunita has, at last, **let the cat out of the bag**, by confessing that she had stolen her brother's money.
8. **Live in a fool's paradise** (*false hope*) My brother is **living in a fool's paradise** if he thinks that he can be a rich man without working hard.
9. **Lion's share** (*large part*) Generally the sons as compared to daughters have a **lion's share** of their mother's affection.
10. **Loaves and fishes** (*material benefit*) Most of the ministers are more concerned with the **loaves and fishes** of office than the service of man.
11. **Live-wire** (*energetic*) India needs **live-wire** political leaders who can put the country on the right track.
12. **Look a gift horse in the mouth** (*criticize a gift*) One should not **look a gift horse in the mouth** because it is given out of love and regards.
13. **Lose one's head** (*to be carried away*) One should not **lose one's head** even in such a victory.
14. **Long and short** (*in brief*) The **long and short** of the principal's speech was that examination would be held on time.
15. **Latin and Greek** (*incomprehensible*) The speech of literary persons is always **Latin and Greek** to illiterate persons.
16. **Last nail in the coffin** (*causing ruin*) Second world war proved to be a **last nail in the coffin** of British imperialism.
17. **Lead up the garden path** (*to cheat*) The traders **lead the credulous customers up the garden path** by assuring them of warranty.

18. **Leaps and bounds** (*rapidly*) In comparison to India, China has progressed by **leaps and bounds** in every field.
19. **Last straw** (*the final trial of patience*) The Rowlet Act was the **last straw** on the Camel's back and the whole India rose in protest against the British rule.
20. **Let the grass grow under feet** (*to delay the matters*) We are bound to suffer if we **let the grass grow under feet** by postponing action.

## M

1. **Make both ends meet** (*to live within one's means*) As my uncle has to bring up five children, he finds it difficult to **make both ends meet**.
2. **Mend one's fences** (*to make peace*) It is high time for the two brothers to bury the hatchet and **mend their fences**.
3. **Make a clean breast** (*to confess*) When asked by the Magistrate sternly, the thief **made a clean breast** of the whole crime.
4. **Make amends** (*to give compensation*) The government **made amends** to the family for the loss of their earning member in the war.
5. **Make the most of** (*to utilize time*) Students should **make the most of** their time if they want to get an administrative job.
6. **Move heaven and earth** (*to try utmost*) Ramesh **moved heaven and earth** to gain his end but failed.
7. **Make sure** (*to ascertain*) We went to the office to **make sure** if our exams would start in the next week.
8. **Make neither head nor tail** (*not to understand*) The students can **make neither head nor tail** of what Mr. Dev teaches them.
9. **Moot point** (*a debatable point, undecided*) The question of abolition of child marriage is a **moot point** as far as Indians are concerned.
10. **Meet one's Waterloo** (*to face final defeat*) Tipu Sultan **met his Waterloo** in the fourth battle of Mysore.
11. **Man of letters** (*literary person*) Dr. Radhakrishnan was a **man of letters**.
12. **Make light of** (*not to care*) He is in the habit of **making light of** the advice of his parents.
13. **Midas touch** (*a touch which turns anything into gold*) Our manager seems to be gifted with **Midas touch** because he is capable of selling every product.
14. **Man of parts** (*a man of qualities*) Our Principal is a **man of parts** and is respected by all and one.
15. **Mealy mouthed** (*soft spoken*) A **mealy mouthed** shopkeeper is always successful.
16. **Man of straw** (*a weak person*) The king being a **man of straw**, his orders were often disobeyed.

17. **Mince matters** (*hide the truth and pretend*) Tell the truth to your parents because it does not pay **to mince matters**.
18. **Mare's nest** (*a false invention*) The involvement of teachers in the scheme proved to be **a mare's nest**.

**N**

1. **Null and void** (*ineffective*) Strangely, the laws made by the British in India are not yet **null and void**.
2. **Next to nothing** (*almost nothing*) The thieves made off with everything from the kitchen and there was **next to nothing** left.
3. **Neck and crop** (*completely*) The decoits finished him off **neck and crop** beyond recognition.
4. **No love lost** (*intense dislike*) There is **no love lost** between the two neighbours.
5. **Nip in the bud** (*to destroy in the very beginning*) The evils of the society must be **nipped in the bud**.
6. **Not worth one's salt** (*not deserving*) We should not help the persons who are **not worth their salt**.

**O**

1. **Off hand** (*without preparation or delay*) I am very poor in English grammar & can't answer all the questions **off hand**.
2. **Over head and ears** (*excessively*) Mohan is **over head and ears** in love with Neena.
3. **Out of question** (*certain*) His success is **out of question** because he is working hard these days.
4. **Out of the question** (*unlikely, uncertain*) His success is **out of the question** because he is not working hard these days.
5. **Out of the woods** (*out of danger*) The patient is not **out of the woods** yet.
6. **Order of the day** (*in fashion*) It is difficult to get any work done without bribery because bribery is the **order of the day**.
7. **On the score of** (*on the grounds of*) He was debarred from appearing in the examination **on the score of** indiscipline.
8. **On that score** (*for the reason*) You need not worry **on that score**.
9. **Over and above** (*moreover, besides*) I shall lend you books **over and above** what I have promised to give you in cash.
10. **Out and out** (*completely*) Shri Bhagat Singh was a patriot **out and out**.
11. **Off and on** [*occasionally (now & then)*] Since she is over busy these days, she visits me **off and on**.

12. **One's Achilles heel** (*a weak point*) Howsoever powerful a person may be, he is vulnerable because of **his Achilles' heel**.
13. **Off colour** (*not in usual form*) Once a glamorous actress, she is **off colour** these days.
14. **Odds and ends** (*scattered things*) The thief made away with the **odds and ends** lying about the drawing room.
15. **Off the hook** (*out of trouble*) He is not yet **off the hook** because Income Tax department is making a thorough inquiry into his financial status.
16. **Oily tongue** (*flattering words*) He has often won over the enemies by his **oily tongue**.
17. **On the horns of dilemma** (*in a fix*) He is **on the horns of dilemma** in the matter of his marriage.
18. **One's cup of tea** (*to one's liking*) Teaching is not **my cup of tea**.
19. **Out of sorts** (*to be unwell*) Sohan had been **out of sorts** the whole day and could not do his office work properly.
20. **On its last legs** (*about to collapse*) In many sections of Indian society the system of child marriage is **on its last legs**.
21. **On the carpet** (*to be under consideration*) What is **on the carpet** these days is in the newspapers.

**P**

1. **Past master** (*an expert*) He is a **past master** in befooling the people by his oily tongue.
2. **Palmy days** (*prosperous, affluent days*) We still remember the **palmy days** of our life when we had nothing much to do and still got everything to fulfil our needs.
3. **Part and parcel** (*inseparable part*) Every Indian citizen living in India must regard himself as **part and parcel** of a larger whole.
4. **Pass the buck** (*to blame each other*) Political parties **pass the buck** on to one another for failure on economic front.
5. **Pay off old scores** (*to take revenge*) The way he is treating his younger brother makes it quite obvious that he is **paying off old scores**.
6. **Pay through one's nose** (*to pay dearly*) A hapless customer has to **pay through his nose** when there is shortage of goods in the market.
7. **Pay lip service** (*pretend to regard*) Most of the political parties **pay lip service** to the plight of the poor.
8. **Pay one back in the same coin** (*tit for tat*) We should not hesitate in **paying** China and Pakistan **back in their own coins**.
9. **Pin-money** (*allowance given to housewife for personal use*) She is frugal and saves even out of **pin-money**.

10. **Pell-mell** (*great confusion*) After the thieves had ransacked the house, every thing was **pell-mell**.
11. **Play fast and loose** (*repeatedly change one's attitude*) No one can trust Rohan as he is used to **playing fast and loose** with his friends.
12. **Play second fiddle to** (*to play a subordinate part*) A self-respecting man can never **play second fiddle** to anyone.
13. **Play truant** (*to be absent from duty without permission*) It is a very bad habit of the employees to **play truant** from office.
14. **Play to the gallery** (*to gain cheap popularity*) The speeches of our leaders are not sincere; they are intended to **play to the gallery**.
15. **Play ducks and drakes** (*to squander money*) After the death of his father he got into heavy debt by **playing ducks and drakes** with money.
16. **Play foul** (*to do something wrong*) Don't **play foul** with your well-wishers.
17. **Plough the sands** (*futile labour*) He cannot make money because he appears to be **ploughing the sands**.
18. **Pour oil on troubled waters** (*to pacify the matters*) The two good friends exchanged hot words but the intervention of their teacher **poured oil on troubled waters**.
19. **Pull a long face** (*to look sad*) Seema **pulled a long face** when she was scolded by her teacher for her carelessness.
20. **Pull one's socks up** (*work hard*) You must **pull your socks up** to get over financial problems.
21. **Pull strings** (*to exercise influence secretly*) He managed his promotion by **pulling strings**.
22. **Put heads together** (*consult seriously*) Our leaders should **put their heads together** to solve national problems.
23. **Put a spoke in a wheel** (*to obstruct*) He would not like me to succeed; so he always **put a spoke in a wheel**.
24. **Put the cart before the horse** (*to do wrong thing first*) Our leaders **put the cart before the horse** by neglecting villages in the name of industrial progress.
25. **Pros and cons** (*for and against a thing*) We must always consider the **pros and cons** of any new project that we take in hand.
26. **Pyrrhic victory** (*victory at a high cost*) Greek victory over Trojans proved to be **pyrrhic victory**.
27. **Pick holes** (*to find fault with*) He is always **picking holes** in every project.

### Q

1. **Queer fish** (*strange person*) One cannot make anything out of Sohan's attitude as he is such a **queer fish**.
2. **Quixotic project** (*foolishly ideal*) Being not worldly wise he wasted his money in **quixotic projects**.

**R**

1. **Rise to the occasion** (*to act as the occasion demands*) To face critical situations boldly you should **rise to the occasion**.
2. **Run short of** (*shortage*) These days due to some financial crises my friend is **running short of** money.
3. **Rank and file** (*common man*) If we want our country to progress in every field, we must improve the economic lot of the **rank and file**.
4. **Red tapism** (*official delay*) **Red tapism** is a bane of Indian bureaucracy.
5. **Rest on one's laurels** (*complacent, self satisfied*) Ambitious persons never **rest on their laurels** because they dream of unending achievements.
6. **Rock the boat** (*upset the balance*) If your party withdraws the support from the Government, it may **rock the boat**.
7. **Red herring** (*something to distract attention*) The demand of inquiry into his conduct is just a **red herring** as there is no truth in it.
8. **Rip up old sores** (*to revive forgotten quarrel*) Rahul and his wife can't live in peace; they are always **ripping up old sores**.
9. **Read between the lines** (*to understand the hidden meaning*) If her essay is **read between the lines**, we will find that she has made comments against the Government.
10. **Rule the roost** (*to dominate*) Today the rich **rule the roost**.
11. **Red rag to a bull** (*anything that provokes*) The law against the dowry system is, for the greedy persons, like a **red rag to a bull**.
12. **Ride rough shod over** (*to treat in a high handed fashion*) Don't **ride rough shod over** a person when he is down and out.
13. **Rub one the wrong way** (*annoy*) If you **rub him the wrong way**, he is bound to react.

**S**

1. **Sit on the fence** (*not to commit oneself*) When the party split Ramesh was accused of **sitting on the fence**.
2. **Smell a rat** (*to be suspicious*) I **smelt a rat** in the bargain that my uncle made with my father.
3. **Shed crocodile tears** (*to show false sorrow*) The mother **shed crocodile tears** on the death of her step daughter.
4. **Split hair** (*to indulge in over refined arguments*) We should not try to **split hair** with our elders.
5. **Stand in good stead** (*to be helpful in need*) During the time of distress the advice of elders always **stands in good stead**.
6. **Show white feather** (*to show cowardice*) Brave people never **show white feather** in the face of difficulties.

7. **See eye to eye** (*to agree*) Neema could never **see eye to eye** with her elder brother.
8. **Set store by** (*to value*) I have always **set store by** my father's opinion.
9. **Snap one's fingers at** (*to show contempt*) The industry owner feels that he may **snap his fingers at** the demands of his workers, but he is greatly mistaken.
10. **Speak volumes for** (*to have abundant proof*) The amount of sacrifice made by Reena's friend **speaks volumes for** her true love for her friend.
11. **Steal a march** (*to get ahead secretly*) Rohan **stole a march** on my brother in business and is very rich today.
12. **Steer clear of** (*to avoid*) Everyone, if possible, should **steer clear of** selfish people.
13. **Swan song** (*last creation*) 'Lament' was **the swan song** of Shelley.
14. **Snake in the grass** (*a secret enemy*) The country is always betrayed by the **snakes in the grass**.
15. **Sword of Damocles** (*facing imminent danger*) A **sword of Damocles** is always hanging over the head of a soldier in the event of war.
16. **Sail under false colours** (*a hypocrite*) We should not believe our leaders because they **sail under false colours**.
17. **Spartan life** (*life of ascetic*) Swami Vivekanand led a **spartan life** for promoting health of mind and body.
18. **Save one's face** (*to avoid disgrace*) He is making lame excuses to **save his face** because he could not qualify the examination.
19. **A scarlet woman** (*a woman with loose morals*) Being a **scarlet woman** she is looked down upon by her neighbours.
20. **Set people by ears** (*to incite people*) The communal speeches **set people by ears**.
21. **To set Thames on fire** (*to achieve something impossible*) Qualifying Civil Services examination for you is like **setting Thames on fire**.
22. **Sweat of the brow** (*hard labour*) The honest persons live by **sweat of the brow**.
23. **Steal someone's thunder** (*make a better impression*) The young actor performed so well that he **stole his rival's thunder**.
24. **Straight from the shoulders** (*candidly*) My lawyer told me **straight from the shoulders** that my case was weak.
25. **Shop lifter** (*one who steals from the shop*) A **shop lifter** often visits a shop as a customer.
26. **Spick and span** (*in order*) Her house looked **spick and span** because everything was in its place.
27. **Shot in the arm** (*encouraging*) A victory in Kargil war proved a **shot in the arm** of our Defence Forces.

28. **Something up one's sleeve** (*a secret plan*) She is quite a mischievous lady. There is always **something up her sleeve**.
29. **Send about one's business** (*to dismiss*) His employees **sent him about his business** when he behaved insolently.
30. **Stand one's ground** (*remain firm*) He did not yield to pressure and **stood his ground** till the end.
31. **Small fry** (*insignificant person*) Who cares for him, he is a **small fry** in the office.
32. **Seamy side of life** (*immoral side of society*) The picture depicts realism and presents the **seamy side of life** in modern India.
33. **Sow wild oats** (*irresponsible pleasure seeking*) After **sowing his wild oats** Ram has decided to stick to the straight and narrow path in future.
34. **Spill the beans** (*to give information*) Continuous interrogation finally made the man **spill the beans** and the disaster was averted.
35. **A stalking horse** (*pretence*) The trade union's seemingly rightful demand is only a **stalking horse** to black-mail the management.

**T**

1. **Turn the tables** (*to reverse the condition*) A batsman often **turns the table** on the opposite team by his good batting.
2. **Turn up one's nose** (*to take lightly with contempt*) Meena has failed twice in her class and yet she **turns up her nose** at my advice.
3. **Turn coat** (*one who changes political affiliations*) Anti-defection bill is aimed at checking the evil practices indulged in by **turn coats**.
4. **Take up the cudgels** (*to support or defend*) One of my lawyer friends **took up the cudgels** on my behalf to defend me.
5. **Turn the corner** (*to pass a critical stage*) After long illness at last my friend **turned the corner** and was completely out of danger.
6. **Tall talk** (*exaggerate the matters*) No one likes to be in the company of Neema as she always indulges in **tall talk**.
7. **Tooth and nail** (*violently*) All the students revolted **tooth and nail** against the partiality of the teachers towards some students.
8. **Throw in a towel** (*to be defeated*) When the wrestler could not resist the opponent, he had to **throw in a towel**.
9. **Take with a pinch of salt** (*to accept with doubt*) Everybody **takes** Rahul's problems **with a pinch of salt** because he is an unreliable person.
10. **Turn a hair** (*show any reaction*) Although his friends provoked him against Rohit, he did not **turn a hair** and remained calm.
11. **Tall stories** (*exaggerated stories*) Since he retired from Army, he has been famous for his **tall stories** which regale the villagers.

12. **Take the floor** (*make a speech*) When the Prime Minister **took the floor** in the cabinet meeting there was pin drop silence.
13. **Take lying down** (*accept insult*) It is impossible for me to **take** his remarks **lying down**. It amounts to meek surrender.
14. **Turn to account** (*turn to advantage*) The brave **turn** their failures **to account**.
15. **Take heart** (*feel bold*) You must **take heart** and face life boldly.
16. **Take to heart** (*feel excessively*) He **took** his failure **to heart** and lost interest in worldly affairs.
17. **Take bull by horns** (*to meet the danger boldly*) You can succeed in life only if you have courage to **take bull by horns**.
18. **Through and through** (*entirely*) He was drenched in the rain **through and through**.
19. **To the back bone** (*thoroughly*) We need leaders who are selfless **to the back bone**.
20. **Take wind out of another's sails** (*to gain advantage by anticipation*) Farsighted Generals can win war by **taking wind out of enemy's sails**.
21. **Throw down the glove/gauntlet** (*to challenge*) China had **thrown down the glove** by not recognising Sikkim as part of India.
22. **Take leaf out of somebody's book** (*to emulate*) The young should **take leaf out of great men's books**.
23. **Take people by storm** (*to surprise unexpectedly*) The successful launching of GSLV-1 **took the nation by storm**.
24. **Tall order** (*something difficult*) It is a **tall order** to check population explosion in India.
25. **Throw a spanner** (*to sabotage a plan*) He refused to finance my project and so **threw a spanner** in it.
26. **Take to task** (*punish, ask for explanation, to scold*) I **took** my younger sister **to task** for not obeying her elders.
27. **Turn a deaf ear** (*not to pay attention to, refuse to listen*) All the party members **turned a deaf ear** to their leader.
28. **Throw out of gear** (*not working properly*) Many of our small scale industries have been **thrown out of gear** because of lack of finance.
29. **Take to heels** (*to run away*) The students making mischief **took to their heels** on seeing the Principal.
30. **Throw cold water** (*to discourage*) Instead of encouraging me my business partner **threw cold water** on my plans.
31. **Turn over a new leaf** (*to be entirely changed*) After the sudden death of his father Rajesh **turned over a new leaf** and took all the responsibilities of the family on himself.
32. **Take somebody for a ride** (*to deceive a person*) The traders **take the customers for a ride** by selling fake foreign goods to them.

33. **Take up arms** (*to fight*) The tribals of this region have **taken up arms** against the government.
34. **To and fro** (*forward and backward*) He was strolling in the garden **to and fro**.
35. **Throw up the sponge** (*surrender*) He never **threw up the sponge** and at last got over his problems.

**U**

1. **Uphill task** (*difficult task*) The problem of holding exams on time is an **uphill task** for the V.C. of Ch. Charan Singh University.
2. **Ups and downs** (*change in fortune*) My uncle has experienced many **ups and downs** in his furniture business.
3. **Under the rose** (*secretly*) When the parents of Amul did not agree to the marriage of their son, he married Meeta **under the rose**.
4. **Up and doing** (*active*) A labourer should be **up and doing** daily if he has to earn his living.
5. **Under a cloud** (*to be under suspicion*) His secret connections with the smugglers have brought him **under a cloud**.
6. **Upto the mark** (*as good as should be*) Your speech was **upto the mark**.

**W**

1. **With open arms** (*cordially, warmly*) When my cousin came back from England after ten years he was welcomed **with open arms** by all the relatives.
2. **Win laurels** (*to win distinction*) Dr. Tagore **won laurels** in the world of literature.
3. **White elephant** (*anything with less utility and more expenditure*) The Public Sector Undertakings have proved **white elephants** to our economy.
4. **Well disposed to** (*friendly or helpful to somebody*) One is always **well disposed to** those who are honest and hard working.
5. **Writing on the wall** (*signal, warning*) The factory owner read the **writing on the wall** and closed down the factory.
6. **When the crunch comes** (*the moment of decision*) Brave persons never despair **when the crunch comes**.
7. **Willy-Nilly** (*whether one wishes or not*) **Willy-Nilly**, she has to agree to the views of her husband all the time.
8. **Window shopping** (*to look at goods displayed but not for buying*) Though I did not have any mind to make purchases, I just went out **window shopping** in the evening.
9. **Wear and tear** (*damage caused by use*) **Wear and tear** of the machinery is known as depreciation in accountancy.

10. **Weal and woe** (*joy and sorrow*) We must learn to bear **weal and woe** of life patiently.
11. **Wash hands of** (*to have nothing to do*) I have **washed hands of** your affairs because you do not take me seriously.
12. **Wide berth** (*keep away*) We should give a **wide berth** to bad characters.
13. **Will o' the wisp** (*elusive, unreal*) To Romantic poets reality appears to be **will o' the wisp**.
14. **Wry face** (*disappointed look*) He made a **wry face** when he was refused admission to the college of his choice.
15. **Win hands down** (*win easily*) Australia **won hands down** in the Davis Cup finals.
16. **Within an ace of** (*close to something*) When our team was **within an ace of** victory, Iraq scored a last minute goal to draw the game.
17. **Wear the trousers** (*dominant*) It is Leena who **wears the trousers** and her husband simply obeys her.
18. **Wee hours** (*at dawn*) The old couple was murdered in the **wee hours** of the day.
19. **With a high hand** (*oppressively*) He was a king who ruled his subjects **with a high hand**.
20. **Wet blanket** (*any person that dampens enthusiasm*) The principal proved a **wet blanket** while the students were on picnic.
21. **Wild-goose chase** (*unprofitable*) All the efforts of the government to remove illiteracy in India is like a **wild-goose chase**.
22. **Wind fall** (*sudden gain*) The legacy left by his uncle proved a **wind fall** for Arnav.
23. **Wide berth** (*keep away*) We should give a **wide berth** to bad characters.
24. **Wrangle over an ass' shadow** (*to quarrel over trifles*) Their long friendship ended because they **wrangled over an ass' shadow**.

**Y**

1. **Yellow press** (*newspaper publishing sensational news*) In recent times there is a spurt of sensational newspapers making **yellow press** popular.
2. **Yeoman's service** (*excellent work*) Sardar Patel did a **Yeoman's service** by welding numberless States into one strong nation.

## Work Book Exercise A

**Directions** For each of the following sentences four alternatives are given. You are required to choose the correct meaning of the Idioms given in **bold** in the sentences.

- We should give a **wide berth** to bad characters.  
(a) keep away from (b) publicly condemn  
(c) give publicity to (d) not sympathise with
- Sumit had to look **high** and low before he could find his scooter key.  
(a) nowhere (b) always  
(c) everywhere (d) somewhere
- You may **rush from pillar to post**, but you stand no chance of getting what you want without a bribe.  
(a) be very busy  
(b) rush in all directions and suffer much harassment.  
(c) go to all post boxes and post offices.  
(d) go to many offices and post letters.
- At a party, he is always in **high spirits**.  
(a) talkative (b) cheerful  
(c) drunk (d) uncontrollable
- She rejected his proposal of marriage **point blank**.  
(a) directly (b) pointedly  
(c) absurdly (d) briefly
- We should guard against our **green-eyed** friends.  
(a) rich (b) jealous  
(c) handsome (d) enthusiastic
- It was clearly a case of the **pot calling the kettle black** when Jagjit said that Ramu was a thief.  
(a) Someone criticizing another for a fault which he himself has.  
(b) A person accusing another of being black.  
(c) A person blaming another for something, he has not done.  
(d) Both are guilty of the same mistake.
- The sight of the accident made my **flesh creep**.  
(a) worried me (b) frightened me  
(c) confused me (d) drew my attention
- He is a **queer fish**. I have failed to understand him.  
(a) funny person (b) sensitive person  
(c) strange person (d) quarrelsome person
- The involvement of teachers in the scheme of education proved to be a **mare's nest**.  
(a) a false invention (b) a noble thing  
(c) a successful (d) a timely sleep
- Chandu used very ugly words against his kind uncle; he **threw down the gauntlet** before him.  
(a) abused and insulted (b) threw the challenge  
(c) behaved as an important person (d) put conditions
- The present undergraduate syllabus leaves very little **elbow room** for teachers to be innovative.  
(a) room for elbow (b) space  
(c) freedom (d) ground

## Work Book Exercise B

1. Komal was left **high and dry** by her friends when she lost all her money.  
(a) isolated (b) rejected  
(c) wounded (d) depressed
2. The party stalwarts have advised the president to take it **lying down** for a while.  
(a) to show no reaction (b) to take rest  
(c) to be on the defensive (d) to be cautious
3. A movement for the world unity is **in the offing**.  
(a) at the end (b) about to start  
(c) on decline (d) in the air
4. Sita is not **cut out** for this kind of work.  
(a) trained (b) suitable  
(c) recommended (d) considered
5. His most trusted friend proved to be **a snake in the grass**.  
(a) cowardly and brutal (b) an unreliable and deceitful person  
(c) a hidden enemy (d) low and mean
6. The politician was able to sway the mob with **his gift of the gab**.  
(a) fluency of speech (b) flattering words  
(c) abundance of promises (d) political foresight
7. The speaker gave a **bird's eye view** of the political conditions in the country.  
(a) a detailed presentation (b) a biased view  
(c) a general view (d) a personal view
8. After **sowing his wild oats** Ram has decided to stick to the straight and narrow path in future.  
(a) becoming a gardener  
(b) becoming a farmer  
(c) a period of wildness  
(d) going through a period of irresponsible pleasure seeking
9. When he tells stories about himself, he **is inspired to draw the long bow**.  
(a) get excited (b) exaggerate  
(c) get emotional (d) underrate
10. He was a king who ruled his subjects **with a high hand**.  
(a) oppressively (b) kindly  
(c) conveniently (d) sympathetically
11. He **did me a good turn** by recommending me for the post of Vice-president.  
(a) became suddenly good  
(b) improved my prospects  
(c) did an act of kindness  
(d) returned my kindness
12. Being an introvert, he will only **eat his heart out**.  
(a) eat too much (b) keep brooding  
(c) invite trouble (d) suffer silently

**Work Book Exercise C**

1. Caesar was **done to death** by the conspirators.  
(a) attacked (b) removed  
(c) eliminated (d) murdered
2. His boss was always **breathing down** his neck.  
(a) abusing and ill-treating him (b) watching all his actions closely  
(c) shouting loudly at him (d) giving him strenuous work
3. He is **not worth his salt** if he fails at this juncture.  
(a) quite worthless (b) very proud of himself  
(c) quite depressed (d) very strange
4. After having finished the last project, I find myself at **a loose end**.  
(a) happy (b) on vacation  
(c) free of troubles (d) with nothing to do
5. It was such a strange affair that I would not make **head or tail of it**.  
(a) face it (b) tolerate it  
(c) remember (d) understand it
6. She exhibited remarkable **sang froid** during the crisis.  
(a) temper (b) irritation  
(c) composure (d) anger
7. My father **strained every nerve** to enable me to get settled in life.  
(a) worked very hard (b) spent a large amount  
(c) tried all tricks (d) bribed several persons
8. Though she herself was **as ugly as sin**, she had the audacity to criticize the looks of her companion.  
(a) sinfully ugly (b) very ugly  
(c) exceptionally ugly (d) quite ugly
9. He **bids fair** to be an excellent cricketer.  
(a) seems likely (b) is ambitious  
(c) is confident (d) is unlikely
10. He does not like to be friendly with Sarla. He always gives **her a cold shoulder**.  
(a) pushes her with his shoulder wherever they meet  
(b) insult her in the presence of others  
(c) tries to be unfriendly by taking no notice of her  
(d) argues with her on any issue
11. It was he who **put a spoke in my wheel**.  
(a) tried to cause an accident  
(b) helped in the execution of the plan  
(c) thwarted the execution of the plan  
(d) destroyed the plan
12. The captain played with determination because the honour of the team was at **stake**.  
(a) very tense (b) at the top  
(c) in danger (d) appropriate
13. His promotion is **on the cards**.  
(a) due (b) evident  
(c) certain (d) probable

## Work Book Exercise D

1. Harassed by repeated acts of injustice he decided to **put his foot down**.  
 (a) resign (b) not to yield  
 (c) withdraw (d) accept the proposal unconditionally
2. At Christmas, even the elderly fathers **paint the town red**.  
 (a) indulge in rioting (b) paint the house red  
 (c) spill red wire (d) have a lively time
3. His letters to his ward **speak volumes** for his forbearance and good sense.  
 (a) show indications of (b) speak ill of  
 (c) are intended to impress (d) serve as strong testimony
4. He is in the habit of **chewing the cud**.  
 (a) accusing other (b) crying over spilt milk  
 (c) forgetting things (d) to muse on
5. I just paid him a **left handed compliment**.  
 (a) an honest (b) a well deserved  
 (c) an insincere (d) a flattering
6. The new C.M. **stuck his neck out** today and promised 10 kgs free wheat a month for all rural families.  
 (a) extended help (b) took an oath  
 (c) caused embarrassment (d) took a risk
7. He **burnt his fingers** by interfering in his neighbour's affairs.  
 (a) got rebuked (b) got himself insulted  
 (c) burnt himself (d) got himself into trouble
8. The dispute regarding the emoluments of junior doctors **came to a head** this week.  
 (a) settled amicably  
 (b) reached a crisis  
 (c) took a turn for the better  
 (d) resulted in senseless violence
9. He is a strange fellow, it is very difficult to deal with him, it seems that he has a **bee in his bonnet**.  
 (a) an achievement to be proud of  
 (b) an obsession about something  
 (c) to face problems as a result of his senseless actions  
 (d) a peculiar habit of confusing others
10. It will be wise on your part to let the **bygones be bygones**.  
 (a) resist the past (b) ignore the past  
 (c) recollect the past (d) revive the past
11. The boy had a **hair-breadth escape** from a street accident.  
 (a) lucky (b) easy  
 (c) narrow (d) quick
12. In spite of the efforts of all peace loving people, world peace is still **a far cry**.  
 (a) an abstract ideal (b) a long way off  
 (c) an impracticable idea (d) out of reach

## Work Book Exercise E

- The scenery of Kashmir **beggars** description.
  - beyond the power of description
  - beg for description
  - describe a beggar
  - description of a beggar
- As her result is likely to be declared in a day or so she is on **tenter hooks** these days.
  - sitting on hooks
  - confuse'
  - pleased
  - anxious suspense
- It is a pity that our politicians are more interested in the **loaves and fishes** than with the uplift of the poor.
  - bread and butter
  - kinds of fishes
  - worldly benefits
  - means of power
- Eloquent lamentations regarding the fate of the flora and fauna are certain to be rendered **as a cry in the wilderness**.
  - a cry in vain
  - an unpleasant situation
  - a cry with a laughter
  - a laughter having no end
- India **carried the day** by defeating Australia in hockey series.
  - lose
  - loose
  - win
  - decisive victory
- In modern democratic societies **lynch law** seems to have become a common feature in almost all the spheres of life.
  - law of the parliament
  - law of the constitution
  - law of the mob
  - law of the underworld
- India must not expect any super power **at the beck and call** at the time of attack.
  - at the service
  - ask for service
  - at the back of
  - call to help
- The Principal proved to be a **wet blanket** at the party of the students.
  - discouraged from enjoying
  - damp clothes
  - blanket wet in the rain
  - cold blank
- In a parliamentary democracy the Prime Minister is at the **helm of national affairs**.
  - in the main position
  - in the centre
  - helm of a boat
  - centre of attraction
- The arrival of the mother-in-law in the family proved a **rift-in the lute**.
  - brought about disharmony
  - brought about a disciplined atmosphere
  - caused unnecessary worries
  - caused a pleasant atmosphere
- Seema is a little **hard of hearing**.
  - inaudible
  - disinterested
  - deaf
  - insensitive
- The statement made by Pakistan about Kashmir problem was **Gall and Warmwood** to every Indian.
  - woodworm
  - a source of anger
  - a great fuss
  - beyond reason
- You cannot **have your cake and eat it** too.
  - enjoy forever
  - have it both ways
  - run away from responsibility
  - absolve yourself of guilt
- He is an eloquent speaker and is never **at a loss for** a suitable word.
  - under a loss
  - to lose something
  - to be confused
  - suffer a loss

## Work Book Exercise F

**Directions** In each of the following questions an idiomatic phrase is given followed by four alternatives. Choose the alternative that best expresses the meaning of the expression.

1. Hang together  
 (a) confirm each other  
 (b) live together  
 (c) hang with each other  
 (d) go together
2. Hard boiled  
 (a) boiled hard  
 (b) extremely hot  
 (c) hardened  
 (d) hardly boiled
3. Get cold feet  
 (a) to run for life  
 (b) to get cold  
 (c) to be afraid  
 (d) to become discourteous
4. Make no bones about  
 (a) to make no effort  
 (b) to admit something readily  
 (c) to make fuss about  
 (d) to create no hindrance
5. Turn out crabs  
 (a) end in failure  
 (b) to be successful  
 (c) to bring up crabs  
 (d) to be victorious
6. Devil's Advocate  
 (a) an advocate of a Devil  
 (b) an advocate like a Devil  
 (c) discussion of an Advocate  
 (d) one who is against religion
7. Between the Devil and the Sea  
 (a) in a fix  
 (b) a Devil in the sea  
 (c) in a worse situation  
 (d) a compromising situation
8. Dance attendance upon  
 (a) to flatter  
 (b) to dance with a partner  
 (c) to attend upon  
 (d) to attend to
9. Go abegging  
 (a) go in vain  
 (b) go for begging  
 (c) beg for going  
 (d) request for something
10. A Gala day  
 (a) a day of success  
 (b) a day of merry-making  
 (c) an eventful day  
 (d) a day of singificance
11. Go hot & cold  
 (a) get angry  
 (b) get irritated  
 (c) get out of cold  
 (d) sudden feeling of fear and anxiety
12. Gird up one's Loins  
 (a) get ready for a job  
 (b) leave bag & baggage  
 (c) hunt for lions  
 (d) a loin cloth
13. Pocket an insult  
 (a) bear insult without protest  
 (b) not to take any action  
 (c) sit over a resolution  
 (d) ignore a case
14. In pretty pass  
 (a) problems of a passage  
 (b) in difficulties  
 (c) in a difficult way  
 (d) caught in heavy traffic

15. Small talk  
(a) light conversation (b) gossip  
(c) back biting (d) whispering
16. Plough a lonely furrow  
(a) work single handedly (b) plough the field  
(c) plough the sands (d) work in a furrow
17. Rub shoulders with  
(a) come in contact with (b) quarrel with a person  
(c) rub shoulders of someone (d) have a cause to fight
18. Run the gauntlet  
(a) lash with gauntlet (b) run away with gauntlet  
(c) face criticism (d) accept a challenge
19. Rest on one's oars  
(a) take rest after working long (b) tired of working  
(c) tired of boating (d) rest with oars
20. Join the majority  
(a) on the side of majority (b) to die  
(c) a turn coat (d) have the majority
21. Wash dirty linen in public  
(a) to criticise (b) make personal quarrels public  
(c) to talk dirty things in public (d) to wash clothers
22. Augean stables  
(a) to remove an evil (b) to clean the stables  
(c) a place for horses (d) stables for Augean horses
23. At the helm of  
(a) at the helm of the ship (b) at the main situation  
(c) in the centre of a storm (d) in the centre of the ship
24. An apple of discord  
(a) the cause of a contention (b) sour apple  
(c) a quarrel (d) a fight for an apple
25. Call one's shot  
(a) make intentions clear (b) call with a shot  
(c) shoot at a call (d) to show determination
26. Few and far between  
(a) very small in number (b) very small in distance  
(c) very small in quantity (d) between near & far
27. Force an issue  
(a) make an issue (b) force a decision  
(c) solve an issue (d) bring an issue
28. To lose face  
(a) to look angry (b) to be humiliated  
(c) to be helpless (d) to look vacant
29. Much ado about nothing  
(a) to make a noise (b) to make a fuss over small matter  
(c) a play by Shaw (d) talk about nothing

30. Make the best of a bad bargain  
 (a) to turn failure to best advantage (b) to make a bad bargain  
 (c) to make the best bargain (d) to make a bargain
31. Chapter and verse for a thing  
 (a) to produce proof (b) to praise a thing  
 (c) to make publicity (d) to attach value to a thing
32. Bid fair  
 (a) have a good prospect (b) to be just  
 (c) try in a fair manner (d) fair effort
33. Talk shop  
 (a) talk about shop (b) talk in shop  
 (c) talk business (d) talk to the point
34. Tread on one's toes  
 (a) to give offence (b) walk on toes  
 (c) tread with toes (d) flatter someone
35. Carry the can  
 (a) accept the blame (b) get into trouble  
 (c) face the repercussions (d) share the responsibility
36. Take time by the forelock  
 (a) forecast on event (b) forecast time  
 (c) talk one's own time (d) prepare for action before time
37. All agog  
 (a) all happy (b) rife with rumours  
 (c) restless (d) playful
38. Toe the line  
 (a) mark the line (b) cross the line  
 (c) hit on the toe (d) follow others
39. Throw up one's cards  
 (a) accept defeat (b) spoil the card's game  
 (c) throw cards in the air (d) throw away the game
40. Turn tail  
 (a) run like a coward (b) one who changes ideas  
 (c) run with a tail (d) run at the end

## Work Book Exercise G

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase **bold** in the sentence. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.

[SSC CGL 2014]

- My friend is quite **hard-hearted**.  
 (a) emotional (b) cruel  
 (c) rude (d) sentimental
- His popularity is **on the wane**.  
 (a) on the heights (b) stand still  
 (c) verge of eruption (d) gradually declining
- He was **in doldrums** after the quarrel with his brother.  
 (a) jubilant (b) in low spirits  
 (c) angry (d) left the house

4. If someone **drops a bombshell**, they  
 (a) make a serious mistake (b) create a big problem  
 (c) have some big, bad news (d) are attacking their enemy
5. Sachin has had a **long inning** in cricket.  
 (a) long spell (b) fine experience  
 (c) victorious win (d) ultimate success
6. We must work with **all our might and main**, otherwise we cannot succeed.  
 (a) full force (b) complete trust  
 (c) exceptional skill (d) full unity
7. The sailors **nailed their colours to their mast**.  
 (a) put up a colourful mast (b) refused to climb down  
 (c) took over the ship (d) decided to abandon the ship
8. We had (had) better **batten down the hatches**. The weather is unpredictable.  
 (a) stay in-door (b) prepare for a difficult situation  
 (c) go somewhere safe (d) face the obstacles
9. It is difficult to have a sensible discussion with her as **she flies off at a tangent**.  
 (a) gets carried away (b) starts discussing something irrelevant  
 (c) loses her temper easily (d) does not really understand anything
10. The students found it hard to **go at equal speed with** the professor.  
 (a) get away from (b) put up with  
 (c) keep up with (d) race against

**Directions** *In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase given in bold. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.*

[SSC MTS 2014]

11. **Took to her heels**  
 (a) bent down (b) ran off  
 (c) kicked off her shoes (d) rubbed her heels
12. **Was plain sailing**  
 (a) was very easy (b) was complicated  
 (c) was competitive (d) was uncomfortable
13. **A bolt from the blue**  
 (a) struck by thunder (b) a piece of bad luck  
 (c) a flash of lighting (d) a complete surprise

**Directions** *In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase given in bold in the sentence. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.*

[SSC MTS 2014]

14. I have recently changed my job and I am going to have **teething problems**.  
 (a) difficulties at the start (b) difficulties at the end  
 (c) difficulties all the time (d) problem with my teeth
15. The soldiers fought **tooth and nail** to save their country.  
 (a) using unfair means (b) with strength and fury  
 (c) with weapons (d) as best as they could
16. Chetan is very upset because the new manager always **picks on him**.  
 (a) advises (b) warns severely  
 (c) selects (d) treats badly

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase given in **bold** in the sentence. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.

[SSC CGL 2014]

17. If you **read between the lines**, you will appreciate what he writes.  
 (a) can read leaving lines in between (b) can read a lot quicker  
 (c) know what the writer thinks (d) can read and write in the language
18. **To throw dust in one's eyes**.  
 (a) To harm someone (b) To deceive  
 (c) To show false things (d) To make blind
19. He is a **cut above** all the other boys in the group.  
 (a) quite taller than (b) more active than  
 (c) a little rougher than (d) rather superior to
20. As soon as the police arrived, the bank robbers **showed the white flag**.  
 (a) calmly left the scene (b) surrendered  
 (c) ran away (d) were incensed
21. **To cut one short**.  
 (a) To love one (b) To insult one  
 (c) To criticise one (d) To interrupt one

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase **bold** in the sentence. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.

22. I am tired of the **rat-race** in the corporate sector. [SSC DEO 2011]  
 (a) corruption (b) misery  
 (c) unpleasant sight (d) Fierce competition
23. Sachin is an indifferent student. He is often **all at sea**. [SSC LDC, CGL 2011]  
 (a) in a state of shock (b) very knowledgeable  
 (c) in danger (d) completely confused
24. I am waiting for the old man to **kick the bucket** so that I can get his money. [SSC DEO 2011]  
 (a) to conclude (b) to kill  
 (c) to die (d) to absolve

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase given in **bold** in the sentence. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.

[SSC LDC 2013]

25. Mrs Roy **keeps an open house** on Saturday evening parties-you'll find all kinds of people there.  
 (a) welcomes all members (b) welcomes a select group of people  
 (c) keeps the doors of the house open (d) keeps the gates open for a few persons
26. The police **cordoned off** the area after the explosion.  
 (a) the police filled the whole area  
 (b) the police isolated the area  
 (c) the police checked everyone in the area  
 (d) the police did not allow anyone to leave the area
27. The manager hesitated to assign the job to the newcomer as he was **wet behind the ears**.  
 (a) drenched in the rain (b) unpunctual and lethargic  
 (c) stupid and slow-witted (d) young and inexperienced

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase given below. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.

[SSC CGL 2012]

28. To have an axe to grind.  
 (a) a private end to serve (b) to fail to arouse interest  
 (c) to have no result (d) to work for both sides
29. To drive home  
 (a) to find one's root (b) to return to place to rest  
 (c) back to original position (d) to emphasise
30. To be above board  
 (a) to have a good height (b) to be honest in any business deal  
 (c) having no debts (d) to try to be beautiful
31. To cry wolf.  
 (a) to listen eagerly (b) to give false alarm  
 (c) to turn pale (d) to keep off starvation
32. He is on the wrong side of seventy.  
 (a) more than seventy years old (b) less than seventy years old  
 (c) seventy years old (d) eighty years old

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase given in bold in the sentence. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.

[SSC LDC 2013]

33. The mother was right in **giving a piece of her mind** to the daughter.  
 (a) speaking kindly (b) speaking cheerfully  
 (c) speaking sadly (d) speaking sharply
34. After getting a severe scolding from his mother, Raghu **got down to business**.  
 (a) started a business (b) became businesslike  
 (c) began to work seriously (d) joined his father's business
35. The young servant **goes about** with the old master.  
 (a) moves around (b) goes around  
 (c) tries to know more about (d) adjusts well

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase given in bold in the sentence. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.

36. Some people have the habit of working **by fits and starts**. [SSC LDC, MTS 2011]  
 (a) very seriously (b) excitedly  
 (c) consistently (d) irregularly

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase given in bold in the sentence. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.

[SSC FCI 2012]

37. He left the town **under a cloud**.  
 (a) of his own accord (b) in disgrace  
 (c) with a heavy heart (d) when it was raining
38. The young boy's act put his father **in a pickle**.  
 (a) in a funny position (b) in a serious position  
 (c) in a sad situation (d) in an embarrassing or awkward situation

39. They **got on well** with each other the moment they met.  
 (a) had an agreement (b) had a misunderstanding  
 (c) had a friendly relationship (d) fell in love
40. She tried to **slip off**, but was caught immediately.  
 (a) steal quietly (b) go quickly  
 (c) leave quietly (d) slide quickly
41. I am **looking forward** to her arrival.  
 (a) afraid of (b) expecting with pleasure  
 (c) expecting (d) confident of

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase given in **bold** in the sentence. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.

[SSC CGL 2012]

42. If you want to be happy, **cut your coat according to your cloth**.  
 (a) be honest in your dealings (b) work according to your capacity  
 (c) live within your means (d) don't be too ambitious
43. She **broke down** in the middle of her speech.  
 (a) could not proceed (b) fell down  
 (c) became angry (d) cried
44. He **lays out** 50% of his income on bonds and shares.  
 (a) allots (b) distributes  
 (c) donates (d) spends
45. I will do the work if I am allowed **a free hand** in the choice of materials.  
 (a) complete liberty (b) an expense account  
 (c) to employ men to work (d) unlimited funds
46. He is **as hard as nail**, never moved by anything.  
 (a) tough (b) emotionless  
 (c) physically strong (d) hard working

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase given in **bold** in the sentence. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.

[SSC DEO 2012, LDC 2011]

47. I **took exception** to his remarks and left the meeting.  
 (a) objected (b) suggested  
 (c) heard (d) excused
48. He turned a **deaf ear** to his parents' advice. [SSC DEO, 2012]  
 (a) listen carefully (b) refused to obey  
 (c) big help (d) attentively
49. Most people **live from hand to mouth** these days because of inflation. [SSC DEO 2012]  
 (a) lavishly (b) happily  
 (c) comfortably (d) miserably
50. There are no **hard and fast** rules for admission to this college. [SSC DEO 2012]  
 (a) easy (b) strict  
 (c) fixed (d) slow
51. Please **hold your tongue** in this matter, otherwise you will repent. [SSC DEO 2012]  
 (a) be silent (b) give advice  
 (c) defend (d) argue

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.

52. Turn up [SSC LDC 2012]  
(a) twist (b) appear  
(c) curt (d) wind
53. Bad blood [SSC STENO 2011]  
(a) low blood pressure (b) feeling of love  
(c) feeling of hatred (d) high blood pressure
54. To put an end to [SSC LDC 2012]  
(a) continue (b) start  
(c) stop (d) enforce
55. To hail from [SSC LDC 2012]  
(a) call (b) receive  
(c) come from (d) arrive

**Directions** In these question, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase given below. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.

56. Fall flat [SSC LDC 2012]  
(a) to fail to stand (b) to fail to realise  
(c) to fail to maintain (d) to fail to produce intended effect
57. Carry weight  
(a) to carry burden (b) carry the day  
(c) be important (d) carry through
58. To pass away  
(a) to ignore (d) walk past  
(c) die (d) revise
59. Turn down  
(a) to accept (b) reject  
(c) twist (d) weave
60. Die hard  
(a) unwilling to change (b) ready to change  
(c) egoist (d) arrogant

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase given below. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase. [SSC LDC 2012]

61. Stand-by  
(a) support (b) postpone  
(c) stand up (d) resist
62. To give vent to  
(a) cause trouble (b) lose courage  
(c) circulate (d) express
63. Part and parcel  
(a) partly (b) unnecessary part  
(c) essential element (d) large part
64. To get wind  
(a) to forget (b) come to know  
(c) to tell (d) to fly

65. Under the thumb of  
 (a) beyond control of (b) under the nose of  
 (c) active (d) under control of
66. Hand and glove [SSC SO 2012]  
 (a) very difficult (b) open enemy  
 (c) very intimate (d) very rude
67. At a loss  
 (a) expert (b) unable  
 (c) able (d) defeat
68. In black and white  
 (a) useless (b) in writing  
 (c) in short (d) in full swing

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase given in **bold** in the sentence. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.

[SSC LDC 2011, 2012]

69. At the eleventh hour  
 (a) at a late stage (b) at the beginning  
 (c) at 11 o'clock (d) at an early stage
70. A shot in the dark [SSC LDC 2012]  
 (a) to love to go out on adventures (b) be able to work very quickly  
 (c) be very violent (d) an attempt to guess something
71. In a nutshell [SSC LDC 2012]  
 (a) angrily (b) casually  
 (c) writing (d) brief
72. From the bottom of my heart [SSC LDC 2012]  
 (a) sincerely (b) lowest position  
 (c) totally (d) wholly
73. For better or worse [SSC LDC 2012]  
 (a) sometimes (b) always  
 (c) in good times (d) in bad times

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase given below. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.

[SSC CGL 2012]

74. Sarala is always ready to **eat anyone's salt**.  
 (a) to be one's guest (b) to cook tasty dishes  
 (c) an infectious disease (d) to deceive someone
75. He will certainly **come to grief** if he does not leave his present friends.  
 (a) addicted (b) go upto the extreme  
 (c) suffer (d) enjoy
76. If you develop friendship with an individual you must stand by him **through thick and thin**.  
 (a) think about his/her welfare  
 (b) under all circumstances  
 (c) to accompany through a thick forest  
 (d) in day and night

77. Now-a-days, one gets good literary books **once in a blue moon**.  
(a) from renowned publisher (b) at very low cost  
(c) when moon gives blue light (d) rarely
78. He decided to **bury the hatchet**.  
(a) to keep a secret (b) to make peace  
(c) to fool someone (d) to bury the wealth
79. Reena is a kind of person who **wears her heart on her sleeve**. [SSC LDC 2010, 2011]  
(a) expresses her emotions freely (b) expresses her emotions curbingly  
(c) suppresses her emotions openly (d) suppresses her excitement sparingly
80. I hope **to talk him over** to our view.  
(a) oppose (b) analyse  
(c) convince (d) support
81. The officer **kicked up a row** over the issue.  
(a) gave a kick in the air (b) made a great fuss  
(c) avoided the issue (d) gave strict orders
82. "If he does not perform his duties properly, I will **send him packing**," said the manager.  
(a) send him to packing department (b) give him a warning  
(c) serve him a notice (d) terminate his services

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase given below. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.

83. A little gush of gratitude [SSC FCI 2012]  
(a) gradual recovery (b) friendly feeling  
(c) excessive labour (d) excessive enthusiasm
84. To lose ground  
(a) to become less powerful (b) to become less popular  
(c) to lose foundation (d) to be without a leader
85. To fall back on  
(a) to oppose something important  
(b) to suffer an injury on the back in an accident  
(c) to fail to do something important in time  
(d) to seek support out of necessity
86. To make one's blood boil  
(a) to make somebody furious (b) to develop fever  
(c) to get excited (d) to make someone nervous

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase given in bold in the sentence. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.

[SSC CPO 2011]

87. She was **on the horns of a dilemma** as she had either to leave her job or divorce her husband.  
(a) in nervous condition (b) in terrible mood  
(c) in difficult situation (d) in suspense
88. He **died in harness**.  
(a) ceased to live (b) died of a disease  
(c) died for his country (d) died while working

89. All his schemes **ended in smoke**. [SSC LDC 2011]  
 (a) came to nothing (b) got on fire  
 (c) burnt up (d) attracted everybody
90. The young boy was **kicking his heels** inspite of his mother's stern warnings.  
 (a) playing happily (b) kicking someone  
 (c) wasting time (d) passing a gesture of disrespect
91. Fathima felt that she had been made a **scapegoat** for her son's incompetence. [SSC LDC 2011]  
 (a) fool (b) witness  
 (c) fall guy (d) proxy
92. She denied **point-blank** her involvement in the crime.  
 (a) directly (b) desperately  
 (c) stubbornly (d) rudely

## Work Book Exercise H

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase given in **bold** in the sentence. Choose the alternative which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase. [SSC DEO 2011]

- He **put across** his ideas to the minister.  
 (a) made available (b) effectively conveyed  
 (c) strongly expressed (d) laid aside
- George and I are neighbours, but we don't **see eye to eye** with each other.  
 (a) like (b) interact  
 (c) agree (d) fight
- People were **dropping like flies** in the intense heat.  
 (a) collapsing in large numbers (b) getting infected with many diseases  
 (c) taking leave in large numbers (d) sitting down in the shade

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase given in **bold** in the sentence. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase. [SSC LDC 2011]

- The officer **called for** an explanation from the cashier for the shortage of cash. [SSC LDC 2011]  
 (a) asked (b) begged  
 (c) served a notice (d) demanded
- The actress **took cue from** her brother and became successful.  
 (a) some help (b) a hint  
 (c) some money (d) learnt acting
- We wanted the gift to be a surprise for my mother, but my sister **gave the game away**.  
 (a) lost the game (b) gave out the secret  
 (c) gave away the gift (d) withdrew from the plan
- Let us have a **heart to heart talk** to solve this problem.  
 (a) good talk (b) emotional talk  
 (c) frank talk (d) loving talk
- His speech **fell short** on the audience.  
 (a) had no effect (b) moved the audience  
 (c) impressed the audience (d) was quite short

9. As a businessman, my father always maintained that his transactions constituted an **open book**.  
(a) an account book always open (b) a book of open confessions  
(c) an opening for new ventures (d) straight forward and honest dealings
10. The project advanced by **leaps and bounds**.  
(a) rapidly (b) slowly  
(c) sharply (d) simply
11. She is **too fond of her own voice**.  
(a) loves singing (b) very selfish  
(c) does not listen properly to anyone else (d) very talkative
12. Indian Police is, on the whole, **high handed** in dealing with citizens.  
(a) kind (b) overbearing  
(c) prompt (d) adept
13. **Birds of the same feather**  
(a) persons of same caste (b) persons of same colour  
(c) birds with same type of feather (d) persons of same character
14. **To call a spade a spade**  
(a) to be frank (b) to be sly  
(c) to be rude (d) to be diplomatic
15. **A white elephant**  
(a) an extinct species of elephant found in Burma  
(b) a report by the government to give information  
(c) huge and colossal waste of human energy  
(d) costly and troublesome possession useless to its owner
16. **To miss the bus**  
(a) to miss, the bus that one regularly takes  
(b) to miss an opportunity  
(c) to have something to fall back upon  
(d) to find fault with others
17. **To look down one's nose**  
(a) to show anger (b) to retaliate  
(c) to insult in the presence of others (d) to regard with contempt
18. **To shed crocodile tears**  
(a) to weep profusely (b) to pretend grief  
(c) to grieve seriously (d) to mock something
19. **By putting two and two together**  
(a) to mix several things (b) to make an arithmetical calculation  
(c) to keep people in pairs (d) to deduce from given facts
20. **To go scot-free**  
(a) to walk like a native of Scotland (b) to get something free  
(c) to escape without punishment (d) to save tax

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/ phrase given below. Choose the alternative which, best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.

21. To bring to light [SSC DEO 2011]  
(a) to reveal (b) to conceal  
(c) to provide luminescence (d) to appeal

22. To hit the jackpot  
 (a) to gamble (b) to get an unexpected victory  
 (c) to be wealthy (d) to make money quickly
23. To burn the candle at both ends  
 (a) to spend cautiously (b) to be stingy  
 (c) to be extravagant (d) to survive difficulty
24. Status quo  
 (a) unchanged position (b) excellent place  
 (c) unbreakable statue (d) long queue
25. By fair means or foul  
 (a) without using common sense (b) without difficulty  
 (c) in any way honest or dishonest (d) having been instigated

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/ phrase given below. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase. [SSC LDC 2011]

26. At one's beck and call  
 (a) to attend a call (b) to be helped by someone  
 (c) to be useful to someone (d) to be dominated by someone
27. To explore every avenue  
 (a) to search all streets (b) to scout the wilderness  
 (c) to find an adventure (d) to try every opportunity
28. A red letter day [SSC LDC 2010]  
 (a) a dangerous day in one's life  
 (b) a sorrowful day in one's life  
 (c) an important or joyful occasion in one's life  
 (d) both a dangerous and sorrowful day in one's life
29. On the spur of the moment  
 (a) to act at once (b) to ride a horse in a race  
 (c) to act deliberately (d) to act at the appointed time

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/ phrase given below. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.

30. Build castles in the air [SSC Steno 2011]  
 (a) waste time (b) daydream  
 (c) build houses (d) work hard
31. Sought after  
 (a) highly paid (b) pursued by  
 (c) in great demand (d) with great talent
32. To hit below the belt  
 (a) to punish (b) to tie with a belt  
 (c) to hit with a belt (d) to attack unfairly
33. Pot-luck dinner  
 (a) dinner where everybody brings something to eat  
 (b) dinner where everybody pays for his food  
 (c) dinner where only soup is served  
 (d) dinner where people eat and play games of the same time.

**Directions** *In these questions, four alternatives are given for the idiom/ phrase given in bold in the sentence. Choose the alternative, which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.*

[SSC MTS 2011]

34. I had to **pull strings** to put up a good show.  
 (a) play music (b) use personal influence  
 (c) use the instrument (d) play a song
35. You can easily overcome this situation if you **keep your head clear**.  
 (a) keep faith in (b) remain calm  
 (c) believe in (d) trust the others
36. It is clear that the ideas of both reformers **ran in the same groove**.  
 (a) promoted each other (b) clashed with each other  
 (c) moved in harmony (d) moved in different directions
37. There was a job for men to **cut my teeth on**.  
 (a) to gain experience (b) to try  
 (c) to sharpen my wits (d) to earn a decent salary
38. The **carrot and stick** policy pays dividends in every organisations.  
 (a) fair and foul (b) continuous vigilance  
 (c) democratic (d) reward and punishment
39. Unless you **grease his palms**, he will not do your work.  
 (a) talk to him (b) flatter him  
 (c) beat him (d) bribe him

**Directions** *Four alternatives are given for the meaning of the given Idiom/Phrase given below. Choose the alternative which best expresses the meaning of the Idiom/Phrase .*

[SSC CGL 2011]

40. To take to heart  
 (a) to be encouraged (b) to grieve over  
 (c) to like (d) to hate
41. Yeoman's service  
 (a) medical help (b) excellent work  
 (c) social work (d) hard work
42. To face the music  
 (a) to enjoy a musical recital (b) to bear the consequences  
 (c) to live in a pleasant atmosphere (d) to have a difficult time
43. To put up with  
 (a) to accommodate (b) to adjust  
 (c) to understand (d) to tolerate
44. To call it a day  
 (a) to conclude proceedings (b) to initiate proceedings  
 (c) to work through the day (d) None of these

**Directions** *Four alternatives are given for the Idiom/Phrase. Choose the alternative which best expresses the meaning of the Idiom/Phrase.*

[SSC CGL 2012]

45. A damp squib  
 (a) rainy weather (b) a disappointing result  
 (c) a skirt in a laundry (d) None of these
46. In cold blood  
 (a) angrily (b) deliberately  
 (c) excitedly (d) slowly

47. To take someone for a ride  
 (a) to give a ride to someone (b) to deceive someone  
 (c) to be indifferent (d) to disclose a secret
48. To move heaven and earth  
 (a) to cause an earthquake (b) to try everything possible  
 (c) to pray to all Gods (d) to travel in a rocket
49. To smell a rat  
 (a) to smell foul (b) to see a rat  
 (c) to chase a rat (d) to be suspicious

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the Idiom/Phrase given in **bold** in the sentence. Choose the alternative which best expresses the meaning of the Idiom/Phrase.

[SSC CGL 2012]

50. His **utopian idea** was entertaining but not acceptable.  
 (a) unworthy idea (b) imaginary idea  
 (c) classic idea (d) intelligent idea
51. He has the habit of **getting into a row** over trivial matters.  
 (a) getting a right path (b) giving unwanted advice  
 (c) seeking the help (d) picking up a fight
52. A **small fry**  
 (a) unimportant (b) weak  
 (c) little (d) important
53. Do not **lose your head** in public.  
 (a) get angry (b) get a headache  
 (c) be embarrassed (d) shave your hair
54. A good sportsman cannot afford to have a **fit of the blues** before the game.  
 (a) steroids or drugs (b) depression  
 (c) stimulants (d) entertainment

**Directions** In these questions four alternatives are given for the Idiom/Phrase **bold** in the sentences. Choose the alternative which best expresses the meaning of the Idiom/Phrase.

[SSC CGL 2013]

55. The project is carried over to this year and we need to **keep the ball rolling**.  
 (a) to continue the work (b) more information  
 (c) to do better (d) new strategies
56. The host team **bore the palm** in the league matches.  
 (a) played quite well (b) was victorious  
 (c) was defeated (d) played a very boring match
57. Just **keep your wig on**. Everything will be alright.  
 (a) hold on to your wig, so it won't fall off (b) get another hair cut  
 (c) calm down (d) take off your wig
58. Parents pay **through their nose** for their children's education.  
 (a) by taking loans (b) an extremely high price  
 (c) grudgingly (d) willingly
59. Monica's habit of **picking holes** in every relationship is very irksome.  
 (a) admiring people (b) finding fault  
 (c) criticizing people (d) arguing with people

**Directions** In these questions, four alternatives are given for the Idiom/Phrase **bold** in the sentence. Choose the alternative which best expresses the meaning of the Idiom/Phrase.

[CDS 2012]

60. She didn't realize that the clever salesman was **taking her for a ride**.  
(a) forcing her to go with him. (b) trying to trick her  
(c) taking her in a car (d) pulling her along
61. I **jumped out of my skin** when the explosion happened  
(a) was angry (b) was in panic  
(c) was excited (d) was nervous
62. There is no point in discussing the new project with him as he always **pours cold water on** and new ideas.  
(a) postpones (b) puts off  
(c) dislikes (d) disapproves of
63. His speech has **taken the wind out of my sails**.  
(a) made me remember my past (b) made my words or actions ineffective  
(c) made me depressed (d) made me think of the future
64. Regardless of what her parents said, she wanted to **let her hair down** that night.  
(a) work till late (b) really enjoy  
(c) wash her hair (d) comb her hair

**Directions** In the following questions, four alternatives are given for the Idiom/Phrase given in **bold** in the sentence. Choose the alternative which best expresses the meaning of the Idiom/Phrase.

[SSC CGL 2013]

65. What **egged you on** to become a social worker?  
(a) urged (b) dampened  
(c) hindered (d) discouraged
66. Many politicians in India are **not fit to hold a candle** to Mahatma Gandhi.  
(a) superior (b) equal  
(c) inferior (d) indifferent
67. She must **be paying through the nose** for the face left.  
(a) paying less than necessary (b) paying too much  
(c) paying the right amount (d) paying reluctantly
68. He is **putting the cart before the horse** by purchasing furniture before buying a house.  
(a) doing a thing in the wrong way  
(b) doing a thing in the right way  
(c) committing a great crime  
(d) doing things meticulously.
69. **Casting pearls before swine**  
(a) speaking nice words and convincing them  
(b) offering good things to underserving people  
(c) uplifting the needy for their welfare  
(d) doing worthwhile things to unknown people

## Review Exercise

**Directions** Some of the following sentences are grammatically correct and some are incorrect. Find out which part of the sentence has an error and mark that part. If there is no error mark that part as your answer.

1. Continuous drizzle in the city kept the people indoors today. No error  
                   a                                  b                                  c                                  d                                  e
2. For a long time I did not know who was sitting besides me because  
                   a                                  b                                  c  
it was very dark. No error  
                   d                                  e
3. The professor tried his very best to bring home on the students the  
                                   a                                  b                                  c  
need for hard work. No error  
                   d                                  e
4. She has been practicing medical profession for a long time but is yet to attain  
                   a                                  b                                  c                                  d  
perfection. No error  
                   e
5. My friends insisted that I should see the movie from beginning to the end. No error  
                   a                                  b                                  c                                  d                                  e
6. Irregardless of what people say, I must repeat that these are the facts concerning  
                   a                                  b                                  c  
the requirements for the position. No error  
                   d                                  e
7. A nationwide survey has brought up an interesting finding  
                   a                                  b                                  c  
regarding infant mortality-rate in India. No error  
                   d                                  e
8. Several prominent figures, involved in the scandal are required to appear  
                   a                                  b                                  c  
to the investigation committee. No error  
                   d                                  e
9. It is wrong on your part to call into question the integrity of your elder brother.  
                   a                                  b                                  c                                  d  
No error  
                   e
10. You are never practical and your suggestions hold no water  
                   a                                  b                                  c  
because they are not convincing. No error  
                   d                                  e
11. When the police approached him he held up his both hands,  
                   a                                  b  
to show that he was surrendering. No error  
                   c                                  d



30. Shruti was accused of sitting at the fence by her husband when he was in trouble.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d
31. The university has invited alumnus to the annual functions. No error  
 a b c d
32. The Government is likely to announce an interim measures to check the inflation.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d
33. He introduced his fiancée to the guests present at the banquet. No error  
 a b c d
34. Everybody was attracted to literatur present in the audience last night. No error  
 a b c d
35. She is working as a couturier in the boutique. No error  
 a b c d
36. She has fallen off with the boy she wanted to marry. No error  
 a b c d
37. Even after taking tuition my daughter is not at the home in Physics. No error  
 a b c d
38. Even though our team took the field, the opposition made them  
 a b  
eat the humble pie. No error  
 c d
39. The student turned the deaf ear to the advice of his teacher. No error  
 a b c d
40. Though he is working hard, his success is out of question. No error  
 a b c d

# ANSWERS

## Unit V

### 15. Phrasal Verbs

#### Work Book Exercise A

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (b)  | 2. (b)  | 3. (c)  | 4. (c)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (b)  | 7. (b)  |
| 8. (c)  | 9. (c)  | 10. (b) | 11. (b) | 12. (c) | 13. (b) | 14. (b) |
| 15. (a) | 16. (b) | 17. (c) | 18. (c) | 19. (b) | 20. (b) |         |

#### Work Book Exercise B

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (b)  | 2. (b)  | 3. (b)  | 4. (c)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (b)  | 7. (a)  |
| 8. (a)  | 9. (c)  | 10. (c) | 11. (b) | 12. (a) | 13. (c) | 14. (c) |
| 15. (b) | 16. (b) | 17. (b) | 18. (a) | 19. (c) | 20. (b) |         |

### 16. Idioms and Phrases

#### Work Book Exercise A

- |        |        |         |         |         |        |        |
|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|--------|--------|
| 1. (a) | 2. (c) | 3. (b)  | 4. (b)  | 5. (a)  | 6. (b) | 7. (a) |
| 8. (b) | 9. (c) | 10. (a) | 11. (b) | 12. (c) |        |        |

#### Work Book Exercise B

- |        |        |         |         |         |        |        |
|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|--------|--------|
| 1. (a) | 2. (a) | 3. (b)  | 4. (b)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (a) | 7. (c) |
| 8. (d) | 9. (b) | 10. (a) | 11. (c) | 12. (d) |        |        |

#### Work Book Exercise C

- |        |        |         |         |         |         |        |
|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|--------|
| 1. (d) | 2. (b) | 3. (a)  | 4. (d)  | 5. (d)  | 6. (c)  | 7. (a) |
| 8. (c) | 9. (a) | 10. (c) | 11. (c) | 12. (c) | 13. (c) |        |

#### Work Book Exercise D

- |        |        |         |         |         |        |        |
|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|--------|--------|
| 1. (b) | 2. (d) | 3. (d)  | 4. (d)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (d) | 7. (d) |
| 8. (b) | 9. (b) | 10. (b) | 11. (c) | 12. (c) |        |        |

#### Work Book Exercise E

- |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |
|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (a) | 2. (d) | 3. (c)  | 4. (a)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (c)  | 7. (a)  |
| 8. (a) | 9. (a) | 10. (a) | 11. (c) | 12. (b) | 13. (b) | 14. (c) |

#### Work Book Exercise F

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (a)  | 2. (c)  | 3. (c)  | 4. (b)  | 5. (a)  | 6. (d)  | 7. (a)  |
| 8. (a)  | 9. (a)  | 10. (b) | 11. (d) | 12. (a) | 13. (a) | 14. (b) |
| 15. (a) | 16. (a) | 17. (a) | 18. (c) | 19. (a) | 20. (b) | 21. (b) |
| 22. (a) | 23. (b) | 24. (a) | 25. (d) | 26. (a) | 27. (b) | 28. (b) |
| 29. (b) | 30. (a) | 31. (a) | 32. (a) | 33. (c) | 34. (a) | 35. (a) |
| 36. (d) | 37. (c) | 38. (d) | 39. (a) | 40. (a) |         |         |

#### Work Book Exercise G

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (b)  | 2. (d)  | 3. (b)  | 4. (c)  | 5. (b)  | 6. (a)  | 7. (c)  |
| 8. (d)  | 9. (c)  | 10. (c) | 11. (b) | 12. (a) | 13. (d) | 14. (a) |
| 15. (b) | 16. (d) | 17. (c) | 18. (b) | 19. (d) | 20. (b) | 21. (d) |

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 22. (c) | 23. (d) | 24. (c) | 25. (a) | 26. (b) | 27. (d) | 28. (a) |
| 29. (d) | 30. (b) | 31. (b) | 32. (a) | 33. (d) | 34. (c) | 35. (d) |
| 36. (d) | 37. (b) | 38. (d) | 39. (c) | 40. (c) | 41. (b) | 42. (c) |
| 43. (d) | 44. (d) | 45. (a) | 46. (b) | 47. (a) | 48. (b) | 49. (d) |
| 50. (c) | 51. (a) | 52. (b) | 53. (c) | 54. (c) | 55. (c) | 56. (d) |
| 57. (c) | 58. (c) | 59. (b) | 60. (a) | 61. (a) | 62. (d) | 63. (c) |
| 64. (b) | 65. (d) | 66. (c) | 67. (b) | 68. (b) | 69. (a) | 70. (d) |
| 71. (d) | 72. (a) | 73. (b) | 74. (a) | 75. (c) | 76. (b) | 77. (d) |
| 78. (b) | 79. (a) | 80. (c) | 81. (b) | 82. (d) | 83. (b) | 84. (a) |
| 85. (d) | 86. (a) | 87. (c) | 88. (d) | 89. (a) | 90. (c) | 91. (c) |
| 92. (a) |         |         |         |         |         |         |

**Work Book Exercise H**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (b)  | 2. (c)  | 3. (a)  | 4. (b)  | 5. (d)  | 6. (b)  | 7. (c)  |
| 8. (a)  | 9. (d)  | 10. (a) | 11. (c) | 12. (b) | 13. (d) | 14. (a) |
| 15. (d) | 16. (b) | 17. (c) | 18. (b) | 19. (d) | 20. (c) | 21. (a) |
| 22. (c) | 23. (d) | 24. (a) | 25. (c) | 26. (c) | 27. (b) | 28. (c) |
| 29. (c) | 30. (b) | 31. (c) | 32. (d) | 33. (a) | 34. (a) | 35. (b) |
| 36. (c) | 37. (a) | 38. (d) | 39. (d) | 40. (b) | 41. (b) | 42. (b) |
| 43. (d) | 44. (a) | 45. (b) | 46. (b) | 47. (b) | 48. (b) | 49. (d) |
| 50. (b) | 51. (d) | 52. (a) | 53. (a) | 54. (b) | 55. (a) | 56. (b) |
| 57. (c) | 58. (b) | 59. (b) | 60. (b) | 61. (b) | 62. (d) | 63. (b) |
| 64. (b) | 65. (a) | 66. (c) | 67. (b) | 68. (a) | 69. (b) |         |

**Review Exercise**

1. (a) 'continual' for 'continuous'
2. (c) Use 'beside'
3. (b) 'bring home to' is correct expression
4. (a) Use 'practise'
5. (d) Say 'from beginning to end'
6. (a) Say 'regardless'
7. (b) Say 'bring out'
8. (d) Say before for 'to'
9. (b) Say 'call in question'
10. (c) Say 'do not hold water'
11. (b) Say 'both his hands'
12. (c) Say 'are not always'
13. (a) Say 'hold on'
14. (b) Say 'kept on'
15. (b) Say 'carry on'
16. (c) Delete 'on'
17. (a) Say 'call at'
18. (a) Say 'come of'
19. (b) Say 'put up with'
20. (c) Say 'laid up with'
21. (d) No error
22. (c) Say 'look up' for 'see'
23. (b) Delete 'up'
24. (c) Say 'take off'
25. (b) Say 'made of' 'for made up with'
26. (b) Delete 'away'
27. (c) Delete 'from'
28. (b) Say 'switch on/turn on' for 'open'
29. (c) Say 'wipe away'
30. (b) Say 'on the fence'
31. (c) Use 'alumni' for 'alumnus'
32. (c) Say 'measure for measures'
33. (b) Say 'fiancee' for 'fiance'
34. (b) Say 'literati' for 'literatur'
35. (b) Say 'couturiere' for 'couturier'
36. (a) Say 'fallen out'
37. (b) Say 'at home'
38. (c) Say 'eat humble pie'
39. (b) Say 'turned deaf ear'
40. (c) Say 'out of the question'



8. Although he draws a reasonably good salary, he has a large family to support, and he finds it difficult to make both ends meet. No error  
 a b c d
9. While it is apparent that biotechnology offers significant benefits adequate attention has not been focussed to this vital area. No error  
 a b c d
10. Being a sunny day I decided to skip work and stay at home. No error  
 a b c d
11. We had to cancel our trip to Delhi because when we reached the railway station, the train left. No error  
 a b c d
12. Many a student has failed in the Mathematics test but Dilip has scored 100 per cent. No error  
 a b c d
13. The General with over 1000 officers and soldiers have surrendered to the Indian troops who are patrolling the valley. No error  
 a b c d
14. If he wrote the examination faster and had answered one more question he would have scored better. No error  
 a b c d
15. For decades there have been a debate on whether schizophrenia is a psychological condition. No error  
 a b c d
16. Mohan is the one who always finds fault with whatever Ram does. No error  
 a b c d
17. There is a need to revising Government policies on controlling unauthorized constructions. No error  
 a b c d
18. We know where it begins but we don't know that where it ends. No error  
 a b c d
19. The simplest method of welding two pieces of metal together in known as pressure welding. No error  
 a b c d
20. One of the important benefits of machine age is that our standard of life has improved. No error  
 a b c d



8. I have read an interesting book yesterday and underlined the new words  
 which are simple but effective. No error  
 a b  
 c d
9. He cannot be trusted with important secret informations;  
 otherwise I would have made him my assistant. No error  
 a b  
 c d
10. Is there further reasons you can give me for your failure to do as you promised?  
No error  
 a b c  
 d
11. During the final minutes of the speech the speaker requested to  
 the audience to have patience. No error  
 a b  
 c d
12. He is running temperature since last Friday and doctors suspect  
 that he is down with typhoid. No error  
 a b  
 c d
13. Travel agents around the world have come to rely on computers to book seats  
 in air flights or rooms in hotels, either today or a year from now. No error  
 a b  
 c d
14. She expressed her gratitudes to all those who had supported her. No error  
 a b c  
 d
15. When the meeting was over, he was very tired  
 so that he went home immediately. No error  
 a b  
 c d
16. Modern man must pull himself off together and act his part in life  
 as God's own most favourite creature. No error  
 a b  
 c d
17. There would be fewer follies, and happiness and good feeling all round  
 if we applied the scientific attitude for all our affairs. No error  
 a b  
 c d
18. Heera told to the teacher that she couldn't come for the rehearsals  
 the next day. No error  
 a b  
 c d
19. I am told that Anjali has been suffering from fever since ten days. No error  
 a b c  
 d
20. The armed forces have been working around the clock to bring a semblance of  
 normality in the flood affected areas. No error  
 a b  
 c d e

21. Just when Alfred Nobel's discoveries were beginning to bring him rewards,  
 which were to make him one of the richest man of his day,  
 an anti-Nobel campaign was started in France. No error
22. This is the second communication we have sent and we are much surprised  
 at receiving no answer. No error
23. Several guests noticed Mr. Sharma falling back in his chair  
 and gasping for breath. No error
24. Long life is good if one be happy and has friends. No error
25. His assistants have and are still doing excellent work for the organization. No error

### Exercise G

1. None of the diplomats at the conference was able either  
 to comprehend or solve the problem. No error
2. Rather than go with Amit, he decided to stay at home. No error
3. He always practices justice and cares for moral principles. No error
4. The whole block of flats including two shops were destroyed in fire. No error
5. He feels his troubles as much or even more than they. No error
6. Such rules do not apply to you and I. No error
7. It is a quarter to ten by my watch. No error
8. I like reading more than to play games. No error
9. The sum and substance of this poem is as follows. No error
10. The team was now in the field and about to take their place. No error
11. Perhaps you know that I have passed the examination in 1990. No error
12. The teacher kept advising us to work hard. No error

13. At a very young age he died with heart disease. No error  
 a b c d
14. The average age at which people begin to need eye-glasses are increasing. No error  
 a b c d e
15. He is trying to earn money for myself and him. No error  
 a b c d e
16. We Indians don't understand that driving vehicles require care and skill. No error  
 a b c d e
17. Indians are wedded in the democratic way of life in a peaceful manner. No error  
 a b c d e
18. The present President of the United States is thinking of  
 a b c  
becoming the most supreme leader of the world. No error  
 d e
19. Although the truck was moving very fast the driver stopped it  
 a b c  
in a skilfully manner. No error  
 d e
20. Although he achieved great success but he could not win fame. No error  
 a b c d e
21. I pretended as if interested in the conversation but really it was very boring. No error  
 a b c d
22. I don't usually like staying at hotels. but last summer we spent a few days  
 a b  
at a very nice hotel by sea. No error  
 c d
23. I will try to be on time but do not worry when I am late. No error  
 a b c d
24. The teacher remarked that they all had done it very badly. No error  
 a b c d
25. The train is supposed to arrive at 10 a.m. yesterday but it was an hour late. No error  
 a b c d

### Exercise D

1. Ritu will be surprised as she hears the news. No error  
 a b c d
2. I asked two persons the way to the station but none of them knew it. No error  
 a b c d
3. Despite of a good monsoon this year, the production of food grains in the  
 a b  
country did not go up. No error  
 c d
4. The last of the Mughal emperors of India was first imprisoned and  
 a b  
was later sent into exile by the British. No error  
 c d







**Exercise F**

1. Their offspring are all very inquisitive. No error  
a b c d
2. Their distress had no affect on him he was determined to have his pound of flesh.  
a b c  
No error  
d
3. Today should be saluted for the beginning of a new era. No error  
a b c d
4. Such considerations are secondary with our main aim  
a b  
of improving efficiency. No error  
c d
5. Ostensibly he was on a business trip but he spent most of time on the beach.  
a b c  
No error  
d
6. I can't do the fourth and fifth questions but I have done all the others. No error  
a b c d
7. After a year without defeat, the team now reigns over supreme  
a b  
as the finest in the country. No error  
c d
8. The question of finance is subsidiary to the question whether  
a b  
the project will be approved. No error  
c d
9. They've surcharged us 10 per cent on the price of the holiday  
a b  
because of a rise of air fares. No error  
c d
10. She's all sweetness and lightness provided you're doing what she wants. No error  
a b c d
11. Unemployment has reached a level that would have been not  
a b  
thinkable two years ago. No error  
c d
12. The smell of cooking told them there was a meal in the offing. No error  
a b c d
13. I told him outrightly what I thought of his behaviour. No error  
a b c d
14. You may be a bit upset, but it's really nothing else than unreasonable anxiety  
a b c  
No error  
d

15. She would resign sooner than take part in such dishonest business deals. No error  
 a b c d
16. Don't apply for that job: you're in danger of over-reaching yourself. No error  
 a b c d
17. Weather conditions were bad enough even to give a pause to  
 a b  
the most experienced climbers. No error  
 c d
18. We had a lot of difficulty to find the house. No error  
 a b c d
19. Patience as well as perseverance are necessary for success. No error  
 a b c d
20. The passer-by told us where was the marriage hall and even led us to it. No error  
 a b c d
21. The increase in consumption is directly proportional to the increase in income. No error  
 a b c d
22. In Singapore my brother-in-law with his wife were present at the function. No error  
 a b c d
23. Scarcely had I arrived than the train left. No error  
 a b c d
24. The reason why he was rejected was because he was too young. No error  
 a b c d
25. Teachers of various schools met to discuss about  
 a b  
how to improve the standard of English. No error  
 c d

### Exercise G

1. His tradition-bound attitude was a constant source of dissatisfaction  
 a b  
among the younger members of the family. No error  
 c d
2. The two first to arrive were the lucky recipients of a surprise gift. No error  
 a b c d
3. Adults suffering chicken pox can develop all kinds of complications. No error  
 a b c d
4. The well-known pianist had to practice for several hours a day  
 a b  
even after he rose to fame. No error  
 c d
5. The Prime Minister was asked to write a forward to the book. No error  
 a b c d
6. I must complement you on your good manners  
 a b  
and your impeccable behaviour. No error  
 c d





19. I and my brother live with our parents and work in the farm. No error  
 a b c d
20. Few scientists changed people's ideas as much as Charles Darwin with his  
theory of evolution. yet as a boy he showed little sign of becoming a great scientist.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d
21. The Prime Minister's good looks won him the election but he has still to prove  
that he's not a just pretty face. No error  
 a b c d
22. The two books are the same except for the fact that this  
has an answer in the back. No error  
 a b c d
23. He estimated his income tax bill by extrapolation over figures  
submitted in previous years. No error  
 a b c d
24. The modern office block sticks out like a sore thumb  
among the old buildings in the area. No error  
 a b c d
25. I have not been to New York before and neither my sister. No error  
 a b c d

### Exercise 1

1. A major contribution of Mathura sculptors  
of that period were the creation and popularization  
of the Buddha's image in human form. No error  
 a b c d
2. I had hoped that I would see you the other day but unfortunately I fell ill.  
 a b c d
3. Mahavira was an advocate of non-violence and vegetarianism,  
who revived and recognized the Jain doctrine  
and established rules for their monastic order. No error  
 a b c d
4. Microwaves are the principle carriers of television,  
telephone and data transmissions between stations on earth and between the  
earth and satellites. No error  
 a b c d



20. The fact that I do not like your fiance is neither here nor there  
 a b  
what matters is what you feel. No error  
 c d
21. "Here is coming my parents," exclaimed Parul  
 a b  
when she was anxious. No error  
 c d
22. The Minister has put a different glass on recent developments in Middle East.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d
23. She certainly has gone up in my estimation since she  
 a b  
told the Manager what she thought of him. No error  
 c d
24. The plans have been under discussion for a year now  
 a b  
but no decision has reached. No error  
 c d
25. Unless their paths diverged Lennon and McCartney wrote many hits together. No error  
 a b c d

## Exercise J

1. Amit needs marry a down-to-earth person who will organize his life for him.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d
2. As soon as the clock strike five, they down tools and off they go. No error  
 a b c d
3. A careful driver watches the road and goes slowly or quickly  
 a  
depending upon the condition of the road,  
 b  
the visibility and the traffic. No error  
 c d
4. Despite some past experiences with averse publicity  
 a b  
she is usually gracious to reporters. No error  
 c d
5. According to a spokesman for the government,  
 a  
the charge of corruption is a contemptuous lie  
 b  
inspired by political motives. No error  
 c d

6. If I would have arrived sooner, I would not have missed the fun. No error  
 a b c d
7. Unless two or more members object to him joining the club, we shall have to accept his application for membership. No error  
 a b c d
8. The prospective buyer of the house left the premises because he was asked to pay a considerable higher price than he could afford. No error  
 a b c d
9. You are being quite cynical when you say that the reason why we have such a large turnout is because we are serving refreshments. No error  
 a b c d
10. We can't hardly believe, that the situation is so serious as to justify such precautions as you have taken. No error  
 a b c d
11. Although I am playing cricket for more than three years I have not been able to score a century. No error  
 a b c d
12. If I have to make a choice between Aryan, Amit and Abhishek I think I'll select Aryan because of his commanding personality. No error  
 a b c d
13. Man's happiness or misery are in a great measure in his own hands. No error  
 a b c d
14. I feel bad about the present conflict because I do not know how to resolve it without hurting either you or him. No error  
 a b c d
15. Cows are amongst the gentlest of breathing creatures; none shows more passionate tenderness to their young. No error  
 a b c d
16. He is not the kind of a person who accepts such treatment passively; he is certain to seek revenge. No error  
 a b c d
17. The rise and fall of the tide are due to lunar influence. No error  
 a b c d
18. I was surprised and pleased when I was informed of me winning the contest. No error  
 a b c d
19. Many a man has succumbed to this temptation. No error  
 a b c d

20. The street lights come in at dusk and go off at dawn. No error  
 a b c d
21. Two of the mountain climbers were suffering with frost-bite. No error  
 a b c d
22. Although there was still a faint heart beat, the patient was  
 a b  
for all intents and purposes dead. No error  
 c d
23. When the rules for police procedure were laid up a lot of grey areas remained.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d
24. Anurag is eclipsed by his wife, who is much clever and  
 a b  
more amusing than he is. No error  
 c d
25. The company took a gamble by cutting the price of its products, and it paid up.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d

### Exercise K

1. The Indian farmers have been realing under the weight of illiteracy since time  
 a b c  
immemorial. No error  
 d
2. It's difficult to make friends with her; she's constantly in the offensive. No error  
 a b c d
3. I needed that money so desperately, it was like manna from heaven when it arrived.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d
4. I can't see much likelihood between him and his father. No error  
 a b c d
5. The world today is totally different than we have seen in the last century. No error  
 a b c d
6. Of all the teachers I have ever met, Dr. Subramaniam is the  
 a b  
most remarkable teacher. No error  
 c d
7. The moral of the entire novel is how money doesn't make you happy. No error  
 a b c d
8. That store hadn't hardly any of those goods. No error  
 a b c d

9. Meals will be served outside on the terrace, weather allowing. No error  
 a b c d
10. Everyone of the films you suggested are not worth seeing. No error  
 a b c d
11. The Secretary and the Principal of the college  
 a  
are attending the District Development Council Meeting at the collectorate. No error  
 b c d
12. No sooner had the hockey match started when it began to rain. No error  
 a b c d
13. The secretariat comprises of many air-conditioned rooms. No error  
 a b c d
14. It is high time he stood on his own two legs. No error  
 a b c d
15. You should avoid to travel in the rush hour. No error  
 a b c d
16. There is only one of his novels that are interesting. No error  
 a b c d
17. He denied to have been there. No error  
 a b c d
18. Knowledge of at least two languages are required to pass the examination.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d
19. The members of the opposition party in the Parliament shout upon the minister  
 a b  
if he makes a wrong statement. No error  
 c d
20. It is about time you have taken your children to school.  
 a b c
21. You will find it difficult to explain of your use of such offensive language. No error  
 a b c d
22. Because of the extenuating circumstances  
 a b  
the court acquitted him out of the crime. No error  
 c d
23. The carpet was badly stained to such an extent  
 a b  
that you could not tell its original colour. No error  
 c d
24. It is greatly to Amit's credit that he gave back the money he found;  
 a b  
his honesty does him for credit. No error  
 c d
25. The company has set off itself some stiff production goals for this year. No error  
 a b c d



13. The student flatly denied that he had copied in the examination hall. No error  
 a b c d
14. By the time you arrive tomorrow I have finished my work. No error  
 a b c d
15. The speaker stressed repeatedly on the importance of improving  
the condition of the slums. No error  
 a b c d
16. The captain with the members of his team are returning after a fortnight. No error  
 a b c d
17. After returning from an all-India tour I had to describe about it. No error  
 a b c d
18. The teacher asked his students if they had gone through  
either of the three chapters included in the prescribed text. No error  
 a b c d
19. Although, they are living in the country since they were married  
they are now moving to the town. No error  
 a b c d
20. Do you know how old were you when you came here? No error  
 a b c d

**Directions** Read each sentence to find out whether there is any grammatical mistake/error in it. The error if any will be in one part of the sentence. 'Mark the number of the part with error as your answer. If there is 'No error' marked (d). [CDS 2011]

21. Young school students now-a-days  
 a  
are subjected to intense pressure from peers and parents alike  
 b  
to fetch high marks in public examinations. No error  
 c d
22. The candidate's performance was not upto mark in the interview. No error  
 a b c d
23. After a successful tour of Europe my old parents returned back to India  
 a b  
on New Year's day. No error  
 c d
24. The commission set-up to submit a report  
 a  
about the reasons for the fall in educational standards  
 b  
could not complete its work even after two years. No error  
 c d
25. Though, death is a daily fact it is a wonder that people should behave to be immortal.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d

26. It would be more better If you could paint the gate green. No error  
 a b c d
27. Being his sole companion I was the one to who he naturally looked for help. No error  
 a b c d
28. He came to report that the work went very slowly  
 a  
because the X-ray machine was not working very good that morning. No error  
 b c d
29. The principal objected to them wearing short skirts at the function. No error  
 a b c d
30. I spent nearly four and half years at Harrow of which three were in the Army class.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d

**Directions** Read each sentence to find out whether there is any grammatical mistake/error in it. The error if any will be in one part of the sentence. 'Mark the number of the part with error as your answer. If there is 'No error' mark (d). [CDS 2012]

31. The scientist was seemed to be excited over the result of his experiment. No error  
 a b c d
32. The student could not answer the teacher when he was asked to explain  
 a b  
why he was so late that day. No error  
 c d
33. John could not come to school as he was ill from cold. No error  
 a b c d
34. Though, she has aptitude in Mathematics  
 a  
I won't allow her to take it up as a subject of study for the Master's Degree  
 b  
because I know the labour involved will tell upon her health. No error  
 c d
35. I am not familiar with all the important places in this town,  
 a b  
although I have been living here since two years. No error  
 c d
36. If I would be a millionaire I would not be wasting my time waiting for a bus. No error  
 a b c d
37. Until you begin to make a better use of your time, I shall not stop finding fault in you.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d
38. Neither of the two boys is sensible enough to do this job. No error  
 a b c d
39. They left their luggages at the railway station. No error  
 a b c d

40. You will get all the informations if you read this booklet carefully. No error  
 a b c d
41. She sang very well. isn't it? No error  
 a b c d
42. He is working in a bank in New Delhi for the past several months. No error  
 a b c d
43. There is no question of my failing in the examination. No error  
 a b c d
44. He is going everyday for a morning walk with his friends and neighbours. No error  
 a b c d
45. Her relatives could not explain to us why did not she come for the wedding  
as she was expected. No error  
 a b  
 c d

**Directions** Read each sentence to find out whether there is any grammatical mistake/error in it. The error if any will be in one part of the sentence. 'Mark the number of the part with error as your answer. If there is 'No error' mark (d). [NDA 2012]

46. None of the applicants have turned up for the interview on time. No error  
 a b c d
47. Her mother did not reply when I asked her why was she weeping. No error  
 a b c d
48. The oxygen content of Mars is not sufficient enough to support life as we know it.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d
49. He told his friends that each of them should be able to carry out the order oneself.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d
50. If the police would have worked in time the riot would not have occurred. No error  
 a b c d

## Exercise M

**Directions** In these questions, some parts of the sentences have errors and some have none. Find out which part of a sentence has an error and corresponding to the appropriate letter (a, b, c). If a sentence is free from error, your answer is (d). [CGL 2012]

1. I am glad that the news are good. No error  
 a b c d
2. The judge tested the accused to see if he would read English. No error  
 a b c d
3. I have neither visited or intend to visit hill stations. No error  
 a b c d

4. Kamala is not inferior than Geetha in her studies. No error  
 a b c d
5. Some of the people were standing on the street  
 a b  
watch cricket match, while others were sitting. No error  
 c d

**Directions** Each question in this section has sentence labelled as (a), (b) and (c). Read each sentence to find out whether there is any error in any of the part. If you find no error, your answer should be indicated as (d). [CDS 2012]

6. These are the ideas and ideals which have shaped  
 a b  
our economic thought in the past. No error  
 c d
7. India's problems are not similar with those of other countries in several ways. No error  
 a b c d
8. He had lost a ring in the sand and I helped him search for it,  
 a b  
but it was like a look for a needle in a haystack. No error  
 c d
9. The Ganges and it's tributaries constitute  
 a b  
one of the largest river-systems in the world. No error  
 c d
10. The sudden change of place effected her health. No error  
 a b c d
11. There are a number of people of every class and nationality  
 a b  
who doubts the truth of his statement. No error  
 c d
12. I like this book because the writer has explained the reasons of his failure truly.  
 a b c  
 No error  
 d
13. She is very weak in the subject and does not understand things  
 a b  
though the teacher explains her repeatedly. No error  
 c d
14. The speaker from the Fifth Avenue, who was a rich banker's wife  
 a b  
was simple and compassionate. No error  
 c d
15. There was no any piece of paper in my pocket as I had expected. No error  
 a b c d
16. Neither the teacher or the student is keen on joining the dance. No error  
 a b c d

17. My neighbour Deepak is a person that will help anyone. No error  
 a b c d
18. I'll ask that man which of the roads are the one we want. No error  
 a b c d
19. Now we have banks and people deposit there money there,  
and draw it out by cheques. No error  
 a b  
 c d
20. Apart government agencies, a number of private organisations too  
have been making use of satellites. No error  
 a b  
 c d
21. What sorts of a drug this is that no one seems to be able to predict its long-term effects  
with any certainty? No error  
 a b  
 c d
22. You will lose your dog if you did not tie it up. No error  
 a b c d
23. In view of the fact that almost all varieties of rural games and sports  
are fast gaining national importance it is desired  
that the rules of such games are strictly adhered. No error  
 a b  
 c d
24. More than one workmen was killed. No error  
 a b c d
25. The parties disagreed on the two first clauses in the agreement. No error  
 a b c d

**Directions** *In these questions, some parts of the sentences have errors and some have none. Find out which part of a sentence has an error to the appropriate letter (a, b, c). If there is no error, your answer is (d).* [CGL 2012]

26. Instead of being helpful he was being hindrance. No error  
 a b c d
27. Where have I to deposit fees? No error  
 a b c d
28. By the time she had finished her work I had nearly given up  
all hope of arriving at the party in time. No error  
 a b  
 c d
29. Some categorically suspected having seen the guard and thief together. No error  
 a b c d
30. He was not in position to state the speed the ship travelled. No error  
 a b c d

**Directions** In these questions, some part of the sentences have errors and some have none. Find out which part of a sentence has an error. If a sentence is free from errors, mark (d) as your answer. [SSC CGL 2012]

31. The NCC commandant along with his cadets are going to Delhi  
a b  
to participate in the Republic Day Parade. No error  
c d
32. World is producing enough for every citizen but still there is hunger and malnutrition  
a b  
and it is continuing year after year. No error  
c d
33. Many of the famous advertising offices are located at Madison Avenue. No error  
a b c d
34. Nature has denied us the power of closing our ears  
a b  
which she gave in respect of our eyes. No error  
c d
35. He did not succeed to get the job though he tried his level best. No error  
a b c d

**Directions** In this section, a number of sentences are given. The sentences are divided in three separate parts and each one is labelled (a), (b) and (c). Read each sentence to find out whether there is an error in any divided part. No sentence has more than one error. When you find an error in any one of the divided parts (a), (b) or (c), indicate your response on the Answer Sheet at the appropriate space. You may feel that there is no error in a sentence. In that case, (d) will signify a 'No error' response. Errors may be in grammar, word usage or idioms. There may be a word missing or there may be a word which should be removed. You are not required to correct the error. You are required only to indicate your response on the answer sheet. [NDA/NA 2012]

36. Let us bring this discussion to close. No error  
a b c d
37. Each of them have a different version of the crime. No error  
a b c d
38. I and Gopal went to the meeting together. No error  
a b c d
39. Latin is not only hard to write but also to read. No error  
a b c d
40. In most villages the roads are rough isn't it? No error  
a b c d
41. Despite of continuing pain she worked at her temporary summer job most of the week.  
a b c  
No error  
d
42. As soon the film started I developed an irritating headache. No error  
a b c d
43. He applied for an employment in an office. No error  
a b c d

44. Though we drove fast, the train left before we could reach the station. No error  
 a b c d
45. One Indian virtue that has impressed me greatly and touched me deeply  
 a b  
was the Indian people's freedom of rancour. No error  
 c d
46. Lack of winter rains have delayed the sowing of wheat crop in this area. No error  
 a b c d
47. The teacher let the boy off with a warning though he was convinced with his guilt.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d
48. Our first trip was the most interesting one. but our second one.  
 a b  
was even more interesting. No error  
 c d
49. He has been going to the office for a year now.  
 a b  
and he even can't understand its working. No error  
 c d
50. He boasts of having visited Europe many times. but he can neither speak English  
 a b  
nor he can speak French. No error  
 c d

## Exercise N

**Directions** Read each sentence to find out whether there is any grammatical mistake/error in it. The error if any will be in one part of the sentence. 'Mark the number of the part with error as your answer. If there is 'No error' mark (d). [NDA/NA 2013]

1. Suppose, if you were left alone to live on a desert island what would you do? No error  
 a b c d
2. He wondered that what would be the next move of his opponents  
 a b  
who had vowed to see him dislodged from power? No error  
 c d
3. The nation should be grateful to the armed forces for protecting them. No error  
 a b c d
4. I do not know what is he doing? to solve the problem No error  
 a b c d
5. For so many years it is almost his habit to go to the bed at 10 pm daily. No error  
 a b c d
6. He took down after his father. No error  
 a b c d
7. His honesty has never been called to question. No error  
 a b c d

8. I see her most weekends but not very often between. No error  
 a b c d
9. The chancellor was present on both occasions. No error  
 a b c d
10. The deliberations by the committee are completely confidential. No error  
 a b c d

**Directions** Read each sentence to find out whether there is any grammatical mistake/error in it. The error if any will be in one part of the sentence. 'Mark the number of the part with error as your answer. If there is 'No error' mark (d). [NDA 2013]

11. If you will work hard you will always succeed. No error  
 a b c d
12. She has been teaching the same lesson since five days. No error  
 a b c d
13. Many a boy were happy dancing at the victory of our cricket team in Australia. No error  
 a b c d
14. Imagine living with someone who never stops talk? No error  
 a b c d
15. I was shocked when he told me that the old woman died by cancer. No error  
 a b c d
16. To the men who worked so hard in the project, the news was profound disappointing.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d
17. Even though she lost the beauty contest, she was still more prettier than the other girls.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d
18. The novel is interesting, informative and it is easy to read. No error  
 a b c d
19. The differential attractions of the sun and the moon have a direct effect  
 a  
in the rising and falling of the tides. No error  
 b c d
20. Despite of the pills which are available many people still have trouble sleeping. No error  
 a b c d

**Directions** Read each sentence to find out whether there is any grammatical error in it. The error, if any, will be in one part of the sentence. The letter of that part is the answer. If there is no error, the answer is (d) (Ignore the errors of punctuation, if any). [CDS 2013]

21. I should do the same If I were in your place. No error  
 a b c d
22. He has been suffering with fever for the last six weeks. No error  
 a b c d
23. The examination begins from Monday next week. No error  
 a b c d

24. My father says that one should always be sincere to his duties. No error  
 a b c d
25. There has been a number of railway accidents during the last month. No error  
 a b c d
26. In spite of all efforts to eradicate malaria it still prevalent in many parts of India. No error  
 a b c d
27. It is only three days ago that he has arrived. No error  
 a b c d
28. He has lost all what I gave him. No error  
 a b c d
29. I have no news from him for a long time. No error  
 a b c d
30. Mahatma Gandhi's entire life was one unrelenting experiment on truth. No error  
 a b c d
31. As the thieves ran out of the bank they got into the gateway car  
 a b  
which was waiting with its engine running. No error  
 c d
32. He denied that he had not stolen my purse. though I was quite sure that he had. No error  
 a b c d
33. The media of films has been accepted by all as the most powerful force  
 a b  
that influences the younger generation. No error  
 c d
34. The French Embassy employs him regularly as he knows to speak French. No error  
 a b c d
35. How is it that neither your friend Mahesh nor his brother Ramesh  
 a b  
have protested against this injustice? No error  
 c d

**Directions** *In the following questions, some parts of the sentences have errors and some are correct. Find out which part of a sentence has an error and choose to the appropriate letter (a, b, c). If a sentence is free from error, your answer is (d).* [SSC CGL 2012]

36. In India working woman lead a life of dual responsibilities  
 a b  
if they are married and have a family. No error  
 c d
37. Greatly to our surprise we find the ringleader was lame. No error  
 a b c d
38. They have played a game last week. No error  
 a b c d
39. The teacher made the boys to do the sum all over again. No error  
 a b c d
40. Many overseas students attend colleges in the Great Britain. No error  
 a b c d

**Directions** Read each sentence to find out whether there is any grammatical mistake/error in it. The error if any will be in one part of the sentence. Mark the number of the part with error as your answer. If there is 'No error' mark (d). [CDS 2014]

41. He asked her that whether she knew  
 a b  
 what has happened last week when she was on leave. No error  
 c d
42. Until you do not go to the station to receive him I can hardly feel at ease. No error  
 a b c d
43. I did not know where they were going nor could I understand why had they left so soon.  
 a b c  
 No error  
 d
44. The distinguished visitor said that he had great pleasure to be with us for some time  
 a  
 and that the pleasure was all the greater  
 b  
 because his visit afforded him an opportunity to study the working of an institution of  
 c  
 such eminence as ours. No error  
 d
45. Please convey my best wishes back to your parents. No error  
 a b c d
46. The call of the seas have always found an echo in me. No error  
 a b c d
47. Hardly I had left home for Mumbai when my son who is settled in Kolkata arrived  
 a b  
 without any prior information. No error  
 c d
48. Now, it can be easily said that the population of this city is greater  
 a b  
 than any other city in India. No error  
 c d
49. It is difficult to explain why did Rajgopalachari resigned from the Congress in 1940.  
 a b c  
 No error  
 d
50. The boss reminded them of the old saying that honesty was the best policy,  
 a b  
 and told them that they had better be honest in their work. No error  
 c d
51. 'Gulliver's Travels' are the most fascinating adventure story that I have ever read.  
 a b c  
 No error  
 d

52. The teenager reassured his father at the station 'Don't worry, dad' I will pull on very  
nicely at the hostel.' No error  
a b  
c d
53. The way he's behaving in he'll soon spill the beans, I'm afraid. No error  
a b c d
54. Most of the developing countries find it difficult to cope up with the problems  
created by the sudden impact of technological progress. No error  
a b  
c d
55. People blamed him for being a coward person. No error  
a b c d
56. We swam up to the drowning man, caught hold of his clothes  
before he could go down again and pulled him out, safe to the shore. No error  
a b c d
57. Meena was so tired that she could not hardly talk to the guests for a few minutes.  
No error  
a b c  
d
58. If I was knowing why he was absent, I would have informed you. No error  
a b c d
59. He goes to office by foot. No error  
a b c d
60. The hundred-rupees notes  
that he gave them for the goods bought from them looked genuine  
but later they reliably learnt that the notes were all counterfeit. No error  
a b  
c d

**Directions** Read each sentence to find out whether there is any grammatical mistake/error in it. The error if any will be in one part of the sentence. 'Mark the number of the part with error as your answer. If there is 'No error' mark (d). [NDA/NA 2014]

61. The pile of books are missing. No error  
a b c d
62. Either he or I are wrong. No error  
a b c d
63. Please tell to him to do his work. No error  
a b c d
64. Though, he is good he is mischievous. No error  
a b c d
65. The thief hit me suddenly and hardly. No error  
a b c d
66. The number of books in our library is less. No error  
a b c d

67. The general said 'Soldiers do not fire till I will give the order'. No error  
 a b c d
68. Neither of the candidates are good. No error  
 a b c d
69. The machine is more efficient than any other equipments in the workshop. No error  
 a b c d
70. The tin deposits in that area would probably be exhausted in to near future. No error  
 a b c d

## Exercise ①

**Directions** Read each sentence to find out whether there is any grammatical mistake/error in it. The error if any, will be in one part of the sentence. Mark the number of the part with error as your answer. If there is 'No error', mark (e). [IBPS Clerk 2011]

- If you have made a mistake while filling up the form you should be informed the Income Tax Department immediately. No error  
 a b c d e
- Reading newspapers will help you in understand banking and business concepts. No error  
 a b c d e
- Government departments should share information with one another so that they records are up-to-date. No error  
 a b c d e
- The bank will decide unless Ashok is eligible for a loan based on his monthly salary. No error  
 a b c d e
- The power supplying in many states has been badly affected because of the shortage of coal. No error  
 a b c d e
- The government has many new schemes for people who want to start businesses in rural areas. No error  
 a b c d e
- The rate of interest offered by banks to customers who had savings bank accounts was decided by RBI early. No error  
 a b c d e
- To provide more such facility to its workers, the company is planning to build schools and parks in the township. No error  
 a b c d e

9. Every year this IT company conducts training programmes for employees so that  
 a b c  
they learn new skills. No error  
 d e
10. According to newspaper reports there is more internet users in small towns  
 a b c  
than in metros. No error  
 d e

**Directions** Read each sentence to find out whether there is any grammatical mistake/error in it. The error if any, will be in one part of the sentence. Mark the number of the part with error as your answer. If there is no error, mark (e). [IBPS Clerk 2011]

11. The cost of constructing houses are increased because of the high price of cement.  
 a b c d  
No error  
 e
12. According to the Twelfth Five Year Plan, India should invest one trillion dollars  
 a b c  
in infrastructure projects. No error  
 d e
13. To increase the selling of products in rural areas the company will hire  
 a b c  
over five hundred trainees. No error  
 d e
14. We have spent most of the profits that we earn last year on purchasing new computers.  
 a b c d  
No error  
 e
15. The government has promised to revise the pension scheme for bank  
 a b c  
staff since next year. No error  
 d e
16. If a software company sends its employees abroad to work for a foreign client, they  
 a b c  
pays them a daily allowance. No error  
 d e
17. As per RBI guidelines a bank account in which there is no transactions for  
 a b c  
two years is a dormant account. No error  
 d e
18. Farmers can easy get loans under the Kisan Credit Card Scheme which  
 a b c  
was launched by RBI. No error  
 d e
19. Today there are very few tigers left in India and many NGOs are  
 a b c  
working saving our national animal. No error  
 d e

20. People are willing to pay higher taxes so that the government can build better roads  
 and provide safe drinking water. No error  
 a b c  
 d e

**Directions** Read each sentence to find out whether there is any grammatical error or idiomatic error in it. The error, if any, will be in one part of the sentence. The number of that part is the answer. If there is 'No error', the answer is (e). (Ignore errors of punctuation, if any) [BPS PO 2012]

21. The government has asked individuals with income of over ₹ 10 lakh to  
 electronic file tax returns for the year 2011-2012,  
 something which was optional till last year. No error  
 a b  
 c  
 d e
22. The power tariff has already been increased twice in  
 the last 15 months and the Electricity Board had also  
 levied additional monthly charges to consumers. No error  
 a b  
 c  
 d e
23. Despite of curfew in some areas, minor communal incidents were reported  
 from different areas of the walled city. No error  
 a b c  
 d e
24. This comes at a time when fund allocation is been doubled. No error  
 a b c d e
25. As the prison will get an official telephone facility soon, the prisoners  
 won't have to make calls in descreet manner through smuggled mobile phones.  
No error  
 a b  
 c d  
 e
26. The area was plunged into darkness mid a wave of cheering and shouting  
 slogans like 'Save The Earth. No error  
 a b c  
 d e
27. The poll contestants approached the commission complaining that the hoardings  
 violated the code of conduct and influenced public perception. No error  
 a b  
 c d e
28. The country has adequate laws but problems arise when these are not  
 implemented in letter and spirit. No error  
 a b c  
 d e
29. The management feels that the employees of the organisation are  
 non-productive, and do not want to work hard. No error  
 a b  
 c d e

30. As far the issue of land encroachment in villages is concerned, people will  
 a b  
have to made a start from their villages by  
 c  
sensitising and educating the villagers on this issue. No error  
 d e

## Exercise P

**Directions** In the following questions, some parts of the sentences have errors and some are correct. Find out which part of a sentence has an error. If a sentence is free from error, your answer is (d). [SSC CGL 2014]

1. A year has been gone by since he left us and we never hear any news of him. No error  
 a b c d
2. Those who lay down their lives for the sake of others will surely  
 a b  
dwel fcorever in a world of bliss. No error  
 c d
3. It is true that a sense of duty may at time render it necessary for you to do that  
 a b  
which is displeasing to your companions. No error  
 c d
4. It is necessary for everything to prepare himself thoroughly in his early years for the tasks  
 a b  
that he will have to perform in life. No error  
 c d
5. The college library is not only equipped with  
 a b  
very good books, but also with the latest journals. No error  
 c d [SSC CPO 2014]
6. My brother-in-law who lives in Mumbai have come to stay with us. No error  
 a b c d [SSC MTS 2014]
7. Part of the research programme involved interviewing teenagers in inner city areas.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d [SSC CGL 2014]
8. I could not put up at a hotel because the board and lodging charges  
 a b  
were too expensive. No error  
 c d
9. For a long time I did not know who was sitting besides me because it was, so dark.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d [SSC MTS 2013]

10. Rabindranath Tagore was not the first Nobel Laureate without a university degree.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d [SSC MTS 2013]
11. The problem of soil erosion is one of serious imports in various countries. No error  
 a b c d
12. Don't depend on Raju for he will always lets you down. No error  
 a b c d [SSC MTS 2013]
13. The headmaster with all his senior teachers have come to attend the meeting.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d [SSC CGL 2013]
14. The redevelopment project is aimed not just providing good houses to shanty dwellers but also developing infrastructure around the major Mumbai localists. No error  
 a b  
 c d [SSC LDC 2013]
15. She regards negotiating prices with customers as her special expertise. No error  
 a b c d
16. We have been knowing each other since we were children. No error  
 a b c d [SSC CGL 2013]
17. Neither of the teams are sensible enough to do this task. No error  
 a b c d
18. If I was he I wouldn't accept the project. No error  
 a b c d
19. The teacher advised to the student to borrow a book from the library within three days.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d
20. I insisted on his going immediately. No error  
 a b c d
21. Gulliver's Travels' are indeed an interesting book. No error [SSC MTS 2013]  
 a b c d
22. The streets are so wet it should have rained last night. No error  
 a b c d
23. He is very angry on me because I failed to return his book. No error  
 a b c d
24. The train will not start until the guard will blow the whistle. No error  
 a b c d
25. Equator divides the Earth into two hemispheres. No error  
 a b c d
26. You have been doing your homework regularly? No error  
 a b c d [SSC FCI 2012]

27. I must find out some means to balance my budget. No error  
a b c d
28. Thank you, I am fine completely. No error  
a b c d
29. He asked me when could I finish the work. No error  
a b c d
30. Due to me being a new comer I was unable to get good house. No error  
a b c d
31. The circulation of the statesman is greater than that of any newspaper. No error  
a b c d
32. In the garden were the more beautiful flowers and silver bells. No error  
a b c d
33. The poet describes about the spring season No error  
a b c d
34. I am looking forward for the day of my wedding. No error  
a b c d
35. Can you cope up with all this work? He asked. No error  
a b c d
36. He served as President of the Lions Club since fifteen years. No error  
a b c d
37. That was the most unique opportunity he got in his life. No error  
a b c d
38. Mother Teresa asked a building where she and her workers could care for the poor.  
a b c  
No error  
d
39. When at last we got to the theatre  
a b  
the much publicised programme by the bollywood stars was begun. No error  
c d
40. Several prominent figures involved in the scandal are required to  
a b  
appear to the investigation committee. No error  
c d
41. Due to heavy work in the office I was unable to catch the five thirty train. No error  
a b c d
42. Hari was appointed leader of a group of young social workers  
a b  
that have accepted to help and develop the village in three months. No error  
c d
43. No sooner they had received the guests than they began entertaining them. No error  
a b c d



63. If you had told me I would have helped you solve the problem. No error  
 a b c d
64. He loved her despite of himself. No error  
 a b c d
65. When I went there Charles is playing a game of chess. No error  
 a b c d
66. The girls watched intently as the model applied her make up with a practiced hand.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d [SSC CPO 2011]
67. If he is a millionaire he would help the millennium project. No error  
 a b c d
68. The Prime Minister along with his Cabinet colleagues  
 a  
have been welcomed by the Chief Minister at a formal ceremony. No error  
 b c d
69. Several guests noticed Mr Sharma collapsing in his chair and gasping for breath.  
 a b c  
No error  
 d [SSC STG 2011]
70. This is our second reminder and we are much surprised  
 a b  
at receiving no answer from you. No error  
 c d
71. Most people are afraid of swine flu these days. No error  
 a b c d
72. I may not be able to attend to the function. No error  
 a b c d
73. He is residing here since 1983. No error [SSC SI 2011]  
 a b c d
74. At his return we asked him many questions. No error  
 a b c d
75. The chief guest entered into the room. No error  
 a b c d
76. Our success or our failure largely depend upon our actions. No error  
 a b c d [SSC MTS 2011]
77. The poor man poisoned him and his own children. No error  
 a b c d
78. The children's dog slept quietly in their uncle's house. No error  
 a b c d
79. John, I and Hari have finished our studies. No error  
 a b c d
80. Neither the mouse nor the lion were caught. No error  
 a b c d

# Sentence Improvement

---

The technique to attempt Sentence Improvement questions is a variation of Spotting errors. In this type of questions a sentence is given with a word or a phrase italicised, underlined or in bold letters. Under this sentence a number of substitutes are given as alternatives. An examinee is required to locate the error and find the correct answer from among the alternatives given. When the alternative has been substituted, the sentence becomes grammatically correct. If no other alternative is required, the answer is 'no improvement'.

However, this kind of questions can be attempted only if a student is comprehensively equipped with the knowledge of common errors, vocabulary, correct use of phrases and overall comprehension of rules of grammar. *For example*

1. If **I am** present there now, I would help him.  
(a) I was  
(b) I were  
(c) I have been  
(d) no improvement

As the sentence expresses regret for the present situation, subjunctive mood is required to be substituted for the italicised portion. Hence, the correct answer is (b).

2. They told me that they **had already sold** out all their belongings.  
(a) has sold already  
(b) have already been sold  
(c) had already sold  
(d) no improvement

Since the italicised portion requires no improvement, the correct answer is (d).

## Revision Exercise A

**Directions** In the following questions you will find sentences, part of which are bold. Compare the bold part of each sentence with the expressions (a), (b) and (c) given below. Choose the expression which is an improvement upon the bold part. If none of the three expressions improves the sentence, then your answer is (d).

- I am tired as **I am working** since 7 O' clock in the morning.  
 (a) I was working (b) I had been working  
 (c) I have been working (d) no improvement
- When it was dark they decided to **put at** an inn.  
 (a) put off with (b) put up at  
 (c) put out in (d) no improvement
- We should be bound by a code of conduct, **isn't it** ?  
 (a) Shouldn't we (b) is it  
 (c) aren't we (d) no improvement
- A highly improved variety of seeds **is** available to the farmer these days.  
 (a) are (b) will be  
 (c) has been (d) no improvement
- The boy **told his teacher** to explain the passage.  
 (a) asked his teacher (b) said to his teacher  
 (c) invited his teacher (d) no improvement
- What struck one most** was their kindness.  
 (a) What stroke one most (b) What struck one more  
 (c) What stroke one more (d) no improvement
- You should **avoid to make** such trivial mistakes.  
 (a) avoid making (b) avoid to have made  
 (c) avoid make (d) no improvement
- The teacher gave the students some **advice**.  
 (a) advices (b) advise  
 (c) advises (d) no improvement
- If you come across my umbrella anywhere, bring it to me, **can you**?  
 (a) isn't it (b) don't you  
 (c) will you (d) no improvement
- The floor of the hall was **covered by** a carpet.  
 (a) covered in (b) covered with  
 (c) covered upon (d) no improvement
- The passengers **are waiting** for the bus outside the bus stand at the main gate for long.  
 (a) were waited (b) were waiting  
 (c) have been waiting (d) no improvement
- Miss Pillai teaches very well, **isn't it**?  
 (a) didn't she (b) doesn't she  
 (c) wasn't it (d) no improvement
- He has **fallen out** with the girl he wanted to marry.  
 (a) fallen off (b) fallen in love  
 (c) fallen for (d) no improvement

14. They are social insects, **living in communities**, regulated by definite laws, each member of society bearing a well-defined and separate part in the work of a colony.
- (a) who are living in communities  
(b) living among a community  
(c) who lives with a community  
(d) no improvement
15. **If the room had been brighter**, I would have been able to read for a while before bed time.
- (a) if the room was brighter  
(b) if rooms are brighter  
(c) had the room brighter  
(d) no improvement
16. I shall be grateful to you if you are *of help to* me now.
- (a) help  
(b) would help  
(c) helped  
(d) no improvement
17. The reason **why he wrote the letter was because** he could not contact him over the phone.
- (a) why he wrote the letter was since  
(b) for which he wrote the letter because  
(c) why he wrote the letter was that  
(d) no improvement
18. The right-to-work implies the obligation on the part of the government to give a job to **all the unemployed**.
- (a) any of the unemployed  
(b) every unemployed  
(c) each of the unemployed  
(d) no improvement
19. Most donors would seriously **protest any** effort to infer from such limited data.
- (a) protest against  
(b) protest at  
(c) protest to  
(d) no improvement
20. I hope you vividly remember the premier of the film when **I, my wife and you** were present in the hall.
- (a) my wife, I and you  
(b) you, my wife and I  
(c) my wife, you and I  
(d) no improvement
21. With a thundering roar the huge rocket **soared up** from the launching pad.
- (a) flew up  
(b) went upwards  
(c) took on  
(d) no improvement
22. My **opinion for** the film is that it will bag the national award.
- (a) opinion to  
(b) opinion about  
(c) opinion on  
(d) no improvement
23. He **sent a word** to me that he would be coming late.
- (a) sent word  
(b) had sent a word  
(c) sent words  
(d) no improvement
24. It became clear that the strangers were heading **into** a serious disaster.
- (a) along  
(b) towards  
(c) for  
(d) no improvement
25. Young men and women should get **habituated** to reading and writing about current affairs.
- (a) used  
(b) prepared  
(c) trained  
(d) no improvement

26. While crossing the highway a five-year-old child was knocked **out** by a passing car.  
 (a) away (b) up  
 (c) down (d) no improvement
27. When he heard the rhetorical speech of the leader, he **was carried along** by his enthusiasm.  
 (a) was carried aloft (b) was carried down  
 (c) was carried away (d) no improvement
28. After the heavy rains last week, the water in the lake **raised another two feet**.  
 (a) rose another two feet (b) rised another two feet  
 (c) would raise another two feet (d) no improvement
29. When we saw him last, he **ran** to catch a bus.  
 (a) has run (b) had run  
 (c) was running (d) no improvement
30. I would like **to avail** a fifteen day holiday this summer.  
 (a) to avail of (b) to avail myself of  
 (c) to avail myself (d) no improvement

## Revision Exercise B

1. An overdose of any medicine is **enough fatal** to a plant as to a man.  
 (a) too fatal (b) so fatal  
 (c) as fatal (d) no improvement
2. There is nothing **quite miserable** than illiteracy in youth.  
 (a) as miserable (b) very miserable  
 (c) more miserable (d) no improvement
3. My brother-in-law has a house **for letting**.  
 (a) for letting out (b) to rent out  
 (c) to let (d) no improvement
4. Netaji was by far **a great man** of India.  
 (a) a very great man (b) too great a man  
 (c) the greatest man (d) no improvement
5. Hardly had he finished his lunch **than** the phone rang.  
 (a) when (b) then  
 (c) while (d) no improvement
6. A very horrifying serial **was broadcasted** ten days ago.  
 (a) has broadcast (b) was broadcast  
 (c) was broadcasting (d) no improvement
7. After a few hours the unconscious patient began to come **out**.  
 (a) round (b) on  
 (c) up (d) no improvement
8. As you are a born liar, **I don't believe** in what you say.  
 (a) I am not believing (b) I will not believe  
 (c) I will not be believing (d) no improvement
9. You must not forget to call me after you **reach** Delhi.  
 (a) will reach (b) will have reached  
 (c) have reached (d) no improvement

10. Rohan died **of a wound and not from cancer**.  
(a) from a wound and not of cancer  
(b) of a wound and not of cancer  
(c) from a wound and not from cancer  
(d) no improvement
11. All criminal attitudes must be **nipped at the bud**.  
(a) nipped on the bud  
(b) nipped in the bud  
(c) nipped off the bud  
(d) no improvement
12. Each village adopted by the club was **provided by** electric supply.  
(a) provided with  
(b) provided for  
(c) provided  
(d) no improvement
13. Every man must **look up** the future and find ways of providing for his needs.  
(a) look for  
(b) look to  
(c) look in  
(d) no improvement
14. When Seema was fourteen, she **sat** the entrance examination for Senior Secondary school.  
(a) sat in  
(b) sat at  
(c) sat for  
(d) no improvement
15. The mother could not help but **cry** at his behaviour.  
(a) crying  
(b) cry  
(c) but crying  
(d) no improvement
16. Galileo escaped **burning** for heresy because he apologized and withdrew his previous statements.  
(a) from being burnt  
(b) being burnt  
(c) from having been burnt  
(d) no improvement
17. Unless efforts are made and the population growth **stabilised** environmentalists predict a world-wide starvation by 2020 A.D.  
(a) stabilises  
(b) will stabilise  
(c) must stabilise  
(d) no improvement
18. It is the time the three years old **is learning** how to read and write.  
(a) was learning  
(b) has learned  
(c) learnt  
(d) no improvement
19. All the people are supposed **to take out** their shoes when they enter a place of worship.  
(a) to take off  
(b) to put off  
(c) to put away  
(d) no improvement
20. They served a **summons** on the Member of Parliament to appear in the court of law.  
(a) a summon  
(b) the summon  
(c) summons  
(d) no improvement
21. If I **had** money, I would send to you.  
(a) had had  
(b) have had  
(c) have  
(d) no improvement
22. This house is **belonging** to me for two years.  
(a) belongs  
(b) has been belonging  
(c) has belonged  
(d) no improvement
23. All my friends **are waiting** for me since morning.  
(a) have been waiting  
(b) were waiting  
(c) wait  
(d) no improvement

24. Amit is extraordinarily **clever at mimicking** his friends.  
 (a) clever for mimicking (b) clever in mimicking  
 (c) clever to mimick (d) no improvement
25. He has got many friends because he had got **much money**.  
 (a) enough money (b) a lot of money  
 (c) bags of money (d) no improvement
26. When the students **take their exams** they will have a holiday.  
 (a) took their exams (b) had taken exams their  
 (c) have taken their exams (d) no improvement
27. Shakespeare lived **for** the reigns of Elizabeth I and James I.  
 (a) since (b) in  
 (c) during (d) no improvement
28. She didn't believe in God **but** she went to temple regularly.  
 (a) and (b) yet  
 (c) however (d) no improvement
29. **I think myself** there is a third dimension which science has added to modern war.  
 (a) I myself think (b) to myself I think  
 (c) I to myself think (d) no improvement
30. Both Ramesh and his brother were invited but neither **accepted** our invitation.  
 (a) had accepted (b) had accept  
 (c) were accepted (d) no improvement

## Revision Exercise ④

1. If a person or an animal **eats** much his body changes the extra Carbohydrates and Proteins into fat and stores it.  
 (a) can eat (b) will eat  
 (c) eat (d) no improvement
2. Socrates was **one of the wisest man** that ever lived.  
 (a) one of the wisest men (b) one wise man  
 (c) one of the wise men (d) no improvement
3. We must not think that people belonging to **few castes** are superior to others.  
 (a) many castes (b) high castes  
 (c) some castes (d) no improvement
4. **If he studied more**, he would have been able to get a distinction.  
 (a) if he were studying more (b) If he had to study more  
 (c) if he had studied more (d) no improvement
5. He has very good command **on** English.  
 (a) over (b) in  
 (c) of (d) no improvement
6. The people in the village **are deprived** of essential commodities for the past two weeks.  
 (a) are being deprived (b) had been deprived  
 (c) have been deprived (d) no improvement
7. The farmer's way of life can be **contrasted** to that of the factory worker.  
 (a) contrasted with (b) contrasted against  
 (c) contrasted on (d) no improvement

8. The enthusiastic voters **were queuing up** out side the polling station since morning.  
(a) queued up (b) had queued  
(c) had been queuing up (d) no improvement
9. The brochure, which is being enclosed with the application form will give you **information** that you need.  
(a) the information (b) an information  
(c) informations (d) no improvement
10. Mr. Patel and the other dissident leaders **have taken shelter** at the Church last month after the authorities ordered their arrest.  
(a) took shelter (b) are taking shelter  
(c) had taken shelter (d) no improvement
11. He came to the cave uphill as the evening mist rose and drew a deep breath and looked **up the valley**.  
(a) across the valley (b) into the valley  
(c) down the valley (d) no improvement
12. The child spent two mornings with his parents and on the third he insisted **for accompanying** his grand mother on her rounds in the city.  
(a) in accompanying (b) on accompanying  
(c) to accompanying (d) no improvement
13. With the hubble space telescope astronomers expect to learn the age and size of the universe and to **probe** its origin, evolution and ultimate fate.  
(a) probe for (b) probe in  
(c) probe after (d) no improvement
14. The police **are** trying to solve the mystery.  
(a) is (b) was  
(c) has been (d) no improvement
15. We have been caught in a **rat race**.  
(a) rat race (b) the rat race  
(c) this rat race (d) no improvement
16. Can I exchange **my book for yours**?  
(a) my book with you (b) my book with yours  
(c) our book with your (d) no improvement
17. He **shook hand with me** after receiving the prize.  
(a) shook my hand (b) shook hands with me  
(c) shook my hands (d) no improvement
18. I would like that **you finish the project on time**.  
(a) you finished the project on time  
(b) that you would finish the project on time  
(c) you finishing the project on time  
(d) no improvement
19. There are sufficient funds to meet the requirements of the **entire schools** in our zone.  
(a) schools (b) all of the schools  
(c) all the schools (d) no improvement
20. It is **long since** I saw you last.  
(a) long ago (b) long time  
(c) long before (d) no improvement

21. The angry boys **were** arguing with the Principal since morning.  
 (a) have been (b) was  
 (c) has been (d) no improvement
22. He has been absent **for the past** few months.  
 (a) since the past (b) since the last  
 (c) for past (d) no improvement
23. You will be punished if **you will** come to my class.  
 (a) if you come (b) if you shall come  
 (c) if you came (d) no improvement
24. The good fortune of **being your student** in my younger days had helped me greatly in my life.  
 (a) of my being your student (b) of my having been your student  
 (c) of myself being your student (d) no improvement
25. A good house has been **alloted** to him.  
 (a) aloted (b) allotted  
 (c) allotted (d) no improvement
26. Before I met her I **had had** a poor opinion of her.  
 (a) have had (b) had  
 (c) did have (d) no improvement
27. Kindly let us know the time of your arrival **by return of post**.  
 (a) by the return of post (b) on return of post  
 (c) in return post (d) no improvement
28. I elected him President of the society.  
 (a) We (b) She  
 (c) John (d) no improvement
29. The children **are playing** in the garden since ten O'clock this morning.  
 (a) have been playing (b) have playing  
 (c) were playing (d) no improvement
30. We had better **send for** a policeman.  
 (a) sent for (b) send off  
 (c) send in (d) no improvement

## Revision Exercise ①

1. There is plenty of time **to catch** the train.  
 (a) to get (b) to reach  
 (c) to hold (d) no improvement
2. Hundreds of people were killed **by** the earth quake.  
 (a) in (b) from  
 (c) of (d) no improvement
3. He **insisted on** he was innocent.  
 (a) insisted on that (b) insisted that  
 (c) insists that (d) no improvement
4. John, who **studies** medicine at present, hopes to go abroad after graduation.  
 (a) is studying (b) will study  
 (c) studied (d) no improvement

5. The forest is infested **of** snakes.  
(a) by (b) with  
(c) off (d) no improvement
6. He is **having** three cars.  
(a) has (b) was  
(c) got (d) no improvement
7. He goes **to cinema** every Sunday.  
(a) a cinema (b) in cinema  
(c) to the cinema (d) no improvement
8. **Would** you find me absent, please don't forget to leave a message behind.  
(a) should (b) unless  
(c) as (d) no improvement
9. My mother always **finds fault** with the maid servant.  
(a) is finding faults (b) has found fault  
(c) find faults (d) no improvement
10. You ought not to **have gone** there, but you did.  
(a) to go (b) to have been  
(c) to be going (d) no improvement
11. Mary met with an accident, she did not just twist her leg, She **has broken it**.  
(a) had broken it (b) break it  
(c) broke it too (d) no improvement
12. What is needed **are** not large houses but small cottages.  
(a) was (b) were  
(c) is (d) no improvement
13. It was hard to believe that he **was dead** for two years.  
(a) has been dead (b) is dead  
(c) had been dead (d) no improvement
14. Do not take another step, else your life **will face** great peril.  
(a) might be thrown into (b) will be in  
(c) would be placed in great (d) no improvement
15. I **would gladly accompany** your sister if you had asked me.  
(a) would have gladly accompanied (b) was to have gladly accompanied  
(c) will gladly accompany (d) no improvement
16. He was likely to win the elections **by the sweeping majority**.  
(a) with the sweeping majority (b) by a sweeping majority  
(c) with sweeping a majority (d) no improvement
17. It is sheer folly to believe that you can improve the situation by **doing away** people.  
(a) doing with (b) doing away with  
(c) doing it to (d) no improvement
18. Governments in developing countries are under increasing pressure **for the recruiting and training** teachers to meet the demands of their rapidly expanding systems of education.  
(a) in the recruiting and training of (b) to recruit and train  
(c) so as to recruit and train (d) no improvement
19. Last evening I went to the Optician and bought **spectacles**.  
(a) a spectacle (b) two spectacles  
(c) a pair of spectacle (d) no improvement

20. As John dived off the spring board, he was horrified to see that the water **was drained from** the pool the night before.  
 (a) was drained (b) had drained away  
 (c) had been drained off (d) no improvement
21. The situation remained the same, rather got worse, **all his efforts notwithstanding**.  
 (a) with all his efforts notwithstanding (b) in spite of all his efforts notwithstanding  
 (c) for all his efforts not withstanding (d) no improvement
22. One can live and work in a town without being aware of the daily march of the sun across the sky without **never** seeing the moon and stars.  
 (a) seldom (b) hardly  
 (c) ever (d) no improvement
23. Being a handicapped youth, he **was put hard to** complete his military course.  
 (a) was hard put to (b) was put to it hard  
 (c) was hardly put to (d) no improvement
24. She **cut a sad figure** in her first performance on the stage.  
 (a) made a sorry figure (b) cut a sorry face  
 (c) cut a sorry figure (d) no improvement
25. **No sooner I saw** the tiger, than I ran away.  
 (a) As soon as I saw (b) No sooner I had seen  
 (c) No sooner did I see (d) no improvement
26. If **a person studied** this period of history, he would have wondered how such things had happened in India.  
 (a) a person would study (b) a person had studied  
 (c) a person could have studied (d) no improvement
27. According to the Planning Commission estimates by the year 2020, India **will have become** self-sufficient in petroleum products.  
 (a) should have become (b) shall have become  
 (c) would have become (d) no improvement
28. **All his answers** were correct.  
 (a) His all answers (b) His every answers  
 (c) All of his answers (d) no improvement
29. It was quite clear that the runner **could be able** to improve upon his own record.  
 (a) should be able (b) would be able  
 (c) will be able (d) no improvement
30. Within the last few years most of the fertile land **had undergone** Indigo cultivation.  
 (a) had underwent (b) has undergone  
 (c) was undergone (d) no improvement

## Revision Exercise ③

1. Hoping not to be disturbed, I sat down in my easy chair to read the book I **won as a prize**.  
 (a) I had to win as a prize (b) I have won as prize  
 (c) I had won as a prize (d) no improvement
2. Practically **every part** of the banana tree is used by man.  
 (a) each part (b) any part  
 (c) most part (d) no improvement

3. If you are living near a market place you should be ready **to bear** the disturbance caused by traffic.  
(a) to bear upon (b) to bear with  
(c) to bear away (d) no improvement
4. Please remind me **of posting** these letters to my relatives.  
(a) by posting (b) to post  
(c) for posting (d) no improvement
5. Whenever my students come across new words, I ask them **to look for them** in the dictionary.  
(a) to look it up (b) to look them up  
(c) to look at them (d) no improvement
6. His father won't be able to leave for Varanasi **until they have arrived**.  
(a) until they arrive (b) until they will have arrived  
(c) until they will arrive (d) no improvement
7. The company goes to great length to ensure that employees **can be comfortable** in their work environment.  
(a) are comfortable (b) will be comfortable  
(c) should be comfortable (d) no improvement
8. I knew he could not be trusted, he **let off the cat from the bag**.  
(a) let the cat out of the bag (b) let the cat from the bag  
(c) let the cat jump out of the bag (d) no improvement
9. The mother has not seen the child for several months and now eagerly **looks forward** to seeing him.  
(a) look a head to (b) look for  
(c) looks into (d) no improvement
10. I am definitely late. The train **will have left** the station by the time I reach there.  
(a) will leave (b) will be leaving  
(c) would have left (d) no improvement
11. It is unreasonable to **distort** the statement of a man simply because he does not agree to your opinions.  
(a) bend (b) denounce  
(c) discourage (d) no improvement
12. Scarcely had he entered the room **than** the phone rang.  
(a) as (b) when  
(c) while (d) no improvement
13. **As soon as** I walked into the building, I could hear the sound of a celebration in progress.  
(a) no sooner had (b) sooner than  
(c) hardly (d) no improvement
14. The teacher **saw through the game** and punished him.  
(a) saw into the game (b) saw at the game  
(c) saw the game (d) no improvement
15. His is the **least expensive** of the two cars.  
(a) last expensive  
(b) less expensive  
(c) lessen expensive  
(d) no improvement

16. The train **left** before I reached the station.  
(a) will have left (b) leaves  
(c) had left (d) no improvement
17. I do not take any cognizance **on** what he says.  
(a) about (b) for  
(c) of (d) no improvement
18. In a few minutes time when the clock strikes six, **I shall be waiting** for her for three quarters of an hour.  
(a) I would have been waiting (b) I would have waiting  
(c) I shall have waited (d) no improvement
19. **I have been writing** ten letters since breakfast.  
(a) am writing (b) have written  
(c) wrote (d) no improvement
20. If you **call to him** to explain your problem he will help you.  
(a) call in him (b) call at him  
(c) call upon him (d) no improvement
21. He enjoys nothing more than **drawing** swords with others.  
(a) playing (b) crossing  
(c) clashing (d) no improvement
22. This beautiful shirt which I bought for my birthday **costed** only ₹ 150.  
(a) was costed (b) cost  
(c) was cost (d) no improvement
23. I noticed that **the opposite man** was staring at me.  
(a) the man opposite (b) the opposed man  
(c) man opposite (d) no improvement
24. Do you think any man has a right **to break in** his neighbour's house ?  
(a) to break through (b) to break into  
(c) to break open (d) no improvement
25. They **are waiting** for her since morning.  
(a) have been waiting (b) were waiting  
(c) wait (d) no improvement
26. He asked me if I **can** help him to lift the box.  
(a) will (b) could  
(c) may (d) no improvement
27. This time my brother is coming to India for an **extending** stay.  
(a) extensive (b) entension  
(c) extended (d) no improvement
28. The man **who will score the maximum points** will carry the trophy.  
(a) who would score the maximum points. (b) who the maximum points scores  
(c) who scores the maximum points (d) no improvement
29. As soon as our plan is approved I shall favour **its** adoption.  
(a) its' (b) our  
(c) it's (d) no improvement
30. Our team is likely to lose unless all members learn to cooperate **with one other**.  
(a) one other with (b) with one another  
(c) with one and all (d) no improvement

## Revision Exercise ①

1. He plays cricket and tennis **also**.  
 (a) both (b) besides  
 (c) too (d) no improvement
2. The **need** of the hour was some fast action on the part of the leaders.  
 (a) needed (b) needing  
 (c) needs (d) no improvement
3. On seeing the lion she felt **too much** afraid.  
 (a) very much (b) excessively  
 (c) much (d) no improvement
4. No one needs to **worry** about me.  
 (a) will worry (b) need worry  
 (c) shall worry (d) no improvement
5. The teacher asked the intruder **who was he and why was he** occupying his chair.  
 (a) who he was and why he was  
 (b) who he was and why was he  
 (c) who he had been and why he had been  
 (d) no improvement
6. **It is no good to cry** over spilt milk.  
 (a) It is no good crying (b) It is of no good to cry  
 (c) It is of no good crying (d) no improvement
7. The actress said that it sometimes took her two hours **to put** her make-up.  
 (a) put over (b) put up  
 (c) put on (d) no improvement
8. He has been working **off and on** for several years to compile a dictionary  
 (a) on or off (b) on and off  
 (c) regularly (d) no improvement
9. He has been growing weaker and his life now **hangs like a thread**.  
 (a) hangs with threads (b) hangs by a thread  
 (c) hangs on a thread (d) no improvement
10. She did not ask **any question to him**.  
 (a) any question from him (b) him any question  
 (c) to him any question (d) no improvement
11. Rohit assured Sunita that he **would look at** her work while she was on leave.  
 (a) would overlook (b) would look after  
 (c) will look (d) no improvement
12. No sooner had the umpire given the batsman out **than the crowd** rushed into the field.  
 (a) but the people (b) when the crowds  
 (c) and the crowd (d) no improvement
13. Newton wanted to **know why did the apple fall** to the ground.  
 (a) know that why did the apple fall (b) know why the apple fell  
 (c) know that why the apple fell (d) no improvement
14. Having finished the book, **it was put away by him**.  
 (a) he put it away (b) it was being put away by him.  
 (c) it was putting away by him (d) no improvement

15. He was extremely unhappy because of **the inordinate delay**.  
(a) the inordinate delaying (b) the inordinate delay  
(c) the inordinately delaying (d) no improvement
16. She says she's already paid me back but I can't remember, so I'll have **to take her word**.  
(a) to take her word true (b) to take her at her word  
(c) to take her word for it (d) no improvement
17. When the clock struck six I **was waiting** here for an hour.  
(a) had waited (b) had been waiting  
(c) shall have waited (d) no improvement
18. When the soldier returned home after the war was over, his wife received him **with open hands**.  
(a) with open arms (b) with unfolded hands  
(c) with an open heart (d) no improvement
19. By the end of this century, scientists surely **have discovered** a cure for cancer.  
(a) are discovering (b) will have discovered  
(c) must discover (d) no improvement
20. **There is no more room** for you in this compartment.  
(a) There is no more accommodation (b) There is no more space  
(c) There is no more seat (d) no improvement
21. It is time **to immediately put the work in hand**.  
(a) to put the work immediately in hand (b) to put the work in hand immediately  
(c) There is no more seat (d) no improvement
22. When he arrived to attend the wedding of his brother, he **had been dressed** in dark suit.  
(a) dressed (b) was dressed  
(c) had dressed (d) no improvement
23. He gave **witness** at the sensational trial.  
(a) evidence (b) proof  
(c) advice (d) no improvement
24. As soon as our plan is approved I shall favour **its'** adoption.  
(a) our (b) it's  
(c) its (d) no improvement
25. I can always **count on him** in times of difficulty.  
(a) count at him (b) count on he  
(c) count him on (d) no improvement
26. The **car's doors are loose**.  
(a) car-doors are loose (b) The doors of the car are loose  
(c) door of car are loose (d) no improvement
27. Sunita told me that she would not mind **to stand and eating** the lunch.  
(a) to stand and eat (b) standing and eating  
(c) standing and eat (d) no improvement
28. We **did not see** this movie yet.  
(a) had seen  
(b) have not seen  
(c) have seen  
(d) no improvement

29. In many parts of our country villagers don't get water to drink **where** many urban people have water even to waste.  
 (a) besides (b) and  
 (c) whereas (d) no improvement
30. How did one earn money is more important than how much did **he earn** ?  
 (a) he earns (b) he has earned  
 (c) one earn (d) no improvement

### Revision Exercise G

- Each of our **students pay their** tuition fee at the beginning of the month.  
 (a) student pay their (b) students pays their  
 (c) students pays his (d) no improvement
- It is essential **to thoroughly clean** the machine after each use.  
 (a) to thorough clean (b) to clean thoroughly  
 (c) to clean thorough (d) no improvement
- I told him clearly that he **hadn't ought to do** that to me.  
 (a) ought not to have done (b) ought not done  
 (c) ought not has done (d) no improvement
- When a man has to give evidence he must **have a clean breast** of the whole matter.  
 (a) make a clean breast (b) obtain a clean breast  
 (c) possess a clean breast (d) no improvement
- The fast train **came a halt to before** crossing the bridge.  
 (a) came before to a halt (b) came to a halt before  
 (c) came to halts before a (d) no improvement
- Do you know **who she is going to marry**?  
 (a) who she is married? (b) who is she going to marry?  
 (c) whom she is going to marry? (d) no improvement
- I took the cycle **which he has bought yesterday**.  
 (a) that he bought yesterday (b) that he had bought yesterday  
 (c) that which he had bought yesterday (d) no improvement
- Even the people in authority agree that corruption has become **today's order**.  
 (a) the order of the day (b) the order of today  
 (c) the day's order (d) no improvement
- Most of the employees from Rajan's factory were not **inclination to using** the new technology.  
 (a) inclined to be use (b) incline to use  
 (c) inclined to use (d) no improvement
- All the allegations **levelled against** him were found to be baseless.  
 (a) levelled for (b) level with  
 (c) level against (d) no improvement
- He **did many mischiefs**.  
 (a) made many a mischiefs. (b) made much mischief  
 (c) committed many mischiefs (d) no improvement
- He has said so out of affection, do not take **it to heart**  
 (a) in heart (b) it in the heart  
 (c) by the heart (d) no improvement

13. What is needed **are** not large houses but small cottages.  
(a) were (b) was  
(c) is (d) no improvement
14. Sumit would **have been looked** smart in traditional dress.  
(a) was looked (b) would have looked  
(c) had looking (d) no improvement
15. People are **tiring** very soon in an activity which they don't like.  
(a) tried (b) trying  
(c) tired (d) no improvement
16. Is there any **place** for me to sit ?  
(a) space (b) room  
(c) area (d) no improvement
17. They felt humiliated because they realized that they **had cheated**.  
(a) had been cheated (b) have been cheated  
(c) were to be cheated (d) no improvement
18. Sri Pashupatinath is **worth seeing temple** in Kathmandu.  
(a) a temple worth seeing (b) a temple to see its worth.  
(c) one of the worth seeing temples (d) no improvement
19. The practical importance of the role of the industrialist in the establishment of the new order is greater than **the economist and the politician**.  
(a) of the economist and politicians  
(b) that of the economists and the politicians  
(c) that of the economist and the politician  
(d) no improvement
20. Poor Tom **laid** in the shade of a tree before he could not walk further.  
(a) lied (b) lain  
(c) lay (d) no improvement
21. Tell your leader that I grant him permission **of stay** in my kingdom.  
(a) about stay (b) to stay  
(c) for stay (d) no improvement
22. He could not **cope up with** the heavy rush.  
(a) cope upto (b) cope by  
(c) cope with (d) no improvement
23. He opened the letter without **caring** to read the address on the envelope.  
(a) thinking (b) bothering  
(c) worrying (d) no improvement
24. We were still standing in the queue when the **film was beginning**.  
(a) film begins (b) film had begun  
(c) film began (d) no improvement
25. It was so hot during the school parade that several of the weaker pupils passed **by**.  
(a) out (b) through  
(c) over (d) no improvement
26. When the train finally **came into** the station, the lonely traveller seemed relieved.  
(a) pulled in (b) will pull into  
(c) have pulled into (d) no improvement

27. The poor villagers **have waited** in the bitter cold for more than four hours now.  
 (a) has been waiting (b) had waited  
 (c) have been waiting (d) no improvement
28. He was so rude that they were compelled for **asking him to leave**.  
 (a) ask him to leave (b) to ask him to leave  
 (c) him to ask to leave (d) no improvement
29. Many accidents can be avoided if we **be careful**.  
 (a) might be careful (b) are careful  
 (c) were careful (d) no improvement
30. After the communal frenzy, slogans now **occupy** the air, exhorting the people to promote peace, harmony and amity.  
 (a) thicken (b) fill  
 (c) infest (d) no improvement

## Revision Exercise H

**Directions** *In the questions sentence/ a part of the sentence is bolded. Below are given alternatives, to the bolded part at (a), (b),(c). Which may improve the sentence. Choose the correct alternative. In case no improvement is needed your answer is (d).* [SSC CGL 2014]

1. I did not expect an award for **assisting him with help**.  
 (a) helping him (b) I had helped him  
 (c) I did help him (d) no improvement
2. She gave him a cup **that contained** tea.  
 (a) of (b) containing  
 (c) which had (d) no improvement
3. He has finished his lunch **now and was satisfied**.  
 (a) and is satisfied now (b) then and is satisfied  
 (c) now and is satisfied (d) no improvement
4. The two thieves divided the loot **between themselves**.  
 (a) among themselves (b) amongst themselves  
 (c) with themselves (d) no improvement
5. Tell me **what is his name?**  
 (a) what name is he (b) what name is his  
 (c) what his name is (d) no improvement
6. The two parties **broke off relation with one another** in 1980.  
 (a) broke away from the party  
 (b) parted ways  
 (c) broke down several times during the speech  
 (d) no improvement
7. He will revise it **when he is comes back**. [SSC CPO 2014]  
 (a) when he come back (b) on coming back  
 (c) when he came back (d) no improvement
8. The members of the student's union **did not give** the examination in protest.  
 (a) did not write (b) did not sit for  
 (c) did not show up for (d) no improvement

9. I feel out of sort today. [SSC MTS 2014]  
(a) I feel of sort today (b) I feel out of sorts today  
(c) I feel out of sort this day (d) no improvement
10. An increase in crimes against women **have been reported** in the newspapers recently.  
(a) are being reported (b) has been reported  
(c) has been written (d) no improvement
11. The labourers are **bent at** getting what is due to them. [SSC MTS 2014]  
(a) bent for (b) bent upon  
(c) bent in (d) no improvement
12. Although the goal-keeper was responsible for the defeat in the important football match, **nobody blamed him**.  
(a) still nobody blamed him (b) nevertheless nobody blamed him  
(c) yet nobody blamed him (d) no improvement
13. Would it be impertinent **to ask why you are leaving?** [SSC CGL 2014]  
(a) If asking why you are leave (b) for asking why you are leave  
(c) to asking why you are leave (d) no improvement
14. We **have to know that** we can achieve things slowly and gradually, not overnight.  
(a) would know that (b) had to know that  
(c) must know that (d) no improvement
15. Rajesh's **ability to use** the local language surprised me.  
(a) knowing of (b) confidence with  
(c) familiarity with (d) no improvement
16. I usually **did not take** sugar in my tea.  
(a) do not take (b) do not takes  
(c) have not taken (d) no improvement
17. **Unless they modify the system**, our future generations will suffer.  
(a) Unless the system is modified (b) Unless the system will be modified  
(c) If the system will not be modified (d) no improvement
18. **To contact the police he tried hard.** [SSC CGL 2013]  
(a) He tried to contact the police hard (b) He tried hard to contact the police  
(c) He tried the police to contact hard (d) no improvement
19. **Its not possible to judge a man by his appearance.**  
(a) It's not possible to judge a man by his appearance  
(b) Its impossible to judge a man by his appearance  
(c) Its' not impossible to judge a man by his appearance  
(d) no improvement
20. Mrs Roy **keeps an open house** on Saturday evening parties - you'll find all kinds of people there. [SSC LDC 2013]  
(a) welcomes all members (b) welcomes a select group of people  
(c) keeps the doors of the house open (d) no improvement
21. **The police cordoned off** the area after the explosion.  
(a) The police filled the whole area (b) The police isolated the area  
(c) The police checked everyone in the area (d) no improvement
22. The manager hesitated to assign the job to the newcomer as he was **wet behind the ears**.  
(a) drenched in the rain (b) unpunctual and lethargic  
(c) stupid and slow witted (d) no improvement

23. She is quite well now, **except a slight cold**.  
(a) except have a slight cold (b) except for a slight cold  
(c) excepting a slight cold (d) no improvement
24. **If I had the money I would have bought the house.** [SSC CGL 2013]  
(a) If I had the money I would have bought the house  
(b) If I have the money I would have bought the house  
(c) If I have had the money I would have bought the house  
(d) no improvement
25. **I wish I knew what is wrong with my car.**  
(a) I wish I had known what is wrong with my car  
(b) I wish I know what is wrong with my car  
(c) I wish I knew what was wrong with my car  
(d) no improvement
26. **Just before he died, Amar, who is a poet, wrote this poem.**  
(a) Just before he died, Amar, who was a poet, wrote this poem  
(b) Amar, who is a poet, wrote this poem just before he died  
(c) Amar wrote this poem, who is a poet, just before he died  
(d) no improvement
27. **The flag will be risen on the 15th of August.**  
(a) The flag will be roused on the 15th of August  
(b) The flag will be rising on the 15th of August  
(c) The flag will be raised on the 15th of August  
(d) no improvement
28. Sushma has wisdom, charm and **she has a good sense of humour**.  
(a) Sushma had a good sense of humour (b) a good sense of humour  
(c) has a good sense of humour (d) no improvement
29. They **knocked down** ten houses when they built the new road.  
(a) ruptured (b) removed  
(c) pulled down (d) no improvement
30. **The game is more important than the winning of the prize.**  
(a) The gaming is more important than the winning of the prize  
(b) The game is more important than winning the prize  
(c) Gaming is more important than winning of the prize  
(d) no improvement
31. The actor is out of jail **and not exactly a free man**, since he will be under house arrest for an additional 90 days.  
(a) but not exactly a free man (b) though exactly a free man  
(c) if not exactly a free man (d) no improvement
32. **Some players in the team suffer** from chronic knee problems and will not play in the next playoff.  
(a) Some player on the team suffered (b) Some player on the team suffer  
(c) Some players on the team suffers (d) no improvement
33. Students will have to **take the test** again tomorrow. [SSC MTS 2013]  
(a) apply the test (b) avoid the test  
(c) retain the test (d) no improvement
34. He was **given a lot of pressure** to sign the deed.  
(a) told (b) forced  
(c) asked (d) no improvement

35. **If he smokes less he might get rid of his cough.** [SSC CGL 2013]  
(a) If he smoked less he would get rid of his cough  
(b) If he had smoked less he might get rid of his cough  
(c) If he smokes less he might have got rid of his cough  
(d) no improvement
36. **He compensated the loss to me.**  
(a) He compensated the loss for me  
(b) He compensated me to the loss  
(c) He compensated me for the loss  
(d) no improvement
37. The climate of Karnataka **is cooler than** Tamil Nadu.  
(a) is cooler to (b) is cooler than of  
(c) is cooler than that of (d) no improvement
38. **I gave to** Sana the keys.  
(a) I gave (b) I gave to the  
(c) I gave the (d) no improvement
39. All nations must first **become agricultural strong.**  
(a) become agriculturally strong (b) become strong agriculture  
(c) become agriculture strong (d) no improvement
40. An orangutan's intelligence **is as superior to** that of man.  
(a) is more superior to (b) is superior to  
(c) is superior than that of (d) no improvement
41. As employees, we are **accountable for** our stakeholders.  
(a) accountable with (b) accountable to  
(c) accountable against (d) no improvement
42. **Recently he had insured for** a mediclaim policy.  
(a) He had recently insured for (b) Recently he insured for  
(c) He insured recently for (d) no improvement
43. Everyday, **we usually had** lunch at 1.30 pm.  
(a) we have had usually (b) we have usually  
(c) we usually have (d) no improvement
44. The young servant **goes about** with the old master.  
(a) moves around (b) goes around  
(c) tries to know more about (d) adjusts well
45. Complete the **formalities of registration** of the workshop before you enter the hall.  
(a) formalities of registration for (b) formalities to registering for  
(c) formalities to register for (d) no improvement
46. Officials were asked to examine the **likelihood** of providing banking facilities in the area. [SSC FCI 2012]  
(a) probability (b) possibility  
(c) profit (d) no improvement
47. **Being a rainy day**, we had to abandon the match.  
(a) Having been a rainy day (b) It being a rainy day  
(c) It been a rainy day (d) no improvement
48. Rahul gave me **an old scissor.**  
(a) an old scissors (b) a pair of old scissors  
(c) a pair of old scissor (d) no improvement

49. When **I shall go** to Agra, I shall visit the Taj Mahal.  
(a) have gone (b) shall travel  
(c) go (d) no improvement
50. The minister agreed **will answer** questions on television.  
(a) to answer (b) for answering  
(c) with answering (d) no improvement
51. Marconi **assembled** the radio.  
(a) discovered (b) made  
(c) invented (d) no improvement
52. He showed great **kind** to his friend.  
(a) kindness (b) kind heart  
(c) kind hearted (d) no improvement
53. Prefer tea **rather than** coffee.  
(a) and (b) over  
(c) to (d) no improvement
54. The carpenter did not keep his promise that the work **will** be finished before the end of the week.  
(a) can (b) could  
(c) would (d) no improvement
55. A lot depends on your early **brought up** in the family.  
(a) bringing (b) bring up  
(c) upbringing (d) no improvement
56. She **is loving** chocolate ice cream.  
(a) has loving (b) has been loved  
(c) loves (d) no improvement
57. James **had been teaching** at the university since June.  
(a) has been teaching (b) have been teaching  
(c) is teaching (d) no improvement
58. The passengers were afraid, but the captain **consoled** them that there was no danger.  
(a) guaranteed (b) assured  
(c) confided (d) no improvement
59. The injured man had been shot **from his back**.  
(a) in the back (b) to the back  
(c) by his back (d) no improvement
60. Luckily we've got **the few minutes** to spare.  
(a) quit few (b) a little  
(c) a few (d) no improvement

## Revision Exercise I

**Directions** In the questions, a sentence/part of the sentence is bolded. Below are given alternatives to the bolded part at (a),(b) and (c). Which may improve the sentence. Choose the correct alternative. In case no improvement is needed, your answer is (d). [SSC CGL 2012]

1. I **give key to** my wrist watch everyday.  
 (a) wind down (b) wound up  
 (c) wind (d) no improvement
2. We **did** a test when the lights went out.  
 (a) have been doing (b) were doing  
 (c) had done (d) no improvement
3. He **put up** a lot of work on that article.  
 (a) put in (b) put down  
 (c) put over (d) no improvement
4. **The man whom I thought was thoroughly honest proved to be a swindler.**  
 (a) The man whom I thought was thoroughly honest proved a swindler [SSC FCI 2012]  
 (b) The man who I thought was throughly honest proved to be a swindler  
 (c) The man to whom I thought was thoroughly honest proved to be a swindler  
 (d) no improvement
5. **No sooner had the dividend been declared, the notices were sent out.**  
 (a) The company had hardly declared the dividend till the notices were sent for mailing  
 (b) They had no sooner declared the dividend than the notices were sent out  
 (c) Hardly had the dividend been declared than the notices were sent out  
 (d) no improvement
6. **Riding upon his horse, the tiger jumped at him.**  
 (a) Riding upon the tiger, the horse jumped at him  
 (b) The tiger jumped at him while he was riding upon his horse  
 (c) The tiger rode at him while he was jumping upon his horse  
 (d) no improvement
7. **I in black and white must have your terms down.**  
 (a) I must have in black and white your terms down  
 (b) I must have your terms in black and white down  
 (c) I must have your terms down in black and white  
 (d) no improvement
8. **When we came out of the restaurant** it was half past eleven.  
 (a) When we had come out of the restaurant  
 (b) After we came out of the restaurant  
 (c) When we have come out of the restaurant  
 (d) no improvement
9. **What do you for go to school?**  
 (a) For what do you go to school (b) What do you go for to school  
 (c) What do you go to school for (d) no improvement
10. **He pleased the directors and this completed his report in good time.**  
 (a) He pleased the directors in good time and this completed his report  
 (b) He completed his report in good time and this pleased the directors  
 (c) He pleased the directors and completed his report and this in good time  
 (d) no improvement

11. **The courtiers used to tell the king how efficient an administrator he was all day long.**  
(a) The courtiers all day long used to tell the king how efficient an administrator he was  
(b) The courtiers used all day long to tell the king how efficient an administrator he was  
(c) The courtiers used to tell the king all day long how efficient an administrator he was  
(d) no improvement
12. **We had a grand party and we enjoyed very much.**  
(a) We had a grand party and enjoyed very much  
(b) We had a grand party to enjoy very much  
(c) We had a grand party and we enjoyed ourselves very much  
(d) no improvement
13. **He has for good left India.**  
(a) He has left for good India  
(b) He has left India for good  
(c) Good he has left India  
(d) no improvement
14. **We are credibly informed that the murderer has given himself up.**  
(a) We are informed that the murderer has credibly given himself up  
(b) We are informed that the murderer has given credibly him self-up  
(c) We are informed that credibly the murderer has given up himself up  
(d) no improvement
15. **We generally select one of the most intelligent student of the school for this award.**  
(a) one of the most intelligent students of the school  
(b) one of the intelligent most students of the school  
(c) one of the intelligent most student of the school  
(d) no improvement
16. **My friend lives in a nearby street whose name I have forgotten.**  
(a) the name of which  
(b) which name  
(c) of which name  
(d) no improvement
17. **He both won a medal and a scholarship.**  
(a) He won a medal and a scholarship both  
(b) Both he won a medal and a scholarship  
(c) He won both a medal and a scholarship  
(d) no improvement
18. **A taller Sikh rushed forward than any of his comrades.**  
(a) A Sikh, taller than any of his comrades, rushed forward  
(b) A Sikh rushed forward taller than any of his comrades  
(c) A Sikh rushed forward than any of his comrades taller  
(d) no improvement
19. **An author in the reign of Queen Anne who was famous lived in cottage.**  
(a) An author in the reign, who was famous, of Queen Anne lived in a cottage  
(b) In the reign of Queen Anne an author lived in a cottage who was famous  
(c) An author who was famous in the reign of Queen Anne lived in a cottage  
(d) no improvement
20. **In the absence of your support he would have lost the election.**  
(a) Lacking your support, he would have lost the election  
(b) But for your support, he would have lost the election  
(c) He would have lost the election, if you had not supported him  
(d) no improvement

21. **My uncle is enough rich to buy a car.**  
(a) My uncle is rich enough to buy a car  
(b) My uncle is richer enough to buy a car  
(c) My uncle is enough richer to buy a car  
(d) no improvement
22. **Walking along the road, an old man ran over the lorry.**  
(a) Walking along the road an old man ran behind the lorry  
(b) Running along the road, the lorry ran over an old man  
(c) The lorry ran over an old man walking along the road  
(d) no improvement
23. I visited my aunt just **before a week.** [SSC CPO 2011]  
(a) a week before (b) a week earlier  
(c) a week ago (d) no improvement
24. Foreigner often **come across with** serious difficulties in studying English.  
(a) have to come across with (b) come cross with  
(c) come across (d) no improvement
25. He **work hard** will succeed.  
(a) who will work hard (b) who will be working hard  
(c) who works hard (d) no improvement
26. The advancements in medical science **has provide** to be a boon for all of us. [SSC Steno 2011]  
(a) has proven (b) had proven  
(c) have proved (d) no improvement
27. He received **many praises** for his latest invention.  
(a) great many praises (b) much praise  
(c) too much praises (d) no improvement
28. **If was you** I would not sign the document. [SSC MTS 2011]  
(a) If I have been you (b) If I were you  
(c) If I had been you (d) no improvement
29. I prefer **to ride than to walk.**  
(a) ride to walk (b) riding than walking  
(c) riding to walking (d) no improvement
30. I have not finished **to paint** the door.  
(a) painting (b) the paint of  
(c) the painting (d) no improvement
31. She usually does not leave for work until she **finished** all her chores.  
(a) finishes (b) has finished  
(c) had finished (d) no improvement
32. The article should not **exceed more than** hundred words.  
(a) exceed beyond (b) exceed than  
(c) exceed (d) no improvement
33. Geeta said that she had never **viewed across** a book she liked so much.  
(a) come across (b) come through  
(c) come round (d) no improvement
34. I will be **giving** blood in the hospital at 9.00 am tomorrow.  
(a) exchanging (b) contributing  
(c) donating (d) no improvement

35. The fishermen **are fishing** in the sea from sunrise and will continue to do so until sunset.  
 (a) have fished (b) have been fishing [SSC Steno 2011]  
 (c) were fishing (d) no improvement
36. Which newspaper do you **subscribe for**?  
 (a) subscribe in (b) subscribe at  
 (c) subscribe to (d) no improvement
37. His friends could not tell me **why he did not come** to college yesterday.  
 (a) why had he not come (b) why did he not come  
 (c) why not had he come (d) no improvement
38. The festival **is likely to fall** in December.  
 (a) will likely to fall (b) will be likely to fall  
 (c) will likely for fall (d) no improvement
39. I asked the traveller **where is he going**.  
 (a) where he is going (b) where was he going  
 (c) where he was going (d) no improvement
40. The bird sanctuary is **about 10 kms inside** from Central Delhi.  
 (a) was about 10 kms over (b) is about 10 kms on top  
 (c) is about 10 kms away (d) no improvement
41. This is so **important** a matter.  
 (a) such an important (b) very important  
 (c) quite important (d) no improvement
42. When Rahul **handed his home work**, he forgot to give the teacher the last page.  
 (a) handed in his homework (b) handed down his homework  
 (c) hand over his homework (d) no improvement
43. Although he was tired he **went out for playing**.  
 (a) goes out for playing (b) goes out to play  
 (c) went out to play (d) no improvement
44. Rakesh **didn't knew** my address. [SSC LDC 2011]  
 (a) didn't known (b) didn't have  
 (c) didn't known (d) no improvement
45. It was quit clear that the runner **could be able** to improve upon his own record.  
 (a) will be able (b) should be able  
 (c) would be able (d) no improvement
46. The cheapest **electronic good** are manufactured in China.  
 (a) electronical good (b) electrical good  
 (c) electrical goods (d) no improvement
47. The stranger asked the little girl **what is her name**.  
 (a) what her name is (b) what her name was  
 (c) what was her name (d) no improvement
48. **Beside being** a poet, he is also famous singer.  
 (a) Besides being (b) Besides becoming  
 (c) Beside becoming (d) no improvement
49. All the students have **passed out of** the final examination.  
 (a) passed on (b) passed away  
 (c) passed (d) no improvement

50. This is one of the best novels **that have** appeared this year.  
(a) that (b) that has  
(c) to have (d) no improvement
51. You abstained **to speak** ill of others.  
(a) to speaking (b) from speaking  
(c) to speak to (d) no improvement
52. **If I hadn't seen the car coming**, I might have been killed.  
(a) If I had seen the car coming (b) When I hadn't, seen the car coming  
(c) Since I hadn't, seen the car coming (d) no improvement
53. If you can afford a new car, your business must be **looking up**.  
(a) flourishing (b) improving  
(c) increasing (d) no improvement
54. Obviously, he isn't **cut up** to be a good teacher. [SSC CGL 2010]  
(a) cut out (b) cut in  
(c) cut for (d) no improvement
55. Power got with money is the most **craved for** today.  
(a) sought after (b) wished for  
(c) welcomed for (d) no improvement
56. The brown shirt **wants washing**.  
(a) has to wash (b) is in need of a wash  
(c) requires a wash (d) no improvement
57. You are asked to copy this letter **word by word**.  
(a) word for word (b) word with word  
(c) word to word (d) no improvement
58. To get into the building' I'll **disguise** as a reporter.  
(a) disguise to be (b) disguise as one  
(c) disguise myself (d) no improvement
59. He denied that he **had not forged** my signature.  
(a) would not forge (b) had forged  
(c) did not forge (d) no improvement
60. I don't remember exactly **when did I go** to Simla last year. [NDA 2014]  
(a) when I did go (b) when I was going  
(c) when I went (d) no improvement
61. **Even** he worked hard, he failed in the examination.  
(a) Since (b) Although  
(c) For (d) no improvement
62. He was asked **to arbitrate with** two merchants in a dispute.  
(a) to arbitrate between (b) to arbitrate at  
(c) to arbitrate (d) no improvement
63. He **is resembling** his father.  
(a) has resembled (b) was resembling  
(c) resembles (d) no improvement
64. I **can be** grateful if you could write to me about it.  
(a) would be (b) should be  
(c) must be (d) no improvement

65. A majority of the passengers **could have been saved** if the driver had applied the brakes in time. [CDS 2014]  
 (a) had been saved (b) may have been saved  
 (c) could have saved (d) no improvement
66. He **is living** in this house for the past ten years.  
 (a) was living (b) had been living  
 (c) has been living (d) no improvement
67. The meeting has been **put off** to Friday next.  
 (a) put on (b) put out  
 (c) put for (d) no improvement
68. If you **will come with me** I shall be happy.  
 (a) come with me (b) had come with me  
 (c) came with me (d) no improvement
69. The police investigated **into the matter**.  
 (a) with the matter (b) at the matter  
 (c) the matter (d) no improvement
70. He is better than **any boy** in the class.  
 (a) any boys (b) all the boys  
 (c) any other boy (d) no improvement

## Revision Exercise 1

**Directions** Which of the phrases (a), (b), (c) and (d) given below each statement should be placed in the blank space provided so as to make a meaningful and grammatically correct sentence? If none of the sentences is appropriate, mark (e) i.e., 'None of the above' as the answer.

[ IBPS 2013]

- Overlooking the fact that water scarcity intensifies during summer, .....  
 (a) the government issued guidelines to all builders to limit their consumption to acceptable limits  
 (b) provision for rainwater harvesting has been made to aid irrigation in drought prone area  
 (c) the water table did not improve even after receiving normal monsoon in the current year  
 (d) many residential areas continue to use swimming pools, wasting large quantities of water  
 (e) None of the above
- Refuting the rationale behind frequent agitations for formation of separate states, a recent report .....  
 (a) proved that such agitations result in loss of governmental property  
 (b) indicated that the formation of small states does not necessarily improve the economy  
 (c) suggested that only large scale agitations have been effective in bringing out desired change in the past  
 (d) recommended dividing large states into smaller ones to improve governance  
 (e) None of the above
- Achieving equality for women is not only a laudable goal, .....  
 (a) political reforms are also neglected preventing women from entering legislatures and positions of power  
 (b) the problem is also deep rooted in the society and supported by it  
 (c) their empowerment is purposefully hampered by people with vested interests in all sections of the society  
 (d) it is also equally difficult to achieve and maintain for a long term  
 (e) None of the above

4. He has lost most of his life's earning in the stock market but .....
- (a) he still seems to be leading his life luxuriously and extravagantly
  - (b) he could not save enough to repay his enormous debts
  - (c) stock market is not a safe option to invest money unless done with caution
  - (d) experts have been suggesting to avoid investments in stock market because of its unpredictable nature
  - (e) None of the above
5. .... or else they would not keep electing him year after year.
- (a) The party leader gave a strong message to the mayor for improving his political style
  - (b) Owing to numerous scandals against the mayor, he was told to resign from the post immediately
  - (c) The mayor threatened the residents against filing a complaint against him
  - (d) The residents must really be impressed with the political style of their mayor
  - (e) None of the above

**Directions** *In the following questions, a sentence/part of the sentence is bolded. Below are given alternatives to the bolded sentence/part of the sentence at (a), (b) and (c) which may improve the sentence. Choose the correct alternative. In case no improvement is needed, your answer is (d)*

[SSC CGL 2013]

6. 20 km **are not a great distance** in these days of fast moving vehicles.
- (a) is not a great distance
  - (b) are not too great a distance
  - (c) aren't proving a great distance
  - (d) no improvement
7. **I adapted** a new method to solve the problem.
- (a) I have been adopted
  - (b) I adopted
  - (c) I was adapted
  - (d) no improvement
8. Hoping not to be disturbed, I sat down in my easy chair to read the book, **I won as a prize**.
- (a) I had won as a prize
  - (b) I have won as prize
  - (c) I had to win as a prize
  - (d) no improvement
9. If you are living near a market place you should be ready **to bear** the disturbances caused by traffic.
- (a) to bear upon
  - (b) to bear with
  - (c) to bear away
  - (d) no improvement
10. The more they earn, **more they spend** on luxury items.
- (a) more they should spend
  - (b) the more they spend
  - (c) the more they ought to spend
  - (d) no improvement
11. You have come here with a view **to insult** me.
- (a) to insulting me
  - (b) of insulting me
  - (c) for insulting me
  - (d) no improvement
12. A little rail-road engine **was employed by a station yard** for doing small pieces of work.
- (a) was made by a station yard
  - (b) was used at the station yard
  - (c) was employed at the station yard
  - (d) no improvement
13. **From an aesthetic point of view, the painting did not appeal to me.**
- (a) From the viewpoint of aesthetics, the painting did not appeal to me
  - (b) The painting had no aesthetic appeal to me
  - (c) From an aesthetic point of view, the painting had a little appeal to me
  - (d) no improvement

14. The child **tossed in bed** burning with fever.

- (a) The child in bed, burning with fever tossed  
 (b) The child burning with fever, tossed in bed  
 (c) The child burning in bed tossed with fever  
 (d) no improvement

**Directions** Look at the **bolded part** of each sentence. Below each sentence, three possible situations for the **bolded part** are given. If one of them (a), (b) or (c) is better than the **bolded part**, indicate your response on the Answer Sheet against the corresponding letter (a), (b) or (c). If none of these substitutions improves the sentence, indicate (d) as your response on the Answer Sheet. Thus, a 'No Improvement' response will be signified by the letter (d). [CDS 2013]

15. She told the children **not to stop** the work.

- (a) not stopping (b) don't stop  
 (c) not stopping of (d) no improvement

16. He succeeded **by dint of** hard work.

- (a) by means of (b) by doing  
 (c) by virtue of (d) no improvement

17. You **have read** that book for ages.

- (a) have been reading (b) had read  
 (c) will be reading (d) no improvement

18. The only bit of relief for the victims **has been** the increase in compensation.

- (a) were (b) have been  
 (c) was that they were given (d) no improvement

19. I am not sure why **she is wanting** to see him.

- (a) she wants (b) does she want  
 (c) is she wanting (d) no improvement

20. It has been two years **since I have seen him** last.

- (a) when I have seen him (b) since I had seen him  
 (c) since I saw him (d) no improvement

21. My neighbour **is having** two cars.

- (a) is owning (b) has  
 (c) is possessing (d) no improvement

22. His **flute recitation** was highly appreciated.

- (a) flute recital (b) flute play  
 (c) flute singing (d) no improvement

23. She must try **at making him understand**.

- (a) to make him to understand (b) to make him understand  
 (c) to make his understanding (d) no improvement

24. These are your new shoes, **aren't they?**

- (a) isn't it ? (b) is it so ?  
 (c) are they ? (d) no improvement

25. He told **to us everything he knew**.

- (a) us everything he knew (b) us everything he is knowing  
 (c) us everything he was knowing (d) no improvement

26. Unless you **do not work hard**, you won't succeed in life.

- (a) cannot work hard (b) will not work hard  
 (c) work hard (d) no improvement

27. As I am tired, I **cannot be able** to climb this hill now.  
 (a) can be able (b) will not be able  
 (c) will not be possible (d) no improvement

**Directions** Which phrase should replace the phrase given in *bold* in the sentence to make it grammatically correct? If the sentence is correct as it is given, then mark 'No correction required' as your answer. [IBPS Clerk 2013]

28. We asked her **that how she got** time to write all these books.  
 (a) that how did she got (b) that how she was getting  
 (c) how did she get (d) how she got  
 (e) no correction required
29. Studies in the past have shown that those who limit their activity span during the day in winters are **more likely to** suffer from depression.  
 (a) more likely for (b) mostly likely to  
 (c) most likely for (d) most likeliest for  
 (e) no correction required
30. In some cases, factors like low salary, lack of growth prospects and lack of motivation **compel all employee** to look for a change.  
 (a) compel those employees (b) compelling all employees  
 (c) compelling the employee (d) compel employees  
 (e) no correction required
31. Living with compassion and contributing to others lives **would helping us** add happiness to our lives as well.  
 (a) will helping us (b) will help us  
 (c) would helped them (d) will helped us  
 (e) no correction required
32. The **easiest way for** prevent stress caused by work or home pressures is to indulge in high levels of physical activity.  
 (a) easily way to (b) easier ways for  
 (c) easiest way to (d) easier way from  
 (e) no correction required

**Directions** Which of the phrases (a), (b), (c) and (d) given below each sentence should replace the word/phrase printed in *bold* in the sentence to make it grammatically correct? If the sentence is correct as it is given and no correction is required, mark (e) as the answer. [IBPS PO 2012]

33. US secretary of state made it clear that time **running out** for diplomacy over Iran's nuclear programme and said that talks aimed at preventing Tehran from acquiring a nuclear weapon would resume in April.  
 (a) runs out (b) was running out  
 (c) ran out (d) run  
 (e) no correction required
34. While the war of the generals **rage on**, somewhere in small town India, wonderful things are happening, quietly and minus fanfare.  
 (a) rage (b) raging  
 (c) rages on (d) raged on  
 (e) no correction required

35. According to WWF, the small Island nation of Samoa was **the first in switch off** its lights for Earth Hour.  
 (a) first to switch off (b) the first to switch off  
 (c) the first of switch off (d) first in switch off  
 (e) no correction required
36. The campaign is significant **because not just** the youths are directly appealing to the world but because their efforts challenge the chimera of normalcy in the area.  
 (a) not just because (b) just not because  
 (c) not just (d) because just  
 (e) no correction required
37. The doctor's association has threatened indefinite strike **support** of their teachers.  
 (a) on supporting to (b) to supporting  
 (c) for support (d) in support of  
 (e) no correction required

**Directions** In these questions, a part of the sentence is *bold* which may need improvement. Alternatives are given at (a), (b) and (c) below, one of which may be a better-option. In case of no improvement is needed your answer is (d). [SSC CGL 2012]

38. As soon as she noticed the workmen, she asked them **what they have been doing**.  
 (a) have done (b) had been  
 (c) are doing (d) no improvement
39. The boy wanted to ask his father for money, but waited for a **propitious** occasion.  
 (a) protective (b) prophetic  
 (c) prospective (d) no improvement

**Directions** In these questions a part of the sentence is *bolded*. Below are given alternatives to the *bolded* part at (a), (b), (c) which may improve the sentences. Choose the correct alternative. In case no improvement is needed your answer is (d). [SSC CGL 2012]

40. He has lost **his nearly all many** pets.  
 (a) all his nearly many pets (b) his many pets nearly all of them  
 (c) nearly all his many pets (d) no improvement
41. **Can any spiritually dead man be so as to have no love for his native country?**  
 (a) Can any dead man be so as to have no spiritual love for his native country?  
 (b) Can any man be so spiritually dead as to have no love for his native country?  
 (c) Can any native man be so dead as to have no love for his spiritual country?  
 (d) no improvement

**Directions** which of the phrases (a), (b), (c) and (d) given below should replace the phrase given in *bold* in the following sentence to make the sentence grammatically meaningful and correct. If the sentence is correct as it is and 'No correction is required', mark (e) as the answer. [SSC CGL 2012]

42. **In terms with** seating capacity, it is the third largest stadium in India.  
 (a) On terms with (b) As far as  
 (c) In respective to terms with (d) In terms of  
 (e) no correction required
43. That actor can double for the star, **if needed be**.  
 (a) if need (b) if need be  
 (c) while it is needed (d) whenever needed be  
 (e) no correction required

44. The 1982, Asian Games **brought about** a major change in India.  
 (a) brought after (b) bring after  
 (c) best resulted (d) bring around  
 (e) no correction required
45. Tourism, surely has suffered **given the huge** social unrest in the country.  
 (a) giving the huge (b) because to  
 (c) as the huge (d) taken the huge  
 (e) no correction required
46. **Combining** the ongoing crisis in Europe, the data does make a case for a pause in the rate hike.  
 (a) Together (b) Apart with  
 (c) Combined with (d) Combination of  
 (e) no correction required

**Directions** Look at the **bolded part of each sentence**. Below each sentence, three possible situations for the **bolded part** are given. If one of them (a), (b) or (c) is better than the **bolded part**, indicate your response on the Answer Sheet against the corresponding letter (a), (b) or (c). If none of these substitutions improves the sentence, indicate (d) as your response on the Answer Sheet. Thus a 'No Improvement' response will be signified by the letter (d). [CDS 2012]

47. More than one person **was killed** in the accident.  
 (a) were killed (b) are killed  
 (c) have been killed (d) no improvement
48. Not a word **they spoke** to the unfortunate wife about it.  
 (a) did they speak (b) they will speak  
 (c) they had spoken (d) no improvement
49. The poor villagers **have waited** in bitter cold for more than four hours now.  
 (a) have been waiting (b) had waited  
 (c) has been waiting (d) no improvement
50. If he **had** time he will call you.  
 (a) would have (b) would have had  
 (c) has (d) no improvement
51. **All, but her**, had made an attempt.  
 (a) All, but she (b) All, but her  
 (c) All, but her (d) no improvement
52. I am used to **hard work**.  
 (a) work hard (b) work hardly  
 (c) hard working (d) no improvement
53. They were working **as usually**.  
 (a) usual (b) as usual  
 (c) usually (d) no improvement
54. He is unlikely to come to the party. But **if he comes**. I would talk to him.  
 (a) if he would come (b) if he is to come  
 (c) if he will come (d) no improvement
55. The passengers **have formed** queue at the booking-counter much before a train arrives.  
 (a) formed (b) have been forming  
 (c) form (d) no improvement

56. You must complete this work **upto Sunday**.  
 (a) within Sunday (b) by Sunday  
 (c) until Sunday (d) no improvement
57. **If it will rain**, the match will be abandoned.  
 (a) If it rains (b) If it would rain  
 (c) If it rained (d) no improvement
58. I **have still to meet** a person who is perfectly satisfied with his job.  
 (a) am still to meet (b) am yet to meet  
 (c) might still meet (d) no improvement

**Directions** Which of the phrases (a), (b), (c) and (d) given below should replace the phrase given in **bold** in the following sentence to make the sentence grammatically meaningful and correct. If the sentence is correct as it is and 'No correction is required', mark (e) as the answer.

[IBPS Clerk 2011]

59. **One of the factor** for her failure is the lack of concern for others.  
 (a) The mainly factor (b) One off factor  
 (c) One of the factors (d) Among of the factor  
 (e) no correction required
60. In reality, this policy will only lead to more corruption in **an already corrupt** environment.  
 (a) a already corrupt (b) already an corrupt  
 (c) among already corrupt (d) overly corrupt already  
 (e) no correction required
61. **At currently estimates**, the cost of modernizing the airport would be more than double the earlier estimate.  
 (a) By currently estimates (b) On current estimates  
 (c) With estimates currently (d) At current estimates  
 (e) no correction required
62. **No of these** moves brought credit to the management.  
 (a) Any of these (b) Some of these  
 (c) None of these (d) These of all  
 (e) no correction required
63. India has **always been** primarily an agricultural country.  
 (a) always be (b) been towards  
 (c) become always (d) always become  
 (e) no correction required

**Directions** Look at the **bolded part** of each sentence. Below each sentence, three possible substitutions for the **bolded part** are given. If one of them (a),(b) or (c) is better than the **bolded part**, indicate your response on the Answer Sheet against the corresponding letter (a), (b) or (c). If none of the substitutions improves the sentence, indicate (d) as your response on the Answer Sheet. Thus, a "No improvement" response will be signified by the letter (d)

[CDS 2011]

64. I am afraid you two **are at cross purpose**.  
 (a) are at cross-purposes (b) are in cross-purposes  
 (c) are at a cross-purpose (d) no improvement
65. Take care **that you are not to be cheated**.  
 (a) that you will not be cheated (b) you will not be cheated  
 (c) that you are not cheated (d) no improvement

66. Can you tell me **where has he gone**?
- (a) where has gone he
  - (b) where gone has he
  - (c) where he has gone
  - (d) no improvement
67. **No sooner I heard the shot when** I rushed to the spot.
- (a) No sooner I heard the shot than
  - (b) No sooner did I hear the shot when
  - (c) No sooner did I hear the shot than
  - (d) no improvement
68. **Hardly he had entered** the station, when the train whistled.
- (a) Hardly had he entered
  - (b) Hardly he entered
  - (c) He hardly had entered
  - (d) no improvement
69. Let's go for a walk, **shouldn't we**?
- (a) shall we
  - (b) can we
  - (c) can't we
  - (d) no improvement
70. The teacher asked me **what is the matter**.
- (a) what was the matter
  - (b) what the matter is
  - (c) what the matter was
  - (d) no improvement

# Selecting the Correct Sentences

---

In this part of section each set comprises four alternatives where different forms of the same sentences are given on the same theme and subject. A student is required to select a sentence which is the most suitable in respect of meaning and grammatical correctness. The correct alternative is supposed to give the exact meaning besides being grammatically correct.

## Revision Exercise A

**Directions** Each set of the following sentences comprises four alternatives labelled as 'A', 'B', 'C' and 'D'. Candidate is required to select the most suitable alternative which conveys the exact meaning in accordance with the correct grammatical rules.

- To be intelligent is more essential than being hard working.
  - Being intelligent is more important than to be hard working.
  - For one to be intelligent is more important than being hard working.
  - Being intelligent is more essential than being hard working.
- If he wins the prize I would be very happy.
  - If he were to win the prize I'll be very happy.
  - If he was to win the prize I would be very happy.
  - If he were to win the prize I would be very happy.
- Our school had won the match if only we have concentrated.
  - Our school would have won the match if only we would have concentrated.
  - Our school would have won the match if only we had concentrated.
  - Our school had won the match if only we would have concentrated.
- My sister had left for America last week.
  - My sister has been left for America last week.
  - My sister has left for America last week.
  - My sister left for America last week.

5. A. It is high time he will start earning.  
B. It is high time he started earning.  
C. It is high time he starts earning.  
D. It is high time he has started earning.
6. A. It is a pleasure to see an alligator basking in the sunshine on a river bank as long as ninety feet.  
B. It is a pleasure to see an alligator as long as ninety feet basking in the sunshine on a river bank.  
C. It is a pleasure to see an alligator basking in the sunshine as long as ninety feet on a river bank.  
D. It is a pleasure to see an alligator basking as long as ninety feet in the sunshine on a river bank.
7. A. The villagers were enjoying winter evening around the fire.  
B. The villagers were enjoying winter evening around a fire.  
C. The villagers were enjoying winter evening around fire.  
D. The villagers were enjoying winter evening round fire.
8. A. When he had lost the book he searched it everywhere.  
B. When he lost the book he searched for it everywhere.  
C. When he lost the book he had searched for it everywhere.  
D. When he lost the book he searched it up everywhere.
9. A. This was the ideal book available in the market.  
B. This was most ideal book available in the market.  
C. This was a most ideal book available in the market.  
D. This was the most ideal book available in the market.
10. A. An one-eyed person was seen roaming about the streets.  
B. A one-eyed person was seen roaming about the streets.  
C. The one-eyed person was seen roaming about the streets.  
D. One-eyed person was seen roaming about the streets.
11. A. It is the duty of a house-wife to wait on the guest.  
B. It is the duty of a house-wife to wait for the guest.  
C. It is the duty of a house-wife to wait the guest.  
D. It is the duty of a house-wife to await the guest.
12. A. You are not working hard so your success is out of a question.  
B. You are not working hard so your success is out of the question.  
C. You are not working hard so your success is out of question.  
D. You are not working hard so your success is not out of the question.
13. A. You cannot win my confidence without ever believing me.  
B. You cannot win my confidence without never believing me.  
C. You cannot win my confidence without not believing me.  
D. You cannot win my confidence with ever believing me.
14. A. It is strange that you don't know swimming.  
B. It is strange that you don't know how to swim.  
C. It is strange that you don't know how to swimming.  
D. It is strange that you don't know to swim.

15. A. The receptionist must answer courteously the questions what are asked by the callers.  
 B. The receptionist must answer courteously the questions of all the callers.  
 C. The receptionist should answer courteously the questions of all the callers.  
 D. The receptionist courteously should answer the question of callers.
16. A. As he was sick, he was quite enthusiastic.  
 B. Since he was sick, he was quite enthusiastic.  
 C. As sick he was, he was quite enthusiastic.  
 D. Sick as he was, he was quite enthusiastic.
17. A. Both my brother and my sister love me but I should say that she loves me more than he.  
 B. Both my brother and my sister love me but I should say that she loves more than him.  
 C. Both my brother and my sister love me but I should say that she loves me more than him.  
 D. Both my brother and my sister love me but I should say that she loves I more than he.
18. A. I am an optimist and therefore I generally differ with you.  
 B. I am an optimist and therefore I generally differ from you.  
 C. I am an optimist and therefore I generally differ in you.  
 D. I am an optimist and therefore I generally differ you.
19. A. Neena can do it alone and no body else can do it.  
 B. Neena alone can do it and nobody else can do it.  
 C. Neena can alone do it and nobody else can do it.  
 D. Alone Neena can do it and no body else can do it.
20. A. Due to want of rain the wells have gone dry.  
 B. Because of want of rain the wells have gone dry.  
 C. For want of rain the wells have gone dry.  
 D. Owing to want of rain the wells have gone dry.

## Revision Exercise B

1. A. As the train which was my usual was missing I had to travel.  
 B. Having missed the train which I usually catch and had to travel.  
 C. I missed the train which I usually catch and had to travel by the next.  
 D. I missed not only the train which I usually catch but had to travel on the next.
2. A. He may be poor now but he appears to have been rich in his youth.  
 B. He may be poor now but he appears to be rich in his youth.  
 C. He may be poor now but he appears being rich in his youth.  
 D. He may be poor now but he appears to rich in his youth.
3. A. By June next year Ajay will be twenty years working in the office.  
 B. Till June next year Ajay will work in the office for twenty years.  
 C. Till June next year Ajay will work in the office for twenty years.  
 D. By June next year Ajay will have been working in the office for twenty years.

4. A. He went to the wholesale market and bought the cheap rations.  
B. He went to the wholesale market and bought the rations cheap.  
C. He went to the wholesale market and bought rations cheaply.  
D. He went to the wholesale market and cheaply bought rations.
5. A. I went yesterday to the bank to collect the pass book.  
B. I went to the bank to collect the pass book.  
C. Yesterday to collect the pass book I went to the bank.  
D. To collect the pass book yesterday I went to the bank.
6. A. The principal appointed him as a peon in the college.  
B. The principal appointed him a peon in the college.  
C. As a peon the principal appointed him in the college.  
D. The principal as a peon appointed him in the college.
7. A. The team is confident to win the match.  
B. The team is confident of winning the match.  
C. The team is confident of win the match.  
D. The team is confident for winning the match.
8. A. He is one of the best policeman who has ever lived.  
B. He is one of the best policeman who have ever lived.  
C. He is one of the best policemen that have ever lived.  
D. He is one of the best policeman that has ever lived.
9. A. My sister is the poet and the philosopher.  
B. My sister is a poet and the philosopher.  
C. My sister is a poet and a philosopher.  
D. My sister is a poet and philosopher.
10. A. Meena seldom or ever refuses an invitation.  
B. Meena seldom or always refuses an invitation.  
C. Meena seldom or never refuses an invitation.  
D. Meena seldom if never refuses an invitation.
11. A. There is no meaning in what you say.  
B. There is no meaning in that you say.  
C. There is no meaning as to what you say.  
D. There is no meaning that you say.
12. A. I hope you will excuse my leaving early.  
B. I hope you will excuse me leaving early.  
C. I hope you will excuse mine leaving early.  
D. I hope you will excuse leaving early.
13. A. I am ready to say this at her face.  
B. I am ready to say this on her face.  
C. I am ready to say this in her face.  
D. I am ready to say this to her face.
14. A. On account of shortage of time both of them cannot finish their work.  
B. On account of shortage of time none of them can finish their work.  
C. On account of shortage of time neither of them can finish his work.  
D. On account of shortage of time neither of them cannot finish his work.

15. A. Many problems are staring at my face.  
 B. Many problems are staring in my face.  
 C. Many problems are staring me into my face.  
 D. Many problems are staring me in my face.
16. A. The cow does not eat anything else. It lives on grass and leaves.  
 B. The cow does not eat anything else. It lives at grass and leaves.  
 C. The cow does not eat anything else. It lives in grass and leaves.  
 D. The cow does not eat anything else. It lives for grass and leaves.
17. A. As one of his arms was amputated on account of an accident, the company will compensate the loss to him.  
 B. As one of his arms was amputated on account of an accident, the company will compensate him for the loss.  
 C. As one of his arms was amputated on account of an accident, the company will compensate him in the loss.  
 D. As one of his arms was amputated on account of an accident, the company will compensate his loss.
18. A. Now I have cancelled my meeting though I was to go there.  
 B. Now I have cancelled my meeting though I have to go there.  
 C. Now I have cancelled my meeting though I am to go there.  
 D. Now I have cancelled my meeting though I was to have gone there.
19. A. She insisted on me to stay there.  
 B. She insisted on me staying there.  
 C. She insisted on my staying there.  
 D. She insisted in my staying there.
20. A. You can meet my father only when he goes to prison.  
 B. You can meet father only when he goes into prison.  
 C. You can meet my father only when he goes in prison.  
 D. You can meet my father only when he goes to the prison.

## Revision Exercise ④

1. A. Since the dividend being declared then the notices were prepared for mailing.  
 B. No sooner had the dividend being declared then the notices were prepared for mailing.  
 C. No sooner had the dividend been declared than the notices were prepared for mailing.  
 D. Scarcely had the dividend being declared than the notices were sent out.
2. A. He did not report for work today. He must has gone to the party.  
 B. He did not report for work today. He must have gone to the party.  
 C. He did not report for work today. He must go to the party.  
 D. He did not report for work today. He must had gone to the party.
3. A. She is not as wise as his brother.  
 B. She is not equally wise as his brother.  
 C. She is not as wise like his brother.  
 D. She is not so wise as his brother.

4. A. There will be a meeting in the long room at 4 o'clock of all the boys who play cricket and football.  
B. There will be in the long room at 4 o'clock a meeting of all the boys who play cricket and football.  
C. In the long room at 4 o'clock there will be a meeting of all the boys who play cricket and football.  
D. There will be a meeting of all the boys who play cricket and football at 4 o'clock.
5. A. The teacher made it a point to explain him the situation.  
B. The teacher made it a point to explain the situation him.  
C. The teacher made it a point explain him about the situation.  
D. The teacher made it a point to explain the situation to him.
6. A. The landlady made the servant to run to market to fetch her sweets.  
B. The landlady made the servant run to market to fetch her sweets.  
C. The landlady made to the servant to run to market to fetch her sweets.  
D. The landlady made to the servant run to market to fetch her sweets.
7. A. The audience looked at him while he spoke.  
B. The audience looked at him while he had spoken.  
C. The audience looked at him while he was speaking.  
D. The audience looked at him while he had been speaking.
8. A. Your answers are better than Mohan.  
B. Your answers are better than Mohan's.  
C. Your answers are better than those of Mohan's.  
D. Your answers are better than answered by Mohan.
9. A. Everybody knows that Rahul is nothing else but a cheat.  
B. Everybody knows that Rahul is nothing else than a cheat.  
C. Everybody knows that Rahul is nothing else except a cheat.  
D. Everybody knows that Rahul is nothing but for a cheat.
10. A. The manager asked him how he would avail this opportunity.  
B. The manager asked him how he would avail of this opportunity.  
C. The manager asked him how he would avail himself of this opportunity.  
D. The manager asked him how he would avail himself this opportunity.
11. A. The teacher asked the students to thoroughly study this book.  
B. The teacher asked the students thoroughly to study this book.  
C. The teacher asked thoroughly the students to study this book.  
D. The teacher asked the students to study thoroughly this book.
12. A. The important lessons are following.  
B. The important lessons are as following.  
C. The important lessons are as follows.  
D. The important lessons are as follow.
13. A. The teacher asked the student with a frown on his face to leave the room.  
B. The teacher asked with a frown on his face the student to leave the room.  
C. With a frown on his face the teacher asked the student to leave the room.  
D. The teacher asked the student to leave the room with a frown on his face.

14. A. The typists had corrected the errors had they known that the supervisors would have seen the report.  
B. The supervisors reprimanded the typists whom they believed had made careless errors.  
C. The errors in the typed reports were so numerous that they could hardly be over-looked.  
D. The typist would have corrected the errors had they known that the supervisor would see the reports.
15. A. He carried the little child and me on his shoulders.  
B. It was me that gave away the prizes.  
C. All what he said had no effect on me.  
D. They who did this thing should be punished.
16. A. In order to solve the murder case a C.B.I. officer is looking about the matter.  
B. It is high time that you went to bed.  
C. Though he looked innocent he turned into be cheat.  
D. The majority of the workers was divided on the issue.
17. A. You cannot win my confidence until you are sincere.  
B. When he lost the book he searched it everywhere.  
C. She was intent to harm her friends.  
D. I have not met my friend for the last five days.
18. A. He started to work hard lest he might starve in old age.  
B. He started working hard lest he should not starve in old age.  
C. He started to work hard lest he should starve in old age.  
D. He started working hard lest he should starve in old age.
19. A. If I had money I would have bought the new house tomorrow.  
B. If I had had money I would have bought a new house tomorrow.  
C. If I had had money I would buy a new house tomorrow.  
D. If I had money I would buy a new house tomorrow.
20. A. Taking my food I left for college.  
B. While I was taking my food I left for college.  
C. Having taken my food I left for college.  
D. Taking my food I shall leave for college.

### Revision Exercise ①

1. A. The harassed wife shot herself after bidding her husband the last good bye with a gun.  
B. The harassed wife with a gun shot herself after bidding her husband the last good bye.  
C. The harassed wife shot herself with a gun after bidding her husband the last good bye.  
D. With a gun the harassed wife shot herself after bidding her husband the last good bye.
2. A. He repeated the essay word by word.  
B. Being a rainy day he did not go out.  
C. She is senior but not more efficient than I.  
D. All his friends are very sincere.

3. A. She had waited long before her husband had returned.  
B. She waited long when her husband returned.  
C. She had waited long after her husband returned.  
D. She had waited long before her husband returned.
4. A. Even if intelligent he may be he can't succeed.  
B. If intelligent he may be he can't succeed.  
C. However intelligent he may be he can't succeed.  
D. Even intelligent he may be he can't pass.
5. A. Had I been you I would help him.  
B. If I had been you I would help him.  
C. Should I you I would help him.  
D. Were I you I would help him.
6. A. I realised later on that he cheated me.  
B. I had realised later that he cheated me.  
C. I had realised later that he had cheated me.  
D. I realised later on that he had cheated me.
7. A. They arrived early because they may not miss the train.  
B. They arrived early that they may not miss the train.  
C. They arrived early when they miss the train.  
D. They arrived early so that they might not miss the train.
8. A. I was rather impressed by the manner of the speaker than by his matter.  
B. I was impressed by the manner of the speaker rather than by his matter.  
C. Rather I was impressed by the manner of the speaker than by his matter.  
D. I was impressed rather by the manner of the speaker than by his matter.
9. A. He is vain as though he were a millionaire.  
B. She acted as if her mother asked her to do.  
C. She carried the child carefully lest it should not fall.  
D. I don't relish the food whose taste is sour.
10. A. The nature of my brother is the same as yours.  
B. This is one of those novels which is admired all over the world.  
C. He is such a friend that will sacrifice for me.  
D. I wish he comes everyday.
11. A. So quickly he returned from market that I was surprised.  
B. So quickly did he returned from the market that I was surprised.  
C. So quickly did he return from the market that I was surprised.  
D. So quickly did he return from the market that I had been surprised.
12. A. Would you help my brother I shall get you a decent job.  
B. Had you helped my brother I shall get you a decent job.  
C. Did you help my brother I shall get you a decent job.  
D. Should you help my brother I'll get you a decent job.
13. A. A summon has been served on him.  
B. A summons have been served on him.  
C. A summons has been served on him.  
D. A summon have been served to him.

14. A. You are not allowed to enter into the house.  
B. You are not allowed to enter the house.  
C. You are not allowed to enter in the house.  
D. You are not allowed to enter on the house.
15. A. Little care was needed to avert the accident.  
B. The little care was needed to avert the accident.  
C. A little care was needed to avert the accident.  
D. Less care was needed to avert the accident.
16. A. Could you please help me with any money?  
B. Could you please help me with some money?  
C. Would you please help me with any money?  
D. Can you please help me with some money?
17. A. Leena is a most intelligent student in the class.  
B. Leena is the most intelligent student.  
C. Leena is a most intelligent student.  
D. Leena is most intelligent student in the class.
18. A. She is more intelligent than any other boy in the class.  
B. She is more intelligent than any girl in the class.  
C. She is more intelligent than any other girl in the class.  
D. She is the most intelligent than any other girl in the class.
19. A. The teaching staff must take their lectures regularly when are asked by the Principal.  
B. The teaching staff would have taken lectures regularly had they known that the Principal would know about it.  
C. The teaching staff had taken the lectures regularly had they known that the Principal would come to know about it.  
D. Many irregularities were found in their lectures by the Principal and he could not be disregarded them.
20. A. Anita was sitting with her husband on the steps of the temple with her lap full of newspapers when Bunty and Bitto came up.  
B. Anita with her lap full of newspapers was sitting with her husband on the steps of the temple when Bunty and Bitto came up.  
C. With her lap full of newspapers Anita was sitting with her husband on the steps of the temple when Bunty and Bitto came up.  
D. Anita was sitting with her husband on the steps of the temple when Bunty and Bittu came up with her lap full of newspapers.

## Revision Exercise ③

1. A. As he is careless he will not hear what the teacher says.  
B. As he is careless he will not hear to what the teacher says.  
C. As he is careless he will not listen what the teacher says.  
D. As he is careless he will not listen to what the teacher says.
2. A. Shikha has been known by me for five years.  
B. Shikha is known by me for five years.  
C. Shikha is known to me for five years.  
D. Shikha has been known to me for five years.

3. A. As soon as holidays be begin than this beach will become very crowded.  
B. Since the holidays being started this beach becomes very crowded.  
C. As soon as the holidays begin, this beach will become very crowded.  
D. No sooner did the holiday begin than this beach will become very crowded.
4. A. You must aspire for the post according to your capability.  
B. You must aspire to the post according to your capability.  
C. You must aspire after the post according to your capability.  
D. You must aspire the post according to your capability.
5. A. A good teacher provides a student all the useful information.  
B. A good teacher provides to a student all the useful information.  
C. A good teacher provides a student with all the useful information.  
D. A good teacher provides to student with all the useful information.
6. A. Nobody will want to play in his team if he does not treat people kindly.  
B. If he will not treat people kindly nobody will want to play in his team.  
C. Nobody will treat people kindly if he does not want to play in his team.  
D. Nobody will want to treat people if he does not play in his team kindly.
7. A. The priest read to the dying man couplets from the scriptures.  
B. The priest read the dying man the couplets from the scriptures.  
C. The priest read for the dying man the couplets from the scriptures.  
D. The priest read the couplets from the scriptures for the dying man.
8. A. I do not understand to whom she is talking.  
B. I do not understand whom she is talking about.  
C. I do not understand who she is talking to.  
D. I do not understand whom she is talking.
9. A. The boy regretted that with a plastered leg he had spent a greater part of his vacation in the chair.  
B. The boy regretted that he had spent a greater part of his vacation in the chair with a plastered leg.  
C. With a plastered leg, the boy regretted that he had spent a greater part of his vacation in the chair.  
D. The boy with a plastered leg regretted that he had spent a greater part of his vacation in the chair.
10. A. In thirty-seven bomb blasts, fortunately only five lives were lost.  
B. In thirty-seven bomb blasts, only five lives were fortunately lost.  
C. In fortunately thirty-seven bomb blasts only five lives were lost.  
D. Fortunately, in thirty-seven bomb blasts, only five lives were lost.
11. A. She is annoyed with you. You ought not to tell her secrets to her mother.  
B. She is annoyed with you. You ought not to have told her secrets to her mother.  
C. She is annoyed with you, you ought to tell her secrets to her mother.  
D. She is annoyed with you. You ought to have told her secrets to her mother.
12. A. It is the best which she could do for me.  
B. It is the best what she could do for me.  
C. It is the best that she could do for me.  
D. It is best that she could for me.

13. A. The early age of three or four years, would begin our first recollection of the world, for many of us.  
B. Our first recollection of the world, for many of us, would be early age of three or four years.  
C. For many of us, our first recollection of the world is from the early age of only three or four years.  
D. For many of us, our first recollection of the world has been the early age of only three or four years.
14. A. Now-a-days singing is a very profitable profession.  
B. Now-a-days the singing is a very profitable profession.  
C. Now-a-days singing is very profitable profession.  
D. Now-a-days the singing is very profitable profession.
15. A. The report was useless to them because there was no needed information.  
B. Since the report lacked needed information would have not been useful to them.  
C. Since the report did not control the needed information it was not really useful to them.  
D. Since the report lacked the needed information it was of no use to them.
16. A. Men are rather impressed by beauty than by character.  
B. Men are impressed rather by beauty than by character.  
C. Rather men are impressed by beauty than by character.  
D. Men are impressed by beauty than by character.
17. A. So quickly she ran upstairs that she over took me.  
B. So quickly did she ran upstairs that she over took me.  
C. She ran so quickly upstairs that she had overtaken me.  
D. So quickly did she run upstairs that she overtook me.
18. A. He wasn't rich by any means, although he never turned down anyone who needed help.  
B. Being not rich by any means he never turned away, anyone who needed help.  
C. He wasn't rich by any means but he never turned away anyone who needed help.  
D. Since he wasn't rich by any means, he never turned away anyone who needed help.
19. A. Some people consider Karan the valorous hero of all the characters in the Mahabharata.  
B. Some people consider Karan as the most valorous hero of all the characters in the Mahabharata.  
C. Some people consider Karan the most valorous hero of all the other characters in the Mahabharata.  
D. Some people consider Karan the most valorous hero of all the characters in the Mahabharata.
20. A. Neither she comes nor she writes.  
B. Neither does she comes nor she writes.  
C. Neither does she come nor writes.  
D. Neither does she come nor does she write.

# ANSWERS

## UNIT VI

### 17. Spotting Errors

#### Exercise A

- (c) Say 'speaking' for 'to speak'
- (b) Say 'he could go'
- (a) Say 'One of the states'
- (a) Say 'had the inspector'
- (b) Say 'has been trying'
- (b) Say 'dry up'
- (a) Say 'laid' for 'lay'
- (d) No error
- (c) Use 'on' in place of 'to'
- (a) Add 'It' before 'being'
- (c) Say 'full marks'
- (c) Say 'the train had left'
- (c) Say 'full marks'
- (b) Use 'has' in place of 'have'
- (a) Say 'had written'
- (b) Say 'there has been'
- (d) No error
- (b) to revise
- (c) Remove 'that'
- (b) Remove 'together'
- (b) Say 'the machine age'
- (a) Add 'a' before 'sense'
- (b) Say 'estimates'
- (b) Use 'nor' for 'or'
- (a) Remove 'shall'
- (a) Say 'furniture has been'

#### Exercise B

- (d) No error
- (b) Say 'the Earth'
- (a) Say 'have we been'
- (c) say 'have' for 'had'
- (c) Say 'between' for 'among'
- (c) Say 'but also'
- (b) 'why I do not like him'
- (a) Remove 'have'
- (b) Say 'information'
- (a) Say 'Are there' for 'Is there'
- (b) Delete 'to'
- (a) Say 'has been running'
- (b) Use 'on air flights'
- (a) Say 'gratitude'
- (c) Remove 'that' after 'so'
- (a) Remove 'off'
- (c) Use 'to' in place of 'for'
- (a) Remove 'to'
- (c) Use 'for' in place of 'since'
- (a) Say 'round the clock'
- (b) Say 'men' for 'man'
- (d) No error
- (d) No error
- (d) No error
- (b) Say 'if one is happy'

#### Exercise C

- (d) No error
- (d) No error
- (a) Use 'practises'
- (b) Use 'was' for 'were'
- (b) Say 'as much as'
- (c) Say 'you and me'
- (d) No error
- (c) Say 'playing games'
- (d) No error
- (a) Say 'The team were'
- (b) Delete 'have'
- (b) Add 'on' after 'kept'
- (b) Use 'of' in place of 'with'
- (d) Use 'is' in place of 'are'

15. (c) Say 'for me'  
 17. (b) Use 'to' in place of 'in'  
 19. (d) Say 'in a skilful manner'  
 21. (b) Say 'I were interested'  
 23. (c) Say 'if' for 'when'  
 25. (a) Say 'was supposed'
16. (d) Say 'requires'  
 18. (d) Delete 'most'  
 20. (c) Remove 'but'  
 22. (c) Say 'by the sea'  
 24. (d) No error

**Exercise D**

1. (b) Say 'when' for 'as'  
 3. (a) 'despite' for 'Despite of'  
 5. (a) Say 'hardly had I'  
 7. (a) 'to' in place of 'in'  
 9. (c) 'playing' for 'play'  
 11. (d) No error  
 13. (c) 'neither' in place of 'either'  
 15. (d) No error  
 17. (a) 'hard up' in place of 'hard down'  
 19. (b) Say 'fiscal' for 'finacial'  
 21. (a) Say 'arrogant of' for 'arrogant for'  
 23. (c) 'than those of Britain' in place of 'than Britain'  
 24. (b) 'a sport' for 'sport'  
 25. (b) Use 'whom' in place of 'who'
2. (c) 'neither of them' in place of 'none'  
 4. (c) Say 'sent to exile'  
 6. (b) Say 'so high'  
 8. (c) Say 'which have appeared'  
 10. (d) No error  
 12. (c) 'until' in place of 'till for'  
 14. (c) 'Beauty' in place of 'Beauties'  
 16. (c) Use 'can' in place of 'could'  
 18. (c) in the afternoon  
 20. (a) 'have won' in place of 'won'  
 22. (b) 'to take only' in place of 'need only'

**Exercise E**

1. (b) 'any one' in place of 'either'  
 3. (c) 'that of any' in place of 'in any'  
 5. (c) 'thoroughly' for 'thorough'  
 7. (d) No error  
 8. (a) Use 'No other students' in place of 'No students'  
 9. (b) Use 'is' in place of 'are'  
 11. (c) Use 'has gone to Simla'  
 13. (a) Use 'told' in place of 'said'  
 15. (a) Say 'direct'  
 17. (b) Use 'that' in place of 'which'  
 18. (a) Use 'Not to speak of' in place of 'What to speak of'  
 19. (c) Say 'one end to other'  
 21. (a) drop 'hardly'  
 23. (d) No error  
 25. (b) Use 'means' for 'mean'
2. (c) 'were' in place of 'was'  
 4. (b) Remove 'more'  
 6. (a) 'to worry' in place of 'worrying'  
 10. (b) Use 'in the shade'  
 12. (c) Use 'it' in place of 'the same'  
 14. (a) Place 'not only' after 'saw'  
 16. (a) Drop 'on' after 'signed'  
 20. (c) Say 'door'  
 22. (c) drop 'more'  
 24. (a) Use 'off' for 'up'

**Exercise F**

1. (d) No error  
 3. (d) No error  
 5. (c) Say 'most of the time'  
 7. (b) Remove 'over'  
 9. (c) Use 'in' in place of 'of' before 'air'
2. (b) Use 'effect'  
 4. (b) Use 'to' for 'with'  
 6. (c) all the other questions  
 8. (d) No error

10. (a) 'light' in place of 'lightness'
11. (b) 'have not been' in place of 'have been not'
12. (e) that
13. (a) Use 'outright' in place of 'outrightly'
14. (c) Use 'but' for 'than'
15. (d) No error
16. (d) No error
17. (a) Say 'too bad' for 'bad enough'
18. (b) Use 'in finding' for 'to find'
19. (b) Use 'is' in place of 'are'
20. (b) Place 'was' after 'hall'
21. (d) No error
22. (c) Use 'was' in place of 'were'
23. (b) Use 'when' in place of 'than'
24. (c) Use 'that' in place of 'because'
25. (b) Drop 'about'

**Exercise G**

1. (c) Say 'to' for 'among'
2. (a) Use 'The first two'
3. (a) Use 'suffer from'
4. (b) Use 'practise' in place of 'practice'
5. (b) 'foreword' in place of 'forward'
6. (d) No error
7. (b) Use 'ascent' for 'assent'
8. (b) Use 'incredible' for 'incredulous'
9. (b) Use 'non-inflammable' for 'inflammable'
10. (a) Use 'Besides' for 'Beside'
11. (c) Use 'among'
12. (c) Use 'personnel' for 'personal'
13. (c) Say 'I like' for 'I am liking'
14. (b) Use 'ourselves' after 'enjoyed'
15. (a) Use 'hard' in place of 'hardly'
16. (c) Use 'fell' in place of 'had fallen'
17. (a) Use 'the car' before 'having'
18. (b) Say 'have won'
19. (c) Use 'orders' for 'order'
20. (c) Say 'catch up with'
21. (a) Use 'No sooner' for 'Scarcely'
22. (d) No error
23. (a) Use 'has eaten' in place of 'ate'
24. (c) 'a glimmer of hope'
25. (c) Say 'what I wanted'

**Exercise H**

1. (a) Use 'the' before 'flow'
2. (c) Use 'to' for 'with'
3. (b) Use 'leads' in place of 'lead'
4. (a) Remove 'the' before 'temple'
5. (a) Say 'passed' in place of 'have passed'
6. (c) Use 'doesn't it?' in place of 'isn't it?'
7. (a) Remove 'don't'
8. (b) Use 'how many' for 'how much'
9. (c) Use 'rises' in place of 'raises'
10. (b) Use 'is' for 'are'
11. (c) Use 'were' in place of 'was'
12. (c) Use 'me' for 'I'
13. (a) Say 'has taken'
14. (b) Use 'that' for 'if'
15. (c) 'yet' in place of 'still'
16. (a) Say 'If one stands on' for 'Standing on'
17. (c) Delete 'in'
18. (b) Use 'you bought' in place of 'you buy'
19. (a) Use 'my brother and I'
20. (a) Add 'did' after 'Darwin'
21. (c) Use 'just a' in place of 'a just'
22. (c) Say 'at the back'
23. (b) Use 'from' in place of 'over'
24. (d) No error
25. (c) Say 'neither has my sister been'

**Exercise I**

1. (b) Use 'was' in place of 'were'
2. (d) No error
3. (c) 'Its' for 'their'
4. (a) Use 'principal' in place of 'principle'
5. (a) Use 'A unit' in place of 'An unit'
6. (a) Use 'stood out' in place of 'stood off'
7. (b) Use 'are' in place of 'is'
8. (c) Use 'her and me' in place of 'she and I'
9. (d) No error
10. (c) Say 'something'
11. (c) Remove 'has'
12. (b) Say 'had seen' for 'saw'
13. (a) Say 'pillar' to 'post'
14. (c) Use 'paper over'
15. (b) say 'a story'
16. (c) Remove 'over'
17. (c) 'so' in place of 'likely'
18. (a) Add 'the' before 'turtle'
19. (d) No error
20. (c) Say 'That what you'
21. (b) No error
22. (b) Say 'gloss' for 'glass'
23. (a) Say has certainly
24. (c) Use 'has been reached'
25. (a) Use 'Until' for 'Unless'

**Exercise J**

1. (a) Say 'needs to marry'
2. (b) Use 'strikes' for 'strike'
3. (d) No error
4. (b) Use 'adverse' for 'averse'
5. (b) Use 'contemptable' for 'contemptuous'
6. (a) Say 'if I had arrived'
7. (b) Say 'to his joining'
8. (c) Use 'considerably' for 'considerable'
9. (c) Use 'that' in place of 'because'
10. (a) Remove 'not'
11. (a) Say 'I have been playing'
12. (d) No error
13. (b) Use 'is' in place of 'are'
14. (d) No error
15. (c) Say 'young ones'
16. (d) No error
17. (a) Use 'the' before 'fall'
18. (b) Use 'of my' in place of 'of me'
19. (d) No error
20. (b) Use 'come on' in place of 'come in'
21. (c) Say 'suffer from'
22. (c) Say 'to all intents and purposes'
23. (b) Say 'laid down'
24. (b) Use 'much cleverer'
25. (c) Say 'paid off'

**Exercise K**

1. (c) Use 'from time immemorial'
2. (c) Say 'on the offensive'
3. (b) add 'that' before 'it was'
4. (b) Say 'likeness' for 'likelihood'
5. (b) Say 'from what' for 'than'
6. (d) No error
7. (b) Say 'That how'
8. (b) 'did not have' for 'hadn't hardly'
9. (c) 'weather permitting' for weather allowing'
10. (c) Say 'is' for 'are'
11. (d) No error
12. (a) Say 'hardly' for 'No sooner'
13. (b) delete 'of'
14. (c) Remove 'two'
15. (b) Say 'travelling'
16. (c) Say 'that is'
17. (d) No error
18. (c) Say 'is required'
19. (b) Say 'shout at'
20. (b) Say 'took' for 'have taken'
21. (b) Remove 'of'
22. (c) Remove 'out'
23. (d) No error
24. (c) Remove 'for'
25. (b) Remove 'off'

**Exercise L**

1. (c) Replace 'recommended' by 'recommending'
2. (a) Replace 'discussing' by 'discussed'
3. (b) Replace 'ghosts' by 'ghost'
4. (c) Replace 'works' by 'work'
5. (a) Replace 'many' by 'much'
6. (a) Replace 'student' by 'students'
7. (b) Replace 'three-crores' by 'three crore'
8. (a) Replace preposition 'to'
9. (b) Replace 'to take' by 'taking'
10. (a) Replace 'carefully' by 'careful'
11. (a) Replace 'meeting' by 'going to meet'
12. (b) Replace 'is' by 'are'
13. (d) No error
14. (b) Replace 'have' by 'would have'
15. (a) Replace 'on' by 'over'
16. (b) Replace 'are' by 'is'
17. (c) Replace 'had' by 'have'
18. (c) Replace 'either' by 'all'
19. (a) Replace 'are' by 'have been'
20. (a) Replace 'do' by 'did'
21. (b) Replace 'alike' by 'equally'
22. (b) Add 'the' between 'upto' and 'mark'
23. (b) Remove 'back'
24. (b) Replace 'for' by 'of'
25. (b) Replace 'that' by 'why'
26. (a) Remove 'more'
27. (b) Replace 'who' by 'whom'
28. (b) Replace 'very good' by 'well'
29. (b) Replace 'to them' by 'their'
30. (a) Replace 'nearly' by 'about'
31. (a) Remove 'was'
32. (d) No error
33. (c) Replace 'from' by 'with'
34. (a) Use 'for' in place of 'in'
35. (c) Use 'for' in place of 'since'
36. (a) Use 'were' in place of 'would be'
37. (c) Use 'with' in place of 'in'
38. (d) No error
39. (b) Use 'luggage' in place of 'luggages'
40. (b) Use 'information' in place of 'informations'
41. (c) Use 'didn't she' as sentence is in the past tense
42. (a) Replace 'is' by 'has been'
43. (b) Use 'failure' in place of 'failing'
44. (a) Use 'goes' in place of 'is going'
45. (b) Use 'she did not' in place of 'did not she'
46. (a) Replace 'have' by 'has'
47. (c) Replace 'why was she' by 'why she was'
48. (d) No error
49. (c) Replace 'oneself' by 'themselves'
50. (a) Replace 'would have' by 'had'

**Exercise M**

1. (c) Put 'is' in place of 'are'
2. (b) Put 'could' in place of 'would'
3. (b) Put 'nor' in place of 'or'
4. (b) Put 'to' in place of 'than'
5. (c) Put 'watching' in place of 'watch'
6. (b) replace 'have' by 'had'
7. (a) Replace 'with' by 'to'
8. (b) Remove 'for'
9. (b) Replace 'it's' by 'its'
10. (b) Replace 'of' by 'in'
11. (c) Replace 'doubts' by 'doubt'
12. (d) No error
13. (d) No error
14. (d) No error
15. (a) Remove 'any'
16. (b) Replace 'or' by 'nor'
17. (d) No error
18. (c) Replace 'are' by 'is'
19. (b) Replace 'there' by 'their'
20. (a) Use 'from' after 'apart'
21. (a) Use 'sort' in place of 'sorts'
22. (c) Replace 'did' by 'would'
23. (b) Replace 'fast' by 'fastly'

24. (b) Replace 'workmen' by 'workman'  
 25. (b) Use 'two' after 'first'      26. (c) Put 'a' in place of 'being'  
 27. (b) Replace 'have I' by 'I have'      28. (a) Remove 'had'  
 29. (a) Put 'have' before 'categorically'      30. (c) Put 'had' after 'ship'  
 31. (b) Replace 'are' by 'is'      32. (d) No error  
 33. (c) Replace 'located at' with 'situated in'  
 34. (c) Put 'has given' in place of 'gave'  
 35. (b) Replace 'to get' by 'in getting'  
 36. (c) Put 'conclusion' in place of 'close'  
 37. (b) Put 'has' in place of 'have'      38. (a) Use 'Gopal and I'  
 39. (c) Put 'hard' before 'to'      40. (c) Put 'aren't they' in place of 'isn't it'  
 41. (a) Remove 'of'      42. (a) Put 'as' after 'soon'  
 43. (a) Replace 'an employment' by 'a job'  
 44. (a) Use 'the train had left'      45. (c) Replace 'was' by 'is'  
 46. (b) Replace 'have' by 'has'      47. (c) Replace 'with' by 'of'  
 48. (a) Remove 'the'      49. (c) Replace 'and' by 'but'  
 50. (c) Remove 'he can'

**Exercise N**

1. (a) Remove 'suppose'      2. (a) Remove 'that'  
 3. (a) Replace 'greatful' by 'grateful'      4. (b) Use 'what he is doing'  
 5. (c) Remove 'the'      6. (b) Remove 'down'  
 7. (c) Use 'into' for 'to'      8. (c) Use 'in between' in place of 'between'  
 9. (c) Use 'at' in place of 'on'      10. (a) Use 'of' in place of 'by'  
 11. (a) Remove 'will'      12. (c) Replace 'since' by 'for'  
 13. (a) Use 'boys' in place of 'boy'      14. (c) Use 'talking' in place of 'talk'  
 15. (c) Use 'of' by 'by'      16. (c) Use 'Profoundly' in place of 'Profound'  
 17. (b) Remove 'more'      18. (c) Remove 'it'  
 19. (b) Use 'on' in place of 'in'      20. (a) Remove 'of'  
 21. (a) Use 'would' in place of 'should'      22. (b) Use 'from' in place of 'with'  
 23. (b) Use 'on' in place of 'from'      24. (c) Use 'one's' in place of 'his'  
 25. (a) Use 'have' in place of 'has'      26. (b) Use 'it is still prevalent'  
 27. (c) Remove 'has'      28. (b) Use 'that' in place of 'what'  
 29. (b) Use 'of' in place of 'from'      30. (b) Use 'an' in place of 'one'  
 31. (c) Use 'which was left with its engine on'  
 32. (a) Remove 'not'      33. (c) Use 'young' in place of 'younger'  
 34. (c) Add 'how' before 'to'      35. (c) Use 'has' in place of 'have'  
 36. (b) Replace 'woman' by 'women'      37. (b) Replace 'find' by 'found'  
 38. (a) Remove 'have'      39. (b) Remove 'to'  
 40. (c) Remove '-s' from 'students'      41. (a) Remove 'that'  
 42. (a) Remove 'do not'      43. (c) Use 'why they had' by 'why had they'  
 44. (c) Add 'that of' before 'ours'      45. (c) Remove 'back'  
 46. (b) Use 'has' in place of 'have'  
 47. (a) Replace 'hardly I had' with 'hardly had I'  
 48. (c) add 'that of' after 'than'      49. (b) Use 'resign' in place of 'resigned'  
 50. (b) Use 'is' in place of 'was'      51. (a) Use 'is' in place of 'are'

52. (c) Use 'carry on' in place of 'pull on'  
 53. (d) Replace 'behaving' with 'behaving in'  
 54. (c) Replace 'impact' by 'arrival'      55. (c) Remove 'person'  
 56. (a) Use 'got' in place of 'caught'      57. (b) Remove 'not'  
 58. (a) Use 'I knew' in place of 'I was knowing'  
 59. (c) Use 'on foot' in place of 'by foot'  
 60. (a) Use 'rupee' in place of 'rupees'      61. (b) Use 'is' in place of 'are'  
 62. (c) Use 'am wrong' in place of 'are wrong'  
 63. (b) Remove 'to'      64. (b) Add 'yet' before 'he'.  
 65. (c) Replace 'hardly' with 'hard'      66. (d) No error  
 67. (c) Remove 'will'      68. (b) Replace 'are' with 'is'  
 69. (c) Replace 'equipments' by 'equipment'  
 70. (c) Replace 'into' with 'in the'

**Exercise O**

1. (c) Replace 'be informed' by 'inform'.  
 2. (c) Replace 'understand' by 'understanding'  
 3. (d) Replace 'they' by 'their'      4. (b) Replace 'unless' by 'if'  
 5. (a) Replace 'supplying' by 'supply'      6. (d) Replace 'businesses' by 'business'  
 7. (c) Replace 'had' by 'have'      8. (a) Replace 'facility' by 'facilities'  
 9. (d) Replace 'learn' by 'can learn'      10. (b) Replace 'is' by 'are'  
 11. (b) Replace 'are' by 'has'      12. (d) Replace 'Projects' by 'Project'  
 13. (a) Replace 'selling' by 'sales'      14. (c) Replace 'earn' by 'earnt'  
 15. (d) Replace 'since' by 'for'      16. (c) Replace 'they' by 'it'  
 17. (c) Replace 'transactions' by 'transaction'  
 18. (a) Replace 'easy' by 'easily'      19. (d) Replace 'saving' by 'to save'  
 20. (d) Use 'can' before 'provide'  
 21. (c) Use 'electronically' after 'tax'      22. (d) Remove 'to' and use 'on'  
 23. (a) Remove 'of'      24. (d) Replace 'is' by 'has'  
 25. (e) No error      26. (b) Replace 'mid' by 'amidst'  
 27. (d) Replace 'influenced' by 'influencing'  
 28. (e) No error      29. (e) No error  
 30. (a) Replace 'As' by 'So'

**Revision Exercise P**

1. (c) Replace hear by heard  
 2. (c) 'a world of bliss' should be replaced 'by the world of bliss'  
 3. (a) 'at time' should be replaced by 'at times'  
 4. (a) Replace 'everything' by 'everyone'  
 5. (b) 'not only' should be placed after 'with'.  
 6. (c) Use 'has' in place of 'have'.  
 7. (c) here 'of' should be used in place of 'in'  
 8. (b) Use 'boarding' in place of 'board'.  
 9. (b) Use 'beside' in place of 'besides'.  
 10. (d) No error  
 11. (b) Use one of the serious issues/problems in place of imports

12. (c) here, use of 'let' is more suitable
13. (b) Use, 'has' in place of 'have'.
14. (b) Use 'only' in place of 'just'.
15. (d) No error
16. (a) Use 'have known' in place of 'have been knowing.'
17. (b) Use 'is' in place of 'are'.
18. (a) Use 'were' in place of 'was'
19. (a) Remove 'to'
20. (b) Use 'him' in place of 'his'.
21. (b) Use 'is' in place of 'are'
22. (c) Use 'must have' in place of 'should have'
23. (a) Use 'with' in place of 'on'
24. (c) Use 'blows' in place of 'will blow'
25. (a) Use 'the' before equator
26. (a) Use 'have you been' in place of 'you have been'
27. (b) Use 'some other means to meet' in place of 'some means to balance'
28. (c) Use 'completely' before 'fine'
29. (b) Use 'I could finish' in place of 'could I finish'
30. (a) Use 'my' in place of 'me'
31. (c) Use 'other' before newspaper
32. (b) Use 'there' before 'were'
33. (b) Remove 'about' as it is superfluous
34. (b) Use 'looking forward to' in place of 'looking forward for'
35. (a) Use cope with only
36. (c) Use 'for' in place of 'since'
37. (b) Remove 'most'
38. (a) Use 'for' 'after' asked
39. (c) Use 'had began' in place of 'was begun'
40. (c) Use 'before' in place of 'to'
41. (a) Use 'due to a heavy work load' in place of 'due to heavy work'
42. (c) Use 'has' in place of 'have'
43. (b) Use Past indefinite (Did they receive) in place 'had received'
44. (d) No error
45. (a) Remove 'to'
46. (b) Use 'has' in place of 'have'
47. (b) Use 'are' in place of 'is'
48. (d) No error
49. (c) Use 'luggage'
50. (b) Use 'a hundred rupee note' in place of 'a hundred rupees note'
51. (c) Use 'for' in place of 'to'
52. (b) Use 'saw' in place of 'have seen'
53. (a) Remove 'to'
54. (c) Use 'reading' in place of 'read'.
55. (c) Use 'would have got' in place of 'will got'

56. (c) Remove 'up'
57. (a) Use definite article 'the' before 'world of ours'
58. (c) Use 'other' before 'student'
59. (b) Use 'has not been' in place of 'not being'
60. (c) Use 'owing to' in place of 'owed'
61. (c) Use 'was' in place of 'is'
62. (b) Use 'have' in place of 'has'
63. (c) Replace 'solve' by 'in solving'
64. (c) Remove 'of'
65. (c) Use 'was' in place of 'is'
66. (c) Use 'skilled' in place of 'practiced'
67. (a) Use 'were' in place of 'is'
68. (b) Use 'has' in place of 'have'
69. (d) No error
70. (d) No error
71. (a) Use 'most of the people' in place of 'most' people
72. (c) Use of 'to' is superfluous
73. (a) Use 'has been residing' in place of 'is residing'
74. (a) Use 'on' in place of 'at'
75. (b) Use no preposition after 'entered'
76. (b) Use 'depends' in place of 'depend'
77. (b) Use 'himself' in place of 'him'
78. (d) No error
79. (a) Use 'John, Hari and I' in place of 'John, I and Hari'
80. (c) Use 'was' in place of 'were'

## 18. Sentence Improvement

### Revision Exercise A

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (c)  | 2. (b)  | 3. (a)  | 4. (d)  | 5. (a)  | 6. (d)  | 7. (a)  |
| 8. (d)  | 9. (c)  | 10. (b) | 11. (c) | 12. (b) | 13. (d) | 14. (d) |
| 15. (d) | 16. (a) | 17. (c) | 18. (c) | 19. (a) | 20. (b) | 21. (b) |
| 22. (b) | 23. (a) | 24. (c) | 25. (a) | 26. (c) | 27. (c) | 28. (a) |
| 29. (c) | 30. (b) |         |         |         |         |         |

### Revision Exercise B

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (c)  | 2. (c)  | 3. (c)  | 4. (c)  | 5. (a)  | 6. (b)  | 7. (a)  |
| 8. (d)  | 9. (c)  | 10. (a) | 11. (b) | 12. (a) | 13. (b) | 14. (c) |
| 15. (d) | 16. (b) | 17. (a) | 18. (c) | 19. (a) | 20. (d) | 21. (d) |
| 22. (c) | 23. (a) | 24. (d) | 25. (b) | 26. (c) | 27. (c) | 28. (b) |
| 29. (a) | 30. (d) |         |         |         |         |         |

### Revision Exercise C

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (d)  | 2. (a)  | 3. (c)  | 4. (c)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (c)  | 7. (a)  |
| 8. (c)  | 9. (a)  | 10. (a) | 11. (c) | 12. (b) | 13. (d) | 14. (d) |
| 15. (b) | 16. (b) | 17. (b) | 18. (a) | 19. (c) | 20. (d) | 21. (a) |
| 22. (d) | 23. (a) | 24. (b) | 25. (b) | 26. (b) | 27. (d) | 28. (a) |
| 29. (a) | 30. (d) |         |         |         |         |         |

**Revision Exercise D**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (a)  | 2. (a)  | 3. (b)  | 4. (a)  | 5. (b)  | 6. (a)  | 7. (c)  |
| 8. (a)  | 9. (d)  | 10. (d) | 11. (c) | 12. (c) | 13. (c) | 14. (b) |
| 15. (a) | 16. (b) | 17. (b) | 18. (b) | 19. (d) | 20. (c) | 21. (d) |
| 22. (c) | 23. (a) | 24. (c) | 25. (c) | 26. (b) | 27. (d) | 28. (d) |
| 29. (b) | 30. (d) |         |         |         |         |         |

**Revision Exercise E**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (c)  | 2. (a)  | 3. (b)  | 4. (b)  | 5. (b)  | 6. (d)  | 7. (a)  |
| 8. (a)  | 9. (d)  | 10. (d) | 11. (b) | 12. (b) | 13. (d) | 14. (d) |
| 15. (b) | 16. (c) | 17. (c) | 18. (c) | 19. (b) | 20. (c) | 21. (b) |
| 22. (b) | 23. (a) | 24. (b) | 25. (a) | 26. (b) | 27. (c) | 28. (c) |
| 29. (d) | 30. (b) |         |         |         |         |         |

**Revision Exercise F**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (c)  | 2. (d)  | 3. (a)  | 4. (d)  | 5. (a)  | 6. (a)  | 7. (c)  |
| 8. (d)  | 9. (b)  | 10. (b) | 11. (b) | 12. (d) | 13. (b) | 14. (a) |
| 15. (b) | 16. (b) | 17. (b) | 18. (a) | 19. (b) | 20. (c) | 21. (a) |
| 22. (b) | 23. (a) | 24. (c) | 25. (d) | 26. (b) | 27. (b) | 28. (b) |
| 29. (c) | 30. (c) |         |         |         |         |         |

**Revision Exercise G**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (c)  | 2. (b)  | 3. (a)  | 4. (a)  | 5. (b)  | 6. (c)  | 7. (a)  |
| 8. (a)  | 9. (c)  | 10. (d) | 11. (b) | 12. (d) | 13. (c) | 14. (b) |
| 15. (c) | 16. (b) | 17. (a) | 18. (a) | 19. (c) | 20. (c) | 21. (b) |
| 22. (c) | 23. (b) | 24. (c) | 25. (a) | 26. (a) | 27. (c) | 28. (b) |
| 29. (b) | 30. (b) |         |         |         |         |         |

**Revision Exercise H**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (a)  | 2. (a)  | 3. (a)  | 4. (d)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (b)  | 7. (b)  |
| 8. (c)  | 9. (b)  | 10. (b) | 11. (b) | 12. (c) | 13. (d) | 14. (c) |
| 15. (c) | 16. (a) | 17. (a) | 18. (b) | 19. (a) | 20. (a) | 21. (b) |
| 22. (c) | 23. (d) | 24. (d) | 25. (c) | 26. (a) | 27. (b) | 28. (b) |
| 29. (c) | 30. (b) | 31. (a) | 32. (d) | 33. (d) | 34. (b) | 35. (a) |
| 36. (c) | 37. (c) | 38. (a) | 39. (a) | 40. (b) | 41. (b) | 42. (a) |
| 43. (c) | 44. (d) | 45. (c) | 46. (c) | 47. (b) | 48. (b) | 49. (c) |
| 50. (a) | 51. (c) | 52. (a) | 53. (c) | 54. (c) | 55. (c) | 56. (c) |
| 57. (a) | 58. (b) | 59. (a) | 60. (c) |         |         |         |

**Revision Exercise I**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (c)  | 2. (b)  | 3. (a)  | 4. (d)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (b)  | 7. (c)  |
| 8. (a)  | 9. (c)  | 10. (b) | 11. (c) | 12. (c) | 13. (b) | 14. (d) |
| 15. (a) | 16. (a) | 17. (c) | 18. (a) | 19. (c) | 20. (c) | 21. (a) |
| 22. (c) | 23. (c) | 24. (c) | 25. (c) | 26. (c) | 27. (b) | 28. (b) |
| 29. (c) | 30. (a) | 31. (a) | 32. (c) | 33. (a) | 34. (c) | 35. (b) |
| 36. (d) | 37. (d) | 38. (d) | 39. (c) | 40. (c) | 41. (a) | 42. (a) |
| 43. (c) | 44. (c) | 45. (c) | 46. (c) | 47. (b) | 48. (b) | 49. (c) |
| 50. (b) | 51. (b) | 52. (d) | 53. (a) | 54. (a) | 55. (d) | 56. (c) |
| 57. (a) | 58. (c) | 59. (b) | 60. (c) | 61. (b) | 62. (a) | 63. (c) |
| 64. (a) | 65. (d) | 66. (c) | 67. (d) | 68. (a) | 69. (c) | 70. (c) |

**Revision Exercise J**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (d)  | 2. (b)  | 3. (e)  | 4. (a)  | 5. (d)  | 6. (a)  | 7. (b)  |
| 8. (a)  | 9. (b)  | 10. (b) | 11. (a) | 12. (b) | 13. (b) | 14. (b) |
| 15. (d) | 16. (c) | 17. (a) | 18. (d) | 19. (a) | 20. (c) | 21. (b) |
| 22. (a) | 23. (b) | 24. (d) | 25. (a) | 26. (c) | 27. (b) | 28. (d) |
| 29. (e) | 30. (d) | 31. (b) | 32. (c) | 33. (b) | 34. (c) | 35. (b) |
| 36. (a) | 37. (d) | 38. (b) | 39. (d) | 40. (c) | 41. (b) | 42. (d) |
| 43. (b) | 44. (e) | 45. (e) | 46. (c) | 47. (a) | 48. (a) | 49. (a) |
| 50. (c) | 51. (a) | 52. (d) | 53. (b) | 54. (d) | 55. (c) | 56. (b) |
| 57. (a) | 58. (b) | 59. (c) | 60. (c) | 61. (d) | 62. (b) | 63. (a) |
| 64. (a) | 65. (c) | 66. (c) | 67. (c) | 68. (a) | 69. (a) | 70. (c) |

**19. Selecting the Correct Sentences****Revision Exercise A**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (d)  | 2. (d)  | 3. (c)  | 4. (d)  | 5. (b)  | 6. (b)  | 7. (a)  |
| 8. (b)  | 9. (a)  | 10. (b) | 11. (b) | 12. (b) | 13. (a) | 14. (b) |
| 15. (c) | 16. (d) | 17. (a) | 18. (a) | 19. (b) | 20. (c) |         |

**Revision Exercise B**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (c)  | 2. (a)  | 3. (d)  | 4. (b)  | 5. (a)  | 6. (b)  | 7. (b)  |
| 8. (c)  | 9. (d)  | 10. (c) | 11. (a) | 12. (a) | 13. (d) | 14. (c) |
| 15. (d) | 16. (a) | 17. (b) | 18. (d) | 19. (c) | 20. (d) |         |

**Revision Exercise C**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (c)  | 2. (b)  | 3. (d)  | 4. (c)  | 5. (d)  | 6. (b)  | 7. (c)  |
| 8. (b)  | 9. (a)  | 10. (c) | 11. (d) | 12. (c) | 13. (c) | 14. (c) |
| 15. (a) | 16. (b) | 17. (d) | 18. (d) | 19. (d) | 20. (c) |         |

**Revision Exercise D**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (c)  | 2. (d)  | 3. (d)  | 4. (c)  | 5. (d)  | 6. (d)  | 7. (d)  |
| 8. (d)  | 9. (a)  | 10. (a) | 11. (c) | 12. (d) | 13. (c) | 14. (b) |
| 15. (c) | 16. (b) | 17. (c) | 18. (c) | 19. (b) | 20. (b) |         |

**Revision Exercise E**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (d)  | 2. (d)  | 3. (c)  | 4. (b)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (a)  | 7. (b)  |
| 8. (c)  | 9. (d)  | 10. (d) | 11. (b) | 12. (c) | 13. (c) | 14. (a) |
| 15. (d) | 16. (b) | 17. (d) | 18. (c) | 19. (d) | 20. (d) |         |



## **PART B**

### **Verbal Ability**

Verbal ability is synonymous with Word Power. A student's comprehension skill, writing skill and communication skill depend on his verbal ability. In written examinations the verbal ability of an examinee is tested by way of his comprehension skill.

This section of the book provides students with a large number of words and expressions. It would be presumptuous to claim that the words and expression included in the book are sufficient. However we have taken every care to avoid superfluity. There is no tendency on our part of include a word just because no body has ever heard of it. Only such words and their figurative expressions as are currently in vogue have been dealt within the ensuring chapters to help students meet with the challenge confidently in this sphere.

# 1

## Paronyms and Homonyms

---

Confusion is often caused in understanding the meanings of certain words because they are either similar in meaning and form or similar in their sound of pronunciation. The words which are different in meaning or use but are similar in form or derivations are called **Paronyms**. On the other hand **Homonyms** are similar in their sound or pronunciation but different in meaning. They are also called **Homophones** (different in spelling and meaning but pronounced alike). In Modern English Paronyms and Homonyms (Homophones) are not much distinguished.

- Access** (*approach*) It is very difficult to have an *access* to the Prime Minister.  
**Accession** (*coming to throne*) The *accession* of the prince to the throne was welcomed by the people.  
**Excess** (*more than desired*) *Excess* of everything is bad.
- Accept** (*to take*) The teachers *accepted* the invitation of the students on the Teacher's Day.  
**Except** (*leaving out*) Everybody *except* Rahul was invited to the party.  
**Expect** (*hope*) I never *expected* that my friends would desert me in the lurch.
- Alter** (*change*) Mohan is so obstinate that no one can *alter* his views.  
**Altar** (*place of worship*) When I visited temple, I saw him kneeling at the *altar*.
- Assent** (*agree*) I got *assent* of my father to study in a boarding school.  
**Ascent** (*climbing up*) The *ascent* to Kargil hills is very arduous.
- Adopt** (*take up*) One should not *adopt* the bad habits of others.  
**Adapt** (*adjust*) One must learn to *adapt* oneself to the circumstances of life.  
**Adept** (*expert*) Shruti is *adept* in the art of dancing.

6. **Amicable** (*friendly*) Finally the two brothers came to an *amicable* settlement.  
**Amiable** (*lovable, obliging*) Being an *amiable* house wife she is liked by her kith and kin.
7. **Accede** (*accept*) The director was kind enough to *accede* to the request of the labourers.  
**Exceed** (*surpass*) Your essay should not *exceed* three hundred words.  
**Concede** (*agree*) The prisoner did not *concede* to the argument of the jailor.
8. **Alteration** (*change*) There is no *alteration* in the programme yet.  
**Altercation** (*wordy quarrel*) There was *altercation* between the shop keeper and my brother.
9. **Apposite** (*suitable*) Her remarks about the character of her friends are quite *apposite*.  
**Opposite** (*contrary*) Sita's behaviour is *opposite* to that of her brother.
10. **Affect** (*verb*) (*to influence, to pretend*) Continuous attack of asthma has *affected* his health.  
**Effect** (*noun*) (*influence*) Excessive hard work in life had adverse *effect* on her health.
11. **Allusion** (*reference*) The poem is explained properly by the help of many *allusions*.  
**Illusion** (*unreal*) According to the Vedantists life is an *illusion*.
12. **Ail** (*suffer*) Rohit is getting weaker day by day, we don't know what *ails* him.  
**Ale** (*intoxicating drink*) He visits *ale* house daily even against the advice of doctors.
13. **Apprehend** (*fear, perceive, arrest*) The soothsayer *apprehended* the day of Rohit's death.  
**Comprehend** (*understand*) She could not *comprehend* the meaning of the passage.
14. **Admission** (*to get admitted, acceptance*) These days in order to get *admission* to convent schools you must give a lot of money.  
**Admittance** (*entry*) No *admittance* without permission.
15. **Antique** (*of ancient times*) There are many *antique* pieces in the museum.  
**Antic** (*odd, tricks*) *Antics* of the juggler regaled the children.
16. **Alternate** (*by turns*) We have a moral science class on every *alternate* day.  
**Alternative** (*one of the two choices*) There is no *alternative* to honesty in dealing with the people.
17. **Artful** (*clever*) She was able to change the behaviour of her in laws towards her by *artful* means.  
**Artistic** (*pertaining to art*) Everybody admires her for *artistic* temperament.

18. **Artist** (*one who practises fine art*) He is a frivolous *artist*.  
**Artiste** (*performing*) There was no security for the *artiste*, who had come to perform for the charity show.  
**Artisan** (*one who does handicraft*) The *artisans* of Moradabad are very skilful.
19. **Affection** (*love, kindly feeling*) My mother is held in high *affection* and respect by all the members of the family.  
**Affectation** (*unnatural behaviour, pretence*) I always feel vexed at her *affectation*.
20. **Abstain** [*keep from things (eating, drinking, voting)*] We should *abstain* from drinking.  
**Refrain** (*keep from bad habits*) You should *refrain* from telling a lie.
21. **Avenge** (*just punishment*) Hamlet delayed *avenging* the murder of his father.  
**Revenge** (*to punish out of personal grudge*) He *revenged* himself on his enemy by abducting his minor child.
22. **Adulteration** (*making impure*) The owners of the milk dairy were charged with *adulteration* of milk.  
**Adultery** (*having extra marital relations*) Her husband accused her of *adultery* and deserted her.
23. **Aspersions** (*slander*) We should not cast *aspersions* on our friends.  
**Aspiration** (*ambition, desire*) You can attain your *aspiration* only by hard work.
24. **Avert** (*to check*) A little common sense *averted* a major mishap.  
**Advert** (*refer to*) He *adverted* to the problem of Indian security in his speech.
25. **Birth** (*to be born*) The exact date of the *birth* of a person is known from his birth certificate.  
**Berth** (*a seat in a train*) I have got two *berths* booked in the Rajdhani Express.
26. **Bridle** (*reins*) It is very difficult to control a horse without a *bridle*.  
**Bridal** (*of bride*) The *bridal* dress must have cost a lot.
27. **Barbaric** (*savage, simple*) She was selected to play the part of a village damsel because of her *barbaric* beauty.  
**Barbarous** (*inhuman*) The Muslim invaders were *barbarous* in their wars.
28. **Barbarity** (*cruelty*) Hitler's *barbarity* is too terrible to be related.  
**Barbarism** (*uncivilised conditions*) *Barbarism* still prevails in most of the tribal regions of the world.
29. **Beneficial** (*useful*) Nutritious food is *beneficial* for health.  
**Beneficent** (*kind*) Everybody paid rich tribute to the king as he was *beneficent* to all and sundry.

30. **Beside** (*by the side of*) He sat *beside* her father.  
**Besides** (*in addition to*) *Besides* English she is also learning French.
31. **Bear** (*tolerate, carry, give birth*) Mohan cannot *bear* being insulted by his boss.  
**Bare** (*naked*) He was bitten by a snake as he was *bare* foot.
32. **Borne** (*carried*) The dead body was *borne* by his friends.  
**Born** (*take birth*) Pearl was *born* in Ashwini Hospital at Mumbai.
33. **Bail** (*security*) His application for release on *bail* was rejected.  
**Bale** (*bundle of cloth*) He was carrying a *bale* of cotton on his head.
34. **Beatific** (*feeling joy & peace*) The saints are always in a *beatific* state of mind.  
**Beatitude** (*state of bliss, blessedness*) He experienced *beatitude* before he died.
35. **Caste** (*class of society*) In ancient times people were divided into different *castes* according to the work they did.  
**Cast** (*throw*) We *cast* away old clothes and buy new ones.  
**Cost** (*price*) The *cost* of living has risen a lot.
36. **Childlike** (*simple, innocent as a child*) Her *childlike* face has won over many hearts.  
**Childish** (*silly*) No body likes him for his *childish* habits.
37. **Canvass** (*propagate*) Because of approaching elections people are *canvassing* for their candidates.  
**Canvas** (*rough cloth*) While jogging he always wears *canvas* shoes.
38. **Cite** (*to quote*) The advocate *cited* many examples to prove his case.  
**Site** (*place*) It is a very spacious *site* for constructing a nursing home.  
**Sight** (*scenery, vision*) The mutilated body of a child was a ghastly *sight*.
39. **Continuous** (*without break*) He has been sleeping for an hour *continuously*.  
**Continual** (*continuity with break*) It has been drizzling *continually* since last night.
40. **Cemetery** (*burial place*) The dead body was taken to the *cemetery* for burial.  
**Symmetry** (*quality of harmony or balance in size and design*) The building looks exquisite only because of its remarkable *symmetry*.
41. **Career** (*vocation, profession*) If we want to make a good *career* we must work.  
**Carrier** (*that one carries*) The goods were taken to the destination on public *carrier*.
42. **Confident** (*certain, sure*) I am very *confident* of my friend's success in the interview.  
**Confidant** (*one who shares a secret*) Once his *confidant*, now Dinesh is the arch enemy of his mentor.

43. **Compliment** (*regards*) I *complimented* my friend on her success.  
**Complement** (*that completes*) Both husband and wife are *complement* to each other.
44. **Cannon** (*big gun*) Hundreds of *cannons* were shot in the battlefield.  
**Canon** (*principle, a law*) *Canons* of any religion are not easy to follow.
45. **Creditable** (*praiseworthy*) It is really *creditable* for a village boy to have topped the university.  
**Credible** (*believable*) Your excuse is not *credible*.  
**Credulous** (*simple, artless*) Children are *credulous* by nature.
46. **Coma** (*state of unconsciousness*) After the accident, my friend had been in state of *coma* for several hours.  
**Comma** (*a mark of punctuation*) *Comma* is a very important part of learning punctuation.
47. **Corporal** (*physical*) In our school the children are not given *corporal* punishment.  
**Corporeal** (*having body, material*) Ghosts are not *corporeal* beings.
48. **Comprehensive** (*exhaustive, extensive*) *Comprehensive* steps have been taken to meet with unforeseen emergency.  
**Comprehensible** (*understandable*) The talk of the new student in our class was not *comprehensible* to us at all.
49. **Contagious** (*that spreads by contact*) Small pox is a *contagious* disease.  
**Contiguous** (*adjacent*) New Delhi and Noida are *contiguous*.
50. **Censure** (*blame, criticize*) *Censure* motion tabled by the opposition fell through.  
**Censor** (*examination of films and plays*) The film 'The Bandit Queen' has not been approved of by the *censor* board.
51. **Collision** [*striking against (face to face)*] Due to heavy fog the car met with a *collision*.  
**Collusion** (*nexus*) There was a *collusion* between the smugglers and the political leaders.
52. **Contemptible** (*deserving contempt*) The conduct of the taxi driver was highly mean and *contemptible*.  
**Contemptuous** (*expressing contempt*) She dismissed the servant with *contemptuous* gesture.
53. **Considerable** (*large, to great extent*) The industrialist spent *considerable* amount of money to uplift the living conditions of his workers.  
**Considerate** (*thoughtful of others*) He is beneficent and *considerate* to his subordinates.
54. **Ceremonious** (*formal*) One should not be very *ceremonious* in the marriage of daughters.  
**Ceremonial** (*of ceremony*) I could not attend the *ceremonial* function of his marriage.

55. **Complaisant** (*pleasing, obliging*) He is popular with his friends on account of his *complaisant* nature.  
**Complacent** (*self satisfied*) Most of the students of my class are *complacent* in their outlook and will not revolt against the principal.
56. **Conscious** (*aware*) We should always be *conscious* of what is going on around the world.  
**Conscience** (*inner voice*) I always act according to my *conscience*.  
**Consensus** (*general agreement*) Government should be run by *consensus*.  
**Conscientious** (*honest, scrupulous*) Being a *conscientious* worker he never shirks work.
57. **Coherent** (*intelligible*) She was so nervous that her words were not *coherent*.  
**Inherent** (*inborn quality*) Sincerity is *inherent* in her character.
58. **Collaborate** (*work together*) Indian industries are compelled to *collaborate* with multinational companies for survival.  
**Corroborate** (*confirm*) The principal *corroborated* the teacher's statement made to the police.
59. **Casual** (*occasional*) He is on *casual* leave today.  
**Causal** (*relating to cause*) There is definite *causal* relationship between population and poverty.
60. **Council** (*an assembly*) The legislative *council* has passed the Bill.  
**Counsel** (*advice*) His *counsel* proved very beneficial in the end.
61. **Councillor** (*member of council*) He is a *councillor* of the Legislative Council.  
**Counsellor** (*adviser*) I have engaged a noted *counsellor* to defend my case.
62. **Corpse** (*dead body*) A mutilated *corpse* was found in a locked house.  
**Corps** (*body of troops*) He is serving in Army Ordnance *Corps*.  
**Carcass** (*dead body of animal*) A *carcass* of a dog was lying in the road.
63. **Coarse** (*rough*) Though he is quite rich, he wears *coarse* clothes.  
**Course** (*line of action*) He has given up immoral *course* of life.
64. **Century** (*one hundred*) Twentieth *century* will be known as the age of science.  
**Centenary** (*100th anniversary*) *Centenary* of Indian National Movement was celebrated in 1985 AD.
65. **Conservation** (*preservation*) *Conservation* of forests is very important for our survival.  
**Conservatism** (*orthodox ideas*) I am quite liberal and do not believe in *conservatism*.
66. **Conform** (*adhere to*) You must *conform* to the rules laid down by your company.  
**Confirm** (*ratify*) I shall *confirm* my programme tomorrow.

67. **Capacity** (*ability to contain*) The hall has a seating *capacity* for five hundred students.  
**Capability** (*power of doing things*) My friend has *capability* to do any difficult task.
68. **Commonplace** (*ordinary, usual*) We are fed up with the *commonplace* speeches of our leaders.  
**Common place** (*place for all*) The street is a *common place* for everyone.
69. **Commandeer** (*seize for military purpose*) When martial law was imposed in Pakistan huge area of vacant land was *commandeered* for building air strip.  
**Commander** (*one who commands*) The *commander* of the army ordered the soldiers to capture the fort.
70. **Disease** (*illness*) My friend is suffering from an incurable *disease*.  
**Decease** (*death*) On account of the *decease* of his father, the burden of the family fell on his shoulders.
71. **Deny** [refers to past (*action, knowledge*)] She *denied* that she had gone to the movie last night.  
**Refuse** [refers to future (*request, order*)] Meeta *refused* that she would not return the money.
72. **Duel** (*fight between two persons*) In ancient times, many *duels* were fought in order to settle disputes.  
**Dual** (*double*) She follows *dual* policy and misguides her husband.
73. **Deference** (*regards*) All children should have *deference* for their elders.  
**Difference** (*distinction*) There is no *difference* among the basic concepts of all the religions.  
**Deferment** (*postponement*) His application for *deferment* of hearing was turned down.
74. **Decent** (*right and suitable*) She always wears *decent* clothes.  
**Descent** (*coming down*) The *descent* of the hill is very dangerous.  
**Dissent** (*disagreement*) Only a few members expressed *dissent* to my suggestion.
75. **Desert** (*noun*) (*sandy land*) The government has greatly solved the problem of pure drinking water in the *desert*.  
**Desert** (*verb*) (*leave*) She was *deserted* by her husband.  
**Dessert** (*sweet dish*) *Dessert* was served after dinner.
76. **Dominant** (*dominating*) Sohan is very *dominant* in our class.  
**Domineer** (*to dominate*) Mothers in law try to *domineer* over their daughters in law.
77. **Drought** (*lack of rain*) Last year most of the areas of Uttar Pradesh suffered from a severe *drought*.  
**Draught** (*current of wind, quantity of liquid*) A *draught* of cool wind was very refreshing.

78. **Defective** (*having defect*) As he met with a severe accident last year, one of his legs is *defective*.  
**Deficient** (*lacking*) Though young he is *deficient* in common sense.
79. **Diverse** (*different*) The two children of one family may have *diverse* temperaments.  
**Divers** (*several*) (i) He has consulted *divers* doctors about his disease.  
(ii) Those, who dive into river/sea, are *divers*.
80. **Deduce** (*infer*) It is difficult to *deduce* any conclusion from your ambiguous remarks.  
**Deduct** (*subtract*) Two days' wages will be *deducted* from your monthly salary.
81. **Deliverance** (*freedom, emancipation*) Lord Buddha preached eight fold path to attain *deliverance* from sorrows of life.  
**Delivery** (*giving letters etc.*) The *delivery* of the letter was just in time.
82. **Decry** (*criticize*) The foreign policy of the Congress party has always been *decried*.  
**Descry** (*dimly seen*) We could *descry* only a traveller in the bleak evening.
83. **Defy** (*violate*) How dare you *defy* my orders?  
**Deify** (*to worship*) Swami Vivekananda is *deified* by every Indian.
84. **Doze** (*sleep*) The teacher caught him *dozing* in the class.  
**Dose** (*of medicine*) You should not take heavy *dose* of medicine.
85. **Dam** (*barrier built to reserve water*) A *dam* has been built on the river.  
**Damn** (*condemn*) The book was *dammned* by the critics.
86. **Diversion** (*change in direction*) There is a *diversion* on the road ahead.  
**Diversity** (*variety*) *Diversity* is the chief feature of our civilisation.
87. **Enviabile** (*causing envy*) All the people are jealous because of his *enviable* position in the society.  
**Envious** (*feeling of envy*) Her friends were *envious* of her success in the medical entrance examination.
88. **Exception** (*objection*) There are always *exceptions* to rules in every language.  
**Exceptional** (*rare, to a large extent*) In his own class Rohit is a boy of *exceptional* abilities.  
**Exceptionable** (*objectionable*) I objected to her *exceptionable* remarks against my parents.
89. **Eminent** (*famous*) Shakespeare was an *eminent* playwright.  
**Imminent** (*impending*) Third world war is *imminent*.  
**Immanent** (*present everywhere*) Divine force is *immanent* in universe.
90. **Eligible** (*fit to be chosen*) Untrustworthy people are not *eligible* for responsible posts.  
**Illegible** (*that cannot be read*) I can't read this letter as her handwriting is *illegible*.

91. **Exceedingly** [to a great extent (*good sense*)] One of my cousins is an *exceedingly* rich person.  
**Excessively** [to a great extent (*bad sense*)] They spent money on the feast lavishly and *excessively*.
92. **Exhausting** (*tiring*) Teaching nursery classes is a very *exhausting* job.  
**Exhaustive** (*detailed, comprehensive*) The teacher gave to the students *exhaustive* notes on English Grammar.  
**Exhausted** (*tired*) He was *exhausted* and went to bed immediately.
93. **Economical** (*frugal*) A housewife should always be *economical* if she wants to run her house smoothly.  
**Economic** (*pertaining to economy*) India is yet to cross many hurdles to overcome *economic* crisis.  
**Economics** (*a subject*) *Economics* is an interesting subject.
94. **Elude** (*escape*) Sohan was so clever that he *eluded* the police and escaped from the prison.  
**Allude** (*refer, cite*) The speaker *alluded* to many examples from the Gita.
95. **Excite** (*stir up feelings*) The people got very *excited* when the police refused to take any action against the culprits.  
**Incite** (*rousing to action*) The communal speech of the leader *incited* the mob to violence.  
**Insight** (*ability to see the truth*) India needs leaders of great *insight*.
96. **Envelop** (*cover, wrap*) As the dark clouds covered the sky, the whole town was *enveloped* in darkness.  
**Envelope** (*a letter cover*) Please put the letter in the *envelope*.
97. **Expeditious** (*quick, prompt*) Dattu is very *expeditious* in answering letters.  
**Expedient** (*practical, contrary to principles*) Selfish persons are always *expedient* in their approach to life.  
**Expedition** (*a journey to unknown place*) They will go on an *expedition* to Everest.
98. **Esteem** (*respect*) As Mahesh is very sociable, he is held in high *esteem* by his friends.  
**Estimate** (*calculate*) Can you give me the *estimate* of the cost of the house?  
**Estimation** (*opinion, judgement*) In my *estimation* he is the fool of the first water.
99. **Exposure** (*reveal, exposed to heat or cold*) She will not attend office today as she is suffering from *exposure*.  
**Exposition** (*explanation*) Tilak's *exposition* of the Gita is remarkable.
100. **Egotist** (*one who talks a lot of oneself*) It is difficult to stand the company of an *egotist*.  
**Egoist** (*one who believes in self interest, proud*) An *egoist* is moved only by self-interest while helping others.

101. **Emerge** (*come out*) It is hoped that he will *emerge* successful out of these trying conditions.  
**Immerse** (*plunge into, absorb in*) Being a man of contemplative nature, he is always *immersed* in pensive mood.
102. **Eruption** (*bursting*) The *eruption* of volcano caused heavy destruction on the island.  
**Irruption** (*attack*) The *irruption* of Pakistan Army was successfully repulsed.
103. **Elemental** (*of nature, elements*) In spite of *elemental* hardships Columbus discovered America.  
**Elementary** (*beginning, introductory*) You must have *elementary* knowledge of science.
104. **Excursion** (*picnic*) The students will go on *excursion* tomorrow.  
**Incursion** (*sudden attack*) *Incursions* by Pakistan and China into our borders speak of our weakness.
105. **Entrance** (*opening, gate*) The *entrance* to the fair by this route has been blocked up.  
**Entry** (*coming into*) The *entry* of student leaders into college premises is banned.
106. **Expensive** (*costing much money*) She bought a less *expensive* dress.  
**Valuable** (*useful*) The book provides *valuable* data for further study.
107. **Fatal** (*causing death*) On his way to school, he met with an accident and received a *fatal* wound in the leg.  
**Fateful** (*very significant*) The formation of I.N.A. was a *fateful* event.  
**Fatalist** (*believer in fate*) Indians are *fatalists* by nature.
108. **Forceful** (*strong and powerful*) Netaji had a *forceful* personality.  
**Forcible** (*by force, compulsion*) He was evicted from the house *forcibly*.
109. **Feign** (*pretend*) In order to save himself the accused *feigned* madness in the court.  
**Fain** (*gladly*) She would *fain* do anything for her friends.
110. **Forgo** (*give up*) Parents *forgo* their own comforts for the sake of their children.  
**Forego** (*go before*) This point has been dealt with in detail in the *foregoing* passage.
111. **Facility** (*convenience, dexterity*) The hotel provides all kinds of *facilities* to its customers.  
**Felicity** (*apt expression, joy*) May God bless you with *felicity* !
112. **Facilitate** (*make easy*) The new agreement will *facilitate* the development of the trade.  
**Felicitate** (*to congratulate*) I *felicitated* him on his success.
113. **Fair** (*a show, just, colour*) Let us go to Nauchandi *fair*.  
**Fare** (*passage money, meal*) There is a steep rise in railway *fare*.

114. **Formality** (*show ceremony*) True friends never observe *formality* with each other.  
**Formalism** (*observance of rites*) Swami Dayanand taught the Hindus to shun *formalism* in religion.
115. **Fiscal** (*of public revenue*) Government is trying to bring down the *fiscal* deficit in the next budget.  
**Financial** (*monetary*) He suffered huge *financial* loss in the business.
116. **Gentle** (*not harsh*) We should be *gentle* and polite to our elders.  
**Genteel** (*well mannered, of the upper class*) People belonging to middle class try to maintain the style of *genteel* class of society.
117. **Gamble** (*to play for stake*) On the occasion of Diwali people *gamble* and are ruined.  
**Gambol** (*to frisk*) It is a beautiful sight to see a deer *gamboling* in a forest.
118. **Graceful** (*beautiful*) She has a *graceful* gait.  
**Gracious** (*kind, merciful*) God is *gracious*.
119. **Gate** (*door*) The dacoits entered the house through the main *gate*.  
**Gait** (*manner of walking*) Her *gait* is graceful.
120. **Gravitation** (*pulling towards, attracting*) Theory of *gravitation* was invented by Newton.  
**Gravity** (*quality of being serious*) One must observe *gravity* on solemn occasions.
121. **Hoard** (*amass, to store*) As he is a smuggler, he has a *hoard* of gold and silver in his house.  
**Horde** (*a gang*) A *horde* of militants intruded into Indian territory.
122. **Historic** (*likely to be famous in history*) Kapil Dev scored *historic* victory by winning the World Cup in 1983.  
**Histrionic** (*art of acting*) Rekha is known for her *histrionic* talents.  
**Historical** (*of history*) I visited many *historical* buildings in Delhi while I was in school.
123. **Humility** (*politeness*) *Humility* in victory is a rare virtue.  
**Humiliation** (*insult, disgrace*) All respectable persons prefer death to *humiliation*.
124. **Honorary** (*unpaid*) My sister taught in a college as an *honorary* tutor.  
**Honourable** (*deserving honour*) He is regarded *honourable* member of the club.
125. **Human** (*race of man*) On account of ecological disturbances, the existence of *human* beings is endangered.  
**Humane** (*kind*) Doctors are supposed to be considerate and *humane*.
126. **Hail** (*belong to, welcome, frozen rain*) Those *hailing* from Bangladesh are living illegally in this country.  
**Hale** (*healthy*) He is *hale* and hearty and enjoys life to his fill.
127. **Healthy** (*having health*) In spite of his old age he is quite *healthy*.

- Healthful** (*promoting health*) The climate of hill stations is *healthful*.
128. **Hypocritical** (*guilty of hypocrisy*) I do not like his *hypocritical* attitude towards his friends.
- Hypercritical** (*too critical*) It does not pay in life to be *hypercritical* of trivial matters.
129. **Humanity** (*mankind, quality of being kind*) One must act in the larger interest of *humanity*.
- Humanism** (*devotion to human interest*) Act of *humanism* is always appreciated.
130. **Hollow** (*not solid, with a hole, false*) The stick is *hollow*; nothing is inside it.
- Hallow** (*ed*) (*sacred*) The *hallowed* shrine is visited by the devotees throughout the year.
- Halo** (*circle of light around the head*) Holy men are painted with *halo* around their heads.
131. **Industrial** (*pertaining to industry*) *Industrial* progress in India has not been rapid.
- Industrious** (*hard working*) My friend is an *industrious* man and he achieved success in life.
132. **Impossible** (*that is not possible*) If we make up our mind and work hard nothing is *impossible* in this world.
- Impassable** (*that cannot be passed through*) Many passes in the Himalayas are *impassable* during winter.
133. **Ingenious** (*skilful, clever*) She devised an *ingenious* scheme to hoodwink the police.
- Ingenuous** (*frank, innocent*) Children are liked for their *ingenuous* nature.
134. **Imaginary** (*fanciful, unreal*) Don't be daunted by *imaginary* troubles.
- Imaginative** (*contemplative*) Poets and artists are *imaginative* by temperament.
135. **Intelligible** (*understandable*) Your remarks are not *intelligible* to me.
- Intelligent** (*wise and sensible*) Only *intelligent* students are found to succeed in this world of stiff competition.
136. **Immoral** (*not according to morality*) An *immoral* person suffers in the long run.
- Unmoral** (*non-moral, amoral*) *Unmoral* persons are not concerned with morality or the immorality of an action.
137. **Incomparable** (*without equal*) She was a damsel of *incomparable* beauty.
- Uncomparable** (*having no similarity*) The security problems of India and Pakistan are *uncomparable*.
138. **Invert** (*to put upside down*) Put this statement in *inverted* commas.
- Inert** (*passive*) *Inert* gases are without active chemical properties.
139. **Inept** (*incompetent*) *Inept* handling of situation resulted in riots.
- Inapt** (*unsuitable*) The title of the story is *inapt*.

140. **Incidental** (*happening as natural or a part of*) The risk of loss is always *incidental* to any business.  
**Accidental** (*by chance*) It was just an *accidental* meeting between the two school mates.
141. **Jealous** (*full of jealousy*) All his friends are *jealous* of him.  
**Zealous** (*enthusiastic*) My brother is very *zealous* about his new appointment.
142. **Judicious** (*wise, thoughtful*) We must be *judicious* in the choice of our career.  
**Judicial** (*pertaining to judiciary*) He was sent to *judicial* lock up by the Magistrate.
143. **Kindly** (*acts, feelings*) I shall never forget your *kindly* act.  
**Kind** (*tender, pitiful*) He is a *kind* man who helps every body.
144. **Lightning** (*flash of light*) *Lightning* struck his house and set the whole house on fire.  
**Lightening** (*make light*) He is always interested in *lightening* the financial burden of his father.
145. **Luxurious** (*pertaining to luxury*) As she is the daughter of a rich industrialist, she lives a very *luxurious* life.  
**Luxuriant** (*rich in growth*) The hills of Uttarakhand are teeming with *luxuriant* forests.
146. **Loathe** (*detest*) The rich should not *loathe* the poor.  
**Loth** (*loath*) (*unwilling*) She was *loth* to go with him alone.
147. **Limit** (*extent*) You must spend within your *limits*.  
**Limitation** (*shortcomings*) There are many *limitations* in Parliamentary form of government in backward countries.
148. **Loud** (*loud sound*) Everyone was alarmed when there was a *loud* blast in the locality.  
**Loudly** (*in a loud manner*) The teacher forbade them to speak *loudly*.  
**Aloud** (*audible*) The students requested the teacher to speak *aloud*.
149. **Learned** (*erudite, educated*) He is not only rich but also *learned* and wise.  
**Learnt** (*past of learn*) He *learnt* his lesson very well.
150. **Literal** (*expressed in words*) Most of the words are used in *literal* and figurative sense.  
**Literary** (*of literature*) He is a *literary* man and reads a lot of books.
151. **Maze** (*winding paths*) The walled city is full of *mazes*.  
**Maize** (*a kind of corn*) *Maize* grows in abundance in Africa.
152. **Memorable** (*worthy of remembering*) In the plays of Shakespeare we find a lot of *memorable* quotations.  
**Memorial** (*statue or anything in the memory of*) We collected money to erect *memorial* in the memory of war heroes.  
**Immemorial** (*longer than people can remember*) The religious rites of the Hindus are *immemorial* tradition.

153. **Momentary** (*short lived*) One should not run after the wordly pleasures as they are *momentary*.  
**Momentous** (*very important*) Operation 'Shakti' at Pokhran was the *momentous* event in the history of independent India.
154. **Morale** (*the state of spirit, confidence*) The *morale* of the army should always be high.  
**Moral** (*sense of right and wrong, lesson*) We are advised to pursue a *moral* course of life.
155. **Maritime** (*relating to sea, or ships*) Once Britain was a great *maritime* power.  
**Marine** (*found in the sea/trade by sea*) India should develop *marine* trade to earn foreign exchange.
156. **Manifest** (*obvious, evident*) It should be *manifest* to all by now that China and Pakistan are inciting trouble on our borders.  
**Manifestation** (*act or desire that makes obvious*) Indiscipline among the youth is just a *manifestation* of serious national evil.
157. **Negligible** (*unimportant*) The dacoits attacked his house yesterday night but his loss is *negligible*.  
**Negligent** (*careless in duty*) We should not be *negligent* in our duty.  
**Neglectful** (*careless*) He is so *neglectful* that he doesn't care for his family's interest.
158. **Notable** (*creditable*) India has made a *notable* progress in the field of agriculture.  
**Noticeable** (*easy to notice*) There is *noticeable* improvement in the patient.  
**Notorious** [*famous (unfavourable)*] Our political leaders are *notorious* for their apathy to public interest.  
**Noted** (*famous*) The leader is *noted* for his honesty.
159. **Observance** (*compliance*) In order to remain healthy *observance* of certain simple rules is required.  
**Observation** (*notice*) Children have very keen *observation* power.
160. **Ordinance** (*a government order*) The government has issued an *ordinance* against the people who do not pay the taxes on time.  
**Ordnance** (*a gun*) There is an *ordnance* factory at Kanpur.
161. **Official** (*pertaining to office*) You are bound to maintain *official* secrecy.  
**Officious** (*ready to offer services, flatterer*) Beware of *officious* fellows.
162. **Organisation** (*institution*) He is working in a non-government *organisation*.  
**Organism** (*living beings with parts working together*) Human *organism* is a complex system.  
**Organic** (*of an organ*) *Organic* diseases destroy the organs.
163. **Petrol** (*fuel*) *Petrol* is very costly these days.  
**Patrol** (*go round*) The *patrol* van is regularly moving on the highway day and night for our protection.

164. **Providential** (*divine*) My friend's *providential* escape at the critical moment saved his life.
- Provident** (*frugal, thrifty*) She is quite *provident* and economical in household expenses.
- Providence** (*divine force*) Trust in *providence* for good days.
165. **Practical** (*not theoretical*) The scientist gave a *practical* demonstration of his experiment.
- Practicable** (*capable of being practised*) Only *practicable* schemes are adopted by our Managing Director.
166. **Proscribe** (*ban, prohibit*) Indecent books are generally *proscribed* by the government.
- Prescribe** (*recommend, advise*) Doctor has *prescribed* a very efficacious medicine for the treatment of the disease.
167. **Popular** (*admirable*) As Mrs. Neena is a very kind teacher, she is very *popular* with her students.
- Populous** (*thickly populated*) China is the most *populous* country in the world.
168. **Pale** (*bloodless, yellowish*) Due to his prolonged sickness he looks very *pale* now.
- Pail** (*container*) A *pail* full of milk was lying in the kitchen.
169. **Pair** (*double of a thing*) I gave a *pair* of new shoes to my brother on his birthday.
- Pare** (*trim*) Please *pare* your finger nails regularly.
170. **Pane** (*window glass*) Our window *pane* was broken by the children who were playing Cricket outside our house.
- Pain** (*suffering of mind or body*) She was feeling *pain* in her neck.
171. **Peel** (*to remove the skin*) Please wash the mangoes before you *peel* them.
- Peal** (*a loud sound*) On hearing his jokes all of us went into a *peal* of laughter.
172. **Personal** (*private*) We were asked to express our *personal* views on this subject in the debate.
- Personnel** (*persons employed*) The *personnel* department has issued termination notice to Sachin.
173. **Punctual** (*at fixed time*) *Punctual* students alone deserve a splendid success.
- Punctilious** (*very careful in duty*) We are taught to be very *punctilious* in our work in the school.
174. **Prudent** (*wise, careful, foresight*) It is *prudent* on her part to break with selfish friends.
- Prudential** (*of prudent actions, policy*) The *prudential* actions of my father saved the family from financial crisis.

175. **Precedent** (*previous examples*) The lawyer cited many *precedents* in support of his case.  
**President** (*Head of Institution*) Indian *President* is only de jure head of the government.
176. **Physique** (*physical health*) He is a smart youngman with a good *physique*.  
**Physic** (*medicine*) No *physic* has yet been discovered to cure cancer.  
**Physics** (*a subject*) *Physics* is my favourite subject.
177. **Prey** (*hunt and kill*) As national bird the Peacock is not a bird of *prey*.  
**Pray** (*offer prayer*) He *prays* to God daily.
178. **Proceed** (*to move forward*) In spite of difficulties he *proceeded* with his enterprise.  
**Precede** (*to go before*) I have mentioned every detail in the *preceding* passage.
179. **Politick** (*prudent, wise*) It is not *politick* to flog the dead horse.  
**Political** (*of politics*) The *political* parties in India have no concern for the poor.
180. **Prosecute** (*file a suit in the court*) You are likely to be *prosecuted* in the court for violation of rules.  
**Persecute** (*oppress*) She was mercilessly *persecuted* for not bringing a car in dowry.
181. **Pitiable** (*deserving pity*) The condition of the family is *pitiable* on account of poverty.  
**Pitiful** (*making one feel pity*) It was a *pitiful* sight to see a beggar woman suffering from cancer.
182. **Polity** (*form of government*) Indian *polity* is not in a healthy state these days.  
**Policy** (*plan of action*) Honesty is the best *policy*.
183. **Proscription** (*prohibition*) The *proscription* of the newspaper was resented by the people.  
**Prescription** (*recommendation*) The *prescription* of medicine by the doctor proved very useful.
184. **Putrefy** (*to rot*) Many unclaimed dead bodies lay *putrefying* in the field.  
**Petrify** (*turn into stone, stun*) We were *petrified* with terror to see the ghastly sight of the carnage.
185. **Righteous** (*just, truthful*) The Principal's anger was *righteous* for he could not tolerate the indiscipline in the college.  
**Rightful** (*having right*) He is the *rightful* owner of the property.
186. **Raise** (*increase*) The traders have *raised* the prices of food grains.  
**Raze** (*wipe out*) All the huts of the poor were *razed* to the ground as they needed land to build a five star hotel.

187. **Reign** (*rule*) The *reign* of Gupta dynasty, is known as golden period in the history of India.  
**Rein** (*bridle of horse*) He *reined* the horse and escaped a fall.
188. **Rite** (*ceremony*) The marriage was performed according to Hindu rites.  
**Wright** (*give a shape*) He is a great *playwright*.  
**Write** (*compose*) Please *write* in the note-book.
189. **Rout** (*put to defeat*) The enemy was *routed* by Indian forces.  
**Route** (*path*) You should not go by long *route*.
190. **Respective** (*belonging to each*) After the match we left for our *respective* homes.  
**Respectable** (*enjoying respect*) His father is a *respectable* man of the city.  
**Respectful** (*showing respect*) You must be *respectful* to your elders.
191. **Rapt** (*fully attentive*) They listened to the speech of the Prime Minister with *rapt* attention.  
**Wrapt** (*lost in, absorbed*) She did not notice my arrival as she was *wrapt* in her thoughts.
192. **Recourse** (*means of action*) I do not advise you to have *recourse* to legal action in this matter.  
**Resource** (*means, raw material*) India is a land teeming with natural resources.
193. **Symbol** (*sign, to represent something*) Vinoba Bhave was a *symbol* of simplicity and honesty.  
**Cymbal** (*a musical instrument*) The melodious sound of the *cymbals* impressed every body.
194. **Stationery** (*writing material*) His father deals in office *stationery*.  
**Stationary** (*static, fixed*) The Sun is *stationary*.
195. **Soar** (*rise, fly*) Birds are *soaring* in the sky.  
**Sore** (*wound, painful*) People are *sore* because the prices are soaring.  
**Sour** (*bitter*) The grapes are *sour*.
196. **Suspect** (*to think to be true*) The whole class *suspects* Rohan to have stolen Rita's money.  
**Doubt** (*to think to be untrue*) I *doubt* if she will get through the examination.
197. **Sociable** (*fond of mixing with people*) Because of her *sociable* behaviour she is liked by all the members of her family.  
**Social** (*pertaining to society*) Man is a *social* animal.
198. **Sensual** (*voluptuous, exciting senses*) We should not indulge in *sensual* pleasures or we will repent later on.  
**Sensuous** (*that affects the senses*) John Keats' poetry is *sensuous*.

199. **Spacious** (*having large space*) My house contains many *spacious* rooms.  
**Specious** (*outwardly attractive*) No body was impressed with his *specious* arguments.
200. **Spiritual** (*opposed to material, of spirit*) Indians should not give up their *spiritual* heritage.  
**Spirituos** (*containing intoxicating drink*) Excessive consumption of *spirituous* drinks is injurious to health.
201. **Stimulant** (*that which stimulates*) Tea is a *stimulant* for a worker after a day's hard work.  
**Stimulus** (*incentive*) Man hardly acts if there is no *stimulus* before him.
202. **Special** (*specific*) He came here on a *special* mission to bring about reconciliation between the two parties.  
**Especial** (*to a great degree*) It is *especially* hot these days.
203. **Storey** (*upper part of a building*) He lives in the second *storey* of the house.  
**Story** (*tale*) It is a very interesting *story*.
204. **Suit** (*a set of clothes, a lawsuit*) He presented me with a woollen *suit*.  
**Suite** (*a set of rooms*) He has booked a *suite* in the hotel.
205. **Sham** (*pretend to be, pretence*) What he says is all *sham*.  
**Shame** (*feeling of humiliation*) He felt *shame* at having told a lie.
206. **Severe** (*violent, rigorous*) She is suffering from *severe* headache.  
**Sever** (*separate*) You can never *sever* relations with your family.
207. **Statue** (*figure of animal/man in stone or wood*) The *statue* of Dr. Ambedkar was unveiled by the President.  
**Statute** (*law passed by law making bodies*) The *statute* was passed by the Parliament unanimously.
208. **Temperance** (*moderation in habits*) We should observe *temperance* in eating and drinking habits because it leads to healthy way of life.  
**Temperament** (*disposition, nature*) Always keep from persons of choleric *temperament*.
209. **Tolerable** (*bearable*) The food that was served in his daughter's marriage was *tolerable*.  
**Tolerant** (*liberal in ideas*) Every religion teaches us to be *tolerant* of the religious views held by others.
210. **Temporal** (*worldly, physical*) We should not hanker after *temporal* glory.  
**Temporary** (*lasting for short time*) He was given the job on the *temporary* basis only.
211. **Tamper** (*meddle with*) Please do not *tamper* with my papers.  
**Temper** (*emotional state of mind, soften*) One must not lose one's *temper*.
212. **Teem** (*full of*) India is a country *teeming* with natural resources.  
**Team** (*group of players*) His name has not been included in the college cricket *team*.

213. **Uninterested** (*having no interest*) Gaurav is *uninterested* in the study of science.  
**Disinterested** (*free from personal motive*) A *disinterested* leader of the party always commands respect from his followers.
214. **Variation** (*change*) *Variation* in his blood pressure worried the doctors.  
**Variance** (*opposite*) My views are always at *variance* with my father's.
215. **Vocation** (*profession*) Singing is both his *vocation* and avocation.  
**Avocation** (*hobby*) Gardening is a very favourite *avocation* of my father.
216. **Virtuous** (*having virtues*) She is a *virtuous* and devoted house wife.  
**Virtual** (*real*) Her mother is the *virtual* head of the family.
217. **Voracity** (*greed*) He is detested on account of his *voracity* for wealth.  
**Veracity** (*truthfulness*) It is very difficult to verify the *veracity* of her statement since she is very clever.
218. **Vane** (*weather cock*) The wind *vane* points to the direction of the wind.  
**Vain** (*proud, useless*) She is *vain* of her *wealth*.  
**Wane** (*decline*) His popularity as a political leader is on the *wane*.  
**Vein** (*a blood vein*) All the *veins* carry blood to heart.
219. **Vassal** (*a slave*) In ancient times, prisoners of war were made *vassals*.  
**Vessel** (*a small ship, utensil*) Empty *vessels* make much noise.
220. **Venal** (*corruptible*) The *venal* leaders are bane of Indian polity.  
**Venial** (*to be forgiven*) The fault is so slight that it is thought to be *venial*.
221. **Wreak** (*take revenge*) At last, he *wreaked* vengeance by killing his enemy.  
**Wreck** (*destroy*) The fury of the storm *wrecked* many houses.
222. **Wither** (*fade*) The plants kept in the shade will *wither* for want of Sun and light.  
**Whither** (*where*) Modern man is so much confused that he does not know *whither* he is heading for.
223. **Willing** (*ready*) We should always be *willing* to help the needy.  
**Wilful** (*deliberate*) His marriage was a total failure on account of his *wilful* nature.
224. **Wave** (*sea or river wave*) The *waves* rose sky high when the storm blew up.  
**Waive** (*remove, forgo*) Government has at last agreed to *waive* excise duty on cloth.
225. **Wrest** (*snatch by force*) The enemy *wrested* his gun and killed him.  
**Rest** (*peace*) Please go and take *rest* now.
226. **Womanly** [*of woman (good sense)*] My mother has *womanly* virtues.  
**Womanish** [*of woman (bad sense)*] His voice is *womanish* as it is quite shrill.
227. **Whet** (*increase interest*) Lemon will *whet* your appetite for more food.  
**Vet** (*screening*) The candidates were *vetted* for security reasons.  
**Wet** (*covered with water/liquid*) He got *wet* in the rain and is not well.

# 2

## One Word Substitutions

---

One Word Substitutions (Substitutes) may be defined as single words that are used in place of a group of words to denote a person, an object, a place, a state of mind a profession etc. In common parlance they are termed as single words used to make an expression brief and pertinent. Polonius in 'Hamlet', a play by Shakespeare, aptly remarks

"Therefore since brevity in the soul of wit.

The tediousness the limbs and outward flourishes I will be brief".

As such the use of one word substitutions tend to obviate the repetition of unnecessary words avoiding verbosity and ambiguity. Rambling style speaks of a rambling state of mind whereas brevity conveys telling effect.

Moreover, one word substitutions are indispensable while writing a precis of a given passage. A student is required not to exceed the limit of words. They come in handy in such situations. Hence their significance cannot be gainsaid and students are advised to learn them very seriously.

A few of one word substitutes are given below for the benefit of the students.

### (A) One Words Denoting Persons

1. **Agnostic** one who is not sure about God's existence
2. **Altruist** a lover of mankind (*Syn.-Philanthropist*)
3. **Amateur** one who does a thing for pleasure and not as a profession
4. **Ambidexterous** one who can use either hand with ease
5. **Anarchist** one who is out to destroy all governments, peace and order
6. **Apostate** a person who has changed his faith
7. **Arbitrator** a person appointed by two parties to solve a dispute
8. **Ascetic** one who leads an austere life
9. **Atheist** a person who does not believe in God (*Ant.-Theist*)
10. **Bankrupt** one who is unable to pay his debts (*Syn.-Insolvent*)
11. **Bigot** one who is filled with excessive enthusiasm in religious matters (*Syn.-Fanatic*)
12. **Bohemian** an unconventional style of living

13. **Cacographist** one who is bad in spellings
14. **Cannibal** one who feeds on human flesh
15. **Carnivorous** one who feeds on flesh
16. **Chauvinist** a person who is blindly devoted to an idea
17. **Connoisseur** a critical judge of any art and craft
18. **Contemporaries** persons living at the same time
19. **Convalescent** one who is recovering health after illness
20. **Coquette** a girl/woman who flirts with men
21. **Cosmopolitan** a person who regards the whole world as his country
22. **Cynosure** one who is a centre of attraction
23. **Cynic** one who sneers at the beliefs of others
24. **Debonair** suave (polished and light hearted person)
25. **Demagogue** a leader who sways his followers by his oratory
26. **Dilettante** a dabbler (not serious) in art, science and literature
27. **Effeminate** a man who is womanish in his habits
28. **Egoist** a lover of oneself, of one's advancement
29. **Egotist** one who often talks of his achievements
30. **Emigrant** a person who leaves his country to settle in another country  
(*Ant. – Immigrant*)
31. **Epicure** one who is for pleasure of eating and drinking
32. **Fastidious** one hard to please (very selective in his habits)
33. **Fatalist** one who believes in fate
34. **Feminist** one who works for the welfare of women (*Syn. – Philogynist*)
35. **Fugitive** one who runs away from justice (*Syn. – Absconding person*)
36. **Gourmand** a lover of good food
37. **Gourmet** a connoisseur of food
38. **Henpecked** a husband ruled by his wife
39. **Hedonist** one who believes that sensual pleasure is the chief good
40. **Heretic** one who acts against religion
41. **Herbivorous** one that lives on herbs
42. **Honorary** one who holds a post without any salary
43. **Highbrow** a person considering himself to be superior in culture and intellect (*Syn. – Snob*)
44. **Hypochondriac** who is over anxious about his health
45. **Iconoclast** one who is breaker of images and traditions
46. **Illiterate** one who does not know reading or writing (*Ant. – Literate*)
47. **Immigrant** a person who comes to a country from his own country for settling (*Ant. – Emigrant*)
48. **Impregnable** that cannot be entered by force (*Ant. – Pregnable*)

49. **Impostor** one who pretends to be somebody else
50. **Indefatigable** one who does not tire easily
51. **Introvert** one who does not express himself freely (*Ant. – Extrovert*)
52. **Insolvent** a person who is unable to pay his debts (*Syn. – Bankrupt*)
53. **Itinerant** one who journeys from place to place (*Nomadic*)
54. **Invincible** one too strong to be defeated (*Ant. – Vincible*)
55. **Invulnerable** one that cannot be harmed/wounded (*Ant. – Vulnerable*)
56. **Libertine** a person who leads an immoral life (*Syn. – Lecher*)
57. **Martyr** one who dies for a noble cause
58. **Mercenary** one who does something for the sake of money (*bad sense*)
59. **Misanthrope** one who hates mankind (*Ant. – Philanthropist*)
60. **Misogamist** one who hates the institution of marriage
61. **Misologist** one who hates knowledge (*Ant. – Bibliologist*)
62. **Namesake** a person having the same name as another
63. **Narcissist** lover of self
64. **Novice** one who is inexperienced in anything (*Syn. – Tyro*)
65. **Numismatist** one who collects coins
66. **Omnivorous** one who eats everything
67. **Optimist** a person who looks at the bright side of thing (*Ant. – Pessimist*)
68. **Orphan** one who has lost one's parents
69. **Philanthropist** one who loves mankind (*Ant. – Misanthrope*)
70. **Philogynist** one who works for the welfare of women (*Ant. – Misogynist*)
71. **Polyglot** one who speaks many languages (*Syn. – Linguist*)
72. **Pacifist** one who hates war, loves peace
73. **Pessimist** one who looks at the dark side of life (*Ant. – Optimist*)
74. **Philanderer** one who amuses oneself by love making
75. **Philistine** one who does not care for art and literature
76. **Posthumous** a child born after the death of father  
or a book published after the death of the author  
or an award received after the death of the recipient
77. **Philatelist** one who collects stamps
78. **Pedestrian** one who goes on foot
79. **Recluse** one who lives in seclusion
80. **Sadist** a person who feels pleasure by hurting others
81. **Samaritan** one who helps the needy and the helpless
82. **Somnambulist** a person who walks in sleep
83. **Somniloquist** a person who talks in sleep
84. **Stoic** a person who is indifferent to pain and pleasures of life
85. **Swashbuckler** a boastful fellow

86. Teetotaller	one who does not take any intoxicating drugs
87. Termagant	a noisy quarrelsome woman, a shrew
88. Truant	one who remains absent from duty without permission
89. Topper/Sot	one who is a habitual drunkard
90. Uxorious	one extremely fond of one's wife
91. Veteran	one who has a long experience of any occupation
92. Versatile	one who adapts oneself readily to various situations
93. Virtuoso	one who is brilliant performer on stage ( <i>specially music</i> )
94. Volunteer	one who offers one's services
95. Verbose	a style full of difficult words

#### (B) One Words Denoting General Objects

1. Abdication	voluntary giving up of throne in favour of someone
2. Almanac	an annual calendar with position of stars
3. Amphibian	animal that live both on land and sea
4. Allegory	a story that expresses ideas through symbols
5. Anomaly	departure from common rule
6. Aquatic	animals that live in water
7. Autobiography	the life history of a person written by himself
8. Axiom	a statement accepted as true without proof
9. Anonymous	bearing no name
10. Belligerent	one that is in a war-like mood ( <i>Syn.-Bellicose</i> )
11. Biography	the life history of a person ( <i>written by some other person</i> )
12. Biopsy	examination of living tissue
13. Blasphemy	an act of speaking against religion ( <i>Heresy</i> )
14. Chronology	events presented in order of occurrence
15. Conscription	compulsory enlistment for military service
16. Crusade	a religious war
17. Drawn	a game that results neither in victory nor in defeat
18. Eatable	anything to be eaten
19. Edible	fit to be eaten
20. Encyclopaedia	a book that contains information on various subjects
21. Ephemeral	lasting for a very short time/a day
22. Epilogue	a concluding speech/comment at the end of the play ( <i>Ant.-Prologue</i> )
23. Extempore	a speech made without preparation ( <i>Syn.-Impromptu</i> )
24. Fable	a story relating to birds/animals with a moral in the end
25. Facsimile	an exact copy of handwriting, printing ( <i>Syn.-Xerox</i> )
26. Fatal	that causes death

27. <b>Fauna</b>	the animals of a particular region
28. <b>Flora</b>	the flowers of a particular region
29. <b>Fragile</b>	that can be easily broken
30. <b>Gregarious</b>	animals which live in a flock, used for human beings also ( <i>Syn. – Sociable</i> )
31. <b>Illegible</b>	incapable of being read ( <i>Ant. – Legible</i> )
32. <b>Inaccessible</b>	a person/place that cannot be easily approached ( <i>Ant. – Accessible</i> )
33. <b>Impracticable</b>	incapable of being practised ( <i>Ant. – Practicable</i> )
34. <b>Inaudible</b>	a sound that cannot be heard ( <i>Ant. – Audible</i> )
35. <b>Incorrigible</b>	incapable of being corrected ( <i>Ant. – Corrigible</i> )
36. <b>Irreparable</b>	incapable of being repaired ( <i>Ant. – Repairable</i> )
37. <b>Indelible</b>	a mark that cannot be erased ( <i>Ant. – Delible</i> )
38. <b>Infallible</b>	one who is free from all mistakes and failures ( <i>Ant. – Fallible</i> )
39. <b>Inedible</b>	not fit to eat ( <i>Ant. – Edible</i> )
40. <b>Inflammable</b>	liable to catch fire easily ( <i>Ant. – Non-inflammable</i> )
41. <b>Inevitable</b>	that cannot be avoided ( <i>Ant. – Evitable</i> )
42. <b>Indispensable</b>	that cannot be dispensed with, removed ( <i>Ant. – Dispensable</i> )
43. <b>Interregnum</b>	a period of interval between two regimes and governments
44. <b>Intelligible</b>	that can be understood ( <i>Ant. – Unintelligible</i> )
45. <b>Lunar</b>	of the moon
46. <b>Maiden</b>	a speech or an attempt made by a person for the first time
47. <b>Mammal</b>	an animal that gives milk
48. <b>Manuscript</b>	a matter written by hand
49. <b>Nostalgia</b>	home sickness, memories of the past
50. <b>Omnipresent</b>	one who is present everywhere
51. <b>Omnipotent</b>	one who is all powerful
52. <b>Omniscient</b>	one who knows all
53. <b>Parable</b>	a short story with a moral
54. <b>Parole</b>	pledge given by a prisoner for temporary release not to escape
55. <b>Panacea</b>	a remedy for all ills
56. <b>Pantheism</b>	the belief that God pervades nature
57. <b>Pedantic</b>	a style meant to display one's knowledge
58. <b>Plagiarism</b>	literary theft or passing off an author's original work as one's own
59. <b>Platonic</b>	something spiritual (love)
60. <b>Portable</b>	that can be carried in hand
61. <b>Potable</b>	fit to drink

62. Plebiscite	a decision made by public voting
63. Pseudonym	an imaginary name assumed by an author
64. Quarantine	an act of separation from a person to avoid infection
65. Quadruped	an animal with four feet
66. Refrendum	general vote of the public to decide a question ( <i>Syn.-Plebiscite</i> )
67. Red-tapism	official formality resulting in delay
68. Regalia	dress with medals, ribbons worn at official ceremonies ( <i>Syn.-Raiment</i> )
69. Sacrilege	violating the sanctity of religious places/objects ( <i>Syn.-Desecration</i> )
70. Sinecure	a job with high salary but a little responsibility
71. Soliloquy	a speech made when one is alone
72. Soporific	a medicine that induces sleep
73. Souvenir	a thing kept in memory of an event ( <i>Syn.-Momento</i> )
74. Swan song	the last literary work of a writer/an artist
75. Solar	of the sun
76. Transparent	that can be seen through ( <i>Ant.-Opaque</i> )
77. Venial	a slight fault that can be forgiven
78. Verbatim	repetition of a speech or a writing word for word
79. Utopia	an imaginary land with perfect social order
80. Zodiac	a diagram showing the path of planets

### (C) One Words Denoting Places

1. Abattoir	a place where animals are slaughtered for the market
2. Apiary	a place where bees are kept
3. Aquarium	a tank for fishes
4. Arena	a place for wrestling
5. Arsenal	a place for ammunition and weapons
6. Asylum	a place for lunatics and political refugees
7. Aviary	a place where birds are kept ( <i>Syn.-Volory</i> )
8. Archives	a place where government records are kept
9. Burrow	the dwelling place of an animal underground
10. Cache	a place where ammunition is hidden
11. Cage	a place for birds
12. Casino	a place with gambling tables etc
13. Cemetery	a graveyard where the dead are burried
14. Cloakroom	a place for luggage at a railway station
15. Convent	a residence for nuns

16. **Creche** a nursery where children of working parents are cared for while their parents are at work
17. **Crematorium** a cremation ground where the last funeral rites are performed
18. **Decanter** an ornamental glass bottle for holding wine or other alcoholic drinks
19. **Dormitory** the sleeping rooms in a college or public institution
20. **Drey** a squirrel's home
21. **Elysium** a paradise with perfect bliss
22. **Gymnasium** a place where athletic exercises are performed
23. **Granary** a place for storing grain
24. **Hangar** a place for housing aeroplanes
25. **Hive** a place for bees
26. **Hutch** a wooden box with a front of wire for rabbits
27. **Infirmary** a home for old persons
28. **Kennel** a house of shelter for a dog
29. **Lair/Den** the resting place of a wild animal
30. **Mint** a place where money is coined
31. **Menagerie** a place for wild animals and birds (*Sanctuary*)
32. **Monastery** a residence for monks or priests
33. **Morgue** a place where dead bodies are kept for identification
34. **Mortuary** a place where dead bodies are kept for post-mortem
35. **Orchard** a place where fruit trees are grown
36. **Orphanage** a place where orphans are housed
37. **Pantry** a place for provisions etc in the house
38. **Portfolio** a portable case for holding papers, drawing etc
39. **Reservoir** a place where water is collected and stored
40. **Resort** a place frequented for reasons of pleasure or health
41. **Stable** a house of shelter for a horse
42. **Sty** a place where pigs are kept
43. **Scullery** a place where plates, dishes, pots and other cooking utensils are washed up
44. **Sheath, Scabbard** a case in which the blade of a sword is kept
45. **Sanatorium** a place for the sick to recover health
46. **Tannery** a place where leather is tanned
47. **Wardrobe** a place for clothes

**(D) One Words Denoting Professions**

1. **Anchor** a person who presents a radio/television programme
2. **Anthropologist** one who studies the evolution of mankind
3. **Astronaut** a person, who travels in spacecraft
4. **Calligraphist** a person who writes beautiful writing
5. **Cartographer** one who draws maps
6. **Choreographer** one who teaches art of dancing
7. **Chauffeur** one who drives a motor car
8. **Compere** one who introduces performing artistes on the stage programmes
9. **Curator** one who is incharge of a museum/a cricket pitch
10. **Florist** one who deals in flowers
11. **Invigilator** one who supervises in the examination hall
12. **Laxicographer** one who compiles a dictionary
13. **Radio Jockey** one who presents a radio programme
14. **Psephologist** one who studies the pattern of voting in elections
15. **Sculptor** one who gives shape to stone
16. **Usurer** one who lends money at very high rates

**(E) One Words Denoting Kinds of Governments**

1. **Anarchy** absence of Government
2. **Aristocracy** Government by the nobles/lords
3. **Autocracy** Government by one person (*Syn.-Dictatorship*)
4. **Autonomy** the right of self-government
5. **Bureaucracy** Government run by officials
6. **Democracy** Government by the people
7. **Gerontocracy** Government by old men
8. **Kekistocracy** Government by the worst citizen
9. **Neocracy** Government by the inexperienced persons
10. **Ochlocracy** Government by mob (*Syn.-Mobocracy*)
11. **Oligarchy** Government by a few persons
12. **Panarchy** Government run universally
13. **Plutocracy** Government by the rich
14. **Secular** Government not by the laws of religion
15. **Monarchy** Government by a King/Queen
16. **Thearchy** Government by the Gods
17. **Theocracy** Government by the laws of religion

**(F) One Words Denoting Killings/Deaths of Persons**

1. **Cemetery** a graveyard where the dead are buried
2. **Cortege** a funeral procession comprising a number of mourners
3. **Cremation ground/Crematorium** a place where the last funeral rites are performed
4. **Obituary** an account in the newspaper about the funeral of the deceased
5. **Elegy** a poem of lamentation on the death of someone loved and admired
6. **Epitaph** words inscribed on the grave/tomb in the memory of the one buried
7. **Filicide** murder of one's children
8. **Foeticide** murder of a foetus
9. **Fatricide** murder of one's brother
10. **Genocide** murder of race
11. **Homicide** murder of a man/woman
12. **Infanticide** murder of an infant
13. **Matricide** murder of one's mother
14. **Parricide** murder of one's parents
15. **Patricide** murder of one's father
16. **Regicide** murder of king or queen
17. **Suicide** murder of oneself
18. **Uxoricide** murder of one's wife
19. **Sororicide** murder of one's sister
20. **Mortuary** a place where dead bodies are kept for postmortem
21. **Morgue** a place where bodies are kept for identification
22. **Postmortem** Medical Examination of a dead body (*Syn.-Autopsy*)

**(G) One Words Denoting Marriages**

1. **Adultery** the practice of having extra-marital relations
2. **Alimony** an allowance paid to wife on divorce
3. **Bigamy** the practice of having two wives or husbands at a time
4. **Celibacy** a state of abstention from marriage
5. **Concubinage** live-in relationship—a man and a woman living without being married
6. **Misogamist** one who hates marriage
7. **Matrimony** a state of being married
8. **Monogamy** the practice of marrying one at a time
9. **Polygamy** the practice of marrying more than one wife at a time
10. **Polyandry** the practice of marrying more than one husband at a time
11. **Spinister** an older woman who is not married

**(H) One Words Denoting Time Periods**

1. Annual	happening once in a year
2. Biennial	happening in two years
3. Triennial	happening in three years
4. Quadrennial	happening in four years
5. Quinquennial	happening in five years
6. Decennial	happening in ten years
7. Semicentennial	50th anniversary
8. Centennial ( <i>Centenary</i> )	100th anniversary
9. Sesquicentennial	150th anniversary
10. Bicentennial ( <i>Bicentenary</i> )	200th anniversary
11. Triennial ( <i>Tercentenary</i> )	300th anniversary
12. Tetra centennial	400th anniversary
13. Pentacentennial	500th anniversary
14. Sexagenarian	one who is in sixties
15. Septuagenarian	one who is in seventies
16. Octagenarian	one who is in eighties
17. Nonagenarian	one who is in nineties
18. Centenarian	one who is hundred years old
19. Century	a period of hundred years
20. Millennium	a period of 1000 years

**(I) One Words Denoting Groups (People, Animals, Birds and Things)**

1. Agenda	a list of business matters at a meeting
2. Alliance	a state of relationship formed between states, powers etc
3. Anthology	a collection of poems
4. Attendance/ Retinue	a number of servants, persons present with a person in authority
5. Audience	a number of people gathered to listen
6. Band	a group of musicians, followers
7. Batch	a group of pupils
8. Battery	a group of heavy guns
9. Bale	a large quantity of cotton tied in a bundle
10. Bench	the office of judges or magistrates
11. Bevy	a large group of girls/ladies
12. Block	a group of houses or buildings bounded by four sides
13. Bouquet	a bunch of flowers
14. Brood	a family of youngones
15. Brace	a pair of pigeons

16. <b>Board</b>	decision-making body of directors
17. <b>Cache</b>	of arms, store house for hiding
18. <b>Caravan</b>	a group of people travelling with their vehicles or animals
19. <b>Catalogue</b>	a list of books
20. <b>Caucus</b>	of inner circle of members of government
21. <b>Clique</b>	a small group of persons belonging to a body
22. <b>Circle</b>	a group of friends
23. <b>Claque</b>	a group of applauders <i>i.e.</i> , paid to clap
24. <b>Cloud</b>	of locusts
25. <b>Cluster</b>	a group of islands
26. <b>Code</b>	a systematic collection of laws
27. <b>Colony/column</b>	a group of people of one race moving in the same direction
28. <b>Constellation</b>	a series of stars
29. <b>Chest</b>	of drawers
30. <b>Congress</b>	a meeting of delegates
31. <b>Convoy</b>	a group of trucks/lorries travelling together under protection
32. <b>Cortege</b>	a funeral procession
33. <b>Course</b>	a series of lectures or lessons
34. <b>Conference</b>	a meeting of preachers, delegates
35. <b>Congregation</b>	a group of worshippers
36. <b>Crew</b>	of sailors manning ships
37. <b>Drove</b>	a flock of cattle (being driven)
38. <b>Flight</b>	the action of flying of birds
39. (a) <b>Flotilla</b>	a small fleet of boats
(b) <b>Fleet</b>	of ships
40. <b>Galaxy</b>	a system of millions of stars, beauties
41. <b>Gallery</b>	a room that contains pictures and statues displayed for sale
42. <b>Grove</b>	a small orchard of trees
43. <b>Hamlet</b>	a group of houses in a village
44. <b>Haul</b>	a number of fish (in a net) caught at one time
45. <b>Heap</b>	a number of ruins, stones
46. <b>Herd</b>	a large group of animals that live together
47. <b>Hive</b>	(swarm) of bees
48. <b>Host</b>	a large number of people, reasons, considerations
49. <b>Horde</b>	of people, robbers
50. <b>Jumble</b>	an untidy collection of things
51. <b>Litter</b>	of young pigs, dogs at birth
52. <b>Lock</b>	a section of hair
53. <b>Order</b>	a society of knights, monks living under the same rule

54. Panel	a small group of Inspectors, examiners for investigation
55. Poultry	of fowls, ducks etc
56. Posse	a group of policemen
57. Rosary	a string of beads
58. School	a group of thinkers or learned men sharing similar ideas
59. Sea	of troubles, difficulties, cares
60. Series	a number of similar events, matches, lectures
61. Shoal	a large number of fish swimming together
62. Sheaf	of corn, wheat
63. String	a sequence of similar items
64. Stream	a continuous flow of people/visitors
65. Suite	a set of followers, rooms, furniture
66. Suit	a set of clothes made of same fabric
67. Syllabus	the topics of studies
68. Swarm	of flies or locusts, bees, ants
69. Truss	a frame-work of rafters, posts and bars
70. Syndicate	a group of merchants
71. Team	a group of players, horses, oxen
72. Throng	a large crowd of people
73. Tissue	of lies or crimes
74. Troupe	a group of artists, dancers or acrobats
75. Torrent	of abusive invectives, of rain
76. Tuft	of grass, hair
77. Union	a political unit containing a number of states
78. Barrage	of questions
79. Volley	a number of arrows, stones, abuses
80. World	of cares, troubles

#### (J) One Words Denoting Science and Arts

1. Acoustics	the study of sound
2. Aeronautics	the science or art of flight
3. Aesthetics	the philosophy of fine arts
4. Agronomy	the science of soil management and the production of field crops
5. Alchemy	Chemistry in ancient times
6. Bibliography	the study of history of a list of books on a subject
7. Anatomy	the science dealing with the structure of animals, plants or human body
8. Anthropology	the science that deals with the origin, physical and cultural development of mankind

9. **Arboriculture** cultivation of trees and vegetables
10. **Astrology** the ancient art of predicting the course of human destinies with the help of indications deduced from the position and movement of the heavenly bodies
11. **Bacteriology** the study of bacteria
12. **Botany** the study of plants
13. **Calligraphy** the art of beautiful handwriting
14. **Ceramics, Pottery** the art and technology of making objects from clay etc
15. **Chronobiology** the study of duration of life
16. **Chronology** the science of arranging time in periods and ascertaining the dates and historical order of the past events
17. **Chromatics** the art of making fireworks
18. **Cosmogony** the science of the nature of heavenly bodies
19. **Cosmography** the science that describes and maps the main features of the universe
20. **Cosmology** the science of the nature, origin and history of the universe
21. **Cryogenics** the science of dealing with the production control and the application of very low temperatures
22. **Cypher** the art of secret writings
23. **Cytology** the study of cells, especially their formation, structure and functions
24. **Dactylography** the study of finger prints for the purpose of identification
25. **Dactylogy** the technique of communication by signs made with the fingers. It is generally used by the deaf
26. **Demography** the study of human population with the help of the records of the number of births and deaths
27. **Ecology** the study of the relation of animals and plants to their surroundings, animate and inanimate
28. **Entomology** the study of insects
29. **Epigraphy** the study of inscriptions
30. **Ethnology** the study of human races
31. **Ethology** the study of animal behaviour
32. **Etymology** the study of origin and history of words (Morphology)
33. **Eugenics** the study of production of better offspring by the careful selection of parents
34. **Ergonomy** the study of effect of environment on workers
35. **Ganealogy** the study of family ancestries and histories
36. **Genetics** the branch of biology dealing with the phenomenon of heredity and the laws governing it
37. **Geology** the science that deals with the physical history of the earth
38. **Gymnastics** the art of performing acrobatics feats

39. <b>Heliotherapy</b>	the sun cure
40. <b>Histology</b>	the study of tissues
41. <b>Horticulture</b>	the cultivation of flowers, fruits, vegetables and ornamental plants
42. <b>Hydrotherapy</b>	the treatment of diseases by the internal and external use of water
43. <b>Hagiology</b>	study of the lives of saints
44. <b>Iconography</b>	teaching with the aid of pictures and models
45. <b>Iconology</b>	the study of symbolic representations
46. <b>Jurisprudence</b>	the science of law
47. <b>Lexicography</b>	the writing or compiling of dictionaries
48. <b>Numismatics</b>	the study of coins and metals
49. <b>Odontology</b>	the scientific study of the teeth
50. <b>Ornithology</b>	the study of birds
51. <b>Orthoepy</b>	the study of correct pronunciation
52. <b>Pedagogy</b>	the art or method of teaching
53. <b>Petrology</b>	the study of rocks/crust
54. <b>Philately</b>	the collection and study of postage/revenue stamps etc
55. <b>Philology</b>	the study of written records, their authenticity etc
56. <b>Phonetics</b>	the study of speech sounds and the production, transmission, reception
57. <b>Physiognomy</b>	the study of human face
58. <b>Paleography</b>	the study of ancient writings
59. <b>Rhetoric</b>	the art of elegant speech or writing
60. <b>Sericulture</b>	the raising of silk worms for the production of raw silk
61. <b>Seismology</b>	the study of earthquakes and the phenomenon associated with it
62. <b>Speleology</b>	the study of caves
63. <b>Telepathy</b>	communication between minds by some means other than sensory perception
64. <b>Zoology</b>	the study of animal life

**(K) One Words Denoting Phobias/Mental Disorders**

The word phobia comes from 'Phobus' a minor Roman God (Son of Mars and Aphrodite) who accompanied his war God Father into the battle to spread fear among the enemy. Warriors carried shields bearing Phobus to reinforce the power of this fear God.

1. Acrophobia	high places
2. Aerophobia	fear of air
3. Aglophobia	of pain
4. Altiphobia	of altitude
5. Anorexia	fear of getting fat makes young girls stop eating resulting in harmful effect
6. Agorophobia	of public/place open
7. Androphobia	of males
8. Autophobia	of solitude
9. Bathophobia	of depths
10. Bibliophobia	of books
11. Cacophobia	of ugliness
12. Catrophobia	of doctors
13. Cellophobia	extreme fear about beauty
14. Chronophobia	of time
15. Cynophobia	of dogs
16. Claustrophobia	of being confined to small place
17. Dipsophobia	of thirst
18. Dipsomania	morbid compulsion to drink
19. Demonomania	delusion of being under evil spirits
20. Entomophobia	of insects
21. Ergophobia	of work
22. Gamophobia	of marriage
23. Genophobia	of birth
24. Gerophobia	of old age
25. Gnosiophobia	of knowledge
26. Graphophobia	of writing
27. Gynaephobia	of women
28. Haemetophobia	of blood
29. Hedonophobia	of pleasure
30. Hodophobia	of travel
31. Hydrophobia	of water
32. Kleptophobia	of stealing/thieves
33. Kleptomania	a compulsive desire to steal
34. Lipophobia	of getting fat

35. Logophobia	of study
36. Logomania	mania for talking
37. Maieusiophobia	of childbirth
38. Metrophobia	of motherhood
39. Menemophobia	of old memories
40. Monophobia	of loneliness, of being alone
41. Mysophobia	of filth, contamination
42. Magalomania	delusion about one's greatness
43. Nyctophobia	of darkness
44. Ophthalmophobia	of eyes
45. Ochlophobia	of crowds/mobs
46. Paedophobia	of children
47. Pathophobia	of disease/sickness
48. Peniophobia	of poverty/money problem
49. Pharmacophobia	of medicine
50. Phasmophobia	of ghosts
51. Xenophobia	of foreigners
52. Pyrophobia	of fire
53. Thanatophobia	of death
54. Scelerophobia	of burglars
55. Theophobia	of God
56. Toxicophobia	of poison
57. Triskaidekaphobia	of number thirteen
58. Theomania	a delusion that one is God

### (L) One Words Denoting Young-ones

Adult	Young-one	Adult	Young-one
1. Ass	Foal	2. Bird	Nestling
3. Butterfly, moth	Caterpillar	4. Cat	Kitten
5. Cock	Cockerel	6. Cow	Calf
7. Cow	Heifer	8. Deer	Fawn
9. Dog	Puppy	10. Duck	Duckling
11. Eagle	Eaglet	12. Elephant	Calf
13. Fowl	Chicken	14. Frog (toad)	Tadpole
15. Goat	Kid	16. Goose	Gosling
17. Hare	Leveret	18. Hen	Pullet
19. Horse	Foal, colt	20. Lion, Bear, Fox	Cub
21. Mare	Filly	22. Owl	Owlet
23. Pig	Piglet	24. Sheep	Lamb
25. Stallion (horse)	Colt or Foal	26. Swan	Cygnet

**(M) One Words Denoting Distinctive Sounds**

<b>Animal</b>	<b>Sound</b>	<b>Animal</b>	<b>Sound</b>
1. Apes	Gibber	2. Arms	Clang
3. Asses	Bray	4. A person in agony	Moan
5. Babies	Lisp	6. Bees	Hum
7. Beetles	Drone	8. Bells	Jingle/chime
9. Birds	Chirp, warble	10. Brakes	Screech
11. Cattle	Low	12. Camels	Grunt
13. Cats	Mew	14. Chains	Clank
15. Coins	Jingle/tinkle	16. Corks	Pop
17. Cocks	Crow	18. Crows	Crow, caw
19. Deer	Bell	20. Dogs	Bark
21. Doors	Creak/bang	22. Doves	Coo
23. Duck	Quack	24. Elephants	Trumpet
25. Fire	Crackle	26. Flies	Buzz
27. Frogs	Croak	28. Glasses	Tinkle
29. Goats	Bleat	30. Guns	Roar
31. Hens	Cackle	32. Hoofs	Clatter
33. Horses	Neigh	34. Silk	Rustle
35. Hyenas	Laugh	36. Jackals	Howl
37. Larks	Sing, warble	38. Leaves	Rustle
39. Lions	Roar	40. Mice	Squeak
41. Monkeys	Gibber	42. Nightingales	Sing, warble
43. Owls	Hoot	44. Oxen/cow	Low
45. Paper	Crinkle	46. Parrots	Talk
47. Pigeons	Coo	48. Pigs	Squeal
49. Ravens	Croak	50. Rain	Patter
51. Rivers	Murmur	52. Serpents	Hiss
53. Silk	Rustle	54. Teeth	Chatter
55. Tigers	Roar	56. Trees	Sigh
57. Water	Ripple	58. Whip	Crack
59. Wind	Whistle	60. Wings	Flap

**(N) One Words Denoting Diminutives**

'Diminutives' are the words that indicate smallness. Such words are often used as an expression, of affection or contempt. Diminutives are normally formed by the use of suffixes such as 'let' etc. For example the diminutive of the book may be formed by the use of 'let'—Booklet.

Word	Diminutive	Word	Diminutive
1. Ankle	Anklet	2. Babe	Baby
3. Ball	Ballet, Bullet	4. Baron	Baronet
5. Book	Booklet	6. Brace	Bracelet
7. Brook	Brooklet	8. Car	Chariot
9. Cask	Casket	10. City	Citadel
11. Cigar	Cigarette	12. Corn	Kernel
13. Crown	Coronet	14. Dear	Darling
15. Grain	Granule	16. Hill	Hillock
17. Home	Hamlet	18. Ice	Icicle
19. Isle	Islet	20. Lady Purse	Reticule
21. Latch	Latchet	22. Leaf	Leaflet
23. Lock	Locket	24. Nest	Nestling
25. Nose	Nozzle	26. Part	Particle
27. Poet	Poetaster	28. Pouch	Pocket
29. Ring	Ringlet	30. River	Rivulet
31. Sack	Satchel	32. Star	Starlet, Asterisk
33. Statue	Statuette	34. Stream	Streamlet
35. Table	Tablet	36. Top	Tip
37. Tower	Turret	38. Umbrella	Parasol
39. Weak	Weakling		

**(O) One Words Denoting Comparisons**

1. As *blind* as a bat.
2. As *bitter* as gall hemlock.
3. As *cheerful* as a lark.
4. As *cunning, sly, wily* as a fox.
5. As *fair* as a rose.
6. As *fast* as a hare, light, storm, eagle.
7. As *firm* as a rock.
8. As *flat* as a board or a pancake.
9. As *free* as air.
10. As *fresh* as a daisy or a rose.
11. As *grave* as a judge.
12. As *greedy* as a dog or a wolf.
13. As *gentle* as a lamb.
14. As *hard* as a flint or a stone.
15. As *harmless* as a dove.
16. As *hungry* as a horse or a hunter.
17. As *light* as a feather.
18. As *merry* as a cricket.
19. As *obstinate* as a mule.
20. As *pale* as death or ghost.
21. As *playful* as a butterfly or a kitten or a squirrel.

22. As *proud* as a peacock.  
24. As *soft* as butter.  
26. As *tricky* as a monkey.  
28. As *wise* as a serpent or Solomon.  
30. As *agile* as a cat, monkey.  
32. As *black* as ebony/coal.  
34. As *boisterous* as stormy sea winds.  
36. As *brief* as time—as a dream.  
38. As *candid* as mirrors.  
40. As *constant* as the sun.  
42. As *cosy* as the nest of a bird.  
44. As *deceptive* as the mirage of the desert.  
45. As *docile* as a lamb.  
47. As *fresh* as dew, as a sea breeze, rose.  
49. As *haggard* as spectres, ghosts.  
51. As *heavy* as lead.  
52. As *inconsistent* as the moon, as the waves.  
53. As *industrious* as an ant.  
55. As *mad* as a hatter, as a March hare.  
57. As *meek* as a dove, mouse.  
59. As *resistless* as wind.  
61. As *secure* as the grave.  
63. As *solitary* as a tomb.  
65. As *transparent* as glass.  
67. As *vain* as a peacock.  
69. As *zig-zag* as lightning.  
71. As *white* as snow.  
73. As *dear* as life.  
75. As *impatient* as a lover.  
77. As *old* as hills.  
79. As *sharp* as razor.
23. As *slippery* as an eel.  
25. As *silent* as the dead or stars.  
27. As *true* as steel.  
29. As *yielding* as wax.  
31. As *far apart* as the poles.  
33. As *blithe* as May.  
35. As *bounteous* as nature.  
37. As *brittle* as glass.  
39. As *chaste* as Minerva.  
41. As *cool* as cucumber.  
43. As *dangerous* as machine-guns.  
46. As *fit* as a fiddle.  
48. As *grim* as death.  
50. As *harsh* as truth.  
54. As *inevitable* as death/fate.  
56. As *mean* as a miser.  
58. As *nervous* as a mouse.  
60. As *restless* as ambition, as the sea.  
62. As *slow* as a snail.  
64. As *talkative* as a magpie.  
66. As *treacherous* as memory.  
68. As *vigilant* as stars.  
70. As *uncertain* as the weather.  
72. As *hungry* as church mouse.  
74. As *straight* as an arrow.  
76. As *swift* as an arrow.  
78. As *cold* as marble.  
80. As *busy* as a bee.

**Exercise A**

**Directions** *Out of the four alternatives, choose the one which can be substituted for the given words/sentences.* [SSC CGL 2014]

1. Medicine given to counteract poison.  
(a) Antibiotic (b) Antiseptic  
(c) Antidote (d) Antifungal
2. One who hates marriage.  
(a) Misanthrope (b) Misogamist  
(c) Misogynist (d) Polygamist
3. Thawing snow.  
(a) Sludge (b) Slush  
(c) Slosh (d) Slash
4. One who specialises in the mathematics of insurance.  
(a) A statistician (b) An actuary  
(c) An agent (d) Aninrurant
5. Violation of the sanctity of the Church.  
(a) Infringement (b) Irreverence  
(c) Sacrilege (d) Transgression
6. Of one mind or opinion.  
(a) Voluntary (b) Referendum  
(c) Homogenous (d) Unanimous
7. One who is always doubting.  
(a) Sceptic (b) Deist  
(c) Rationalist (d) Positivist
8. A collection of slaves.  
(a) Coffle (b) Crew  
(c) Company (d) Cortege
9. A professional soldier hired to serve in a foreign army.  
(a) Mercenary (b) Liquidator  
(c) Venal` (d) Hireling
10. Not likely to be easily pleased.  
(a) Fastidious (b) Infallible  
(c) Fatalist (d) Communist
11. The practise of having many wives.  
(a) Bigamy (b) Calligraphy  
(c) Polygamy (d) Polyandry
12. Take great pleasure.  
(a) Revel (b) Satisfied  
(c) Uphold (d) Overhaul
13. A strong dislike.  
(a) Reciprocity (b) Entreaty  
(c) Animosity (d) Malice

14. The Mahabharata is a long poem based on a noble theme.  
(a) Summary (b) Narration  
(c) Story (d) Epic
15. A person who abstains completely from alcoholic drinks.  
(a) Teetotaler (b) Derelict  
(c) Subjunctive (d) Incriminatory
16. Person who files a suit.  
(a) Charger (b) Suitor  
(c) Plaintiff (d) Accuse

**Directions** *Out of the four alternatives, choose the one which can be substituted for the given words/sentences.* [SSC MTS 2013]

17. To free anything from germs.  
(a) Cauterise (b) Sterilise  
(c) Antiseptic (d) Antivirus
18. The depository where state records and documents are preserved. [SSC CGL 2013]  
(a) Museum (b) Library  
(c) Emporium (d) Archive
19. A place where birds are kept.  
(a) Aviary (b) House  
(c) Aquarium (d) Apiary
20. Incapable of making errors.  
(a) Infallible (b) Incurable  
(c) Impervious (d) Inexplicable
21. Governed by a sense of duty.  
(a) Conscious (b) Sensible  
(c) Intelligent (d) Conscientious
22. An assembly of worshippers. [SSC LDC 2013]  
(a) Congregation (b) Conflagration  
(c) Configuration (d) Confrontation
23. A person who lives by himself.  
(a) Monk (b) Recluse  
(c) Extrovert (d) Prophet

**Directions** *Out of the four alternatives, choose the one which can be substituted for the given words/sentences.* [SSC CGL 2013]

24. To reduce to nothing.  
(a) Cull (b) Lull  
(c) Null (d) Annul
25. An obviously true or hackneyed statement.  
(a) Truism (b) Syllogism  
(c) Iconic (d) Imaginism
26. The act of producing beautiful handwriting using a brush or a special pen.  
(a) Hieroglyphics (b) Calligraphy  
(c) Stencilling (d) Graphics

27. A person of obscure position who has gained wealth.  
 (a) Extravagant (b) Promiscuous  
 (c) Parvenu (d) Sumptuary
28. A study of sounds.  
 (a) Semantics (b) Stylistics  
 (c) Linguistics (d) Phonetics
29. Property inherited from one's father or ancestors. [SSC MTS 2013, LDC 2010]  
 (a) Alimony (b) Patrimony  
 (c) Voluntary (d) Armistice
30. To bite like a rat. [SSC FCI 2012]  
 (a) Chew (b) Cut  
 (c) Split (d) Gnaw
31. A style in which a writer makes display of his knowledge.  
 (a) Ornate (b) Pedantic  
 (c) Artificial (d) Showy
32. One who performs daring gymnastic feats. [SSC SO 2003]  
 (a) Athlete (b) Juggler  
 (c) Acrobat (d) Conjuror
33. Rebellion against lawful authority. [SSC LDC 2012]  
 (a) Mutiny (b) Coup  
 (c) Revolution (d) Dissidence
34. Soldiers who fight on horseback.  
 (a) Infantry (b) Artillery  
 (c) Cavalry (d) Armoured
35. A man who wastes his money on luxury.  
 (a) Extempore (b) Thrifty  
 (c) Extravagant (d) Promiscuous
36. A person who is well known in an unfavourable way. [SSC DEO 2012]  
 (a) Notorious (b) Obscure  
 (c) Conspicuous (d) Ethical
37. To write under a different name.  
 (a) Anonymous (b) Biography  
 (c) Pseudonym (d) Masquerade

**Directions** *Out of the four alternatives, choose the one which can be substituted for the given words/sentences.* [SSC LDC 2012]

38. Fluent and clear in speech.  
 (a) Emotional (b) Enthusiastic  
 (c) Articulate (d) Confident
39. Spoken or done without preparation.  
 (a) Verbose (b) Extempore  
 (c) Amateur (d) Verbatim
40. Unfair advantages for members of one's own family. [SSC DEO 2012]  
 (a) Optimism (b) Plagiarism  
 (c) Nepotism (d) Regionalism

## Exercies B

**Directions** Each of the items in this section has a sentence with a blank space and four words given after the sentence. Select whichever word you consider most appropriate for the blank space.

[SSC CDS 2013]

- An accomplice is a partner in .....  
 (a) business (b) crime  
 (c) construction (d) gambling
- A person, who pretends to be what he is not is called an .....  
 (a) imbiber (b) impresario  
 (c) imitator (d) imposter
- His ..... nature would not let him leave his office before 5 pm.  
 (a) honest (b) selfish  
 (c) unscrupulous (d) conscientious
- The committee's appeal to the people for money ..... little response.  
 (a) evoked (b) provided  
 (c) provoked (d) prevented
- Too many skyscrapers ..... the view along the beach.  
 (a) reveal (b) obstruct  
 (c) make (d) clear
- Though he has several interim plans, his ..... aim is to become a billionaire.  
 (a) absolute (b) determined  
 (c) only (d) ultimate

**Directions** Out of the four alternatives, choose the one which can be substituted for the given words/sentences.

[SSC CGL 2013]

- An apartment building in which each apartment is owned separately by the people living in it, but also containing shared areas.  
 (a) Condominium (b) Multiplex  
 (c) Duplex (d) Caravan
- A group of three powerful people.  
 (a) Trio (b) Tritium  
 (c) Trivet (d) Triumvirate
- Operation of the body after death.  
 (a) Post-mortem (b) Obituary  
 (c) Homage (d) Mortuary
- Not allowing the passage of light.  
 (a) Oblique (b) Opaque  
 (c) Optique (d) Opulant
- Science regarding principles of classification.  
 (a) Taxidermy (b) Taxonomy  
 (c) Toxicology (d) Classicology
- A political leader appealing to popular desires and prejudices.  
 (a) Dictator (b) Tyrant  
 (c) Popularist (d) Demagogue

13. Enclosed in a small closed space.  
(a) Closophobia (b) Clusterophobia  
(c) Claustrophobia (d) Liftophobia

**Directions** *Out of the four alternatives, choose the one which can be substituted for the given words/sentences.* [SSC CGL 2012]

14. A person who thinks only about himself and not about others' needs.  
(a) Egocentric (b) Egomaniacal  
(c) Egoistic (d) Egotistic
15. Something that cannot be explained.  
(a) Inexplicable (b) Unthinkable  
(c) Impregnable (d) Mysterious
16. A written declaration made on oath in the presence of a magistrate.  
(a) Document (b) Affidavit  
(c) Dossier (d) Voucher
17. A raised place on which offerings to a God are made.  
(a) Mound (b) Rostrum  
(c) Church (d) Altar
18. A guide-post pointing out the way for a place.  
(a) Last-post (b) Finger-post  
(c) Lamp-post (d) Check-post
19. The art of preserving skin of animals, birds, fishes.  
(a) Topology (b) Taxonomy  
(c) Seismology (d) Taxidermy
20. Chanting of magic spells.  
(a) Narration (b) Recitation  
(c) Incantation (d) Utterance
21. A group of three books, films etc that have the same subject or characters.  
(a) Trinity (b) Trilogy  
(c) Trio (d) Tripod
22. A study of the human race.  
(a) Anthropology (b) Archaeology  
(c) Ethnology (d) Etymology
23. An expert in the area of the fine or other arts.  
(a) Neophyte (b) Amateur  
(c) Connoisseur (d) Enthusiast
24. Too much official formality.  
(a) Bureaucracy (b) Red-tapism  
(c) Diplomacy (d) Autocracy
25. Enclosure for birds.  
(a) Pen (b) Nest  
(c) Lair (d) Aviary
26. That cannot be conquered.  
(a) Invincible (b) Invulnerable  
(c) Intangible (d) Inevitable

27. Hard to please.  
(a) Loquacious (b) Stubborn  
(c) Fastidious (d) Epicurean
28. A person eighty years of age.  
(a) Septogenarian (b) Nonagenarian  
(c) Octogenarian (d) Sexagenarian

**Directions** *Out of the four alternatives, choose the one which can be substituted for the given words/sentences.* [SSC CGL 2011]

29. An inscription on a tomb.  
(a) Espionage (b) Epilogue  
(c) Epitaph (d) Elegy
30. Feeling inside you which tells you what is right and what is wrong.  
(a) Cleverness (b) Conscience  
(c) Consciousness (d) Fear
31. Release of a prisoner from jail on certain terms and condition.  
(a) Parole (b) Parley  
(c) Pardon (d) Acquittal
32. Loss of memory.  
(a) Ambrosia (b) Amnesia  
(c) Insomnia (d) Forgetting
33. To struggle helplessly.  
(a) Flounder (b) Founder  
(c) Fumble (d) Finger

**Directions** *Out of the four alternatives, choose the one which can be substituted for the given words/sentences.* [SSC CGL 2011]

34. Code of diplomatic etiquette and precedence.  
(a) Statesmanship (b) Diplomacy  
(c) Hierarchy (d) Protocol
35. To renounce a high position of authority or control.  
(a) Abduct (b) Abandon  
(c) Abort (d) Abdicate
36. Not to be moved by entreaty.  
(a) Rigorous (b) Negligent  
(c) Inexorable (d) Despotic
37. An object or portion serving as a sample.  
(a) Specification (b) Spectre  
(c) Spectacle (d) Specimen
38. The practice of submitting a proposal to popular vote.  
(a) Election (b) Reference  
(c) Popularity (d) Referendum

# 3

## Words with Meanings

---

### A

1. **Adamant** (*adj.*) (*hard, inflexible*) Though she was *adamant* in the beginning, she came round in the end.
2. **Adverse** (*adj.*) (*unfavourable, hostile*) One must try to overcome *adverse* circumstances.
3. **Affected** (*adj.*) (*artificial, pretend, influence*) She is proud and always behaves in an *affected* manner.
4. **Allay** (*v.*) (*calm, pacify*) The mother *allayed* the fears of the child.
5. **Accord** (*n.*) (*agreement*) There is an *accord* among the family members over this problem.
6. **Adulterate** (*v.*) (*make impure*) Those who *adulterate* milk should be severely punished.
7. **Agility** (*n.*) (*nimbleness, alacrity*) The police acted with *agility* and apprehended the robbers.
8. **Admonish** (*v.*) (*warn, reprove*) The officer *admonished* his subordinates for their irregular attendance.
9. **Assuage** (*v.*) (*ease, lessen*) Rohon's friends *assuaged* his apprehension of injustice at the hands of the Principal.
10. **Alleviate** (*v.*) (*relieve, assuage*) Saints are born to *alleviate* the pain and misery of mankind.
11. **Altruism** (*n.*) (*unselfish devotion*) My friend is imbued with *altruism* and has made over his property to a charitable trust.
12. **Amass** (*v.*) (*collect*) He has no time to do good to others and appears to be more interested in *amassing* wealth.
13. **Acrimonious** (*adj.*) (*stinging, caustic*) There were *acrimonious* arguments between the two brothers causing loss of prestige to the family.
14. **Anomaly** (*n.*) (*irregularity*) I assure you, it is an *anomaly* because he never behaves like this in an ordinary course of life.

15. **Aptitude** (*n.*) (*fitness, talent*) Scientific temper calls for *aptitude* for liberal thinking.
16. **Alimony** (*n.*) (*payment to divorced wife*) She has been fighting for *alimony* from her estranged husband for two years.
17. **Atone** (*v.*) (*make amends*) You must *atone* for the injustice you have done to innocent people.
18. **Ambiguous** (*adj.*) (*doubtful in meaning*) One must avoid the use of *ambiguous* language while writing on social problems.
19. **Abjure** (*v.*) (*give up*) You must *abjure* the pursuit of sinful acts.
20. **Adjure** (*v.*) (*request*) I *adjured* my officers to grant me leave for a day or so.
21. **Allege** (*v.*) (*charge without proof*) It was *alleged* by her enemies that she has misappropriated the money of the trust.
22. **Acme** (*n.*) (*top, pinnacle, apex*) Once at the *acme* of his political career, now he is at nadir.
23. **Analogy** (*n.*) (*similarity*) The *analogy* between the security problems of India and Pakistan is uncalled for.
24. **Appraise** (*v.*) (*estimate value of*) It is always difficult to *appraise* the efforts in true spirit if the results are not favourable.
25. **Allocate** (*v.*) [ *earmark, set aside (funds)*] The Prime Minister has *allocated* a huge sum for the uplift of those living below poverty-line.
26. **Adage** (*n.*) (*wise saying, proverb*) We have often heard the *adage* 'Pride hath a fall'.
27. **Adversity** (*n.*) (*poverty, misfortune*) *Adversity* brings out the latent qualities in a person.
28. **Affluence** (*n.*) (*abundance, wealth*) *Affluence* in his life made him forget the value of character.
29. **Ample** (*adj.*) (*abundant*) There is an *ample* stock of nuclear weapons in the arsenal of super powers.
30. **Absolve** (*v.*) (*pardon, exonerate*) At last he was *absolved* from the charge of misconduct to his officers.
31. **Abscond** (*v.*) (*hide, run secretly*) Since he committed murder he has been *absconding*.
32. **Affray** (*n.*) (*public brawl*) The timely action of the police averted serious mishap of the *affray* between the two communities.
33. **Annihilate** (*v.*) (*destroy*) The use of nuclear weapons is likely to *annihilate* humanity.
34. **Affable** (*adj.*) (*amiable, pleasing*) His *affable* manners always win him admiration in the society.
35. **Amplify** (*v.*) (*enlarge*) The students requested the teacher to *amplify* upon the point under discussion.

36. **Amalgamate** (*v.*) (*combine, unite in one body*) The two firms were *amalgamated* under the Chairmanship of Mr. Mukesh Ambani.
37. **Appease** (*v.*) (*pacify, soothe*) Every political party tries to *appease* the minorities to create its own vote bank.
38. **Apprise** (*v.*) (*inform*) The Minister was *apprised* of the dangerous situation.
39. **Arduous** (*adj.*) (*hard, strenuous*) A journey to Amarnath Shrine is very *arduous*.
40. **Apprehend** (*v.*) (*arrest, fear*) Everybody *apprehends* trouble in the city on account of the abduction of an industrialist.
41. **Ameliorate** (*v.*) (*improve*) Unless we *ameliorate* the condition of the working class, we cannot expect the prosperity of the country.
42. **Adulation** (*n.*) (*praise, flattery*) False *adulation* of the leaders by their followers is a common practice these days.
43. **Animosity** (*n.*) (*active enmity*) *Animosity* between the two leaders has embittered the relations, between the two communities.
44. **Audacity** (*n.*) (*boldness*) He is feared for his *audacity* and unyielding attitude.
45. **Amnesty** (*n.*) (*general pardon*) On the birth day of the Prince, the King granted *amnesty* to the prisoners.
46. **Ancillary** (*adj.*) (*accessory*) He is serving in the *ancillary* unit of a multinational company.
47. **Agrarian** (*adj.*) (*of land, farming*) In spite of *agrarian* reforms, Indian agriculture has not shown remarkable progress.
48. **Acumen** (*n.*) (*mental keenness*) The Jews are known for their business *acumen*.
49. **Abrasive** (*adj.*) (*offensive*) Nobody likes her for her *abrasive* and haughty behaviour.
50. **Amulet** (*n.*) (*charm against evil*) The saint gave him an *amulet* to ward off the evil.

<b>B</b>
----------

1. **Benevolent** (*adj.*) (*generous, charitable*) He is noted for his *benevolent* nature.
2. **Biennial** (*adj.*) (*every two years*) The meeting of the members of the Trust is held *biennially*.
3. **Belated** (*adj.*) (*delayed*) He was sorry for making *belated* payment.
4. **Beguile** (*v.*) (*delude, cheat*) Don't be *beguiled* by the pleasant manners of hypocrites.

5. **Behove** (*v.*) (*suited to befit, become*) It does not *behave* our political leaders to berate one another for failure in the field of economy.
6. **Banal** (*adj.*) (*commonplace, trite*) The stories of Ruskin Bond are not *banal* because he writes about uncommon subjects.
7. **Brazen** (*adj.*) (*insolent, impudent, impertinent*) Her *brazen* behaviour at the party offended her poor relations.
8. **Bouquet** (*n.*) (*bunch of flowers*) He presented a *bouquet* to his ailing mother.
9. **Brooch** (*n.*) (*ornamental clasp*) She always wears a *brooch* on her pullover.
10. **Blatant** (*adj.*) (*openly shameless*) His behaviour was condemned as *blatant* when he blamed his father for his own misdeeds.
11. **Bantering** (*n.*) [*ridicule (good natured)*] Even his *bantering* was considered offensive.
12. **Broach** (*v.*) (*open up discussion*) The parents of the boy did not even *broach* the issue of marriage with Reena.
13. **Bereft** (*adj.*) (*deprived of, lacking*) *Bereft* of wealth and honour, he died miserable death.
14. **Benefactor** (*n.*) (*gift giver, patron*) Lord Chesterfield did not prove *benefactor* to Dr. Johnson in the long run.
15. **Benediction** (*n.*) (*blessing, boon*) The *benediction* of the elders should always be valued more than anything else.
16. **Bleak** (*adj.*) (*dismal, gloomy*) Khayber Pass is *bleak* throughout the year.
17. **Bonanza** (*n.*) (*windfall, sudden gain*) The legacy left by his uncle proved *bonanza* for him and his family.
18. **Belittle** (*v.*) (*disparage, underestimate*) Our adversaries always try to *belittle* our success.
19. **Bellicose** (*adj.*) (*warlike, militant, belligerent*) India must adopt *bellicose* approach with regard to her security problems.
20. **Bereavement** (*n.*) (*death of near and dear one*) On account of *bereavement* in the family, he did not attend office for days together.
21. **Bigotry** (*n.*) (*fanaticism*) Indians are always shocked at the *bigotry* and narrow mindedness of other races.
22. **Berate** (*v.*) (*scold strongly*) The father *berated* his son for being negligent in his study.
23. **Beneficiary** (*n.*) (*person entitled to benefits*) Those living below poverty-line are the *beneficiary* of this scheme.
24. **Betroth** (*v.*) (*engaged to marry*) She was *betrothed* to her fiance last month.

25. **Brochure** (*n.*) (*pamphlet with information*) The *brochure* supplied by the Institute provides all the information that you need.
26. **Bestow** (*v.*) (*confer, give*) Nature has *bestowed* many gifts on man.
27. **Bid** (*n.*) (*effort, order, auction*) He was caught while making a *bid* on her life.
28. **Baneful** (*adj.*) (*ruinous, poisonous*) Drugs have *baneful* effect on the mind of the youth.
29. **Bravado** (*n.*) (*swagger, false courage*) Retired soldiers often assume the airs of *bravado*.
30. **Besmirch** (*v.*) (*defile*) The opposition always tries to *besmirch* the reputation of the ruling party.
31. **Bovine** (*adj.*) (*of cow*) She is *bovine* by nature while her sister is haughty.
32. **Baffle** (*v.*) (*perplex, frustrate*) (i) A wrong signal was sent to *baffle* the enemy.  
(ii) All his efforts were *baffled* by the adamant attitude of his father.
33. **Berserk** (*adv.*) (*frenzied, amuck, amok*) The police went *berserk* and began to lathicharge the crowd demonstrating peacefully.
34. **Boutique** (*n.*) (*store for fashionable clothes*) My friend runs a *boutique* in the heart of the city.
35. **Breach** (*n.*) (*breaking of contract/duty, peace, rift*) Anti-social elements were rounded up for fear of *breach* of peace.
36. **Bizarre** (*adj.*) (*grotesque, awkward*) The gentry present in the club were not expected to behave in a *bizarre* manner.
37. **Bode** (*v.*) (*foreshadow, foretell, augur*) Frequent elections in the country do not *bode* well for democracy in India.
38. **Blasphemous** (*adj.*) (*impious, irreligious*) *Blasphemous* acts always lead to communal riots.

**C**

1. **Chide** (*v.*) (*scold*) Lata was *chided* for coming late to the meeting.
2. **Conversant** (*adj.*) (*familiar*) A good citizen is supposed to be *conversant* with the rules of the road.
3. **Capricious** (*adj.*) (*fickle, unstable, faithless*) *Capricious* persons change their mind frequently without any reason.
4. **Caption** (*n.*) (*title*) Please give a suitable *caption* to this picture.
5. **Carnage** (*n.*) (*destruction of life, massacre*) The use of atomic weapons can cause *carnage* that is impossible for human mind to foresee.

6. **Clemency** (*n.*) (*leniency, mildness, kindness*) A judge should never dispense with *clemency* while dealing with criminals.
7. **Chaste** (*adj.*) (*pure, virtuous*) She is known for her *chaste* character.
8. **Cogent** (*adj.*) (*convincing, forceful*) He could not offer any *cogent* reasons for his absence.
9. **Compatible** (*adj.*) (*harmonious, suitable*) They always had *compatible* relations because there was deep understanding between them.
10. **Collusion** (*n.*) (*conspiracy, nexus*) The local M.P. was found in *collusion* with the smugglers operating in the town.
11. **Contingency** (*n.*) (*emergency*) My father always maintains *contingency* fund to meet with unforeseen expenses.
12. **Condone** (*v.*) (*overlook, forgive*) His fault is too serious to be *condoned*.
13. **Consensus** (*n.*) (*general agreement*) A good government can be run efficiently by *consensus* among all the parties.
14. **Corroborate** (*v.*) (*confirm*) I am speaking the truth and my father is sure to *corroborate* my statement.
15. **Crestfallen** (*adj.*) (*dejected*) On account of heavy loss in business, he is *crestfallen* these days.
16. **Conclave** (*n.*) (*private meeting*) Both the enemies agreed to hold a *conclave* without the presence of a third party.
17. **Construe** (*v.*) (*interpret*) It is difficult to *construe* the working of laws of Nature.
18. **Cryptic** (*adj.*) (*mysterious, hidden*) She was never forthcoming in her replies which were wholly *cryptic*.
19. **Calamity** (*n.*) (*natural disaster*) Though man claims to have conquered nature, he is frequently struck by *calamities*.
20. **Commensurate** (*adj.*) (*equal in proportion*) The income of Indian farmer is hardly *commensurate* with the labour he has to do.
21. **Commodious** (*adj.*) (*spacious, comfortable*) He has built a *commodious* house because his sister is likely to live with him.
22. **Capitulate** (*v.*) (*surrender*) After long encounter the militants had to *capitulate*.
23. **Compunction** (*n.*) (*feeling of regret, remorse*) Even the hard core criminals felt *compunction* at the injustice they had done to the family of their rivals.
24. **Canine** (*adj.*) (*of dog*) The flatterers follow their masters with *canine* faithfulness.
25. **Callow** (*n.*) (*inexperienced*) Though he is a *callow* now, he will gain experience by and by.
26. **Chagrin** (*n.*) (*annoyance, disappointment*) The defeat of our team filled us with *chagrin*.

27. **Censure** (*n.*) (*blame, criticise*) *Censure* motion in the Parliament could not be tabled for want of quorum.
28. **Calibre** (*n.*) (*capacity, talent*) His *calibre* for doing work in a meticulous manner is always appreciated.
29. **Cede** (*v.*) [*transfer title (land)*] India should never *cede* an inch of land to any foreign country.
30. **Chauvinist** (*n.*) (*blindly devoted*) A *chauvinist* is incapable of realizing his fault in his thinking.
31. **Celestial** (*adj.*) (*heavenly*) The study of *celestial* bodies always interests me.
32. **Clandestine** (*adj.*) (*secret*) *Clandestine* activities of the smugglers are well-known to the police.
33. **Covert** (*adj.*) (*hidden, implied*) The *covert* warning he gave to me opened my eyes to the reality of the situation.
34. **Catastrophe** (*n.*) (*calamity*) A *catastrophe* in the form of cyclone has struck the coastal cities of India.
35. **Condolence** (*n.*) (*sympathy*) I visited my friend to offer *condolence* on the death of his uncle.
36. **Chastise** (*v.*) (*punish*) Rita was *chastised* for her unruly behaviour in the presence of the guests.
37. **Connivance** (*n.*) (*pretence of ignorance, overlook*) Criminals have been carrying on their nefarious activities with the *connivance* of the police.
38. **Contraband** (*adj.*) (*illegal goods*) Customs Department has not been able to stop traffic of *contraband* goods.
39. **Countermand** (*v.*) (*cancel, revoke*) The Election Commission has *countermanded* the election of the M.L.A. for over spending in elections.
40. **Colloquial** (*adj.*) (*pertaining to conversation*) *Colloquial* language should be simple and easy.
41. **Conflagration** (*n.*) (*widespread fire*) As long as the nuclear arsenal exists in the world, there is every possibility of nuclear *conflagration*.
42. **Compliant** (*adj.*) (*docile, flexible*) He is admired for his *compliant* nature.
43. **Cliche** (*n.*) (*stereotyped phrase*) I never listen to the speeches of the leaders because they are always full of *cliches*.
44. **Condign** (*adj.*) (*adequate, rigorous*) No punishment, whatsoever is *condign* for a rapist.
45. **Congregation** (*n.*) (*religious gathering*) The militants did not hesitate in throwing bombs at the *congregation* gathered in the religious place.
46. **Chary** (*adj.*) (*cautious, watchful, wary*) We should be always *chary* of the strangers.

47. **Coerce** (*v.*) (*force, repress*) She was *coerced* by her husband into bringing money from her parents.
48. **Confound** (*v.*) (*confuse*) On seeing the ghastly sight of murder, everyone was *confounded*.
49. **Cache** (*n.*) (*hiding place (store)*) *Cache* of illegal arms was recovered by the police.
50. **Cavil** (*v.*) (*find fault*) Please don't *cavil* about unimportant matters.
51. **Charisma** (*n.*) (*popular charm, spiritual grace*) Swami Vivekanand always stood out in the crowd because of *charisma* reflected on his face.
52. **Castigate** (*v.*) (*punish*) The thief was *castigated* by the police.
53. **Carping** (*adj.*) (*find fault*) *Carping* critics were responsible for the miserable life of the English poet, John Keats.

<b>D</b>
----------

1. **Dauntless** (*adj.*) (*bold, brave*) Shivaji was a *dauntless* warrior.
2. **Decry** (*v.*) (*disparage*) You can't gain anything by *decrying* the success of your rivals.
3. **Devoid** (*adj.*) (*lacking*) I cannot trust him because he is *devoid* of sense of right and wrong.
4. **Dearth** (*n.*) (*scarcity*) There is no *dearth* of talent in India but it has remained unexploited.
5. **Deference** (*n.*) (*regards for another's wish*) We are advised to act in *deference* to the wishes of our parents.
6. **Dubious** (*adj.*) (*not certain, doubtful, suspicious*) He is *dubious* about the scheme made by his friends.
7. **Deleterious** (*adj.*) (*harmful*) We should always beware of the *deleterious* effect of overeating.
8. **Defile** (*v.*) (*pollute, profane*) One should never *defile* sanctity of religious places so as not to hurt the sentiments of others.
9. **Deterrent** (*n.*) (*discouraging*) India must possess nuclear weapons so that they may act as *deterrent* for her hostile neighbours.
10. **Dilapidation** (*n.*) (*state of ruins*) Ancient monuments in our town are in the state of *dilapidation*.
11. **Disdain** (*v.*) (*treat with scorn*) He always *disdains* what he considers dishonest.
12. **Dire** (*adj.*) (*disastrous*) In the interest of National Security, we must not be intimidated by the *dire* consequences of economic sanctions.
13. **Dissipate** (*v.*) (*squander, waste*) India cannot afford to *dissipate* the forest resources.

14. **Devout** (*adj.*) (*religious, pious*) My mother is *devout* and God fearing.
15. **Dint** (*n.*) (*means, effort*) You can attain success by *dint* of hard work.
16. **Dormant** (*adj.*) (*torpid, hidden, latent*) Adversity brings out *dormant* qualities in a person to overcome the problems.
17. **Divulge** (*v.*) (*reveal, unravel*) He tried to gain my favour by *divulging* the secrets of my friends.
18. **Defunct** (*adj.*) (*dead, no longer in use*) On account of heavy loss, the factory of my uncle is almost *defunct*.
19. **Delusion** (*n.*) (*hallucination, false*) We should never be under *delusion* about our capability.
20. **Deplete** (*v.*) (*reduce, dwindle*) India has recklessly *depleted* her forest resources after Independence.
21. **Debauch** (*v.*) (*corrupt*) Some of the TV channels have *debauched* the morals and manners of the youth of our country.
22. **Dovetail** (*v.*) (*fit together*) You can be benefitted only if you *dovetail* these two schemes to cut down the cost of the material.
23. **Decoy** (*n.*) (*lure, bait*) A goat is often used as a *decoy* by the hunters to catch a lion.
24. **Daunt** (*v.*) (*intimidate*) One should never be *daunted* by difficulties in life.
25. **Delete** (*v.*) (*erase, remove*) His name has been *deleted* from the list of successful candidates.
26. **Deride** (*v.*) (*scoff at*) He is in the habit of *deriding* the achievements of his friends.
27. **Despise** (*v.*) (*scorn, detest*) We should not *despise* anyone for his poverty.
28. **Debacle** (*n.*) (*down fall*) The poor batting performance resulted in the *debacle* of our team.
29. **Deployment** (*n.*) (*spreading out troops*) The Central Government has promised the *deployment* of additional troops during elections.
30. **Diffident** (*adj.*) (*shy, timid*) A successful teacher is not expected to be *diffident*.
31. **Dynamic** (*adj.*) (*energetic*) At this critical juncture, India needs *dynamic* and sagacious political leaders.
32. **Dilemma** (*n.*) (*in a fix*) He is in a *dilemma* over the choice of career.
33. **Despotism** (*n.*) (*tyranny, cruelty*) Germans got fed up with *despotism* of Hitler very soon.
34. **Dexterous** (*adj.*) (*skilful*) The artisans of Moradabad are *dexterous* in brass work.
35. **Detrimental** (*adj.*) (*harmful*) The foreign aid has proved to be *detrimental* to our economy.

36. **Desecrate** (*v.*) (*violate sanctity*) The rioters *desecrated* the religious places.
37. **Diversity** (*n.*) (*variety*) *Diversity* is the hallmark of Indian Civilization.
38. **Dulcet** (*adj.*) (*melodious to the ear/taste*) As a singer Jagjit Singh is known for his *dulcet* voice.
39. **Demise** (*n.*) (*death*) In the *demise* of Sardar Patel, India lost the most sagacious leader.
40. **Demolition** (*n.*) (*destruction*) The Municipal Corporation has started *demolition* campaign to clear up encroachment.
41. **Deranged** (*adj.*) (*insane, mad*) None but a *deranged* person could have behaved in such an irresponsible manner.
42. **Demur** (*v.*) (*delay, hesitate*) A practical man would never *demur* to avail himself of every chance.
43. **Demure** (*adj.*) (*shy, quiet*) She is both *demure* and introvert.
44. **Dilatory** (*adj.*) (*causing delay*) Many politicians consider *dilatory* tactics as an art of politics.
45. **Deteriorate** (*v.*) (*get worse*) The condition of the patient has *deteriorated*.

<b>E</b>
----------

1. **Extinct** (*adj.*) (*out of existence*) Many species of flora & fauna have become *extinct*.
2. **Emaciated** (*adj.*) (*thin and wasted*) On account of poverty and starvation most of the children are *emaciated*.
3. **Elucidate** (*v.*) (*explain, enlighten*) The Government had been asked to *elucidate* their economic policy.
4. **Engross** (*v.*) (*fully absorbed*) She did not talk to me because she was *engrossed* in writing a letter.
5. **Enormity** (*n.*) (*great wickedness*) He is a hardened criminal and is insensitive to the *enormity* of his crimes.
6. **Extant** (*n.*) (*in existence*) Many of the ancient documents, still *extant* tell us about the diversity of Indian culture.
7. **Ecstasy** (*n.*) (*rapture, joy*) On hearing of the sudden financial wind fall, the family was in *ecstasy*.
8. **Effigy** (*n.*) (*dummy*) The *effigy* of the American President was burnt by the crowd when the unfavourable remarks against India were made by him.
9. **Exorbitant** (*n.*) (*excessive*) It is very difficult to hire taxi because of the *exorbitant* charges.
10. **Embezzlement** (*n.*) (*misappropriation*) Most of the politicians involved in the *embezzlement* of public money are still at large.
11. **Emanate** (*v.*) (*issue from*) This letter *emanated* from the central office.

12. **Enamoured** (*v.*) (*in love, fascinated*) Every member of the picnic party was *enamoured* of the scenic beauty of the landscape.
13. **Exonerate** (*v.*) (*acquit, exculpate*) After long legal battle, he was *exonerated* of murder charges.
14. **Expunge** (*v.*) (*delete, cancel*) I shall request the Principal to *expunge* the unfavourable remarks from your annual report.
15. **Extol** (*v.*) (*praise, glorify*) Every Indian *extolled* the achievement of the Government in curbing the militancy in the state.
16. **Emulate** (*v.*) (*imitate, follow*) We must *emulate* the ideals of Netaji to make our country strong and invincible.
17. **Enhance** (*v.*) (*increase, improve*) The judicious use of cosmetics *enhance* the natural charms.
18. **Estranged** (*adj.*) (*separated*) The *estranged* husband and wife are living separately.
19. **Expediency** (*n.*) (*advisable, practical*) Those who hanker after material gains are often guided by *expediency* and not by moral sense.
20. **Extraneous** (*adj.*) (*not essential, external*) Bigotry is *extraneous* to the basic tenets of Hinduism.
21. **Extort** (*v.*) (*get money by threats*) Anti-social elements are busy in *extorting* money from the businessmen with the connivance of the police.
22. **Evasive** (*adj.*) (*not frank, avoiding*) The police could not make out anything of her *evasive* replies.
23. **Ennui** (*n.*) (*mental boredom*) The modern youth suffer from feeling of *ennui* since they are not engaged in any constructive work.
24. **Exquisite** (*adj.*) (*beautiful*) The picture hanging on the wall is an *exquisite* work of art.
25. **Encomium** (*n.*) (*praise*) Every member of the family showered *encomium* on his grand success.
26. **Erode** (*v.*) (*decay*) The desire for material success has *eroded* our concern for the poor.
27. **Erudite** (*adj.*) (*learned, scholarly*) His writings are not *erudite* but they are read with keen interest.
28. **Eschew** (*v.*) (*avoid, give up*) We must *eschew* violence in dealing with national issues.
29. **Epoch** (*n.*) (*period of time, era*) The exact duration of Indus Valley Civilization *epoch* has not been determined so far.
30. **Equanimity** (*n.*) (*calmness*) We must bear the hardships with *equanimity*.
31. **Enormous** (*adj.*) (*huge, immense*) On account of fire there was *enormous* loss of goods and property.

32. **Endemic** (*adj.*) (*prevailing in a region*) Goitre is *endemic* in the hilly areas for want of iodine in water.
33. **Expiate** (*v.*) (*atone for*) He is ready to *expiate* his sins by giving up irresponsible way of life.
34. **Embellish** (*v.*) (*decorate*) The writers generally *embellish* their style by the use of unnecessary imagery.
35. **Ecology** (*n.*) (*science of environment*) *Ecology* is the study of environment.
36. **Egregious** (*adj.*) [*exceptional (crime)*] It is difficult to reform him because he is an *egregious* criminal.
37. **Exodus** (*n.*) (*departure (large scale)*) The *exodus* of the Hindus from Kashmir valley is deplorable.
38. **Errant** (*adj.*) (*erring from right path*) Many *errant* students were punished.
39. **Errand** (*n.*) (*short visit to fetch something*) My servant has gone on *errand* to fetch rations.
40. **Erroneous** (*adj.*) (*incorrect, mistaken*) It is *erroneous* idea on your part that he will return home at last.
41. **Envisage** (*v.*) (*foresee in mind*) It was difficult for everyone to *envisage* the loss in such a profitable venture.
42. **Emancipate** (*v.*) (*make free*) Raja Ram Mohan Roy tried to *emancipate* women from many social evils.

<b>F</b>
----------

1. **Flagrant** (*adj.*) (*glaring, openly wicked*) It is not easy to pardon such *flagrant* violation of the decorum of the House.
2. **Fickle** (*adj.*) (*changeable, faithless*) *Fickle* minded persons cannot be relied upon.
3. **Filial** (*adj.*) (*of son or daughter*) Children must fulfil their *filial* duties towards their parents.
4. **Fray** (*n.*) (*brawl, contest*) The miscreants involved in the *fray* were arrested by the police.
5. **Facile** (*adj.*) (*easy, expert*) India could achieve *facile* victory in the match yesterday.
6. **Fallible** (*adj.*) (*liable to err*) Man is *fallible*.
7. **Fervent** (*adj.*) (*ardent, warm*) My friend was accorded *fervent* welcome on his arrival.
8. **Fete** (*n.*) (*outdoor entertainment, carnival*) A charity *fete* was held in our college yesterday.
9. **Fictitious** (*adj.*) (*imaginary*) Don't believe his story because it is just *fictitious*.

10. **Foolhardy** (*adj.*) (*rash, reckless*) Many believe that trying for impossible things is *foolhardy* attempt.
11. **Fiat** (*n.*) (*command*) The Court issued a *fiat* to both the parties to maintain status quo.
12. **Finale** (*n.*) (*conclusion*) The *finale* of the match was very interesting.
13. **Fitful** (*adj.*) (*spasmodic, intermittent*) You are not going to achieve anything by pursuing *fitful* study.
14. **Fraught** (*adj.*) (*filled, threatening*) Security problem on our borders is *fraught* with danger.
15. **Fortitude** (*n.*) (*bravery, courage*) One must face the problems of life with *fortitude*.
16. **Feasible** (*adj.*) (*practicable*) We must execute proposal that is *feasible*.
17. **Ferment** (*n.*) (*agitation, commotion*) During Quit India Movement, the whole nation was in *ferment*.
18. **Franchise** (*n.*) (*right by government to vote or trade*) The Mughals granted *franchise* to East India Company to carry on trade in India.
19. **Foible** (*adj.*) (*weakness*) Man is subject to *foibles* and frailities in life.
20. **Flaunt** (*v.*) (*display ostentatiously*) The rich are in the habit of *flaunting* their material achievements.
21. **Flout** (*v.*) (*reject, mock*) No good citizen will *flout* the rules of the road.
22. **Foment** (*v.*) (*stir up, instigate*) The decision of the Government is likely to *foment* disagreement among the opposition parties.
23. **Furtive** (*adj.*) (*secret, stealthy*) She entered the room with *furtive* steps to avoid the attention of the teacher.
24. **Frantic** (*adj.*) (*excited, wildly*) *Frantic* efforts are going on on the eve of the visit of the Prime Minister.
25. **Frigid** (*adj.*) (*intensely cold*) One must not be *frigid* in one's attitude towards his near and dear ones.
26. **Flair** (*n.*) (*talent*) Our Prime Minister has *flair* for glib talk.
27. **Faux pas** (*n.*) (*an error in manner or behaviour*) Her thoughtless remarks in the meeting were a *faux pas* and amused everyone.
28. **Flux** (*n.*) (*flowing, changing*) No foreign investor would like to invest in a country where the state of economy is in a *flux*.
29. **Fracas** (*n.*) (*noisy quarrel*) The mob gathered in the street when there was *fracas* between the two neighbours.
30. **Freak** (*adj.*) (*unusual, abnormal*) It is just an example of his *freak* behaviour because he normally doesn't behave in this manner.

31. **Fawning** (*adj.*) (*flattering*) One must be wary of *fawning* admirers because they have always an axe to grind.
32. **Fecundity** (*n.*) (*fruitfulness*) The *fecundity* of a poet's imagination makes a poem an exquisite work of art.
33. **Foray** (*n.*) (*raid*) The *foray* against the enemy outpost met with an unexpected success.

<b>G</b>
----------

1. **Gracious** (*adj.*) (*kind, generous*) God is *gracious*.
2. **Grouse** (*n.*) (*complaint*) I have no *grouse* against anyone for the misfortunes of life.
3. **Glut** (*n.*) (*overstock*) As there is economic recession, there is a *glut* of luxury goods in the market.
4. **Guileless** (*adj.*) (*without deceit*) She is so *guileless* that she will believe anyone.
5. **Glutton** (*n.*) (*greedy for food*) Being a *glutton* he is base.
6. **Glib** (*adj.*) (*fluent*) Those who have command of language are *glib* talkers.
7. **Gimmick** (*n.*) (*trick*) The reservation policy is just a political *gimmick*.
8. **Gigantic** (*adj.*) (*huge in size*) *Gigantic* crowd was there to listen to the speech of the Prime Minister.
9. **Glossary** (*n.*) (*brief explanation*) You will find explanation of this in the *glossary* given at the end of the book
10. **Gaol** (*n.*) (*jail*) He is a hardened criminal and has often been to *gaol*.
11. **Grumble** (*v.*) (*complain, protest*) We should not *grumble* when we are required to comply with the orders of our employers.
12. **Gusto** (*n.*) (*enjoyment, enthusiasm*) The Independence Day was celebrated in our college with *gusto*.
13. **Gainsay** (*v.*) (*deny*) Nobody can *gainsay* the truth of my statement.
14. **Gregarious** (*adj.*) (*flocking together, sociable*) The lion is not *gregarious* animal.
15. **Gist** (*n.*) (*essence*) Please write the *gist* of the paragraph in not more than fifty words.
16. **Garish** (*adj.*) (*gaudy*) She wears *garish* clothes which don't suit her.
17. **Gait** (*n.*) (*manner of walking*) Her *gait* is graceful.
18. **Ghastly** (*adj.*) (*horrible, fearful*) Everybody was horrified at the sight of *ghastly* murder.
19. **Gruesome** (*adj.*) (*frightful, heinous, grisly*) The children cried when they saw the *gruesome* appearance of a killer.
20. **Goad** (*v.*) (*urge on*) He was *goaded* by the classmates to make fun of the teacher.

21. **Grasp** (*v.*) (*understand, seize*) I think you have *grasped* the meaning of my statement.
22. **Grimace** (*n.*) (*expression of pain*) When hit on the head, he cried with *grimace* on his face.
23. **Granary** (*n.*) (*store house for grain*) A country can succeed in war only if its *granaries* as well as arsenals are well stocked.
24. **Gratis** (*adv.*) (*free*) The company offered one silver coin *gratis* to a customer who bought two dozen of soap cakes.
25. **Gruelling** (*adj.*) (*tiring, exhausting*) The police could elicit information from the gangster only after *gruelling* questioning session.

<b>H</b>
----------

1. **Humdrum** (*adj.*) (*dull, monotonous*) After strenuous years of service he is not able to adapt himself to *humdrum* life of retirement.
2. **Huddle** (*v.*) (*crowd together*) The passengers sat *huddled* in a crowded compartment.
3. **Haggle** (*v.*) (*bargain about prices*) We *haggle* with rickshaw-pullers while with doctors we cannot.
4. **Hapless** (*adj.*) (*unfortunate*) The *hapless* victims of tragedy were sanctioned compensation by the Government.
5. **Hamper** (*v.*) (*obstruct, impede, a gift box*) The growth of population has *hampered* economic progress in India.
6. **Hegemony** (*n.*) (*predominance*) Both America and China are trying for *hegemony* in Asia.
7. **Hustings** (*n.*) (*contest, elections*) The Congress party was badly defeated at the *hustings* in 1977.
8. **Heretic** (*n.*) (*holding unorthodox belief*) Joan of Arc was considered *heretic* by the Church.
9. **Hoodwink** (*v.*) (*deceive*) Hypocrites cannot *hoodwink* people for long.
10. **Husband** (*v.*) (*utilise*) India has a plethora of natural resources which she must *husband* for her progress.
11. **Hostile** (*adj.*) (*unfriendly*) Western powers have ever been *hostile* to India for reasons best known to them.
12. **Hypothecate** (*v.*) (*mortgage, pawn*) You can get loan from this bank by *hypothecating* house.
13. **Halcyon** (*adj.*) (*calm, peaceful*) *Halcyon* days a few years back appear to be just a dream.
14. **Holocaust** (*n.*) (*destruction by fire*) The third world war is bound to bring about nuclear *holocaust*.
15. **Hackneyed** (*adj.*) (*commonplace, trite*) Now-a-days no one is interested in the *hackneyed* speeches of the politicians.

16. **Hazy** (*adj.*) (*slightly obscure*) I have just a *hazy* idea of my mother because she died when I was just five years old.
17. **Hypocrite** (*n.*) (*pretending virtue*) Those who praise themselves are generally *hypocrites*.
18. **Hoax** (*n.*) (*trick, practical joke*) The information that a bomb had been planted in the aeroplane just proved a *hoax*.
19. **Haggard** (*adj.*) (*lean, gaunt*) A *haggard* and pale looking old man begged for some money.
20. **Heinous** (*adj.*) (*atrocious, odious*) The *heinous* crimes by the Nazis are against every norm of civilization.
21. **Humane** (*adj.*) (*kind*) Every religion preaches to be *humane* and considerate.
22. **Haphazard** (*adj.*) (*random, by chance*) He had no time and bought the clothes *haphazardly*.
23. **Hazardous** (*adj.*) (*dangerous*) A journey to Amarnath shrine is *hazardous*.
24. **Hearsay** (*n.*) (*rumour*) One must not believe in *hearsay*.
25. **Homily** (*n.*) (*moral discourse*) A person should not deliver *homily* unless he himself follows.
26. **Harbinger** (*n.*) (*forerunner*) Autumn is the *harbinger* of spring.
27. **Harangue** (*n.*) (*loud and scolding talk*) In his *harangue* the commander reproved the soldiers for their unruly conduct.



1. **Impasse** (*n.*) (*dead lock*) At present there is *impasse* in the talks between India and Pakistan.
2. **Ignoble** (*adj.*) (*unworthy*) His *ignoble* motives were exposed by his wicked actions.
3. **Imbroglia** (*n.*) (*complicated situation*) Kashmir problem has become national *imbroglia* which has eluded solution.
4. **Indolent** (*adj.*) (*lazy, lethargic*) She was feeling *indolent* because of the sweltering weather in the afternoon.
5. **Imbued** (*v.*) (*filled with*) It is a pity that our political leaders are not *imbued* with the spirit of nationalism.
6. **Intrinsic** (*adj.*) (*of value within, real quality*) The *intrinsic* value of the Indian rupee is on decline.
7. **Itinerary** (*n.*) (*plan of a journey*) Delhi has been included in the *itinerary* of the American President's visit to Asia.
8. **Impeccable** (*adj.*) (*faultless*) There is no person in the world who can claim to have *impeccable* character.
9. **Impede** (*v.*) (*to hinder, hamper*) Economic crisis in the country will *impede* the industrial progress.

10. **Incite** (*v.*) (*arouse to action*) The visit of the religious leader *incited* the communal riots in the city.
11. **Inept** (*adj.*) (*incompetent*) *Inept* handling of the foreign policy by the Congress party has created many complicated situations for the country.
12. **Inertia** (*n.*) (*passivity*) The modern youth is suffering from *inertia* because they are not optimistic about their future.
13. **Indigenous** (*adj.*) (*native*) India must not depend on foreign technology for there is no lack of *indigenous* talent in the country.
14. **Innate** (*adj.*) (*inborn*) Poets are born with *innate* talent for writing poetry.
15. **Insular** (*adj.*) (*narrow minded*) Fanatics have *insular* views about men and matters.
16. **Indict** (*v.*) (*accuse, charge*) The officials of the department were *indicted* by the court for financial irregularities.
17. **Intrude** (*v.*) (*interfere, trespass*) I don't like if anyone tries to *intrude* on my privacy.
18. **Inkling** (*n.*) (*clue, hint*) I had no *inkling* that she would break with her friends so soon.
19. **Impervious** (*adj.*) (*unaffected*) He never listens to his parents and is always *impervious* to their advice.
20. **Ingenuous** (*adj.*) (*naive, artless, credulous*) Children are *ingenuous* by nature.
21. **Inapt** (*adj.*) (*unsuitable*) The remarks she made at the party annoyed many because they were *inapt*.
22. **Inscrutable** (*adj.*) (*incomprehensible*) The laws of nature are *inscrutable*.
23. **Instance** (*n.*) (*example*) There are a number of *instances* of his misbehaviour but I have always overlooked them.
24. **Ingrained** (*adj.*) (*deeply fixed in mind*) Dishonesty appears to be *ingrained* in his character.
25. **Innocuous** (*adj.*) (*harmless*) It is now proved that soft drinks are not *innocuous*.
26. **Inordinate** (*adj.*) (*excessive*) I don't understand the reason for his *inordinate* delay in replying to my letter.
27. **Irksome** (*adj.*) (*tedious*) I don't like to do any *irksome* job, however profitable it may be.
28. **Imbibe** (*v.*) (*drink, take in ideas*) Every Indian must *imbibe* the spirit of nationalism.
29. **Impertinent** (*adj.*) (*insolent, impudent*) She was reprimanded for her *impertinent* behaviour.
30. **Intermittent** (*adj.*) (*irregular, continual*) Heavy damage has been caused to the buildings on account of *intermittent* rains for the last two months.

31. **Immaculate** (*adj.*) (*pure, spotless*) She is often dressed in *immaculately* white dress.
32. **Integrity** (*n.*) (*wholeness, uprightness*) The *integrity* of my brother is not to be questioned.
33. **Incessant** (*adj.*) (*uninterrupted, continuous*) We had to cancel our visit to Agra because of *incessant* rains.
34. **Indigent** (*adj.*) (*poor*) He could not continue his study because his parents were *indigent*.
35. **Inundate** (*v.*) (*overflow, flood*) The whole village was *inundated* with flood water.
36. **Inveterate** (*adj.*) (*deep rooted, habitual*) He is an *inveterate* liar.
37. **Inimical** (*adj.*) (*unfriendly, hostile*) I feel my friends have turned *inimical* and are working against my interests.
38. **Innovation** (*n.*) (*introduce new thing*) We cannot keep up with progress unless we introduce *innovations* in our technology.
39. **Impute** (*v.*) (*attribute, ascribe*) You can *impute* his failure in life to his fickle mindedness.
40. **Instigate** (*v.*) (*urge, incite*) China is *instigating* trouble on our borders.
41. **Infinitesimal** (*adj.*) (*very small*) They found *infinitesimal* traces of poison in the drink.
42. **Irritate** (*v.*) (*annoy*) His insolent behaviour always *irritates* us.
43. **Impending** (*adj.*) (*imminent, approaching*) Some persons have intuition about *impending* calamity.
44. **Insipid** (*adj.*) (*tasteless*) All felt bored by his *insipid* jokes.

## J

1. **Jovial** (*adj.*) (*merry, happy*) He is a much sought after person because of his *jovial* nature.
2. **Jinx** (*n.*) (*that brings bad luck*) Superstitious persons consider number thirteen a *jinx*.
3. **Jaded** (*adj.*) (*tired, exhausted*) He felt *jaded* after his return from journey.
4. **Jargon** (*n.*) (*language difficult to understand*) It is difficult to understand the *jargon* of tribal people.
5. **Jumble** (*n.*) (*mixed up*) She tried to put in order everything lying *jumbled*.
6. **Jot** (*v.*) (*write hurriedly*) The journalists were *jotting* down the speech of the Prime Minister in haste.
7. **Junk** (*n.*) (*discarded things*) He is a *junk* dealer.
8. **Judicious** (*adj.*) (*wise*) He has been successful in life because of his *judicious* planning in business.

9. **Jubilant** (*adj.*) (*happy*) The crowd was *jubilant* when Indian team achieved facile victory over English Team.
10. **Jolt** (*v.*) (*give a jerk*) All his hopes were *jolted* when his son could not qualify the competition.
11. **Juvenile** (*adj.*) (*of young person*) *Juvenile* delinquency is on the increase.
12. **Jiffy** (*n.*) (*few moments*) He completed the work in a *jiffy*.
13. **Jeer** (*v.*) (*jest, mock*) We should not *jeer* at the shortcomings of our friends.
14. **Jaunt** (*n.*) (*short journey for pleasure*) He is on a *jaunt* to Mumbai.
15. **Jejune** (*adj.*) (*dull, boring*) He left for Mumbai because he got tired of *jejune* life in his home town.
16. **Jingoism** (*n.*) (*blind patriotism*) The *jingoism* of the Germans resulted in the Second World War.
17. **Juncture** (*n.*) (*critical moment*) At this *juncture* of life you must be wary of strangers.
18. **Jeopardy** (*n.*) (*danger*) His reputation as a doctor is in *jeopardy* because of his unethical practice.
19. **Jocund** (*adj.*) (*cheerful, merry*) In spite of reeling under heavy debt Mr. Micawber was a *jocund* character.
20. **Jubilation** (*n.*) (*rejoicing*) The victory of Indian Hockey team was celebrated with *jubilation*.

<b>K</b>
----------

1. **Knell** (*n.*) (*death knell, last blow*) The Second World War proved to be a *knell* for British imperialism.
2. **Kiln** (*n.*) (*brick furnace*) He is running a brick *kiln* these days.
3. **Kinship** (*n.*) (*affinity*) There is *kinship* between a tiger and a cat.
4. **Kickback** (*n.*) (*bribe*) He was charged with taking *kickback*.
5. **Kindred** (*adj.*) (*having common features*) Most of the European languages are *kindred* because they have a common source.
6. **Knack** (*n.*) (*cleverness, art*) Politicians know the *knack* of putting the people off.
7. **Kleptomania** (*n.*) (*obsession to steal*) *Kleptomania* is a psychological urge to steal.
8. **Kinetic** (*adj.*) (*motion*) The dust particles in air are in *kinetic* motion.
9. **Knave** (*n.*) (*dishonest person*) Don't believe him because he is a *knave* and scoundrel.
10. **Knotty** (*adj.*) (*complicated*) Since independence, India has not been able to solve a single *knotty* problem facing the country.
11. **Kindle** (*v.*) (*arouse feeling*) The timely arrival of my friend *kindled* in me a hope of getting proper medical treatment.

12. **Kiosk** (*n.*) (*small booth*) He is running his business in a *kiosk* because he can't afford a shop right now.
13. **Kernel** (*n.*) (*inner part of fruit*) The *kernel* of the fruit is always tasty.
14. **Keepsake** (*n.*) (*memento, reminder*) She gave him a ring as a *keepsake*.
15. **Kudos** (*n.*) (*honour, credit*) Kapil Dev won *kudos* when he brought home the World Cup in 1983.

**L**

1. **Longevity** (*n.*) (*length of life*) His mother prayed for his *longevity* when he fell ill.
2. **Lieu** (*n.*) (*instead of*) I shall give you money in *lieu* of the lost book.
3. **Lavish** (*adj.*) (*liberal, wasteful*) He came to a grief because of his *lavish* spending habits.
4. **Lucid** (*adj.*) (*easily understood*) He gave a *lucid* lecture on the causes of inflation.
5. **Ludicrous** (*adj.*) (*laughable, ridiculous*) Everybody condemned her *ludicrous* remarks against her friends.
6. **Lunar** (*adj.*) (*pertaining to moon*) *Lunar* eclipse is caused when the earth comes between the sun and the moon.
7. **Levity** (*n.*) (*light heartedness*) His staff always treats his orders with *levity*.
8. **Languor** (*n.*) (*lassitude, depression*) On summer afternoons, we generally feel *languor*.
9. **Laconic** (*adj.*) (*brief*) Though her speech was *laconic*, yet it was lucid.
10. **Lethargic** (*adj.*) (*lazy*) After busy schedule during the day he felt languid and *lethargic*.
11. **Laudable** (*adj.*) (*commendable*) The success achieved by him in such a short period is really *laudable*.
12. **Loathe** (*v.*) (*detest, hate*) He always *loathes* dishonest means.
13. **Lair** (*n.*) (*den, resting place*) The tiger was in the *lair* when hunter arrived.
14. **Lascivious** (*adj.*) (*lustful*) The market is flooded with *lascivious* books.
15. **Lethal** (*adj.*) (*deadly*) The proliferation of *lethal* weapons do not bode well for the future of mankind.

**M**

1. **Mammoth** (*adj.*) (*huge, gigantic*) A *mammoth* rally was held to protest against the increase in the cases of kidnappings and murders.
2. **Menace** (*n.*) (*danger, threat*) Terrorism is a potential *menace* to the integrity of the country.

3. **Mascot** (*n.*) (*object likely to be lucky*) Appu was the *mascot* of the Asian Games held in India in 1982.
4. **Magnate** (*n.*) (*person of prominence*) Jamshedji Tata was a steel *magnate* of India.
5. **Malign** (*v.*) (*speak evil of, defame*) We *malign* others because we are jealous of them.
6. **Menial** (*adj.*) (*suitable for servants, servile*) Many men consider women suitable only for *menial* jobs.
7. **Manipulate** (*v.*) (*manage with skill*) Many persons are expert in *manipulating* excuses for their failure in life.
8. **Manifesto** (*n.*) (*declaration of policy*) Most of the political parties are unable to fulfil the promises made in their election *manifestos*.
9. **Marital** (*adj.*) (*pertaining to marriage*) *Marital* happiness depends on the compatibility of the partners.
10. **Morose** (*adj.*) (*sullen, gloomy*) After his failure in the exams, he is often *morose* and depressed.
11. **Mitigate** (*v.*) (*lessen, ease*) It is the duty of every person to *mitigate* the sufferings of humanity.
12. **Momentum** (*n.*) (*speed*) Indian economy is yet to gain the *momentum* to progress in right direction.
13. **Malicious** (*adj.*) (*full of malice*) He is *malicious* by nature and always tries to belittle the efforts of his friends.
14. **Miscreant** (*n.*) (*rowdy element*) He was kind to the *miscreants* even though he suffered at their hands.
15. **Mundane** (*adj.*) (*worldly, dull*) Wordly people are often concerned with *mundane* matters.
16. **Melee** (*n.*) (*confused struggle, stampede*) In the Kumbh Fair many pilgrims were injured in the *melee*.
17. **Myopic** (*adj.*) (*short sighted, narrowminded*) Orthodox men and women are victims of *myopic* views about life.
18. **Mollify** (*v.*) (*appease*) After exchange of hot words the shop-keeper tried to *mollify* the customer.
19. **Martinet** (*n.*) (*strict disciplinarian*) Our Principal is a *martinet* who expects everybody to carry out his orders.
20. **Mincing** (*adj.*) (*affected manner, pretentious*) She was walking with *mincing* steps and appeared ridiculous.
21. **Mettle** (*n.*) (*courage, spirit*) During fight he showed *mettle* in the teeth of strong opposition.
22. **Malingering** (*v.*) (*pretend to be ill*) Whenever he is asked to work, he always *malingers* and shirks work.
23. **Malignant** (*adj.*) (*malicious*) AIDS is a *malignant* and incurable disease.

24. **Mentor** (*n.*) (*teacher*) In Mr. Kapoor he found a considerate and sympathetic *mentor*.
25. **Macabre** (*adj.*) (*gruesome, grisly*) This novel deals with *macabre* sight of carnage.
26. **Malevolent** (*adj.*) (*wishing evil, spiteful*) Both China and Pakistan nurse *malevolent* designs against India.
27. **Mediocre** (*adj.*) (*ordinary, commonplace*) Even *mediocre* students are known to have made a mark in life.
28. **Mandatory** (*adj.*) (*obligatory, compulsory*) The limit of expenses to be made on elections has been made *mandatory* for the contestants.
29. **Meticulous** (*adj.*) (*over attentive*) One must be *meticulous* in conduct while dealing with strangers.
30. **Migratory** (*adj.*) (*wandering*) The *migratory* birds cover thousands of miles to reach warmer countries.
31. **Mishap** (*n.*) (*accident*) This *mishap* could have been averted if you had been just careful.
32. **Mandate** (*n.*) [*order (of the people)*] During the last elections no single party was able to secure the *mandate* of the majority.
33. **Manifold** (*adj.*) (*numerous, varied*) There are *manifold* advantages of discipline in schools and colleges.
34. **Moot** (*adj.*) (*debatable*) Whether reservation for women is justified or not is a *moot* question.
35. **Magnitude** (*n.*) (*greatness, extent*) Indians are unable to comprehend the *magnitude* of population problem in India.
36. **Monotony** (*n.*) (*dullness, boredom*) Anonymous life in the urban areas generate *monotony* for the residents.
37. **Meddlesome** (*adj.*) (*interfering*) Many marriages are ruined because of *meddlesome* mothers-in-law.
38. **Militate** (*v.*) (*work against*) The policy of appeasing everybody in life *militates* against one's own interests.
39. **Modicum** (*n.*) (*small amount*) There is no *modicum* of truth in her statement.
40. **Memento** (*n.*) (*token, reminder, keepsake*) I gave him a book as a *memento* on his birthday.
41. **Manifest** (*adj.*) (*understandable, clear*) His evil intentions were *manifest* when he mentioned the question of dowry.
42. **Myriad** (*adj.*) (*large number*) *Myriad* stars twinkle in the sky.

<b>N</b>
----------

1. **Noxious** (*adj.*) (*harmful, offensive*) Emission of *noxious* gases causes air pollution.
2. **Nadir** (*n.*) (*lowest point*) Now-a-days, he is disgusted with life because he is at the *nadir* of his hopes.
3. **Nostalgia** (*n.*) (*home sickness, longing for the past*) Soldiers often suffer from *nostalgia* when they are away from their homes.
4. **Naive** (*adj.*) (*artless*) Being *naive* she believes in all that her friends tell her.
5. **Novice** (*n.*) (*beginner, tyro*) We should not expect much from him because he is just a *novice* in the field of marketing.
6. **Nonchalant** (*adj.*) (*unconcerned*) It is disgusting to note that even doctors behave *nonchalantly* towards the patients.
7. **Nocturnal** (*adj.*) (*of night*) On account of disturbance during day time the students in our hostel are accustomed to *nocturnal* study.
8. **Nefarious** (*adj.*) (*very wicked, unlawful*) The criminals should be brought to book for their *nefarious* activities.
9. **Nepotism** (*n.*) (*favour to relatives*) Meritorious candidates always suffer on account of *nepotism* and favouritism prevailing in the selection procedure.
10. **Narcissism** (*n.*) (*self love and admiration*) *Narcissism* leads to selfishness in character.
11. **Nonplus** (*confuse*) I was *nonplussed* when my best friend refused to stand by me in my financial crises.
12. **Nascent** (*adj.*) (*incipient, beginning*) The rapid growth of this commercial organisation in its *nascent* stage is commendable.
13. **Nexus** (*n.*) (*bond, link*) The *nexus* among criminals and politicians has brought about general erosion of moral values in our political system.
14. **Nomadic** (*adj.*) (*wandering*) *Nomadic* tribes of Rajasthan are found in every major Indian city.
15. **Non-entity** (*n.*) (*a person of no importance*) A few years back he was a *non-entity* in politics; today he is a national leader.
16. **Neophyte** (*n.*) (*beginner, a recent convert*) Though a *neophyte* in politics, he has tremendous hold over the principles of state craft.
17. **Nebulous** (*adj.*) (*hazy*) Your ideas are too *nebulous* to be understood easily.
18. **Nullify** (*v.*) (*cancel*) The agreement made by the previous government has been *nullified* by the new government.

19. **Nauseous** (*adj.*) (*abominable, loathsome*) The sight of cruel and heartless treatment with animals is always unbearable and *nauseous*.
20. **Nourishing** (*adj.*) (*nutritious*) After her long illness, she must take *nourishing* diet.

**O**

1. **Overt** (*adj.*) (*open*) The trampling of national flag is an *overt* act of treason.
2. **Obnoxious** (*adj.*) (*harmful, nasty*) She behaved *obnoxiously* with her daughter-in-law.
3. **Opulence** (*n.*) (*luxury, wealth*) The foreign travellers to America admire the *opulence* of that country.
4. **Obsession** (*n.*) (*fixed idea*) His *obsession* with amassing wealth has made him miserly and greedy.
5. **Ostensible** (*adj.*) (*apparent, obvious*) The *ostensible* purpose of her visit was to borrow money, though she came to see me.
6. **Ornate** (*adj.*) (*decorated*) *Ornate* style of his essay appears to be artificial.
7. **Outskirts** (*n.*) (*outlying*) The cantonment is situated just on the *outskirts* of the city.
8. **Officious** (*adj.*) (*trying to please*) Beware of *officious* subordinates because they are parasites.
9. **Opportune** (*adj.*) (*timely, well chosen*) One should wait for the *opportune* moment to strike a bargain.
10. **Obliterate** (*v.*) (*wipe out*) The whole village was *obliterated* by continued shelling of Pakistani troops.
11. **Odious** (*adj.*) (*repulsive, contemptible*) Leaving my friends in the lurch is quite *odious* for me.
12. **Overture** (*n.*) (*first move*) The *overture* on the part of her husband for reconciliation met with no response from her.
13. **Obsolete** (*adj.*) (*out moded*) Snobs are never interested in *obsolete* fashion.
14. **Ostracize** (*v.*) (*ex-communicate*) He was *ostracized* by the elders of the village for marrying the girl of the other community.
15. **Oblivion** (*n.*) (*forgetfulness*) The famous film-personalities of the past are forced to lead a life of *oblivion* in their old age.
16. **Obviate** (*v.*) (*make unnecessary*) The use of computers in offices will *obviate* the need for further recruitment of the staff in the banks.
17. **Obese** (*adj.*) (*fat*) *Obese* persons are generally prone to heart attack.
18. **Onerous** (*adj.*) (*burdensome*) The work allotted to him was so *onerous* that he needed an assistant.

19. **Ostentatious** (*adj.*) (*fond of displaying*) She is disliked for her *ostentatious* behaviour towards her friends and colleagues.
20. **Oscillate** (*v.*) (*waver*) Persons with *oscillating* nature never stick to one option.

**P**

1. **Penchant** (*n.*) (*strong inclination*) She has strong *penchant* for singing and dancing.
2. **Pithy** (*adj.*) (*concise, meaningful*) The essays of Francis Bacon are read all over the world because they are *pithy* and profound in their meaning.
3. **Paltry** (*adj.*) (*insignificant, petty*) Strangely enough, the two friends quarrelled over *paltry* amount.
4. **Pecuniary** (*adj.*) (*pertaining to money*) Besides *pecuniary* loss in business he had to suffer humiliation in society.
5. **Perpetual** (*adj.*) (*everlasting*) Neither joys nor sorrows are *perpetual* in life.
6. **Plaintive** (*adj.*) (*mournful*) The *plaintive* notes of Nightingale were heard in the forest.
7. **Pragmatic** (*adj.*) (*practical*) India should adopt *pragmatic* foreign policy to suit the need of the country.
8. **Pedantic** (*adj.*) (*showing off learning*) The scholars try to show off their learning by using *pedantic* ideas.
9. **Perjury** (*n.*) (*false testimony*) American President was indicted for *perjury*.
10. **Pre-requisite** (*n.*) (*pre-condition*) Hard work is *pre-requisite* to success in life.
11. **Paradox** (*n.*) (*contradictory*) That the virtuous don't prosper materially is a *paradox* of life.
12. **Parsimonious** (*adj.*) (*mean, frugal*) He is extravagant but his wife is *parsimonious*.
13. **Perusal** (*n.*) (*careful study*) I am sending a copy of the agreement for your *perusal*.
14. **Prodigal** (*adj.*) (*wasteful*) The sons of the rich are generally *prodigal* and waste money on luxuries of life.
15. **Prolific** (*adj.*) (*fruitful, productive*) Shakespeare was a *prolific* playwright.
16. **Pamper** (*v.*) (*spoil by flattering*) In Indian families, the only son is *pampered* and spoiled by his mother.
17. **Promulgate** (*v.*) (*official proclamation*) The ordinance for the reservation of women in legislature will be *promulgated* soon.

18. **Penury** (*n.*) (*extreme poverty*) More than half of population in India is forced to lead a life of *penury* resulting in untold sufferings.
19. **Purview** (*n.*) (*scope, extent*) The reasons for the murder of the gangster are not within the *purview* of the inquiry committee.
20. **Profane** (*v.*) (*desecrate*) We must respect every religion and never try to *profane* the sanctity of holy places.
21. **Pseudonym** (*n.*) (*assumed name*) Charles Lamb wrote his essays under the *pseudonym* of Elia.
22. **Precocious** (*adj.*) (*mature before time*) The *precocious* children need careful bringing up by their parents.
23. **Placid** (*adj.*) (*calm, peaceful*) The *placid* atmosphere of the hill station had salutary effect on his mind and body.
24. **Plagiarism** (*n.*) (*theft of ideas or writing*) The Indian film directors are notorious for indulging in *plagiarism*.
25. **Posterity** (*n.*) (*future generations*) The *posterity* will not pardon the present politicians for their acts of omission and commission.
26. **Paragon** (*n.*) (*model of perfection*) Sita is always depicted as a *paragon* of ideal and virtuous woman.
27. **Provident** (*adj.*) (*providing for future*) We should spend in *provident* manner so as to lay by something for future emergency.
28. **Perquisite** (*n.*) (*perks, gain above stipulated salary*) Though the salary offered by the company is not high, the *perquisites* are quite handsome.
29. **Prone** (*adj.*) [*inclined to (disorder)*] Indian farming is *prone* to uncertainty because of the fickleness of Monsoons.
30. **Pandemonium** (*n.*) (*wild disorder*) There was *pandemonium* in Parliament over the objectionable remarks made by a member of the opposition party.
31. **Parasite** (*n.*) (*living on another*) Flatterers are considered to be *parasites* because their existence depends on sycophancy.
32. **Patrimony** (*n.*) (*inheritance from father*) Though his father left huge *patrimony*, he squandered it within a year or so.
33. **Perennial** (*adj.*) (*lasting*) The rivers originating in the Himalayas are *perennial*.
34. **Poignant** (*adj.*) (*touching, sharp*) The *poignant* cries of the orphaned children moved everybody present at the funeral.
35. **Pungent** (*adj.*) (*stinging, strong*) The cigarettes of inferior brands have *pungent* smell.
36. **Paucity** (*n.*) (*scarcity, dearth*) Many schemes have fallen through because of the *paucity* of funds.

37. **Pinnacle** (*n.*) (*peak, summit*) As he reached the *pinnacle* of his career he parted from all those who stood by him in difficulties.
38. **Pernicious** (*adj.*) (*destructive, injurious*) Obscene magazines have *pernicious* effect on the impressionable minds of the youth.
39. **Prerogative** (*n.*) (*privilege, unquestionable*) It is the *prerogative* of the Prime Minister to constitute his cabinet.
40. **Parochial** (*adj.*) (*narrow in view point*) All the political parties rise above *parochial* considerations when the security of the country is threatened.
41. **Precedent** (*n.*) (*earlier example*) The speaker cited many *precedents* for not allowing the opposition member to raise a question of that nature.
42. **Piquant** (*adj.*) (*pleasantly tasting*) The *piquant* sauce makes food always enjoyable.
43. **Preposterous** (*adj.*) (*absurd, ridiculous*) He always offers such *preposterous* excuses that nobody believes him.
44. **Precarious** (*adj.*) (*uncertain, risky*) The patient is in a *precarious* condition because so far he has not recovered consciousness.
45. **Predilection** (*n.*) (*partiality for*) He is a good player but his *predilection* for scoring fast has not proved good for him.
46. **Proclivity** (*n.*) (*inclination*) Some employees are never satisfied because they have *proclivity* to complain.
47. **Pertinent** (*adj.*) (*suitable, to the point*) Please don't beat about the bush, come to *pertinent* point.
48. **Precursor** (*n.*) (*forerunner, pioneer*) Surendra Nath Bannerjee was *precursor* of Indian National Movement.
49. **Pariah** (*n.*) (*social outcast*) When he married a girl of his own choice, he came to be considered a *pariah* by his family.
50. **Perverse** (*adj.*) (*stubborn, intractable*) She could not pull well with her husband because of her *perverse* nature.
51. **Ponder** (*v.*) (*think*) Before taking hasty step you must *ponder* over the consequences of your action.
52. **Passing** (*adj.*) (*transitory*) Don't be proud of your beauty because it is *passing* in nature.
53. **Plebeian** (*n.*) (*of low rank*) Shakespeare treated *plebeians* with contempt in his plays.
54. **Pensive** (*adj.*) (*thoughtful*) She was in a *pensive* mood and looked intently at the placid water of the lake.
55. **Puerile** (*adj.*) (*silly, childish*) Though she has grown up, her *puerile* behaviour always irritates her friends.

**Q**

1. **Quip** (*n.*) (*a clever remark*) She is quite intelligent and is in the habit of making *quips*.
2. **Query** (*n.*) (*question*) He raised a *query* to find out the veracity of her statement.
3. **Quisling** (*n.*) (*traitor*) The Mughals and the English always depended on *quislings* to defeat their indomitable enemies.
4. **Quack** (*n.*) (*untrained doctor*) A person who dishonestly claims to have knowledge of a subject is called a *quack*.
5. **Quadruped** (*n.*) (*having four feet*) A cow is a useful *quadruped*.
6. **Quasi** (*n.*) (*to a certain extent*) Indian Constitution is *quasi*-federal.
7. **Quandary** (*n.*) (*in a fix, dilemma*) Most of the students are in a *quandary* about their future plans after they have completed their education.
8. **Quest** (*n.*) (*search*) He left home at a very early age in *quest* of a job.
9. **Quell** (*n.*) (*suppress, crush*) India must deal with the militants with an iron hand to *quell* anti-national activities.
10. **Quintessence** (*n.*) (*perfect example, paragon*) Everybody admires her because she is the *quintessence* of benevolence.
11. **Quarantine** (*adj.*) (*period of separation*) She was admitted to *quarantine* ward to avoid the danger of spreading of viral fever in the hospital.
12. **Quash** (*v.*) (*set aside, strike down*) The High Court *quashed* the verdict of the lower court.
13. **Quench** (*v.*) (*satisfy*) She needed water urgently to *quench* her thirst when she returned from college.
14. **Queer** (*adj.*) (*strange*) As she has a *queer* way of talking, everybody makes fun of her.
15. **Qualms** (*n.*) (*feeling of doubt (right or wrong)*) The hardened criminals are the last to feel *qualms* while committing cruel deeds.
16. **Quietude** (*n.*) (*peace*) Once the heaven of *quietude* Kashmir Valley is now a place haunted by terrorism.
17. **Quirk** (*n.*) (*a strange act*) One can call his misfortune just a *quirk* of fate.
18. **Quixotic** (*adj.*) (*generous*) He has not been successful in life because of his *quixotic* ideas.
19. **Quizzical** (*adj.*) (*questioning*) The *quizzical* remarks often made by Rohit are appreciated by his friends.
20. **Querrulous** (*adj.*) (*fretful*) His *querrulous* behaviour has made him unpopular with his friends.

<b>R</b>
----------

1. **Reprieve** (*n.*) (*temporary stay*) The lawyers got him *reprieve* when he was granted bail and released from jail.
2. **Requisite** (*n.*) (*necessary requirement*) Hard work and honesty are *requisite* to success in life.
3. **Rampart** (*n.*) (*defensive wall*) The Prime Minister declared from the *ramparts* of the Red Fort that sovereignty of India is inviolable.
4. **Reciprocate** (*v.*) (*repay in kind*) It is our duty to *reciprocate* the love and regards of our children.
5. **Rendezvous** (*n.*) (*meeting place*) Once Coffee House in Connaught Place was a famous *rendezvous* for the writers and journalists.
6. **Realm** (*n.*) (*kingdom*) In recent years, India has made tremendous progress in the *realm* of nuclear weapons.
7. **Refurbish** (*v.*) (*make clean*) A person can *refurbish* his image by leading life dedicated to his vocation.
8. **Robust** (*adj.*) (*vigorous, strong*) Only *robust* players can withstand the stress and strain of sports in modern times.
9. **Renounce** (*v.*) (*abandon, give up*) Lord Buddha *renounced* material life in search of freedom from sufferings of life.
10. **Rudimentary** (*adj.*) (*not developed, elementary*) If one wishes to learn the art of conversation, one must be aware of the *rudimentary* rules of grammar.
11. **Remonstrate** (*v.*) (*protest*) The players *remonstrated* with the umpire about the run-out decision.
12. **Repudiate** (*v.*) (*disown*) The Finance Minister *repudiated* his remarks by saying that he was quoted out of context.
13. **Rapprochement** (*n.*) (*reconciliation*) There is hardly any possibility of *rapprochement* between India and China as long as boundary dispute between them exists.
14. **Raze** (*v.*) (*destroy completely*) The whole village was *razed* to ground by constant shelling from across the border.
15. **Recrimination** (*n.*) (*counter charges*) When her husband advised her not to neglect her domestic obligations, there were offensive *recriminations* from her.
16. **Repercussion** (*n.*) (*reaction*) Every Indian is afraid that Kashmir problem will have serious *repercussions* both on Indian polity and economy.
17. **Rectify** (*v.*) (*correct*) The accountant was able to find out the mistake and *rectified* it in time.
18. **Relinquish** (*v.*) (*abandon*) Neither of the two brothers is ready to *relinquish* his claims to the paternal property.

19. **Retrograde** (*v.*) (*going backward*) Although we claim to have progressed in every field, in fact we have *retrograded* in upholding human values.
20. **Retrospective** (*adj.*) [*looking back on the past (from past effect)*] (i) When he is in *retrospective* mood, he speaks high of halcyon days of his youth.  
(ii) You will get bonus with *retrospective* effect.
21. **Retaliate** (*v.*) (*hit back*) The Defence Minister warned that India would *retaliate*, if attacked.
22. **Retinue** (*n.*) (*number of attendants*) The Prime Minister arrived in the town with a *retinue* of officials.
23. **Ruthless** (*adj.*) (*pitiless*) The landlady was not only robbed but also beaten *ruthlessly*.
24. **Ramification** (*n.*) (*far reaching effect*) The interference of the President in the affairs of Central Government is fraught with dire *ramifications*.
25. **Relegate** (*v.*) (*put to lower position*) After the defeat of Indian Cricket team in the semifinals in the World Cup it has been *relegated* to seventh position in ranking.
26. **Recant** (*v.*) (*repudiate*) In spite of the advice of the party high command he did not *recant* his observation about the leader of the party.
27. **Restive** (*adj.*) (*restless, unmanageable*) The labourers working in this factory are *restive* on account of non-payment of bonus this year.
28. **Rampage** (*n.*) (*rush in sudden violent behaviour*) The demonstrators went on the *rampage* when the Superintendent of Police refused to listen to their grievances.
29. **Rapt** (*adj.*) (*fully attentive*) The speech of the Prime Minister was listened to with *rapt* attention by the audience.
30. **Renegade** (*n.*) (*turn coat in politics, religion*) In spite of anti-defection law *renegades* in Indian politics are having a field day.
31. **Retard** (*v.*) (*hinder, check*) Population problem has *retarded* economic progress in every field.
32. **Reprisal** (*n.*) (*retaliation*) In spite of provocative policy of militancy pursued by Pakistan, India has done nothing by way of *reprisal*.
33. **Rancour** (*n.*) (*bitterness*) Though they had planned to marry, now there is feeling of *rancour* between them.
34. **Ravage** (*n.*) (*plunder, destroy*) The floods this year have *ravaged* the crops severely.
35. **Regime** (*n.*) (*system of government*) *Every regime in Pakistan has survived only by arousing animosity against India.*

36. **Render** (*v.*) (*deliver, give*) He is always prepared to *render* help to the needy.
37. **Recipient** (*n.*) (*receiver*) The *recipients* of gallantry awards will be honoured on the Republic day.
38. **Repartee** (*n.*) (*clever retort*) The discussion in the Parliament on the reservation issue was replete with *repartees*.
39. **Reiterate** (*v.*) (*repeat*) The Principal has *reiterated* that those students who are irregular will not be allowed to take examination.
40. **Rusticate** (*v.*) (*expel*) He was caught copying in the examination hall and was *rusticated* from the university for two years.
41. **Replenish** (*v.*) (*fill up again*) When the food ran out, it was *replenished* by the rescue team promptly.
42. **Replete** (*adj.*) (*filled to capacity*) There is no peace in the family though the home is *replete* with every modern comfort.
43. **Rowdy** (*adj.*) (*disorderly, disobedient*) On the eve of the visit of the Chief Minister the *rowdy* elements in the city were rounded up by the police.
44. **Redundant** (*adj.*) (*superfluous, surplus*) The use of computers in the government offices has made thousands of workers *redundant*.
45. **Rift** (*n.*) (*opening, breach*) The *rift* between two friends has become irreconcilable.
46. **Renunciation** (*n.*) (*giving up, renouncing*) Life of *renunciation* contributes to both moral and physical health.
47. **Ruse** (*n.*) (*trick, strategy*) Heavy shelling by Pakistan Army was a *ruse* to help the militants enter Indian territory.
48. **Rampant** (*adj.*) (*unrestrained, growth beyond control*) Corruption is *rampant* in every section of Indian society.
49. **Replica** (*n.*) (*a copy, miniature*) *Replicas* of world famous paintings are available these days.
50. **Rife** (*adj.*) (*widespread, current*) The city is *rife* with rumours of communal riots.
51. **Redress** (*n.*) (*remedy, compensation*) The victim of the police injustice sought legal *redress*.
52. **Retrieve** (*v.*) (*recover, bring back*) The government is trying to *retrieve* economy from recession.
53. **Redoubtable** (*adj.*) (*formidable*) India needs *redoubtable* politicians to build India strong.
54. **Resume** (*n./v.*) (*restart, summary*) She narrated the *resume* of the day's events and I was shocked.
55. **Reticence** (*n.*) (*reserve, talking little*) Her *reticence* makes her look mysterious.

<b>S</b>
----------

1. **Slovenly** (*adj.*) (*untidy, careless in work*) She is often reprimanded for her *slovenly* habits.
2. **Supple** (*adj.*) (*flexible, pliant*) The *supple* limbs of the athletes impressed everybody.
3. **Sacrilegious** (*adj.*) (*desecrating, profane*) The communal riots in the city broke out as a result of *sacrilegious* act of one community.
4. **Sangfroid** (*n.*) (*coolness, courage*) The *sangfroid* of the Army Commander saved the check post from being recaptured by the enemy.
5. **Scourge** (*n.*) (*severe punishment*) The Plague broke out in the province and people thought it to be a divine *scourge*.
6. **Salvage** (*v.*) (*rescue from loss*) The army swung into action to *salvage* the havoc caused by the earth quake.
7. **Sultry** (*adj.*) (*sweltering*) September and October are *sultry* months because of excessive humidity.
8. **Surmise** (*v.*) (*guess*) I *surmised* that he would not succeed in his attempt to exploit his wife.
9. **Spurious** (*adj.*) (*false, counterfeit, fake*) There is glut of *spurious* drugs in the market.
10. **Stamina** (*n.*) (*strength*) She has a lot of *stamina* and works for hours together.
11. **Supersede** (*v.*) (*take the place of*) When the Marketing Manager was *superseded* by his junior, the former resigned.
12. **Saga** (*n.*) (*a traditional story of heroic deeds*) The *saga* of Indian soldiers on the war front is beyond description.
13. **Salutary** (*adj.*) (*beneficial*) *Salutary* working conditions tend to improve the efficiency of the workers.
14. **Slander** (*n.*) (*defamation*) The editor of the newspaper was charged with *slander*.
15. **Serenity** (*n.*) (*calmness, tranquility*) The *serenity* of the valley in the evening overwhelmed the visitors.
16. **Sumptuous** (*adj.*) [*lavish (feast)*] *Sumptuous* feast was served on the occasion of the wedding.
17. **Stagnant** (*adj.*) (*motionless*) *Stagnant* water emits foul smell.
18. **Substantiate** (*v.*) (*verify, support*) It is difficult to *substantiate* his statement for want of solid proof.
19. **Sedition** (*n.*) (*rebellion*) The Prime Minister of the state was charged with *sedition* by the king and was executed.
20. **Stint** (*n.*) (*assigned work*) Our servant performs his daily *stint* without grumbling.

21. **Span** (*n.*) (*distance (of time)*) Within a short *span* of ten years he made remarkable progress in business.
22. **Supercilious** (*adj.*) (*haughty*) Everybody resents the *supercilious* treatment of the Manager.
23. **Savage** (*adj.*) (*uncivilized, primitive*) Sati system is definitely a *savage* custom.
24. **Sporadic** (*adj.*) (*occurring irregularly*) *Sporadic* firing from across the borders continues throughout the year.
25. **Status quo** (*n.*) (*existing position*) India and Pakistan have agreed to maintain *status quo* in respect of Line of Control in Kashmir.
26. **Superannuated** (*v.*) (*retired on pension*) The *superannuated* army personnel are not satisfied with their pension grades.
27. **Sophistication** (*n.*) (*artificiality, refined*) *Sophistication* implies the loss of natural simplicity in a character.
28. **Scion** (*n.*) (*off spring*) A number of *scions* of the former rulers have joined politics to maintain their status.
29. **Sinister** (*adj.*) (*suggesting evil*) India has to be always vigilant to foil the *sinister* designs of Pakistan on Kashmir.
30. **Salient** (*adj.*) (*prominent*) The passive nature of the foreign policy of India has been its *salient* feature which has not paid dividends.
31. **Sagacious** (*adj.*) (*having insight*) My father is quite *sagacious* and is seldom taken in by the hypocrisy of his friends.
32. **Schism** (*n.*) (*split, division into two parts*) The *schism* in the Congress party has led to polarisation of political forces on economic basis.
33. **Savour** (*v.*) (*have a distinct flavour, smell or quality*) The assurance of the opposition leaders to flood victims *savours* of sheer hypocrisy.
34. **Senility** (*n.*) (*old age, feeble mindedness of old age*) Because of *senility* he has lost hold over family business.
35. **Subsequent** (*adj.*) (*following, later*) *Subsequent* event have proved our apprehension correct about our business partner's treachery.
36. **Sartorial** (*adj.*) (*pertaining to dress*) In the modern era there are rapid changes in *sartorial* fashions.
37. **Scrupulous** (*adj.*) (*conscientious*) India is woefully lacking *scrupulous* politicians who are concerned with public welfare.
38. **Subsidy** (*n.*) (*financial aid*) Government is thinking of providing *subsidy* on import of edible oils.
39. **Subjugate** (*v.*) (*conquer*) The king was overthrown as he was unable to *subjugate* the traitors.

40. **Succour** (*n.*) (*aid, relief*) The government has provided ample *succour* to the farmers affected by flood in the form of financial subsidy.
41. **Sycophant** (*n.*) (*flatterer*) One must be wary of a *sycophant* who is just like a snake in the grass.
42. **Surrupitious** (*adj.*) (*secret*) The *surrupitious* visit of Henry Kissinger to China brought about revolutionary transformation in the relations between America and China.
43. **Solar** (*adj.*) (*of the sun*) *Solar* eclipse will be visible in India at 2 p.m. tomorrow.
44. **Stringent** (*adj.*) (*strict, severe*) *Stringent* laws to curb terrorism in India must be enforced.
45. **Scruple** (*n.*) (*sense of right and wrong*) He has no *scruple* in letting down his parents by his wanton behaviour.
46. **Shambles** (*n.*) (*scene of destruction*) The house where murder was committed was a *shambles*.
47. **Sacrosanct** (*adj.*) (*most sacred*) The President of India should not regard his privileges as *sacrosanct* and immune from public criticism.
48. **Spiteful** (*adj.*) (*contemptuous*) The *spiteful* behaviour of our neighbours is the result of their jealousy.
49. **Stigma** (*adj.*) (*mark of disgrace*) The *stigma* of having been sentenced to imprisonment always rankles in his mind.
50. **Succumb** (*v.*) (*die, yield*) The wounded soldier *succumbed* to his injuries later on.
51. **Sluggish** (*adj.*) (*slow*) The production activities in the factory have become *sluggish* on account of the apathy of the management.
52. **Sedentary** (*adj.*) (*requiring sitting*) Those engaged in *sedentary* jobs need physical exercise.

**T**

1. **Tantamount** (*adj.*) (*equal in effect*) Your action is obviously *tantamount* to insult.
2. **Tacit** (*adj.*) (*understood*) There seems to be a *tacit* understanding between China and Pakistan about destabilising India.
3. **Tirade** (*n.*) (*extended scolding*) It is a common practice of the opposition parties to indulge in *tirade* about the policies of the government.
4. **Tenacity** (*n.*) (*firmness, determination*) *Tenacity* of purpose alone can lead you to your goal of life.
5. **Tenure** (*n.*) (*duration, period*) The pension benefits are granted to an employee in proportion to the *tenure* of service.

6. **Tranquil** (*adj.*) (*calm, peaceful*) The *tranquil* atmosphere in the hills proves salutary to one's jaded spirits.
7. **Temporal** (*adj.*) (*not lasting forever*) Everything in the world is *temporal* and mortal.
8. **Tyro** (*n.*) (*beginner, novice*) Though he is just a *tyro* in business, he works like a veteran.
9. **Tepid** (*adj.*) (*luke warm*) Please take the medicine with *tepid* water.
10. **Tortuous** (*adj.*) (*winding, full of curves*) The journey on the *tortuous* roads in the valley was arduous.
11. **Tryst** (*n.*) (*meeting, private meeting*) The villagers got wind of the *tryst* between the lovers and hacked them to death.
12. **Tentative** (*adj.*) (*provisional, experimental*) Nothing is yet final, only *tentative* programme has been announced.
13. **Terminus** (*n.*) (*last stop of rail, road*) Mumbai is the *terminus* of the Western Railways.
14. **Thwart** (*v.*) (*baffle, frustrate*) The vigilant soldiers on the borders *thwarted* the intrusion of the militants into Kashmir.
15. **Trauma** (*n.*) (*injury, shock*) The *trauma* of physical injury in war has made him suffer from neurosis.
16. **Travesty** (*n.*) (*mockery, parody*) The trial of patriots like Bhagat Singh was a sheer *travesty* of justice.
17. **Throttle** (*v.*) (*strangle*) The old woman was *throttled* to death by the dacoits.
18. **Trite** (*adj.*) (*hackneyed, commonplace*) Such *trite* remarks as made by the opposition about Indian Army lowers the prestige of the country.
19. **Tempo** (*n.*) (*speed of music*) The *tempo* of economic progress in India has been woefully slow resulting in unmanageable unemployment problem.
20. **Tenet** (*n.*) (*doctrine, dogma*) The *tenets* of Buddhism emphasise the need of simple life.
21. **Tribulation** (*n.*) (*sufferings*) She went through *tribulation* in life with fortitude.
22. **Taciturn** (*adj.*) (*habitually, silent*) *Taciturn* persons don't commit themselves at random.
23. **Tenuous** (*adj.*) (*fragile, delicate*) The constituents of the present government are held by *tenuous* ties.
24. **Terminology** (*n.*) (*terms used in a subject*) Science *terminology* is Greek and Latin to a Sanskrit scholar.
25. **Terse** (*adj.*) (*concise, pithy*) Dr. Johnson is admired for his *terse* style of writing.
26. **Travail** (*n.*) (*painful labour, hard work*) He has gone through *travail* and sufferings in life manfully.

27. **Threshold** (*n.*) (*entrance*) India is on the *threshold* of economic revolution.
28. **Tainted** (*adj.*) (*infected, corrupt*) Ice cream sold by street hawkers is generally *tainted* and inedible.
29. **Talisman** (*n.*) (*a magical object bringing good luck*) The mother made her son wear *talisman* to ward off evil.
30. **Transcend** (*v.*) (*surpass*) Peace of mind in one's life *transcends* all material achievements.

**U**

1. **Untenable** (*adj.*) (*unsupportable*) Your arguments are *untenable* because they have no bearing on the subject.
2. **Unbridled** (*adj.*) (*unchecked*) The city is torn with *unbridled* violence because of communal riots.
3. **Ubiquitous** (*adj.*) (*present everywhere, omnipresent*) Dogs are *ubiquitous* in every Indian street.
4. **Upbraid** (*v.*) (*scold, reproach*) She was *upbraided* for her impertinence.
5. **Uxorious** (*adj.*) (*devoted to one's wife*) *Uxorious* husbands are not acceptable in the world of men.
6. **Utopia** (*n.*) (*imaginary land*) Those who think of the world free from violence are living in *utopia*.
7. **Usurpation** (*n.*) (*act of seizing power*) The military leader was charged with the *usurpation* of the throne.
8. **Umbrage** (*n.*) (*resentment, anger*) She considered his remarks exceptionable and took *umbrage* at them.
9. **Ulterior** (*adj.*) (*hidden, unstated*) She could not see through *ulterior* motives of her mother-in-law and came to grief.
10. **Unearth** (*v.*) (*dig up*) The police were able to *unearth* the cause of murder only after sustained interrogation.
11. **Unkempt** (*adj.*) (*dishevelled, untidy*) When he came out of the police station he looked shaken and *unkempt*.
12. **Unilateral** (*adj.*) (*one sided*) He objected to the *unilateral* decision of his partner to enter into an agreement with a third party.
13. **Unequivocal** (*adj.*) (*obvious, plain*) India has declared in *unequivocal* terms that she would not like third party mediation on Kashmir issue.
14. **Unsavoury** (*adj.*) (*nasty, disgusting*) Her *unsavoury* remarks about the host broke up the party suddenly.
15. **Unruly** (*adj.*) (*unmanageable*) Her *unruly* behaviour in the class annoyed the teacher.

<b>V</b>
----------

1. **Vivacious** (*adj.*) (*animated, gay*) *Vivacious* children are loved by everybody.
2. **Vacillation** (*n.*) (*fluctuation, wavering*) My friend's *vacillation* between fear and hope made all of us nervous.
3. **Vindicate** (*v.*) (*justify, clear of charge*) His innocence was *vindicated* and the judge acquitted him.
4. **Versatile** (*adj.*) (*having many talents*) India needs *versatile* players like Kapil Dev.
5. **Verity** (*n.*) (*truth, reality*) The *verity* of his statement has been vindicated by the subsequent events.
6. **Vociferous** (*adj.*) (*clamorous, noisy*) The traders had planned a peaceful march but the mob grew *vociferous* in excitement.
7. **Vie** (*v.*) (*contend, compete*) The middle class should not *vie* with the rich.
8. **Venerable** (*adj.*) (*deserving high respect*) *Venerable* persons are always respected in society.
9. **Vent** (*v.*) (*express, utter*) The writer seems to have *vented* his anger at the injustice done to him in his latest novel.
10. **Veer** (*v.*) (*change, turn*) When he was attacked he *veered* round and retaliated.
11. **Vehement** (*adj.*) (*with vigour, strong*) The teachers made *vehement* protest against the promotion policy of the University.
12. **Vagary** (*n.*) (*strange and sudden change*) The crop was destroyed because of the *vagary* of the nature.
13. **Vogue** (*n.*) (*popular fashion*) Jeans are in *vogue* these days.
14. **Vantage** (*n.*) (*position giving an advantage*) The militants occupied the position of *vantage* and started firing across the valley.
15. **Venal** (*adj.*) (*capable of being bribed*) The *venal* police men did not take any action against the smuggler and set him free.
16. **Vitiate** (*v.*) (*spoil the effect of*) The reservation policy has *vitiated* Indian society giving rise to castist politics.
17. **Vendetta** (*n.*) (*family feud*) The abduction of Mr. Rastogi is attributed to *vendetta* between the two families.
18. **Viable** (*adj.*) (*able to exist*) Your argument is not *viable* because it has no bearing on the subject.
19. **Vilify** (*v.*) (*slander, malign*) Election is a period when politicians try to *vilify* the reputation of others.
20. **Vernal** (*adj.*) (*pertaining to spring*) *Vernal* rain in England is a common phenomenon.
21. **Vintage** (*n.*) (*rare, grape harvesting season*) *Vintage* car rally was held in India last year.

22. **Vindictive** (*adj.*) (*vengeful*) The elephant is *vindictive*.
23. **Vandalism** (*n.*) (*destruction of public property*) The unruly crowd was dispersed by the police when it indulged in *vandalism*.
24. **Vituperative** (*adj.*) (*disparaging*) It is a pity that modern politicians indulge in *vituperative* criticism in election campaigns.

<b>W</b>
----------

1. **Waive** (*v.*) (*remove*) Government is thinking of *waiving* of import duty on life saving drugs.
2. **Wanton** (*adj.*) (*playful, immoral*) Her *wanton* conduct cost her loss of reputation in society.
3. **Withhold** (*v.*) (*keep back*) The university is forced to *withhold* the results of many students on account of non-receipt of answer-books from the teachers.
4. **Wreck** (*v.*) (*destroy*) The ship was *wrecked* when it collided with an invisible rock in the sea.
5. **Wont** (*n.*) (*habit*) Everybody was surprised at the manner of his behaviour because he acted differently from his *wont*.
6. **Wary** (*adj.*) (*chary, cautious*) You must be *wary* of strangers while travelling.
7. **Wean** (*v.*) (*separate*) The opposition is trying to woo the voters belonging to the minority by *weaning* them from the party in power.
8. **Warrant** (*v.*) (*justify*) His impudent behaviour towards the teacher was not at all *warranted*.
9. **Way-ward** (*adj.*) (*unruly, rowdy*) She is fickle minded and is accused of *way-ward* disposition by her friends.
10. **Wane** (*v.*) (*decline*) The popularity of the Congress party is certainly on the *wane*.
11. **Wilful** (*adj.*) (*obstinate*) The child is *wilful* and impervious to the advice of his parents.
12. **Wan** (*adj.*) (*pale looking, weak*) She looked *wan* and weak after long illness.
13. **Way-lay** (*v.*) (*rob*) The ladies were *way-laid* when they were returning from picnic.
14. **Wrath** (*n.*) (*anger*) The natural calamities are manifestation of divine *wrath* and scourge.
15. **Wilt** (*v.*) (*wither*) The plants *wilted* in the scorching heat of the sun.
16. **Wield** (*v.*) [*use (power)*] Dictators are accustomed to *wielding* power against their opponents ruthlessly.
17. **Wreak** (*v.*) (*give expression to*) Hamlet *wreaked* vengeance for the murder of his father.

18. **Wrest** (*v.*) (*take violently*) In elections every party tries to *wrest* initiative from opposite parties by hook or by crook.
19. **Whip** (*v./n.*) (*lash, flog*) The rapist was *whipped* publically by the residents.
20. **Wangle** (*v.*) (*manage by unfair means*) The employees always try to *wangle* extra benefits from their employers.

**X**

1. **Xenophobia** (*n.*) (*fear of foreigners, yellow peril*) The white races are obsessed with *xenophobia* and are afraid of losing hegemony.

**Y**

1. **Yawn** (*v.*) (*deep breath with mouth open*) She *yawned* and fell asleep soon.
2. **Yearn** (*v.*) (*long for, keen desire*) She *yearns* to meet her daughter who is in the States.
3. **Yeoman** (*n.*) (*a working farmer on his own land*) Bal Gangadhar Tilak did *yeoman* service to the cause of Indian freedom.
4. **Yoke** (*n.*) (*used for oxen for pulling carts*) India was able to get rid of the *yoke* of the English after World War II.
5. **Yolk** (*n.*) (*yellow part of an egg*) The *yolk* of an egg is quite nutritious.

**Z**

1. **Zest** (*n.*) (*enthusiasm, gusto*) She lost *zest* in life after the death of her only son.
2. **Zealot** (*n.*) (*fanatic*) The *zealots* are offensive to those who believe in humanitarian service.
3. **Zealous** (*adj.*) (*enthusiastic*) We must guard our freedom *zealously*.
4. **Zig-zag** (*n.*) (*winding with unequal bends*) The rash driving on *zig-zag* roads is quite dangerous.
5. **Zoom** (*n.*) (*rise, move upwards*) Prices of medicines *zoomed* when their imports were banned.
6. **Zenith** (*n.*) (*summit, peak*) Today he is at the *zenith* of his career.

# Additional Words for Practice

Word	Meaning
1. <b>Annuity</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	fixed income paid yearly
2. <b>Arboreal</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	living or connected with trees
3. <b>Asperity</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	harshness
4. <b>Aberration</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	departure from usual/normal
5. <b>Approbation</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	approval
6. <b>Amenable</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	responsive, responsible to
7. <b>Abstinence</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	restraint in drinking or eating
8. <b>Ambivalent</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	with conflicting emotions, wishes
9. <b>Abductor</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	cattle thief
10. <b>Apiarian</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	of bees (working habits)
11. <b>Abash</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	embarrass
12. <b>Abdicate</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	give up right to throne
13. <b>Abortive</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	fruitless
14. <b>Abstemious</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	moderate in eating and drinking
15. <b>Aquiline</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	of eagle, curved, hooked
16. <b>Agnostic</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	sceptical about the existence of God
17. <b>Adventitious</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	accidental
18. <b>Accolade</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	award
19. <b>Abrogate</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	annul, abolish
20. <b>Amnesia</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	loss of memory
21. <b>Apex</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	summit, peak
22. <b>Awry</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	go wrong, distorted, haywire
23. <b>Avuncular</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	of uncle
24. <b>Axiomatic</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	needing no proof, evident
25. <b>Anathema</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	curse, detested thing
26. <b>Accomplice</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	partner in crime
27. <b>Abettor</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	one who incites, encourage
28. <b>Aplomb</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	poise
29. <b>Annals</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	historical records
30. <b>Avid</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	voracious, enthusiastic
31. <b>Apostate</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	one who gives up religious/political faith
32. <b>Ambience</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	surrounding, environment
33. <b>Avow</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	declare
34. <b>Asinine</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	of ass
35. <b>Austere</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	stern, severe

36. <b>Assiduous</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	diligent
37. <b>Auctorial</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	of author (Pen Power)
38. <b>Arraign</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	bring a criminal charge against a person
39. <b>Animus</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	hostile, intent
40. <b>Apropos</b> ( <i>adv.</i> )	properly, concerning
41. <b>Abate</b> ( <i>adv.</i> )	lessen intensity
42. <b>Assimilate</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	absorb
43. <b>Apocalypse</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	revelation about future
44. <b>Apocryphal</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	of doubtful author
45. <b>Archetype</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	important example, ideal form
46. <b>Abnegation</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	self-sacrifice, repudiation
47. <b>Abysmal</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	bottomless, dismal
48. <b>Advent</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	arrival
49. <b>Advertent</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	intentional
50. <b>Aegis</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	sponsorship, patronage
51. <b>Aphasia</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	loss of speech
52. <b>Abject</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	miserable, low
53. <b>Ablution</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	purification, cleansing
54. <b>Acquiesce</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	accept unwillingly
55. <b>Ambush</b> ( <i>n./v.</i> )	surprised attack
56. <b>Artefacts</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	objects of primitive culture
57. <b>Augury</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	prophecy, omen
58. <b>Aver</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	state confidently
60. <b>Abeyance</b> ( <i>adv.</i> )	in a suspended state
61. <b>Appellation</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	title
62. <b>Accrue</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	increase by addition
63. <b>Arrant</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	thorough, sheer
64. <b>Attrition</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	gradual wearing down
65. <b>Assail</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	assault, criticise
66. <b>Aspersions</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	slandorous remarks
67. <b>Acronym</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	a word formed with the first letters
68. <b>Alias</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	assumed name
69. <b>Asylum</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	refuge, place for mentally ill
70. <b>Ambit</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	bound, extent of power
71. <b>Affinity</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	similarity, liking
72. <b>Adumbrate</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	fore shadow
73. <b>Apt</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	suitable, apt to (likely)
74. <b>Auspices</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	help, favour of somebody
75. <b>Allegiance</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	loyalty, faithfulness
76. <b>Adaptation</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	of something (play, novel)
77. <b>Assailant</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	one who attacks

78. **Auricular** (*adj.*) of ear, confession in ear  
 79. **Auspicious** (*adj.*) favourable, prosperous  
 80. **Augment** (*v.*) increase  
 81. **Alexia** (*n.*) word blindness (brain disorder)  
 82. **Asphyxia** (*n.*) suffocation caused by lack of air  
 83. **Albeit** (*conj.*) although, though  
 84. **Attenuate** (*v.*) make thin or weak  
 85. **Archaic** (*adj.*) old fashioned  
 86. **Avian** (*adj.*) concerning birds  
 87. **Aura** (*n.*) quality surrounding a person

<b>B</b>
----------

1. **Besotted** (*adj.*) stupified with wine/drink, attract  
 2. **Beautitude** (*n.*) happiness, beautiful state  
 3. **Bibulous** (*adj.*) fond of drinking  
 4. **Bergeon** (*v.*) grow forth, sprout  
 5. **Bonhomie** (*n.*) pleasantness of manners  
 6. **Bathos** (*n.*) anticlimax, (from sublime to foolish)  
 7. **Belabour** (*v.*) beat soundly  
 8. **Baroque** (*adj./n.*) florid, extravagance in architecture and art  
 9. **Beleaguer** (*v.*) surround, besiege  
 10. **Bucolic** (*adj.*) uncivilised, rustic  
 11. **Blithe** (*adj.*) gay, joyous  
 12. **Bare** (*adj.*) naked, scanty  
 13. **Bland** (*adj.*) mild, soothing  
 14. **Buttress** (*n.*) support with a prop  
 15. **Baleful** (*adj.*) threatening, harming  
 16. **Boisterous** (*adj.*) noisy, violent  
 17. **Bullwark** (*n.*) strong defence  
 18. **Bicameral** (*adj.*) having two chambers  
 19. **Blandishment** (*n.*) flattery to persuade  
 20. **Bountiful** (*adj.*) generous, liberal  
 21. **Bristle** (*v.*) rise like bristle, irritate  
 22. **Balmy** (*adj.*) fragrant, mild, soothing  
 23. **Benign** (*adj.*) kind, charitable  
 24. **Beholden** (*adj.*) obliged, indebted  
 25. **Balk** (*v.*) foil, frustrate  
 26. **Buxom** (*adj.*) fat, healthy looking  
 27. **Bludgeon** (*v.*) club with heavy weapon  
 28. **Brace** (*n.*) support to strengthen, pair, stimulating

29. **Behest** (*n.*) orders of somebody else  
 30. **Barge** (*v.*) rush into  
 31. **Brook** (*v.*) tolerate, (*n.*) a stream  
 32. **Belligerent** (*adj.*) nation waging war, bellicose  
 33. **Bilateral** (*adj.*) between two parties  
 34. **Brigand** (*n.*) a robber (highway, forest)  
 35. **Blaze** (*v.*) burn with flames

<b>C</b>
----------

1. **Convivial** (*adj.*) friendly  
 2. **Connubial** (*adj.*) of marriage (husband and wife)  
 3. **Craven** (*adj.*) cowardly, of crow  
 4. **Cajole** (*v.*) coax, wheedle  
 5. **Callous** (*adj.*) heartless, unfeeling  
 6. **Conjugal** (*adj.*) pertaining to marriage  
 7. **Curtail** (*v.*) cut down, reduce  
 8. **Complicity** (*n.*) involvement, participation  
 9. **Connoisseur** (*n.*) person with good judgement of taste and quality  
 10. **Conspicuous** (*adj.*) prominently visible  
 11. **Credentials** (*n.*) reliability, genuineness of testimonials  
 12. **Candour** (*n.*) frankness  
 13. **Criterion** (*n.*) standard of judging  
 14. **Cursory** (*adj.*) hasty, casual  
 15. **Contiguous** (*adj.*) adjacent to  
 16. **Chequered/**  
**Checkered** (*adj.*) marked by ups and downs  
 17. **Canard** (*n.*) unfounded rumour  
 18. **Carnal** (*adj.*) fleshly  
 19. **Chicanery** (*n.*) trickery, false argument  
 20. **Circumvent** (*v.*) baffle, outwit  
 21. **Circumscribe** (*v.*) confine, limit  
 22. **Cessation** (*n.*) stopping  
 23. **Clairvoyant** (*n.*) fortune teller  
 24. **Circumspect** (*adj.*) cautious, prudent  
 25. **Confiscate** (*v.*) seize, commandeer  
 26. **Cognizance** (*n.*) knowledge  
 27. **Charade** (*n.*) guessing the word from action (a game), pretence  
 28. **Crazy** (*adj.*) wildly excited, foolish  
 29. **Chivalry** (*n.*) courage marked with honour, courtesy  
 30. **Charlatan** (*n.*) fraud, quack  
 31. **Chubby** (*adj.*) round faced, plump

32. **Conjure** (*v.*) to make happen by magic
33. **Choleric** (*adj.*) easily made angry
34. **Contravene** (*v.*) violate, conflict with
35. **Catchword** (*n.*) slogan
36. **Chimerical** (*adj.*) mythical, fanciful (bird, story, hope)
37. **Catalysm** (*n.*) sudden violent change
38. **Compassionate** (*adj.*) kind, benevolent
39. **Conjecture** (*n.*) guess
40. **Crux** (*n.*) central/crucial part of a problem
41. **Covet** (*v.*) desire eagerly
42. **Caveat** (*v.*) process to suspend proceedings (legal)
43. **Cupidity** (*n.*) greed for something
44. **Consort** (*n.*) the husband or the wife of the ruler
45. **Consanguine** (*adj.*) related by birth (same family)
46. **Congenital** (*adj.*) occurring since birth
47. **Crusade** (*n.*) a struggle or movement (religious)
48. **Coffers** (*n.*) treasury for valuables, money
49. **Castigate** (*v.*) punish, criticize severely
50. **Concoct** (*v.*) invent excuse, prepare by mixing
51. **Capitalise** (*v.*) use to one's advantage
52. **Culminate** (*v.*) reach the highest point
53. **Checkmate** (*n.*) obstruct, defeat
54. **Cordial** (*adj.*) warm, heartfelt
55. **Carousal** (*n.*) noisy revelry, feast
56. **Curb** (*v.*) check, control
57. **Cinderella** (*n.*) (a) something long neglected  
(b) a girl/woman whose merits have not been recognised
58. **Colossal** (*adj.*) huge, immense
59. **Cavalier** (*adj.*) without being serious, discourteous
60. **Convalescent** (*n.*) a person recovering from illness
61. **Celebrity** (*n.*) a famous person
62. **Coeval** (*adj.*) of the same origin/age
63. **Crunch** (*n.*) important and unpleasant situation, shortage

<b>D</b>
----------

1. **Descry** (*v.*) seen from distance, dimly seen
2. **Delirium** (*n.*) violent excitement
3. **Disseminate** (*v.*) spread widely
4. **Duress** (*n.*) forcible restraint, threat
5. **Decrepit** (*adj.*) worn out by age

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 6. <b>Desultory</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )             | aimless, jumping around                            |
| 7. <b>Devious</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )               | go astray, erratic                                 |
| 8. <b>Diabolical</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )            | devilish   |
| 9. <b>Debility</b> ( <i>n.</i> )                | weakness, feebleness                               |
| 10. <b>Debonair</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )             | friendly, pleasing                                 |
| 11. <b>Derelict</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )             | abandoned (uncared for), negligent ( <i>duty</i> ) |
| 12. <b>Destitute</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )            | extremely poor                                     |
| 13. <b>Dipsomaniac</b> ( <i>n.</i> )            | having strong craving for liquor                   |
| 14. <b>Debut</b> ( <i>n.</i> )                  | first appearance                                   |
| 15. <b>Debutant</b> ( <i>n.</i> )               | a person making first appearance                   |
| 16. <b>Discerning</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )           | having insight                                     |
| 17. <b>Dissolute</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )            | loose in morals                                    |
| 18. <b>Denigrate</b> ( <i>v.</i> )              | blacken, disparage                                 |
| 19. <b>Doleful</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )              | sorrowful  |
| 20. <b>Disconsolate</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )         | sad, grieving                                      |
| 21. <b>Distraught</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )           | distracted by anxiety                              |
| 22. <b>Diatribes</b> ( <i>n.</i> )              | bitter scolding, invective                         |
| 23. <b>Discursive</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )           | rambling, tortuous                                 |
| 24. <b>Delectable</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )           | delightful   |
| 25. <b>Disparate</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )            | different, unrelated                               |
| 26. <b>Denizens</b> ( <i>n.</i> )               | inhabitants  |
| 27. <b>Dispassionate</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )        | calm, impartial                                    |
| 28. <b>Deviate</b> ( <i>v.</i> )                | go away from                                       |
| 29. <b>Detente</b> ( <i>n.</i> )                | easing of strained relations                       |
| 30. <b>Doyen</b> ( <i>n.</i> )                  | a person of repute in his field                    |
| 31. <b>Drudgery</b> ( <i>n.</i> )               | unpleasant work                                    |
| 32. <b>Deteriorate</b> ( <i>v.</i> )            | worsen, become less in quality                     |
| 33. <b>Defalcation</b> ( <i>n.</i> )            | misappropriation, embezzlement                     |
| 34. <b>Dementia</b> ( <i>n.</i> )               | weakness (memory, mind)                            |
| 35. <b>Diaspora</b> ( <i>n.</i> )               | dispersal of the Jews (358 BC)                     |
| 36. <b>Diversion</b> ( <i>n.</i> )              | turning of road, amusement                         |
| 37. <b>Dilettante</b> ( <i>n.</i> )             | one who studies not seriously                      |
| 38. <b>Decamp</b> ( <i>with</i> ) ( <i>v.</i> ) | run away with                                      |
| 39. <b>Decorum</b> ( <i>n.</i> )                | proper behaviour as desirable                      |
| 40. <b>Dispel</b> ( <i>v.</i> )                 | remove doubt, fear                                 |
| 41. <b>Disperse</b> ( <i>v.</i> )               | scatter here and there                             |
| 42. <b>Docile</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )               | easily manageable, flexible                        |
| 43. <b>Delinquent</b> ( <i>n.</i> )             | one who does misdeeds                              |
| 44. <b>Dismal</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )               | bleak, gloomy                                      |
| 45. <b>Disinter</b> ( <i>v.</i> )               | dig up from grave, exhume                          |
| 46. <b>Discrepancy</b> ( <i>n.</i> )            | mistake, difference                                |

47. **Deviant** (*n.*) a person different from customary character  
 48. **Delirious** (*adj.*) excited with (joy)  
 49. **Diligent** (*adj.*) hard working

<b>E</b>
----------

1. **Erratic** (*adj.*) irregular in behaviour, movement  
 2. **Elephantine** (*adj.*) like an elephant  
 3. **Excerpt** (*n.*) an extract from a book or writing  
 4. **Etiquette** (*n.*) polite manners and behaviour  
 5. **Elite** (*n.*) considered to be superior in knowledge, wealth  
 6. **Epitome** (*n.*) concise, one that displays the quality of the other  
 7. **Escapade** (*n.*) reckless act causing trouble, daring  
 8. **Expedite** (*v.*) hasten, speed up  
 9. **Emeritus** (*adj.*) retired but retained in honorary capacity  
 10. **Extrovert** (*n.*) person interested in outward things, cheerful  
 11. **Enjoin** (*v.*) command, order  
 12. **Explicit** (*adj.*) definite, expressed  
 13. **Evince** (*v.*) show, exhibit clearly  
 14. **Epicure** (*n.*) one devoted to sensuous pleasures  
 15. **Exotic** (*adj.*) foreign, not native, strange  
 16. **Exuberant** (*adj.*) luxuriant, overflowing, spirited  
 17. **Exude** (*v.*) emit, ooze out  
 18. **Eerie** (*adj.*) causing feeling of fear and mystery  
 19. **Effete** (*adj.*) tired, worn out  
 20. **Egalitarian** (*n.*) person believing in equal rights and benefits  
 21. **Effervescent** (*adj.*) enthusiastic, bubbly  
 22. **Eulogy** (*n.*) praise  
 23. **Exasperate** (*v.*) vex, irritate  
 24. **Eclat** (*n.*) brilliant, applause  
 25. **Entail** (*v.*) make necessary, impose (expense)  
 26. **Ebb** (*v.*) flow back, grow weak  
 27. **Exigent** (*adj.*) urgent, pressing  
 28. **Espouse** (*v.*) support a cause  
 29. **Evolve** (*v.*) develop gradually  
 30. **Erstwhile** (*adj.*) former  
 31. **Exhort** (*v.*) advise earnestly  
 32. **Empathy** (*n.*) sharing and understanding  
 33. **Encore** (*Int.*) repeat (a song, poem), once more  
 34. **Exculpate** (*v.*) to free from charge  
 35. **Exhume** (*v.*) disinter, to dig up from grave

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 36. <b>Exacerbate</b> ( <i>v.</i> )  | aggravate, worsen                           |
| 37. <b>Exorcist</b> ( <i>n.</i> )    | one who drives out evil spirits             |
| 38. <b>Elevate</b> ( <i>n.</i> )     | to raise, promote                           |
| 39. <b>Echelon</b> ( <i>n.</i> )     | step like formation, hierarchy (of ranks)   |
| 40. <b>Empirical</b> ( <i>adj.</i> ) | based on observation and experiment         |
| 41. <b>Ensnare</b> ( <i>v.</i> )     | establish oneself safely                    |
| 42. <b>Euphoria</b> ( <i>v.</i> )    | state of well being, elation                |
| 43. <b>Esoteric</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )  | group of small circle of disciples          |
| 44. <b>Euphemism</b> ( <i>n.</i> )   | use mild and vague words for what is actual |
| 45. <b>Euphuism</b> ( <i>n.</i> )    | artificial and ornate style                 |
| 46. <b>Eavesdrop</b> ( <i>v.</i> )   | listen secretly                             |
| 47. <b>Ebullient</b> ( <i>adj.</i> ) | enthusiastic, energetic                     |
| 48. <b>Exaggerate</b> ( <i>v.</i> )  | describe beyond truth                       |
| 49. <b>Enervated</b> ( <i>adj.</i> ) | exhausted, feeling weak                     |
| 50. <b>Enigma</b> ( <i>n.</i> )      | puzzle, riddle                              |

<b>F</b>
----------

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <b>Fumble</b> ( <i>v.</i> )           | to grope, to find                     |
| 2. <b>Flamboyant</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )     | florid, showy, ostentatious           |
| 3. <b>Facetious</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )      | amusingly mocking, teasing            |
| 4. <b>Flay</b> ( <i>v.</i> )             | criticise, strip off skin             |
| 5. <b>Fritter</b> ( <i>v.</i> )          | waste, squander, sap                  |
| 6. <b>Fanfare</b> ( <i>n.</i> )          | loud exciting (music)                 |
| 7. <b>Flourish</b> ( <i>v.</i> )         | prosper, wave about, thrive           |
| 8. <b>Fluke</b> ( <i>n.</i> )            | stroke of luck, fortunate accident    |
| 9. <b>Fiasco</b> ( <i>n.</i> )           | failure                               |
| 10. <b>Forte</b> ( <i>n.</i> )           | strong or special talent              |
| 11. <b>Foster</b> ( <i>v.</i> )          | encourage, rear                       |
| 12. <b>Factious</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )      | belonging to a faction                |
| 13. <b>Flinch</b> ( <i>v.</i> )          | hesitate, shrink                      |
| 14. <b>Frolicsome</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )    | prankish, gay                         |
| 15. <b>Fester</b> ( <i>v.</i> )          | generate pus                          |
| 16. <b>Fortuitous</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )    | happening by lucky chance             |
| 17. <b>Felony</b> ( <i>n.</i> )          | serious crime                         |
| 18. <b>Frailties</b> ( <i>n.</i> )       | fault, moral weakness                 |
| 19. <b>Fissiparous</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )   | dividing, splitting                   |
| 20. <b>Fraudulent</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )    | deceitful                             |
| 21. <b>Fugitive</b> ( <i>n.</i> )        | a person running from justice, forces |
| 22. <b>Fulmination</b> ( <i>n.</i> )     | loud protest                          |
| 23. <b>Flabbergasted</b> ( <i>adj.</i> ) | amazed, surprised                     |

24. <b>Fervid</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	fervent, earnest feeling
25. <b>Flip</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	reverse, on the flip side
26. <b>Fervour</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	warmth of feeling
27. <b>Fillip</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	incentive, encouragement
28. <b>Fetish</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	obsession about something
29. <b>Flippant</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	disrespectful
30. <b>Furbish</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	polish, improve
31. <b>Fetter</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	chain
32. <b>Finesse</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	delicate way of dealing with people
33. <b>Forbearance</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	patience, self-control
34. <b>Forthright</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	outspoken, candid
35. <b>Fraternity</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	fraternal (brotherly) feeling
36. <b>Furore</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	general uproar
37. <b>Feline</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	like cat
38. <b>Facade</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	false appearance
39. <b>Fatuous</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	foolish, stupid
40. <b>Foe</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	enemy
41. <b>Frisk</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	search a person, gambol

<b>G</b>
----------

1. <b>Gastronomy</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	science of preparing and serving food
2. <b>Gamut</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	entire range
3. <b>Grudge</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	unwilling to allow, resent
4. <b>Gambol</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	playful jumping
5. <b>Gambit</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	opening in chess, first step
6. <b>Genial</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	kindly, sociable
7. <b>Gullible</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	credulous, easily deceived
8. <b>Garbled</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	mixed up
9. <b>Generic</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	common feature of a class
10. <b>Gruff</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	rough
11. <b>Garrulous</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	talkative, loquacious
12. <b>Gauche</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	clumsy, awkward
13. <b>Gabble</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	talk fast
14. <b>Germane</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	pertinent, relevant
15. <b>Gadfly</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	a fly that stings horses/cattle
16. <b>Gadget</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	device, contrivance
17. <b>Gaffe</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	blunder, unwise act/remark
18. <b>Galore</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	in plenty
19. <b>Goof</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	stupid, silly
20. <b>Gorgeous</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	beautiful and attractive

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 21. <b>Gratuitous</b> ( <i>adj.</i> ) | done without reason or purpose, unnecessary |
| 22. <b>Gaunt</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )      | lean and thin                               |
| 23. <b>Grill</b> ( <i>v.</i> )        | close, severe interrogation                 |
| 24. <b>Gallows</b> ( <i>n.</i> )      | site for hanging criminals                  |
| 25. <b>Genesis</b> ( <i>n.</i> )      | beginning, starting point                   |
| 26. <b>Gloss</b> ( <i>n.</i> )        | smooth, bright, gloss over (cover-up)       |
| 27. <b>Gory</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )       | bloody violent (details, incidents)         |
| 28. <b>Grievous</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )   | causing grief, pain                         |

<b>H</b>
----------

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <b>Handy</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )       | useful, available                        |
| 2. <b>Husbandry</b> ( <i>n.</i> )     | agriculture, frugality                   |
| 3. <b>Hectic</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )      | exciting, without rest                   |
| 4. <b>Hiccup</b> ( <i>n.</i> )        | sudden stopping of breath with cough     |
| 5. <b>Hibernation</b> ( <i>n.</i> )   | torpid state in winter                   |
| 6. <b>Hiatus</b> ( <i>n.</i> )        | break in continuity                      |
| 7. <b>Heresy</b> ( <i>n.</i> )        | contrary to religious concept            |
| 8. <b>Hideous</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )     | ugly, horrible                           |
| 9. <b>Hunch</b> ( <i>n.</i> )         | intuition, feeling (likely to happen)    |
| 10. <b>Hortative</b> ( <i>n.</i> )    | exhorting, encouraging                   |
| 11. <b>Hirsute</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )    | hairy, shaggy                            |
| 12. <b>Hagiology</b> ( <i>n.</i> )    | literature about the lives of the saints |
| 13. <b>Hallow</b> ( <i>v.</i> )       | make holy, sanctify                      |
| 14. <b>Hallmark</b> ( <i>n.</i> )     | mark of quality, distinguishing feature  |
| 15. <b>Hanky-panky</b> ( <i>n.</i> )  | underhand dealing                        |
| 16. <b>Heirloom</b> ( <i>n.</i> )     | something handed down for generations    |
| 17. <b>Hassle</b> ( <i>v.</i> )       | wrangle, argue                           |
| 18. <b>Headstrong</b> ( <i>adj.</i> ) | obstinate, stubborn                      |
| 19. <b>Haul</b> ( <i>n.</i> )         | something gained with effort             |
| 20. <b>Hearse</b> ( <i>n.</i> )       | carriage for coffin                      |
| 21. <b>Hedonism</b> ( <i>n.</i> )     | belief that pleasure is the chief good   |
| 22. <b>Hollow</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )     | empty with a space inside                |
| 23. <b>Heist</b> ( <i>n.</i> )        | a robbery                                |
| 24. <b>Hierarchy</b> ( <i>n.</i> )    | organisation with grades/ranks           |
| 25. <b>Hue</b> ( <i>n.</i> )          | a shade of colour                        |
| 26. <b>Horrendous</b> ( <i>adj.</i> ) | horrid, terrible                         |
| 27. <b>Haunt</b> ( <i>v.</i> )        | visit, return to mind frequently         |
| 28. <b>Hobnob</b> ( <i>v.</i> )       | to have social relations                 |
| 29. <b>Hamper</b> ( <i>n.</i> )       | gift-pack                                |
| 30. <b>Hitchhike</b> ( <i>v.</i> )    | travel on free ride                      |
| 31. <b>Haywire</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )    | go astray, out of control                |

I
---

1. <b>Impair</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	worsen, damage
2. <b>Impetuous</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	hasty, thoughtless
3. <b>Impetus</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	fillip, moving force
4. <b>Improvise</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	compose at the nick of time
5. <b>Impromptu</b> ( <i>Adv.</i> )	without preparation, arranged hastily, extempore
6. <b>Impunity</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	freedom from punishment, risk
7. <b>Impugn</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	challenge, doubtful statement
8. <b>Inhibition</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	habitual shrinking from action/impulse
9. <b>Imbecility</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	weakness, feebleness of mind
10. <b>Inadvertent</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	oversight, done not on purpose
11. <b>Incriminate</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	involve, accuse
12. <b>Inculcate</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	teach
13. <b>Inured</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	hardened, accustomed
14. <b>Invidious</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	trying to create ill-will
15. <b>Insinuate</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	hint, imply
16. <b>Insomnia</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	inability to sleep, wakefulness
17. <b>Inarticulate</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	cannot be heard clearly
18. <b>Internecline</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	mutually destructive
19. <b>Infringe</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	violate, encroach
20. <b>Insidious</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	treacherous
21. <b>Infer</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	deduce, conclude
22. <b>Iota</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	small quantity
23. <b>Ineffable</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	Indescribable
24. <b>Implicit</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	implied, not expressed
25. <b>Incantation</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	words chanted in magic or spell
26. <b>Innuendo</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	unfavourable reference to a person
27. <b>Inebriation</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	state of being drunk
28. <b>Ilk</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	of family, type
29. <b>Idiosyncrasy</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	peculiar thinking of a person, eccentricity
30. <b>Iveigle</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	to trick somebody into
31. <b>Infidel</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	unbelieving in religion
32. <b>Incest</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	immoral relations with near relations
33. <b>Infernal</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	of hell, devilish
34. <b>Inferno</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	hell
35. <b>Iriscible</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	easily irritable
36. <b>Immolation</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	to kill by burning

**J**

1. **Junket** (*n.*) excursion, feast, sweet pudding
2. **Jacose** (*adj.*) disposed to jesting
3. **Juxtapose** (*v.*) place side by side
4. **Jurisdiction** (*n.*) extent of authority
5. **Jocular** (*adj.*) said in jest
6. **Jarring** (*adj.*) causing disharmony
7. **Jaunty** (*adj.*) showing self-confidence
8. **Jettison** (*v.*) throw over board to lighten
9. **Jitters** (*n.*) nervousness
10. **Jostle** (*v.*) push against someone
11. **Juggernaut** (*n.*) a belief for which one sacrifices oneself, large vehicle
12. **Juggle** (*v.*) to play tricks
13. **Jabber** (*v.*) speak rapidly, chatter

**K**

1. **Kaleidoscope** (*n.*) frequent changing pattern of bright scenes
2. **Ken** (*n.*) range of knowledge
3. **Kinky** (*adj.*) eccentric, perverted
4. **Knead** (*v.*) make dough with flour
5. **Knuckle** (*n.*) joint of a finger
6. **Kow tow** (*v.*) be obsequious

**L**

1. **Lupine** (*adj.*) of wolf
2. **Leonine** (*adj.*) of lion
3. **Loquacious** (*adj.*) talkative, garrulous
4. **Libellous** (*adj.*) defamatory
5. **Legitimate** (*adj.*) reasonable, lawful
6. **Lewd** (*adj.*) lustful
7. **Licentious** (*adj.*) wanton, dissolute
8. **Languid** (*adj.*) listless, effortless
9. **Latent** (*adj.*) dormant, hidden
10. **Legion** (*n.*) numerous, numberless
11. **Largesse** (*n.*) generous financial help
12. **Lackey** (*n.*) one who obeys without question
13. **Lecherous** (*adj.*) lustful
14. **Locale** (*n.*) scene of an event

15. **Lustre** (*n.*) brightness
16. **Lusty** (*adj.*) healthy, strong
17. **Languish** (*v.*) suffer and become weak
18. **Leeway** (*n.*) freedom to act and change
19. **Live-wire** (*adj.*) a person full of energy

## M

1. **Maltreat** (*v.*) ill-treat
2. **Mercurial** (*v.*) fickle, changing
3. **Mayhem** (*n.*) state of violent disorder, havoc
4. **Magnanimous** (*adj.*) generous, liberal
5. **Medley** (*n.*) mixture of things, persons of different sorts
6. **Mirage** (*n.*) unreal reflection
7. **Misapprehension** (*n.*) misunderstanding, error
8. **Mete** (*v.*) distribute, deal out
9. **Misgiving** (*n.*) distrust, suspicion
10. **Mendicant** (*n.*) beggar
11. **Moribund** (*adj.*) at the point of death
12. **Mortify** (*v.*) to be humiliated, ashamed
13. **Milieu** (*n.*) social surroundings, environment
14. **Moratorium** (*n.*) deferment, delay
15. **Millennium** (*n.*) period of one thousand years
16. **Mealy mouthed** (*adj.*) insincere, evasive
17. **Muzzle** (*n.*) nose and mouth of an animal
18. **Mutilate** (*v.*) cut off, disfigure (limb of a body)
19. **Munificent** (*adj.*) generous, liberal
20. **Multitude** (*n.*) large number of people, masses
21. **Muddle** (*v.*) confuse, perplex
22. **Motley** (*adj.*) of various colours
23. **Malaise** (*n.*) feeling of physical discomfort
24. **Malediction** (*n.*) curse, bane
25. **Manicure** (*n.*) care of hands and nails
26. **Manoeuvre** (*n.*) planned movement (armed forces) to deceive
27. **Maroon** (*v.*) deserted on uninhabited land
28. **Massacre** (*n.*) carnage, murder on large scale
29. **Materialise** (*v.*) bring about result
30. **Miniature** (*n.*) small-scale copy, model
31. **Misdemeanour** (*n.*) offence
32. **Metamorphosis** (*n.*) natural change in form
33. **Melifluous** (*adj.*) sweet sounding

- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 34. <b>Mongrel</b> ( <i>n.</i> )   | mixed breed (of dog, plant, animal)           |
| 35. <b>Monarch</b> ( <i>n.</i> )   | supreme ruler (king or queen)                 |
| 36. <b>Maverick</b> ( <i>n.</i> )  | dissenting, unorthodox                        |
| 37. <b>Meliorist</b> ( <i>n.</i> ) | one who believes in the betterment of mankind |
| 38. <b>Matinee</b> ( <i>n.</i> )   | afternoon show                                |
| 39. <b>Mandlin</b> ( <i>n.</i> )   | self pitying, sentimental                     |
| 40. <b>Malice</b> ( <i>n.</i> )    | ill-will                                      |

**N**

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <b>Niggardly</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )  | stingy, miserly   |
| 2. <b>Nuance</b> ( <i>n.</i> )       | delicate difference in meaning  |
| 3. <b>Nostrum</b> ( <i>n.</i> )      | not real but quack remedy   |
| 4. <b>Niche</b> ( <i>n.</i> )        | suitable situation, recess in a wall  |
| 5. <b>Nee</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )        | name used after the name of married woman and before her father's family name |
| 6. <b>Nitty gritty</b> ( <i>n.</i> ) | basic facts of a matter   |
| 7. <b>Naivety</b> ( <i>n.</i> )      | naivety, artlessness  |

**O**

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <b>Olfactory</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )   | relating to the sense of smell              |
| 2. <b>Obdurate</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )    | stubborn, unpertinent                       |
| 3. <b>Obeisance</b> ( <i>n.</i> )     | respectful homage                           |
| 4. <b>Onus</b> ( <i>n.</i> )          | burden, responsibility                      |
| 5. <b>Orifice</b> ( <i>n.</i> )       | opening into cavity                         |
| 6. <b>Obsolescent</b> ( <i>adj.</i> ) | discarded, obsolete                         |
| 7. <b>Ominous</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )     | of bad omen, threatening                    |
| 8. <b>Obsequious</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )  | servile, excessively respectful             |
| 9. <b>Opprobrious</b> ( <i>adj.</i> ) | expressing scorn, abusive                   |
| 10. <b>Officious</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )  | meddlesome, trying to please                |
| 11. <b>Orgy</b> ( <i>n.</i> )         | wild merry making, licentious, drunken      |
| 12. <b>Ocular</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )     | of eye                                      |
| 13. <b>Obscene</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )    | indecent, immoral, depraved                 |
| 14. <b>Ombudsman</b> ( <i>n.</i> )    | an authority to look into public grievances |
| 15. <b>Onslaught</b> ( <i>n.</i> )    | furios attack                               |
| 16. <b>Ovation</b> ( <i>n.</i> )      | enthusiastic welcome/approval               |
| 17. <b>Over-ride</b> ( <i>v.</i> )    | prevail over decision                       |

<b>P</b>
----------

1. <b>Porcine</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	relating to pig
2. <b>Piscinine</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	relating to fish
3. <b>Peristeronic</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	relating to pigeon
4. <b>Pre-empt</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	prevent before hand
5. <b>Proselytize</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	convert to a religion or belief
6. <b>Panegyric</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	a discourse in praise
7. <b>Peculate</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	embezzle, misappropriate
8. <b>Permeable</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	through which substance can pass
9. <b>Pontificate</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	speak like a priest
10. <b>Puissant</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	powerful
11. <b>Precipitate</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	hasten, head long rush
12. <b>Plausible</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	open to doubt but appearing to be truthful
13. <b>Polemic</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	controversy, argument in support
14. <b>Paeon</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	song of praise
15. <b>Platitude</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	trite remark
16. <b>Peevish</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	fretful
17. <b>Periphery</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	external boundary
18. <b>Profligate</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	immortal
19. <b>Prodigious</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	large
20. <b>Pornography</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	obscenity in writing/art
21. <b>Probity</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	honesty, uprightness
22. <b>Presentiment</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	premonition, foreboding
23. <b>Progeny</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	children, offspring
24. <b>Propensity</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	natural inclination
25. <b>Procrastinate</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	postpone, delay
26. <b>Promiscuous</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	mix indiscriminately, immoral
27. <b>Punctilious</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	stress on nicety of form/conduct
28. <b>Plethora</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	excess, abundance
29. <b>Politic</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	prudent, expedient
30. <b>Portent</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	forewarning, omens
31. <b>Precept</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	practical rule guiding conduct
32. <b>Punitive</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	punishing
33. <b>Puny</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	insignificant, tiny
34. <b>Palliate</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	lessen the gravity
35. <b>Prostrate</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	stretch fully on ground
36. <b>Parley</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	conference
37. <b>Proponent</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	one who supports an idea
38. <b>Perfidy</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	violation of a trust
39. <b>Parlance</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	language, terminology
40. <b>Pelf</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	money, wealth

41. Prefunctory ( <i>adj.</i> )	not thorough, superficial
42. Parry ( <i>v.</i> )	ward off a blow
43. Patent ( <i>adj.</i> )	obvious, open
44. Panorama ( <i>n.</i> )	comprehensive view
45. Placebo ( <i>n.</i> )	medicine given to soothe, not to cure
46. Pilfer ( <i>v.</i> )	steal in small quantity
47. Pillion ( <i>n.</i> )	seat behind a rider/driver
48. Paronoid ( <i>adj.</i> )	extremely worried about being harmed
49. Profile ( <i>n.</i> )	image, side view, brief biography
50. Partisan ( <i>n./adj.</i> )	a person uncritically devoted to a party or group
51. Peremptory ( <i>adj.</i> )	obligatory, mandatory
52. Pejorative ( <i>adj.</i> )	disparaging, belittling
53. Petulant ( <i>adj.</i> )	impatient, irritable
54. Palpable ( <i>adj.</i> )	obvious, that can be felt or touched
55. Penultimate ( <i>adj.</i> )	the one before the last
56. Pretext ( <i>n.</i> )	excuse, false reason
57. Panache ( <i>n.</i> )	confident manner
58. Ploy ( <i>n.</i> )	manoeuvre to take advantage
59. Precincts ( <i>n.</i> )	space enclosed by wall
60. Paroxysm ( <i>n.</i> )	sudden outburst of pain, anger
61. Perpetrate ( <i>v.</i> )	to commit crime
62. Pedigree ( <i>n.</i> )	line of ancestors
63. Presage ( <i>n.</i> )	presentiment, sign of impending event
64. Passe ( <i>adj.</i> )	obsolete, not in vogue
65. Prowess ( <i>n.</i> )	valour, bravery
66. Pertain ( <i>v.</i> )	belong as a part
67. Peccadillo ( <i>n.</i> )	small sin, fault
68. Pedlar ( <i>n.</i> )	peddler, one who travels about selling
69. Plummet ( <i>v.</i> )	fall, plunge steeply
70. Prognosis ( <i>n.</i> )	forecast of disease, trouble
71. Profligate ( <i>v.</i> )	grow, multiply
72. Prevaricate ( <i>v.</i> )	to waver to tell the truth
73. Petrify ( <i>v.</i> )	to turn into stone, stun
74. Parole ( <i>n.</i> )	free a prisoner on undertaking not to escape
75. Propitious ( <i>adj.</i> )	favourable, good omen
76. Postulate ( <i>v.</i> )	to demand, taken for granted
77. Paradigm ( <i>n.</i> )	pattern, example
78. Providence ( <i>n.</i> )	working of divine, thrift
79. Perseverance ( <i>n.</i> )	constant, steadfast efforts
80. Pandemic ( <i>n.</i> )	a disease that spreads all over
81. Propinquity ( <i>n.</i> )	state of being near

<b>Q</b>
----------

- |                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 1. <b>Quagmire</b> ( <i>n.</i> ) | soft, wet, marshy land                      |
| 2. <b>Quail</b> ( <i>v.</i> )    | show fear, tremble                          |
| 3. <b>Quibble</b> ( <i>v.</i> )  | avoid an answer, equivocate                 |
| 4. <b>Quietus</b> ( <i>v.</i> )  | final settlement of debt, release from life |
| 5. <b>Quake</b> ( <i>v.</i> )    | shake, tremble                              |
| 6. <b>Quaint</b> ( <i>adj.</i> ) | attractive (for being old-fashioned)        |
| 7. <b>Quantum</b> ( <i>n.</i> )  | amount desired                              |
| 8. <b>Quaff</b> ( <i>v.</i> )    | drink, enjoy drinking                       |

<b>R</b>
----------

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <b>Reminiscence</b> ( <i>n.</i> )    | recollection                         |
| 2. <b>Revulsion</b> ( <i>n.</i> )       | sudden change/reaction of feelings   |
| 3. <b>Renovate</b> ( <i>n.</i> )        | renew, restore to new condition      |
| 4. <b>Retribution</b> ( <i>n.</i> )     | vengeance, punishment                |
| 5. <b>Revelry</b> ( <i>n.</i> )         | boisterous merry making              |
| 6. <b>Recourse</b> ( <i>n.</i> )        | resort to as means                   |
| 7. <b>Reimbursement</b> ( <i>n.</i> )   | repayment of expenses                |
| 8. <b>Rejuvenate</b> ( <i>v.</i> )      | make young and strong again          |
| 9. <b>Respite</b> ( <i>n.</i> )         | interval of relief                   |
| 10. <b>Revamp</b> ( <i>v.</i> )         | construct, change                    |
| 11. <b>Resurgent</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )    | rising again after defeat            |
| 12. <b>Rote</b> ( <i>n.</i> )           | repetition                           |
| 13. <b>Rummage</b> ( <i>v.</i> )        | ransack, search thoroughly           |
| 14. <b>Residue</b> ( <i>n.</i> )        | remainder, balance                   |
| 15. <b>Rabble</b> ( <i>n.</i> )         | group of vulgar people               |
| 16. <b>Raillery</b> ( <i>n.</i> )       | sarcasm, act of finding fault        |
| 17. <b>Recalcitrant</b> ( <i>adj.</i> ) | stubborn, disobedient                |
| 18. <b>Resilient</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )    | elastic buoyant nature               |
| 19. <b>Rabid</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )        | furious, rabid dog                   |
| 20. <b>Rendition</b> ( <i>n.</i> )      | translation, artistic interpretation |
| 21. <b>Resort</b> ( <i>v.</i> )         | turn for help, frequent visit        |
| ( <i>n.</i> )                           | a place for pleasure making          |
| 22. <b>Resonant</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )     | resounding, re-echo                  |
| 23. <b>Rectitude</b> ( <i>n.</i> )      | moral uprightness, righteousness     |
| 24. <b>Redolent</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )     | reminiscent of past (smell, taste)   |
| 25. <b>Reconnaissance</b> ( <i>n.</i> ) | act of surveying enemy positions     |
| 26. <b>Rumpus</b> ( <i>n.</i> )         | uproar, noise                        |
| 27. <b>Repast</b> ( <i>n.</i> )         | meal, food                           |

28. <b>Relish</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	liking, taste for food
29. <b>Refute</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	counter, prove wrong
30. <b>Relentless</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	unyielding, pitiless
31. <b>Recede</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	to go back
32. <b>Reprehensible</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	deserving condemnation
33. <b>Refulgent</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	shining, brilliant
34. <b>Resplendent</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	splendidly bright
35. <b>Renege</b> ( <i>on</i> ) ( <i>v.</i> )	fail to keep word
36. <b>Resuscitate</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	regain consciousness
37. <b>Rigorous</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	severe, harsh
38. <b>Ruckus</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	exchange of angry words, protest
39. <b>Ravenous</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	very hungry, greedy
40. <b>Recipe</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	direction, formula for preparing food
41. <b>Recapitulate</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	to repeat, go through again
42. <b>Restitution</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	restoring right, property
43. <b>Retrench</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	cut down expenses, staff
44. <b>Resurrection</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	coming to life again
45. <b>Rigmarole</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	wandering story, confusing procedure
46. <b>Rue</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	repent of, regret
47. <b>Reciprocal</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	mutual
48. <b>Rave</b> (about) ( <i>v.</i> )	write enthusiastically
( <i>n.</i> )	party (with drugs)

<b>S</b>
----------

1. <b>Simian</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	of monkey, ape
2. <b>Serpentine</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	of serpent
3. <b>Servile</b> (menial) ( <i>adj.</i> )	of servant
4. <b>Sacerdotal</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	of priest
5. <b>Salacious</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	anything obscene, indecent
6. <b>Sardonic</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	disdainful, sarcastic
7. <b>Scuttle</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	subvert, sink
8. <b>Sedate</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	calm, composed
9. <b>Sojourn</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	temporary stay
10. <b>Sceptic</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	one who doubts the truth, claim, theory
11. <b>Seduce</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	lure to do wrong, tempt
12. <b>Scurrilous</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	taunting, abusive
13. <b>Sundry</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	various, several
14. <b>Sedition</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	rebellion against government
15. <b>Spate</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	sudden flood, rise in business
16. <b>Stalemate</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	deadlock, impasse

17. <b>Stalwart</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	strong, steadfast
18. <b>Secession</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	act of seceding, withdrawal
19. <b>Stoic</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	one who is indifferent to pain or pleasure
20. <b>Squalid</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	dirty, neglected condition
21. <b>Solace</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	comfort in trouble
22. <b>Synchronise</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	simultaneous with
23. <b>Shirk</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	avoid doing duty
24. <b>Swelter</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	oppressed with heat
25. <b>Solicit</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	ask for, request earnestly
26. <b>Solicitous</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	concerned, worried about
27. <b>Skullduggery</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	cheating, deception
28. <b>Savant</b>	a person of great learning
29. <b>Savvy</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	understanding, having common sense
30. <b>Syndrome</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	collective number of symptoms
31. <b>Sleuth</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	detective, a dog following a scent
32. <b>Sanguine</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	cheerful, hopeful
33. <b>Simulate</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	pretend
34. <b>Suave</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	smooth, gracious
35. <b>Strident</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	(of sound) shrill, harsh
36. <b>Segregation</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	isolate, separate
37. <b>Sleazy</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	uncared for, dirty
38. <b>Safari</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	hunting expedition
39. <b>Sabotage</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	act of saboteur, to damage
40. <b>Souvenir</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	something as gift, taken in memory of
41. <b>Shoddy</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	rough, poor quality
42. <b>Succinct</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	brief, terse but clear
43. <b>Sabbatical</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	of sabbath, holiday (Sunday)
44. <b>Sibling</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	having same parents, sister, brother
45. <b>Spurt</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	sudden outburst
46. <b>Serenade</b> (music) ( <i>n.</i> )	to sing to somebody
47. <b>Serendipity</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	fortunate, unexpected, discovery
48. <b>Spree</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	merrytime, lively
49. <b>Spendthrift</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	an extravagant person
50. <b>Snub</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	treat with contempt
51. <b>Susceptible</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	easily influenced, affected
52. <b>Snide</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	slyly critical, sneering
53. <b>Snob</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	one who is obsessed with social position
54. <b>Squabble</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	noisy petty quarrel
55. <b>Squall</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	sudden violent storm
56. <b>Salubrious</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	salutary, healthful
57. <b>Strand</b> ( <i>v.</i> )	to be left without means of transport, money

58. **Sobriquet** (*n.*) nickname  
 59. **Sachet** (*n.*) a small packet  
 60. **Shibboleth** (*n.*) an old idea or custom, distinguishing  
 61. **Saturate** (*v.*) filled completely with no scope for addition

<b>T</b>
----------

1. **Tonsorial** (*adj.*) of barber  
 2. **Tenable** (*adj.*) defensible by argument  
 3. **Transpire** (*v.*) become known, happen  
 4. **Tandem** (*n.*) one behind the other, in pair  
 5. **Tawdry** (*adj.*) showing, bright (in bad taste)  
 6. **Tentative** (*adj.*) done as a trial, experimental  
 7. **Tautological** (*adj.*) needless repetition  
 8. **Tamper** (*v.*) meddle with  
 9. **Tardy** (*adj.*) slow, sluggish  
 10. **Tarnish** (*v.*) make dull, spoil  
 11. **Temerity** (*adj.*) boldness, audacity  
 12. **Transulent** (*adj.*) transparent but partly  
 13. **Tantalise** (*v.*) raise hope but with obstacle  
 14. **Throes** (*n.*) violent pain (middle of activity)  
 15. **Tangible** (*adj.*) real, perceivable by touch  
 16. **Torpid** (*adj.*) lethargic, dormant  
 17. **Tantrum** (*n.*) fit of bad temper, petulance  
 18. **Transient** (*adj.*) short lived, fleeting  
 19. **Tendentious** (*adj.*) partial with a purpose  
 20. **Tenor** (*n.*) general routine  
 21. **Thespian** (*n.*) actor/actress  
 22. **Trenchant** (*adj.*) sharp, incisive  
 23. **Truculant** (*adj.*) savage, aggressive  
 24. **Trice** (*n.*) instant  
 25. **Turgid** (*adj.*) overflowing, swollen  
 26. **Truant** (*n.*) wandering, shirker, absence  
 27. **Tripartite** (*adj.*) of three parties  
 28. **Tyranny** (*n.*) unjust, cruel use of power  
 29. **Trove** (*n.*) treasure  
 30. **Twinge** (*n.*) sudden sharp pain  
 31. **Tussle** (*n.*) struggle, conflict  
 32. **Turbid** (*adj.*) muddy, not clear  
 33. **Trounce** (*v.*) thrash, defeat  
 34. **Turbulent** (*adj.*) violent, uncontrolled

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 35. <b>Thrive</b> ( <i>v.</i> )          | prosper, flourish                           |
| 36. <b>Turmoil</b> ( <i>n.</i> )         | trouble, violent agitation                  |
| 37. <b>Turpitude</b> ( <i>n.</i> )       | wickedness, depravity                       |
| 38. <b>Tumult</b> ( <i>n.</i> )          | uproar, disturbance                         |
| 39. <b>Tumble</b> ( <i>v.</i> )          | fall suddenly, collapse                     |
| 40. <b>Trudge</b> ( <i>v.</i> )          | walk wearily                                |
| 41. <b>Temperance</b> ( <i>n.</i> )      | moderation (eating and drinking)            |
| 42. <b>Temporise</b> ( <i>v.</i> )       | delay in making a decision                  |
| 43. <b>Thorough-bred</b> ( <i>adj.</i> ) | thoroughly trained, of pure breed           |
| 44. <b>Tinsel</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )        | glitter, superficial                        |
| 45. <b>Topple</b> ( <i>v.</i> )          | overturn                                    |
| 46. <b>Topsy turvy</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )   | confusion, upside down                      |
| 47. <b>Torrid</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )        | hot, tropical                               |
| 48. <b>Treason</b> ( <i>n.</i> )         | betrayal of one's country                   |
| 49. <b>Thesaurus</b> ( <i>n.</i> )       | treasury of similar words, grouped together |
| 50. <b>Tango</b> ( <i>n.</i> )           | American dance with marked rhythm           |
| 51. <b>Traverse</b> ( <i>v.</i> )        | travel across                               |
| 52. <b>Termagant</b> ( <i>n.</i> )       | a shrew, a quarrelsome woman                |

## U

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. <b>Untoward</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )      | unfortunate, unfavourable        |
| 2. <b>Usher</b> ( <i>n.</i> )           | herald, announce                 |
| 3. <b>Umpteen</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )       | many times                       |
| 4. <b>Unassuming</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )    | shy, modest                      |
| 5. <b>Unbecoming</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )    | not suited to, not befitting     |
| 6. <b>Unctuous</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )      | insincere, flattering            |
| 7. <b>Undaunted</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )     | not daunted, fearless            |
| 8. <b>Under-hand</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )    | sly, deceitful                   |
| 9. <b>Undermine</b> ( <i>v.</i> )       | weaken, lessen                   |
| 10. <b>Under-dog</b> ( <i>n.</i> )      | poor and helpless                |
| 11. <b>Undertake</b> ( <i>v.</i> )      | agree, start, promise            |
| 12. <b>Unerring</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )     | accurate faultless               |
| 13. <b>Unflagging</b> ( <i>v.</i> )     | uninterrupted, untiring          |
| 14. <b>Unflinching</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )  | fearless, resolute               |
| 15. <b>Unleash</b> ( <i>v.</i> )        | release, set into action         |
| 16. <b>Unobtrusive</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )  | not easily visible or noticeable |
| 17. <b>Unravel</b> ( <i>v.</i> )        | expose, clarify                  |
| 18. <b>Unrelenting</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )  | relentless, unyielding           |
| 19. <b>Unrequited</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )   | unrewarded, not returned         |
| 20. <b>Unreservedly</b> ( <i>adj.</i> ) | without restrictions/reservation |

- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 21. <b>Unruffled</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )    | unperturbed, not upset        |
| 22. <b>Unscathed</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )    | unharmd, unhurt               |
| 23. <b>Unswerving</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )   | not changing                  |
| 24. <b>Unwieldy</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )     | awkward due to shape or size  |
| 25. <b>Unwind</b> ( <i>n.</i> )         | relax after tension           |
| 26. <b>Un sparing</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )   | liberal, not withholding      |
| 27. <b>Unfazed</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )      | unperturbed                   |
| 28. <b>Uproar</b> ( <i>n.</i> )         | outburst of excitement, noise |
| 29. <b>Uprising</b> ( <i>n.</i> )       | rebellion, revolt             |
| 30. <b>Upshot</b> ( <i>n.</i> )         | conclusion, outcome           |
| 31. <b>Upheaval</b> ( <i>n.</i> )       | sudden change on large scale  |
| 32. <b>Unflappable</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )  | unperturbed, calm             |
| 33. <b>Unmitigated</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )  | thorough, complete            |
| 34. <b>Uncanny</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )      | mysterious, supernatural      |
| 35. <b>Upstage</b> ( <i>adv./adj.</i> ) | divert attention/direction    |
| 36. <b>Urchin</b> ( <i>n.</i> )         | mischievous street boy        |
| 37. <b>Urbane</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )       | polished, refined in manners  |

<b>V</b>
----------

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <b>Vigilant</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )       | watchful, cautious  |
| 2. <b>Vicissitude</b> ( <i>n.</i> )      | change of fortune, ups and downs                                    |
| 3. <b>Valetudinarian</b> ( <i>adj.</i> ) | obsession about health  |
| 4. <b>Vanquish</b> ( <i>v.</i> )         | defeat, subjugate   |
| 5. <b>Valiant</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )        | brave, dauntless  |
| 6. <b>Vainglorious</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )   | proud, conceited  |
| 7. <b>Valour</b> ( <i>n.</i> )           | bravery, fortitude  |
| 8. <b>Valedictory</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )    | of farewell   |
| 9. <b>Vapid</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )          | dull, boring  |
| 10. <b>Vicarious</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )     | feel pleasure from the acts of others                               |
| 11. <b>Vibes</b> ( <i>n.</i> )           | (vibrating) a mood or an atmosphere produced by a person or a thing |
| 12. <b>Variiegated</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )   | multicoloured   |
| 13. <b>Vanguard</b> ( <i>n.</i> )        | pioneer, forerunner   |
| 14. <b>Vaunt</b> ( <i>v.</i> )           | boast, show off   |
| 15. <b>Versimilitude</b> ( <i>n.</i> )   | resemblance of truth, appearing to be true                          |
| 16. <b>Veneer</b> ( <i>n.</i> )          | thin layer, outward appearance                                      |
| 17. <b>Voluble</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )       | glib, fluent (speaker)  |
| 18. <b>Voluptuous</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )    | sensual, of exciting senses   |
| 19. <b>Volatile</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )      | of changing, unstable disposition                                   |
| 20. <b>Vulpine</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )       | of fox, crafty  |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 21. <b>Vouchsafe</b> ( <i>v.</i> )      | guarantee, kind to give   |
| 22. <b>Void</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )         | vacant, empty   |
| 23. <b>Verve</b> ( <i>n.</i> )          | zest, spirit  |
| 24. <b>Virile</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )       | of manly strength and energy  |
| 25. <b>Verdant</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )      | green, fresh  |
| 26. <b>Virtuoso</b> ( <i>n.</i> )       | highly skilled artist, musician   |
| 27. <b>Veritable</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )    | real, rightly called  |
| 28. <b>Virulent</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )     | bitter, poisonous   |
| 29. <b>Version</b> ( <i>n.</i> )        | account of; interpretation of an event  |
| 30. <b>Vis-a-vis</b> ( <i>adv.</i> )    | opposite, compared with   |
| 31. <b>Virago</b> ( <i>n.</i> )         | shrew, ill-tempered woman   |
| 32. <b>Vestige</b> ( <i>n.</i> )        | remains, traces   |
| 33. <b>Visage</b> ( <i>n.</i> )         | appearance, face  |
| 34. <b>Vertigo</b> ( <i>n.</i> )        | giddiness   |
| 35. <b>Vituperative</b> ( <i>adj.</i> ) | abusive, scolding   |
| 36. <b>Volition</b> ( <i>n.</i> )       | power of using of will, choice  |
| 37. <b>Votary</b> ( <i>n.</i> )         | follower, devoted to a cause  |
| 38. <b>Vista</b> ( <i>n.</i> )          | series of scenes, a view from distance  |
| 39. <b>Vestal</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )       | pure, chaste, virginal  |
| 40. <b>Valediction</b> ( <i>n.</i> )    | farewell, parting   |
| 41. <b>Valentine</b> ( <i>n.</i> )      | letter/card sent to a sweetheart (anonymously)(St. Valentine Day-14th February) |
| 42. <b>Vignettes</b> ( <i>n.</i> )      | short sketch of a person, character, ornamental, design of title of the book    |
| 43. <b>Vitriolic</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )    | biting, full of invective   |
| 44. <b>Vibrant</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )      | thrilling, lively   |
| 45. <b>Voyeuristic</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )  | pertaining to looking at lustful objects  |
| 46. <b>Vigorous</b> ( <i>n.</i> )       | strong, full of vigour  |
| 47. <b>Vamp</b> ( <i>n.</i> )           | female villain  |
| 48. <b>Vicinity</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )     | neighbourhood, nearness in relations  |
| 49. <b>Vague</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )        | not clearly expressed   |
| 50. <b>Vandalism</b> ( <i>n.</i> )      | an act of destroying public property  |

W

- |                                    |                                      |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <b>Wheedle</b> ( <i>v.</i> )    | coax, cajole                         |
| 2. <b>Wade</b> ( <i>v.</i> )       | walk through water or mud            |
| 3. <b>Wizard</b> ( <i>n.</i> )     | magician, one having amazing ability |
| 4. <b>Wager</b> ( <i>v.</i> )      | bet                                  |
| 5. <b>Wily</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )     | cunning                              |
| 6. <b>Wanderlust</b> ( <i>n.</i> ) | strong desire to travel              |

- |                                      |                                   |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 7. <b>Weird</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )      | unnatural, unearthly              |
| 8. <b>Wretched</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )   | poor, miserable                   |
| 9. <b>Whereabouts</b> ( <i>n.</i> )  | place of residence, staying place |
| 10. <b>Whittle</b> ( <i>v.</i> )     | reduce, dwindle                   |
| 11. <b>Whet</b> ( <i>v.</i> )        | sharpen as knife                  |
| 12. <b>Withstand</b> ( <i>v.</i> )   | resist, hold out                  |
| 13. <b>Wrangle</b> ( <i>v.</i> )     | argue angrily                     |
| 14. <b>Wince</b> ( <i>v.</i> )       | show physical or mental pain      |
| 15. <b>Winsome</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )   | attractive, pleasing              |
| 16. <b>Woo</b> ( <i>v.</i> )         | court a woman, try to win         |
| 17. <b>Winnow</b> ( <i>v.</i> )      | separate grain from husk          |
| 18. <b>Wistful</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )   | sad and longing                   |
| 19. <b>Wry</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )       | forced, disappointed (smile)      |
| 20. <b>Woeful</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )    | miserable, distressful            |
| 21. <b>Woebegone</b> ( <i>adj.</i> ) | dismal, showing distress          |
| 22. <b>Wreath</b> ( <i>n.</i> )      | garland of flowers                |
| 23. <b>Waif</b> ( <i>n.</i> )        | homeless child                    |
| 24. <b>Wherewithal</b> ( <i>n.</i> ) | money needed for a person         |
| 25. <b>Wholesome</b> ( <i>adj.</i> ) | promoting good health             |
| 26. <b>Ware</b> ( <i>n.</i> )        | manufactured goods                |

**X**

- |                               |                          |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. <b>X-Mas</b> ( <i>n.</i> ) | observation of Christmas |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|

**Y**

- |                                  |                  |
|----------------------------------|------------------|
| 1. <b>Yokel</b> ( <i>n.</i> )    | naive countryman |
| 2. <b>Yearling</b> ( <i>n.</i> ) | young animal     |

**Z**

- |                                 |               |
|---------------------------------|---------------|
| 1. <b>Zany</b> ( <i>n.</i> )    | clown         |
| 2. <b>Zippy</b> ( <i>adj.</i> ) | lively, brisk |

# 4

## Synonyms and Antonyms

---

Against each KEYWORD are given the lists of Synonyms and Antonyms separately. A student is required to study the words given in the list carefully. These words will add to the Thesaurus comprising words and phrases that they have already learnt. If need be, they may look up a word in the dictionary for correct reference.

### A

#### **AWKWARD**

*Syn:* clumsy, ungainly, ponderous, rough

*Ant:* clever, dexterous, apt, skilful

#### **APPARENT**

*Syn:* evident, obvious, perceptible, distinct

*Ant:* masked, obscure, indistinct, doubtful

#### **ALLURE**

*Syn:* entice, fascinate, tempt, seduce

*Ant:* repulse, repel, deter, distaste

#### **ABORTIVE**

*Syn:* vain, useless, fruitless, unproductive

*Ant:* effectual, productive, successful, progressive

#### **ABOMINABLE**

*Syn:* odious, detestable, repugnant, aversion

*Ant:* likeable, pleasant, affectionate, enjoyable

#### **ALLAY**

*Syn:* pacify, soothe, lighten, assuage

*Ant:* aggravate, heighten, agitate, excite

**AXIOM**

*Syn:* maxim, saying, dictum, truth

*Ant:* absurdity, blunder, ridiculousness, irrelevant

**ASSIDUOUS**

*Syn:* constant, diligent, attentive, persevering

*Ant:* indifference, careless, indolent, lethargic

**ABJURE**

*Syn:* forsake, renounce, retract, revoke

*Ant:* approve, sanction, patronise, adopt

**ABJECT**

*Syn:* despicable, servile, base, contemptible

*Ant:* exalted, commendable, praiseworthy, imposing

**AVERSION**

*Syn:* dislike, hatred, indifferent, apathy

*Ant:* affection, fondness, niceness, liking

**AUTHENTIC**

*Syn:* genuine, reliable, valid, guaranteed

*Ant:* fictitious, counterfeit, unreal, false

**AUDACITY**

*Syn:* boldness, arrogance, insolence, haughtiness

*Ant:* mildness, humility, cowardice, submission

**ASTUTE**

*Syn:* clever, intelligent, wise, brilliant

*Ant:* dull, unintelligent, shallow, solid

**ABETTOR**

*Syn:* assistant, accomplice, colleague, associate

*Ant:* opponent, adversary, antagonist, rival

**ABATE**

*Syn:* moderate, mitigate, lessen, decrease

*Ant:* aggravate, intensify, augment, supplement

**ARRAIGN**

*Syn:* charge, blame, accuse, complain

*Ant:* exculpate, pardon, condone, exonerate

**APATHY**

*Syn:* unconcern, indifference, insensitivity, aloofness

*Ant:* concern, care, anxiety, eagerness

**ALIEN**

*Syn:* foreigner, outsider, stranger, emigrant

*Ant:* native, citizen, resident, occupant

**ALACRITY**

*Syn:* swiftness, briskness, promptness, speed

*Ant:* laziness, sluggishness, indolence, lethargy

**AFFRONT**

*Syn:* provoke, exasperate, indignity, irreverence

*Ant:* conciliate, appease, mollify, assuage

**ADVERSITY**

*Syn:* misfortune, calamity, misery, affliction

*Ant:* prosperity, fortune, assistance, favour

**ANTIQUUE**

*Syn:* ancient, old fashioned, primitive, of past

*Ant:* modern, recent, novelty, vogue

**ANTIPATHY**

*Syn:* hostility, aversion, disillusion, dislike

*Ant:* admiration, approval, fascination, devotion

**AMPLIFY**

*Syn:* enlarge, extend, dialation, elevate

*Ant:* curtail, lessen, diminution, contraction

**AMASS**

*Syn:* gather, accumulate, store, collect

*Ant:* disperse, dissipate, spend, scatter

**ALLEVIATE**

*Syn:* abate, relieve, mitigate, lessen

*Ant:* intensify, augment, aggravate, enhance

**ADMONISH**

*Syn:* counsel, reprove, warn, chastise

*Ant:* approve, applaud, praise, flattery

**ADJACENT**

*Syn:* adjoining, beside, proximity, closeness

*Ant:* distant, separate, remoteness, aloofness

**ADHERENT**

*Syn:* follower, disciple, dependent, supporter

*Ant:* rival, adversary, opponent, antagonist

**ACCOMPLISH**

*Syn:* attain, succeed, triumph, exploit

*Ant:* forsake, deter, disappoint, collapse

**ABSOLVE**

*Syn:* pardon, forgive, reprieve, relent

*Ant:* compel, accuse, charge, bind

**ACRIMONY**

*Syn:* harshness, bitterness, inhumanity, enmity

*Ant:* sweetness, courtesy, humanity, benevolence

**ACCUMULATION**

*Syn:* store, amass, preservation, conservation

*Ant:* scattering, dissipation, separation, division

**ACCORD**

*Syn:* agreement, harmony, consonance, unison

*Ant:* disagreement, denial, controversy, discord

**ABOUND**

*Syn:* flourish, swell, teem, plentiful

*Ant:* deficient, destitute, want, scarce

**ADAMANT**

*Syn:* stubborn, obdurate, inflexible, rigid

*Ant:* flexible, soft, suppleness, tender

**ABASH**

*Syn:* discourage, confound, embarrass, discompose

*Ant:* encourage, uphold, embolden, hearten

**ADJUNCT**

*Syn:* appendage, complement, addition, joining

*Ant:* lessening, separation, subtraction, removal

**ADROIT**

*Syn:* proficient, expert, skilful, adept

*Ant:* inept, clumsy, unskilled, awkward

**B****BUSTLE**

*Syn:* haste, tumult, stir, flurry

*Ant:* slowness, sluggishness, quiet, inertness

**BRITTLE**

*Syn:* frail, fragile, delicate, breakable

*Ant:* tough, enduring, unbreakable, strong

**BLEMISH**

*Syn:* fault, smirch, stigma, stain

*Ant:* purity, impeccable, spotless, stainless

**BLEAK**

*Syn:* dismal, gloomy, chilly, dreary

*Ant:* bright, pleasant, balmy, cheerful

**BLAME**

*Syn:* reprove, upbraid, censure, reproach

*Ant:* commend, applaud, laud, praise

**BENEVOLENCE**

*Syn:* humanity, generosity, charity, liberality

*Ant:* malevolence, inhumanity, malignity, unkindness

**BARBAROUS**

*Syn:* uncivilized, savage, untamed, brutal

*Ant:* cultured, humane, refined, gentle

**BAFFLE**

*Syn:* confound, elude, frustrate, perplex

*Ant:* poise, composure, facilitate, co-operate

**BEWITCHING**

*Syn:* magical, fascinating, tantalising, spell binding

*Ant:* repulsive, repugnant, nauseating, disgusting

**C****CRITERION**

*Syn:* measurement, test, standard, touchstone

*Ant:* fancy, probability, haphazard, conjecture

**COVETOUS**

*Syn:* cupidity, avarice, greed, voracity

*Ant:* liberality, benevolence, selfless, magnanimous

**CORPULENT**

*Syn:* obese, ugly, fat, awkward

*Ant:* thin, lean, slim, delicate

**CONVERT**

*Syn:* change, transform, transmute, proselytise

*Ant:* persist, maintain, enduring, perpetual

**CONVENIENT**

*Syn:* handy, suited, comfortable, advantageous

*Ant:* unsuitable, tedious, unpractical, fatiguing

**CONTRARY**

*Syn:* dissimilar, conflicting, contradictory, opposite

*Ant:* similar, alike, homogeneous, resembling

**CONTRADICT**

*Syn:* impugn, deny, oppose, confront

*Ant:* approve, confirm, sanction, endorse

**CONTEMPT**

*Syn:* scorn, disregard, disdain, despicable

*Ant:* regard, approval, praise, recommend

**CONSTERNATION**

*Syn:* fear, disappointment, dismay, hopelessness

*Ant:* peace, repose, calm, fearless

**CONSPICUOUS**

*Syn:* distinguished, prominent, obvious, visible

*Ant:* concealed, obscure, hidden, unapparent

**CONSOLIDATE**

*Syn:* combine, condense, compact, strong

*Ant:* separate, sever, weak, scattering

**CONSEQUENCE**

*Syn:* effect, outcome, repercussion, result

*Ant:* origin, start, beginning, incipient

**CONSENT**

*Syn:* agree, permit, accede, assent

*Ant:* object, disagree, dissent, differ

**CONSCIOUS**

*Syn:* aware, apprised, knowledge, informed

*Ant:* unaware, ignorant, unfeeling, faint

**CONCEDE**

*Syn:* yield, assent, permit, sanction

*Ant:* deny, reject, dissent, disallow

**COMPRISE**

*Syn:* include, contain, consist, compose

*Ant:* reject, lack, exclude, except

**COMPASSION**

*Syn:* kindness, sympathy, clemency, commiseration

*Ant:* cruelty, barbarity, persecution, apathy

**CONCUR**

*Syn:* approve, agree, consent, endorse

*Ant:* differ, disagree, dissent, oppose

**COMMODIOUS**

*Syn:* convenient, suitable, roomy, comfortable

*Ant:* inconvenient, unsuitable, uncomfortable, confined

**COLLISION**

*Syn:* encounter, clash, conflict, dissenting

*Ant:* agreement, harmony, compatible, union

**CHERISH**

*Syn:* nurture, treasure, foster, encourage

*Ant:* abandon, forsake, renounce, discard

**CHASTISE**

*Syn:* punish, admonish, scold, reprove

*Ant:* cheer, comfort, encourage, stimulate

**CHASTE**

*Syn:* virtuous, pure, honourable, immaculate

*Ant:* defiled, licentious, sullied, lustful

**CESSATION**

*Syn:* intermission, pause, discontinuity hindrance

*Ant:* continuity, perpetuation, unceasing, prolongation

**CATASTROPHE**

*Syn:* disaster, calamity, misfortune, mishap

*Ant:* prosperity, blessing, restoration, resurgence

**CARICATURE**

*Syn:* exaggeration, imitation, ridicule, parody

*Ant:* exactness, precision, reality, truth

**CARESS**

*Syn:* fondle, embrace, hug, snuggle

*Ant:* repulse, spurn, displease, repel

**CAPTIVITY**

*Syn:* imprisonment, confinement, apprehend, restrain

*Ant:* freedom, liberty, liberation, release

**CAPTIVATE**

*Syn:* charm, fascinate, enchant, lure

*Ant:* disillusion, offend, scorn, despise

**CAPTIOUS**

*Syn:* irritate, fretful, critical, carping

*Ant:* appreciative, considerate, laudatory, thoughtful

**CAPABLE**

*Syn:* competent, suitable, qualified, able

*Ant:* incompetent, inefficient, imbecile, inept

**CALUMNY**

*Syn:* defamation, aspersion, accusation, libel

*Ant:* commendation, praise, vindication, goodwill

**CALLOUS**

*Syn:* obdurate, unfeeling, heartless, indifferent

*Ant:* compassionate, tender, kind, sympathetic

**CALCULATE**

*Syn:* enumerate, estimate, evaluate, consider

*Ant:* miscalculate, blunder, predetermine, misconceive

**CALAMITY**

*Syn:* adversity, misfortune, misery, mishap

*Ant:* happiness, benefit, prosperity, fortune

**CAVITY**

*Syn:* depth, depression, hole, aperture

*Ant:* elevation, projection, mound, height

**CEASE**

*Syn:* terminate, pause, desist, discontinue

*Ant:* commence, continue, initiate, originate

**CIRCUMLOCUTION**

*Syn:* redundancy, verbosity, tediousness, verbiage

*Ant:* terseness, compression, directness, brevity

**COMMOTION**

*Syn:* turmoil, disturbance, agitation, excitement

*Ant:* tranquility, stillness, quietness, calm

## D

**DISASTER**

*Syn:* misfortune, calamity, mishap, catastrophe

*Ant:* prosperity, boon, happiness, auspicious

**DESPICABLE**

*Syn:* contemptible, worthless, shameless, base

*Ant:* worthy, decent, honourable, respectable

**DISDAIN**

*Syn:* detest, despise, loathe, scorn

*Ant:* approve, praise, love, laud

**DERIDE**

*Syn:* mock, taunt, ridicule, jeer

*Ant:* inspire, encourage, stimulate, comfort

**DEPRIVE**

*Syn:* despoil, divest, dispossess, disinherit

*Ant:* restore, renew, invest, endow

**DEPLORE**

*Syn:* lament, bemoan, complain, regret

*Ant:* rejoice, cheer, applaud, celebrate

**DENOUNCE**

*Syn:* indict, condemn, censure, reprimand

*Ant:* praise, commend, vindicate, laud

**DEMOLISH**

*Syn:* ruin, devastate, dismantle, raze

*Ant:* repair, construct, create, erect

**DELUSION**

*Syn:* deception, hallucination, illusion, fallacy

*Ant:* reality, certainty, veracity, fact

**DELICIOUS**

*Syn:* palatable, tasteful, appetising, dainty

*Ant:* distasteful, unsavoury, tolerable, inedible

**DELIBERATE**

*Syn:* ponder, intentional, meditate, consider

*Ant:* rash, sudden, indifferent, random

**DEGRADATION**

*Syn:* disgrace, dishonour, humiliation, debase

*Ant:* exaltation, praise, triumphant, honour

**DEFRAY**

*Syn:* meet, bear, spend, pay

*Ant:* declaim, decline, refuse, abjure

**DEFILE**

*Syn:* contaminate, pollute, profane, desecrate

*Ant:* purify, sanctity, cleanse, disinfect

**DEFICIENT**

*Syn:* scanty, inadequate, lacking, wanting

*Ant:* adequate, ample, sufficient, abundant

**DEFER**

*Syn:* prolong, suspend, postpone, delay

*Ant:* accelerate, expedite, stimulate, hasten

**DEFAULT**

*Syn:* failure, omission, negligence, lapse

*Ant:* perfection, vigilance, attentive, observance

**DEDICATE**

*Syn:* devote, consecrate, loyal, surrender

*Ant:* refuse, negate, prohibit, reject

**DECIPHER**

*Syn:* interpret, reveal, decode, transcribe

*Ant:* misinterpret, distort, confuse, pervert

**DECEIT**

*Syn:* deception, artifice, treachery, duplicity

*Ant:* veracity, sincerity, truth, honesty

**DECAY**

*Syn:* collapse, decomposition, deteriorate, putrefication

*Ant:* flourish, progress, growth, development

**DAUNT**

*Syn:* discourage, frighten, agitate, intimidate

*Ant:* encourage, animate, embolden, inspire

**DAINTY**

*Syn:* elegant, delicate, refined, exquisite

*Ant:* clumsy, coarse, unpleasant, insipid

**E****EXULT**

*Syn:* brag, rejoice, applaud, triumph

*Ant:* deplore, lament, bemoan, grieve

**EXPLICIT**

*Syn:* definite, intelligible, obvious, apparent

*Ant:* hidden, vague, doubtful, implicit

**EXEMPT**

*Syn:* release, excuse, exclude, absolve

*Ant:* confine, hold, retard, enforce

**EXALT**

*Syn:* extol, dignify, glorify, elevate

*Ant:* dishonour, disgrace, degrade, denounce

**EVIDENT**

*Syn:* obvious, apparent, distinct, conspicuous

*Ant:* obscure, concealed, hidden, invisible

**EVADE**

*Syn:* avoid, elude, dodge, shun

*Ant:* acknowledge, confront, verify, confirm

**ETERNAL**

*Syn:* perpetual, endless, imperishable, immortal

*Ant:* temporary, momentary, transient, fleeting

**ESTEEM**

*Syn:* respect, regards, honour, reverence

*Ant:* ridicule, spurn, despise, humiliate

**ERADICATE**

*Syn:* destroy, exterminate, abolish, remove

*Ant:* secure, plant, restore, revive

**EQUIVOCAL**

*Syn:* uncertain, hazy, ambiguous, vague

*Ant:* obvious, lucid, clear, plain

**EPITOME**

*Syn:* precise, example, miniature, summary

*Ant:* increment, expansion, lengthen, enlargement

**ENORMOUS**

*Syn:* colossal, mammoth, immense, spacious

*Ant:* insignificant, diminutive, trivial, negligible

**ENLIGHTEN**

*Syn:* elucidate, educate, illumine, inculcate

*Ant:* ignorance, distortion, delude, obscure

**ENJOIN**

*Syn:* direct, counsel, exhort, command

*Ant:* prohibit, forbid, revolt, dissuade

**ENDURANCE**

*Syn:* submission, forbearance, tolerance, patience

*Ant:* break down, despair, volatile, agitating

**ENDOWMENT**

*Syn:* grant, benefit, bequest, gift

*Ant:* drawback, damage, loss, disinherit

**ENDEAVOUR**

*Syn:* undertake, aspire, venture, struggle

*Ant:* cease, quit, shun, idle

**ENCUMBRANCE**

*Syn:* hindrance, obstacle, burden, impediment

*Ant:* incentive, stimulant, patronize, vantage

**ENCROACH**

*Syn:* infringe, intrude, trespass, violate

*Ant:* avoid, evade, shun, abide

**EMBRACE**

*Syn:* cling, hug, adopt, caress

*Ant:* reject, neglect, shun, slight

**EMBEZZLE**

*Syn:* forge, swindle, defraud, peculate

*Ant:* redeem, retribute, reimburse, compensate

**ELUCIDATE**

*Syn:* enlighten, clarify, expound, illustrate

*Ant:* equivocate, confuse, distort, confound

**ELOQUENCE**

*Syn:* expression, fluency, peroration, oration

*Ant:* halting, stammering, indistinct, inarticulate

**ELIMINATE**

*Syn:* expel, oust, exclude, remove

*Ant:* restore, accept, retain, include

**ELEVATE**

*Syn:* dignify, heighten, promote, raise

*Ant:* deprecate, denounce, lower, decline

**ELEGANT**

*Syn:* graceful, distinguished, refined, polished

*Ant:* obnoxious, unrefined, ridiculous, coarse

**ELATION**

*Syn:* joy, exaltation, delight, enthusiasm

*Ant:* gloom, despair, depression, melancholy

**EFFACE**

*Syn:* destroy, obliterate, annihilate, abolish

*Ant:* retain, maintain, regenerate, resurrect

**ECSTASY**

*Syn:* delight, exultation, overjoy, rapture

*Ant:* despair, calamity, doldrums, depression

**ECCENTRIC**

*Syn:* strange, abnormal, cranky, odd

*Ant:* natural, conventional, uniform, methodical

**EARNEST**

*Syn:* ardent, sincere, resolute, determined

*Ant:* unheeding, frivolous, negligent, careless

**EVASION**

*Syn:* prevaricate, avoid, neglect, pretext

*Ant:* response, defence, compliance, action

**F****FABRICATE**

*Syn:* construct, produce, manipulate, build

*Ant:* destroy, dismantle, wreck, demolish

**FRUGALITY**

*Syn:* economical, providence, thrift, parsimony

*Ant:* lavishness, extravagance, prodigality, improvidence

**FRIVOLOUS**

*Syn:* petty, worthless, capricious, volatile

*Ant:* solemn, significant, essential, pertinent

**FRANTIC**

*Syn:* violent, agitated, frenzied, wild

*Ant:* subdued, gentle, lucid, coherent

**FRANCHISE**

*Syn:* suffrage, right, privilege, patronise

*Ant:* bondage, oppression, serfdom, irresolute

**FRAGMENTS**

*Syn:* scraps, residue, segment, section

*Ant:* total, entire, gross, aggregate

**FRAGILE**

*Syn:* weak, infirm, brittle, frail

*Ant:* enduring, tough, robust, tenacious

**FORSAKE**

*Syn:* desert, renounce, relinquish, disown

*Ant:* hold, maintain, retain, claim

**FORMIDABLE**

*Syn:* dangerous, invincible, redoubtable, dreadful

*Ant:* harmless, insignificant, weak, feeble

**FORERUNNER**

*Syn:* precursor, predecessor, ancestor, pioneer

*Ant:* descendant, follower, heir, successor

**FOE**

*Syn:* opponent, antagonist, adversary, contender

*Ant:* comrade, helper, friend, fellow

**FLUENT**

*Syn:* fast, smooth, voluble, glib

*Ant:* hesitant, slow, sluggish, halting

**FLUCTUATE**

*Syn:* deflect, vacillate, vary, deviate

*Ant:* stable, resolute, constant, inalterable

**FLOURISH**

*Syn:* prosper, triumph, thrive, blossom

*Ant:* decay, collapse, wither, deteriorate

**FLIMSY**

*Syn:* trifling, transparent, brittle, unsubstantial

*Ant:* firm, tenacious, durable, retentive

**FLEETING**

*Syn:* transient, temporary, ephemeral, transitory

*Ant:* enduring, eternal, perpetual, unceasing

**FIDELITY**

*Syn:* loyalty, trustworthiness, obedience, devotion

*Ant:* treachery, unfaithfulness, chicanery, defiance

**FICKLE**

*Syn:* wavering, unreliable, unsteady, volatile

*Ant:* resolute, determined, inalterable, invariable

**FEUD**

*Syn:* strife, quarrel, row, contention

*Ant:* fraternity, harmony, reconciliation, recompose

**FEROCIOUS**

*Syn:* untamed, barbarous, fierce, dangerous

*Ant:* gentle, innocent, benevolent, sympathetic

**FEEBLE**

*Syn:* weak, frail, impotent, defenceless

*Ant:* strong, robust, vigorous, resolute

**FATIGUE**

*Syn:* weariness, exhaustion, exertion, tiredness

*Ant:* vigour, liveliness, vivacity, briskness

**FANTASY**

*Syn:* imagination, vision, image, visualization

*Ant:* reality, substantiality, actuality, existence

**FANTASTIC**

*Syn:* fanciful, uncommon, imaginary, marvellous

*Ant:* ordinary, normal, customary, common

**FANATICAL**

*Syn:* narrow minded, stubborn, orthodox, biased

*Ant:* liberal, tolerant, unprejudiced, generous

**FALTER**

*Syn:* fluctuate, demur, dither, waver

*Ant:* persist, endure, stable, unerring

**FALLACY**

*Syn:* delusion, mistake, deception, illusion

*Ant:* veracity, truth, honesty, certainty

**FACSIMILE**

*Syn:* miniature, reproduction, copy, replica

*Ant:* distinction, dissimilarity, novelty, originality

**FABULOUS**

*Syn:* legendary, amazing, remarkable, marvellous

*Ant:* historical, common, mediocre, substantial

**FACILE**

*Syn:* dexterous, quick, skilful, effortless

*Ant:* clumsy, slow, laborious, arduous

**GUILE**

*Syn:* cunning, deceit, duplicity, chicanery

*Ant:* honesty, frankness, sincerity, integrity

**GRUDGE**

*Syn:* hatred, aversion, unwilling, objection

*Ant:* benevolence, affection, goodwill, kindness

**GRISLY**

*Syn:* disgusting, atrocious, monstrous, loathsome

*Ant:* pleasing, attractive, beautiful, alluring

**GRACIOUS**

*Syn:* courteous, beneficent, magnificent, dignified

*Ant:* rude, unforgiving, discourteous, uncourtly

**GORGEOUS**

*Syn:* magnificent, dazzling, brilliant, grand

*Ant:* dull, unpretentious, modest, plain

**GLUT**

*Syn:* stuff, satiate, overflow, cram

*Ant:* reduce, abstain, moderate, restrain

**GLOOM**

*Syn:* obscurity, darkness, dejection, disillusion

*Ant:* delight, mirth, joviality, bright

**GIGANTIC**

*Syn:* huge, enormous, immense, monstrous

*Ant:* small, diminutive, miniature, slight

**GENUINE**

*Syn:* real, authentic, creative, original

*Ant:* deceptive, spurious, imitative, derivative

**GENIAL**

*Syn:* cheerful, pleasant, joyful, affable

*Ant:* sullen, dismal, morose, melancholy

**GENEROUS**

*Syn:* liberal, unselfish, benevolent, hospitable

*Ant:* miserly, stingy, covetous, greedy

**GARRULOUS**

*Syn:* loquacious, talkative, communicative, informative

*Ant:* reserved, quiet, taciturn, reticent

**GALLANT**

*Syn:* heroic, intrepid, valorous, chivalrous

*Ant:* coward, timid, craven, base

**GAUDY**

*Syn:* garish, brilliant, glittering, tawdry

*Ant:* faded, dull, sobre, solemn

**H****HUSTLE**

*Syn:* hurry, haste, bustle, activity

*Ant:* lull, quiet, idle, motionless

**HYPOCRISY**

*Syn:* deception, affectation, trickery, illusion

*Ant:* sincerity, integrity, honesty, ingenuousness

**HIDEOUS**

*Syn:* frightful, shocking, abominable, monstrous

*Ant:* attractive, alluring, splendid, appealing

**HERETIC**

*Syn:* nonconformist, secularist, dissident, offender

*Ant:* conformable, adaptable, religious, believer

**HAZARD**

*Syn:* presumption, danger, peril, risk, presume

*Ant:* conviction, security, assurance, certainty

**HAUGHTY**

*Syn:* arrogant, pompous, obstinate, imperious

*Ant:* humble, submissive, modest, inoffensive

**HARASS**

*Syn:* irritable, molest, suppress, tyranny

*Ant:* assist, comfort, tolerant, connive

**HAPLESS**

*Syn:* unfortunate, ill-fated, hostile, doomed

*Ant:* fortunate, lucky, favoured, satisfied

**HAPHAZARD**

*Syn:* random, sudden, unsorted, reckless

*Ant:* deliberate, considered, thoughtful, discerning

**HAMPER**

*Syn:* retard, prevent, hinder, obstruct

*Ant:* promote, facilitate, foster, assist

**HAGGARD**

*Syn:* exhausted, lean, emaciated, gaunt

*Ant:* exuberant, active, lively, robust

**HOMELY**

*Syn:* plain, coarse, unadorned, simple

*Ant:* suave, polished, dignified, refined

**HAIL**

*Syn:* greet, welcome, acclaim, honour

*Ant:* disregard, belittle, avoid, despise

**HEINOUS**

*Syn:* outrageous, vile, awful, wicked

*Ant:* righteous, pleasing, exquisite, appealing

**IRREPRESSIBLE**

*Syn:* irresistible, unconfined, unhindered, unshackled

*Ant:* composed, hesitant, submissive, grave

**INVINCIBLE**

*Syn:* unconquerable, impregnable, unsubdued, unbeatable

*Ant:* effeminate, languid, crippled, fragile

**INTIMIDATE**

*Syn:* frighten, dictate, hopeless, irresolute

*Ant:* console, encourage, appease, hearten

**INTREPID**

*Syn:* brave, courageous, valorous, chivalrous

*Ant:* scared, frightened, timid, cowardly

**INTRICATE**

*Syn:* tangled, complicated, formidable, arduous

*Ant:* regulated, orderly, manageable, ductile

**INTRIGUE**

*Syn:* scheme, conspiracy, manipulation, counterplot

*Ant:* candour, sincerity, bluntness, honesty

**INTRINSIC**

*Syn:* genuine, fundamental, inherent, congenital

*Ant:* extraneous, incidental, extrinsic, derived

**INVECTIVE**

*Syn:* accusation, censure, malediction, denunciation

*Ant:* approval, acclamation, admiration, approbation

**INSTIL**

*Syn:* inculcate, inject, infuse, implant

*Ant:* eradicate, extract, eliminate, expel

**INSOLVENT**

*Syn:* indigent, destitute, bankrupt, defaulter

*Ant:* wealthy, solvent, affluent, substantial

**INSIPID**

*Syn:* tasteless, vapid, savourless, unflavoured

*Ant:* delicious, luscious, pungent, piquant

**INSINUATE**

*Syn:* communicate, allude, hint, suggest

*Ant:* conceal, camouflage, suppress, mask

**INQUISITIVE**

*Syn:* inquiring, curious, searching, studious

*Ant:* distracted, negligent, indifferent, impassive

**INNOCUOUS**

*Syn:* salutary, wholesome, innocent, harmless

*Ant:* deleterious, baneful, insanitary, injurious

**INGENUOUS**

*Syn:* undisguised, naive, candid, guileless

*Ant:* wily, crafty, perfidious, treacherous

**INFRINGE**

*Syn:* violate, encroach, transgress, trespass

*Ant:* comply, concur, conform, observe

**INEVITABLE**

*Syn:* unavoidable, ascertained, imminent, substantial

*Ant:* unlikely, doubtful, indefinite, uncertain

**INGENIOUS**

*Syn:* deft, proficient, dexterous, adroit

*Ant:* unskilled, incompetent, immature, unqualified

**INDULGE**

*Syn:* gratify, pamper, comfort, satisfy

*Ant:* annoy, trouble, torment, displease

**INDOLENT**

*Syn:* lazy, listless, languid, sluggish

*Ant:* energetic, vivacious, prompt, agile

**INDISPENSABLE**

*Syn:* essential, expedient, requisite, unavoidable

*Ant:* superfluous, redundant, needless, tranquility

**INDIGNATION**

*Syn:* resentment, ire, wrath, rage

*Ant:* modesty, tranquility, forbearance, equanimity

**INDIGENCE**

*Syn:* privation, destitution, insolvency, penury

*Ant:* affluence, abundance, opulence, luxury

**INCONGRUOUS**

*Syn:* inappropriate, absurd, ridiculous, awkward

*Ant:* compatible, harmonious, homogeneous, consistent

**INCOMPETENT**

*Syn:* inefficient, unskilled, immature, unqualified

*Ant:* dexterous, skilled, ingenious, competent

**INCLINATION**

*Syn:* disposition, affection, proneness, propensity

*Ant:* neutrality, indifference, apathy, unresponsive

**INCITE**

*Syn:* instigate, provoke, motivate, arouse

*Ant:* deter, discourage, restrain, dissuade

**INCENTIVE**

*Syn:* motivation, allurement, inducement, spur

*Ant:* dissuasion, reluctance, deterrent, discouragement

**IMPUTE**

*Syn:* attribute, ascribe, charge, indict

*Ant:* exculpate, support, vindicate, excuse

**IMPUDENCE**

*Syn:* sauciness, impertinence, insolence, arrogance

*Ant:* submissiveness, modesty, humility, meekness

**IMPIOUS**

*Syn:* irreligious, unholy, irreverent, hypocritical

*Ant:* pious, devout, spiritual, venerate

**IMPETUOUS**

*Syn:* violent, impulsive, imprudence, indiscretion

*Ant:* considerate, composed, discretion, prudence

**IMPEDIMENT**

*Syn:* hurdle, obstruction, hindrance, retardation

*Ant:* assistance, concurrence, deliverance, aid

**IMPARTIAL**

*Syn:* just, unbiased, equitable, evenhanded

*Ant:* prejudiced, biased, unjust, inequitable

**IMPART**

*Syn:* divulge, bestow, inform, convey

*Ant:* withhold, conceal, suppress, deny

**IMPAIR**

*Syn:* diminish, deteriorate, decompose, worsen

*Ant:* restore, revive, resurrect, repair

**IMMUNITY**

*Syn:* prerogative, privilege, exemption, non-liability

*Ant:* blame, censure, prescription, interdiction

**IMMINENT**

*Syn:* impending, brewing, overhanging, approaching

*Ant:* distant, receding, retreating, withdrawing

**IMMERSE**

*Syn:* submerge, involve, descend, drown

*Ant:* emerge, uncover, restore, recover

**IMMENSE**

*Syn:* huge, enormous, gigantic, colossal

*Ant:* puny, insignificant, paltry, trifling

**IMMACULATE**

*Syn:* unsullied, spotless, untarnished, untainted

*Ant:* defiled, tarnished, obscene, profane

**IMBECILE**

*Syn:* weak, senile, feeble, unsound

*Ant:* sane, sagacious, astute, wise

**IMAGINARY**

*Syn:* illusory, visionary, insubstantial, subjective

*Ant:* factual, tangible, genuine, evident

**IGNORANCE**

*Syn:* illiteracy, darkness, unawareness, unconsciousness

*Ant:* knowledge, enlightenment, apprehension, recognition

**IGNOMINIOUS**

*Syn:* disgraceful, shameful, dishonourable, scandalous

*Ant:* dignified, distinguished, creditable, stately

**J****JUVENILE**

*Syn:* young, tender, youthful, adolescent

*Ant:* dotage, antiquated, senile, old

**JUSTIFY**

*Syn:* defend, exculpate, warrant, vindicate

*Ant:* impute, arraign, accuse, incriminate

**JUST**

*Syn:* honest, impartial, righteous, upright

*Ant:* unequal, unfair, discriminatory, unseasonable

**JUDICIOUS**

*Syn:* thoughtful, prudent, discerning, discriminating

*Ant:* irrational, foolish, misconception, fatuous

**JUBILANT**

*Syn:* rejoicing, triumphant, gay, cheerful

*Ant:* melancholy, depressing, gloomy, despondent

**JOVIAL**

*Syn:* frolicsome, cheerful, merry, exultant

*Ant:* solemn, morose, malcontent, sad

**JADED**

*Syn:* tired, exhausted, fatigued, languish

*Ant:* renewal, recreation, restorative, refreshed

**JEJUNE**

*Syn:* dull, boring, uninteresting, monotonous

*Ant:* interesting, exciting, piquant, thrilling

**K****KINDRED**

*Syn:* relation, species, relative, affinity

*Ant:* unrelated, dissimilar, heterogeneous, disparate

**KEEN**

*Syn:* sharp, poignant, eager, acute

*Ant:* vapid, insipid, blunt, undesiring

**KNAVE**

*Syn:* dishonest, scoundrel, vagabond, rogue

*Ant:* paragon, innocent, benefactor, idealist

**KNELL**

*Syn:* death knell, last blow, demolish, suppress

*Ant:* reconstruction, rediscovery, procreation, resurrection

**KNOTTY**

*Syn:* complicated, difficult, arduous, onerous

*Ant:* simple, manageable, tractable, flexible

**L****LUXURIANT**

*Syn:* profuse, abundant, dense, plentiful

*Ant:* scanty, meagre, inadequate, deficient

**LUSCIOUS**

*Syn:* palatable, delicious, delectable, delightful

*Ant:* unsavoury, tart, sharp, sour

**LURE**

*Syn:* attract, entice, tempt, induce

*Ant:* repel, dissuade, confute, threaten

**LUNACY**

*Syn:* delusion, insanity, madness, imbecility

*Ant:* normalcy, sanity, sagacity, shrewdness

**LUDICROUS**

*Syn:* absurd, bizarre, preposterous, grotesque

*Ant:* balanced, congruous, consistent, solemn

**LUCID**

*Syn:* sound, rational, coherent, sane

*Ant:* obscure, hidden, incomprehensible, unintelligible

**LISTLESS**

*Syn:* lazy, inattentive, spiritless, incurious

*Ant:* brisk, attentive, diligent, agile

**LINGER**

*Syn:* loiter, prolong, hesitate, delay

*Ant:* hasten, quicken, dart, hurry

**LIBERATE**

*Syn:* emancipate, rescue, unshackle, absolve

*Ant:* suppress, menace, obstruct, detain

**LIBERAL**

*Syn:* magnanimous, hospitality, generous, benevolence

*Ant:* stingy, niggardly, malevolent, malicious

**LIABLE**

*Syn:* accountable, bound, responsible, likely

*Ant:* unaccountable, apt to, irresponsible, exempt

**LENIENT**

*Syn:* compassionate, merciful, moderate, tolerant

*Ant:* cruel, severe, violent, vehement

**LAX**

*Syn:* slack, careless, negligence, indifferent

*Ant:* firm, reliable, meticulous, scrupulous

**LAVISH**

*Syn:* abundant, excessive, profuse, extravagant

*Ant:* scarce, deficient, frugal, conserve

**LASSITUDE**

*Syn:* languor, tiredness, weariness, lethargy

*Ant:* vivacity, agility, animate, lively

**LAUDABLE**

*Syn:* deserving, honourable, praiseworthy, acceptable

*Ant:* vicious, blame worthy, venomous, condemnable

**LANGUID**

*Syn:* pensive, lethargic, exhausted, fatigued

*Ant:* lively, animated, refreshed, restored

**LAMENT**

*Syn:* grieve, deplore, regret, bemoan

*Ant:* amuse, entertain, enliven, solace

**LAG**

*Syn:* retard, falter, linger, dawdle

*Ant:* quicken, accelerate, expedite, spurt

**LACONIC**

*Syn:* brief, condensed, concise, compact

*Ant:* dilated, profused, diffuse, wordy

**M****MUTUAL**

*Syn:* joint, identical, correlative, reciprocal

*Ant:* separate, distinct, divergent, individual

**MUTINOUS**

*Syn:* recalcitrant, insurgent, unruly, revolutionary

*Ant:* submissive, faithful, compliant, loyal

**MURKY**

*Syn:* dusky, dreary, dismal, bleak

*Ant:* bright, shining, luminous, radiant

**MUNIFICENT**

*Syn:* liberal, hospitable, benevolent, kind

*Ant:* frugal, penurious, moderate, economical

**MULTITUDE**

*Syn:* crowd, throng, mass, swarm

*Ant:* minority, handful, paucity, scarcity

**MOROSE**

*Syn:* surly, sulky, sullen, depressed

*Ant:* sprightly, animated, buoyant, blithe

**MONOTONOUS**

*Syn:* irksome, tedious, humdrum, insipid

*Ant:* varied, pleasant, appealing, captivating

**MOMENTOUS**

*Syn:* notable, eventful, consequential, stirring

*Ant:* trivial, insignificant, commonplace, immaterial

**MOLLIFY**

*Syn:* appease, assuage, relieve, mitigate

*Ant:* irritate, infuriate, aggravate, exasperate

**MOLEST**

*Syn:* pester, harass, vex, misbehave

*Ant:* console, soothe, comfort, cheer

**MODEST**

*Syn:* reserved, unpretentious, humble, courteous

*Ant:* audacious, arrogant, pompous, vain

**MODERATE**

*Syn:* limited, reasonable, lenient, temperate

*Ant:* excessive, extravagant, violent, vehement

**MITIGATE**

*Syn:* alleviate, relieve, lessen, assuage

*Ant:* augment, enhance, intensify, aggravate

**MIRACULOUS**

*Syn:* marvellous, extraordinary, astounding, amazing

*Ant:* ordinary, trivial, familiar, natural

**MINUTE**

*Syn:* diminutive, miniature, small, microscopic

*Ant:* large, colossal, stupendous, immense

**METTLE**

*Syn:* courage, determination, stamina, spirit

*Ant:* timidity, fear, cowardice, diffident

**MERITORIOUS**

*Syn:* commendable, admirable, deserving, praiseworthy

*Ant:* unworthy, infamous, disreputable, culpable

**MERCURIAL**

*Syn:* variable, changeable, unstable, erratic

*Ant:* stable, constant, steady, steadfast

**MENDACITY**

*Syn:* falsehood, deception, perjury, perfidious

*Ant:* probity, honesty, veracity, candour

**MELODIOUS**

*Syn:* dulcet, musical, harmonious, sweet

*Ant:* grating, dissonant, discordant, rancour

**N****NUMEROUS**

*Syn:* profuse, various, multitude, plenteous

*Ant:* scarce, deficient, paucity, sparse

**NULLIFY**

*Syn:* cancel, annul, obliterate, invalidate

*Ant:* confirm, uphold, empower, endorse

**NOXIOUS**

*Syn:* baneful, injurious, pernicious, disastrous

*Ant:* healing, profitable, innocuous, salubrious

**NOVICE**

*Syn:* tyro, beginner, debutant, apprentice

*Ant:* veteran, ingenious, experienced, mentor

**NOURISH**

*Syn:* sustain, nurture, tend, foster

*Ant:* exhaust, starve, weaken, enervate

**NONCHALANT**

*Syn:* indifferent, negligent, uncaring, heedless

*Ant:* attentive, considerate, vigilant, scrupulous

**NIMBLE**

*Syn:* prompt, brisk, lively, agile

*Ant:* sluggish, languid, weary, tardy

**NIGGARDLY**

*Syn:* miserly, covetous, inadequacy, deficiency

*Ant:* generous, profuse, redundant, excessive

**NEGLIGENT**

*Syn:* inattentive, careless, heedless, perfunctory

*Ant:* vigilant, careful, considerate, alert

**NEFARIOUS**

*Syn:* detestable, atrocious, heinous, unlawful

*Ant:* commendable, worthy, upright, inoffensive

**NAUSEOUS**

*Syn:* unsavoury, loathsome, abominable, repellent

*Ant:* commendable, worthy, benevolent, inoffensive

**NATIVE**

*Syn:* original, vernacular, indigenous, aboriginal

*Ant:* alien, extraneous, exotic, foreign

**NASTY**

*Syn:* offensive, defiled, malevolent, malignant

*Ant:* pleasing, gratifying, benevolent, attractive

**NOMINAL**

*Syn:* trifling, insubstantial, bare, negligible

*Ant:* substantial, considerable, excessive, exorbitant

**OVERWROUGHT**

*Syn:* excited, agitated, fervent, intense

*Ant:* quiet, tranquil, composed, cool

**OVERWHELM**

*Syn:* triumph, subjugate, overpower, vanquish

*Ant:* flounder, falter, restore, impotent

**OVERSIGHT**

*Syn:* omission, error, fault, slip

*Ant:* precision, observance, circumspection, caution

**OVERBEARING**

*Syn:* oppressive, domineering, intimidating, despotic

*Ant:* submissive, humble, lenient, forbearing

**OUTRAGE**

*Syn:* offence, maltreatment, assault, irreverent

*Ant:* praise, favour, esteem, reverence

**OUTBREAK**

*Syn:* eruption, insurrection, explosion, outburst

*Ant:* compliance, subjection, passivity, harmony

**OSTENTATION**

*Syn:* display, pretension, vaunt, pomposity

*Ant:* modesty, constraint, diffidence, economy

**OSTENSIBLE**

*Syn:* apparent, evident, obvious, overt

*Ant:* concealed, covert, obscure, vague

**ORNAMENTAL**

*Syn:* decorative, adorned, glamorous, picturesque

*Ant:* unseemly, plain, blemished, disfigured

**ORDAIN**

*Syn:* order, impose, prescribe, proclaim

*Ant:* revoke, abolish, violate, abrogate

**ORACULAR**

*Syn:* cryptic, vague, enigmatic, profound

*Ant:* lucid, distinct, intelligible, unambiguous

**OPAQUE**

*Syn:* filmy, dim, obscure, shady

*Ant:* transparent, bright, translucent, revealing

**ONEROUS**

*Syn:* arduous, troublesome, inconvenient, formidable

*Ant:* facile, agreeable, uncomplicated, flexible

**OMINOUS**

*Syn:* threatening, inauspicious, forebode, menacing

*Ant:* consoling, auspicious, propitious, comforting

**OFFSPRING**

*Syn:* descendants, siblings, posterity, progeny

*Ant:* ancestors, forefathers, pedigree, progenitors

**OFFENSIVE**

*Syn:* abhorrent, arrogant, insolent, impudent

*Ant:* docile, compliant, courteous, captivating

**ODIOUS**

*Syn:* abhorrent, obnoxious, prejudice, malevolent

*Ant:* engaging, fascinating, endearing, captivating

**OCCULT**

*Syn:* latent, ambiguous, esoteric, elusive

*Ant:* intelligible, transparent, fathomable, scrutable

**OBVIOUS**

*Syn:* evident, apparent, distinct, conspicuous

*Ant:* obscure, ambiguous, indiscernible, confusing

**OBSTRUCT**

*Syn:* impede, prevent, restrain, retard

*Ant:* hasten, encourage, expedite, promote

**OBSTINATE**

*Syn:* stubborn, resolute, unyielding, obdurate

*Ant:* submissive, obedient, amenable, pliable

**OBSOLETE**

*Syn:* outworn, archaic, antiquated, obsolescent

*Ant:* modern, novel, vogue, contemporary

**OBSEQUIOUS**

*Syn:* slavish, servile, sycophantic, subservient

*Ant:* insolent, arrogant, defiant, assertive

**OBNOXIOUS**

*Syn:* pernicious, detestable, abhorrent, offensive

*Ant:* attractive, gratifying, beneficial, desirable

**OBJECTIVE**

*Syn:* goal, purpose, intention, resolve

*Ant:* origin, inception, deviating, subjective

**P****PUNGENT**

*Syn:* acute, penetrating, sharp, strong

*Ant:* mild, soothing, pleasant, palatable

**PUERILE**

*Syn:* shallow, immature, childish, trivial

*Ant:* wise, farsighted, profound, sensible

**PRUDENT**

*Syn:* cautious, discreet, judicious, circumspect

*Ant:* impetuous, unwise, reckless, rash

**PROVOKE**

*Syn:* inflame, incite, agitate, aggravate

*Ant:* pacify, comfort, dissuade, placate

**PROTRACT**

*Syn:* prolong, delay, stretch, procrastinate

*Ant:* abbreviate, curtail, abridge, compress

**PROSCRIBE**

*Syn:* prohibit, exclude, ban, forbid

*Ant:* solicit, include, permit, sanction

**PROPITIATE**

*Syn:* appease, soothe, pacify, placate

*Ant:* aggravate, annoy, scorn, displease

**PROMULGATE**

*Syn:* declare, proclaim, notify, announce

*Ant:* reserve, suppress, disguise, withhold

**PROMISCUOUS**

*Syn:* confused, indiscriminate, casual, random

*Ant:* regular, discriminate, orderly, select

**PROFUSE**

*Syn:* lavish, abundant, generous, plentiful

*Ant:* scarce, scanty, meagre, paucity

**PROFLIGATE**

*Syn:* dissolute, degenerate, immoral, flagitious

*Ant:* virtuous, upright, moral, ethical

**PRODIGY**

*Syn:* miracle, marvel, wonder, extraordinary

*Ant:* normal, average, mediocre, common

**PRODIGIOUS**

*Syn:* vast, enormous, immense, huge

*Ant:* unimpressive, diminutive, slight, puny

**PRESUMPTUOUS**

*Syn:* presuming, arrogant, affected, insolent

*Ant:* unassuming, modest, bashful, unobtrusive

**PREMATURE**

*Syn:* precious, untimely, mistimed, inopportune

*Ant:* belated, opportune, timely, mellow

**PREDICAMENT**

*Syn:* plight, dilemma, fix, quandary

*Ant:* resolution, confidence, firmness, certainty

**PRECARIOUS**

*Syn:* doubtful, insecure, unreliable, uncertain

*Ant:* assured, undeniable, reliable, substantial

**POMPOUS**

*Syn:* haughty, arrogant, flamboyant, florid

*Ant:* unpretentious, humble, coy, modest

**POISE**

*Syn:* equanimity, composure, equilibrium, patience

*Ant:* excitement, vehemence, frenzy, outburst

**PLIGHT**

*Syn:* predicament, perplexity, adversity, difficulty

*Ant:* facility, confidence, certainty, assurance

**PLIANT**

*Syn:* docile, amenable, pliable, submissive

*Ant:* defiant, adamant, rigid, obdurate

**PIQUE**

*Syn:* offence, resentment, indignation, displeasure

*Ant:* joy, rejoice, gratification, pleasure

**PIQUANT**

*Syn:* interesting, charming, tasteful, exciting

*Ant:* insipid, nauseating, unpalatable, unsavoury

**PILLAGE**

*Syn:* ransack, ravage, despoil, plunder

*Ant:* recompense, recover, redeem, restoration

**PERVERSE**

*Syn:* petulant, obstinate, stubborn, unyielding

*Ant:* complacent, docile, willing, consenting

**PERTNESS**

*Syn:* flippancy, impudence, impertinence, petulance

*Ant:* modesty, diffidence, subservient, obedient

**PERSPICUITY**

*Syn:* transparency, discernment, lucidity, intelligibility

*Ant:* perplexity, intricacy, obscurity, vagueness

**PERSEVERANCE**

*Syn:* persistence, endurance, tenacity, steadfastness

*Ant:* indolence, lethargy, stupor, sloth

**PERSECUTE**

*Syn:* torment, harass, intimidate, domineer

*Ant:* recompense, redress, comfort, console

**PERPLEX**

*Syn:* puzzle, confound, frustrate, baffle

*Ant:* convince, ascertain, confident, assure

**PERPETUAL**

*Syn:* uninterrupted, lasting, perennial, incessant

*Ant:* passing, transient, ephemeral, fleeting

**PERIL**

*Syn:* hazard, danger, jeopardy, compulsory

*Ant:* caution, security, safety, assurance

**PEREMPTORY**

*Syn:* overbearing, absolute, arbitrary, compulsory

*Ant:* tolerant, indecisive, optional, indulgent

**PENETRATE**

*Syn:* pierce, perforate, insert, infiltrate

*Ant:* discharge, leak, seep, emerge

**PEEVISH**

*Syn:* perverse, sullen, irritable, fretful

*Ant:* suave, amiable, polite, pleasant

**PEERLESS**

*Syn:* matchless, unrivalled, unique, surpassing

*Ant:* mediocre, commonplace, inferior, imperfect

**PARAMOUNT**

*Syn:* foremost, eminent, supreme, unrivalled

*Ant:* trivial, inferior, subsidiary, ordinary

**PANIC**

*Syn:* apprehension, dismay, alarm, dread

*Ant:* calm, confidence, security, tranquility

**PAMPER**

*Syn:* spoil, indulge, flatter, please

*Ant:* chasten, correct, deny, disparage

**PALPABLE**

*Syn:* distinct, prominent, plain, concrete

*Ant:* concealed, obscure, intangible, covert

**PALLIATE**

*Syn:* extenuate, moderate, alleviate, soften

*Ant:* denounce, condemn, reproach, reprehend

**PLACID**

*Syn:* tranquil, calm, compose, unruffled

*Ant:* turbulent, hostile, agitated, volatile

**Q****QUESTIONABLE**

*Syn:* uncertain, disputable, dubious, unverifiable

*Ant:* positive, authentic, reliable, substantial

**QUELL**

*Syn:* subdue, reduce, suppress, extinguish

*Ant:* exacerbate, agitate, foment, instigate

**QUAINT**

*Syn:* queer, strange, odd, ridiculous

*Ant:* familiar, usual, common, normal

**QUACK**

*Syn:* impostor, deceiver, dissembler, knave

*Ant:* upright, unfeigned, trained, genuine

**QUIBBLE**

*Syn:* equivocate, prevaricate, evade, dissemble

*Ant:* unfeign, plain, scrupulous, conscientious

**QUASH**

*Syn:* abrogate, annul, cancel, revoke

*Ant:* uphold, empower, authorise, permit

**QUARANTINE**

*Syn:* isolate, separate, seclude, screened

*Ant:* gregarious, amiable, sociable, companionable

**R****RUTHLESS**

*Syn:* remorseless, inhuman, savage, unrelenting

*Ant:* compassionate, lenient, benevolent, humanitarian

**RUSTIC**

*Syn:* pastoral, bucolic, rural, uncivilised

*Ant:* cultured, refined, urban, urbane

**ROUT**

*Syn:* defeat, overthrow, vanquish, subjugate

*Ant:* succumb, withdraw, retreat, consolidate

**RIGHTEOUS**

*Syn:* virtuous, honest, upright, just

*Ant:* unjust, immoral, unprincipled, unfair

**REVERENCE**

*Syn:* respect, esteem, regards, veneration

*Ant:* disrespect, dishonour, affront, offence

**REVEAL**

*Syn:* disclose, expose, unfold, divulge

*Ant:* hide, conceal, confine, cover

**RETRACT**

*Syn:* recant, repudiate, revoke, withdraw

*Ant:* confirm, assert, declare, affirm

**REMOTE**

*Syn:* inaccessible, farther, distant, slight

*Ant:* adjoining, adjacent, proximate, contiguous

**REMORSE**

*Syn:* regret, penitence, deplore, lament

*Ant:* ruthless, obduracy, pitiless, relentless

**RESENTMENT**

*Syn:* displeasure, wrath, ire, bitterness

*Ant:* content, cheer, pleasure, agreement

**RESCIND**

*Syn:* annul, abrogate, revoke, repeal

*Ant:* delegate, permit, authorize, propose

**REPULSIVE**

*Syn:* repellent, forbidding, hideous, detestable

*Ant:* agreeable, enticing, attractive, alluring

**REPUGNANT**

*Syn:* hostile, offensive, disagreeable, distasteful

*Ant:* agreeable, pleasant, friendly, tasteful

**REMONSTRATE**

*Syn:* censure, protest, argue, expostulate

*Ant:* agree, laud, endorse, commend

**REMNANT**

*Syn:* residue, piece, part, remainder

*Ant:* entire, whole, complete, unbroken

**RELINQUISH**

*Syn:* forsake, abandon, surrender, abdicate

*Ant:* persist, continue, occupy, hold

**REDRESS***Syn:* relief, restoration, remedy, repair*Ant:* retribution, forfeiture, harm, degenerate**REDEEM***Syn:* recover, liberate, fulfil, rescue*Ant:* lose, barter, neglect, conserve**RAZE***Syn:* demolish, destroy, annihilate, dismantle*Ant:* restore, construct, repair, build**RAVISH***Syn:* captivate, enchant, seize, charm*Ant:* disgust, annoy, displease, oppress**RAVAGE***Syn:* devastate, destroy, ruin, despoil*Ant:* restore, organize, reconstruct, renovate**RATIFY***Syn:* consent, approve, endorse, corroborate*Ant:* deny, contradict, dissent, oppose**RAPTURE***Syn:* bliss, delight, pleasure, ecstasy*Ant:* melancholy, distress, sorrow, agonize**RAPID***Syn:* swift, fast, speedy, accelerate*Ant:* sluggish, lethargic, languid, listless**RANCOUR***Syn:* hatred, malice, resentment, bitterness*Ant:* love, regards, respect, friendliness**RADIANCE***Syn:* glow, brilliance, splendour, gleaming*Ant:* dullness, shady, overcast, dusky**S****SYCOPHANT***Syn:* parasite, flatterer, cringing, servile*Ant:* devoted, loyal, truthful, faithful**SWAY***Syn:* influence, control, command, power*Ant:* impotence, futility, disability, incapacity

**SUPERFLUOUS**

*Syn:* excessive, surplus, redundant, unnecessary

*Ant:* scanty, inadequate, dearth, scarce

**SUPERFICIAL**

*Syn:* partial, shallow, cursory, flimsy

*Ant:* profound, discerning, substantial, deep

**SUBVERT**

*Syn:* overthrow, suppress, demolish, sabotage

*Ant:* accomplish, sustain, generate, organise

**SUBSTANTIAL**

*Syn:* durable, lasting, concrete, tangible

*Ant:* tenuous, abstract, fragile, immaterial

**SUBSEQUENT**

*Syn:* consequent, following, later, afterwards

*Ant:* preceding, previous, prior, earlier

**STUPOR**

*Syn:* lethargy, insensibility, unconsciousness, coma

*Ant:* consciousness, sensibility, sensitive, feeling

**STERN**

*Syn:* harsh, severe, austere, rigorous

*Ant:* lenient, considerate, benevolent, generous

**STAIN**

*Syn:* blemish, tarnish, disgrace, stigma

*Ant:* honour, purify, virtuous, noble

**STABLE**

*Syn:* abiding, lasting, steadfast, constant

*Ant:* erratic, wavering, unsteady, restless

**SQUALID**

*Syn:* dirty, soiled, filthy, odious

*Ant:* attractive, tidy, polished, spruce

**SPURIOUS**

*Syn:* counterfeit, adulterated, fake, fraudulent

*Ant:* genuine, positive, original, sincere

**SPORADIC**

*Syn:* intermittent, scattered, isolated, infrequent

*Ant:* incessant, frequent, constant, regular

**SPONTANEOUS**

*Syn:* unforced, instinctive, sudden, unintentional

*Ant:* intended, devised, premeditated, intentional

**SOLICIT**

*Syn:* entreat, implore, approach, accost

*Ant:* protest, oppose, prohibit, disapprove

**SNEER**

*Syn:* mock, scorn, despise, spurn

*Ant:* flatter, praise, encourage, laud

**SLANDER**

*Syn:* defame, malign, detract, despise

*Ant:* applaud, approve, commend, exalt

**SINISTER**

*Syn:* woeful, disastrous evil, ruinous

*Ant:* auspicious, fortunate propitious, harmless

**SHREWD**

*Syn:* running, observant, crafty, artful

*Ant:* thoughtless, rash, simple, imbecile

**SHALLOW**

*Syn:* trivial, slight, superficial, insubstantial

*Ant:* profound, wise, substantial, deep

**SHABBY**

*Syn:* miserable, impoverished, deteriorated, impaired

*Ant:* prosperous, thriving, restoring, flourishing

**SCANTY**

*Syn:* scarce, insufficient paucity, sparseness

*Ant:* lavish, luxuriant, multitude, several

**SCANDAL**

*Syn:* disgrace, disrepute, indignity, defamation

*Ant:* praise, admiration, flattery, adulation

**SAUCY**

*Syn:* impudent, insolent, brazen, impertinent

*Ant:* modest, humble, esteem, meek

**SARCASTIC**

*Syn:* derisive, ironical, sardonic, invective

*Ant:* courteous, complaisant, gracious, polite

**SANGUINE**

*Syn:* hopeful, optimistic, buoyant, confident

*Ant:* despondent, pessimistic, depressed, despairing

**SALUTARY**

*Syn:* wholesome, salubrious, healthful, beneficial

*Ant:* harmful, deleterious, pernicious, ruinous

**T****TYRO**

*Syn:* beginner, learner, novice, debutant

*Ant:* proficient, veteran, adept, connoisseur

**TUMULTUOUS**

*Syn:* uproarious, violent, disorderly, riotous

*Ant:* peaceful, passive, orderly, harmonious

**TRIVIAL**

*Syn:* trifling, insignificant, frivolous, worthless

*Ant:* significant, important, consequential, essential

**TRITE**

*Syn:* ordinary, commonplace, stale, hackneyed

*Ant:* interesting, extraordinary, becoming, proper

**TRENCHANT**

*Syn:* assertive, forceful, sharp, spirited

*Ant:* feeble, ambiguous, shallow, vacillating

**TREACHEROUS**

*Syn:* faithless, deceitful, disloyal, unreliable

*Ant:* faithful, reliable, dependable, trustworthy

**TRANSIENT**

*Syn:* temporal, transitory, fleeting, passing

*Ant:* lasting, enduring, perpetual, immortal

**TRANQUIL**

*Syn:* peaceful, composed, calm, placid

*Ant:* violent, furious, restless, distracting

**TORTURE**

*Syn:* torment, agony pang, oppress

*Ant:* comfort, consolation, pleasure, delight

**TIMID**

*Syn:* modest, humble, diffident, apprehensive

*Ant:* bold, intrepid, undaunted, courageous

**THRONG**

*Syn:* assembly, gathering, congregation, crowd

*Ant:* dispersion, scattering, handful, sparsity

**TENACIOUS**

*Syn:* resolved, resolute, determined, dogged

*Ant:* vacillating, timid, wavering, unstable

**TEMPERATE**

*Syn:* cool, moderate, reasonable, lenient

*Ant:* boisterous, vehement, violent, excessive

**TEMERITY**

*Syn:* boldness, audacity, imprudence, indiscretion

*Ant:* discretion, prudence, caution, wisdom

**TEDIOUS**

*Syn:* wearisome, irksome, tiring, monotonous

*Ant:* exhilarating, lively, delightful, diverting

**TAINTED**

*Syn:* contaminated, corrupt, vitiated, polluted

*Ant:* unblemished, wholesome, restorative, pure

**TACITURN**

*Syn:* reserved, uncommunicative, silent, reticent

*Ant:* talkative, loquacious, garrulous, extrovert

**TABOO**

*Syn:* prohibit, prevent, forbid, ban

*Ant:* permit, sanction, consent, license

## U

**UTTERLY**

*Syn:* completely, entirely, extremely, wholly

*Ant:* deficient, incomplete, insufficient, partial

**USURP**

*Syn:* seize, wrest, encroach, coup

*Ant:* restore, compensate, grant, reinstate

**UNSEEMLY**

*Syn:* undesirable, inappropriate, uncouth, awkward

*Ant:* becoming, acceptable, decorous, admirable

**UNGAINLY**

*Syn:* clumsy, unskilled, immature, slovenly

*Ant:* active, expert, skilful, dexterous

**UNCOUTH**

*Syn:* awkward, ungraceful, inelegant, vulgar

*Ant:* elegant, graceful, distinguished, shapely

**UMBRAGE**

*Syn:* resentment, bitterness, dissatisfaction, offence

*Ant:* sympathy, goodwill, amity, esteem

**V****VULGAR**

*Syn:* inelegant, offensive, nasty, ungraceful

*Ant:* refined, graceful, elegant, civil

**VOUCH**

*Syn:* confirm, consent, approve, endorse

*Ant:* repudiate, prohibit, recant, retract

**VOLATILE**

*Syn:* light, changing, transient, temporal

*Ant:* heavy, ponderous, perpetual, stable

**VIGILANT**

*Syn:* cautious, alert, wary, circumspect

*Ant:* careless, negligent, inattentive, casual

**VICIOUS**

*Syn:* corrupt, obnoxious, degraded, demoralized

*Ant:* noble, virtuous, innocent, underfiled

**VIBRATE**

*Syn:* swing, oscillate, fluctuate, undulate

*Ant:* cease, pause, rest, discontinue

**VENOM**

*Syn:* poison, resentment, malevolence, rancour

*Ant:* antidote, remedy, benevolent, sympathetic

**VENERABLE**

*Syn:* esteemed, honoured, respectable, worthy

*Ant:* unworthy, immature, degrade, degenerate

**VANITY**

*Syn:* conceit, pretension, immodesty, pride

*Ant:* modesty, humility, meek, bashful

**VALOUR**

*Syn:* bravery, prowess, heroism, chivalry

*Ant:* fear, cowardice, unmanliness

**VALID**

*Syn:* sound, authentic, genuine, reliable

*Ant:* fallacious, deceptive, dubious, uncertain

**VALIANT**

*Syn:* brave, gallant, courageous, chivalrous

*Ant:* fearful, afraid, coward, dastardly

**VAGRANT**

*Syn:* idle, roaming, wanderer, roving

*Ant:* steady, settled, stationary, stable

**W****WAIVE**

*Syn:* relinquish, remove, abjure, renounce

*Ant:* impose, clamp, grasp, retain

**WARY**

*Syn:* cautious, circumspect, prudent, chary

*Ant:* heedless, negligent, impulsive, reckless

**WICKED**

*Syn:* immoral, dissolute, vicious, nefarious

*Ant:* virtuous, ethical, innocent, noble

**WITHHOLD**

*Syn:* reserve, restrain, hamper, retard

*Ant:* emancipate, liberate, dispense, release

**WANE**

*Syn:* decline, dwindle, decrease, deteriorate

*Ant:* ameliorate, rise, revive, wax

**WAYWARD**

*Syn:* volatile, capricious, unstable, inconstant

*Ant:* stable, determined, resolute, straight

**WILT**

*Syn:* wither, perish, deteriorate, smother

*Ant:* revive, bloom, refresh, restore

**WIELD**

*Syn:* use, exercise, exert, employ

*Ant:* abstain, avoid, forbear, forgo

**WAN**

*Syn:* pale, fade, discolour, feeble

*Ant:* bright, healthy, colourful, gaudy

**WILFUL**

*Syn:* stubborn, obstinate, obdurate, inexorable

*Ant:* amenable, irresolute, pliable, yielding

**Y****YOKE**

*Syn:* connect, harness, hitch, shackle

*Ant:* liberate, release, detach, disconnect

**YIELD**

*Syn:* surrender, abdicate, succumb, consent

*Ant:* resist, protest, prohibit, forbid

**YELL**

*Syn:* shout, shriek, exclaim, gesticulate

*Ant:* suppress, whisper, muffled, muted

**YEARN**

*Syn:* languish, crave, require, pine

*Ant:* content, unwanted, satisfied, gratified

**YAWN**

*Syn:* gape, sleepy, slumber, doze

*Ant:* close, active, brisk, wakeful

**Z**

**ZIGZAG**

*Syn:* oblique, crooked, winding, wayward

*Ant:* straight, even, direct, unbent

**ZEST**

*Syn:* delight, enthusiasm, various, energetic

*Ant:* disgust, passive, detriment, languid

**ZENITH**

*Syn:* summit, apex, maximum, pinnacle

*Ant:* nadir, base, bottom, floor

**ZEALOT**

*Syn:* fanatic, partisan, bigot, chauvinist

*Ant:* tolerant, liberal, blasphemy, impious

**ZEAL**

*Syn:* eagerness, fervour, enthusiasm, ardour

*Ant:* apathy, lethargy, indifference, reluctant

# Revision Exercises

(Based on Synonyms)

**Directions** In the following sentences a word or phrase is written in bold. For each bold part four words/phrases are listed below each sentence. Choose the word nearest in meaning to bold part.

## Exercise A

- The inspector was a **vigilant** young man.  
(a) smart (b) watchful  
(c) ambitious (d) intelligent
- Few teachers have been spared the problem of an **obstreperous** pupil in the class.  
(a) awkward (b) lazy  
(c) unruly (d) sullen
- Ritu asked Rashmi not to **meddle** in her affairs.  
(a) intercede (b) impose  
(c) cross (d) interfere
- Incensed** by his rude behaviour the manager suspended the work.  
(a) enthused (b) enraged  
(c) inflamed (d) excited
- The Collector has yet not **relinquished** his charge.  
(a) give up (b) abdicate  
(c) leave (d) renounce
- Her views are not in **consonance** with her husband's.  
(a) in disagreement (b) in conflict  
(c) in agreement (d) contradictory
- The maidservant left the police station **contrite**.  
(a) penitent (b) sore  
(c) angry (d) remorseless
- Being a sociable bird she was **conspicuous** by her absence in the club last evening.  
(a) important (b) prominent  
(c) ignorant (d) apparent
- The communal politics has done **imponderable** loss to the unity of India.  
(a) incalculable (b) invaluable  
(c) irreparable (d) invulnerable
- Furtive** glances were exchanged between the lovers at the feast.  
(a) unknown (b) secret  
(c) unsuspecting (d) clandestine
- The early monsoon have brought **respite** to the people.  
(a) despite (b) inspite of  
(c) interval of relief (d) rest

**Exercise B**

- The newspapers are **clamouring** against the injustice to the landless labourers.  
(a) protesting (b) noising  
(c) complaining (d) demonstrating
- Honest officers find it difficult to **attune** themselves to corrupt bureaucracy.  
(a) tune (b) adapt  
(c) harmony (d) accusation
- The five day week in Government Offices is bound to benefit the **jaded** office goers.  
(a) refreshed (b) routined  
(c) fatigued (d) vigorous
- The resignation of the Chief Minister is **intriguing**.  
(a) curious (b) interesting  
(c) secret (d) diplomatic
- There was no **ostensible** reason for her being angry at her husband's remarks.  
(a) hidden (b) covert  
(c) apparent (d) secret
- She **upbraided** the little girl who got frightened.  
(a) make tails (b) make up  
(c) scolded (d) handed
- She is not seen even smiling these days; she is rather **pensive**.  
(a) sad (b) thoughtful  
(c) gloomy (d) black
- What meaning have you **drawn** from her tongue in cheek remarks.  
(a) deduced (b) induced  
(c) conduced (d) deduct
- There is a **tacit** agreement between the super powers not to engage themselves in armed conflict.  
(a) unspoken (b) speechless  
(c) silent (d) introvert
- Mohinder Amarnath had **penchant** for hook shots.  
(a) art (b) inclination  
(c) strength (d) desire
- On account of the **paucity** of the funds plan remained incomplete  
(a) lack (b) scarcity  
(c) abundance (d) excess

**Exercise C**

- The flat has been **refurbished** recently.  
(a) white-washed (b) painted  
(c) renovated (d) repaired
- Even the most careful researcher cannot predict the possible future **ramifications** of his findings.  
(a) uses (b) developments  
(c) consequences (d) conclusions

3. Graduation day is **momentous** day for most students. [CDS 2002]  
 (a) memorable (b) melancholy  
 (c) important (d) hectic
4. **Forthrightness** in speech may not always be a desirable quality.  
 (a) outspokenness (b) obliqueness  
 (c) mendacity (d) equivocation
5. Such conduct deserves **reprimand**.  
 (a) praise (b) punishment  
 (c) rebuke (d) reward
6. She is very **discreet**.  
 (a) mannered (b) mild  
 (c) proud (d) prudent
7. After he came back from his evening walk, he felt **famished**.  
 (a) exhausted (b) hungry  
 (c) peevish (d) relaxed
8. She purchased **gimcrack** ornaments from the market.  
 (a) expensive (b) worthless  
 (c) rare (d) smuggled
9. He is a good looking but **insipid** young man. [NDA 2002]  
 (a) arrogant (b) unscrupulous  
 (c) sick (d) lacking in spirit
10. He had **insidiously** wormed his way into her affections.  
 (a) in a polite manner (b) in a secret manner  
 (c) in ugly way (d) in a forceful manner
11. The **acerbic** remarks of the manager were unwarranted.  
 (a) bitter (b) furious  
 (c) arrogant (d) childish
12. It was an **astute** move to sell the property at that stage. [CDS 2003]  
 (a) shrewd (b) unwise  
 (c) dishonest (d) inexplicable
13. The five experiments gave **disparate** results.  
 (a) similar (b) encouraging  
 (c) strange (d) different
14. The chairman conducted the meeting with **aplomb**.  
 (a) arrogance (b) annoyance  
 (c) poise (d) authority

## Exercise D

1. The coach followed a **devious** course to its destination.  
 (a) difficult (b) short-cut  
 (c) straight (d) winding
2. It would be **impertinent** to suggest that he was generally wrong.  
 (a) fair (b) correct  
 (c) rude (d) impartial

3. Our fates seemed **intertwined**.  
(a) complicated (b) destined  
(c) complex (d) linked
4. He displayed a distinct tendency to **long-winded** speeches when asked how he was.  
(a) boring (b) repetitive  
(c) circumlocutory (d) hyperbolic
5. This library was built with donations from the **munificent** citizens of the city.  
(a) well-to-do (b) generous  
(c) respectable (d) learned
6. Some satirists are known for their **trenchant** style.  
(a) sharp (b) critical  
(c) aggressive (d) incisive
7. The navy gave **tactical** support to the marines.  
(a) sensitive (b) strategic  
(c) expedient (d) expert
8. Businessmen who lack **acumen** cannot be expected to be very successful.  
(a) smartness (b) sharpness  
(c) keenness (d) cleverness
9. We are happy that the two countries are trying to find an **amicable** solution to their disputes. **[CDS 2000]**  
(a) a just (b) an appropriate  
(c) a durable (d) a friendly
10. It is **exasperating** to listen to the suggestions of the minister about the educational reforms of which he knows nothing.  
(a) irritating (b) amusing  
(c) disappointing (d) boring
11. The **disgruntled** members of a party are a constant source of tension to the party leader.  
(a) disloyal (b) dishonest  
(c) discontented (d) dispirited
12. He is so **garrulous** that all sober persons avoid his company.  
(a) quarrelsome (b) talkative  
(c) domineering (d) foolish
13. **Temperance** in eating is conducive to health.  
(a) discipline (b) caution  
(c) moderation (d) care

## Exercise E

1. He could rise to this stature because of his **invincible** courage.  
(a) inviolable (b) unmanageable  
(c) unbeatable (d) immeasurable
2. Though he is a teacher, his speech lacks **distinctness**.  
(a) clarity (b) precision  
(c) distinction (d) fluency
3. He tried to **alleviate** the sufferings of his neighbours.  
(a) abate (b) dissipate  
(c) remove (d) relieve

4. Her evidence totally **refuted** the charges.  
 (a) refused (b) denied  
 (c) disproved (d) repelled
5. One's **remonstrance** against social ills has to be consistent to be fruitful.  
 (a) outrage (b) demonstration  
 (c) protest (d) criticism

## Exercise F

**Directions** Each of the following questions containing main word followed by four words. Select the word that is most similar in meaning.

1. Solitude [CDS 2004]  
 (a) musical composition (b) aloneness  
 (c) true statement (d) single mindedness
2. Propitious  
 (a) favourable (b) clean  
 (c) nearby (d) patriotic
3. Rectitude  
 (a) duplication (b) integrity  
 (c) rectification (d) recovery
4. Commiseration [PF Commissioner 2004]  
 (a) commission (b) vastness  
 (c) sympathy (d) commendation
5. Slipshod  
 (a) vulgar (b) careless  
 (c) common place (d) retaliatory
6. Mosquerade  
 (a) to provide support (b) to go in disguise  
 (c) to mesmerise (d) marathon race
7. Preposterous [NDA 2004]  
 (a) careful (b) casual  
 (c) absurd (d) deterrent
8. Parsimonious  
 (a) thrifty (b) cunning  
 (c) extravagant (d) upright
9. Conundrum [SCRA 2005]  
 (a) riddle (b) dampness  
 (c) impudence (d) servility
10. Prosaic  
 (a) uninspiring (b) poetic  
 (c) exotic (d) imaginative
11. Surmount [Tax Assistant 2005]  
 (a) overcome (b) discount  
 (c) surround (d) capture
12. Itinerant  
 (a) frequent use of 'it' (b) anything involving repetition  
 (c) plan for proposed journey (d) travelling from place to place

13. Ostentatious  
(a) pomp (b) pretence  
(c) abundance (d) plenty
14. Flutter  
(a) soar (b) agitate  
(c) change (d) float
15. Estranged [Investigator 2005]  
(a) jealous (b) angry  
(c) separated (d) suspicious
16. Restive  
(a) rested (b) restless  
(c) limited (d) limitless
17. Premonition  
(a) insight (b) uncertainty  
(c) forewarning (d) scope
18. Derogatory  
(a) infurious (b) shattering  
(c) disparaging (d) destructive
19. Decrepitude [Tax Assistant 2006]  
(a) disease (b) coolness  
(c) crowd (d) feebleness
20. Craven [NDA 2006]  
(a) greedy (b) cowardly  
(c) flattering (d) restless
21. Vicarious  
(a) ambitious (b) not experienced personally  
(c) nostalgic (d) vindictive
22. Debonair  
(a) bedridden (b) candid  
(c) elegant (d) thrifty
23. Browbeat  
(a) to bully (b) to chase  
(c) to give a hint (d) to revive
24. Extol [CDS 2006]  
(a) steal (b) praise  
(c) exterior (d) excess
25. Celerity  
(a) quickness (b) bachelorhood  
(c) lineage (d) backwardness
26. Virtuoso  
(a) futuristic (b) stubborn  
(c) prompt (d) exceptionally skilled
27. Contraption  
(a) device (b) valley  
(c) forest (d) window

- 28. Countervailing** **[CDS 2007]**  
 (a) compensating (b) argumentative  
 (c) crying (d) complaining
- 29. Ferret**  
 (a) steal (b) search  
 (c) forget (d) fight
- 30. Evince**  
 (a) to learn (b) to exhibit  
 (c) to resist (d) to become infirm
- 31. Reprisal**  
 (a) loneliness (b) retaliation  
 (c) remuneration (d) pleasure
- 32. Pecuniary**  
 (a) pertaining to money (b) pertaining to politics  
 (c) pertaining to history (d) pertaining to geography
- 33. Congregation**  
 (a) concentration (b) meeting  
 (c) discussion (d) judgement
- 34. Counterfeit** **[SSC 2009]**  
 (a) constant (b) unknown  
 (c) biased (d) fake
- 35. Ruse**  
 (a) break (b) strategem  
 (c) maudlin (d) guru
- 36. Fetid**  
 (a) comical (b) ornament  
 (c) stinking (d) regular
- 37. Admonish**  
 (a) warn (b) escape  
 (c) wroship (d) distribute warm
- 38. Impost**  
 (a) fertilizer (b) coarse  
 (c) dispatch (d) tax
- 39. Forgo**  
 (a) renounce (b) disown  
 (c) leave (d) accumulate
- 40. Indictment**  
 (a) arraignment (b) entrapment  
 (c) indoctrination (d) inducement
- 41. Abstemious**  
 (a) resistant (b) temperate  
 (c) superstitions (d) careful
- 42. Probity**  
 (a) courtesy (b) promptness  
 (c) efficiency (d) uprightness

**Exercise G**

**Directions** *In these questions, choose the word similar in meaning to the word given.*

- |                        |                     |                       |
|------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>1. Scorn</b>        |                     | <b>[SSC CPO 2014]</b> |
| (a) concise            | (b) despise         |                       |
| (c) bias               | (d) fierce          |                       |
| <b>2. Cantankerous</b> |                     | <b>[SSC CGL 2014]</b> |
| (a) noisy              | (b) quarrelsome     |                       |
| (c) rash               | (d) disrespectful   |                       |
| <b>3. Aberration</b>   |                     | <b>[SSC CGL 2013]</b> |
| (a) justification      | (b) intensification |                       |
| (c) deviation          | (d) rationality     |                       |
| <b>4. Admonition</b>   |                     | <b>[SSC LDC 2013]</b> |
| (a) reason             | (b) warning         |                       |
| (c) admission          | (d) hindrance       |                       |
| <b>5. Onus</b>         |                     | <b>[SSC CGL 2010]</b> |
| (a) inclination        | (b) responsibility  |                       |
| (c) prudence           | (d) antipathy       |                       |
| <b>6. Relish</b>       |                     | <b>[SSC CPO 2011]</b> |
| (a) realise            | (b) taste           |                       |
| (c) enjoy              | (d) reveal          |                       |
| <b>7. Poignant</b>     |                     | <b>[SSC CGL 2010]</b> |
| (a) showy              | (b) sad             |                       |
| (c) silly              | (d) snobbish        |                       |
| <b>8. Reverie</b>      |                     | <b>[SSC DEO 2008]</b> |
| (a) determination      | (b) day dream       |                       |
| (c) reality            | (d) realisation     |                       |
| <b>9. Prognosis</b>    |                     |                       |
| (a) diagnosis          | (b) forecast        |                       |
| (c) preface            | (d) identity        |                       |
| <b>10. Repartee</b>    |                     |                       |
| (a) refuse             | (b) celebrate       |                       |
| (c) response           | (d) question        |                       |
| <b>11. Exhort</b>      |                     |                       |
| (a) recommend          | (b) coax            |                       |
| (c) pressure           | (d) push            |                       |
| <b>12. Vindictive</b>  |                     |                       |
| (a) imaginative        | (b) accusative      |                       |
| (c) spiteful           | (d) aggressive      |                       |
| <b>13. Inclement</b>   |                     |                       |
| (a) selfish            | (b) active          |                       |
| (c) unfavourable       | (d) inactive        |                       |
| <b>14. Enigma</b>      |                     |                       |
| (a) truth              | (b) fear            |                       |
| (c) difficulty         | (d) puzzle          |                       |

15. Foreboding [SSC SO 2006, SI 2006, DEO 2011]  
 (a) alarm (b) forecast  
 (c) failure (d) foresight
16. Emulate [SSC Steno 2011]  
 (a) echo (b) mimic  
 (c) imitate (d) simulate
17. Sordid  
 (a) sore (b) unpleasant  
 (c) splendid (d) dissatisfied
18. Mellow  
 (a) melodious (b) dramatic  
 (c) genial (d) fruity
19. Atrocity [SSC DEO 2011]  
 (a) envy (b) violence  
 (c) jealousy (d) absurdity
20. Vacillate  
 (a) waver (b) never  
 (c) quiver (d) queer

## Exercise H

**Directions** Choose the word which is most nearly the same in meaning of the given word.

[SSC CGL 2011]

1. Indict  
 (a) implicate (b) elude  
 (c) charge (d) manifest
2. Deluge  
 (a) confusion (b) deception  
 (c) flood (d) weapon
3. Preponderance  
 (a) pre-eminence (b) domineering  
 (c) domineering (d) preoccupation

**Directions** Out of the four alternatives, choose the one which best expresses the meaning of the given word.

4. Intrepid  
 (a) hesitant (b) extrovert  
 (c) fearless (d) rash
5. Prodigal  
 (a) exclusive (b) productive  
 (c) lavish (d) carefree
6. Perspicuous  
 (a) relevant (b) precise  
 (c) brief (d) clear

**Directions** Each of following items consists of a sentence followed by four words of group of words. Select the synonym of the word (occurring in the sentence in bold letters) as per the context. [NDA 2011]

7. The song had a **soporific** effect on the child.  
(a) soothing (b) terrific  
(c) supreme (d) sleep-inducing
8. His **allegiance** to the party was suspect from the very beginning.  
(a) servility (b) obedience  
(c) loyalty (d) passivity
9. Sympathetic criticism has a **salutary** effect.  
(a) premature (b) terrible  
(c) disastrous (d) beneficial
10. His bad behaviour **evoked** punishment.  
(a) escaped (b) called for  
(c) produced (d) summoned
11. He was the court appointed lawyer for fifty-six **indigent** defendants.  
(a) Indian men (b) poor  
(c) guilty (d) untried .
12. The boy said that pain had **abated**.  
(a) reduced (b) vanished  
(c) increased (d) stabilised
13. He became known as an **implacable** for of fundamentalism.  
(a) relentless (b) pleasing  
(c) dangerous (d) couragesous
14. The queen was aware of the **insolent** behaviour of the lords.  
(a) violent (b) polite  
(c) insulting (d) frivolous

**Directions** Each item in this section consists of a word followed by four words or groups of words. Select the word or groups of words that is most similar in meaning . [CDS 2011]

15. Crass  
(a) casual (b) coarse  
(c) stupid (d) sterile
16. Cursory  
(a) little (b) quick  
(c) eager (d) tender
17. Envisaged  
(a) ensured (b) idealized  
(c) contemplated (d) created
18. Fickle  
(a) awkward (b) inconsistent  
(c) silly (d) ugly
19. Resentment  
(a) annoyance (b) anger  
(c) disagreement (d) dismissal

20. Obdurate  
 (a) angry (b) calm  
 (b) obsessed (d) adamant
21. Ostracise  
 (a) censure (b) sentence  
 (c) banish (d) berate
22. Imbecility  
 (a) stupidity (b) rusticity  
 (c) verbosity (d) incoherence
23. Collusion  
 (a) a conflict (b) a secret agreement  
 (c) a consultation (d) a misunderstanding

**Directions** Each item in this section consists of a word or a group of words followed by four words of group of words. Select the word or group of words that is most similar in meaning .

[CDS 2012]

24. Contradict  
 (a) request politely (b) deny emphatically  
 (c) talk abusively (d) contempt
25. Eradicate  
 (a) put up (b) remove  
 (c) soften (d) suppress
26. Adhere  
 (a) act reluctantly (b) give allegiance  
 (c) waver frequently (d) read promptly
27. Infer  
 (a) conclude (b) calculate  
 (c) debate (d) suggest
28. Explicit  
 (a) immediate (b) plainly stated  
 (c) marked (d) revealing the secret
29. Repress  
 (a) express (b) impress  
 (c) curb (d) confuse
30. Vindictive  
 (a) cruel (b) harsh  
 (c) revengeful (d) rude

**Directions** Each of the following items consists of a sentence followed by four words of group of words. Select the synonym of the word or words (occurring) in the sentence in bold letters) as per the context.

[NDA 2012]

31. **Momentous** change are taking place in the social and economic life of India.  
 (a) notorious (b) momentary  
 (c) official (d) enormous

32. She is pretty **insipid** young lady.  
(a) clever (b) lazy  
(c) dull (d) lean
33. She thought that **running** into her old friend was a stroke of fate.  
(a) meeting by chance (b) colliding  
(c) travelling with (d) quarrelling with
34. He was a **charismatic** leader.  
(a) exceptionally fascinating (b) particularly popular  
(c) compulsively pleasant (d) strangely haunting
35. He is an **indefatigable** worker.  
(a) tired (b) tireless  
(c) brave (d) skilful

**Directions** In these questions, out of the four alternatives choose the one which best expresses the meaning of the given word. [CGL 2012]

36. Camouflage  
(a) disguise (b) cover  
(c) demonstrate (d) fabric
37. Yearn  
(a) deny (c) confront  
(c) confront (d) crave
38. Pensive  
(a) reluctant (b) unhappy  
(c) contemplative (d) precise
39. Narcissism  
(a) unpleasant behaviour (b) self-condemnation  
(c) self-admiration (d) rude behaviour

**Directions** In this section, select the word or group of words that is most similar in meaning to the bold word or group of words in the given sentence. [CDS 2012]

40. The two **executioners** approached the tree with a red mark on its side.  
(a) executive engineers (b) explorers  
(c) experimenters (d) those who inflict capital punishment
41. He is very intelligent, but **ill-favoured** by nature.  
(a) unlucky (b) weak in health  
(c) short-tempered (d) ugly
42. People thronged to pay **homage** to the departed leader.  
(a) humility (b) tribute  
(c) obedience (d) allegiance
43. For better health we must **refrain** from smoking.  
(a) dissuade (b) desist  
(c) prevent (d) curb
44. The article was so well written that it **merited** careful study.  
(a) deserved (b) encouraged  
(c) prompted (d) supported

**Directions** In these questions, out of the four alternatives choose the one which best expresses the meaning of the given word. [SSC CGL 2012]

45. Gaol  
 (a) destination (b) garden  
 (c) jail (d) bird
46. Loathing  
 (a) warmth (b) affectation  
 (c) hatred (d) affection
47. Notion  
 (a) thought (b) fact  
 (c) truth (d) hypothesis
48. Vivacious  
 (a) poisonous (b) energetic  
 (c) tricky (d) slow

**Directions** In these questions, out of the four alternatives choose the one which best expresses the meaning of the given word. [SSC CGL 2012]

49. Forbearance  
 (a) relevance (b) deliverance  
 (c) patience (d) extravagance
50. Begueath  
 (a) surround (b) give  
 (c) disclose (d) scold
51. Nonchalant  
 (a) formal (b) imaginary  
 (c) casual (d) neutral
52. Annexure  
 (a) development (b) retirement  
 (c) commencement (d) attachment
53. Errand  
 (a) blunder (c) energy  
 (c) task (d) mistake

**Directions** Each of the following items consists of a sentence followed by four words or groups of words. Select the synonym of the word or words (occurring in the sentence in bold letters) as per the context. [NDA 2012]

54. The convict's **ingenuous** explanation brought tears in every eye.  
 (a) candid (b) secret  
 (c) insincere (d) consisten synonym
55. The **enormity** of the population problem is irksome.  
 (a) intensity (b) vastness  
 (c) cruelty (d) fragility
56. He **induces** human being to want things they don't want.  
 (a) influences (b) dictates  
 (c) persuades (d) appreciates

57. He is not **cut out** to be a teacher,  
(a) trained (b) suited  
(c) selected (d) guided
58. The Chief Minister **reprimanded** the officers for their methods of handling the public.  
(a) adulated (b) scolded severely  
(c) disapproved of (d) suspended

**Directions** Each of the following items consists of a word followed by four words or group of words. Select the word or group of words that is most similar in meaning. [CDS 2013]

59. Painstaking  
(a) feeling panic (b) thorough and rigorous  
(c) taking risk (d) painful and sorrowful
60. Substantial  
(a) delicate (b) graceful  
(c) sensational (d) significant
61. Indolent  
(a) cautious (b) lazy  
(c) unintelligent (d) stubborn
62. Vehemently  
(a) devoutly (b) serenely  
(c) hysterically (d) forcefully
63. Feigned  
(a) pretended (b) played  
(c) developed (d) failed
64. Penury  
(a) poverty (b) petty  
(c) phony (d) pathetic
65. Affectation  
(a) adoration (b) artificiality  
(c) appreciation (d) proficiency
66. Stifle  
(a) starve (b) smother  
(c) stumble (d) stagger
67. Stalemate  
(a) degeneration (b) exhaustion  
(c) deadlock (d) settlement
68. Forthright  
(a) honest and outspoken (b) serious and stubborn  
(c) strong and brave (d) willing and determined
69. Discreet  
(a) mature (b) clever  
(c) intelligent (d) prudent

70. Portend  
 (a) profess (b) portray  
 (c) think (d) foreshadow
71. Odium  
 (a) illness (b) hatred  
 (c) oddity (d) devious

**Directions** Each of the following items consists of a sentence followed by four words or group of words. Select the synonym of the word (occurring in the sentence in bold letters) as per the context. [NDA 2013]

72. A wise man puts past **rancour** behind and moves ahead  
 (a) dislike (b) hatred  
 (c) division (d) criticism
73. We saw a **scintillating** fireworks display-  
 (a) fascinating (b) unforgettable  
 (c) beautiful (d) sparkling
74. The **pact** has been in effect for twenty years.  
 (a) treaty (b) monarchy  
 (c) lease (d) trend
75. He had a reputation of being a **prudent** businessman.  
 (a) skilful (b) wealthy  
 (c) careful (d) dishonest
76. The violence erupted because of the **zealot**.  
 (a) enthusiastic (b) brave  
 (c) timid (d) fanatic

**Directions** Each of the following items consists of one sentence followed by four words or groups of words. Select the synonym of the word (occurring in the sentence in bold letters) as per the context. [NDA 2013]

77. Europe, America and Japan have taken to the field of science with **singular** vigour and activity.  
 (a) peculiar (b) outstanding  
 (c) familiar (d) single
78. As I look around I see the crumbling ruins of a proud civilization strewn like a vast heap of **futility**.  
 (a) irrelevance (b) absurdity  
 (c) pointlessness (d) downtrodden
79. Mark Antony's **eulogy** of Caesar is finely recorded by Shakespeare in his play.  
 (a) prayer (b) honour  
 (c) praise (d) denunciation
80. Your **intervention** was required.  
 (a) interference (b) interruption  
 (c) disturbance (d) connection
81. It is difficult to **discern** the sample on the slide without adjusting the microscope.  
 (a) discard (b) arrange  
 (c) determine (d) debate

**Directions** *In the following questions, out of the four alternatives, choose the one which best expresses the meaning of the given word.* [SSC CGL 2013]

82. Tribulation  
(a) palpitation (b) suffering  
(c) weakness (d) stimulation
83. The Prime Minister goes on the ramparts of the Red Fort to hoist the National flag.  
(a) rompway (b) staircase  
(c) parapet (d) scaffold

**Directions** *In the following questions, you find a number of sentences, parts of which are bold . For each bold part, four words/phrases are listed below. Choose the word/phrase nearest in meaning to the bold part.* [CDS 2014]

84. She is a woman of **sterling** qualities.  
(a) interesting (b) genuine  
(c) irritating (d) exciting
85. Although the boys in his class were naughty, he never resorted to **corporal** punishment.  
(a) harsh (b) physical  
(c) unjust (d) general
86. She adjusted quite well with her husband's **idiosyncrasies**.  
(a) peculiar habits (b) bad habits  
(c) weaknesses (d) stupid manners
87. Deputy Inspector General made a **perfunctory** inspection of the police station.  
(a) thorough and complete  
(b) superficial  
(c) done as a routine but without interest  
(d) intensive
88. A scientist generally carries out his investigations **empirically**.  
(a) by intuitively (b) by verbally  
(c) by through written communication (d) by observation and experiment
89. I cannot believe in the **veracity** of his statement.  
(a) truth (b) usefulness  
(c) sincerity (d) falsity

**Directions** *In each of these items a word or a phrase has been bold followed by words or phrases listed (a), (b), (c) and (d). Choose the most appropriate word/phrase closest in meaning to the bold word or phrase.* [CDS 2013]

90. He **disdained** to notice the insult,  
(a) was very proud (b) refused  
(c) was unhappy (d) was too reluctant
91. He gave an **evocative** rendering of his recent poems.  
(a) thrilling (b) enchanting  
(c) emotional (d) incantatory
92. **Expeditious** steps should be taken to complete the work in two weeks.  
(a) unmerciful and punitive (b) strict and forceful  
(c) disciplinary (d) prompt and efficient

93. Why did you make that **flippant** remark?  
(a) highly critical (b) not showing deserved respect  
(c) casual (d) indifferent
94. That is not an occasion to make an **impromptu** speech,  
(a) without preparation (b) thoughtless  
(c) improper (d) long and boring
95. There is not a single word that is **redundant** in the report.  
(a) unimportant (b) not needed  
(c) bombastic (d) flowery
96. The country's economy is beginning to **look up** now.  
(a) look clear (b) go down  
(c) remain static (d) improve
97. It needs an expert to **decipher** the secret message sent to the Army Officers during war time.  
(a) swindle (b) decode  
(c) make up (d) defy
98. Bana in Sanskrit, Lyly in English and Prasad in Hindi are celebrated for their **florid** style.  
(a) ornate (b) rich  
(c) refined (d) rambling
99. The eyewitness testimony was **incontrovertible**.  
(a) disputable (b) debatable  
(c) unacceptable (d) unquestionable

# Revision Exercises

(Based on Antonyms)

**Directions** The following sentences consist of a word or a phrase which is written in **bold letters**. Each of them is followed by four words or phrases. Select the word or the phrase which is closest to the opposite in meaning of the **bold word or phrase**.

## Exercise A

1. He was charged with **abetting** the murder of an innocent child.  
(a) baffle (b) instigate  
(c) promote (d) support
2. The visit of the Vice Chancellor has been **deferred** indefinitely.  
(a) expedited (b) dissolved  
(c) postponed (d) put off
3. How dare you **desecrate** an idol of this temple.  
(a) defile (b) pollute  
(c) deify (d) impious
4. There exists **rancour** between the two brothers.  
(a) animosity (b) harmony  
(c) devotion (d) enmity
5. Born in **squalid** surroundings of the slums she rose to stardom overnight.  
(a) dirty (b) clean  
(c) disorderly (d) mean
6. Mrs Nisha made **fervent** appeal to the members of the club to maintain unity.  
(a) active (b) impassive  
(c) cold (d) passionate

## Exercise B

1. You are advised to show **clemency** to the defeated enemy.  
(a) callousness (b) mercy  
(c) leniency (d) kindness
2. The Board of Directors showered **encomium** on the Chairman for his liberal policies.  
(a) denunciation (b) generosity  
(c) tribute (d) praise
3. A lady of a few words she is given to **laconic** answers.  
(a) copious (b) lingering  
(c) terse (d) brief
4. A character without a **blemish** is a virtue of a leader.  
(a) stigma (b) adornment  
(c) strength (d) blot

5. There was **dismal** atmosphere in the dressing room of the defeated team.  
 (a) cheerful (b) dreadful  
 (c) gloomy (d) jovial
6. **Modesty** is a virtue but it must not be allowed to be exploited.  
 (a) reserve (b) boldness  
 (c) mildness (d) humility
7. At his success in the examination he felt **elated**.  
 (a) exultant (b) dejected  
 (c) resting (d) jubilant
8. The minister was accused of indulging in **nepotism**.  
 (a) impartiality (b) hatred  
 (c) condemnation (d) indifference

## Exercise ©

1. The facts of the case were **obscured** by the speech of the defence counsel. [IES 2000]  
 (a) reflected (b) illustrated  
 (c) clarified (d) exhibited
2. He glanced through the letter **perfunctorily**.  
 (a) nicely (b) ceremoniously  
 (c) carefully (d) particularly
3. It is not difficult to take note of his **immaculate** style of writing.  
 (a) stained (b) uneven  
 (c) impure (d) flawed
4. The research showed that the drug has **pernicious** effect on the health of patients. [IES 2001]  
 (a) fair (b) advantageous  
 (c) beneficial (d) satisfactory
5. I am in a rather **precarious** position in my place of work.  
 (a) comfortable (b) senior  
 (c) privileged (d) secure
6. There are no permanent **adversaries** in politics.  
 (a) associates (b) allies  
 (c) collaborators (d) partners
7. He produced **cogent** reasons for the change of policy.  
 (a) flimsy (b) unconvincing  
 (c) improper (d) simple
8. The Prime Minister's radio broadcast **glvanized** the people's spirit.  
 (a) frightened (b) pacified  
 (c) dampened (d) distracted

**Exercise D**

1. The young business executive was very **perspicacious**. [CDS 2002]  
(a) banal (b) clever  
(c) humble (d) unreliable
2. There are many anecdotes about his sister who is an **imperious** personality.  
(a) characterless (b) pious  
(c) arrogant (d) submissive
3. Though aware of his crimes, he remained **impenitent** throughout.  
(a) repentant (b) sorrowful  
(c) hot-headed (d) pertinent
4. In facing adverse situations, he was very **stoical**.  
(a) tactless (b) flinching  
(c) awkward (d) assured
5. They made a **profligate** use of scarce resources.  
(a) proper (b) extravagant  
(c) effective (d) thrifty
6. The consultant analysed the proposal carefully before he decided to **jettison** it.  
(a) abandon (b) strengthen  
(c) accept (d) modify
7. The politician was **flummoxed** by the questions put to him.  
(a) comfortable (b) annoyed  
(c) delighted (d) disconcerted
8. Throughout the evening, Rahul looked very **doleful**. [CDS 2003]  
(a) aggressive (b) cheerful  
(c) tired (d) involved
9. He is showing signs of **senility**.  
(a) virility (b) laziness  
(c) maturity (d) exhaustion
10. There is not a trace of **vanity** in her behaviour.  
(a) humility (b) selflessness  
(c) modesty (d) dignity
11. They approached the stranger **warily**.  
(a) suspiciously (b) cautiously  
(c) carefully (d) carelessly
12. The forwards of their football team made **sporadic** raids into the opponent's territory.  
(a) rare (b) frequent  
(c) sharp (d) co-ordinated
13. She was **overstrung** before the performance.  
(a) excited (b) calm  
(c) enthusiastic (d) cheerful
14. The booking-clerk looked very **grumpy**.  
(a) surly (b) pleasant  
(c) efficient (d) honest
15. She paid special attention to those women who had **succumbed** to adversity.  
(a) surrendered (b) given up  
(c) overcome (d) demanded

### Exercise E

- Her dress was too **slovenly** for that kind of interview.  
 (a) gaudy (b) tidy  
 (c) formal (d) old fashioned
- I was deeply affected by his **urbane** behaviour.  
 (a) rural (b) indifferent  
 (c) rude (d) unsympathetic
- The judge thought that the offence was **deliberate**. [CDS 2000]  
 (a) negligible (b) casual  
 (c) unintentional (d) legitimate
- The state government for its part can identify **vulnerable** villages where these forces can be stationed.  
 (a) important (b) famous  
 (c) remote (d) invincible
- Some of the needs of a modern man are surely **dispensable**.  
 (a) desirable (b) acceptable  
 (c) relevant (d) essential
- Some democratic countries believe in racial **segregation**.  
 (a) subordination (b) integration  
 (c) inferiority (d) domination
- The task assigned to him was **arduous**.  
 (a) absorbing (b) good  
 (c) plain (d) easy
- His **magnanimous** gesture came to his employees as a surprise.  
 (a) small (b) cruel  
 (c) thoughtless (d) mean

### Exercise F

**Directions** Each of the following main words are followed by four words. Select the word that is furthest (opposite) in meaning to the main word.

- Forbearance  
 (a) patience (b) self-control  
 (c) intolerance (d) preference
- Paltry  
 (a) obsolete (b) cautious  
 (c) random (d) plentiful
- Propensity  
 (a) disinclination (b) forecast  
 (c) stagnation (d) restlessness
- Encomium [SCRA 2005]  
 (a) meagre (b) unethical  
 (c) diffidence (d) hypercriticism

5. Chimerical  
 (a) fearful (b) breathtaking  
 (c) serene (d) practical idea
6. Petulant  
 (a) fearless (b) scrupulous  
 (c) industrious (d) calm
7. Laconic  
 (a) uncivilised (b) talkative  
 (c) erudite (d) livid
8. Exodus [CAGA 2005]  
 (a) influx (b) return  
 (c) home coming (d) restoration
9. Affluence [Tax Assistant 2005]  
 (a) poverty (b) misery  
 (c) stagnation (d) neglect
10. Agony  
 (a) pleasure (b) laughter  
 (c) bliss (d) ecstasy
11. Mournful  
 (a) playful (b) joyous  
 (c) laughable (d) humorous
12. Timorous [Investigator 2005]  
 (a) trembling (b) cowardly  
 (c) bright (d) bold
13. Sublime  
 (a) amusing (b) ludicrous  
 (c) hilarious (d) mean
14. Demented  
 (a) sensible (b) sensitive  
 (c) sensual (d) inordinate
15. Cumbersome [Tax Assistant 2006]  
 (a) heavy (b) convenient  
 (c) smooth (d) automatic
16. Arid  
 (a) cloudy (b) juicy  
 (c) marshy (d) wet
17. Senile [NDA 2006]  
 (a) suspicious (b) mentally alert  
 (c) corrupt (d) affluent
18. Blithesome  
 (a) graceful (b) sullen  
 (c) adventurous (d) mammoth
19. Consanguine  
 (a) of different kind (b) invisible  
 (c) urbane (d) untenanted

20. Redoubtable  
 (a) truthful (b) crafty  
 (c) widely travelled (d) ordinary
21. Inordinate  
 (a) distant (b) facile  
 (c) moderate (d) attractive
22. Modicum [CDS 2006]  
 (a) surfeit (b) decent  
 (c) adulation (d) modern
23. Salubrious  
 (a) perfect (b) anonymous  
 (c) clean (d) unwholesome
24. Choleric  
 (a) affluent (b) brave  
 (c) pleasant (d) tired
25. Spasmodic  
 (a) ill-humoured (b) ancient  
 (c) regular (d) tireless
26. Puerile  
 (a) inquisitive (b) matured  
 (c) impure (d) original
27. Excruciating  
 (a) mild (b) noisy  
 (c) sophisticating (d) modern
28. Suppress  
 (a) stirup (b) rouse  
 (c) urge (d) incite
29. Idiosyncrasy  
 (a) insanity (b) sanity  
 (c) generality (d) signularity
30. Sobriety  
 (a) moderation (b) drunkenness  
 (c) dizziness (d) stupidity
31. Comply [SSC 2009]  
 (a) challenge (b) complain  
 (c) conform (d) compete
32. Amnesty  
 (a) loyalty (b) punishment  
 (c) depth (d) dearth
33. Retreat  
 (a) heaven (b) shelter  
 (c) advance (d) egress
34. Philistine [SSC Graduate 2010]  
 (a) cultured (b) libertine  
 (c) sober (d) educated

35. Laceration  
 (a) convalescence (b) recuperation  
 (c) healing (d) palpitation
36. Denigrate  
 (a) belittle (b) believe  
 (c) doubt (d) praise

## Exercise G

**Directions** Choose the word opposite in meaning to the word given.

1. Subservient [SSC CGL 2014]  
 (a) eligible (b) inferior  
 (c) superior (d) powerful
2. Redundant [SSC CPO 2011]  
 (a) repentant (b) surplus  
 (c) singular (d) required
3. Boisterous  
 (a) serenity (b) calm  
 (c) cheerful (d) courageous
4. Substantial  
 (a) flimsy (b) hefty  
 (c) actual (d) excess
5. Dwindle [SSC CGL 2013]  
 (a) decrease (b) diminish  
 (c) shrink (d) increase
6. Relinquish [SSC CGL 2013]  
 (a) vanish (b) quench  
 (c) relish (d) continue
7. Insipid  
 (a) colourless (b) dull  
 (c) tasty (d) colourful

**Directions** Choose the word opposite in meaning to the word given.

[SSC CGL 2012]

8. Foment  
 (a) repulse (b) cease  
 (c) control (d) quell
9. Tardy  
 (a) prompt (b) gradual  
 (c) late (d) quick
10. Susceptible  
 (a) incredible (b) immune  
 (c) predictable (d) unpredictable
11. Cessation  
 (a) commencement (b) renewal  
 (c) ongoing (d) interruption

12. Procrastinate  
 (a) experiment (b) expedite  
 (c) exclude (d) propagate
13. Insolent  
 (a) submissive (b) arrogant  
 (c) overbearing (d) disdainful
14. Rancid  
 (a) putrified (b) delicious  
 (c) fresh (d) stale

**Directions** Choose the word opposite in meaning to the word given.

[SSC CGL 2012]

15. Impetuous  
 (a) agitated (b) impulsive  
 (c) cautious (d) reckless
16. Culmination  
 (a) completion (b) climax  
 (c) conclusion (d) beginning
17. Curb  
 (a) help (b) allow  
 (c) restrain (d) remove

**Directions** Choose the word opposite in meaning to the word given.

[SSC LDC 2011]

18. Chivalrous  
 (a) gallant (b) dastardly  
 (c) amorous (d) defiant
19. Erudite  
 (a) illiterate (b) crude  
 (c) boring (d) ignorant
20. Concur  
 (a) disagree (b) disappear  
 (c) disarrange (d) discourage
21. Veneration  
 (a) fear (b) reverence  
 (c) remorse (d) disrespect
22. Bleak  
 (a) dull (b) dark  
 (c) bright (d) exposure
23. Fastidious  
 (a) fussy (b) cooperative  
 (c) promising (d) adjustable
24. Stern  
 (a) lenient (b) crabby  
 (c) polite (d) unreasonable
25. Exonerate  
 (a) admit (b) release  
 (c) convict (d) reject

26. Invincible  
 (a) small (b) invisible  
 (c) vulnerable (d) reachable
27. Dishevelled  
 (a) composed (b) tidy  
 (c) confident (d) jovial
28. Impede  
 (a) obstruct (b) advance  
 (c) linger (d) guarantee

## Exercise H

**Directions** Choose the word which is most opposite in meaning of the word.

[IBPS Clerk 2011]

1. Feasible  
 (a) unattended (b) physical  
 (c) practical (d) unviable  
 (e) wasteful
2. Indifference  
 (a) interest (b) difference  
 (c) ignorance (d) rule-bound  
 (e) insignificance

**Directions** Each of the following items consists of a sentence followed by four words or group of words. Select the antonym of the word (occurring in the sentence in bold letters) as per the context.

[NDA 2011]

3. His assignments have taken him to many **exotic** locations around the world.  
 (a) wonderful (b) cosmopolitan  
 (c) irrelevant (d) common
4. He has given up his **vicious** habits.  
 (a) godly (b) virtuous  
 (c) sublime (d) friendly
5. The issue was raised **tangentially** in the negotiations.  
 (a) partly (b) forcefully  
 (c) candidly (d) fitfully
6. **Escalating** prices are causing hardship to the poor.  
 (a) fixed (b) fluctuating  
 (c) falling (d) reasonable
7. I have **malice** towards none.  
 (a) sympathy (b) goodwill  
 (c) friendship (d) attraction
8. The boy comes of an **affluent** family.  
 (a) poor (b) ordinary  
 (c) infamous (d) backward

**Directions** Each item in this section consists of a word followed by four words or groups of words. Select the word or groups of words that is most nearly opposite in meaning to the word given. [NDA 2011]

9. Probity  
(a) dishonesty (b) timidity  
(c) treachery (d) insincerity
10. Sporadic  
(a) surviving (b) sweeping  
(c) restrained (d) persistent
11. Implication  
(a) consideration (b) exoneration  
(c) conclusion (d) interpretation
12. Apposite  
(a) intemperate (b) inappropriate  
(c) indecent (d) incriminatory
13. Gregarious  
(a) indecent (b) unsociable  
(c) above reproach (d) unlovable
14. Chivalry  
(a) dishonesty (b) discourtesy  
(c) disobedience (d) disaffection
15. Dismal  
(a) bright (b) indifferent  
(c) fast (d) energetic
16. Sanguine temper  
(a) despairing nature (b) peaceful temperament  
(c) rude behaviour (d) selfish nature
17. Imperil  
(a) safeguard (b) construct  
(c) create (d) brighten
18. Ostensibly  
(a) elaborately (b) really  
(c) vaguely (d) sensibly
19. Consolidated  
(a) disjointed (b) broken  
(c) weakened (d) lost
20. Chronic  
(a) pathetic (b) characteristic  
(c) temporary (d) mild
21. Callous  
(a) considerate (b) indifferent  
(c) indulgent (d) generous
22. Vituperative  
(a) joyous (b) congratulatory  
(c) critical (d) virtuous

23. Smug  
(a) satisfied (b) dissatisfied  
(c) serious (d) delighted
24. Oppressive  
(a) gentle (b) kindly  
(c) smooth (d) orderly
25. Obscure  
(a) inconspicuous (b) veiled  
(c) clear (d) distinct
26. Clinch  
(a) lose (b) clasp  
(c) deal (d) seal
27. Enervate  
(a) decelerate (b) strengthen  
(c) push forward (d) aggravate
28. To put up with  
(a) to stay together (b) to talk politely  
(c) to dislike (d) to move along with
29. Established [IBPS Clerk 2011]  
(a) small (b) new  
(c) orthodox (d) modern  
(e) remaining

**Directions** Each item in this section consists of a word followed by four words or group of words. Select the word or group of words that is most opposite in meaning to the word given.

[CDS 2012]

30. Urbane  
(a) elegant (b) slow  
(c) crude (d) foolish
31. Spurious  
(a) genuine (b) authentic  
(c) real (d) artificial
32. Barren  
(a) wet (b) rich  
(c) fertile (d) exception
33. Conceal  
(a) reveal (b) show off  
(c) describe (d) explain
34. Graceful  
(a) awkward (b) ignorant  
(c) slow (d) disloyal

35. Provoke  
 (a) attract (b) convince  
 (c) gratify (d) pacify
36. Vague  
 (a) clear (b) pleasant  
 (c) profound (d) sufficient

**Directions** *In the following questions, each of the following items consists of a sentence followed by four words or group of words. Select the antonym of the word or words (occurring in the sentence in bold letters) as per the context.* [NDA 2012]

37. A small **altercation** between the children started off a riot.  
 (a) quarrel (b) friendly discussion  
 (c) contest (d) race
38. He agreed reluctantly to sign the form but looked ill **at ease**.  
 (a) embarrassed (b) comfortable  
 (c) welcome (d) easy
39. My mother has been working hard for the last two weeks and she feels **run down**.  
 (a) energetic (b) cold  
 (c) emotional (d) morbid
40. The three states signed a pact to have **collective** economy.  
 (a) distributive (b) disintegrative  
 (c) individual (d) divided
41. He was deeply hurt by her **curt** reply.  
 (a) abrupt (b) short  
 (c) expansive (d) rude
42. He was asked to **accelerate** the pace of work.  
 (a) slacken (b) control  
 (c) slacken (d) supervise
43. The child was **abducted** when he was going to school.  
 (a) seized (b) set free  
 (c) kidnapped (d) ransomed
44. The baby has a very **delicate** body.  
 (a) crude (b) strong  
 (c) hard (d) bony

**Directions** *In these questions, choose the word opposite in meaning to the given word.*

[CGL 2012]

45. Augment  
 (a) increase (b) defend  
 (c) supplement (d) decrease
46. Amateurish  
 (a) seasoned (b) trained  
 (c) skilled (d) professional
47. Ignominious  
 (a) valuable (b) desirable  
 (c) honourable (d) clever

48. Disparage  
(a) compliment (b) convince  
(c) comfort (d) connect
49. Garrulous  
(a) quiet (b) exaggerated  
(c) gruesome (d) creative

**Directions** *In this section, select the word or group of words that is most opposite in meaning to the bold word or group of words in the given sentence.* [CDS 2012]

50. Poisonous gases emitted from factories **contaminate** the air we breathe in.  
(a) sanctify (b) invigorate  
(c) taint (d) purify
51. **Reckless** driving causes accidents.  
(a) careful (b) slow  
(c) good (d) correct
52. Some of their customs are **barbarous**.  
(a) civilized (b) modem  
(c) polite (d) praiseworthy
53. They are going to **embark upon** a mountaineering expedition.  
(a) launch (b) analyse  
(c) break off (d) conclude
54. There has been a gradual **falling off** in the quality of articles manufactured locally.  
(a) shrinkage (b) erosion  
(c) improvement (d) descent
55. Though he had lost the battle, he decided not to **yield to** the enemy.  
(a) submit to (b) persuade  
(c) resist (d) seek terms with
56. It was a baseless rumour that **triggered** riots and arson at an unprecedented scale throughout the country.  
(a) choked (b) tapered off  
(c) diluted (d) ignited
57. The old man **manifested** his greed at the sight of a huge amount of money.  
(a) displayed (b) concealed  
(c) suppressed (d) marked
58. The fallen trees **blocked** our passage freedom from the wood.  
(a) facilitated (b) started  
(c) checked (d) promoted
59. He **fell foul of me** when I asked him to apologise to his teacher.  
(a) quarrelled with me (b) attacked me  
(c) made friends with me (d) showed appreciation for me
60. He wanted to **inaugurate** the project right on schedule.  
(a) terminate (b) inculcate  
(c) facilitate (d) ameliorate
61. They decided to **embellish** the dress with imported ribbons.  
(a) dishonour (b) demolish  
(c) spoil (d) suffice

**Directions** In these questions, choose the word opposite in meaning to the given word.

[CGL 2012]

62. Fortright  
 (a) blunt (b) tricky  
 (c) candid (d) plainspoken
63. Antagonism  
 (a) cordiality (b) animosity  
 (c) hostility (d) enmity
64. Vanity  
 (a) humanity (b) humility  
 (c) pretension (d) arrogance

**Directions** In these questions, choose the word opposite in meaning to the given word.

65. Niggard  
 (a) miserly (b) avaricious  
 (c) extravagant (d) generous
66. Amenable  
 (a) unwilling (b) acquiescent  
 (c) distrustful (d) inattentive
67. Reproof  
 (a) appropriation (b) approbation  
 (c) apposition (d) condemnation
68. Conspicuous  
 (a) obscure (b) blatant  
 (c) definite (d) obvious

**Directions** Choose the word which is most opposite in meaning to the given word.

[IBPS Clerk 2012]

69. Myrida  
 (a) trivial (b) difficult  
 (c) few (d) effortless  
 (e) countless
70. Tepid  
 (a) moderate (b) high  
 (c) warm (d) irregular  
 (e) little
71. Myth  
 (a) reality (b) belief  
 (c) contrast (d) idealism  
 (e) falsehood

**Directions** Each of the following items consists of a sentence followed by four words. Select the antonym of the word (occurring in the sentence in bold letters) as per the context. [NDA 2012]

72. A large number of designer clothes are **revolting**.  
 (a) inviting (b) beautiful  
 (c) fashionable (d) delightful.
73. **Recession** is a major cause of unemployment.  
 (a) education (b) inflation  
 (c) poverty (d) computerization

74. He finally **conceded** that he was involved in smuggling.  
(a) admitted (b) accepted  
(c) denied (d) concealed
75. The accused emphatically **denied** the charge in the court.  
(a) accepted (b) agreed  
(c) asserted (d) affirmed
76. This cloth is a **coarse** of touch.  
(a) delicate (b) rough  
(c) painful (d) harsh

**Directions** Each of the following items consists of a word followed by four words or group of words. Select the word or group of words that is farthest in meaning to the word given. [CDS 2013]

77. Laudatory  
(a) laughable (b) derogatory  
(c) abusive (d) detriment
78. Pertinent  
(a) eloquent (b) distant  
(c) relevant (d) irrelevant
79. Colossal  
(a) fragile (b) small  
(c) colourful (d) impressive
80. Indispensable  
(a) tolerable (b) superfluous  
(c) expensive (d) hostile
81. Vindictive  
(a) forgiving (b) humane  
(c) polite (d) liberal
82. Frivolous  
(a) amusing (b) serious  
(c) confusing (d) teasing
83. Slacken  
(a) weaken (b) intensify  
(c) quicken (d) provoke
84. Defile  
(a) purify (b) pollute  
(c) disturb (d) glorify
85. Fortuitous  
(a) unfortunate (b) accidental  
(c) planned (d) ludicrous
86. Aversion  
(a) promotion (b) attraction  
(c) hatred (d) passion
87. Imperious  
(a) characterless (b) impermanent  
(c) imperfect (d) submissive

88. Vexation  
 (a) comfort (b) slyness  
 (c) fright (d) nervousness
89. Doleful  
 (a) aggressive (b) cheerful  
 (c) tired (d) involved
90. Senility  
 (a) virility (b) laziness  
 (c) maturity (d) exhaustion
91. Ungainly  
 (a) quick (b) short  
 (c) awkward (d) graceful

**Directions** Each of the following items consists of a sentence followed by four words or group of select the antonym of the word (occurring in the sentence in bold letters) as per the context. [NDA 2013]

92. His **candid** remarks impressed the authorities.  
 (a) blunt (b) guarded  
 (c) sincere (d) unconventional
93. The guilty appealed to the jury to **condone** his punishment.  
 (a) accept (b) forgive  
 (c) condemn (d) criticise
94. His family **severed** ties with him for marrying inter-caste.  
 (a) joined (b) included  
 (c) detached (d) disrupted
95. It is easy to understand his **fuzzy** thoughts.  
 (a) misty (b) vague  
 (c) clear (d) useful
96. He drove his car through **slimy** road to reach your office.  
 (a) ugly (b) clean  
 (c) beautiful (d) slippery
97. His **eloquent** speech helped him bag the award.  
 (a) lucid (b) vivid  
 (c) short (d) inarticulate

**Directions** Each of the following items consists of a sentence followed by four words. Select the antonym of the word (occurring in the sentence in bold letters) as per the context. [NDA 2013]

98. Her illness **enervated** the whole family.  
 (a) enhanced (b) exhausted  
 (c) weakened (d) energized
99. The teacher **inserted** another picture to illustrate the point.  
 (a) deducted (b) added  
 (c) removed (d) reclined
100. The committee rejected his **ludicrous** proposal.  
 (a) absurd (b) reasonable  
 (c) farcical (d) stupid

101. Children **adore** the cricket players.  
(a) discuss (b) condemn  
(c) benefit (d) check

**Directions** In the following questions, choose the word opposite in meaning to the given word.

[CGL 2013]

102. Obtuse  
(a) sharp witted (b) transparent  
(c) timid (d) blunt
103. Inadvertently  
(a) secretly (b) accidentally  
(c) completely (d) deliberately

**Directions** In the following questions, each question consists of a word or a phrase, which is bold in the sentence given. It is followed by four words or phrases. Select the word or phrase which is closest to the opposite in meaning of the bold word or phrase.

[CDS 2014]

104. He will never **turn down** your request.  
(a) turn up (b) turn over  
(c) reject (d) accept
105. I was upset by his **hostile** attitude.  
(a) friendly (b) negative  
(c) positive (d) inimical
106. Mala is always **defiant** in her behaviour.  
(a) obedient (b) rebellious  
(c) meek (d) friendly
107. Frail  
(a) strong (b) big  
(c) old (d) weak

[NDA 2014]

**Directions** In each of these items, a word has been bold followed by words listed (a), (b), (c) and (d). Choose the appropriate word most opposite in meaning to the bold word.

[CDS 2013]

108. The usual **adulation of** officers must end.  
(a) back-biting (b) condemnation  
(c) flattery (d) praise
109. There is an **obscure** cave on the other side of the hill.  
(a) well-known (b) infamous  
(c) notorious (d) admired
110. Her **impetuous** behaviour was attributed to her upbringing.  
(a) rash (b) poised  
(c) sluggish (d) aggressive
111. All these measures will **augment** employment.  
(a) diminish (b) circumscribe  
(c) uniform (d) similar
112. The man at the gate had a **forbidding** appearance.  
(a) handsome (b) lenient  
(c) filthy (d) mild

# 5

## Foreign Words and Expressions (Often Used in English)

---

- |     |                 |  |
|-----|-----------------|--|
| 1.  | a' la mode      | in the fashion, in vogue.                          |
| 2.  | albeit          | although.  |
| 3.  | avant garde     | pioneer in movement of art/literature.             |
| 4.  | ab initio       | from very beginning.                               |
| 5.  | ad hoc          | arranged for special purpose.                      |
| 6.  | au revoir       | until we meet again.                               |
| 7.  | ad interim      | meanwhile.   |
| 8.  | alma mater      | mother institution a person attended.              |
| 9.  | ad valorem      | according to value.                                |
| 10. | annus mirabilis | a wonderful year in which great events take place. |
| 11. | a'propos        | to the point, with reference to.                   |
| 12. | alibi           | false plea of absence.                             |
| 13. | ad nauseam      | to offensive limit.                                |
| 14. | alter ego       | a bosom friend, one's other self.                  |
| 15. | alumni          | ex students of an institution (alumnus–singular)   |
| 16. | ante meridiem   | time between midnight and moon (a.m.).             |
| 17. | animus          | bad intention.                                     |
| 18. | a priori        | deductive, to infer fact from cause                |
| 19. | amicus curiae   | friend of the court in any judicial proceeding     |
| 20. | ad infinitum    | for indefinite period, for even.                   |
| 21. | alpha and omega | from beginning to end.                             |
| 22. | alias           | otherwise, nick name.                              |
| 23. | amour propre    | self love, vanity                                  |
| 24. | Anno Domini     | in the Christian era (AD) after the death of.      |

25.	agent provocateur	a secret agent employed to find the suspected criminals.
26.	blitzkreig	lightning attack.
27.	bona fide	in a good faith, sincere.
28.	bon voyage	pleasant journey to you.
29.	bourgeoisie	middle class.
30.	bete noire	an object of dislike.
31.	bonhomie	pleasantness of manners.
32.	carte blanche	full freedom of action.
33.	communiqué	official intimation or note.
34.	casus belli	act/event leading to war.
35.	coup d'etat	violent or unconstitutional change in government.
36.	circa	about (born circa 150 BC).
37.	chaperon	a person (usually elderly lady) who accompanies a young girl.
38.	commune bonum	the common good.
39.	coiffeur	hair dresser.
40.	charge d' affairs	one who acts as an ambassador.
41.	coup de grace	the final blow.
42.	coiffure	style of hair dressing.
43.	couturier	man dress designer.
44.	couturiere	woman dress designer.
45.	canard	a rumour, a hoax.
46.	cuisine	the brand of cooked food.
47.	cause celebre	a very notable trial.
48.	detenu	a prisoner.
49.	de tour	indirect way.
50.	de novo	afresh.
51.	debut	first appearance on stage or in any event.
52.	debutant	one making first appearance (male).
53.	debutante	one making first appearance (female).
54.	detente	easing of strained relations.
55.	de jure	according to law, by right.
56.	de facto	in fact, real.
57.	demarche	a political step/presentation.
58.	deja vu	a feeling that something has happened before.
59.	denouement	final conclusion in a play.
60.	dramatis personae	characters in a play.
61.	emeritus	retired but retaining honorary title on merit.
62.	elite	select, choice.
63.	en bloc	in a group, collectively.

64.	entrenous	between ourselves.
65.	en masse	in a mass.
66.	ex gratia	as a matter of grace, favour.
67.	ex post facto	by subsequent act.
68.	en route	on the way to.
69.	esprit de corps	spirit of belonging to one organisation.
70.	ex officio	by virtue of one's post.
71.	ennui	boredome.
72.	ex parte	done not in the presence of other.
73.	elan	dashing spirit.
74.	et al	and other people.
75.	exempli gratia	<i>e.g.</i> , for example.
76.	enfant terrible	one who is a source of trouble.
77.	entente	understanding between the two states.
78.	entourage	a person's subordinates.
79.	forte	a person's special talent.
80.	fait accompli	an accomplished fact.
81.	fiance	a man to whom one is engaged to marry.
82.	fiancee	a woman to whom one is engaged to marry.
83.	gratis	free of charge.
84.	genre	a style, a particular kind.
85.	hauteur	haughtiness.
86.	hors de combat	out of combat, disabled.
87.	homo sapiens	men as thinking people.
88.	ipso facto	really, by that very fact.
89.	ibid	in the same book/chapter.
90.	impasse	deadlock.
91.	id est	<i>i.e.</i> , (that is to say).
92.	infra dig	below one's dignity.
93.	inter alia	among other things.
94.	in camera	not open to public.
95.	instant	of this month.
96.	joie de vivre	joy of living.
97.	laissez faire	free from government control/interference.
98.	locus standi	right to be heard, to interfere.
99.	lingua franca	common language spoken by people.
100.	litteratur	literary person.
101.	litterati	literary persons.
102.	lacuna	shortcoming, gap.
103.	leitmolif	a recurring theme.
104.	melange	mixture, blending, medley.

105.	mutatis mutandis	with necessary changes.
106.	menage	household, domestic.
107.	mala fide	in bad faith.
108.	modus vivandi	way of living.
109.	modus operandi	method of dealing with work.
110.	magnum opus	a great book, a work of art.
111.	melee	mixed fight, stampede.
112.	matinee	morning (after noon).
113.	nouveaux riches	people who are newly rich.
114.	Nota Bene	take note.
115.	nom de plume	pen name, assumed name.
116.	nexus	bond, link, connection.
117.	non pareil	incomparable, unparallel.
118.	nee	name used after the name of married woman to indicate father's family name.
119.	outré	exaggerated.
120.	obiter dictum	passing remark.
121.	persona non grata	a person not acceptable.
122.	persona grata	a person acceptable.
123.	pro rata	in proportion.
124.	per se	by itself.
125.	par excellence	excellent, superb.
126.	pot pourri	mixture, musical, medley.
127.	post meridiem	afternoon (p.m.).
128.	prima facie	based on the first impression.
129.	proletarian	a member of poor class.
130.	pari passu	at an equal rate/pace.
131.	parole	prisoner's word of honour.
132.	protege	one who is patronised by others.
133.	quid pro quo	something given or returned as an equivalent of something (tit for tat).
134.	raison d'être	reason for existence, real purpose.
135.	rendezvous	private meeting place.
136.	reposte	repartee, retort.
137.	R.S.V.P.	respondre's ilvous plait (reply, if you please).
138.	religio loci	the religious feeling of a place.
139.	resume	a summary, an abstract.
140.	sang froid	coolness in trying condition.
141.	status quo	the same position.
142.	sine die	for an indefinite period.
143.	sub judice	under consideration.

144.	sobriquet	pseudonym.
145.	summum bonum	chief good.
146.	sans	without, deprived of.
147.	sine qua non	indispensable condition to achieve something.
148.	sanctum sanctorum	the holy of holies
149.	son et lu miere	a historical play staged with sound and light.
150.	suo moto	on one's own.
151.	tour de force	a feat of strength or skill.
152.	tete o tete	a private conversation, face to face.
153.	ultra vires	beyond one's authority.
154.	via	through.
155.	versus	against.
156.	viva voce	an oral test.
157.	viz	namely, that is to say.
158.	vice versa	in opposite ways.
159.	vide	see, refer.
160.	via media	middle course.
161.	vox populi von dei	voice of the people is the voice of God.
162.	vox populi	voice of the people.
163.	vendetta	family feud.
164.	vis-a-vis	directly opposite to.
165.	volte face	a complete turn about, reversal of policy.
166.	xerox	a photocopy.
167.	zeitgeist	contemporary spirit.

# 6

## The Sentence Completion

---

### Fill in the Blanks with Suitable Words

**Sentence Completion** questions are designed to test the comprehension ability as well as the knowledge of the meaning of the words required to be filled in. The candidate is asked to select the best of the alternatives given below a sentence.

A word of caution may be put in here for the benefit of the students. Before attempting this section they must go through the preceding chapters in this book that contains plethora of words to guide them in choice of selecting the best of the alternatives.

## Revision Exercises

### Exercise A

**Directions** *Four alternatives a, b, c and d are given under each sentence, you are required to select the most suitable alternative to fill in the blank/blanks in the sentence to make it meaningful.*

1. The salt spray has gradually ..... the bridge.  
(a) spoilt (b) ravaged  
(c) demolished (d) eroded
2. The volcanic ..... was the cause of great devastation.  
(a) outburst (b) eruption  
(c) erosion (d) movement
3. It was impossible to recover the victims' bodies as the place of the accident was .....  
(a) inaccessible (b) marshy  
(c) distant (d) rocky
4. In order to maintain good health one should eat a ..... diet.  
(a) rich (b) spicy  
(c) balanced (d) salty
5. As a result of ..... many unsuitable candidates were selected for the posts.  
(a) tolerance (b) favouritism  
(c) humility (d) weakness

6. There are several ways of ..... the price at which a product can be marketed.  
(a) arriving (b) thinking  
(c) determining (d) noticing
7. Although they are not rich, they always wear ..... clothes.  
(a) respectful (b) respective  
(c) respectable (d) respected
8. After a recent mild paralytic attack his movements are ..... restricted, otherwise he is still very active.  
(a) entirely (b) nowhere  
(c) not (d) slightly
9. The prisoner was released on ..... for good behaviour.  
(a) probation (b) bail  
(c) parole (d) guarantee
10. Rajeev is too ..... as far as his food habits are concerned.  
(a) enjoyable (b) fastidious  
(c) curious (d) interesting
11. My father keeps all his ..... papers in a lock and key.  
(a) required (b) necessary  
(c) useful (d) confidential
12. I ..... you to keep quiet.  
(a) beg of (b) beg from  
(c) beg (d) beg for
13. The splendour of the Himalayas .....  
(a) beggars description (b) needs no description  
(c) is so charming (d) inspires awe
14. Every candidate has to poll a minimum number of votes in order to avoid ..... of his security.  
(a) penalty (b) cancellation  
(c) forfeiture (d) loss
15. He stood ..... as a rock and faced the challenge.  
(a) quiet (b) strong  
(c) solid (d) firm

## Exercise B

1. My mother upset the kettle of boiling water and ..... her right hand badly.  
(a) wounded (b) sizzled  
(c) scorched (d) scalded
2. Please do not ..... an offer made by the Chairman.  
(a) refrain (b) refute  
(c) refuse (d) refuge
3. The government is confident that the standard of living will begin to ..... again soon.  
(a) revive (b) lift  
(c) flourish (d) rise

4. Sharing heavy responsibilities with colleagues does not involve loss of prestige or ..... of the authority of an institute's Head.  
(a) deterioration (b) decrease  
(c) diminution (d) loss
5. The problem of proliferation of nuclear arms is never going to be solved unless the two super powers agree to .....  
(a) a solution (b) understand each other  
(c) sit together (d) meet half-way
6. Your case is so unique that I am not getting any ..... to support it.  
(a) reason (b) help  
(c) happening (d) precedent
7. Take possession of the records immediately lest they should be ..... with.  
(a) tampered (b) destroyed  
(c) manhandled (d) mishandled
8. Let us take him upon his word. I see no room for any ..... in the matter.  
(a) duplicity (b) deviation  
(c) cynicism (d) difference
9. The ..... arguments put forth for not disclosing the facts did not impress anybody.  
(a) intemperate (b) spurious  
(c) specious (d) convincing
10. Director, he said, would ..... the matter at once.  
(a) invigilate (b) explore  
(c) investigate (d) survey
11. Everyone was ..... by surprise when she announced her plan to marry that boy.  
(a) moved (b) shaken  
(c) taken (d) prevailed
12. On second reading his poems strike us as singularly ..... of sublime emotions.  
(a) attributive (b) significative  
(c) symptomatic (d) evocative
13. It is becoming more and more ..... that the Principal is losing the confidence of his staff.  
(a) prominent (b) conspicuous  
(c) manifest (d) apparent
14. Health is too important to be .....  
(a) neglected (b) detested  
(c) despised (d) discarded
15. Even a ..... glance will reveal the mystery.  
(a) crude (b) cursory  
(c) critical (d) curious

## Exercise G

1. The pilot was ..... injured, he died within half an hour.  
(a) seriously (b) fatally  
(c) fatefully (d) vitally
2. His ..... directions misled us; we did not know which road to take.  
(a) complex (b) obscure  
(d) mingled (d) vague

3. He was very friendly with the press and it really ..... him even for what he did not achieve.  
 (a) praised (b) lionised  
 (c) appreciated (d) highlighted
4. The police ..... the mob.  
 (a) scattered (b) disbanded  
 (c) drove (d) dispersed
5. I cannot ..... to know much about it.  
 (a) imagine (b) conceive  
 (c) pretend (d) contemplate
6. We ..... trouble on our borders.  
 (a) comprehend (b) supplement  
 (c) complement (d) apprehend
7. If you drink too much, it will ..... your judgement.  
 (a) impede (b) impair  
 (c) impose (d) impel
8. The punch made the boxer ..... with pain.  
 (a) wince (b) gap  
 (c) grumble (d) fumble
9. These essays are intellectually ..... and represent various levels of complexity.  
 (a) revealing (b) modern  
 (c) superior (d) demanding
10. The soldiers were instructed to ..... restraint and handle the situation peacefully.  
 (a) exercise (b) control  
 (c) prevent (d) enforce
11. Since one cannot read every book, one should be content with making a ..... selection.  
 (a) normal (b) standard  
 (c) moderate (d) judicious
12. He is too ..... to be deceived easily.  
 (a) strong (b) modern  
 (c) intelligent (d) kind
13. There has been a ..... lack of efficiency in all the crucial areas of the working of Public Sector Undertakings.  
 (a) positive (b) surprising  
 (c) conspicuous (d) stimulative
14. The shepherd was looking after the ..... of sheep.  
 (a) crew (b) gang  
 (c) fleet (d) flock
15. The Managing Director treated the employees to a ..... lunch at an expensive hotel.  
 (a) precious (b) thriving  
 (c) stupendous (d) sumptuous

## Exercise D

1. A politician's speech must be read ..... the lines, it may have a double .....  
 (a) behind; edge (b) between; meaning  
 (c) among; ends (d) beyond; face

2. Those who live in ..... houses should not throw ..... at others.  
(a) big; abuse (b) own; challenges  
(c) stone; bricks (d) glass; stones
3. I write a letter to you ..... tentatively the dates of the programme.  
(a) involving (b) urging  
(c) guiding (d) indicating
4. Contemporary economic development differs ..... from the Industrial Revolution of the 19th century.  
(a) naturally (b) usually  
(c) literally (d) markedly
5. Ravi had to drop his plan of going to picnic as he had certain ..... to meet during that period.  
(a) preparations (b) observations  
(c) urgencies (d) commitments
6. It was ..... hot that day and the cable suffered the brunt of the heat.  
(a) treacherously (b) acceptably  
(c) unfailingly (d) unbelievably
7. .... eye-witness, the news reporter gave a graphic description of how fire broke out.  
(a) Reporting (b) Observing  
(c) Seeing (d) Quoting
8. .... my knowledge, Mr Ashok has a prejudice ..... foreigners.  
(a) In; for (b) As; towards  
(c) For; at (d) To; against
9. He gave me an additional ..... of ₹ 100 a month by the ..... of the commissioner.  
(a) allowance; permission (b) pay; allowance  
(c) payment; agreement (d) salary; admittance
10. There is no glory in war ..... the blood it .....  
(a) considering; sheds (b) comparing; spills  
(c) worth; costs (d) thinking; demands
11. The Director has ..... me to ..... a speech for him.  
(a) notified; do (b) demanded; prepare  
(c) entrusted; write (d) commissioned; draft
12. I will come tomorrow ..... I hear to the .....  
(a) unless; contrary (b) until; contradictory  
(c) except; oppose (d) despite; otherwise
13. The children are so ..... , their parents are thinking of sending them to a ..... school.  
(a) small; high (b) naughty; neighbouring  
(c) misruled; lodging (d) unruly; boarding
14. Only ..... people are ..... after death.  
(a) vicious; condemned (b) virile; forgotten  
(c) virtuous; remembered (d) virulent; glorified
15. The Secretary ..... the society's funds, ..... he was dismissed.  
(a) robbed; thus (b) pirated; therefore  
(c) misplaced; and (d) embezzled; therefore

**Exercise E**

1. In one election after another, officers have been guilty of serious ..... of duty.  
 (a) dereliction (b) carelessness  
 (c) lapses (d) abandoning
2. Being extremely ..... he examines every detail of the case before forming his opinion.  
 (a) cautious (b) meticulous  
 (c) eccentric (d) suspicious
3. It is very unfortunate that the two communities which were so friendly till recently are now .....  
 (a) unfriendly (b) at daggers drawn  
 (c) hostile (d) unhappy
4. .... by repeated failures he persisted with his research and finally succeeded in isolating the mosquito responsible for carrying malaria.  
 (a) Unaffected (b) Unmoved  
 (c) Uninfluenced (d) Undaunted
5. Because of the bitter experiences of the past he ..... everywhere.  
 (a) disbelieves (b) smells a rat  
 (c) sees a danger (d) suspects foul
6. On seeing the police approach, the miscreants .....  
 (a) cooled their heels (b) wore at their heels  
 (c) took to their heels (d) took upon their heels
7. The committee's appeal to the people for money ..... little response.  
 (a) evoked (b) provoked  
 (c) gained (d) provided
8. Colgate has also got an ambitious aim of ..... an eight per cent value share of the toothpaste market by the end of the first year.  
 (a) keeping (b) distributing  
 (c) cornering (d) soliciting
9. He is very ..... on meeting foreigners and befriending them.  
 (a) anxious (b) find  
 (c) insistent (d) keen
10. If a speech is full of pompous words, it is .....  
 (a) verbose (b) bombastic  
 (c) grandiose (d) grandiloquent
11. We don't know what ..... him to commit this crime.  
 (a) excited (b) roused  
 (c) prompted (d) attracted
12. He is like a body without a soul, an eye without light or a flower without .....  
 (a) smell (b) fragrance  
 (c) petal (d) odour
13. This is the ..... chosen for the hospital complex to be built next year.  
 (a) area (b) locality  
 (c) site (d) sight

14. The photographs in the papers bore no ..... at all to the original.  
 (a) nearness (b) comparison  
 (c) identity (d) resemblance
15. Oh! such a pretty girl. Whom has she ..... ?  
 (a) taken after (b) took after  
 (c) taken by (d) took by

### Exercise F

1. The Deputy Manager ..... to resign because all his proposals were ..... down by his superiors.  
 (a) offered; thrown (b) gave; held  
 (c) began; kept (d) threatened; turned
2. The counter clerk was very busy and ..... not pay ..... to Sameer's request.  
 (a) can; help (b) could; respect  
 (c) had; cash (d) did; attention
3. He was initially ..... at the suggestion but was soon ..... it himself.  
 (a) frowning; rejecting (b) shocked; advocating  
 (c) impressed; negating (d) thrilled; propagating
4. Shalini was not ..... by the criticism and paid no ..... even when her best friend talked against her.  
 (a) bothered; attention (b) troubled; mind  
 (c) threatened; warning (d) deterred; heed
5. She was ..... because all her plan had gone ..... .  
 (a) elated; wild (b) dejected; splendidly  
 (c) distraught; awry (d) frustrated; magnificently
6. He preaches liberal views but in practice, he is not ..... and is ..... narrow-minded than almost any other person.  
 (a) hard; openly (b) tolerant; more  
 (c) ambitious; hardly (d) acceptable; genuinely
7. Shakti is a ..... and he always does what is ..... and fruitful.  
 (a) optimist; hopeful (b) pragmatist; practical  
 (c) erudite; educative (d) idealist; theoretical
8. The birth of a daughter is no more a/an ..... occasion because education has ..... the people.  
 (a) magnificent; liberalised (b) benign; esteemed  
 (c) ominous; enlightened (d) propitious; blinded
9. He is always ..... to his uncle because he considers him a ..... fellow.  
 (a) disrespectful; venerable (b) respectful; dishonourable  
 (c) respectful; venerable (d) impudent; respectable
10. When she explained truthfully all that had happened my ..... were ..... .  
 (a) story; true  
 (b) doubts; dispelled  
 (c) doubts; discouraged  
 (d) suspicion; arouse

11. The police was at last able to ..... the ..... of her disappearance from her husband's home.  
 (a) reveal; secret (b) expose; mystery  
 (c) confirm; doubt (d) solve; mystery
12. The relations between two friends are ever so ..... that a slight misunderstanding can ..... them.  
 (a) tenuous; embitter (b) fragile; cement  
 (c) tanacious; break (d) strong; sweeten
13. Ravi ..... a bit ..... he was not invited by his friend to attend the party.  
 (a) took; before (b) angered; since  
 (c) expressed; than (d) grumbled; when
14. He is ..... to ..... any kind of work with due sincerity.  
 (a) fond; perform (b) reluctant; entrust  
 (c) determined; undertake (d) eager; avoid
15. Children are more ..... than adults, it is ..... their quickness in learning a new language.  
 (a) intelligent; disproved by (b) adaptable; reflected in  
 (c) conservative; seen in (d) susceptible; demonstrated in

## Exercise G

1. .... politicians alone can survive in politics where ..... rules the roost.  
 (a) Clever; practical (b) Wily; treacherous  
 (c) Wily; treachery (d) Ideal; prestigious
2. I am not ..... about your success because your ..... approach to study is disappointing.  
 (a) despaired; irresolute (b) hopeful; regular  
 (c) optimistic; perfunctory (d) happy; reckless
3. Prabha's ..... in athletics yielded rich ..... as she got a scholarship.  
 (a) performance; money (b) defeat; results  
 (c) behaviour; appreciation (d) excellence; dividends
4. The police ..... any attempt of arson by ..... at the trouble spot quite in time.  
 (a) squashed; surrounding (b) made; encircling  
 (c) pre-empted; arriving (d) thwarted; presenting
5. The war ..... immediately after the cease-fire proposal was ..... bilaterally.  
 (a) receded; exchanged (b) started; prepared  
 (c) ended; accepted (d) extended; mitigated
6. The ..... imposed for non-payment was too ..... for it to bring in improvement in collection.  
 (a) fine; severe (b) toll; simple  
 (c) penalty; low (d) damage; cruel
7. Somesh ..... me coming to his table, he smiled and ..... me a chair.  
 (a) found; signalled (b) met; sat  
 (c) looked; gave (d) saw; offered
8. The leaders were ..... needed by those to ..... they addressed.  
 (a) angrily; who (b) readily; which  
 (c) scarcely; whom (d) rarely; where
9. Neena's plea for ..... fell on deaf ears as her husband was not ..... enough to overlook her minor omission.  
 (a) clemency; gracious (b) mercy; unkind  
 (c) forgiveness; pardonable (d) apology; forgivable

10. The attempt of the robbers was ..... because the travellers showed enough ..... .  
 (a) foiled; fortitude (b) encouraged; cowardice  
 (c) averted; farsight (d) checked; foresight
11. Now-a-days progress in life depends more on ..... rather than on ..... .  
 (a) favouritism; ability (b) consideration; capability  
 (c) utility; sincerity (d) pragmatism; ideal
12. The reasons why syllabi are ..... in India because UGC has failed to live upto the ..... of the people.  
 (a) outdated; expectations (b) outmoded; ambition  
 (c) practical; hopes (d) obsolete; desires
13. The Indian Railways have yet to ..... an effective mechanism to avert a series of ..... leading to horrifying tragedy.  
 (a) evolve; lapses (b) develope; mistake  
 (c) improve; omissions (d) contrive; errors
14. I am not ..... to sell you my house unless you offer a more ..... price.  
 (a) conform; true (b) prepared; realistic  
 (c) ready; correct (d) having; actual
15. Due to ..... rainfall this year, there will be ..... cut in water supply.  
 (a) enough; substantial (b) meagre; least  
 (c) sufficient; no (d) surplus; abundant

## Exercise H

1. She is ..... and simple in looks though her husband is ..... .  
 (a) plain; flamboyant (b) garrulous; talkative  
 (c) taciturn; silent (d) credulous; gullible
2. To ..... yourself from ..... wear warm clothes.  
 (a) prohibit; heat (b) protect; cold  
 (c) save; heat (d) suffer; cold
3. We ..... him with many promises, but nothing would ..... him.  
 (a) tempted; influence (b) provoked; move  
 (c) attracted; fascinate (d) gave; deprive
4. In his ....., he followed the ..... course.  
 (a) agony; funny (b) ignorance; wrong  
 (c) hurry; diversified (d) predicament; proper
5. The construction of the hall has been ..... because of the ..... of cement in the market.  
 (a) held; non-availability (b) denied; restrictions  
 (c) hampered; shortage (d) prevented; supply
6. Only when ..... failed, the police restored to ..... .  
 (a) efforts; power (b) arrests; imprisonment  
 (c) persuasions; force (d) power; punishment
7. The partners broke off as they found each other ..... of ..... breach of promise.  
 (a) faulty; severe (b) responsible; serious  
 (c) guilty; flagrant (d) accused; rigid
8. They wanted to ..... all these books, but they could not find ..... time to do so.  
 (a) cover; almost (b) pursue; necessary  
 (c) dispose; some (d) read; sufficient

9. Though he is reputed for his technical ....., his books were sadly ..... of the work of others as he lacked originality.  
 (a) advice; unconscious (b) skill; independent  
 (c) knowledge; ignorant (d) expertise; derivative
10. He had managed to ..... several times, but was finally ..... by the police.  
 (a) deceive; cheated (b) defend; acquitted  
 (c) escape; arrested (d) cheat; robbed
11. The candidate's ..... at the polls was ..... as he won with a striking margin.  
 (a) claim; unrealistic (b) victory; overwhelming  
 (c) image; real (d) strategy; unsuccessful
12. In ..... of international matters, there is always an element of risk in ..... one might to do.  
 (a) view; whichever (b) many; doing  
 (c) defence; wrong (d) case; whatever
13. We must prevent endangered wild animal species from becoming ..... in order that our future generation may ..... the great diversity of animal life.  
 (a) rare; escape (b) outdated; know  
 (c) extinct; enjoy (d) powerful; protect
14. We cannot ..... such a/an ..... act of violence.  
 (a) tolerate; insipid (b) consider; important  
 (c) commit; magnificent (d) pardon; egregious
15. The secretary ..... the society's funds, ..... he was dismissed.  
 (a) misplaced; soon (b) rolled; thus  
 (c) pirated; therefore (d) misappropriated; so

## Exercise 1

1. It is ..... for every tax payer to ..... the tax returns to the Income Tax Department.  
 (a) necessary; lodge (b) binding; pay  
 (c) obligatory; submit (d) possible; remit
2. The ..... of glory lead but to the .....  
 (a) ways; happiness (b) acts; prosperity  
 (c) paths; grave (d) achievements; suffering
3. Cholesterol has long been identified as a silent killer because the patient has no ..... of the danger freely ..... his system.  
 (a) idea; infecting (b) thought; attacks  
 (c) information; invading (d) inkling; traversing
4. Synthetic milk ..... real milk in all ..... except taste and nutritional qualities.  
 (a) resembles; respects (b) exempted; respect  
 (c) copies; manners (d) marks; qualities
5. If we do not take ..... care in our industry, we will have to ..... a grave problem.  
 (a) normal; experience (b) proper; face  
 (c) adequate; catch (d) intensive; aggravate
6. He shifted to his late parents' house not because of the ..... it provided but for purely ..... reasons.  
 (a) convenience; sentimental (b) grace; aesthetic  
 (c) value; monetary (d) comforts; personal

7. Some people have the ..... for learning foreign languages but they have no ..... in speaking.  
 (a) mania; urge (b) aptitude; interest  
 (c) stamina; fondness (d) capacity; ability
8. The increasing revival of dramatic classics is, to one critic, .....; it seems to him a sign of the ..... of the modern theatre.  
 (a) auspicious; resurgence (b) deplorable; anaemia  
 (c) incomprehensible; paradox (d) astounding; vitality
9. We must explore ..... sources of energy as our supply of fossil fuel has been .....  
 (a) alternate; depleted (b) guaranteed; over  
 (c) natural; exhausted (d) sufficient; increased
10. This partly explains how the Mehra family has been able to ..... its lavish life-style in recent times, despite the fact that all its assets have been .....  
 (a) keep up; destroyed (b) develop; liquidated  
 (c) afford; attached (d) keep; removed

## Exercise D

1. He was so convinced that people were driven by ..... motives that he believed there was no such thing as a purely ..... act.  
 (a) personal; anti-social (b) personal; eternal  
 (c) altruistic; praiseworthy (d) ulterior; selfless
2. Any system is likely to ..... for ..... of support from the public.  
 (a) survive; lack (b) succeed; reason  
 (c) fail; want (d) finish; failure
3. Since we ..... read every book, we ..... only the famous ones.  
 (a) have; sold (b) should; buy  
 (c) cannot; select (d) can; purchase
4. The education minister emphasised the need to discover and ..... each student's ..... talents.  
 (a) enlarge; dormant (b) belittle; concealed  
 (c) develop; intrinsic (d) flourish; hidden
5. The mill workers were not ..... with their low wages and non-payment of wages for last three months ..... fuel to the flames.  
 (a) good; put (b) satisfied; added  
 (c) joyful; poured (d) pleased; directed
6. He is usually ....., but today he appears rather .....  
 (a) strict; unwell (b) tense; restless  
 (c) calm; disturbed (d) happy; humorous
7. The changes made in the system were so ..... that they didn't require any .....  
 (a) big; time (b) genuine; intelligence  
 (c) obvious; modifications (d) certain; expertise
8. He was ..... of playing ..... and loose with the sentiments of his dearest friends.  
 (a) complained; thick (b) accused; tight  
 (c) innocent; false (d) guilty; fast

9. He granted the request because he was ..... to ..... his friend.  
 (a) bound; hurt (b) destined; agonise  
 (c) reluctant; disappoint (d) unwilling; please
10. I would like to ..... your attention to the second paragraph of my letter ..... to the terms of sale of the machinery.  
 (a) invite; according (b) withdraw; regarding  
 (c) react; mainly (d) draw; pertaining

### Exercise K

**Directions** Sentences are given with blanks to be filled in with an appropriate word (s). Four alternatives are suggested for each question. Choose the correct alternative out of the four options.

[SSC CGL 2014]

1. A ... of chilly cold weather is expected in the next few months.  
 (a) phase (b) spell  
 (c) length (d) span
2. She is so...that she always believes my fairy tales.  
 (a) credible (b) vociferous  
 (c) credulous (d) innocent
3. She had an ... of the ear.  
 (a) infection (b) ulceration  
 (c) injury (d) infections

**Directions** Sentences are given with blanks to be filled in with an appropriate words. Four alternatives are suggested for each question. Choose the correct alternative out of the four options.

[SSC CPO 2014]

4. The masks worn by the men helped them ... their identity.  
 (a) conceal (b) congeal  
 (c) masquerade (d) cheat
5. On the ... occasion of Laxmi Puja the Mathurs bought a new car.  
 (a) officious (b) auspicious  
 (c) fortuitous (d) prosperous
6. Precautions are to be taken with any one who seems... .  
 (a) contagious (b) infectious  
 (c) diseased (d) defiled

**Directions** Sentences are given with blanks to be filled in with an appropriate words. Four alternatives are suggested for each question. Choose the correct alternative out of the four options.

[SSC MTS 2014]

7. A trader was ..... at the city airport early on Thursday for carrying gold jewellery worth over ₹ 1 crore.  
 (a) hindered (b) detained  
 (c) retained (d) blocked
8. The peasant rebellion was ..... with a high hand by the Emperor.  
 (a) put off (b) put away  
 (c) put back (d) put down

9. What an ..... story ! I am not ..... enough yet to believe it. [SSC MTS 2013]  
 (a) incredible, credulous (b) incredulous, credible  
 (c) increditadble, believable (d) unbelievable, creditable
10. Many women in developing countries experience a cycle of poor health that ..... before they are born. [SSC CGL 2012]  
 (a) originates (b) derives  
 (c) begins (d) establishes

**Directions** Sentences are given with blanks to be filled in with an appropriate word (s). Four alternatives are suggested for each question. Choose the correct alternative out of the four options.

[SSC CGL 2012]

11. Man is essentially a .....animal and tends to associate with others.  
 (a) sentimental (b) social  
 (c) selfish (d) perverse
12. The child was so spoiled by her indulgent parents that she became.....when she did not receive all of their attention.  
 (a) sullen (b) elated  
 (c) discreet (d) suspicious
13. His directions to the driver were ..... and helped him to reach on time.  
 (a) expletive (b) implicate  
 (c) explicit (d) implicit
14. The cat and the dog have a.....enemy in the rat. [SSC LDC 2011]  
 (a) same (b) common  
 (c) mutual (d) similar

**Directions** Sentences are given with blanks to be filled in with an appropriate word (s). Four alternatives are suggested for each question. Choose the correct alternative out of the four options.

[SSC DEO 2014]

15. It's a ..... that young people are inspired by celebrities.  
 (a) lie (b) myth (c) bluff (d) mistake
16. He decided to ..... his matric examination in order to get a higher score.  
 (a) redo (b) reappear (c) rewrite (d) remake
17. The police pushed the people back to make ..... for Prime Minister's car to pass.  
 (a) passage (b) way (c) place (d) area

**Directions** Sentences are given with blanks to be filled in with an appropriate word (s). Four alternatives are suggested for each question. Choose the correct alternative out of the four options.

18. The Greenland ice sheet is ..... at the rate of about 12 cubic miles a year. [SSC LDC 2011]  
 (a) smelting (b) condensing  
 (c) melting (d) freezing
19. The ..... crowd gave the victorious team a tumultuous welcome.  
 (a) jubilant (b) troublesome  
 (c) noisy (d) arrogant

**Directions** Sentences are given with blanks to be filled in with an appropriate word (s). Four alternatives are suggested for each question. Choose the correct alternative out of the four options.

20. We must.....help to the people hit by the cyclone. [SSC MTS 2011]  
 (a) contribute (b) summon  
 (c) impart (d) render
21. We should not mix with those people who have an..... reputation.  
 (a) unsavoury (b) unsteady  
 (c) unsafe (d) unsanctified

**Directions** Sentences are given with blanks to be filled in with an appropriate word (s). Four alternatives are suggested for each question. Choose the correct alternative out of the four options.

[SSC Steno 2011]

22. .... weight gain or weight loss is not good for your body.  
 (a) Explosive (b) Expressive  
 (c) Extensive (d) Excessive
23. John must have the ..... to stick to his diet, if he wants to lose weight.  
 (a) obstinacy (b) determination  
 (c) decision (d) obligation
24. There was an ..... response for the marathon.  
 (a) overwhelming (b) overriding  
 (c) excessive (d) extreme
25. Some animals have unique ..... that allow them to survive in extreme weather conditions.  
 (a) characteristics (b) problems  
 (c) feelings (d) conditions

**Directions** Sentences are given with blanks to be filled in with an appropriate word (s). Four alternatives are suggested for each question. Choose the correct alternative out of the four options.

[SSC CGL 2011]

26. .... your instructions, we have closed your bank account.  
 (a) In lieu of (b) With regard to  
 (c) In accordance with (d) On account of
27. Do you prefer.....or traditional art forms?  
 (a) archaic (b) contemporary  
 (c) foreign (d) simultaneous
28. The Paralympics is a competition for the .....  
 (a) disadvantaged (b) discouraged  
 (c) disabled (d) despised
29. The stewardess showed the passenger ..... [SSC CPO 2011]  
 (a) when to start travelling (b) where to land the plane  
 (c) how to fasten the seat belt (d) how to judge the altitude of the plan
30. .... an old legend King Shirham lived in India. [SSC CGL 2011]  
 (a) In the event of (b) Due to  
 (c) According to (d) In reference to



# Cloze Test

---

**Cloze Test** is primarily meant to test a candidate's knowledge of comprehension with regard to grammar, usage and vocabulary. The examinees are required to make a choice from multiple alternatives for each word to be filled in the blank, not in a sentence, but in a passage. The blanks are numbered which are to be filled in with the most suitable alternative.

**Directions** *In the following passages, there are blanks each of which has been numbered. The suitable word for the blank has been mentioned against the number below every passage. A student is required to fill the blank choosing the appropriate word in the context of the whole passage.*

## Passage 1

The ..... 1..... to marriage in urban India is turning turtle. The financial imperatives of modern, urban living demand that both .....2..... should have a career. The crunch comes when the career woman demands an entity distinct from her husband and a measure of financial independence.

The woman's .....3..... is that the man as the bread-winner should be .....4..... the household expenses, while what she earns is the jam over the bread and butter. And she gets to choose the brand of jam.

Mrinalini Singh, a manager with a high .....5..... company, says, "My husband earns enough to keep the home .....6..... burning. When I take on the responsibility of home as well as office, it is not just to sink in all the money. I earn into the home kitty.

I definitely want a .....7..... in where my money goes. As a high profile executive, I need to keep up a certain .....8..... personally as well as of my husband and children. I also need to .....9..... the image of my home because of the people who visit me. Where .....10..... would the money for all this come from ?"

- |                    |               |              |
|--------------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. (a) demands     | (b) economics | (c) attitude |
| 2. (a) partners    | (b) pairs     | (c) couples  |
| 3. (a) example     | (b) idea      | (c) stance   |
| 4. (a) shouldering | (b) bearing   | (c) sharing  |
| 5. (a) powered     | (b) profile   | (c) income   |
| 6. (a) cooking     | (b) stove     | (c) fires    |

- |                   |             |               |
|-------------------|-------------|---------------|
| 7. (a) say        | (b) answer  | (c) statement |
| 8. (a) reputation | (b) image   | (c) face      |
| 9. (a) keep up    | (b) keep on | (c) keep for  |
| 10. (a) from      | (b) else    | (c) for       |

### Passage 2

Broadcasting of which we have begun to .....1..... so much now-a-days is an invention of recent .....2..... and development. Half a century ago no one could ever .....3..... how important it would become in the life of the people of the twentieth century. Now-a-days its value in the sphere of education, entertainment and state administration is .....4..... recognized and accepted.

To Marconi falls the credit for the .....5..... of the wireless. He is the Edison of the wireless world. It was in 1896. That Marconi first took out a patent for it. He soon succeeded in sending messages .....6..... the Atlantic ocean to America.

From Marconi's first .....7..... to broadcasting as we know it is a long road. But scientists travelled along it .....8..... by difficulties and obstacles on the way.

Wireless service was .....9..... between India and England in 1927. Later, a broadcasting service was maintained by an Indian Broadcasting Company. The company failed and the Government of India stepped into the .....10..... .

- |                   |                 |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. (a) hear       | (b) listen      | (c) admire      |
| 2. (a) period     | (b) age         | (c) origin      |
| 3. (a) imagine    | (b) know        | (c) think       |
| 4. (a) well       | (b) universally | (c) rightly     |
| 5. (a) invention  | (b) finding     | (c) discovery   |
| 6. (a) to         | (b) across      | (c) over        |
| 7. (a) step       | (b) achievement | (c) success     |
| 8. (a) unafraid   | (b) undeterred  | (c) unchecked   |
| 9. (a) introduced | (b) originated  | (c) started     |
| 10. (a) feet      | (b) shoes       | (c) foot prints |

### Passage 3

One of the major causes of the failure of .....1..... countries on economic front is their .....2..... to evolve a judicious mixture of .....3..... substitution and export promotion. Zambia which .....4..... on imports after its independence 20 years .....5..... has depleted 50% of its national .....6....., whereas South Korea, which started its .....7..... development from a war ravaged status .....8..... the fifties by equalizing high exports .....9..... high imports, is one of the .....10..... nations today.

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. (a) developed | (b) developing   |
| (c) advanced     | (d) advancing    |
| 2. (a) inability | (b) disadvantage |
| (c) incapacity   | (d) handicap     |

- |                                  |                                 |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 3. (a) scientific<br>(c) export  | (b) invention<br>(d) import     |
| 4. (a) expected<br>(c) banked    | (b) traded<br>(d) carried       |
| 5. (a) later<br>(c) earlier      | (b) ago<br>(d) since            |
| 6. (a) capital<br>(c) income     | (b) deposit<br>(d) credit       |
| 7. (a) financial<br>(c) economic | (b) fiscal<br>(d) economical    |
| 8. (a) upto<br>(c) on            | (b) over<br>(d) in              |
| 9. (a) over<br>(c) and           | (b) with<br>(d) into            |
| 10. (a) richest<br>(c) prolific  | (b) innovative<br>(d) advancing |

### Passage 4

Come October and you are burnt by the mid-day Sun. The storm and the sizzle is particularly .....1..... as it comes after the relatively cool monsoon months. Though it is hot and muggy, that does not .....2..... people from coming out on the streets to .....3..... the traditional festivals. And it must be shopping time also, colourfully decorated showrooms are .....4..... the passerby to let his hair down, splurge and take a .....5..... of gifts home for the family. After all, the New year's just .....6..... the corner.

- |                                  |                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. (a) traumatic<br>(c) pleasant | (b) sultry<br>(d) fantastic      |
| 2. (a) oppose<br>(c) prevent     | (b) deny<br>(d) reject           |
| 3. (a) boycott<br>(c) herald     | (b) moot<br>(d) invite           |
| 4. (a) drawing<br>(c) pursuing   | (b) fascinating<br>(d) exhorting |
| 5. (a) token<br>(c) bagful       | (b) list<br>(d) placement        |
| 6. (a) round<br>(c) near         | (b) at<br>(d) along              |

### Passage 5

The .....1..... of today is a huge financial undertaking with the same outlook as any other limited company. The .....2..... staff have to make circulation and if they do not, they will soon be .....3..... by those who can. Their independence, therefore, suffers a grave limitation. It is further .....4..... by the fact that a newspaper is as much an advertising medium as a vehicle for .....5..... It is said that the .....6..... which the public pays for its newspaper covers no more than a third of the .....7.....

of production, the other two-thirds is accounted .....8..... by advertisement revenue.

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. (a) newspaper<br>(c) school<br>(e) library       | (b) hospital<br>(d) theatre     |
| 2. (a) medical<br>(c) teaching<br>(e) company       | (b) performing<br>(d) editorial |
| 3. (a) sustained<br>(c) cured<br>(e) supplanted     | (b) treated<br>(d) covered      |
| 4. (a) destroyed<br>(c) curtailed<br>(e) aggravated | (b) deepened<br>(d) failed      |
| 5. (a) news<br>(c) training<br>(e) patients         | (b) epidemics<br>(d) business   |
| 6. (a) value<br>(c) price<br>(e) fee                | (b) tax<br>(d) cost             |
| 7. (a) expenses<br>(c) amount<br>(e) cost           | (b) sale<br>(d) price           |
| 8. (a) into<br>(c) from<br>(e) with                 | (b) in<br>(d) for               |

### Passage 6

Democracy has its dangers, the greatest of which is that it may be the rule of ignorance. Citizens who are not .....1..... intelligent and educated are .....2..... to commit errors of judgement in the casting of votes. The best men may thus .....3..... to get elected. Elections are usually a .....4..... of propaganda. Another criticism of democracy is that it is wanting .....5..... efficiency. For prompt and effective action, unity of action is .....6..... . In a multitude of minds, much .....7..... discussion takes place, whereas unity of control is needed for vigorous national life. This criticism, however, is not very .....8..... because in times of war the British Prime Minister usually .....9..... the power of a dictator. Another criticism of democracy in times of war is that secrecy in military affairs becomes difficult, if not .....10....., and that the opposition usually lowers the morale of the people by its condemnation of the actions of the cabinet.

- |                             |                                   |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. (a) barely<br>(c) highly | (b) sufficiently<br>(d) perfectly |
| 2. (a) sure<br>(c) unlikely | (b) deliberately<br>(d) likely    |

- |                                   |                                    |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 3. (a) fail<br>(c) try            | (b) succeed<br>(d) desire          |
| 4. (a) kind<br>(c) matter         | (b) process<br>(d) result          |
| 5. (a) of<br>(c) at               | (b) for<br>(d) in                  |
| 6. (a) enough<br>(c) essential    | (b) dispensable<br>(d) superfluous |
| 7. (a) profitable<br>(c) detailed | (b) unprofitable<br>(d) exhaustive |
| 8. (a) unfair<br>(c) strong       | (b) absurd<br>(d) convincing       |
| 9. (a) gains<br>(c) demands       | (b) wields<br>(d) misuses          |
| 10. (a) easy<br>(c) impossible    | (b) probable<br>(d) obscure        |

### Passage 7

For generations man has .....1..... against the wilds to create a world where only he .....2..... whether animals and plants survive or are .....3..... out. Earlier we accepted as self-evident that any .....4..... in our environment brought about by science and technology must be improvements .....5..... the world of our .....6..... However, many people all over the world have begun to feel that .....7..... are going too far and that we should try to .....8..... some of the world's original life before we find it .....9..... too late. The same science which had led us away from nature is now .....10..... the miracle of creation.

- |                                     |                                    |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. (a) faced<br>(c) struggled       | (b) stood<br>(d) challenged        |
| 2. (a) decides<br>(c) advises       | (b) thinks<br>(d) observes         |
| 3. (a) taken<br>(c) put             | (b) wiped<br>(d) thrown            |
| 4. (a) differences<br>(c) changes   | (b) increments<br>(d) replacements |
| 5. (a) in<br>(c) over               | (b) at<br>(d) for                  |
| 6. (a) aborigines<br>(c) successors | (b) ancients<br>(d) ancestors      |
| 7. (a) ourselves<br>(c) us          | (b) we<br>(d) some                 |
| 8. (a) demolish<br>(c) save         | (b) cherish<br>(d) renovate        |
| 9. (a) occurs<br>(c) seems          | (b) sounds<br>(d) gets             |

10. (a) unfolding (b) discussing  
(c) arguing (d) narrating

### Passage 8

We are citizens of no mean country and we are .....1..... of the land of our birth, of our people, our culture and our .....2..... .That pride should not be for a romanticised past to which we have to .....3....., nor should it encourage exclusiveness or a want of .....4..... of other ways than our own. It must never allow us to .....5..... our many weaknesses and failing or .....6..... our longing to be rid of them. We have a long way to go and much leeway to make .....7..... before we take our proper .....8..... with others in the van of human civilization and progress. And we have to .....9..... for the time at our disposal is .....10..... .

- |                     |                  |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 1. (a) aware        | (b) proud        |
| (c) reminded        | (d) fond         |
| 2. (a) customs      | (b) ceremonies   |
| (c) traditions      | (d) festivals    |
| 3. (a) return       | (b) glorify      |
| (c) sing            | (d) cling        |
| 4. (a) appreciation | (b) enthusiasm   |
| (c) criticism       | (d) condemnation |
| 5. (a) reject       | (b) forget       |
| (c) avoid           | (d) remember     |
| 6. (a) blunt        | (b) demolish     |
| (c) disappear       | (d) spur         |
| 7. (a) out          | (b) for          |
| (c) up              | (d) of           |
| 8. (a) role         | (b) site         |
| (c) equation        | (d) station      |
| 9. (a) tarry        | (b) hurry        |
| (c) ponder          | (d) debate       |
| 10. (a) scarce      | (b) sufficient   |
| (c) plenty          | (d) limited      |

### Passage 9

Something has happened in the last twenty years that surely must .....1..... anything that has happened before. Some historians are already saying that thrust .....2..... space represents a vital turning point in history. Moon flights are considered .....3..... less than steps in human evolution .....4..... to the time when life on earth emerged from the sea and established itself on land. Of course, not everyone .....5..... enraptured by space. Critics have often said that space flight has been an .....6..... use of resources that should have .....7..... to feeding, clothing and housing people. There is, however, no proof that if we had .....8..... been working on space we would have done anything of great human value. In fact,

research and exploration have a .....9..... spin-offs, quite apart from the fact that they demonstrate that .....10..... is alive and insatiably curious.

- |                                      |                                   |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. (a) terminate<br>(c) precede      | (b) transcend<br>(d) recede       |
| 2. (a) on<br>(c) in                  | (b) upon<br>(d) into              |
| 3. (a) nothing<br>(c) sufficiently   | (b) certainly<br>(d) probably     |
| 4. (a) exceeding<br>(c) comparable   | (b) contrasting<br>(d) matching   |
| 5. (a) was<br>(c) had been           | (b) has been<br>(d) being         |
| 6. (a) economical<br>(c) appropriate | (b) extravagant<br>(d) benevolent |
| 7. (a) devoted<br>(c) reserved       | (b) allotted<br>(d) gone          |
| 8. (a) not<br>(c) seldom             | (b) occasionally<br>(d) possibly  |
| 9. (a) renowned<br>(c) remarkable    | (b) renounced<br>(d) relevant     |
| 10. (a) one<br>(c) human             | (b) man<br>(d) individual         |

### Passage 10

Tea prices in the domestic .....1..... continue to rule high in the .....2..... year despite the expectation of a .....3..... production as compared to the previous year. According to a preliminary assessment .....4..... on the weather .....5..... in recent months, tea output in 1990 may reach 740 million kg. as.....6.....700 million kg. last year. During the past three months, tea prices have generally shown an .....7..... Unlike last year, when tea prices rose dramatically, this year, prices seem to have .....8..... at a rather high level. In the subsequent four months, the .....9..... average price showed a downtrend but in September the prices have .....10..... hardened to a considerable extent.

- |                                    |                              |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. (a) sector<br>(c) area          | (b) production<br>(d) market |
| 2. (a) current<br>(c) second       | (b) first<br>(d) last        |
| 3. (a) large<br>(c) optimum        | (b) maximum<br>(d) higher    |
| 4. (a) conducted<br>(c) shared     | (b) based<br>(d) strategy    |
| 5. (a) outbursts<br>(c) conditions | (b) outbreak<br>(d) forecast |

- |                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| 6. (a) above     | (b) per        |
| (c) to           | (d) against    |
| 7. (a) downtrend | (b) increment  |
| (c) reduction    | (d) uptrend    |
| 8. (a) increased | (b) surfaced   |
| (c) synchronised | (d) stabilised |
| 9. (a) monthly   | (b) weekly     |
| (c) daily        | (d) annual     |
| 10. (a) then     |                |
| (b) never        |                |
| (c) again        |                |
| (d) since        |                |

### Passage 11

Our scientific spirit must be shocked not only by the .....1..... of fabulous .....2..... and .....3..... poverty, but also by those of intense holiness and .....4..... superstition. In our relations with one another, we have .....5..... to apply scientific and social wisdom. The failure is .....6..... large .....7..... our society. Some social .....8..... like untouchability are .....9..... simply because the spirit in us is oppressed by the force of .....10..... .These are practised by .....11..... kindly persons, who have ceased to feel and whose understanding is .....12..... by tradition. There are millions in our country today who use scientific .....13..... and yet .....14..... superstition as mystical revelation and adhere to absurd social customs .....15..... the name of tradition.

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. (a) phenomenon | (b) contrasts   |
| (c) existence     | (d) comparison  |
| 2. (a) property   | (b) prosperity  |
| (c) resources     | (d) wealth      |
| 3. (a) common     | (b) rampant     |
| (c) grovelling    | (d) growing     |
| 4. (a) religious  | (b) blind       |
| (c) popular       | (d) prevailing  |
| 5. (a) attempted  | (b) refused     |
| (c) succeeded     | (d) failed      |
| 6. (a) writ       | (b) written     |
| (c) wrought       | (d) wrapped     |
| 7. (a) in         | (b) on          |
| (c) among         | (d) for         |
| 8. (a) abuses     | (b) ceremonies  |
| (c) function      | (d) obligations |
| 9. (a) allowed    | (b) approved    |
| (c) tolerated     | (d) resisted    |

- |                     |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 10. (a) opinion     | (b) habit         |
| (c) society         | (d) custom        |
| 11. (a) fairly      | (b) very          |
| (c) otherwise       | (d) somewhat      |
| 12. (a) stupefied   | (b) sanctified    |
| (c) subsidized      | (b) substantiated |
| 13. (a) discoveries | (b) devices       |
| (c) apparatus       | (d) machines      |
| 14. (a) consider    | (b) decry         |
| (c) declare         | (d) revere        |
| 15. (a) on          | (b) for           |
| (c) in              | (d) with          |

### Passage 12

**Directions** In the following passages, some of the words have been left. Try to understand what it is about. Then fill in the blanks with the help of the alternatives given. [SSC CGL 2013]

When I go into stranger's library I ...1... round the bookshelves. This is to know the type of person he is and I feel that I know the ...2... to his mind.

A house without books is a ...3... house, no matter how rich the carpets are. These only tell you whether he ...4... a lot of money, but the books tell you whether he has a mind as well. It is not a ...5... of money that we do not buy books.

- |                      |              |
|----------------------|--------------|
| 1. (a) wonder        | (b) run      |
| (c) look             | (d) wander   |
| 2. (a) secret        | (b) mystery  |
| (c) key              | (d) solution |
| 3. (a) characterless | (b) bleak    |
| (c) unlucky          | (d) bad      |
| 4. (a) had           | (b) has      |
| (c) have             | (d) has had  |
| 5. (a) reason        | (b) question |
| (c) issue            | (d) cause    |

### Passage 13

Any regular viewer of programmes on the television will certainly have some reservations about commercials. When television shows are .....1... good, the commercials that ...2... them are a disgrace. One of the many bad ...3... of commercials is their loudness. They seem to be ...4... as loud as the programme and the viewer is almost ...5... when they come on. Any attempt ...6... conversation during commercials is futile. Commercials also take up too much time and ...7... too often.

The impression one ...8... gets is that the shows are sandwiched in ....9... long periods of advertising all of it the same. Often commercials ....10.... a show at a particularly in appropriate time. [SSC DEO 2013]

- |                                       |                                     |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. (a) reasonably<br>(c) unreasonably | (b) rationally<br>(d) irrationally  |
| 2. (a) join<br>(c) accompany          | (b) accommodate<br>(d) admit        |
| 3. (a) features<br>(c) property       | (b) feature<br>(d) mark             |
| 4. (a) two<br>(c) twice               | (b) pair<br>(d) double              |
| 5. (a) deafening<br>(c) deafened      | (b) blind<br>(d) deaf               |
| 6. (a) on<br>(c) to                   | (b) in<br>(d) at                    |
| 7. (a) repeat<br>(c) repeated         | (b) is repeated<br>(d) are repeated |
| 8. (a) usually<br>(c) use to          | (b) usual<br>(d) used to            |
| 9. (a) after<br>(c) between           | (b) before<br>(d) during            |
| 10. (a) involve<br>(c) invert         | (b) integrate<br>(d) interrupt      |

### Passage 14

There is an enemy beneath our ...1... He recognises no national boundaries, no ...2..... parties. Everyone in the world is .....3..... by him. The enemy is the Earth itself. The .....4..... of a quake is greater than .....5..... man himself can produce. But .....6..... scientists are directing more of their .....7..... into finding some way of .....8..... earthquakes and it is possible that at .....9..... time in the near future, .....10..... will have discovered a means of protecting itself from it. [SSC LDC 2012]

- |                                       |                                 |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. (a) shelter<br>(c) land            | (b) feet<br>(d) surface         |
| 2. (a) economical<br>(c) geographical | (b) historical<br>(d) political |
| 3. (a) threatened<br>(c) effected     | (b) feared<br>(d) dominated     |
| 4. (a) strength<br>(c) force          | (b) power<br>(d) ability        |
| 5. (a) everything<br>(c) something    | (b) nothing<br>(d) anything     |
| 6. (a) this day<br>(c) lately         | (b) today<br>(d) at present     |
| 7. (a) efforts<br>(c) capacity        | (b) strength<br>(d) tasks       |
| 8. (a) watching<br>(c) opposing       | (b) directing<br>(d) combating  |

9. (a) any (b) some  
(c) every (d) all
10. (a) scientists (b) humanity  
(c) people (d) mankind

### Passage 15

'Quit India' came not from the lips, but the aching hearts of millions. In this open rebellion, the Indian .....1..... reached its climax. The British were not only .....2..... by it, but also were obliged to quit unilaterally. The importance of Quit India can be .....3..... from Lord Linlithgow's statement, 'I am engaged here in meeting by far the most .....4..... rebellion since, that of 1857, the gravity and extent of which we have so far .....5..... from the world for reasons of military security.' Still more significant was Churchill's gloomy disclosure to the King Emperor that, 'the idea of .....6..... of power had become an admitted .....7..... in the minds of British party leaders, although his public statements were diametrically opposite.

The .....8..... created by Quit India made the British .....9..... that they could no longer keep India in .....10..... .

[SSC FCI 2012]

1. (a) freedom (b) patriotism  
(c) liberation (d) revolution
2. (a) threatened (b) inspired  
(c) attacked (d) impressed
3. (a) diffused (b) gauged  
(c) established (d) determined
4. (a) trivial (b) magnificent  
(c) serious (d) auspicious
5. (a) excluded (b) elicited  
(c) prevented (d) concealed
6. (a) transfer (b) seizure  
(c) grabbing (d) retainment
7. (a) tactics (b) fantasy  
(c) inevitability (d) occurrence
8. (a) violence (b) taboos  
(c) vengeance (d) anarchy
9. (a) imagine (b) pretend  
(c) realise (d) anxious
10. (a) power (b) bondage  
(c) exile (d) suspense

### Passage 16

No communication has ever provided so many people with as .....1..... a range of new .....2..... as television has. Without .....3..... their homes, people can watch Government Officials .....4..... important functions and see how people in .....5..... lands look and live. Television takes its .....6..... to deserts, jungles and even the sea floor. Television gives us a .....7..... of real life tragedy as when it comes to the .....8..... of war, natural disasters and poverty. It also .....9..... moments of great triumph, such as when the astronaut just .....10..... foot on the Moon.

[SSC CPO 2011]

- |                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. (a) large       | (b) wide         |
| (c) many           | (d) broad        |
| 2. (a) experiences | (b) incidents    |
| (c) happenings     | (d) anecdotes    |
| 3. (a) parting     | (b) moving       |
| (c) departing      | (d) leaving      |
| 4. (a) perform     | (b) accomplish   |
| (c) pursue         | (d) achieve      |
| 5. (a) far out     | (b) far off      |
| (c) by far         | (d) far and wide |
| 6. (a) watchers    | (b) audience     |
| (c) viewers        | (d) spectators   |
| 7. (a) glimpse     | (b) glance       |
| (c) look           | (d) sight        |
| 8. (a) wounded     | (b) army         |
| (c) victims        | (d) soldiers     |
| 9. (a) ceases      | (b) captures     |
| (c) seizes         | (d) catches      |
| 10. (a) set        | (b) put          |
| (c) kept           | (d) placed       |

### Passage 17

An archaeologist studies the .....1..... and from the .....2..... he finds, he is able to .....3..... the daily lives of men and women, who lived thousands of years ago. He makes a .....4..... study of those things which those men and women left .....5..... them.

From the .....6..... he judges the size of the animals their owners could kill, from their tools he learns what .....7..... they had mastered and from their pots, needles and combs, he .....8..... the domestic skills of their .....9..... Thus, it has been possible to write a generally .....10..... account of human evolution going back some half a million years.

[SSC CPO 2011]

- |              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. (a) rocks | (b) history |
| (c) past     | (d) future  |

- |                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 2. (a) witness    | (b) evidence     |
| (c) knowledge     | (d) matters      |
| 3. (a) create     | (b) build-up     |
| (c) rebuild       | (d) reconstruct  |
| 4. (a) scientific | (b) historic     |
| (c) realistic     | (d) research     |
| 5. (a) with       | (b) behind       |
| (c) under         | (d) below        |
| 6. (a) weapons    | (b) bullets      |
| (c) guns          | (d) targets      |
| 7. (a) industries | (b) products     |
| (c) crafts        | (d) knowledge    |
| 8. (a) values     | (b) assesses     |
| (c) judges        | (d) criticises   |
| 9. (a) friends    | (b) animals      |
| (c) women-folk    | (d) neighbours   |
| 10. (a) reliable  | (b) unmistakable |
| (c) perfect       | (d) dependable   |

### Passage 18

The last decade has been .....1..... for management education and development. When the economies of most Western countries were .....2..... in the early 1980's there were .....3..... cuts both in corporate training and in higher education. During the boom years of the mid 1980's there were some .....4..... in both areas. In the early 1990's industrialised countries were in the .....5..... of another severe recession and a .....6..... retrenchment was to be reasonably .....7..... throughout the training world.

But this has not been the case so far. Many leading companies are .....8..... their belief in training as the key to future competitiveness and governments are .....9..... an era of rapid .....10..... in higher education.

[SSC CGL 2011]

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. (a) dogmatic   | (b) paradoxical |
| (c) praiseworthy  | (d) outstanding |
| 2. (a) galvanised | (b) developing  |
| (c) faltering     | (d) privatised  |
| 3. (a) judicious  | (b) marginal    |
| (c) proportionate | (d) severe      |
| 4. (a) reactions  | (b) slashing    |
| (c) pro-activity  | (d) curiosity   |
| 5. (a) area       | (b) grip        |
| (c) context       | (d) mood        |
| 6. (a) critical   | (b) profound    |
| (c) slight        | (d) tough       |
| 7. (a) fabricated | (b) advocated   |
| (c) projected     | (d) expected    |

- |                     |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 8. (a) asserting    | (b) rejecting     |
| (c) managing        | (d) criticising   |
| 9. (a) establishing | (b) encouraging   |
| (c) circulating     | (d) preaching     |
| 10. (a) degradation | (b) communication |
| (c) exhibition      | (d) expansion     |

### Passage 19

The word 'ticket' is .....1..... to every language in India. ....2..... those who are actively .....3..... in the political process .....4..... a ticket as permission to .....5..... an election as candidate .....6..... a political party. The .....7..... if elected, sits in the .....8..... assembly or any other .....9..... for which he/she contests, as .....10..... of that party.

- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. (a) general     | (b) peculiar    |
| (c) common         | (d) familiar    |
| 2. (a) So          | (b) But         |
| (c) And            | (d) Since       |
| 3. (a) involved    | (b) scene       |
| (c) leading        | (d) attracted   |
| 4. (a) look        | (b) interpret   |
| (c) interfere      | (d) interrupt   |
| 5. (a) stand in    | (b) campaign    |
| (c) vote           | (d) contest     |
| 6. (a) inside      | (b) of          |
| (c) for            | (d) to          |
| 7. (a) leader      | (b) party       |
| (c) candidate      | (d) ticket      |
| 8. (a) legislative | (b) legal       |
| (c) political      | (d) electoral   |
| 9. (a) body        | (b) election    |
| (c) party          | (d) institute   |
| 10. (a) candidate  | (b) participant |
| (c) representative | (d) interpreter |

### Passage 20

I am delighted to see here the dignitaries representing their great countries. Their presence among us is a symbol of .....1..... in our efforts towards creating a sense of brotherhood among man. Our primary objective is promoting love and .....2..... We have to work towards .....3..... fear and mistrust. It is an admitted fact that violence is not .....4..... in the present world. Peace and love are major .....5..... of life. They are .....6..... upon each other. Each is .....7..... without the other. Peace cannot possibly be achieved without .....8..... in man, the subtle feelings of real love for his fellow human being. And this is not possible unless man becomes .....9..... of his own place in the universe. Human self is a highly important .....10..... of human nature.

[SSC Steno 2011]

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. (a) commonality<br>(c) solidarity   | (b) community<br>(d) sympathy       |
| 2. (a) harmony<br>(c) correspondence   | (b) balance<br>(d) agreement        |
| 3. (a) stamping<br>(c) terminating     | (b) eradicating<br>(d) abolishing   |
| 4. (a) maintainable<br>(c) sustainable | (b) workable<br>(d) supportable     |
| 5. (a) portion<br>(c) section          | (b) fixing<br>(d) ingredients       |
| 6. (a) coexistent<br>(c) reliable      | (b) interdependent<br>(d) symbiotic |
| 7. (a) impartial<br>(c) unfinished     | (b) undone<br>(d) incomplete        |
| 8. (a) awakening<br>(c) emerging       | (b) realising<br>(d) arising        |
| 9. (a) known<br>(c) aware              | (b) familiar<br>(d) acquainted      |
| 10. (a) parcel<br>(c) characterisation | (b) aspect<br>(d) view              |

### Passage 21

India and 25 other countries agreed to the Copenhagen Accord even as other developing countries accepted it as an irreversible decision later. The accord came out of .....1..... bargaining lasting almost 20 hours among .....2..... of governments of some of the most .....3..... countries of the world.

At the .....4..... of the day on Saturday, India .....5..... to have given ground on some .....6....., but blocked intrusion on other red lines. It had become .....7..... within the first week of the .....8..... that the best even the four emerging and .....9..... economies of the developing world were going to do was to defend the .....10..... economic resource sharing regimes.

[SSC Steno 2011]

- |                                   |                                 |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. (a) difficult<br>(c) easy      | (b) hard<br>(d) early           |
| 2. (a) rulers<br>(c) heads        | (b) kings<br>(d) chiefs         |
| 3. (a) influential<br>(c) useless | (b) corrupted<br>(d) beautiful  |
| 4. (a) middle<br>(c) night        | (b) evening<br>(d) end          |
| 5. (a) proved<br>(c) viewed       | (b) appeared<br>(d) cleared     |
| 6. (a) materials<br>(c) issues    | (b) thoughts<br>(d) discussions |

- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 7. (a) evident   | (b) ambiguous     |
| (c) vague        | (d) indecisive    |
| 8. (a) accord    | (b) talks         |
| (c) issues       | (d) thoughtial    |
| 9. (a) economic  | (b) political     |
| (c) powerful     | (d) praiseworthy  |
| 10. (a) expected | (b) existing      |
| (c) resultant    | (d) consequential |

### Passage 22

Martin Luther King, Jr was born Michael Luther King Jr, .....1..... his grandfather had his name .....2..... to Martin. Martin Luther attended segregated public schools in Georgia, .....3..... from high school at the age of fifteen; he received the BA degree in 1948 .....4..... Morehouse college, a distinguished Negro institution of Atlanta from which both his father and grandfather had graduated. After three years of .....5..... study at crozer. Theological seminary in Pennsylvania where he was elected President of a .....6..... white senior class, he was awarded the B D in 1951. ....7..... a fellowship won at Ebenezer he enrolled in graduate studies at Boston University, completing his residence .....8..... the doctorate in 1953 and receiving the degree in 1955. In Boston he .....9..... and married Coretta Scott, a young woman of .....10..... intellectual and artistic attainments. [SSC CPO 2011]

- |                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. (a) and           | (b) so            |
| (c) since            | (d) but           |
| 2. (a) given         | (b) changed       |
| (c) become           | (d) made          |
| 3. (a) graduating    | (b) finishing     |
| (c) graduated        | (d) finished      |
| 4. (a) in            | (b) from          |
| (c) by               | (d) with          |
| 5. (a) theological   | (b) intellectual  |
| (c) educational      | (d) psychological |
| 6. (a) predetermined | (b) predominantly |
| (c) significations   | (d) somewhat      |
| 7. (a) From          | (b) By            |
| (c) With             | (d) Through       |
| 8. (a) for           | (b) of            |
| (c) about            | (d) to            |
| 9. (a) saw           | (b) eloped        |
| (c) met              | (d) watched       |
| 10. (a) common       | (b) particular    |
| (c) uncommon         | (d) general       |

**Passage 23**

Almost every full Moon night, the officials in Andaman and Nicobar islands take part in a cautious ritual. The tribesmen watch from a safe distance as the officials .....1..... the island in a boat .....2..... gifts for them. The islanders come .....3..... hesitantly only after the officials .....4..... dumped the coconuts brought .....5..... them onto the beach and begin .....6..... away from their small island. On some nights the tribals even .....7..... up enough courage to swim upto a few feet .....8..... from the boat. The officials mention that they do .....9..... want to interfere with the way of life of the tribals. The island .....10..... heavily on the mainland for most foods.

[SSC CGL 2011]

- |                  |               |
|------------------|---------------|
| 1. (a) approach  | (b) depart    |
| (c) present      | (d) absent    |
| 2. (a) coming    | (b) leaving   |
| (c) carrying     | (d) relieving |
| 3. (a) forward   | (b) backward  |
| (c) sides        | (d) upward    |
| 4. (a) has       | (b) have      |
| (c) had          | (d) be        |
| 5. (a) by        | (b) to        |
| (c) in           | (d) for       |
| 6. (a) watching  | (b) seeing    |
| (c) sailing      | (d) stopping  |
| 7. (a) leave     | (b) muster    |
| (c) come         | (d) present   |
| 8. (a) correctly | (b) distantly |
| (c) near         | (d) away      |
| 9. (a) no        | (b) neither   |
| (c) not          | (d) nor       |
| 10. (a) spy      | (b) rely      |
| (c) occupy       | (d) reply     |

**Directions** In the following passages there are blanks, each of which has been numbered. These numbers are printed below the passage and against each, five words are suggested, one of which fits the blank appropriately. Find out the appropriate word in each case. [IBPS PO 2011]

**Passage 24**

As the country embarks on planning.....1..... the 12th Plan (2012-17) period, a key question mark .....2..... hangs over the process is on the energy requirements. Growth is energy hungry and the aspirations of growing at 9-10% will .....3..... huge demands on the energy resources of the country. In this energy jigsaw, renewable energy will.....4..... like never before in the 12th Plan and.....5.....

By the rule of the thumb India will.....6..... about 100 gigawatts (Gw) -100000 megawatts of capacity addition in the next five years. Encouraging trends on energy efficiency and sustained....7.....by some parts of the government-the Bureau of Energy Efficiency in particular needs to be complimented for this-have led to

substantially lesser energy intensity of economic growth. However, even the tempered demand numbers are.....8..... to be below 80 Gw. As against this need the coal supply from domestic sources is unlikely to support more than 25 Gw equivalent capacity. Imported coal can add some more, but at a much.....9..... cost. Gas-based electricity generation is unlikely to contribute anything substantial in view of the unprecedented gas supply challenges. Nuclear will be.....10..... in the foreseeable future. Between imported coal, gas, large hydro and nuclear, no more than 15-20Gw equivalent can be.....11..... to be added in the five-year time block.

.....12.....13.....this, capacity addition in the renewable energy based power generation has touched about 3Gw a year. In the coming five years, the overall capacity addition in the electricity grid.....14..... renewable energy is likely to range between 20Gw and 25Gw. Additionally, over and above the grid-based capacity, off-grid electricity applications are reaching remote places and.....15..... lives where grid-based electricity supply has miserably failed.

1. (a) on (b) against  
(c) for (d) onwards  
(e) at
2. (a) where (b) that  
(c) inside (d) always  
(e) who
3. (a) replace (b) forward  
(c) subject (d) place  
(e) demand
4. (a) light (b) pass  
(c) publish (d) feature  
(e) find
5. (a) earlier (b) likewise  
(c) publicity (d) next  
(e) after
6. (a) consumed (b) waste  
(c) require (d) highlight  
(e) generate
7. (a) developmental (b) structures  
(c) efforts (d) projections  
(e) practices
8. (a) likely (b) sure  
(c) unsure (d) unexpected  
(e) unlikely
9. (a) expected (b) nominal  
(c) excelled (d) higher  
(e) lower
10. (a) marginal (b) failure  
(c) success (d) dangerous  
(e) maximum
11. (a) sure (b) certain  
(c) linked (d) remarked  
(e) expected

12. (a) As (b) When  
(c) But (d) However  
(e) If
13. (a) against (b) for  
(c) with (d) is  
(e) ever
14. (a) capacity (b) through  
(c) project (d) versus  
(e) against
15. (a) generating (b) lightening  
(c) making (d) touching

**Directions** In the following passages there are blanks, each of which has been numbered. These numbers are printed below the passage and against each, five words/phrases are suggested, one of which fits the blank appropriately. Find out the appropriate word/phrase in each case.

[IBPS PO 2012]

### Passage 25

Greenhouse gases are only.....1..... of the story when it comes to global warming. Changes to one part of the climate system can.....2..... additional changes to the way the planet absorbs or reflects energy. These secondary changes are.....3..... climate feedbacks and they could more than double the amount of warming caused by carbon dioxide alone. The primary feedbacks are.....4.....to snow and ice, water vapour, clouds and the carbon cycle.

Perhaps the most well.....5..... feedback comes from melting snow and ice in the Northern Hemisphere. Warming temperatures are already.....6.....a growing percentage of Arctic sea ice, exposing dark ocean water during the.....7..... sunlight of summer. Snow cover on land is also.....8..... in many areas. In the.....9..... of snow and ice, these areas go from having bright, sunlight-reflecting surfaces that cool the planet to having dark, sunlight-absorbing surfaces that.....10..... more energy into the Earth system and cause more warming.

1. (a) whole (b) part  
(c) material (d) issue  
(e) most
2. (a) raise (b) brings  
(c) refer (d) stop  
(e) cause
3. (a) sensed (b) called  
(c) nothing (d) but  
(e) term
4. (a) due (b) results  
(c) reason (d) those  
(e) because
5. (a) done (b) known  
(c) ruled (d) bestowed  
(e) said

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 6. (a) mastering<br>(c) melting<br>(e) increasing  | (b) sending<br>(d) calming         |
| 7. (a) make-shift<br>(c) troubled<br>(e) absent    | (b) ceasing<br>(d) perpetual       |
| 8. (a) dwindling<br>(c) descending<br>(e) supplied | (b) manufactured<br>(d) generating |
| 9. (a) progress<br>(c) existence<br>(e) absence    | (b) reduced<br>(d) midst           |
| 10. (a) repel<br>(c) monitor<br>(e) access         | (b) waft<br>(d) bring              |

### Passage 26

Traditional bank architecture is based on bank branches. These branches ensure the physical.....1..... of a customer's savings. A customer may go there to deposit and withdraw money.....2..... loans and in other financial transactions. In the past two decades banking architecture has changed the.....3..... Automated Teller Machine (ATM) has been a big.....4..... and credit and debit cards have created new financial spaces.....5.....the bank branch has remained the bedrock of the banking system after all a person needs a bank account in a branch before he can operate a debit or ATM card. This may be about to change as technocrats now .....6.....cell phones as the new architecture of virtual banks. This has the potential to make branches.....7..... Cell phone banking looks especially relevant for India, since it can penetrate the countryside cheaply and.....8.....The world over cell phones are spreading at a.....9..... rate and in India alone new cell phone connection are growing at the rate of six million a month a rate of customer.....10..... that no bank can dream of.

[IBPS PO 2013]

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. (a) knowledge<br>(c) presence<br>(e) guarantee    | (b) security<br>(d) confidentiality |
| 2. (a) negotiate<br>(c) credit<br>(e) sanction       | (b) advance<br>(d) disburse         |
| 3. (a) pursue<br>(c) operate<br>(e) engage           | (b) interact<br>(d) enable          |
| 4. (a) drawback<br>(c) consequence<br>(e) innovation | (b) hurdle<br>(d) luxury            |
| 5. (a) Despite<br>(c) Even<br>(e) Until              | (b) Although<br>(d) Yet             |

6. (a) view (b) realise  
(c) display (d) engineer  
(e) assess
7. (a) essential (b) obsolete  
(c) extant (d) retreat  
(e) expired
8. (a) moderately (b) occasionally  
(c) compulsorily (d) indiscriminately  
(e) effectively
9. (a) phenomenal (b) gradual  
(c) proportionate (d) competitive  
(e) projected
10. (a) discount (b) base  
(c) expansion (d) satisfaction  
(e) relationship

**Directions** In the following passages at certain points you are given a choice of three words in brackets, one of which fits the meaning of the passage. Choose the word which best fits the meaning of the passage and mark the corresponding letter viz., (a), (b) or (c) on your answer sheet.

[CDS 2014]

### Passage 27

One of the most interesting new books published recently is 'Spaceship' by Prof E C Walker. Our Earth he says 1. (a) *is* like a spaceship and all the 400 million people  
(b) *have been*  
(c) *will be*

2. (a) *over* Earth are passengers on it. And we are heading 3. (a) *about* a disaster  
(b) *on* (b) *to*  
(c) *upon* (c) *towards*

The levels of atmospheric pollution 4. (a) *increasing* in the cities and industrial areas of  
(b) *arriving*  
(c) *coming*

the world could in no time change the weather patterns of the Earth, raising the temperature. 5. (a) *in* the whole of planet. If this rose a few 6. (a) *degrees* the deserts  
(b) *of* (b) *steps*  
(c) *for* (c) *miles*

of the world would expand to double their size. The polar ice caps would start melting. If the polar ice caps melted, the 7. (a) *water level* all over the world would rise  
(b) *ice*  
(c) *sea*

8. (a) *in* about 60 m. Prof Walker's 9. (a) *idea* is not at all about gloom and doom.  
(b) *by* (b) *thought*  
(c) *to* (c) *book*

He admits that the 10. (a) *ideas* he describes could take thousands of years.  
(b) *solutions*  
(c) *changes*

### Passage 28

Sometimes the messages are sent with **1.** (a) *many* accompanying words and we  
(b) *few*  
(c) *no*

speak in **2.** (a) *body* language alone. But, what gestures make **3.** (a) with  
(b) *signal* (b) *up*  
(c) *foreign* (c) *into*

body language? Most of us are **4.** (a) *easy* with the common hand gestures. Some  
(b) *familiar*  
(c) *efficient*

**5.** (a) *students* cannot talk without using their hands. **6.** (a) *We* reach out as they  
(b) *people* (b) *Arms*  
(c) *officers* (c) *They*

explain almost **7.** (a) *exacting* their words, emphasising and exaggerating and  
(b) *shaping*  
(c) *changing*

**8.** (a) *teaching* with their hands. Other people hardly **9.** (a) *adjust* their hands at  
(b) *holding* (b) *use*  
(c) *punctuating* (c) *wave*

all when they **10.** (a) *lecture*  
(b) *unite*  
(c) *wave*

### Passage 29

A young man riding a motor-cycle approached a policeman in a market place and sought his assistance in reaching a particular locality. The policeman gave him some **1.** (a) *instructions* and the motor-cyclist left. He **2.** (a) *reached* back after some time  
[CDS 2013]  
(b) *directions* (b) *came*  
(c) *advice* (c) *went*

and **3.** (a) *asked* the policeman that he could not **4.** (a) *find* the place. The policeman  
(b) *convinced* (b) *hit*  
(c) *told* (c) *see*

got the **5.** (a) *idea* to help him and agreed to **6.** (a) *start* with the motor-cyclist.  
(b) *inclination* (b) *go*  
(c) *urge* (c) *proceed* On reaching the

**7.** (a) *station* the motor-cyclist left in a hurry leaving the policeman  
(b) *destination*  
(c) *spot*

on the road. The policeman was surprised and returned to his spot. A little later, a senior police officer reached the place and took the policeman to task for dereliction of duty.

# ANSWERS

## Part B

### 2. One Word Substitution

#### Exercise A

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (c)  | 2. (b)  | 3. (b)  | 4. (b)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (a)  | 7. (a)  |
| 8. (a)  | 9. (a)  | 10. (a) | 11. (c) | 12. (a) | 13. (c) | 14. (d) |
| 15. (a) | 16. (c) | 17. (b) | 18. (d) | 19. (a) | 20. (a) | 21. (d) |
| 22. (a) | 23. (b) | 24. (c) | 25. (d) | 26. (b) | 27. (c) | 28. (a) |
| 29. (b) | 30. (d) | 31. (b) | 32. (c) | 33. (a) | 34. (c) | 35. (c) |
| 36. (a) | 37. (c) | 38. (c) | 39. (b) | 40. (c) |         |         |

#### Exercise B

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (b)  | 2. (d)  | 3. (a)  | 4. (a)  | 5. (b)  | 6. (d)  | 7. (a)  |
| 8. (d)  | 9. (a)  | 10. (b) | 11. (b) | 12. (d) | 13. (c) | 14. (a) |
| 15. (a) | 16. (b) | 17. (a) | 18. (b) | 19. (d) | 20. (c) | 21. (b) |
| 22. (a) | 23. (c) | 24. (b) | 25. (b) | 26. (a) | 27. (c) | 28. (c) |
| 29. (c) | 30. (b) | 31. (a) | 32. (b) | 33. (a) | 34. (d) | 35. (d) |
| 36. (d) | 37. (d) | 38. (d) |         |         |         |         |

### 4. Synonyms and Antonyms

#### Revision Exercises (Based on Synonyms)

#### Exercise A

- |        |        |         |         |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. (b) | 2. (c) | 3. (d)  | 4. (b)  | 5. (a) | 6. (c) | 7. (a) |
| 8. (b) | 9. (a) | 10. (b) | 11. (c) |        |        |        |

#### Exercise B

- |        |        |         |         |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. (a) | 2. (b) | 3. (c)  | 4. (a)  | 5. (c) | 6. (c) | 7. (b) |
| 8. (a) | 9. (a) | 10. (b) | 11. (b) |        |        |        |

#### Exercise C

- |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |
|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (c) | 2. (c) | 3. (c)  | 4. (a)  | 5. (b)  | 6. (d)  | 7. (b)  |
| 8. (b) | 9. (d) | 10. (b) | 11. (a) | 12. (a) | 13. (d) | 14. (c) |

#### Exercise D

- |        |        |         |         |         |         |        |
|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|--------|
| 1. (d) | 2. (c) | 3. (d)  | 4. (c)  | 5. (b)  | 6. (d)  | 7. (b) |
| 8. (b) | 9. (d) | 10. (a) | 11. (c) | 12. (b) | 13. (c) |        |

#### Exercise E

- |        |        |        |        |        |  |  |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--|--|
| 1. (c) | 2. (a) | 3. (a) | 4. (c) | 5. (c) |  |  |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--|--|

**Exercise F**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (b)  | 2. (a)  | 3. (b)  | 4. (c)  | 5. (b)  | 6. (b)  | 7. (c)  |
| 8. (a)  | 9. (a)  | 10. (a) | 11. (a) | 12. (d) | 13. (a) | 14. (b) |
| 15. (c) | 16. (b) | 17. (c) | 18. (c) | 19. (d) | 20. (b) | 21. (b) |
| 22. (c) | 23. (a) | 24. (b) | 25. (a) | 26. (d) | 27. (a) | 28. (a) |
| 29. (b) | 30. (b) | 31. (b) | 32. (a) | 33. (b) | 34. (d) | 35. (b) |
| 36. (c) | 37. (a) | 38. (c) | 39. (a) | 40. (a) | 41. (b) | 42. (d) |

**Exercise G**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (b)  | 2. (b)  | 3. (c)  | 4. (b)  | 5. (b)  | 6. (c)  | 7. (b)  |
| 8. (b)  | 9. (b)  | 10. (c) | 11. (d) | 12. (c) | 13. (c) | 14. (d) |
| 15. (a) | 16. (d) | 17. (b) | 18. (c) | 19. (b) | 20. (a) |         |

**Exercise H**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (d)  | 2. (a)  | 3. (c)  | 4. (c)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (b)  | 7. (d)  |
| 8. (c)  | 9. (d)  | 10. (b) | 11. (b) | 12. (a) | 13. (a) | 14. (c) |
| 15. (c) | 16. (b) | 17. (c) | 18. (b) | 19. (a) | 20. (d) | 21. (c) |
| 22. (a) | 23. (b) | 24. (b) | 25. (b) | 26. (b) | 27. (a) | 28. (b) |
| 29. (c) | 30. (c) | 31. (d) | 32. (c) | 33. (a) | 34. (a) | 35. (b) |
| 36. (a) | 37. (d) | 38. (c) | 39. (c) | 40. (d) | 41. (c) | 42. (b) |
| 43. (b) | 44. (a) | 45. (c) | 46. (c) | 47. (a) | 48. (b) | 49. (c) |
| 50. (b) | 51. (c) | 52. (d) | 53. (c) | 54. (a) | 55. (b) | 56. (c) |
| 57. (b) | 58. (b) | 59. (b) | 60. (d) | 61. (b) | 62. (d) | 63. (a) |
| 64. (a) | 65. (b) | 66. (b) | 67. (c) | 68. (a) | 69. (d) | 70. (d) |
| 71. (b) | 72. (b) | 73. (d) | 74. (a) | 75. (c) | 76. (d) | 77. (b) |
| 78. (c) | 79. (c) | 80. (a) | 81. (c) | 82. (b) | 83. (c) | 84. (b) |
| 85. (b) | 86. (a) | 87. (b) | 88. (d) | 89. (a) | 90. (b) | 91. (c) |
| 92. (d) | 93. (c) | 94. (a) | 95. (b) | 96. (d) | 97. (b) | 98. (d) |
| 99. (d) |         |         |         |         |         |         |

### Revision Exercises

(Based on Antonyms)

**Exercise A**

- |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. (a) | 2. (a) | 3. (c) | 4. (b) | 5. (b) | 6. (b) |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|

**Exercise B**

- |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. (a) | 2. (a) | 3. (a) | 4. (b) | 5. (a) | 6. (b) | 7. (b) |
| 8. (a) |        |        |        |        |        |        |

**Exercise C**

- |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. (c) | 2. (c) | 3. (d) | 4. (c) | 5. (d) | 6. (b) | 7. (b) |
| 8. (c) |        |        |        |        |        |        |

**Exercise D**

- |         |        |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (d)  | 2. (d) | 3. (a)  | 4. (b)  | 5. (d)  | 6. (c)  | 7. (a)  |
| 8. (b)  | 9. (a) | 10. (a) | 11. (b) | 12. (b) | 13. (b) | 14. (b) |
| 15. (c) |        |         |         |         |         |         |

**Exercise E**

- |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. (b) | 2. (c) | 3. (c) | 4. (d) | 5. (d) | 6. (b) | 7. (d) |
| 8. (d) |        |        |        |        |        |        |

**Exercise F**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (c)  | 2. (d)  | 3. (a)  | 4. (d)  | 5. (d)  | 6. (d)  | 7. (b)  |
| 8. (c)  | 9. (a)  | 10. (d) | 11. (b) | 12. (d) | 13. (b) | 14. (a) |
| 15. (b) | 16. (b) | 17. (b) | 18. (b) | 19. (a) | 20. (d) | 21. (c) |
| 22. (a) | 23. (d) | 24. (c) | 25. (c) | 26. (b) | 27. (a) | 28. (b) |
| 29. (d) | 30. (b) | 31. (a) | 32. (b) | 33. (c) | 34. (a) | 35. (c) |
| 36. (d) |         |         |         |         |         |         |

**Exercise G**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (c)  | 2. (c)  | 3. (b)  | 4. (a)  | 5. (d)  | 6. (d)  | 7. (c)  |
| 8. (d)  | 9. (a)  | 10. (b) | 11. (a) | 12. (b) | 13. (a) | 14. (c) |
| 15. (c) | 16. (d) | 17. (b) | 18. (d) | 19. (a) | 20. (a) | 21. (d) |
| 22. (c) | 23. (c) | 24. (a) | 25. (c) | 26. (c) | 27. (b) | 28. (b) |

**Exercise H**

- |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. (d)   | 2. (a)   | 3. (d)   | 4. (b)   | 5. (b)   | 6. (c)   | 7. (c)   |
| 8. (a)   | 9. (a)   | 10. (d)  | 11. (b)  | 12. (b)  | 13. (b)  | 14. (b)  |
| 15. (a)  | 16. (a)  | 17. (a)  | 18. (b)  | 19. (c)  | 20. (c)  | 21. (a)  |
| 22. (b)  | 23. (b)  | 24. (a)  | 25. (c)  | 26. (a)  | 27. (b)  | 28. (c)  |
| 29. (b)  | 30. (c)  | 31. (a)  | 32. (c)  | 33. (a)  | 34. (a)  | 35. (d)  |
| 36. (a)  | 37. (b)  | 38. (b)  | 39. (a)  | 40. (c)  | 41. (c)  | 42. (a)  |
| 43. (b)  | 44. (b)  | 45. (d)  | 46. (d)  | 47. (c)  | 48. (a)  | 49. (a)  |
| 50. (d)  | 51. (a)  | 52. (a)  | 53. (d)  | 54. (c)  | 55. (c)  | 56. (b)  |
| 57. (b)  | 58. (a)  | 59. (c)  | 60. (a)  | 61. (c)  | 62. (b)  | 63. (a)  |
| 64. (b)  | 65. (d)  | 66. (a)  | 67. (b)  | 68. (a)  | 69. (c)  | 70. (c)  |
| 71. (a)  | 72. (a)  | 73. (b)  | 74. (c)  | 75. (a)  | 76. (a)  | 77. (b)  |
| 78. (d)  | 79. (b)  | 80. (b)  | 81. (a)  | 82. (b)  | 83. (b)  | 84. (a)  |
| 85. (c)  | 86. (b)  | 87. (d)  | 88. (a)  | 89. (b)  | 90. (a)  | 91. (d)  |
| 92. (b)  | 93. (c)  | 94. (a)  | 95. (c)  | 96. (b)  | 97. (d)  | 98. (d)  |
| 99. (b)  | 100. (b) | 101. (b) | 102. (a) | 103. (d) | 104. (d) | 105. (a) |
| 106. (a) | 107. (a) | 108. (b) | 109. (a) | 110. (b) | 111. (a) | 112. (d) |

**6. The Sentence Completion****Revision Exercises****Exercise A**

- |         |        |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (d)  | 2. (b) | 3. (a)  | 4. (c)  | 5. (b)  | 6. (c)  | 7. (c)  |
| 8. (d)  | 9. (c) | 10. (b) | 11. (d) | 12. (a) | 13. (a) | 14. (c) |
| 15. (d) |        |         |         |         |         |         |

**Exercise B**

- |         |        |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (d)  | 2. (c) | 3. (d)  | 4. (c)  | 5. (d)  | 6. (d)  | 7. (a)  |
| 8. (a)  | 9. (c) | 10. (c) | 11. (c) | 12. (d) | 13. (d) | 14. (a) |
| 15. (b) |        |         |         |         |         |         |

**Exercise C**

- |         |        |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (b)  | 2. (d) | 3. (b)  | 4. (d)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (d)  | 7. (b)  |
| 8. (a)  | 9. (a) | 10. (a) | 11. (d) | 12. (c) | 13. (c) | 14. (d) |
| 15. (d) |        |         |         |         |         |         |

**Exercise D**

- |         |        |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (b)  | 2. (d) | 3. (d)  | 4. (d)  | 5. (d)  | 6. (d)  | 7. (d)  |
| 8. (d)  | 9. (a) | 10. (a) | 11. (d) | 12. (a) | 13. (d) | 14. (c) |
| 15. (d) |        |         |         |         |         |         |

**Exercise E**

- |         |        |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (a)  | 2. (b) | 3. (b)  | 4. (d)  | 5. (b)  | 6. (c)  | 7. (a)  |
| 8. (c)  | 9. (d) | 10. (d) | 11. (c) | 12. (b) | 13. (c) | 14. (d) |
| 15. (a) |        |         |         |         |         |         |

**Exercise F**

- |         |        |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (d)  | 2. (d) | 3. (b)  | 4. (a)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (b)  | 7. (b)  |
| 8. (c)  | 9. (c) | 10. (b) | 11. (d) | 12. (a) | 13. (d) | 14. (c) |
| 15. (b) |        |         |         |         |         |         |

**Exercise G**

- |         |        |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (c)  | 2. (c) | 3. (d)  | 4. (c)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (c)  | 7. (d)  |
| 8. (c)  | 9. (a) | 10. (a) | 11. (a) | 12. (a) | 13. (a) | 14. (b) |
| 15. (c) |        |         |         |         |         |         |

**Exercise H**

- |         |        |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (a)  | 2. (b) | 3. (a)  | 4. (b)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (c)  | 7. (c)  |
| 8. (d)  | 9. (d) | 10. (c) | 11. (b) | 12. (d) | 13. (c) | 14. (d) |
| 15. (d) |        |         |         |         |         |         |

**Exercise I**

- |        |        |         |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. (c) | 2. (c) | 3. (c)  | 4. (a) | 5. (b) | 6. (a) | 7. (b) |
| 8. (a) | 9. (a) | 10. (a) |        |        |        |        |

**Exercise J**

- |        |        |         |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. (d) | 2. (c) | 3. (c)  | 4. (c) | 5. (b) | 6. (c) | 7. (c) |
| 8. (d) | 9. (c) | 10. (d) |        |        |        |        |

**Exercise K**

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (a)  | 2. (c)  | 3. (b)  | 4. (c)  | 5. (b)  | 6. (b)  | 7. (b)  |
| 8. (d)  | 9. (a)  | 10. (c) | 11. (b) | 12. (a) | 13. (c) | 14. (b) |
| 15. (a) | 16. (b) | 17. (b) | 18. (c) | 19. (a) | 20. (d) | 21. (a) |
| 22. (d) | 23. (b) | 24. (a) | 25. (a) | 26. (c) | 27. (b) | 28. (c) |
| 29. (c) | 30. (c) |         |         |         |         |         |

**7. Cloze Test****Passage 1**

- |        |        |         |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. (c) | 2. (a) | 3. (b)  | 4. (b) | 5. (b) | 6. (c) | 7. (a) |
| 8. (b) | 9. (a) | 10. (b) |        |        |        |        |

**Passage 2**

- |        |        |         |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. (a) | 2. (c) | 3. (a)  | 4. (b) | 5. (a) | 6. (b) | 7. (a) |
| 8. (b) | 9. (c) | 10. (b) |        |        |        |        |

**Passage 3**

- |        |        |         |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. (b) | 2. (a) | 3. (d)  | 4. (c) | 5. (b) | 6. (a) | 7. (c) |
| 8. (d) | 9. (b) | 10. (a) |        |        |        |        |

**Passage 4**

- |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. (b) | 2. (c) | 3. (c) | 4. (d) | 5. (c) | 6. (a) |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|

**Passage 5**

- |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. (a) | 2. (d) | 3. (e) | 4. (c) | 5. (a) | 6. (c) | 7. (e) |
| 8. (d) |        |        |        |        |        |        |

**Passage 6**

1. (b)    2. (d)    3. (a)    4. (c)    5. (d)    6. (c)    7. (b)  
8. (d)    9. (b)    10. (c)

**Passage 7**

1. (c)    2. (a)    3. (b)    4. (c)    5. (a)    6. (d)    7. (b)  
8. (c)    9. (d)    10. (a)

**Passage 8**

1. (b)    2. (c)    3. (d)    4. (a)    5. (b)    6. (a)    7. (c)  
8. (a)    9. (b)    10. (d)

**Passage 9**

1. (b)    2. (d)    3. (a)    4. (c)    5. (a)    6. (b)    7. (d)  
8. (a)    9. (c)    10. (b)

**Passage 10**

1. (d)    2. (a)    3. (d)    4. (b)    5. (c)    6. (d)    7. (d)  
8. (d)    9. (a)    10. (c)

**Passage 11**

1. (c)    2. (c)    3. (d)    4. (a)    5. (d)    6. (a)    7. (b)  
8. (a)    9. (c)    10. (b)    11. (a)    12. (b)    13. (b)    14. (a)  
15. (c)

**Passage 12**

1. (c)    2. (c)    3. (d)    4. (b)    5. (b)

**Passage 13**

1. (a)    2. (c)    3. (a)    4. (c)    5. (c)    6. (d)    7. (d)  
8. (a)    9. (c)    10. (d)

**Passage 14**

1. (b)    2. (d)    3. (a)    4. (a)    5. (d)    6. (b)    7. (a)  
8. (d)    9. (b)    10. (a)

**Passage 15**

1. (b)    2. (a)    3. (b)    4. (c)    5. (c)    6. (a)    7. (c)  
8. (d)    9. (c)    10. (b)

**Passage 16**

1. (c)    2. (a)    3. (d)    4. (a)    5. (b)    6. (c)    7. (a)  
8. (c)    9. (b)    10. (a)

**Passage 17**

1. (c)    2. (b)    3. (b)    4. (a)    5. (b)    6. (a)    7. (c)  
8. (b)    9. (c)    10. (c)

**Passage 18**

1. (b)    2. (c)    3. (d)    4. (a)    5. (b)    6. (a)    7. (d)  
8. (a)    9. (b)    10. (d)

**Passage 19**

1. (c)    2. (a)    3. (c)    4. (a)    5. (d)    6. (c)    7. (a)  
8. (a)    9. (d)    10. (c)

**Passage 20**

1. (c)    2. (a)    3. (b)    4. (c)    5. (d)    6. (b)    7. (d)  
8. (a)    9. (c)    10. (b)

**Passage 21**

1. (b)    2. (c)    3. (a)    4. (d)    5. (b)    6. (c)    7. (a)  
8. (b)    9. (c)    10. (b)

**Passage 22**

1. (d)    2. (a)    3. (b)    4. (b)    5. (a)    6. (b)    7. (c)  
8. (a)    9. (c)    10. (c)

**Passage 23**

1. (a)    2. (c)    3. (a)    4. (b)    5. (d)    6. (c)    7. (b)  
8. (d)    9. (c)    10. (b)

**Passage 24**

1. (c)    2. (b)    3. (d)    4. (d)    5. (e)    6. (c)    7. (c)  
8. (e)    9. (d)    10. (a)    11. (e)    12. (a)    13. (a)    14. (b)  
15. (b)

**Passage 25**

1. (b)    2. (e)    3. (b)    4. (a)    5. (b)    6. (c)    7. (d)  
8. (a)    9. (e)    10. (e)

**Passage 26**

1. (b)    2. (d)    3. (c)    4. (e)    5. (d)    6. (a)    7. (b)  
8. (e)    9. (a)    10. (c)

**Passage 27**

1. (a)    2. (b)    3. (c)    4. (a)    5. (b)    6. (a)    7. (c)  
8. (b)    9. (b)    10. (c)

**Passage 28**

1. (c)    2. (b)    3. (b)    4. (b)    5. (b)    6. (c)    7. (b)  
8. (b)    9. (b)    10. (a)

**Passage 29**

1. (b)    2. (b)    3. (c)    4. (a)    5. (a)    6. (b)    7. (b)

## PART C

# 1

# Sequence of Sentences

---

## Sequence of Sentences and Paragraphs

One of the questions set in the objective test in English relates to Sequence of Sentences. A student is required to rearrange the parts of a sentence into a meaningful paragraph. Infact there are no hard and fast rules for this kind of test.

Only sound knowledge of English language and constant practice may enable a student to grasp the meaning of the rearranged sentences or reconstructed paragraphs. This section of the book in your hand equips the students with the essentials of this kind of test.

### Type I : Reconstruction of a Sentence

In this type of rearrangement of sentences six parts of a **sentence** are given. The positions of sentences 1 and 6 are fixed. The rest of the four parts are numbered as PQRS which are jumbled. A student is expected to arrange these four parts in a meaningful sequence and mark the correct order from among the alternatives provided. *For example*

1 : It is well-known that

P : youngsters in the cities and the villages

Q : The effect

R : of the cinema

S : on the school and college going

6 : is very bad

(a) Q S P R

(b) Q R S P

(c) R S P Q

(d) R Q P S

The correct sequence is (b) Q R S P.

### Type II : Reconstruction of a Paragraph

In this type of questions six sentences are given. The first and the sixth sentences of the paragraph are labelled as  $S_1$  and  $S_6$  respectively. The middle four sentences are jumbled up. A candidate is required to find the proper order for the four sentences to make a meaningful paragraph. Consider  $S_1$  as the first sentence and  $S_6$  as the last one.

*For example*



3. Which sentence should come third in the paragraph?

- (a) E (b) D  
(c) B (d) C  
(e) A

The correct answer is (b).

4. Which sentence should come second in the paragraph?

- (a) B (b) E  
(c) D (d) A  
(e) C

The correct answer is (b).

5. Which sentence should come fourth in the paragraph?

- (a) A (b) D  
(c) E (d) B  
(e) C

The correct answer is (e).

## Work Book Exercise A

(Jumbled Parts of a Sentence)

**Directions** In the following questions, the first and the last parts of the sentence are numbered as 1 and 6. The rest of the sentence is split into four parts and are named as P, Q, R and S. These four parts are not given in their proper order. Read the jumbled parts of the sentence and find out which of the four combinations is correct. Then find the correct answer.

1. 1 : India has been a land  
P : but in the sense that learning has always been very highly valued  
Q : not indeed in the sense that education has been universal  
R : and the learned man has been held in higher esteem  
S : of learning throughout the ages  
6 : than the warrior or the administrator.  
(a) P Q S R (b) R Q P S  
(c) R S Q P (d) S Q P R
2. 1 : Religion has been used  
P : both as a weapon of isolation  
Q : to dull awareness  
R : about real problems  
S : and as morphia  
6 : like education, health and employment.  
(a) P Q R S (b) P S Q R  
(c) Q P S R (d) R P Q S
3. 1 : In spite of an unprecedented boom in the market  
P : and had to remain content  
Q : the paper-dealer could not  
R : push up his sales  
S : with a volume of sale lower than  
6 : what he had sold the previous year.  
(a) Q R P S (b) S P R Q  
(c) P R Q S (d) R P S Q

4. S<sub>1</sub> : For some people patriotism  
 S<sub>6</sub> : as much as to any one country.  
 P : today man belongs to the whole world  
 Q : it should be condemned because  
 R : type of patriotism is an evil and  
 S : means hatred for other countries, but this  
 (a) S R Q P (b) P Q S R  
 (c) R S P Q (d) Q P S R
5. S<sub>1</sub> : A connection had long been suspected  
 S<sub>6</sub> : of this connection had not been understood.  
 P : since both were at their worst in the  
 Q : same regions and seasons, but the nature  
 R : between the abundance of mosquitoes  
 S : and the occurrence of malaria  
 (a) Q S P R (b) R S P Q  
 (c) P S Q R (d) S P R Q
6. S<sub>1</sub> : Science does not merely add new truths  
 S<sub>6</sub> : men's thinking and their lives.  
 P : destroy some old truths and  
 Q : discovers new truths that  
 R : thereby upsets the way of  
 S : to old ones, it also  
 (a) Q S R P (b) R P S Q  
 (c) P S R Q (d) S Q P R
7. S<sub>1</sub> : An outstanding feature of this century has been  
 S<sub>6</sub> : has meant greater political power.  
 P : living conditions of the  
 Q : the improvement of the income and  
 R : greater security and education which  
 S : working man leading to  
 (a) P S Q R (b) R S P Q  
 (c) Q P S R (d) S R Q P
8. S<sub>1</sub> : Hobbies can fill our spare  
 S<sub>6</sub> : do not hinder our regular work.  
 P : physical fatigue and  
 Q : moments with enjoyment  
 R : and pleasure, they also relieve  
 S : mental tiredness and  
 (a) R Q P S (b) Q R S P  
 (c) S Q P R (d) P Q S R
9. S<sub>1</sub> : Moisture is continuously lost  
 S<sub>6</sub> : lifeless complexion.  
 P : and as result of the stresses  
 Q : as part of a natural process  
 R : and strains of daily life  
 S : leading to a dull, dry and  
 (a) S Q P R (b) P R S Q  
 (c) R S Q P (d) Q P R S

## Work Book Exercise B

**Directions** In the following items, some parts of the sentence have been jumbled up. You are required to re-arrange these parts which are labelled as P, Q, R and S to produce the correct sentence. Choose the proper sequence.

1. So, now India can lose out at first base because it's too busy chasing an  
P  
ephemeral dream either put aside its hopes of getting the veto power and  
Q  
first concentrate on ensuring that the Security Council is enlarged or  
R S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

- (a) Q P S R (b) S R Q P  
 (c) Q R S P (d) S P Q R
2. But Nelson Mandela modern country in a modern way and could run a new,  
P Q  
shifted the beliefs of the people so they could heal the racial conflict  
R S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

- (a) R S Q P (b) Q P R S  
 (c) R S P Q (d) Q S R P
3. But, Kuala Lumpur where modern Malay executives  
P  
but will never miss Friday prayers might have a cellular phone in hand,  
Q R  
is a city firmly rooted in tradition  
S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

- (a) R Q S P (b) S P R Q  
 (c) R P S Q (d) S Q R P
4. If farming life is not to collapse, there is need for as a profession and as a way of  
P Q  
attention today to farmers' needs in the areas  
R  
of water, credit, technology, market and land and agrarian reforms  
S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

- (a) Q P R S (b) R S Q P  
 (c) Q S R P (d) R P Q S
5. Having achieved success to ride the next big outsourcing wave  
P  
in software exports and information technology areas,  
Q  
-this time in manufacturing from the U.S.  
R  
Indian manufacturers-exporters are well equipped  
S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

- (a) P S Q R (b) Q R P S  
(c) P R Q S (d) Q S P R

6. It shows it is also conscious of its India means business;

P Q

sovereignty and elements that threaten it

R

while it is for transparent and open ties

S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

- (a) Q S P R (b) P R Q S  
(c) Q R P S (d) P S Q R

7. Travel to where you don't know the local language and see how your

P Q

a foreign country, even a region of India hands and expressions do the talking

R

S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

- (a) S Q P R (b) R P Q S  
(c) S P Q R (d) R Q P S

8. If fair play fair trade and the protection of the planet, is going to encompass

P Q

in sport's many codes of conduct these should be enshrined

R

S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

- (a) Q S P R (b) R P S Q  
(c) Q P S R (d) R S P Q

9. While the recent century show that the June rainfall is

P

of a drought, India's rainfall data for over a rain may have soothed concerns

Q

R

no predictor of the monsoon's outcome

S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

- (a) P S R Q (b) R Q P S  
(c) P Q R S (d) R S P Q

10. On the contrary, in countries like China and the other Pacific countries,

P

permission for shooting but also film-makers not only obtain quick

Q

R

get subsidies to undertake the job

S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

- (a) P R Q S (b) Q S P R  
(c) P S Q R (d) Q R P S

11. There are from different walks of life as human rights

P

so much is written by so many persons very few subjects in

Q

R

contemporary times on which

S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

- (a) Q S R P (b) R P Q S  
(c) Q P R S (d) R S Q P

12. Scientists carrying glacier feeding the Ganga may melt before the end of the 21st

P

century because of climatic changes caused by man-made carbon dioxide emissions

Q

R

out a study have warned that an ancient

S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

- (a) S R Q P (b) Q P S R  
(c) S P Q R (d) Q R S P

13. It is stressful or joyful with the belief in the evanescence of life itself

P

Q

necessary to rise above the situations

R

and in the philosophical quest of the purpose of life

S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

- (a) R P Q S (b) Q S R P  
(c) R S Q P (d) Q P R S

14. The difference and development on the other affects

P

in the relationship between death and birth-rates on the one hand

Q

but the age structure of the population not just the rate of population growth

R

S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

- (a) S R Q P (b) Q P S R  
(c) S P Q R (d) Q R S P

15. As a maestro appeared to be enjoying every bit of it

P

and followed every composition the thunderous applause from

Q

R

an appreciative audience preceded

S

Which one of the following sequences is correct?

- (a) P Q S R (b) R S Q P  
(c) P S Q R (d) R Q S P





*Which one of the following sequences is correct?*

- (a) S P R Q (b) Q R P S  
(c) P S Q R (d) Q S R P

3. S<sub>1</sub> : One of the greatest curses of the world is the belief in the necessity of poverty.

S<sub>6</sub> : We have been poor in the very midst of abundance, simply because of our own blighting limiting thought.

P : There need not be a poor person on the planet.

Q : But there was no poverty, no want, no lack, in the creator's plan for man.

R : Most people have a strong conviction that some must necessarily be poor, that they were made to be poor.

S : The Earth is full of resources which we have scarcely yet touched.

*Which one of the following sequences is correct?*

- (a) S P Q R (b) R S P Q  
(c) R Q P S (d) P Q S R

4. S<sub>1</sub> : There is nothing strange in the fact that so many foreign students should wish to learn English.

S<sub>6</sub> : This key will open to him whatever is valuable in the literature of the world.

P : If any valuable book is written in another language an English translation of it is sure to be speedily published.

Q : Anyone who masters the English tongue acquires a key.

R : Most books found to be generally useful are written in English.

S : The English speaking want no monopoly of knowledge.

*Which one of the following sequences is correct?*

- (a) P S Q R (b) S Q R P  
(c) R P S Q (d) P Q S R

5. S<sub>1</sub> : Much of our adult behaviour and our attitudes are determined by our upbringing.

S<sub>6</sub> : Psychologists have studied these forces in depth.

P : But the process does not stop here.

Q : In particular by the effects of that small part of society which is our family.

R : As we grow we are constantly and increasingly affected by new forces such as the social pressure of our friends and the largest world of society.

S : The family and our early life have profound effect on our later life.

*Which one of the following sequences is correct?*

- (a) S R P Q (b) P R S Q  
(c) Q P S R (d) Q S P R

6. S<sub>1</sub> : Chanakya, by his foresight and strength of character, built up the Mauryan Empire.

S<sub>6</sub> : It is not true as some people said that Sardar Patel was not particular about the means as long as he achieved his end.

P : They were men of iron.

Q : Therefore, they were impervious to criticism and had implicit confidence in themselves.

R : Both of them were guided by stern realism and would tolerate no deviations from the objectives which they pursued relentlessly.

S : Similarly, Patel refashioned a compact India out of the fragments left by the British.

*Which one of the following sequences is correct?*

- (a) S Q R P (b) S R Q P  
(c) S R P Q (d) P Q S R

7. S<sub>1</sub> : The spiritual training of the boys was a much more difficult training.  
 S<sub>6</sub> : And I held that this was an essential part of the training of the young and that all training without culture of the spirit was of no use and might be even harmful.  
 P : I had realised that the training of the spirit was a thing in itself.  
 Q : Of course, I believed that every student should be acquainted with the elements of his own religion and have a general knowledge of his own scriptures.  
 R : I relied little on religious books for spiritual training.  
 S : To develop the spirit is to build character and to enable one to work towards a knowledge of God and self-realisation.  
*Which one of the following sequences is correct?*  
 (a) P Q S R (b) R Q S P  
 (c) R P Q S (d) P R S Q
8. S<sub>1</sub> : The word 'victory' generally reminds us of wars and conquerors like Alexander and Napoleon.  
 S<sub>6</sub> : The victories of peace are more lasting and useful to humanity than the victories of war.  
 P : Thousands of people are killed and hundreds of towns and cities are destroyed.  
 Q : But the victory associated with a war comes after so much of destruction  
 R : In this category we may include the achievements of scientists and scholars, statesmen and social reformers and the like.  
 S : However, there is another type of victory which is creative and constructive.  
*Which one of the following sequences is correct?*  
 (a) P R Q S (b) S P Q R  
 (c) Q P S R (d) R P Q S
9. S<sub>1</sub> : Europeans are not used to the serpentine queues we encounter in the Indian subcontinent.  
 S<sub>6</sub> : That the European youth was willing to go through these hardships to pay tribute to a spiritual head was unthinkable.  
 P : We line up even for our filthy public toilets and to pay the electricity bills.  
 Q : We wait eternally at railway crossings, ration shops and bank counters.  
 R : Particularly so in Europe where it is claimed that God is dead and religion defunct.  
 S : Hence, the fact that millions, and mostly the youth, made it to the funeral of Pope John Paul II, braving long journeys and queuing for hours on end, is truly remarkable.  
*Which one of the following sequence is correct?*  
 (a) S P Q R (b) Q R S P  
 (c) S R Q P (d) Q P S R
10. S<sub>1</sub> : If India is hot right now, its thanks to a host of random developments.  
 S<sub>6</sub> : The SARS outbreak in 2002-03 bypassed India and the tsunami affected countries like Thailand more than it impacted India.  
 P : Nature helped too.  
 Q : Arguably, it all began with the IT boom, which coupled with the unceasing tide of outsourcing, made India a global buzz.  
 R : And, as the saying goes, today's business travellers are tomorrow's leisure travellers.  
 S : That put in the global consciousness and led to a surge in business travellers.  
*Which one of the following sequences is correct?*  
 (a) Q S R P (b) R P Q S  
 (c) Q P R S (d) R S Q P

11. S<sub>1</sub> : Sleep is the only natural elixir that repairs the body.  
 S<sub>6</sub> : Sleep and upward mobility make for incompatible bedfellows.  
 P : The incessant ringing of mobile phones, the clamour of multiple TV sets, late night parties and the Internet are all par for the course in average urban households.  
 Q : At work, the manic race against time means we are working longer hours.  
 R : At home, our lives are no less hectic.  
 S : But in today's fast-paced world, sleep is the one aspect that is compromised the most.  
*Which one of the following sequences is correct?*  
 (a) P R Q S (b) S Q R P  
 (c) P Q R S (d) S R Q P
12. S<sub>1</sub> : The pleasure of being able to communicate with people from another culture and to understand their society is a valuable experience.  
 S<sub>6</sub> : They employ linguistic experts to teach their employees the required language and to interact with employees on the client site.  
 P : Because of the level of interactions with foreign experts, translators are mandatory in many companies.  
 Q : Many Indian MNCs with global footprints need linguists to help them in foreign lands.  
 R : But learning a foreign language is fast becoming a necessary job skill in its own right.  
 S : As the global market-place expands, the need for personnel who can communicate in foreign languages will increase.  
*Which one of the following sequences is correct?*  
 (a) P Q R S (b) R S P Q  
 (c) P S R Q (d) R Q P S
13. S<sub>1</sub> : What gives a place its distinct identity?  
 S<sub>6</sub> : So, what memories will you bring home?  
 P : And that's what best captures Singapore—a dynamic, cosmopolitan city-state where different cultures, ethnic groups and religions have blended over centuries to bridge the East-West divide.  
 Q : Apart from its geographical location, people and landscape, it's the passage of time.  
 R : With its friendly, welcoming people, state-of-the art infrastructure and something new happening every day, Singapore is easy to appreciate.  
 S : Singapore is a city where age-old traditions and cutting-edge innovations are celebrated simultaneously.  
*Which one of the following sequences is correct?*  
 (a) R P S Q (b) Q S P R  
 (c) R S P Q (d) Q P S R
14. S<sub>1</sub> : The fact is that good writing is a craft which can be acquired like any other craft.  
 S<sub>6</sub> : In short, he has to become a wordsmith.  
 P : Much the same is the case with the one who aspires to become a good craftsman of English.  
 Q : Let's take examples.  
 R : A young man, who wants to become a goldsmith or a silversmith, becomes an apprentice with a seasoned man in that craft.  
 S : After a few years of apprenticeship, he learns the ins and outs of it and becomes a skilful craftsman.



R : In such a scenario, the reader feels shortchanged as unbiased election coverage is not available.

S : Press conferences are used openly for giving gifts and bribes to journalists.

*Which one of the following sequences is correct?*

(a) P Q S R

(b) Q P R S

(c) P Q R S

(d) Q P S R

**Directions** *In these questions, the 1st and the last sentences of the passage are numbered as S<sub>1</sub> and S<sub>6</sub>. The rest of the passage is split into four parts and named P, Q, R and S. These four parts are not given in their proper order, read the sentence and find out, which of the four combinations is correct. Then find the correct answer.* [SSC LDC 2013]

19. S<sub>1</sub> : Fires in the steppes or bushes scared humans earlier.

P : Gradually, they learnt to appreciate the power of fire.

Q : It gave them light and warmth and kept away wild animals.

R : About 700000 years ago, humans, started fire accidentally by lightning.

S : They could harden the tips of wooden spears and cook meat in it.

S<sub>6</sub> : Soon they learnt to produce fire by striking flintstone and pyrite with each other or by rubbing lumbars.

*The proper sequence should be*

(a) P Q R S

(b) Q R S P

(c) Q S P R

(d) P Q S R

20. S<sub>1</sub> : There are a lot of ways to communicate : speaking, singing, clapping, hooting.

P : Even animals communicate with one another.

Q : Only humans can express their thoughts and feelings in words because of our superior brain.

R : Both humans and animals also communicate through body language.

S : But their ways differ from the humans.

S<sub>6</sub> : Sometimes we don't use words, but make gestures (like traffic signs) or simple movements of the hand in order to communicate.

*The proper sequence should be*

(a) P Q R S

(b) P S Q R

(c) P R S Q

(d) Q P R S

21. S<sub>1</sub> : Egotism is the most common fault of mankind.

P : However, with time it becomes an exaggerated form of self display.

Q : It is the product of a perfectly natural desire to display oneself.

R : This is necessary as it impairs the personality and frustrates all efforts at self improvement.

S : Beyond any shadow of doubt, it is a defect that ought to be constantly hunted down and scotched.

S<sub>6</sub> : One should always be on guard not to give into egotism.

*The proper sequence should be*

(a) P Q S R

(b) Q P S R

(c) Q P R S

(d) P R Q S

22. S<sub>1</sub> : The lion used to be very widely distributed in Africa and Asia.

P : There are special forest zones set aside for wild-life in various countries.

Q : Indiscriminate killing has caused the number to fall.

R : Today they are a relatively rare species.

S : If the species survives at all, it will be only in national parks.

S<sub>6</sub> : No hunting is permitted in such reserved areas.

*The proper sequence should be*

- (a) R S P Q (b) Q S P R  
(c) R Q S P (d) S R P Q

**Directions** In these questions, the 1st and the last sentences of the passage are numbered as S<sub>1</sub> and S<sub>6</sub>. The rest of the passage is split into four parts and named P, Q, R and S. These four parts are not given in their proper order, read the sentence and find out, which of the four combinations is correct. Then find the correct answer. [SSC CGL 2012]

23. S<sub>1</sub> : Plato's 'Republic' has exercised tremendous influence  
P : he states that statesmen should  
Q : on human thought and intelligence  
R : integrity because he felt that, only such men  
S : be men of supreme intelligence and impeccable  
S<sub>6</sub> : could enlighten the darker side of human nature into a positive one.  
*The proper sequence should be*  
(a) R S Q P (b) Q P S R  
(c) R P S Q (d) S Q P R
24. S<sub>1</sub> : India has a vibrant space science programme  
P : the Indian space science programme has been working  
Q : formulating an industrial participation policy to  
R : covering astronomy, astrophysics and space science.  
S : with cooperative Indian industries and has been  
S<sub>6</sub> : aid the growth of space industry in India.  
*The proper sequence should be*  
(a) S Q P R (b) P Q R S  
(c) Q P R S (d) R P S Q
25. S<sub>1</sub> : Delhi's Indira Gandhi International Airport is the only one in the country to have runways equipped with a CAT HIB instrument Landing System.  
P : This technology guides pilots to land even when visibility is cut to 50 metres  
Q : This is because  
R : Finding an explanation for such failure won't be easy  
S : However, it fails to operate often  
S<sub>6</sub> : the issue involves multiple stake-holders and a web of unclear briefs.  
*The proper sequence should be*  
(a) P Q R S (b) P R S Q  
(c) P S R Q (d) P Q S R
26. S<sub>1</sub> : Ram has an important examination to sit for in a few weeks time  
P : But he could not concentrate  
Q : What he saw was not very nice he was very pale  
R : He sat down to prepare for it  
S : After a while he looked at himself in the mirror  
S<sub>6</sub> : He said to himself, "What I need is fresh air."  
*The proper sequence should be*  
(a) P Q R S (b) R P S Q  
(c) Q S P R (d) S Q R P

**Directions** In these questions, the 1st and the last sentences of the passage are numbered as  $S_1$  and  $S_6$ . The rest of the passage is split into four parts and named P, Q, R and S. These four parts are not given in their proper order, read the sentence and find out, which of the four combinations is correct. Then find the correct answer. [SSC CGL 2011]

27.  $S_1$  : After an entire generation of parents and teachers  
 P : the level of depression  
 Q : children's self-esteem, an indicator of good mental health  
 R : has worked hard to improve its  
 S : in young people has skyrocketed.  
 $S_6$  : It is how we feel about our selves,  
*The proper sequence should be*  
 (a) P Q R S (b) Q S R P  
 (c) R Q S P (d) S P R Q
28.  $S_1$  : The vegetable bin of my refrigerator contained an assortment of weird looking items.  
 P : The carrots dropped into U shapes as I picked them up with the tips of my fingers.  
 Q : To the right of the oranges was a bunch of carrots that had begun to sprout points, spikes and tendrils.  
 R : Near the carrots was a net bag of onions.  
 S : Next to a shriveled, white-coated lemon were two oranges covered with blue fuzz.  
 $S_6$  : Each onion had sent curling shoots through the net until the whole thing resembled a mass of green spaghetti.  
*The proper sequence should be*  
 (a) S Q P R (b) Q S R P  
 (c) P R S Q (d) R S Q R
29.  $S_1$  : Helen Keller has an ageless quality about her in keeping with her amazing life story.  
 P : Although warned by this human reaction, she has no wish to be set aside from the rest of mankind.  
 Q : She is an inspiration to both blind and who can see everywhere.  
 R : When she visited Japan after World War II, boys and girls from remote villages ran to her, crying, 'Helen Keller'.  
 S : Blind, deaf and mute from early childhood, she rose above her triple handicap to become one of the best known characters in the modern world.  
 $S_6$  : She believes the blind should live and work with their fellows, with full responsibility.  
*The proper sequence should be*  
 (a) Q P S R (b) P Q S R  
 (c) R S Q P (d) S Q R P

**Directions** In these questions, the 1st and the last sentences of the passage are numbered as  $S_1$  and  $S_6$ . The rest of the passage is split into four parts and named P, Q, R and S. These four parts are not given in their proper order, read the sentence and find out, which of the four combinations is correct. Then find the correct answer. [SSC CPO 2011]

30.  $S_1$  : A lot of people simply dump their rubbish in open  
 P : All sorts of diseases are carried by the flies.  
 Q : Then they come into the house and infect uncovered food.  
 R : In this rubbish the flies breed and multiply.  
 S : Such carelessness invites flies to the rubbish.  
 $S_6$  : Consumption of such food can only bring disease and sickness.  
*The proper sequence should be*  
 (a) S P Q R (b) R Q P S  
 (c) R P Q S (d) S R Q P

31.  $S_1$  : Six year old Prabodh aimed his toy gun at his sister while playing.  
 P : "You may aim at the pole or at the wall or at the tree, where no one can get hurt."  
 Q : Mother got up immediately saying, "No one shoots a human being and calmly removed the gun from Prabodh."  
 R : Still Prabodh aimed his gun at the kid.  
 S : When his mother saw this she said "No Prabodh! Not at the body!"  
 $S_6$  : With such a firm action on his mother's part, Prabodh realised where the gun should not be aimed.  
*The proper sequence should be*  
 (a) P R S Q (b) Q S P R  
 (c) S P R Q (d) S R Q P
32.  $S_1$  : Proud Little Astronomer sees a huge dragon in the Moon.  
 P : Big Astronomer calls him and shows him the fly.  
 Q : He runs to the Big Astronomer and calls him home.  
 R : He is very excited and remembers his rival Big Astronomer.  
 S : Big Astronomer agrees and later discovers a fly in the telescope lens.  
 $S_6$  : Little Astronomer is shamefaced and becomes humble.  
*The proper sequence should be*  
 (a) R Q S P (b) P Q R S  
 (c) R S P Q (d) Q P S R
33.  $S_1$  : Plants need carbon for building the tissue of their bodies.  
 $S_6$  : Thus through a complex process called photosynthesis, plants receive their requirements from the soil and Sun.  
 P : The breaking up of carbon dioxide into its components requires energy, which they derive from the Sun.  
 Q : Plant's other needs of nutrients are derived from the soil and water through their roots.  
 R : They derive this carbon from the carbon dioxide in the air.  
 S : They break up the carbon dioxide, absorb the carbon and discharge oxygen into the air for animals to breathe.  
*The proper sequence should be*  
 (a) Q S P R (b) R S P Q  
 (c) S Q R P (d) P R Q S
34.  $S_1$  : I searched for my friend all day.  
 $S_6$  : When I woke up the Sun was already above the horizon.  
 P : Although I was weary and hungry, I was not discouraged.  
 Q : I crept in and lay on the ground with my bag for a pillow.  
 R : When midnight came I felt that I could not walk much further.  
 S : At last I came to a place where the pavement was raised and had a hollow underneath.  
*The proper sequence should be*  
 (a) P R S Q (b) P S Q R  
 (c) R P S Q (d) S R Q P
35.  $S_1$  : While on a fishing trip last summer, I watched an elderly man fishing off the edge of a dock.  
 $S_6$  : Cheerfully, the old man replied, 'Small frying pan'.  
 P : "Why didn't you keep the other big ones?" I asked.  
 Q : He caught an enormous trout, but apparently not satisfied with its size, he threw it back into the water.

R : He finally caught a small pike, threw it into his pail and smiling happily prepared to leave.

S : Amazed, I watched him repeat this performance.

*The proper sequence should be*

(a) P S Q R

(b) Q S R P

(c) P Q S R

(d) Q P S R

36. S<sub>1</sub> : The essence of democracy is the active participation of the people in government affairs.

S<sub>6</sub> : By and large it is the actual practice of our way of life.

P : When the people are active watchmen and participants, we have that fertile soil in which democracy flourishes.

Q : Our democracy is founded upon a faith in the overall judgement of the people as a whole.

R : When the people do not participate, the spirit of democracy dies.

S : When the people are honestly and clearly informed, their commonsense can be relied upon to carry the nation safely through any crisis.

*The proper sequence should be*

(a) R P S Q

(b) P R S Q

(c) S P Q R

(d) P S R Q

37. S<sub>1</sub> : Always remember that regular and frequent practice is essential if you are to learn to write well.

S<sub>6</sub> : If you keep your eyes and ears open, you will find plenty of things to write about.

P : Even with the most famous writers, inspiration is rare.

Q : Writing is ninety nine per cent hard work and one per cent inspiration, so the sooner you get into the habit of writing, the better.

R : It is no good waiting until you have an inspiration before you write.

S : You learn to write by writing.

*The proper sequence should be*

(a) S R P Q

(b) R P S Q

(c) S P R Q

(d) Q P S R

38. S<sub>1</sub> : Human ways of life have steadily changed.

S<sub>6</sub> : During the last few years change has been even more rapid than usual.

P : From that time to this, civilisation has always been changing.

Q : About ten thousand years ago, man lived entirely by hunting.

R : Ancient Egypt-Greece-the Roman Empire-the Dark Ages and the Middle Ages-the Renaissance-the age of modern science and of modern nations-one has succeeded the other and history has never stood still.

S : A settled civilised life began only when agriculture was discovered.

*The proper sequence should be*

(a) Q S R P

(b) Q S P R

(c) R S Q P

(d) S P R Q

**Directions** In the following items, each passage consists of six sentences. The first sentence  $S_1$  and the final sentence  $S_6$  are given in the beginning. The middle four sentences in each have been removed and jumbled up. These are labelled P, Q, R and S. You are required to find out the proper sequence of the four sentences. [SSC CGL 2013]

39.  $S_1$  : Her sisters recognised her at once.  
 $S_6$  : As for the young prince, he found her more lovely and lovable than ever and insisted upon marrying her immediately.  
 P : She embraced them, telling them she forgave them with all her heart.  
 Q : Then she departed with the herald to the King's palace.  
 R : They were not in the least surprised, for everybody believed in fairies and everybody longed to have a fairy godmother.  
 S : She told her whole story to his Majesty and the royal family.  
*The proper sequence should be*  
 (a) R S Q P (b) Q P S R  
 (c) P Q S R (d) P S Q R
40.  $S_1$  : The wise men laughed at Galileo for presuming to differ from the great Aristotle.  
 $S_6$  : Both struck the ground together, as he had asserted that they would.  
 P : He then climbed to the top, carrying with him a ten pound shot and a one pound shot.  
 Q : So one morning he took some students and teachers to the base of the famous Leaning Tower.  
 R : Balancing them on the edge of the tower, he let them fall together.  
 S : But Galileo said he could prove his statement.  
*The proper sequence should be*  
 (a) S Q P R (b) Q P S R  
 (c) P R S Q (d) R S Q P
41.  $S_1$  : The Earth was initially very hot and without an atmosphere.  
 $S_6$  : But it contained a lot of other gases that are poisonous to us.  
 R : The atmosphere came from the emission of gases from the rocks.  
 Q : Because it contained no oxygen.  
 R : In the course of time it cooled and acquired an atmosphere.  
 S : This early atmosphere was not one in which we could have survived.  
*The proper sequence should be*  
 (a) R P S Q (b) P S R Q  
 (c) S P Q R (d) Q R P S
42.  $S_1$  : The train was running fast and the next station was nearly an hour ahead.  
 $S_6$  : She bought four cups of ice cream and all of them became busy with eating.  
 P : The children were pestering their aunt with embarrassing questions.  
 Q : The occupants of the first carriage among others were a tall girl, a little girl and a little boy.  
 R : Luckily an ice cream vendor came to the rescue of the aunt.  
 S : Their aunt was occupying a corner seat.  
*The proper sequence should be*  
 (a) P Q R S (b) Q S P R  
 (c) R P Q S (d) S R Q P

**Directions** In the following items, each passage consists of six sentences. The first and the sixth sentence are given in the beginning as  $S_1$  and  $S_6$ . The middle four sentences in each have been removed and jumbled up. These are labelled P, Q, R and S. You are requested to find out the proper sequence of the four sentences. [CDS 2012]

43.  $S_1$  : There is no doubt that democracy is the best of the systems of government available to us.  
 $S_6$  : It is this feature that puts democracy in a class by itself among political systems.  
 P : For another, even an individual can, through appeal to the judiciary, prevent the government from doing any injustice.  
 Q : This means that, in a way, the people can exercise some control over the rulers even during their period of rule.  
 R : This right of the individual to secure justice even against the powerful government is even more important than the right to vote.  
 S : For one thing, it permits, if necessary, a periodical change of those who govern the country.

*The proper sequence should be*

- (a) R P Q S (b) S Q P R  
 (c) P Q R S (d) S R P Q

44.  $S_1$  : The authorities decided to streamline the procedure, for admitting students, to the new course.  
 $S_6$  : The selection was made from the list in the order of priority.  
 P : Those who performed badly at the interview were eliminated.  
 Q : The candidates were first required to take a written test.  
 R : A list of successful candidates at the written test was prepared in the ascending order of total marks.  
 S : The top fifty among those who qualified were called for an interview.

*The proper sequence should be*

- (a) Q R S P (b) P R S Q  
 (c) S R Q P (d) R S Q P

45.  $S_1$  : In almost all developing countries, estimates indicate that every six seconds, one child dies and another becomes disabled as a consequence of diseases that can be prevented with immunization.  
 $S_6$  : After each round of immunization during the IIP all computerized data were brought up-to-date.  
 P : At the start of the programme, local Anganwadi centres for pre-school children operating as a part of the National Integrated Child Development Services Scheme were involved in conducting house-to-house surveys.  
 Q : The experiment has been launched with the objective of introducing new and efficient strategies for large-scale immunization programmes which, if successful, could be used as models for similar endeavours in the future  
 R : Two areas were included in the IIP : Trilokpuri and Khanjawala.  
 S : Between December 1983 and March 1984, a large-scale experiment the Intensive Immunization Programme (IIP) was conducted in Delhi.

*The proper sequence should be*

- (a) Q S P R (b) R P Q S  
 (c) P Q R S (d) S Q R P

**Directions** In the following items, each passage consists of six sentences. The first and the sixth sentence are given in the beginning as  $S_1$  and  $S_6$ . The middle four sentences in each have been removed and jumbled up. These are labelled P, Q, R and S. You are required to find out the proper sequence of the four sentences. [SSC CGL 2011]

46.  $S_1$  : If we dump sewage into a stream, on a small scale, the stream dissolves it and purifies it.  
 $S_6$  : For this overwhelming kind of pollution we need to coin a new term which we call super-pollution.  
 P : It can no longer deal even with the small quantity of sewage which it once accepted without difficulty.  
 Q : Ten miles downstream the water is pure again.  
 R : The system has broken down.  
 S : But if we dump large quantities of sewage, we end by killing the purifying bacteria and then the stream has lost its power to purify.  
*The proper sequence should be*  
 (a) Q S P R (b) R S Q P  
 (c) P R Q S (d) P Q R S
47.  $S_1$  : She was born into a poor family of labourers and died because poverty could not let her live.  
 $S_6$  : So, while the world was celebrating International Women's Day, Rita's mother, Mrs. Veena, spent the day trying to get her daughter justice, which eluded her in life.  
 P : She died not because she was ill, but because she had been allegedly beaten by her husband and in-laws for not bringing in sufficient dowry.  
 Q : At the young age of twenty, Rita breathed her last at JP Hospital on February 20.  
 R : Ironically, however, no one paid heed to Rita's woes when she sed to cry for help.  
 S : The police have not taken any action either till date.  
*The proper sequence should be*  
 (a) Q P R S (b) S R P Q  
 (c) P R S Q (d) R P Q S
48.  $S_1$  : We were so evenly matched that for a time the end was difficult to tell.  
 $S_6$  : Then, his comrade's knife, thrown at me, struck him on the back and piercing it, quite finished him.  
 P : Already I was counting him a dead man and myself victorious.  
 Q : I had only to wear him out to have him at my mercy.  
 R : Presently, however, there came a change.  
 S : My opponent's wild living made him incapable of coping with a prolonged bout and his strength seemed to start ebbing away.  
*The proper sequence should be*  
 (a) S R Q P (b) Q R S P  
 (c) R Q S P (d) R S Q P
49.  $S_1$  : Isaac possessed a wonderful faculty of acquiring knowledge by the simplest means.  
 $S_6$  : Thus, even in his boyish sports, he was continually searching out the secrets of philosophy.  
 P : Yet nothing could be more simple.  
 Q : You will never guess how the boy could compel that unseen wonder, the wind to tell him the measure of its strength.  
 R : For instance, what methods do you suppose he took to find out the strength of the wind?

S : He jumped against the wind and by the length of the jump he could calculate the force of the wind.

*The proper sequence should be*

- (a) P Q R S (b) Q R S P  
(c) R Q P S (d) P S Q R

50. S<sub>1</sub> : The common man has a vote in Parliament.

S<sub>6</sub> : For that, his sole resource is his native wit and will.

P : If he likes to make use of the machinery of a democracy, he can have questions asked in the house.

Q : But there is no machinery by which he can control the organs which mould opinion.

R : In the last resort he can destroy one government and make another.

S : He has a parliamentary representative whom he can badger and heckle.

*The proper sequence should be*

- (a) Q P S R (b) S Q P R  
(c) P R Q S (d) S P R Q

## Work Book Exercise D

**Directions** In each of the questions below a number of sentences are given which are denoted by I, II, III and IV. By using all the sentences you have to frame a meaningful paragraph. The correct order of the sentences is your answer. Choose from the five alternatives and the one having the correct order is your answer.

1. I. Now under liberated economy they are learning to compete domestically and globally.
- II. In India corporations until, recently achieved success by avoiding competition using protected and regulated domestic markets.
- III. The trend is irreversible.
- IV. Business leaders are preparing themselves to meet competitive challenges and to avoid being swept away.

*Which one of the following sequences is correct?*

- (a) I, II, IV, III (b) II, IV, III, I  
(c) II, IV, I, III (d) III, IV, II, I  
(e) II, I, IV, III

2. I. Recovery was given inadequate attention and consequently some bank branches regularly incurred heavy losses and their parent bodies had to bale them out.
- II. As a result banks indulged in extensive lending to borrowers who had little or no potential to make repayments.
- III. To fulfil the social objectives laid down by the masters of nationalisation banks were asked to lend to identify priority sectors.
- IV. 1992-93 results showed that the loss making branches of public sector's banks increased from 10,000 to 13,000 and the quantum of losses showed at 3,369 crore.

*Which one of the following sequences is correct?*

- (a) II, I, III, IV (b) IV, I, II, III  
(c) III, II, I, IV (d) III, II, I, IV  
(e) IV, III, II, I

3. I. However different rulers and government dealt with the different groups in a compartmentalised manner.  
 II. Various situational political changes have taken place over the past three and half-centuries.  
 III. This tendency resulted in deeply embedded fragmented South-African society which became even more prominent in the period 1948 until the commencement of the new constitution on May 10, 1994.  
 IV. South Africa is a racially divided society since the first European settlers arrived in 1652.  
*Which one of the following sequences is correct?*  
 (a) II, IV, I, III (b) IV, II, I, III  
 (c) III, I, II, IV (d) I, III, IV, II  
 (e) II, I, III, IV
4. I. Such a system will help identify and groom executives for positions of strategists.  
 II. Evaluation of performance is more often than not done for the purpose of reward or punishment for past performance.  
 III. They must become an integral part of the executive evaluation system.  
 IV. Even where the evaluation system is for one's promotion to assume higher responsibilities it rarely includes items that are a key for playing the role of strategists effectivity e.g. the skills for playing the role of change agent and creative problem solving.  
*Which one of the following sequences is correct?*  
 (a) IV, II, I, III (b) IV, III, II, I  
 (c) I, II, III, IV (d) II, IV, III, I  
 (e) III, IV, II, I
5. I. But categorisation schemes are not always helpful in determining what one can do with or about organisational culture.  
 II. Much of the literature on organisational culture is focussed on categorising types of cultures.  
 III. It has taken the understanding of corporate culture for beyond what use to be called 'the informal organisation'.  
 IV. This literature is both 'interesting and informative'.  
*Which one of the following sequences is correct?*  
 (a) II, IV, I, III (b) II, I, IV, III  
 (c) II, III, IV, I (d) IV, I, II, III  
 (e) IV, II, I, III
6. I. Much of the argument that goes on around the alternative solution occurs because people hold different perceptions of the problem.  
 II. One of the reasons that Japanese managers are perceived as making superior decisions compared to Western managers is that they spend a great deal of effort and time determining that the problem is correctly defined.  
 III. Unfortunately, too often in the West, managers assume that the initial definition of the situation is correct.  
 IV. Up to half the time in meetings is spent in asking 'Is this the real problem?'  
*Which one of the following sequences is correct?*  
 (a) II, IV, III, I (b) II, III, IV, I  
 (c) III, II, IV, I (d) I, III, IV, II  
 (e) I, II, III, IV

## Work Book Exercise E

(Based on Type III)

**Directions** Rearrange the following sentences A, B, C, D and E in the proper sequence so as to form a meaningful paragraph; then answer the questions given below.

- I. A. He borrowed some money from his neighbour for me.  
 B. However, he promised to get the money I needed.  
 C. Since I had no money with me, I decided to borrow from my friend  
 D. The electricity bill had to be paid immediately.  
 E. But, he had no money with him to lend me.
- Which of the following sentences should come third in the paragraph?  
 (a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
  - Which of the following sentences should come first in the paragraph?  
 (a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
  - Which of the following sentences should come fifth in the paragraph?  
 (a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
  - Which of the following sentences should come second in the paragraph?  
 (a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
  - Which of the following sentences should come fourth in the paragraph?  
 (a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
- II. A. When I turned around, I saw none other than Rajesh.  
 B. It was then that someone loudly called out my name.  
 C. I started looking around for Rajesh.  
 D. The train had already arrived by the time I reached the station.  
 E. Not finding him, I decided to return home.
- Which sentence should come second in the paragraph?  
 (a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
  - Which sentence should come third in the paragraph?  
 (a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
  - Which sentence should come first in the paragraph?  
 (a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
  - Which sentence should come last in the paragraph?  
 (a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
  - Which sentence should come fourth in the paragraph?  
 (a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E

**Directions** Rearrange the given five sentences A, B, C, D and E in the proper sequence so as to form a meaningful paragraph and then answer the given questions. [IBPS Clerk 2013]

- III. A. With so many products and opportunities available in the market, it is very easy to get this planning wrong.  
 B. Planning, therefore, is imperative and should begin as early as possible.  
 C. What amount will we need and when will we need it?  
 D. Most of us would put our children's education above any other priority in life including our own retirement.  
 E. So, let's try to find the best solution by asking two important question.

- Which of the following should be the second sentence after rearrangement?  
(a) D (b) B (c) C (d) E (e) A
- Which of the following should be the fifth sentence after rearrangement?  
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) E (e) D
- Which of the following should be the first sentence after rearrangement?  
(a) A (b) B (c) E (d) C (e) D
- Which of the following should be the third sentence after rearrangement?  
(a) D (b) B (c) C (d) E (e) A
- Which of the following should be the fourth sentence after rearrangement?  
(a) A (b) B (c) E (d) D (e) C

**Directions** Rearrange the following sentences A, B, C, (D), E and F into a meaningful paragraph and then answer the questions given below it. [IBPS PO 2013]

- IV
- Moreover salaries in public sector enterprises are not as competitive as those offered by private or foreign corporates.
  - This trend should be a wake up call for stakeholders to examine why employees are seeking better opportunities with private companies in India and abroad.
  - Public Sector Enterprises (PSEs) have been experiencing severe challenges in attracting motivating and retaining their key staff.
  - Having identified these as the reasons employees leave PSEs it is important empower stakeholders to find ways to remedy the situation.
  - One reason is that young employees lured away to private firms are more willing to undertake professional risks.
  - Employees\* in specialist roles especially have become increasingly difficult to retain.
- Which of the following should be the first sentence after rearrangement?  
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
  - Which of the following should be the second sentence after rearrangement?  
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) F
  - Which of the following should be the third sentence after rearrangement?  
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
  - Which of the following should be fifth sentence after rearrangement?  
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
  - Which of the following should be the last (sixth) sentence after rearrangement?  
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E

**Directions** Rearrange the following six sentences A, B, C, D, E and F in the proper sequence to form a meaningful paragraph; then answer the questions given below them. [IBPS PO 2012]

- V
- If China is the world's factory, India has become the world's outsourcing centre-keeping in line with this image.
  - But, India's future depends crucially on its ability to compete fully in the creative economy-not just in tech and software, but across design and entrepreneurship; arts, culture and entertainment and the knowledge-based professions of medicine, finance and law.
  - While its creative assets outstrip those of other emerging competitors, India must address several challenges to increase its international competitiveness as the world is in the midst of a sweeping transformation.
  - This transformation is evident in the fact that the world is moving from an industrial economy to a creative economy that generates wealth by harnessing intellectual labour, intangible goods and human creative capabilities.

- E. Its software industry is the world's second-largest, its tech outsourcing accounts for more than half of the \$ 300 billion global industry, according to a technology expert.
- F. If the meeting of world leaders at Davos is any indication, India is rapidly becoming an economic 'rock star'.

- Which of the following should be the sixth (Last) sentence after the rearrangement?  
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
- Which of the following should be the third sentence after the rearrangement?  
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
- Which of the following should be the fifth sentence after the rearrangement?  
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) F (e) E
- Which of the following should be the first sentence after the rearrangement?  
(a) F (b) B (c) C (d) A (e) E
- Which of the following should be the second sentence after the rearrangement?  
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) F

**Directions** Rearrange the following seven sentences A, B, C, D, E, F and G in the proper sequence to form a meaningful paragraph; then answer the questions given below them.

[IBPS PO 2011]

- VI. A. To elaborate briefly on these characteristics and dimensions that the author is talking about -NRMs are general tests intended to be used to classify students by percentile for measuring either or proficiency for admissions into or placement within a program.
- B. Contrastingly, the CRM, such as; a locally produced achievement test, measures absolute performance that is compared only with the learning objective, hence a perfect score is theoretically obtainable by all students who have a mastery of the pre-specified material or conversely, all students may fail the test.
- C. In most of these books the authors classify a measurement strategy as either norm-referenced (NRM) or criterion-referenced (CRM).
- D. Another author points out how the type of interpretation that an NRM offers is the relative performance of the students compared with that of all the others resulting in, ideally, a bell curve distribution.
- E. Numerous books on constructing and using language tests have been written by various authors.
- F. CRMs, on the other hand, are more specific, achievement or diagnostic tests intended to be used for motivating students by measuring to what percent they have achieved mastery of the taught or learned material.
- G. One of the authors clearly delineates the differences of these two types by focusing on the categories of "test characteristics" and "logistical dimensions."
- Which of the following should be the first sentence after rearrangement?  
(a) G (b) C (c) C (d) D (e) E
  - Which of the following should be the seventh (Last) sentence after rearrangement?  
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
  - Which of the following should be the fifth sentence after rearrangement?  
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) F (e) F
  - Which of the following should be the second sentence after rearrangement?  
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E
  - Which of the following should be the third sentence after rearrangement?  
(a) A (b) B (c) G (d) D (e) E

# 2

## Objective Comprehension

---

Objective Comprehension of a given passage or a number of passages is an integral part of any examination test in English. The objective English tests of competitive examination are designed to assess through questions the verbal ability, language skills, the knowledge of the examinees on grammar, vocabulary and comprehension of written English. Therefore, a student is required to read the passage carefully and choose a correct answer out of the alternatives given under the question. However, the questions are challenging and they all require an appreciation of more than just the superficial understanding of the passage. Therefore, it is very important that due attention should be paid to comprehension exercises.

The important points to be noted in this field are given as under :

- (a) It is pertinent to note that sense of language and fund of words should be ample enough so that students may not feel disadvantage on that account.
- (b) The questions are based on what is stated or implied in each passage.
- (c) Invariably the inference is based on the logical consequence of the information in the passage. Therefore, the answers must be based on and supported by the information given in the passage under reference.
- (d) In some competitive examinations the students are also required to answer questions on synonyms and antonyms given in the passage. It is very important to note that the meaning of the word should be chosen from the alternatives in the context of the theme of the passage. One must not take into account only the literal meaning of the word.

### Passage 1

**Directions** Read the following passages carefully and answer the questions that follow.

The forces that generate conditions conducive to crime and riots are stronger in urban communities than in rural areas. Urban living is more anonymous living. It often releases the individual from community restraints more common in tradition-oriented societies. But more freedom from constraints and controls also provides greater freedom to deviate. And living in the more impersonalized, formally controlled Urban society means that regulatory orders of conduct are often directed

by distant bureaucrats. The police are strangers executing these prescriptions on an anonymous set of subjects. Minor offences in small town or village are often handled without resort to official police action. As disputable as such action may seem to be, it results in fewer recorded violations of the law compared to the big cities. Although perhaps causing some decision-difficulties for the police in small town, formal and objective law enforcement is not always acceptable to villagers.

Urban areas with mass population, greater wealth, more commercial establishments and more products of our technology also provide more frequent opportunities for theft. Victims are impersonalized, property is insured, consumer goods in more abundance are vividly displayed and are more portable. The crime-rate increases despite fromal moral education given in schools.

1. According to the passage, all the following contribute to higher crime-rates in urban areas except
  - (a) vivid display of consumer goods
  - (b) higher standard of living
  - (c) urban impersonalized living
  - (d) increasing population
  - (e) inadequate police force
2. Which of the following is a characteristic of an urban setting?
  - (a) Unreported minor crimes
  - (b) Deviation from freedom
  - (c) Less forceful social control
  - (d) Minimal opportunities of crime due to better law enforcement
  - (e) Fewer recorded violations of the law
3. The author's view of 'Traditional Societies' is best expressed by which of the following?
  - (a) They provide less freedom for the individual in many circumstances
  - (b) They have lower crime-rates because of the moral teachings in schools
  - (c) They provide inadequate freedom for personal movements and travel
  - (d) They do not have adequate modern technology
  - (e) They are ruled and controlled by distant bureaucrats
4. People live under more social control in
  - (a) formally controlled Urban societies
  - (b) the presence of the police authorities
  - (c) an anonymous form of living
  - (d) non-traditional societies
  - (e) None of the above
5. It can be inferred from the passage that urban crime can be controlled by
  - (a) greater emphasis on moral education
  - (b) enforcement of law by distant bureaucrats
  - (c) vivid display of expensive consumer goods
  - (d) making the expensive consumer goods less portable
  - (e) None of the above
6. Which of the following statements is true in the context of the passage?
  - (a) The display of consumer goods is the main cause of crime
  - (b) Lack of personal contacts increases crimes in Urban areas
  - (c) Small communities have more minor crimes than in Urban centres
  - (d) Urban crime areas cannot be prevented
  - (e) Police in Urban areas settle minor disputes without official action

7. Which of the following statements is not true in the context of the passage?
- (a) Moral education imparted in schools is ineffective in checking crime-rate
  - (b) There is less freedom in the current society than in a traditional society
  - (c) Urban areas are thickly populated and commercialized
  - (d) Anonymous living in urban areas may lead to a freedom to deviate from rules
  - (e) Urban areas provide more opportunities for crime than rural areas do
8. According to the passage, the crime in small towns
- (a) is less frequently reported or dealt with officially
  - (b) is brought well under control by distant bureaucrats
  - (c) leads to an impersonalized style of living
  - (d) is often dealt with objective law enforcement
  - (e) always causes difficulties for the police authorities

### Passage 2

A close look at the facts relating to political interference in administration shows that it is not a one-way process. There is often a nexus between power-hungry and corrupt politicians and civil servants with convenient principles. Many civil servants are only too anxious to oblige the politicians, and then cash the obligation when they need some special favour. So the attitude of self-righteousness adopted by the civil service is sometimes only a way of covering their own flaws by blaming others.

Every now and then some retired civil servants come out with his memoirs, painting a glorious picture of the heights of administrative efficiency reached during his reign. There is often the suggestion that had there not been so much political interference, things would have been even more fantastic. It is not unusual for the self-styled hero to blame not only interfering politicians but also fellow civil servants who were idiots or crooks, for his failures. This attitude of smug self-satisfaction is, unfortunately, developed during the years of service. Self-preservation rather than service is encouraged by our whole system of rules and procedures.

The remedy has to be drastic and quickly effective. The over-protection now granted to civil servants must end. Today to remove an erring civil servant is just not possible. And the only thing that the highest authority in the Government, both in the State and at the Centre, can do is to transfer an official from one job to another.

The rules for taking disciplinary action are so complicated that, in the end, the defaulting civil servant gets away, and gets his full emoluments even for the period of the disciplinary proceedings, thus making it a paid holiday for him.

The result is that the administration has become rule-oriented and not result-oriented. Action is possible against the official who takes some interest in his work, but no action is ever taken against a person who does not deliver the goods. If the country is to adopt a result-oriented approach, it is necessary to link job performance with job retention.

1. The facts relating to the problem of political interference indicate that
- (a) honest bureaucrats are always being troubled by politicians
  - (b) politicians are often misled and trapped by civil servants
  - (c) politicians and civil servants co-operate to gain mutual advantages
  - (d) politicians and civil servants use interference as an excuse for victimizing the common man

2. The attitude of self-righteousness adopted by the civil service, according to the writer
  - (a) is not welcomed and supported by politicians
  - (b) is dishonest and conceals the facts
  - (c) is very difficult to maintain because of opposition
  - (d) does not really help the public get fair treatment
3. Civil servants who write their memoirs after retiring
  - (a) claim that they would have achieved outstanding success if interference had not come in the way
  - (b) prove that constant political interference made it impossible for them to do anything properly
  - (c) complain that the credit for their achievements goes to dishonest politicians
  - (d) prove that people of inferior quality in the civil service bring about interference
4. The existing system of administration seems to encourage civil servants
  - (a) to become self-styled heroes and boss over others
  - (b) to present a glorious picture of the administration
  - (c) to become self-centred and concerned mainly about their own gain
  - (d) to become self-righteous and fight back against corrupt politicians
5. The problem with the present set-up needing urgent action is
  - (a) a lack of accountability on the part of civil servants
  - (b) a lack of control over the power of politicians
  - (c) a neglect of the ideals of self-righteousness
  - (d) complicated rules and procedures that greatly reduce efficiency
6. The main principle of the remedy proposed by the writer is, that
  - (a) the politicians should be made accountable for all their decisions
  - (b) the high level of protection enjoyed by civil servants should be reduced
  - (c) the common man's right to efficient and fair administration must be protected
  - (d) rules should be simplified so that there is less scope for misuse
7. According to existing procedures, if a civil servant is found to be unsuitable or dishonest,
  - (a) he can appeal to an authority like the Supreme Court
  - (b) politicians with whom he has special links will interfere to help him
  - (c) transferring him to another post is the usual action taken
  - (d) a conflict between Central Government and State Government interests can arise
8. The writer refers to 'a paid holiday' to support his argument that
  - (a) civil servants get a lot of extra benefits
  - (b) disciplinary action is generally not quick or effective
  - (c) lazy and inefficient bureaucrats seem to be on holiday even when on duty
  - (d) special postings that 'favoured' civil servants are unnecessary and wasteful
9. The expression 'linking job performance with job retention' refers to a policy in which
  - (a) selection to civil service jobs is on the basis of rigorous performance tests
  - (b) selection to civil service jobs is on the basis of rigorous performance and not a minister's opinions is the basis of transfer or promotion
  - (c) retention of good Government servants by discouraging their going to private companies
  - (d) continuation in service will depend on satisfactory performance
10. The expression 'deliver the goods' means
  - (a) show good job performance
  - (b) accept bribes or other illegal favours
  - (c) make payments of black money as bribes
  - (d) successfully defend oneself against a charge, in a disciplinary inquiry

**Passage 3**

True, it is the function of the army to maintain law and order in abnormal times. But in normal times there is another force that compels citizens to obey the laws and to act with due regard to the rights of others. The force also protects the lives and the properties of law abiding men. Laws are made to secure the personal safety of its subjects and to prevent murder and crimes of violence. They are made to secure the property of the citizens against theft and damage to protect the rights of communities and castes to carry out their customs and ceremonies, so long as they do not conflict with the rights of others.

Now the good citizen, of his own free will obey these laws and he takes care that everything he does is done with due regard to the rights and well-being of others. But the bad citizen is only restrained from breaking these laws by fear of the consequence of his actions. And the necessary steps to compel the bad citizen to act as a good citizen are taken by this force. The supreme control of law and order in a State is in the hands of a Minister who is responsible to the State Assembly and acts through the Inspector General of Police.

1. The expression 'customs and ceremonies' means
  - (a) fairs and festivals
  - (b) habits and traditions
  - (c) usual practices and religious rites
  - (d) superstitions and formalities
2. A suitable title for the passage would be
  - (a) the function of the army
  - (b) laws and the people's rights
  - (c) the fear of the law and citizen's security
  - (d) the functions of the police
3. Which of the following is not implied in the passage?
  - (a) Law protects those who respect it
  - (b) Law ensures people's religious and social rights absolutely and unconditionally
  - (c) A criminal is deterred from committing crimes only for fear of the law
  - (d) The forces of law help to transform irresponsible citizens into responsible ones
4. According to the writer, which one of the following is not the responsibility of the police?
  - (a) To protect the privileges of all citizens
  - (b) To check violent activities of citizens
  - (c) To ensure peace among citizens by safeguarding individual rights
  - (d) To maintain peace during extraordinary circumstances
5. Which of the following reflects the main thrust of the passage?
  - (a) It deals with the importance of the army in maintaining law and order
  - (b) It highlights role of the police as superior to that of the army
  - (c) It discusses the roles of the army and the police in different circumstances
  - (d) It points to the responsibility of the Minister and the Inspector General of Police
6. "They are made to secure the property of citizens against theft and damage", means that the law
  - (a) helps in recovering the stolen property of the citizens
  - (b) assist the citizens whose property has been stolen or destroyed
  - (c) initiate process against offenders of law
  - (d) safeguard people's possessions against being stolen or lost

7. Out of the following which one has the opposite meaning to the word 'restrained' in the passage?
- (a) Promoted (b) Accelerated  
(c) Intruded (d) Inhibited
8. Which one of the following statement is implied in the passage?
- (a) Peaceful citizens seldom violate the law, but bad citizens have to be restrained by the police  
(b) Criminals, who flout the law, are seldom brought to book  
(c) The police hardly succeed in converting bad citizens into good citizens  
(d) The police check the citizens, whether they are good or bad, from violating the law
9. Which of the following statements expresses most accurately the idea contained in the first sentence?
- (a) It is the job of the army to ensure internal peace at all times  
(b) It is the police that should always enforce law and order in the country  
(c) Army and the police ensure people's security through combined operations  
(d) It is in exceptional circumstances that the army has to ensure peace in the country
10. The last sentence of the passage implies that
- (a) The Inspector General of Police is the sole authority in matters of law and order  
(b) In every State maintenance of public peace is under the overall control of the responsible Minister  
(c) A Minister and a responsible State, Assembly exercise direct authority in matters pertaining to law and order  
(d) The Inspector General of Police is responsible to the State Assembly for maintaining law and order

### Passage 4

The first step is for us to realise that a city need not be a frustrater of life; it can be among other things, a mechanism for enhancing life, for producing possibilities of living which are not to be realized except through cities. But, for that to happen, deliberate and drastic planning is needed. Towns as much as animals, must have their systems of organs—those for transport and circulation are an obvious example.

What we need now are organ systems for recreation, leisure, culture, community expression. This means abundance of open space, easy access to unspoilt Nature, beauty in parks and in fine buildings, gymnasia and swimming baths and recreation grounds in plenty, central spaces for celebrations and demonstrations, halls for citizens' meetings, concert halls and theatres and cinemas that belong to the city.

And the buildings must not be built anyhow or dumped down anywhere; both they and their groupings should mean something important to the people of the place.

1. Cities can be made to provide full facilities for life, only if
- (a) these can be mechanically developed  
(b) proper transport system is introduced  
(c) cinemas, theatres and concert halls are established there  
(d) these are thoughtfully and vigorously designed to serve people's needs
2. A suitable title for the passage would be
- (a) Towns versus Animals  
(b) The Need for Planned Cities  
(c) Transport and Communication System in a City  
(d) The Need for Entertainment Centres in a City

3. "A city need not be a frustrater of life" means that
  - (a) one does not expect fulfilment of all life's requirements from a city
  - (b) city life provides all the essential needs of life
  - (c) a city does not necessarily lift man's standard of living
  - (d) a city should not defeat the fulfilment of life's aspirations and aims
4. Which one of the following has the opposite meaning to the word 'frustrater' in the passage?
  - (a) Promoter
  - (b) Applauder
  - (c) Approver
  - (d) Executer
5. "The building must not be built anyhow or dumped down anywhere"....the statement implies that building
  - (a) should be built with suitable material
  - (b) should be constructed, according to some suitable design, not indiscriminately
  - (c) should be scattered to provide for more of open space
  - (d) should be built to enable citizens to enjoy nature
6. The word 'drastic' in the passage means
  - (a) orderly.
  - (b) powerful.
  - (c) consistent.
  - (d) determined.
7. The author talks about 'Unspoilt Nature'. In what way can Nature remain unspoilt?
  - (a) If Nature is not allowed to interfere with people's day-to-day life
  - (b) By building cities with the system of organs like those of animals
  - (c) By allowing free access to parks and open spaces
  - (d) By allowing Nature to retain its primitive, undomesticated character
8. According to the author, the function of a city is to
  - (a) provide adequate community expression
  - (b) make available centres of recreation and public gatherings
  - (c) facilitate traffic and communication
  - (d) raise the tone of life and make it more meaningful
9. The opening sentence of the passage implies that
  - (a) the possibilities of living a decent life cannot be found in a city
  - (b) only a city can provide the means to lead a full life
  - (c) among other places, a city can also help man to lead a successful life
  - (d) a city provides better opportunities for good living than a village

### Passage 5

A pioneering scheme has been started recently in Southampton on England's south coast to educate motorists who have been convicted of drunken driving.

The penalty for drunken driving might be the loss of a driving licence and a heavy fine. But under the new scheme, convicted drivers do not pay the fine. Instead they have to attend eight training sessions—one a week organized by the local authority probation service.

Designed to demonstrate the damage alcohol can do, the scheme was devised by senior probation officer John Cook. He said about a quarter of the people who came to him had a drink problem, but had not realized how much they were drinking.

One way of getting the message across was to make the drivers pour out their usual ration of alcohol and then measure it. Almost everyone pours out not a single measure

but a double at least an example of how easy it is to have more than just one drink and to encourage other people to do the same.

The instructors on the course are giving clinical evidence of the effects of alcohol on the body and brain. The sober truth is that drinking badly affects driving skills, although the drinker might like to believe otherwise.

1. The Southampton scheme requires convicted drivers
  - (a) to pay a heavy fine
  - (b) to attend eight driving sessions—one a week
  - (c) to undergo a probation service
  - (d) to surrender their driving licence
2. John Cook devised the scheme
  - (a) as a demonstration technique for driving
  - (b) to demonstrate the harmful effects of alcohol
  - (c) to show that Southampton was concerned about drivers
  - (d) to prove that alcohol does influence driving
3. The problem with a quarter of the people who went to John Cook was that they
  - (a) did not want to stop drinking
  - (b) were unaware of the fact that they could get drunk
  - (c) would not admit that they had a drinking problem
  - (d) did not know how much they were drinking
4. Most drivers start off with at least
  - (a) a double measure
  - (b) a single measure
  - (c) a little less than a single measure
  - (d) two doubles
5. The truth is that alcohol
  - (a) does not affect the body but only the brain
  - (b) affects only the brain
  - (c) affects the body and the brain
  - (d) has no effect on the body or the brain

### Passage 6

The reformer must know that what moves people is the authentic life, not mere writing. The newspaper and journals that Lokmanya Tilak and other reformers ran, the books they wrote, sold little, but had enormous effect. Their writing was known to reflect and be just an extension of, their exemplary lives. It was the authenticity of their lives which lent weight to their message, to their example. All knew that their lives were an integral whole—they were not moral in public life and lax in private, nor vice versa. They were not full of pious thoughts and sacred resolutions within the walls of a temple.

A writer who is merely entertaining his readers, even one who is merely informing them, can do what he wants with the rest of his life. But the writer, who sets out to use his pen to reform public life, cannot afford such dualities. Here is the testimony of one great man—about the influence of another, Lokmanya Tilak.

“I believe that an editor who has anything worth saying and who commands a clientele cannot be easily hushed. He delivered his finished message as soon as he is put under duress. The Lokmanya spoke more eloquently from the Mandalay fortress than through columns of the printed Kesari.

His influence was multiplied thousand fold by his imprisonment and his speech and his pen had acquired much greater power after he was discharged than before his imprisonment. By his death we have been editing his paper without pen and speech through the sacred resolution of the people to realize his life's dream.

He could possibly have done more if he were today in the flesh preaching his view. Critics like me would perhaps be still finding fault in the expression of his or that. Today his message rules millions of hearts which are determined to raise a permanent living memorial by the fulfilment of his ambition in their lives."

1. Lokmanya Tilak's messages were most effective
  - (a) when he delivered them through his editorials
  - (b) after his death
  - (c) before his imprisonment
  - (d) when he delivered speeches
  - (e) None of the above
2. Which of the following is the result of Lokmanya Tilak's exemplary life?
  - (a) The newspapers edited by him did not incur monetary loss
  - (b) The books written by him were useful
  - (c) People resolved to fulfil his life's dream
  - (d) Critics still find fault with his views
  - (e) He was put in jail at Mandalay
3. Which of the following is the general tendency of critics according to the passage?
  - (a) To find fault with one or the other expression of a writer
  - (b) To praise only those writers whom they like
  - (c) To condemn one and all the reformer writers
  - (d) To suggest new ideas to the public
  - (e) To justify their criticism
4. In the context of the passage, a reformer becomes effective if
  - (a) he is a journalist with an objective viewpoint
  - (b) he is an author with an excellent style of writing
  - (c) he is an effective political leader of the masses
  - (d) he is a person with consistency in his writing and life style
  - (e) he is good critic of social practices
5. In the context of the passage, which of the following statements about Lokmanya Tilak and the reformers is true?
  - (a) They were moral in private life but lax in public life
  - (b) Their influence on people was negligible
  - (c) Very few people used to read the newspapers edited by them
  - (d) They were allowed to edit their newspapers even from inside the jail
  - (e) Their influence was multiplied a thousand fold by their imprisonment
6. Which of the following types of writers can be moral in their personal life and law in public life?
  - (a) Those who want to reform people
  - (b) Those who want to entertain people
  - (c) Those who have a large number of followers who wish to emulate them
  - (d) Those who lead an authentic life
  - (e) Those whose writing is an extension of their exemplary lives

### Passage 7

A person who takes the trouble to form his own opinions and beliefs, will feel that he owes no responsibility to the majority for his conclusions. If he is a genuine lover of truth, if he is inspired by a passion for seeing things as they are and an abhorrence of holding ideas which do not conform to facts, he will be wholly independent of the assent of those around him. When he proceeds to apply his beliefs in the practical conduct of life, the position is different. There are then good reasons why his attitude should be less inflexible. The society in which he is placed is an ancient and composite growth. The people from whom he dissents have not come by their opinions, customs and by a process of mere haphazard.

These opinions and customs all had their origin in a certain real supposed fitness. They have certain depth of root in the lives of a proportion of the existing generation. Their congruity with one another may have come to an end. That is only one side of the truth. The most zealous propagandism cannot penetrate to them. In common language, we speak of a generation as something possessed of a kind of exact unity, with all its parts and members homogenous. Yet, plainly it is not this. It is a whole but a whole in a state of constant flux its factors and elements are eternally shifting. It is not one but many generations.

Each of the seven ages of man is neighbour to all the rest. The column of the veterans is already sinking into the last abyss, while the column of the newest recruits is forming to each its tradition, its tendency and its possibilities. Only a proportion of each can have nerve enough to grasp the banner of a new truth and endurance to bear it along rugged and untrodden ways. Thus we must remember the stuff of which life is made.

We must consider what an overwhelming preponderance of the most tenacious energies and most concentrated interests of a society must be absorbed between material cares and the solitude of the affections.

It is obviously unreasonable to lose patience and quarrel with one's time because it is tardy in throwing off its institutions and beliefs and slow to achieve the transformation which is the problem in front of it. Men and women have to live.

The task for most of us is arduous enough to make us well pleased with even such imperfect shelter as we find in daily use and wont.

To insist on whole community being made at once to submit to the reign of new practices and ideas that have just begun to commend themselves to the most advanced speculative intelligence of the time, this even if it were a possible process, would do hurry on social dissolution.

1. What is the hard task the author is referring to in the paragraph?  
(a) To earn a living (b) To live normal life  
(c) To change the society (d) To change according to times  
(e) To find shelter
2. According to the passage, customs and traditions originate from?  
(a) Beliefs (b) Conflicts of life  
(c) Social utility (d) Contemporary leadership  
(e) Ignorance

3. According to the author, the attitude of self-opinionated person in the practical social life should be
  - (a) rigid
  - (b) flexible
  - (c) generous
  - (d) optimistic
  - (e) revolutionary
4. According to the author, a generation is a whole but it is always
  - (a) homogeneous
  - (b) unified in values
  - (c) growing
  - (d) constant
  - (e) heterogeneous
5. What does the author mean by describing 'apply his beliefs in the practical conduct of life' in line six of the passage?
  - (a) To practise what he believes
  - (b) To preach what he believes
  - (c) To indoctrinate what he believes
  - (d) To adhere to what he believes
  - (e) To denounce what he believes
6. According to the author, why overnight change in social setting is not desirable?
  - (a) It will invigorate our life
  - (b) It is difficult to bring about
  - (c) It will lead to social disintegration
  - (d) It will retard progress of the society
  - (e) None of these
7. The author's attitude towards the problem he discusses is
  - (a) opportunistic
  - (b) realistic
  - (c) pessimistic
  - (d) intransigent
  - (e) doctrinaire

### Passage 8

The capitalist system of society does not foster healthy relations among human beings. A few people own all the means of production and others—though nominally few have to sell their labour under conditions imposed upon them. The emphasis of capitalism being on the supreme importance of material wealth the intensity of its appeal is to the acquisitive intensity. It promotes worship of economic power with little regard to the means employed for its acquisition and the end that it serves. By its exploitation of human beings to the limits of endurance its concentration is on the largest profit rather than maximum production.

Thus the division of human family is done on the basis of economic circumstance. All this is injurious to division of human dignity. And when the harrowed poor turn to the founders of religion for succour, they rather offer a subtle defence of the established order. They promise future happiness for their present suffering and conjure up visions of paradise to redress the balance to soothe the suffering and the revolt of the tortured men. The system imposes injustice, the religion justifies it.

1. The passage indicates that the capitalist system is
  - (a) fair
  - (b) ambitious
  - (c) prosperous
  - (d) dehumanising
2. The established order is supported by religion to
  - (a) alleviate the suffering of the poor in the capitalist system
  - (b) perpetuate the injustice imposed by the capitalist system
  - (c) balance the suffering of the poor with hopes of future rewards
  - (d) help the tortured men to seek redress

3. In a capitalist system
  - (a) the means justify the ends
  - (b) the ends justify the means
  - (c) the means endorsed by religion are strictly followed
  - (d) means which lead to exploitation are strictly prohibited
4. Capitalism is injurious to human relations because it divides society into two groups, *i.e.*
  - (a) working and non-working
  - (b) exploiters and exploited
  - (c) religious and irreligious
  - (d) buyers and sellers
5. In a capitalistic system of society each man wishes
 

(a) to acquire maximum wealth	(b) to produce maximum wealth
(c) to have visions of paradise	(d) to soothe the sufferings of other

### Passage 9

If I had been asked in my early youth whether I preferred to have dealings only with men or only with books, my answer would certainly have been in favour of books. In later years this has become less and less. Not that I have had so much better experiences with men than with books, on the contrary delightful books even now come my way more often than purely delightful men. But the many bad experiences with men have nourished the meadow of my life as the noblest book could not do.

1. The author says that in later years his love of books diminished because
  - (a) he did not get many delightful books to read
  - (b) he had better experiences with men than with books
  - (c) he had given up the habit of reading books
  - (d) even the bad experiences he had with men were more valuable than what the noblest books could give
2. Which one of the following statements best reflects the main arguments of the passage?
  - (a) Books are always better than men
  - (b) There are more purely delightful men than purely delightful books
  - (c) It is the experience with other human beings that nourishes one's life and not necessarily books
  - (d) Neither men nor books give any worth while experience
3. Which one of the pairs of phrases best helps to bring out the metaphorical meaning of the meadow of my life?
  - (a) Pure and healthy life
  - (b) Vast and rich life
  - (c) Well nourished but dull life
  - (d) Poor but simple life
4. In his early youth, the author
  - (a) liked to have more dealings with books than with men
  - (b) preferred to have dealings only with books
  - (c) liked to have more dealings with men than with books
  - (d) liked to have dealings more with men than with books

### Passage 10

The stock-taking done at the first national convention on Consumer Protection served to highlight the areas that called for special attention to sustain the momentum of the movement as genuine forum for safeguarding the people's interests. Spreading awareness about the rights of the consumers and the relief open to them in case they did not get their money's worth of goods and services has rightly been identified as the first priority.

While this may not be a difficult task in urban areas, where the movement is concentrated at present, taking it to the vast rural hinterland calls for a multi-media approach in which radio and television have a crucial role to play. The involvement of the 500-odd consumer organizations in the country in publicising the concept of fair trade practices and the remedies available against their violation will prove rewarding, if the message is conveyed through village bodies. Government efforts remain confined at best to setting up the infrastructure after the formal launch of the movement with the enactment of the Consumer Protection Act. The mounting backlog of cases in consumer courts, points to the need for toning up the district level redressal machinery.

The main objective of the movement is the creation of a culture that denies place in the market for products that are not consumer friendly. This is possible only if consumer bodies take over the watch-dog role performed by the Government till now and exercise social control over the market to see that the benefits of liberalization are not reaped by traders alone. But the plea to industry to exercise self-regulation and maintain minimum standards of quality and devise appropriate pricing is bound to go unheeded unless strict measures are taken to ensure compliance.

1. The first national convention on Consumer Protection has
  - (a) highlighted the areas for special attention
  - (b) spread awareness about consumer rights
  - (c) specified in relief open to the consumer
  - (d) given it a momentum
2. Consumer Protection Act proposes to give the Consumer Protection against
  - (a) highly priced substandard goods
  - (b) cheating by selling substandard goods
  - (c) not getting his money's worth
  - (d) denial of relief if the product is not upto the mark
3. Government contributed to the Consumer Protection Movement by
  - (a) toning up a district level redressal machinery
  - (b) clearing the backlog cases in the consumer court
  - (c) setting up infrastructure
  - (d) enactment of the Consumer Protection Act
4. Spreading Consumer Protection Movement to the rural areas needs
  - (a) official patronage
  - (b) a multi-media approach
  - (c) consumer organization to canvass this
  - (d) message to be conveyed by village bodies

5. Role of consumer bodies is
- (a) to maintain minimum standards of quality
  - (b) to function as a watch-dog
  - (c) to make a plea to industry to exercise self-control
  - (d) to exercise social control over the market

### Passage 11

Though the U.S. prides itself on being a leader in the world community, a recent report shows that it lags far behind other industrialized countries in meeting the needs of its youngest and most vulnerable citizens. The U.S. has a higher infant mortality-rate, a higher proportion of low birth-weight babies, a smaller proportion of babies immunized against childhood diseases and a much higher rate of adolescent pregnancies.

These findings, described as a 'quiet crisis' requiring immediate and far-reaching action, appeared in a report prepared by a task force of educators, doctors, politicians and business people. According to the report, a fourth of the nation's 12 million infants and toddlers live in poverty. As many as half confront risk factors that could harm their ability to develop intellectually, physically and socially. Child immunizations are too low, more children are born into poverty, more are in substandard care while their parents work and more are being raised by single parents. When taken together, these and other risk factors can lead to educational and health problems that are much harder and more costly to reverse.

The crisis begins in the womb with unplanned parenthood. Women with unplanned pregnancies are less likely to seek pre-natal care. In the U.S. 80% of teenage pregnancies and 56% of all pregnancies are unplanned. The problems continue after birth where unplanned pregnancies and unstable partnerships often go hand in hand. Since 1950, the number of single parent families has nearly tripled. More than 25 per cent of all births today are to unmarried mothers. As the number of single parent families grow and more women enter the work force, infants and toddlers are increasingly in the care of people other than their parents.

Most disturbingly, recent statistics show that American parents are increasingly neglecting or abusing their children. In only four years from 1987-1991, the number of children in foster care increased by over 50 per cent. Babies under the age of one are the fastest growing category of children entering foster care. The crisis affects children under the age of three most severely, the report says. Yet, it is this period—from infancy through pre-school years—that sets the stage for a child's future.

**Directions** Choose the word which is most opposite in meaning to the given word as used in the passage.

1. The main focus of the passage is on the plight of
  - (a) orphaned children
  - (b) teenage mothers
  - (c) low birthweight babies
  - (d) unwed mothers
  - (e) None of these
2. Children falling in which age-group are most severely affected by the 'quiet crisis'?
  - (a) Below one year
  - (b) Below three years
  - (c) Between two and three years
  - (d) Between one and three years
  - (e) None of these

3. Which of the following does not constitute the 'quiet crisis' in the U.S. as per the task force report?
- (a) Lower proportion of new born babies with normal weight
  - (b) Higher incidence of adolescent girls becoming mothers
  - (c) Lower rate of babies surviving childhood diseases
  - (d) Larger proportion of babies who are deprived of immunization
  - (e) Increasing cases of teenage couples getting divorced
4. Which of the following statements is not true in the context of the passage?
- (a) The number of single parent families today is approximately three times more than four decades ago
  - (b) The number of children in the U.S. entering foster care has decreased after 1991
  - (c) In the U.S., the number of infants living in poverty is about 3 million
  - (d) Only 20 per cent of all the pregnancies in the U.S. are planned
  - (e) About 6 million infants in the U.S. are likely to develop educational and health problems
5. The number of children born to married mothers in the U.S. is approximately how many times the number of children born to unwed mothers?
- (a) 1.5 times
  - (b) 2 times
  - (c) 3 times
  - (d) 3.5 times
  - (e) Not mentioned in the passage
6. Children born out of unplanned pregnancies are highly vulnerable because
- (a) they are raised by single parents
  - (b) their parents are mostly poor
  - (c) they are mostly malnourished
  - (d) they are less likely to receive prenatal care
  - (e) their parents are emotionally immature
7. Decide which of the following factors is/are responsible for the physical, intellectual and social under-development of infants in the U.S.?
- A. Illiteracy of parents      B. Lack of parental care      C. Poverty
- (a) Only A
  - (b) Only B
  - (c) Only C
  - (d) Both A and C
  - (e) Both B and C
8. An increasing number of infants in the U.S. are in foster care on account of
- (a) an increasing number of single parent families with the female member working.
  - (b) an increasing number of women maintaining the status of unwed motherhood and becoming economically independent.
  - (c) an increasing number of employed couples who are required to stay apart.
  - (d) an increasing number of women getting divorced and abandoning their babies.
  - (e) an increasing number of parents who lack awareness about baby-care.
9. The task force report seems to be based on the data pertaining to the period
- (a) 1987-91.
  - (b) 1950 onwards till date
  - (c) 1987 onwards till date
  - (d) 1950-91
  - (e) 1991 onwards till date

**Directions** Choose the word which is most nearly the same in meaning as the given word as used in the passage.

10. Confront
- (a) face
  - (b) tolerate
  - (c) succumb
  - (d) eliminate
  - (e) oppose

11. Vulnerable  
 (a) insecure (b) indispensable  
 (c) risky (d) promising  
 (e) delicate
12. Abusing  
 (a) cursing (b) beating  
 (c) ill treating (d) accusing  
 (e) oppressing

**Directions** Choose the word which is most opposite in meaning to the given word as used in the passage.

13. Severely  
 (a) drastically (b) intensely  
 (c) minutely (d) normally  
 (e) slightly
14. Unstable  
 (a) changing (b) steady  
 (c) stagnant (d) confined  
 (e) constant
15. Substandard  
 (a) impoverished (b) compassionate  
 (c) excellent (d) beneficial  
 (e) valuable

### Passage 12

Street theatre in India is a well established ancient art form despite the proliferation of modern means of entertainment and communication, street theatre continues to flourish in India. Street theatre as a channel of communication has for centuries been propagating reforms by highlighting social, economic and political issues present in the society.

Unlike in the olden days, its performance is no longer restricted to villages or small localities of the city. Today small groups of performers including students, would stage performances to mobilise public opinion or to help create or raise awareness over a particular public importance.

Themes on substance abuse, AIDS awareness and domestic violence are some of the areas highlighted by contemporary street theatre troupe. Unlike in regular drama street drama employ very little props and images. The human body becomes the main tool in which choreography, mime, dialogues, songs and slogans are extensively used.

Street theatre is one of the most intimate media. Its appeal is to the emotions leading to quick psychological impact on audiences. By being local and live they also are able to establish not only direct contact with the audience, but by being cost-effective and flexible they are popular among all age groups. **[SSC CPO 2014]**

1. Modern means of entertainment and communication ... street theatre.  
 (a) does affect (b) does not affect  
 (c) helps popularise (d) help establish

2. In the olden days street theatre ... to villages or small localities of the city.  
(a) was restricted (b) was not restricted  
(c) was opened (d) was entertained
3. Street theatre usually...with issues of public importance.  
(a) is distanced (b) is performed  
(c) deals (d) does not deal
4. Street theatre is ... to stage.  
(a) nothing (b) costly  
(c) reasonable (d) affordable
5. Street theatre creates an/a ... impact on audiences.  
(a) intimate (b) emotional  
(c) mystical (d) physical

### Passage 13

Self-directed learning, in its broadest meaning, describes a process in which individuals take the initiative with or without the help of others, in diagnosing their learning needs, formulation of learning goals, identifying resources for learning, choosing and implementing learning strategies and evaluating learning, outcomes. Thus, it is important to attain new knowledge easily and skillfully for the rest of his or her life.

What is the need for self-directed learning? One reason is that there is convincing evidence that people, who take the initiative in learning, learn more things and learn better than people waiting to be taught. the second reason is that self-directed learning is more in tune with our natural processes of psychological development; an essential aspect of maturing is developing the ability to take increasing responsibility of our own lives to become increasingly self-directed. The third reason is that many of the new development in education put a heavy responsibility on the learners to take a good deal of initiative in their own learning. To meet the challenges in today's instructive environment, self-directed learning is most essential.

1. In self-directed learning, an individual  
(a) takes initiative with or without the help of others  
(b) is passive and waits for directions  
(c) is helpless and dependent  
(d) takes initiative, without an objective
2. There is need for self-directed learning because  
(a) it is less challenging  
(b) it helps people to learn more things and learn better  
(c) it is more cost-effective method  
(d) it is a modern method of learning
3. Which word best describes self-directed learning?  
(a) Active learning (b) Passive learning  
(c) Compulsory learning (d) Repulsive learning
4. The modern environment according to the author is  
(a) restrictive (b) instructive  
(c) less developed4 (d) impracticable

5. The synonym of the word 'diagnosing' is
- |                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| (a) searching   | (b) examining |
| (c) identifying | (d) complying |

### Passage 14

The stunning Baltimore Oriole is a common summer visitor to Eastern and mid Western deciduous woodlands, neighbourhoods and gardens. Baltimore Orioles winter in the tropics. About 7 inches in length, the male Baltimore Oriole has a black head, throat, back and wings. Its breast, stomach and rump are bright orange. It also has an orange patch on the top of each wing and white wing bars. The tail is mostly black with orange fringes. The female is dull orange throughout.

Baltimore Orioles range throughout the Eastern and mid Western United States and can be found as far West as the Dakotas. At the Western edge of their range, Baltimore Orioles may breed with the Bullock's Oriole (They were once considered the same species under the name Northern Oriole). Baltimore Orioles build unusual pouch like nests that hang down from branches.

They usually nest high in the trees, but often come down to lower heights, flashing bright orange and black feathers to delighted observers. Active and acrobatic by nature, Baltimore Orioles may even feed upside down at times. Baltimore Orioles eat insects and berries. They can easily be attracted to gardens by nailing orange wedges to tree branches. Baltimore Orioles are also known to feed at hummingbird feeders and sapsucker wells.

- The Baltimore oriole spend winters in the
 

(a) dakotas	(b) carolinas
(c) tropics	(d) deserts
- What is the colour of the female Baltimore Oriole?
 

(a) Bright orange	(b) Light orange
(c) Dull orange	(d) White
- Which of the following does not attract the Baltimore Oriole?
 

(a) Oranges	(b) Hummingbird feeders
(c) Sapsucker wells	(d) Sunflower seeds
- The Baltimore Oriole can be found as far West as
 

(a) North and South Dakota	(b) The Carolina
(c) California	(d) Baltimore
- Which of the following is incorrect about the Baltimore Oriole?
 

(a) They feed upside down sometimes
(b) They may breed with the Bullock's Oriole
(c) The Baltimore Oriole is uncommon in the US
(d) The Baltimore Oriole has a black throat
- Where would I probably not find a Baltimore Oriole?
 

(a) High in the trees	(b) In gardens and neighbourhoods
(c) Deciduous woodlands	(d) The Sahara desert
- The nest of the Baltimore Oriole
 

(a) is in a tree cavity	(b) stands upon a branch of a tree
(c) hangs from a branch of a tree	(d) is usually low in the branches

8. The other name of Baltimore Oriole was  
(a) Bullock's Oriole (b) Baltimore's Oriole  
(c) Northern Oriole (d) Southern Oriole
9. Which of these colours is not found on a Baltimore Oriole?  
(a) Purple (b) Orange  
(c) White (d) Black
10. Which of the following is the closest in size to a Baltimore Oriole?  
(a) The size of a half-scale (b) A little more than a half-scale  
(c) A-little less than a half-scale (d) A foot ruler

### Passage 15

As the rulers of the planet, humans like to think that it is the large creatures who will emerge victorious from the struggle for survival. However, nature teaches us the opposite it is often the smallest species which are the toughest and most adaptable. A perfect example is the hummingbird, which is found in the Americas. One species of hummingbird is known as the bee hummingbird ranks as the world's smallest and lightest bird and it is barely visible when it is in flight.

Humming birds are the only birds that can fly backwards. They feed mainly on the nectar of flowers, a liquid that is rich in energy. Nectar is an ideal food source, for hummingbirds need an incredible amount of energy to sustain their body metabolism. A hummingbird's wings flap at a rate of about 80 times per second and its tiny heart beats more than 1000 times per minute. This is why they must consume relatively large quantities of food. In the course of a day, a hummingbird consumes about half its body weight in nectar. [SSC LDC 2013]

1. Nature has made man realise the fact that  
(a) the large creatures emerge victorious from the struggle for survival  
(b) the smallest creatures are the toughest and most adaptable  
(c) humans who rule the planet are the most powerful beings on Earth  
(d) the largest and the smallest species are equally tough and strong
2. Which of the following statements about the bee hummingbird is true?  
(a) It is obviously visible when it flies  
(b) It escapes our sight when it is in flight  
(c) It could fly high beyond the clouds  
(d) It cannot be seen when it is in flight
3. Hummingbirds need a lot of energy in order to  
(a) maintain their body metabolism  
(b) flap their wings and fly backward's  
(c) sustain a steady rhythm of heart-beat  
(d) win in the struggle for survival
4. The hummingbirds are exclusive in the sense that  
(a) they subsist only on nectar  
(b) their pulse rate is more than 1000 per minute  
(c) they consume half their body weight everyday  
(d) they can fly backwards
5. The word, 'incredible' in the passage mean  
(a) tremendous (b) inexhaustible  
(c) unbelievable (d) phenomenal

### Passage 16

John had never thought much about the origin of wealth or inequalities in life. It was his firm belief that if this world was not good, the next would be good and this faith sustained him. He was not like some others whom he knew, who would sell their souls to the devil.

He always thought of God before doing anything. He lived the life of an honest man. He had not married, but did not desire another man's wife. He believed that women weakened men as was described in the story of Samson and Delilah.

1. "To sell one's soul to the devil" means
  - (a) suppressing one's conscience
  - (b) giving up goodness in exchange for evil
  - (c) giving up one's honesty for the sake of monetary benefits
  - (d) to sell oneself to earn livelihood
2. John thought that women weakened men because
  - (a) he thought that women were evil
  - (b) he believed that a woman was a fancy devil
  - (c) he thought that a woman would spoil his life
  - (d) he was convinced that what the story of Samson and Delilah illustrates is correct
3. It was John's belief that
  - (a) one can be happy only by remaining a bachelor
  - (b) the world is a happy place
  - (c) there is no other world
  - (d) one must lead an honest life
4. By not desiring another man's wife John showed that
 

(a) he wanted to get married	(b) he was a man of principles
(c) he felt sorry for other men	(d) he had no desire for another's wealth
5. From the above passage we understand that John was
 

(a) not highly educated	(b) a man of simple faith
(c) a deeply pessimistic man	(d) a scholar of scriptures

### Passage 17

Stammering is a habit disorder linked with lack of self-confidence. Basically, for a child to understand a language, there are four stages. The first is learning to understand the spoken language and the second is speaking. Both of these usually develop around the age of two.

The third stage is speaking complex sentences, which develops at around 3rd and the 4th is when the child recognises the written alphabet. In 80% of children while the 3rd and 4th stage are at play, the first two get disturbed because something new is being incorporated in the mind.

This is absolutely normal. But what over cautious mothers do is fret a lot and the child develops a fear which later manifests itself as stammering. In fact, most text books on stammering state in bold that "Had there not been any over cautious mothers, hardly any one would have suffered from stammering." Fluency can be incorporated in the speech of such patients through hypnosis. [SSC CGL 2012]

1. Stammering is caused because of
  - (a) physical disorder
  - (b) hindered growth
  - (c) lack of self-confidence
  - (d) lack of understanding
2. The second stage of a child's understanding the language is
  - (a) speaking
  - (b) writing
  - (c) listening
  - (d) reading
3. .... are basically the reason for developing a fear in the child's mind.
  - (a) Parents
  - (b) Over cautious mothers
  - (c) Fathers
  - (d) Uncles
4. Fluency in such patients can be incorporated in the speech of such patients through
  - (a) hypnosis
  - (b) slap
  - (c) punishment
  - (d) symbiosis
5. By the time the child becomes two years old he/she can
  - (a) speak complex sentences
  - (b) only understand spoken language
  - (c) understand and speak simple language
  - (d) write the alphabets

### Passage 18

The e-waste (Management and Handling) Rules, 2011, notified by the Ministry of Environment and Forests, have the potential to turn a growing problem into a developmental opportunity. With almost half-a-year to go before the rules take effect, there is enough time to create the necessary infrastructure for collection, dismantling, and recycling of electronic waste. The focus must be on sincere and efficient implementation. Only decisive action can reduce the pollution and health costs associated with India's hazardous waste recycling industry. If India can achieve a transformation, it will be creating a whole new employment sector that provides good wages and working conditions for tens of thousands.

The legacy response of the states to even the basic law on urban waste, the Municipal Solid Wastes (Management and Handling) Rules, has been one of indifference, many cities continue to simply burn the garbage or dump it in lakes. With the emphasis now on segregation of waste at source and recovery of materials, it should be feasible to implement both sets of rules efficiently. A welcome feature of the new e-waste rules is the emphasis on extended producer responsibility. In other words, producers must take responsibility for the disposal of end-of-life products. For this provision to work, they must ensure that consumers who sell scrap get some form of financial incentive.

The e-waste rules, which derive from those pertaining to hazardous waste, are scheduled to come into force on 1st May, 2012. Sound as they are, the task of scientifically disposing a few hundred thousand tonnes of trash electronics annually depends heavily on a system of oversight by State Pollution Control Boards (PCBs). Unfortunately, most PCBs remain unaccountable and often lack the resources for active enforcement.

It must be pointed out that, although agencies handling e-waste must obtain environmental clearances and be authorised and registered by the PCBs even under the Hazardous Wastes (Management, Handling and Transboundary Movement) Rules, 2008, there has been little practical impact. Over 95% of electronic waste is collected and recycled by the informal sector. The way forward is for the , PCBs to be

made accountable for enforcement of the e-waste rules and the levy of penalties under environmental laws. Clearly, the first order priority is to create a system that will absorb the 80000-strong workforce in the informal sector into the proposed scheme for scientific recycling. Facilities must be created to upgrade the skills of these workers through training and their occupational health must be ensured.

Recycling of e-waste is one of the biggest challenges today. In such a time, when globalization and information technology are growing at a pace which could only be imagined few years back, e-waste and its hazards have become more prominent over a period of time and should be given immediate attention. **[IBPS Clerk 2011]**

- What according to the passage is important now for e-waste management?
  - Making rules
  - Reviewing rules
  - Implementing rules
  - Notifying rules
  - Amending rules
- Which of the following can be one of the by-products of effective e-waste management?
  - India can guide other countries in doing so
  - It will promote international understanding
  - It will promote national integration
  - It will create a new employment sector
  - It will further empower judiciary
- Which of the following rules has not been indicated in the passage?
  - e-waste Rules, 2011
  - Pollution Check Rules
  - Hazardous Wastes Rules, 2008
  - Municipal Solid Wastes Rules
  - All of these have been indicated
- “**both sets of rules**” is being referred to which of the following?
  - Solid wastes and Hazardous wastes
  - e-waste and Hazardous waste
  - Solid waste and e-waste
  - e-waste and e-production
  - Solid waste and recycling waste
- e-waste rules have been derived from those pertaining to
  - Hazardous waste
  - PC waste
  - Computer waste
  - Municipal solid waste
  - National waste
- Which of the following will help implement “both sets of rules”?
  - Employment opportunities
  - International collaboration
  - Financial incentive
  - Segregation of waste at source
  - Health costs
- e-waste Rules came/come into force from
  - 2008
  - 2009
  - 2010
  - 2011
  - 2012
- Which of the following best explains the meaning of the phrase “**which could only be imagined few years back**”, as used in the passage ?
  - It was doomed
  - It took us few years
  - It took us back by few years
  - Imagination is better than IT
  - None of these
- Which of the following is true in the context of the passage ?
  - No city dumps its waste in lakes

- (b) Some cities burn garbage
- (c) PCBs have adequate resources for active enforcement
- (d) e-waste was a much bigger challenge in the past
- (e) None of the above

10. Which of the following is not true in the context of the passage?
- (a) Some form of financial incentive is recommended for the producers
  - (b) Some financial incentive is recommended for the consumers
  - (c) e-waste will be a few hundred thousand tonnes
  - (d) The agencies handling e-waste have to obtain environmental clearances
  - (e) Those involved in e-waste management would need to upgrade their skills

### Passage 19

Organized retail has **fuelled** new growth categories-like liquid hand wash, breakfast cereals and pet food in the consumer goods industry, accounting for almost 50% of their sales, said data from market search firm Nielsen. The figures showed some of these new categories got more than 40% of their business from modern retail outlets. The data also suggests how products in these categories reach the neighbourhood kirana stores after they have established themselves in modern trade.

While grocers continue to be an important channel, for the new and evolving categories we saw an increased presence of high-end products in modern trade. e.g., **premium** products in laundry detergents, dishwashing, car air fresheners and surface care increased in availability through this format as these products are aimed at **affluent** consumers who are more likely to shop in supermarket/hypermarket outlets and who are willing to pay more for specialized products.

Some other categories that have grown exceptionally and now account for bulk of the sales from modern retail are frozen and ready-to-eat foods, pet food, diapers, pre- and post-wash products, hair conditioners and high-end shaving products, besides others. "Win the evolution of modern trade, our growth in this channel has been healthy as it is for several other categories. Modern retail is an important part of our business" said managing director, Kellogg India.

What modern retail offers to companies experimenting with new categories is the chance to educate customers which was not the case with a general trade store. "Category creation and market development starts with modern trade but as more consumers start consuming this category, they **penetrate into other channels**, said President, food & FMCG category, Future Group the country's largest retailer which operates stores like Big Bazaar.

But a point to note here is that modern retailers themselves push their own private brands in these very categories and can emerge as a big threat for the consumer goods and food companies. For instance, Big Bazaar's private label Clean Mate is hugely popular and sells more than a brand like Harpic in its own stores. "So, there is a certain amount of conflict and competition that will play out over the next few years which the FMCG companies will have to **watch out for**", said KPMG's executive director (retail).

In the past, there have been instances of retailers boycotting products from big FMCG players on the issue of margins, but as modern retail becomes increasingly significant for **pushing** new categories, experts say we could see more partnerships

being forged between retailers and FMCG companies. “Market development for new categories takes time so brand wars for leadership and consumer franchise will be fought on the modern retail platform. A new brand can overnight compete with **established** companies by tying up with few retailers in these categories”, President of Future Group added. [IBPS Clerk 2011]

1. Which of the following is being referred to as new growth category?
 

(a) Soap cake	(b) Fresh fruits
(c) Fresh vegetables	(d) Liquid Hand-wash
(e) Usual groceries	
2. Which of the following is being referred to as modern retail outlet?
 

(a) Kirana Store	(b) On-line Store
(c) Door-to-door Selling	(d) Road-side Hawkers
(e) Supermarket	
3. Which of the following best conveys the meaning of the phrase, “**watch out for**” as used in the passage ?
 

(a) Demand justice	(b) Avoid conflict
(c) Be on the alert	(d) Passively accept
(e) Open for competition	
4. Which of the following is being referred to as ‘certain amount of conflict’?
 

(a) Retailers selling their own products with products of companies
(b) Retailers selling similar products of different consumer companies
(c) Offering differential rate of margin for different products
(d) New products killing the old products
(e) Different retailers selling same category of products
5. The new growth category products
 

(a) reach first the neighbourhood Kirana shop and then the modern retail outlets
(b) account for less than 20% of sales in organized retail
(c) reach all the outlets almost at the same time
(d) first become popular in modern trade outlets before reaching Kirana shops
(e) are aimed at the poor section of the society
6. Which of the following is not true in the context of the passage?
 

(a) Clean Mate is a product of an organized retailers
(b) Some retailers don’t keep some products if the profit margin is not good
(c) A new brand can never quickly displace an established brand
(d) Kirana store still remains an important channel
(e) In future there will be more partnerships between retailers and FMCG Companies
7. Which of the following categories has become very popular through sales from modern retail outlets?
 

(a) Frozen foods	(b) Computers
(c) Cell phones	(d) Fresh fruits
(e) Soft-drinks	
8. Which class/section of people are more likely to shop in Hypermarket outlets?
 

(a) Senior citizens	(b) Younger generation
(c) Rich consumers	(d) Poor section
(e) Women	
9. Which of the following advantages do modern retail outlets provide for new categories of products as compared to general trade stores?
 

(a) Higher profit margins	(b) Experimenting with new products
(c) Competition with similar products	(d) Better packing of the product

(e) Products at much lower-price

10. "..... penetrate into other Channels." Which of the following is being referred to as Channels?

(a) Products

(b) Companies

(c) New products

(d) Existing products

(e) None of these

### Passage 20

In a reversal of the norm elsewhere, in India policymakers and economists have become optimists while bosses do the worrying. The country's Central Bank has predicted that the country's economy is likely to grow at a double digit rate during the next 20-30 years. India has the capability with its vast labour and lauded entrepreneurial spirit. But the private sector which is supposed to do the heavy lifting that turns India from the world's tenth largest economy to its third largest by 2030 has become fed up. Business people often carp about India's problems but their irritation this time has a nervous edge.

In the first quarter of 2011, GDP grew at an annual rate of 7.8%; in 2005-07 it managed 9-10%. The economy may be slowing naturally as the low interest rates and public spending that got India through the global crisis are belatedly withdrawn. At the same time the surge in inflation caused by exorbitant food prices has spread more widely, casting doubt over whether India can grow at 8-10 per cent in the medium term without overheating.

In India, as in many fast growing nations, the confidence to invest depends on the conviction that the long term trajectory is intact and it is that which is in doubt. Big Indian firms too sometimes seem happier to invest abroad than at home, in deals that are often hailed as symbols of the country's growing **clout** but sometimes speak to its weaknesses-purchases of natural resources that India has in abundance but struggles to get out of the ground. In fact a further dip in investment could be self-fulfilling: if fewer roads, ports and factories are built, this will hurt both short term growth figures and reduce the economy's long term capacity.

There is a view that because a fair amount of growth is assured the government need not try very hard. The liberalisation reforms that began in 1991 freed markets for products and gave rise to vibrant competition, at the same time what economists call factor markets, those for basic inputs like land, power, labour etc remain unreformed and largely under state control, which creates difficulties. Clearances today can take three to four years and many employers are keen to replace workers with machines despite an abundance of labour force.

This can be attributed to labour laws which are inimical to employee creation and an education system that means finding quality manpower a major problem. In fact the Planning Commission, concluded that even achieving 9% growth will need **marked** policy action in unreformed sectors. Twenty years ago it was said that the yardstick against which India should be measured was its potential and it is clear that there remains much to do.

[IBPS PO 2011]

1. Which of the following can be said about the Indian economy at present?

(a) It can comfortably achieve double digit growth rate at present

(b) High food prices have led to overheating of the economy

- (c) Citizens are affluent owing to laxity in regulation  
 (d) Private sector confidence in India's growth potential is high  
 (e) Unreformed sectors are a drag on economic growth
2. Why are employers reluctant to hire Indian labour force?  
 (A) India's labour force is overqualified for the employment opportunities available.  
 (B) High attrition rate among employees stemming from their entrepreneurial spirit.  
 (C) Labour laws are not conducive to generating employment.  
 (a) Only C (b) All of these  
 (c) Both A and C (d) Both A and B  
 (e) None of these
3. What is the state of India's basic input sectors at present?  
 (a) These sectors attract Foreign Direct Investment because of their vast potential  
 (b) These sectors are lagging as projects are usually awarded to foreign companies  
 (c) These sectors are stagnating and badly in need of reforms  
 (d) These sectors are well regulated as these are governed by the State  
 (e) None of the above
4. What is the author's main objective in writing the passage?  
 (a) Showcasing the potential of India's growth potential to entice foreign investors  
 (b) Exhorting India to implement measures to live up to its potential  
 (c) Recommending India's model of development to other developing countries  
 (d) Berating the private sector for not bidding for infrastructure development projects  
 (e) Criticising the measures taken by India during the global economic crisis
5. What impact has the GDP growth of 7.8% had?  
 (A) Indian Industry is anxious about India's economic growth.  
 (B) India has achieved status as the world's third largest economy at present.  
 (C) Foreign investment in India has drastically increased.  
 (a) Only A (b) All of these  
 (c) Both A and C (d) Both A and B  
 (e) None of these
6. Which of the following is most similar in meaning to the word **Clout** given in bold as used in the passage?  
 (a) Strike (b) Standing  
 (c) Force (d) Launch  
 (e) Achieve
7. Which of the following is most opposite in meaning to the word **Marked** given in bold as used in the passage?  
 (a) Decreased (b) Ignored  
 (c) Clear (d) Assessed  
 (e) Imperceptible
8. What measures do experts suggest be taken to ensure targeted economic growth?  
 (a) Lowering of interest rates to help industries hit by recession  
 (b) Prolonged financial support for basic input industries  
 (c) Incentives to Indian companies to invest in infrastructure  
 (d) Formulation of policies and their implementation in factor markets  
 (e) Stringent implementation of licensing system

### Passage 21

In many countries, a combustible mixture of authoritarianism, unemployment and youth has given rise to disaffection with strongmen rulers which has in turn spilled over into uprisings. Young people in these countries are far better educated than their parents were. In 1990 the average Egyptian had 4.4 years of schooling; by 2010 the figure had risen to 7.1 years. Could it be that education, by making people less willing to put up with restrictions on freedom and more willing to question authority, **promotes** democratization. Ideas about the links between education, income and democracy are at the heart of what social scientists have long studied.

Since then plenty of economists and political scientists have looked for statistical evidence of a causal link between education and democratization. Many have pointed to the strong correlation that exists between levels of education and measures like the pluralism of party politics and the existence of civil liberties. The patterns are similar when income and democracy are considered. There are outliers, of course - until recently, many Arab countries managed to combine energy-based wealth and decent education with undemocratic political systems. But some deduce from the overall picture that as China and other authoritarian states get more educated and richer, their people will agitate for greater political freedom, culminating in a shift to a more democratic form of government.

This apparently reasonable intuition is shakier than it seems. Critics of the hypothesis point out that correlation is hardly causation. The general trend over the past half-century may have been towards rising living standards, a wider spread of basic education and more democracy, but it is entirely possible that this is being driven by another variable. Even if the correlation were not spurious, it would be difficult to know which way causation ran.

Does more education lead to greater democracy? Or are more democratic countries better at educating their citizens? A recent NBER paper compared a group of Kenyan girls in 69 primary schools whose students were randomly selected to receive a scholarship with similar students in schools which received no such financial aid. Previous studies had shown that the scholarship programme led to higher test scores and increased the likelihood that girls enrolled in secondary school.

Overall, it significantly increased the amount of education obtained. For the new study the authors tried to see how the extra schooling had affected the political and social attitudes of the women in question. Findings suggested that education may make people more interested in improving their own lives but they may not necessarily see democracy as the way to do it.

Even in established democracies, more education does not always mean either more active political participation or greater faith in democracy. Poorer and less educated people often vote in larger numbers than their more educated compatriots, who often express disdain for the **messiness of democracy** yearning for the kind of government that would deal strongly with the corrupt and build highways, railway lines and bridges at a dizzying pace of authoritarian China.

1. Which of the following most aptly describes the central theme of the passage?
  - (a) Democratic nations are richer and have a better track record of educating their citizens
  - (b) Education does not necessarily lead to greater enthusiasm for a democratic form of government
  - (c) Educated societies with autocratic form of government enjoy a better quality of life than democracies
  - (d) Citizens can fulfill their personal aspirations only under a democratic form of government
  - (e) Democracy makes citizens more intolerant as it does not restrict personal freedoms
2. Which of the following is most similar in meaning to the word **Promotes** given in bold as used in the passage?
  - (a) Upgrades
  - (b) Prefers
  - (c) Recommends
  - (d) Advocates
  - (e) Publicises
3. What conclusion can be drawn from the statistics, cited about Egypt's education system?
  - (a) Job prospects have been on the rise in Egypt in recent times
  - (b) Authoritarian leaders have played a vital role in reforming Egypt's education system
  - (c) Egypt has one of the youngest and best educated demographics in the world
  - (d) Egypt is likely to be successful vibrant democracy
  - (e) There has been a rise in education levels in Egypt in recent times
4. In the context of the passage which of the following characterise(s) democracies?
  - (A) Active participation of majority of educated citizens in electoral process.
  - (B) Fast paced economic growth and accountability of those in power,
  - (C) Better standards of living and access to higher education.
  - (a) All of these
  - (b) Both B and C
  - (c) Only C
  - (d) Both A and B
  - (e) None of these
5. What according to the author has led to uprisings in authoritarian countries?
  - (a) Lack of access to education
  - (b) Vast numbers of uneducated and unemployable youth
  - (c) Frustration with the existing system of governance
  - (d) Unavailability of natural energy resources like coal and oil
  - (e) Government's overambitious plans for development
6. Which of the following is/are true about China in the context of the passage?
  - (A) China's citizens are in favour of a more representative form of government.
  - (B) China has made huge strides in infrastructure developments.
  - (C) China is in the midst of a political revolution.
  - (a) None of these
  - (b) Only A
  - (c) Both A and C
  - (d) Only B
  - (e) All of these
7. What does the phrase "**messiness of democracy**" convey in the context of the passage?
  - (a) Democratic nations are chaotic on account of individual freedoms
  - (b) Most democratic countries frequently have violent revolts among their citizens
  - (c) The divide between the poor and educated is growing wider in democracies
  - (d) High levels of pollution on account of frenetic pace of infrastructure development
  - (e) Resigned acceptance of intrinsic corruption in the education system

### Passage 22

When times are hard, doomsayers are aplenty. The problem is that if you listen to them too carefully, you tend to overlook the most obvious signs of change. 2011 was a bad year, Can 2012 be any worse ? Doomsday forecasts are the easiest to make these days, So, let's try a contrarian's forecast instead. Let's start with the global economy. We have soon a steady flow of good news from the US. The employment situation seems to be improving rapidly and consumer sentiment, reflected in retail expenditures on discretionary items like electronics and clothes, has picked up.

If these trends sustain, the US might post better growth numbers for 2012 than the 1.5-1.8% being forecast currently. Japan is likely to pull out of a recession in 2012, as post-earthquake reconstruction efforts gather momentum and the fiscal stimulus announced in 2011 begins to pay off. The consensus estimate for growth in Japan is a respectable 2% for 2012. The "hard-landing" scenario for China remains and will remain a **myth**. Growth might decelerate further from the 9% that it expected to clock in 2011, but is unlikely to drop below 8-8.5 % in 2012.

Europe is certainly in a spot of trouble. It is perhaps already in recession and for 2012, it is likely to post mildly negative growth. The risk of implosion has dwindled over the last few months -peripheral economies like Greece, Italy and Spain have new governments in place and have made progress towards genuine economic reform.

Even with some of these positive factors in place, we have to accept the fact that global growth in 2012 will be **tepid**. But there is a flipside to this. Softer growth means lower demand for commodities and this is likely to drive a correction in commodity prices. Lower commodity inflation will enable emerging market and central banks to reverse their monetary stance. China, for instance, has already reversed its stance and has pared its reserve ratio twice. The RBI also seems poised for a reversal in its rate cycle as headline inflation seems well on its way to its target of 7% for March, 2012.

That said, oil might be an exception to the general trend in commodities. Rising geopolitical tensions, particularly the continuing face-off between Iran and the US, might lead to a spurt in prices. It might make sense for our oil companies to hedge this risk instead of buying oil in the spot market. As inflation fears **abate** and emerging market and central banks begin to cut rates, two things could happen. Lower commodity inflation would mean lower interest rates and better credit availability. This could set a floor to growth and slowly reverse the business cycle within these economies.

Second, as the fear of untamed, runaway inflation in these economies abates, the global investor's comfort levels with their markets will increase. Which of the **emerging** markets will outperform and who will get left behind? In an environment in which global growth is likely to be weak, economies like India, that have a powerful domestic consumption, should lead; those dependent on exports should, prima facia, fall behind. Specifically for India, a fall in the exchange rate could not have come at a better time. It will help Indian exporters gain market share even if global trade remains depressed. More importantly, it could lead to massive import substitution that favours domestic producers. Let's now focus on India and start with a caveat.

It is important not to confuse a short-run cyclical dip with a permanent do-rating of its long-term structural potential. The arithmetic is simple. Our growth rate can be in the range of 7-10% depending on policy action. 10%, if we get everything right, 7% if we get it all-wrong. Which policies and reforms are critical to taking us to our 10% potential? In judging this, let's again be careful. Let's not go by the laundry list of reforms that FIIs like to wave increase in foreign equity limits in foreign shareholding, greater voting rights for institutional shareholders in banks, FDI in retail, etc. These can have an impact only at the margin. We need not bend over backwards to appease the FIIs through these reforms- they will invest in our markets when momentum picks up and will be the first to exit when the momentum flags, reforms or not.

The reforms that we need are the ones that can actually raise our sustainable long-term growth rate. These have to come in areas like better targeting of subsidies, making projects in infrastructure viable so that they **draw** capital, raising the productivity of agriculture improving healthcare and education, bringing the parallel economy under the tax net, implementing fundamental reforms in taxation like GST and the direct tax code and finally easing the **myriad** rules and regulations that make doing business in India such a nightmare. A number of these things do not require new legislation and can be done through executive order. **[IBPS PO 2012]**

- Which of the following is not true according to the passage?
  - China's economic growth may decline in the year 2012, as compared to the year 2011
  - The European Economy is not doing very well
  - Greece is on the verge of bringing about economic reforms
  - In the year 2012, Japan may post a positive growth and thus pull out of recession
  - All of the above are true
- Which of the following will possibly be a result of softer growth estimated for the year 2012?
  - Prices of oil will not increase.
  - Credit availability would be lesser.
  - Commodity inflation would be lesser.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

  - Only B
  - Both A and B
  - Both A and C
  - Only C
  - All of these
- Which of the following can be said about the present status of the US Economy?
  - There is not much improvement in the economic scenario of the country from the year 2011
  - The growth in the economy of the country, in the year 2012, would definitely be lesser than 1.8%
  - The expenditure on clothes and electronic commodities, by in consumers, is lesser than that in the year 2011
  - There is a chance that in 2012, the economy would do better than what has been forecast
  - The pace of change in the employment scenario of the country is very slow
- Which of the following is possibly the most appropriate title for the passage?
  - The Economic Disorder
  - Indian Economy Versus the European Economy
  - Global Trade
  - The Current Economic Scenario
  - Characteristics of the Indian Economy

5. According to the author, which of the following would characterise Indian growth scenario in 2012?
- (A) Domestic producers will take a hit because of depressed global trade scenario  
(B) On account of its high domestic consumption, India will lead  
(C) Indian exporters will have a hard time in gaining market share
- Which of the statements given above is/are correct?*
- (a) Only A (b) Both A and B  
(c) Both B and C (d) Only A  
(e) All of these
6. Why does the author not recommend taking up the reforms suggested by FIs?
- (a) These will bring about only minor growth  
(b) The reforms suggested will have no effect on the economy of our country, whereas will benefit the FIs significantly  
(c) The previous such recommendations had backfired  
(d) These reforms will be the sole reason for our country's economic downfall  
(e) The reforms suggested by them are not to be trusted as they will not bring about any positive growth in India
7. Which of the following is true as per the scenario presented in the passage?
- (a) The highest growth rate that India can expect is 7%  
(b) The fall in the exchange rate will prove beneficial to India  
(c) Increased FDI in retail as suggested by FIs would benefit , India tremendously  
(d) The reforms suggested by the author require new legislation in India  
(e) None of the above is true
8. According to the author, which of the following reform/s is/are needed to ensure long term growth in India?
- (A) Improving healthcare and educational facilities.  
(B) Bringing about reforms in taxation.  
(C) Improving agricultural productivity.
- Which of the statements given above is/are correct?*
- (a) Only B (b) Both A and B  
(c) Both B and C (d) Only A  
(e) All of these

### Passage 23

A majority of Indians prefer to use the internet for accessing banking and other financial services than shopping online, shows a new survey.

Almost 57% of Indian respondents using the internet prefer to bank online and use other financial services due to **hassle-free** access and time saving feature of online banking according to the survey.

Checking information on products and services online comes a close second at 53% while 50% shop for products online. The fourth on the list-around 42% of respondents in India surfed online to look for jobs, the survey said. Online banking has made things much easier for the people and it saves a lot of time.

It has **eliminated** the problems associated with traditional way of banking where one had to stand in a queue and fill up several forms. Most of the banks in India have introduced customer-friendly online banking facility with advanced security features to protect customers against cybercrime.

The easy registration process for net banking has improved customers' access to several banking products increased customer loyalty, facilitated money transfer to any bank across India and has helped banks-attract new customers. The Indian results closely track the global trends as well conducted among 19216 people from 24 countries, the survey showed that banking and keeping track of finances and searching for jobs are the main tasks of internet users around the globe.

Overall, 60% of people surveyed used the web to check their bank account and other financial assets in the past 90 days, making it the most popular use of the internet globally, Shopping was not too far behind at 48%, the survey showed and 41% went online in search of a job in terms of country preferences, almost 90% of respondents in Sweden use e-banking.

Online banking has also caught on in a big way in nations like France, Canada, Australia, Poland, South Africa and Belgium, the survey showed. The Germans and British come on top for using online shopping with 74% of respondents in both countries having bought something online in the past three months. They are followed by 68% of respondents in Sweden. 65% in US and 62% in South Korea.

**[IBPS Clerk 2013]**

1. If the given sentences were to be arranged in their order of their popularity (from most popular to least popular), which one of the following would represent the correct sequences as given in the passage?
  - A. Use internet to gain information about products and services.
  - B. Use internet to search for jobs.
  - C. Use internet for online banking.

(a) B, A, C	(b) C, B, A
(c) C, A, B	(d) A, B, C
(e) A, C, B	
  
2. Which of the following is not true in the context of the passage?
  - (a) Internet users across the globe are mainly interested in looking for jobs and keeping track of finances
  - (b) Germany and Great Britain are the top countries where online shopping is quite popular
  - (c) Many people in Sweden use e-banking to maintain their finances
  - (d) A majority of Indians prefer shopping online as compared to other online activities
  - (e) All the given statements are true
  
3. According to the passage, banks are successful in attracting more customers due to
  - A. better training to sales staff
  - B. opening more branches at various locations
  - C. easy registration process for net banking

(a) Only B	(b) Both B and C
(c) Both A and B	(d) Both A and C
(e) Only C	
  
4. How many of the Indians using the internet shop online?
 

(a) Between 40% and 50%	(b) One-fourth of them
(c) One-third of them	(d) Half of them
(e) All of them	

5. Which of the following is most nearly the same in meaning as the word **hassle-free** used in the passage?
- (a) unskilled (b) Not annoying  
(c) Subtle (d) Unsaddle  
(e) Notable
6. Based on the passage, what can be said about the internet is a nutshell?
- (a) It has increased the number of cybercrimes  
(b) It is useful only for the rich  
(c) It has been hyped for no reason  
(d) It is more popular for online shopping than anything else  
(e) It has made lives easier than before
7. Which of the following can be appropriate title for the passage?
- (a) The growing utility of the internet  
(b) Internet and its drawbacks  
(c) The traditional versus modern ways of shopping  
(d) Use of the internet in different countries  
(e) Internet-The Curse
8. Which of the following is/are true in the context of the passage?
- A. More than 50% Indians using internet prefer online banking.  
B. Many banks in India have introduced facilities to suit the needs of customers (customer-friendly).  
C. More people shop online in South Korea as compared to those in Sweden.
- (a) Only B (b) Both B and C  
(c) Both A and B (d) Both A and C  
(e) Only C
9. Which of the following is most nearly the same in meaning as the words 'eliminated' as used in the passage?
- (a) taken (b) introduced  
(c) begun (d) removed  
(e) cancelled
10. According to the passage, globally, the most popular use of internet is
- (a) looking for a job  
(b) checking bank accounts and maintaining financial assets  
(c) finding out information about various products  
(d) shopping online  
(e) blogging and tweeting every update in one's personal life

### Passage 24

The cyber-world is ultimately ungovernable. This is alarming as well as convenient, sometimes, convenient because alarming. Some Indian politicians use this to great advantage. When there is an obvious failure in governance during a crisis they deflect attention from their own incompetence towards the ungovernable.

So, having failed to prevent nervous citizens from fleeing their cities of work by assuring them of proper protection, some national leaders are now busy trying to prove to one another and to panic-prone Indians, that a mischievous neighbour has been using the Internet and social networking sites to spread dangerous rumours.

And the Centre's automatic reaction is to start blocking these sites and begin elaborate and potentially endless negotiations with Google, Twitter and Facebook about access to information. If this is the official idea of prompt action at a time of crisis among communities, then Indians have more reason to fear their protectors than the nebulous mischief-makers of the cyber-world.

Wasting time gathering proof, blocking vaguely suspicious websites, hurling accusations across the border and worrying about bilateral relation; are ways of keeping busy with inessentials because one does not quite know what to do about the essentials of a difficult situation. Besides, only a fifth of the 245 websites blocked by the Centre mention the people of the North-East or the violence in Assam.

And if a few morphed images and spurious texts can unsettle an entire nation, then there is something deeply wrong with the nation and with how it is being governed. This is what its leaders should be addressing immediately, rather than making a wrongheaded display of their powers of censorship.

It is just as absurd and part of the same syndrome, to try to ban Twitter accounts that parody despatches from the Prime Minister's Office. To describe such forms of humour and dissent as 'misrepresenting' the PMO—as if Twitterers would take these parodies for genuine despatches from the PMO—makes the PMO look more ridiculous than its parodists manage to.

With the precedent for such action set recently by the Chief Minister of West Bengal, this is yet another proof that what Bengal thinks today India will) think tomorrow. Using the cyber-world for flexing the wrong muscles is essentially not funny. It might even prove to be quite dangerously distracting.

1. According to the passage, the cyber-world is
  - (a) beyond the imagination of people
  - (b) outside the purview of common people
  - (c) not to be governed
  - (d) ungovernable
2. The author is of the opinion that
  - (a) the centre should start negotiations with Google, Twitter and Facebook
  - (b) the centre should help the citizens evacuate their city
  - (c) the centre should not block the sites
  - (d) the centre should arrest the guilty
3. Which of the following is closest to the meaning of 'nebulous'?
  - (a) Confused
  - (b) Vague
  - (c) Iridescent
  - (d) Glowing
4. The author's seriousness regarding the situation can best be described in the following sentences. Pick the odd one out.
  - (a) Our leaders should display their powers of censorship when needed
  - (b) If this is the official idea of prompt action at a time of crisis among communities, then Indians have more reason to fear their protectors than the nebulous mischief-maker of the cyber-world
  - (c) The politicians deflect attention from their own incompetence
  - (d) If a few morphed images and spurious texts can unsettle an entire nation, then there is something deeply wrong with the nation

5. The word 'spurious' means  
(a) genuine (b) authentic  
(c) substantial (d) fake
6. The author warns us against  
(a) not playing false with the citizens  
(b) dangers inherent in the cyber-world  
(c) not using the cyber-world judiciously  
(d) not protecting the citizens from dangerous politicians
7. 'Parody' means  
(a) twist (b) jeopardize  
(c) ridicule (d) immitate
8. What is the opposite of 'wrong headed'?  
(a) silly (b) sane  
(c) insane (d) insensible
9. The passage suggests different ways of keeping the public busy with 'inessentials'. Pick the odd one out.  
(a) By blocking websites which are vaguely suspicious  
(b) By blaming neighbouring countries across the border  
(c) By turning the attention of the people to violence in Assam  
(d) By getting involved in a discourse on bilateral relations
10. The following is a list of statements made by the author of the above passage. Pick the odd one out.  
(a) It is absurd to ban Twitter accounts that parody despatches from the Prime Minister's Office  
(b) Twitterers take these parodies for genuine despatches from the PMO  
(c) To describe such, forms of humour as 'misrepresenting' the PMO makes the PMO look more ridiculous  
(d) The precedent for such action was set recently by the Chief Minister of West Bengal

### Passage 25

The great fear in Asia a short while ago was that the region would suffer through the wealth destruction already taking place in the U.S. as a result of the financial crisis. Stock markets tumbled as exports plunged and economic growth deteriorated. Lofty property prices in China and elsewhere looked set to bust as credit tightened and buyers evaporated. But with surprising speed, fear in Asia swung back to greed as the region shows signs of recovery and property and stock prices are soaring in many parts of Asia.

Why should this sharp Asian turnaround be greeted with skepticism? Higher asset prices mean households feel wealthier and better able to spend, which could further fuel the region's nascent rebound. But just as easily, Asia could soon find itself saddled with overheated markets similar to the U.S. housing market. In short, the world has not changed, it has just moved placed.

The incipient bubble is being created by government policy. In response to the global credit crunch of 2008. Policy makers in Asia slashed interest rates and flooded financial sectors with cash in frantic attempts to keep loans flowing and economies growing. These steps were logical for central bankers striving to reverse a deepening economic crisis.

But there is evidence that there is too much easy money around. It's winding up in stocks and real estate, pushing prices up too far and too fast for the undenyng economic fundamentals. Much of the concern is focused on China where government stimulus efforts have been large and effective, Money in China has been especially easy to find. Aggregate new bank lending surged 20% in first half of 2009 from the same period a year earlier, to nearly 51.1 turn on. Exuberance over a quick recovery which was given a boost by China's surprisingly strong 7.9% GDP growth in the second quarter has buoyed investor sentiment not just for stocks but also for real estate.

Former U.S. Federal Reserve Chairman Alan Greenspan argued that bubbles could only be recognised in hand sight. But investors who have been well schooled in the dangers of bubbles over the past decade are increasingly wary that prices have risen too far and that the slightest bit of negative, economic news could knock markets for a loop. These fears are compounded by the possibility that Asia's central bankers will begin taking stops to shut off the money. Rumours that Beijing was on the verge of tightening credit led to Shanghai stocks plunging 5%.

Yet many economists believe that, there is close to a zero possibility that the Chinese government will do anything this year that constitutes tightening. And without a major shift in thinking, the easy-money conditions will stay in place. In a global economy that has produced more dramatic ups and downs than anyone thought possible over the past two years. Asia may be heading for another disheartening plunge.

1. To which of the following has the author attributed the 2008 Asian financial crisis?
  - (A) Reluctance or Asian governments to taper off the economic stimulus.
  - (B) Greed of Asian investors causing them to trade stocks of American companies at high prices.
  - (C) Inflated real estate prices in Asian countries,
    - (a) None
    - (b) Only A
    - (c) Only C
    - (d) Both A and B
    - (e) Only B
2. What does the author want to convey through the phrase "The world has not changed it has just moved places"?
  - (a) At present countries are more dependent on Asian economies than on the US economy
  - (b) Economies have become interlinked on account of globalisation
  - (c) Asian governments are implementing the same economic reforms as developed countries
  - (d) All economies are susceptible to recession because of the state of the US economy
  - (e) None of the above
3. Which of the following can be said about the Chinese government's efforts to revive the-economy?
  - (a) These were largely unsuccessful as only the housing market improved
  - (b) The governments only concern was to boost investor confidence in stocks
  - (c) These efforts were ineffectual as the economy recovered owing to the US market stabilising
  - (d) These were appropriate and accomplished the goal of economic revival
  - (e) They blindly imitated the economic reforms adopted by the US

4. Why do experts predict that Asian policymakers will not withdraw fiscal stimulus?
- (A) The US economy is not likely to recover for a long time.
  - (B) Stock markets are yet to regain their former levels.
  - (C) Fear of revolt by greedy citizens.
- (a) None of these (b) Only C  
(c) Both A and C (d) Only B  
(e) Both B and C
5. What do the statistics about loans given by Chinese banks in 2009 indicate?
- (a) There was hardly any demand for loans in 2008
  - (b) The Chinese government has borrowed funds from the US
  - (c) China will take longer than the US to recover from the economic crisis
  - (d) The GDP of China was below expectations
  - (e) None of the above
6. Why has investor confidence in the Chinese stock market been restored?
- (A) Existing property prices which are stable and affordable.
  - (B) The government has decided to tighten credit.
  - (C) Healthy growth of the economy indicated by GDP figures.
- (a) Only C (b) Both A and B  
(c) All of these (d) Only B  
(e) None of these
7. What is the author's main objective in writing the passage?
- (a) Illustrating that Asian economies are financially more sound than those of developed countries
  - (b) Disputing financial theories about how recessions can be predicted and avoided
  - (c) Warning Asian countries about the dangers of favouring fast growth and profits over sound economic- principles
  - (d) Extolling China's incredible growth and urging other countries to emulate it
  - (e) Advising governments about the changes in policy to strengthen economic fundamentals
8. Why does the author doubt the current resurgence of Asian economics?
- (a) Their economies are too heavily reliant on the American economy which is yet to recover
  - (b) Central banks have slashed interest rates too abruptly which is likely to cause stock markets to crash
  - (c) With their prevailing economic conditions they are at risk for a financial crisis
  - (d) Their GDP has not grown significantly during the last financial year
  - (e) None of the above

# ANSWERS

## Part C

### 1. Sequence of Sentences

#### Work Book Exercise A

1. (d)    2. (b)    3. (a)    4. (a)    5. (b)    6. (d)    7. (c)  
8. (b)    9. (d)

#### Work Book Exercise B

1. (c)    2. (a)    3. (b)    4. (a)    5. (d)    6. (a)    7. (b)  
8. (c)    9. (b)    10. (a)    11. (d)    12. (c)    13. (c)    14. (b)  
15. (b)    16. (d)    17. (b)    18. (c)    19. (d)    20. (b)    21. (c)  
22. (c)    23. (d)

#### Work Book Exercise C

1. (d)    2. (d)    3. (c)    4. (c)    5. (d)    6. (c)    7. (c)  
8. (c)    9. (c)    10. (a)    11. (b)    12. (a)    13. (d)    14. (b)  
15. (c)    16. (d)    17. (b)    18. (a)    19. (a)    20. (b)    21. (c)  
22. (c)    23. (b)    24. (d)    25. (c)    26. (b)    27. (c)    28. (a)  
29. (d)    30. (d)    31. (c)    32. (a)    33. (b)    34. (a)    35. (b)  
36. (b)    37. (a)    38. (b)    39. (c)    40. (a)    41. (a)    42. (b)  
43. (b)    44. (a)    45. (d)    46. (a)    47. (c)    48. (d)    49. (c)  
50. (b)

#### Work Book Exercise D

1. (e)    2. (b)    3. (d)    4. (d)    5. (c)    6. (a)

#### Work Book Exercise E

- I. 1. (e)    2. (d)    3. (a)    4. (c)    5. (b)  
II. 1. (c)    2. (e)    3. (d)    4. (a)    5. (b)  
III. 1. (b)    2. (c)    3. (e)    4. (e)    5. (c)  
IV. 1. (c)    2. (e)    3. (e)    4. (b)    5. (d)  
V. 1. (d)    2. (e)    3. (c)    4. (d)    5. (e)  
VI. 1. (e)    2. (b)    3. (d)    4. (c)    5. (c)

### 2. Objective Comprehension

#### Passage 1

1. (e)    2. (c)    3. (a)    4. (e)    5. (e)    6. (b)    7. (b)  
8. (a)

#### Passage 2

1. (c)    2. (b)    3. (a)    4. (c)    5. (a)    6. (b)    7. (c)  
8. (b)    9. (d)    10. (a)

#### Passage 3

1. (c)    2. (d)    3. (b)    4. (d)    5. (c)    6. (d)    7. (b)  
8. (d)    9. (d)    10. (b)

**Passage 4**

- 1. (d)    2. (b)    3. (b)    4. (a)    5. (c)    6. (b)    7. (b)
- 8. (d)    9. (b)

**Passage 5**

- 1. (b)    2. (d)    3. (d)    4. (a)    5. (c)

**Passage 6**

- 1. (d)    2. (c)    3. (a)    4. (d)    5. (d)    6. (b)

**Passage 7**

- 1. (d)    2. (c)    3. (b)    4. (c)    5. (a)    6. (c)    7. (b)

**Passage 8**

- 1. (d)    2. (b)    3. (b)    4. (b)    5. (a)

**Passage 9**

- 1. (d)    2. (c)    3. (b)    4. (a)

**Passage 10**

- 1. (a)    2. (b)    3. (c)    4. (b)    5. (b)

**Passage 11**

- 1. (c)    2. (b)    3. (e)    4. (b)    5. (c)    6. (d)    7. (e)
- 8. (a)    9. (d)    10. (a)    11. (e)    12. (c)    13. (e)    14. (b)
- 15. (d)

**Passage 12**

- 1. (a)    2. (a)    3. (c)    4. (d)    5. (b)

**Passage 13**

- 1. (a)    2. (b)    3. (a)    4. (b)    5. (c)

**Passage 14**

- 1. (c)    2. (c)    3. (d)    4. (a)    5. (c)    6. (d)    7. (c)
- 8. (c)    9. (a)    10. (b)

**Passage 15**

- 1. (b)    2. (b)    3. (a)    4. (d)    5. (c)

**Passage 16**

- 1. (c)    2. (d)    3. (d)    4. (b)    5. (b)

**Passage 17**

- 1. (c)    2. (a)    3. (b)    4. (a)    5. (c)

**Passage 18**

- 1. (c)    2. (d)    3. (e)    4. (c)    5. (a)    6. (d)    7. (e)
- 8. (e)    9. (b)    10. (a)

**Passage 19**

1. (d)    2. (e)    3. (c)    4. (a)    5. (d)    6. (c)    7. (a)  
8. (c)    9. (b)    10. (e)

**Passage 20**

1. (e)    2. (a)    3. (c)    4. (b)    5. (a)    6. (b)    7. (e)  
8. (d)

**Passage 21**

1. (b)    2. (d)    3. (e)    4. (c)    5. (c)    6. (d)    7. (a)

**Passage 22**

1. (e)    2. (d)    3. (d)    4. (d)    5. (a)    6. (a)    7. (b)  
8. (e)

**Passage 23**

1. (c)    2. (d)    3. (e)    4. (d)    5. (b)    6. (e)    7. (a)  
8. (c)    9. (d)    10. (b)

**Passage 24**

1. (d)    2. (c)    3. (b)    4. (a)    5. (d)    6. (c)    7. (c)  
8. (b)    9. (c)    10. (b)

**Passage 25**

1. (c)    2. (e)    3. (d)    4. (a)    5. (e)    6. (a)    7. (c)  
8. (c)

## PART D (Practical Grammar)

# 1

# Narration

---

(a) **Direct Narration** Direct narration is a kind of speech which is reported by some other person exactly in the words spoken by the speaker. This speech is placed within inverted commas.

(i) She said to him, "I shall give you money." *(Direct Narration)*

(b) **Indirect Narration** Indirect narration is a speech which is reported by some other person by using certain conjunctions in place of commas and making necessary changes in the verbs and the pronouns of the reported speech.

(i) She told him that she would give him money. *(Indirect Narration)*

For the purpose of changing narration, sentences are divided as follows.

### 1. Assertive Sentences

Sentences denoting statements in affirmative and negative.

- You are playing.
- He did this work.
- She was not sleeping.
- They will not write to us.

### 2. Interrogative Sentences

(a) Sentences beginning with auxiliary verbs. (Yes or No answer type questions)

- Are you playing?
- Did he do this work?
- Was she sleeping?
- Will they write to us?

(b) Sentences beginning with question words such as ..... when, where, why, who, which, what etc.

- When are you playing?
- Why did he do this work?
- Where was she sleeping?
- What will they write to us?

### 3. Imperative Sentences

Sentences denoting command, request & advice are called imperative sentences.

- Soldiers, turn to the right.
- Do not waste time.
- Please give me something to eat.
- Let me stay here.

4. **Exclamatory Sentences** (Expressing, joy, sorrow, wonder etc.)

- How nice of him!
- What a pretty girl she is!
- Ah! It is beautiful locket
- Alas! All is over.

5. **Optative Sentences** (Expressing wish, prayer etc.)

- May you live long!
- Happy Diwali, children!
- Good bye, my daughters!
- Fie, what an ugly sight!

## Change in Narration

### Assertive Sentences

1. **Assertive Sentences** Assertive sentences are changed in indirect narration as follows.

(A) **Reporting Verb** Verb in the Reporting verb is changed into 'tell' or 'told' with an object otherwise 'say' and 'said' are retained.

'Think'/wonder to oneself can also be used.

- (i) He says, "I am a doctor". *(Direct)*  
 He says that he is a doctor. *(Indirect)*

(ii) She said, "I am a doctor."  
 She said that she was a doctor.

(iii) She says to me, "I am a doctor."  
 She tells me that she is a doctor.

(iv) She thought, "She will not go out with him."  
 She thought to herself that she would not go out with him.

(B) **Inverted Commas** 'That' is used in place of inverted commas.

She said to me, "I am a doctor."  
 She told me that she was a doctor.

(C) **Tense**

(a) **If the Reporting verb is in the Present or Future or Reported speech is a universal truth, the tense of Reported speech does not change.**

- (i) She says, "I shall go to Delhi."  
 She says that she will go to Delhi.
- (ii) I say to her, "I shall give her money."  
 I tell her that I shall give her money.
- (iii) Teacher said to the students, "The sun rises in the East."  
 Teacher told the students that the sun rises in the East.

(b) **If the Reporting verb is in the past, the tense of the Reported speech changes into past as follows**

- (i) **Present tense changes into past tense**
- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| Present Indefinite | Past Indefinite |
| Present Continuous | Past Continuous |

Present Perfect	Past Perfect
Present Perfect Continuous	Past Perfect Continuous
<b>(ii) Past tense changes as follows</b>	
Past Indefinite	Past Perfect
Past Continuous	Past Perfect Continuous
Past Perfect	No change
Past Perfect Continuous	No change
<b>(iii) Future tense</b>	
Will/Shall change into Would/Should	
<b>(iv) Modals are changed as follows</b>	
May	Might
Can	Could
Have to	Had to
Had to	Had had to
Should	No change
Must	No change

### Some Hints on Change of Tenses

- Need not, used to, would rather, would better, had rather, had better, should, must, subjunctive mood do not change.
- Past Continuous**
  - Past continuous changes when it refers to a **complete action**
    - She said to me, "I was thinking of helping him but changed my mind later on".
    - She told me that she had been thinking of helping him but changed her mind later on. *(Complete action)*
- Past continuous does not change when it is used in time clause**
  - He said to me, "While I was singing, she was dancing."
  - He told me that while he was singing, she was dancing.
- Past indefinite does not change in the following cases**
  - When it is used in time clause.
    - She said to me, "When I met him, he was playing."  
She told me that when she met him he was playing.
    - She said to her mother, "Father had left before/when she reached home."  
She told her mother that father had left before/when she reached home.
  - When it expresses two simultaneous actions.
    - She said, "I cooked vegetables and he fried rice."  
She said that she cooked vegetables and he fried rice.
  - When it expresses historical Past.
    - He said, "Netaji was born in Kolkata."  
He said that Netaji was born in Kolkata.

**Change of 'Will'**

'Will' change into 'Should' when the speaker seeks advice or request.

- (i) The mother said, "What will I do with so much money, My son!"  
The mother asked her son what she should do with so much money.

**Change of 'Need'** (Refer to Modals No. 7 and 8 on Page 36)

- (i) She said, "Need I write a letter?"  
She asked if she had to write a Letter.
- (ii) She said, "if I am selected, I needn't study further."  
She said that if she was selected she would not have to study further.

**Change of 'Could'**

Could is changed in case of Permission

- (i) She said to me, "When I was a student I could not go out alone."  
She told me that when she was a student she was not allowed to go alone.

**Change of 'Must'**

- (a) 'Must' Normally does not change when it refers to duty or laws of nature.
- (i) Rahul said to her, "You must obey your parents."  
Rahul said to her that she must obey her parents.
- (ii) She said, "We must all die."  
She said that we must all die.
- (b) 'Must' Changes in the following cases
- (i) She said, "I must leave at once."  
She said that she had to leave at once.
- (ii) Natasha said, "I must get up early tomorrow."  
Natasha said that she would have to get up early the next day.
- (iii) Lekha said, "Mansi, You must be silent."  
Lekha ordered Mansi to be silent.

**Changes of Pronouns in the Reported Speech**

1. **First Person** (I, we) in the reported speech change into the subject of the Reporting verb.

- (i) She said to me, "I am unwell."  
She told me that she was unwell.
- (ii) Rohan said to her, "I shall leave Jaipur soon."  
Rohan told her that he would leave Jaipur soon.
- (iii) The Captain said, "we have won at last."  
The captain told his team mates that they had won at last.

**NOTE** 'We' does not change in the following cases.

- (a) When 'we' is used in general sense.
- (b) When object 'me' is included in the subject.
- (c) But 'we' changes into 'It' when 'we' is used by a newspaper or an organisation.
  - (i) The saint said, "We are mortals."  
The saint said that we are mortals.
  - (ii) She said to me, "We are to leave for temple early."  
She told me that we were to leave for temple early.
  - (iii) The Pioneer said, "We are not responsible for any error."  
The Pioneer said that it was not responsible for any error.

**2. Second Person** You in the Reported speech changes into the object of the Reporting verb.

- (i) He said to his mother, "Will you give me money."  
He asked his mother if she would give him some money.
- (ii) The teacher said to the students, "You are not to leave the class without permission."  
The teacher advised the student that they were not to leave the class without permission.

**3. Third Person** (He, She, They, It) in the Reported speech does not change.

- (i) I said to her, "He will not come."  
I told her that he would not come.
- (ii) The boy said to his father, "They have not returned the book."  
The boy told to his father that they had not returned the book.

**5. Adverbials of time, place and demonstrative.**

(i) **Adverbial of Time**

Now	change into	then
Ago	„	before
Today	„	That day
Tomorrow	„	The next day
Yesterday	„	The previous day/The day before
Last night	„	The previous night/the night before
Next month	„	The following month
The day before yesterday	„	Two days before
The day after tomorrow	„	In two days time

**NOTE** **Today, Tomorrow, Tonight** do not change when the speech is reported the same day.

- (a) This morning he said, "I shall leave Chennai tomorrow."  
This morning he said that he would leave Chennai tomorrow.
- (b) Esha said today, "I am leaving Pune tonight."  
Esha said today that she was leaving Pune tonight.

**(ii) Adverbial of Place**

Change of 'Here' 'Here' Changes into 'there'.

'Here' changes' to 'there' only when there is reference to place.

We shall meet here again. (change into there)

Come here, boys. (No change)

**(iii) Change of Demonstratives**

Change of This, These

(i) Used with time ..... changes into 'that' 'those'.

This week That week

This month That month

(ii) Used as adjective .....changes into 'the'.

This book The book

These books The books

(iii) Used as Pronoun ..... changes into 'it'.

I shall do this tomorrow. I shall do it tomorrow.

(iv) Used as subject ..... does not change.

'this', 'these', give the sense of the object being near.

This is my book. These are my books.

**Examples**

*Some examples are worked out as follows*

- (a) **Direct** Rahul says, "The teacher is ill."  
**Indirect** Rahul says that the teacher is ill.
- (b) **Direct** She said, "The sun rises in the East."  
**Indirect** She said that the sun rises in the East.
- (c) **Direct** Shashi said, "I have completed my work."  
**Indirect** Shashi said that she had completed her work.
- (d) **Direct** They said, "We won the match."  
**Indirect** They said that they had won the match.
- (e) **Direct** You said to her, "I have called my friends."  
**Indirect** You told her that you had called your friends.
- (f) **Direct** I said, "I shall leave Chennai soon."  
**Indirect** I said that I should leave Chennai soon.
- (g) **Direct** Jatin said, "I had to leave my village because of poverty."  
**Indirect** Jatin said that he had had to leave his village because of poverty.
- (h) **Direct** He said, "I shall leave tomorrow."  
**Indirect** He said that he would leave the next day.
- (i) **Direct** He said to her, "I want to see you now."  
**Indirect** He told her that he wanted to see her then.

- (j) **Direct** She said, "well, I shall accompany you."  
**Indirect** She told me that she would accompany me.
- (k) **Direct** She said, "you see, you cannot meet the boss."  
**Indirect** She told me that I could not meet the boss.

**NOTE** Well, you see, okay, you know, therefore, so, yet, but etc.....  
 when these words are used in the Reported speech, they do not  
 change.

## Interrogative Sentences

**1. Reporting Verb** Verb in the Reporting verb is changed into ask/asked or inquire/  
 Inquired of or want /wanted to know, demand/demanded, wonder/wondered.

- (i) Mother said to daughter, "Have you completed your home work?"  
 Mother asked daughter if she had completed her home work.

**2. Inverted Commas**

- (a) In 'yes' or 'no' Answer type questions 'if' or 'whether' is used in place of  
 inverted commas.

(i) Father said to me, "Do you know the residence of the doctor?"  
 Father asked me if I knew the residence of the doctor.

- (b) In the sentences beginning with Question words, inverted commas are  
 replaced by question word itself (who, when, what etc.)

(i) The teacher said to Rohan, "Why are you late?"  
 The teacher asked Rohan why he was late.

- (c) But if a Clause with Interrogative Pronouns (Question words) is followed by  
 main clause 'that' is used before the question words and this rule also applies  
 to "if and whether" in 'yes' or 'No' answer type questions.

(i) She said to me, "When she will come is not certain?"  
 She told me that when she would come was not certain.

(ii) I said to him, "whether she will pass is not certain?"  
 I told him that whether she would pass was not certain.

- (d) **Tense** The changes in these parts  
 (e) **Pronouns** of the reported speech  
 (f) **Adverbs of time and place** are made as explained earlier  
 in the case of assertive sentences.

**NOTE** Students are required to change interrogative sentences into  
 Assertive sentences before changing the Narration. *For example*

**Direct** She said to her mother, "will you take me to temple?"  
**Indirect** She asked her mother whether/if she would take her to  
 temple.

**Examples**

*Some examples are worked out as follows*

- (a) **Direct** Tina said to Rohan, "Will you help me today?"  
**Indirect** Tina asked Rohan if he would help her that day.
- (b) **Direct** He said to me, "What are you doing?"  
**Indirect** He asked me what I was doing.
- (c) **Direct** Anil said to me, "Why did you do it?"  
**Indirect** Anil inquired of me why I had done it.
- (d) **Direct** Pearl said to Riya, "Do you know Rohit?"  
**Indirect** Pearl asked Riya if she knew Rohit.
- (e) **Direct** The teacher said to the boy, "Have you done your home work?"  
**Indirect** The teacher asked the boy if he had done his home work.
- (f) **Direct** She said, "How can I do such a foolish work?"  
**Indirect** She thought/wondered how she could do such a foolish work.
- (g) **Direct** Sonia said to her brother, "When my husband will return tonight is uncertain."  
**Indirect** Sonia told her brother that when her husband would return that night was uncertain.
- (h) **Direct** Nisha said, "Whether (if) you have qualified, the test cannot be confirmed."  
**Indirect** Nisha told her sister that whether (if) she would qualify the test could not be confirmed.
- (i) **Direct** Rahul said to Ritesh, "What you are doing is immoral."  
**Indirect** Rahul told Ritesh that what he was doing was immoral.
- (j) **Direct** She said to her companions, "Why not stay overnight here?"  
**Indirect** She suggested to her companion that they should stay overnight there.
- (k) **Direct** Manu said to his friend, "Why help him now?"  
**Indirect** Manu told his friend that it was no use helping him then.

**NOTE** **Could, would would like** used as polite request in interrogative sentences are reported as follows

**Request, Advice + Object + to** (Refer to Page 36)

She said to her friend, "Could/would you please lend me some money?"

She requested her friend to lend her some money.

The captain said to the lady, "Would you like to have dinner with me?"

The captain requested/invited the lady to have dinner with him.

## Imperative Sentences

- (a) **Reporting Verb** A verb in the Reporting verb changes into **command/order, beg, request, advise, forbid, suggest, propose, assure, ask, remind, warn, agree, refuse, promise etc.**
- (i) She said, "Mohan, please bring me that book."  
She requested Mohan to bring her that book.
- (ii) Mother said to me, "Take umbrella with you when you go out".  
Mother advised me to take umbrella with me when I went out.
- (iii) I said to my friend, "Don't go out in dark."  
I forbade my friend to go out in dark.
- (iv) The captain said, "Soldiers, March on till it is dark."  
The captain commanded the soldiers to march on till it was dark.
- (v) The lady said, "Thanks, I shall never forget this kindness, Arnav."  
The lady thanked Arnav and assured him that she would never forget she kindness.
- (vi) Richa said, "Congratulation my son, you have won."  
Richa congratulated her son telling him that he had won.
- (b) **Inverted Commas** 'To/not to' is used in place of inverted commas.
- (i) She said to the Postman, "Either go or wait."  
She asked the Postman either to go or wait.
- (ii) The lady said to the soldier, "Please do come sometime."  
The lady requested the soldier to come sometime.
- (iii) Richa said to her friend, "If I were you, I would not care for such a man".  
Richa advised her friend not to care for such a man.
- (iv) The manager ordered the clerk, "Run to the next office and bring some stationery."  
The manager ordered the clerk to run to the next office and bring some stationery.
- (v) She said to the stranger, "You must leave my room at once."  
She ordered stranger to leave her room at once.
- (vi) The teacher said to Suhani, "Will you stop talking now?"  
The teacher ordered Suhani to stop talking then.
- (vii) I said to her, "Would/Could you please help me?"  
I requested her to help me.
- (c) **Tense** The change in these parts of reported speech are made as explained earlier in the case of assertive sentences.
- (d) **Pronouns**
- (e) **Adverbs of time and place**

**NOTE** It should be noted that when 'to' is used in place of inverted commas, the form of the verb does not change.  
to + 1st form of the verb – 'to go'.

**Change of 'Let'***Study the following sentences***(a) Let as a proposal/suggestion.***(i)* He said, "Let us go to the movie."

He proposed that they should go to the movie.

*(ii)* I said to Deepa, "Let us buy a new house."

I suggested to Deepa that we should buy a new house.

*(iii)* Reena said to me, "Let us celebrate X-Mas."

I said, "No, let us not."

Reena proposed to me that we should celebrate X-Mas. But I did not agree to her proposal.

**(b) 'Let' as a request.***(i)* Ravi said to the manager, "Let me go home."

Ravi requested the manager that he might be allowed to go home.

Or Ravi requested the manager to let him go home.

*(ii)* The girls said to the gate keeper, "Let us enter the school".

The girls requested the gate keeper to let them enter the school.

**(c) Let as an order.***(i)* The manager said to his assistant, "Let the customers in."

The manager ordered his assistant to let the customers in.

**(d) Let as 'don't care'***(i)* Sawant said, "Let it rain, I have to go."

Sawant persisted that he did not care for the rain and he had to go.

*(ii)* Miss Pillai said, "Let my friends say so."

Miss Pillai said that she did not care for her friends.

*Some examples are worked out as follows*

1. The Principal said, "Congratulations, My son, you have won."
2. The lady said, "Thanks, I shall never forget this kindness, "Arnav".
3. She cried, "God will never pardon you."
4. The manager said to the assistant, "Let the customer in."
5. The girls said to the gate keeper, "Let us enter the school."
6. Pearl said to her friend, "Let us go on long drive."
7. She said, "Let it rain, I have to go."
8. The son said, "Let my parents say so."
9. She said to the postman, "Either go or wait."
10. The lady said to her, "Please do come some time."
11. The Mother said to her daughter, "Shut the door, will you"?
12. She said, "You are playing, are not you?"
13. The mother asked Arnav, "You did not meet Sonia, did you"?
14. Payal said to Rohan, "I did not go to the movie, did you"?

15. "Well spoken," The audience cried.
16. "Beware, there is a danger," The captain warned.
17. "Be sure, I am always with you," said the mother.
18. "Father", said the son, The teacher said to me, "you are a naughty boy."
19. "When I shall learn swimming," said a small girl, "is not certain."

### Answers

1. The principal congratulated the boy telling him that he had won.
2. The lady thanked Arnav and assured him that she would never forget the kindness.
3. She bitterly cursed him that God would never pardon him.
4. The manager ordered the assistant that the customer might be allowed.
5. The girls requested the gatekeeper to allow them to enter the school.
6. Pearl suggested to her friends that they should go on long drive.
7. She persisted that she did not care for the rain and she had to go.
8. The son said that he did not care for his parents.
9. She asked the postman either to go or wait.
10. The lady requested her to come sometime.
11. The mother asked her daughter to shut the door.
12. She asked me if I was not playing.
13. The mother asked Arnav if he had met Sonia.
14. Payal told Rohan that she had not gone to the movie and asked him if he had gone.
15. The audience applauded/appreciated his speech that he had spoken well.
16. The captain warned the soldiers to beware of the danger.
17. The mother assured her daughter that she was always with her.
18. The son told his father that the teacher had told him that he was a naughty boy.
19. A small girl told me that when she would learn swimming was not certain.

### Exclamatory Sentences

- (a) **Reporting Verb** Verb in the Reporting verb is changed into 'Exclaim with sorrow,' 'Exclaim with surprise', 'Exclaim with joy', 'Cry out' etc.
- (i) Portia said, "Good Heavens, I am ruined".  
Portia exclaimed with sorrow that she was ruined.
  - (ii) The director said, "What a good dance, Suhani! you have won the contest."  
The director remarked with appreciation/applauded that Suhani had danced well and declared that she had won the contest.
  - (iii) Mona said, "Hello Sameer, Good Morning!"  
Mona greeted Sameer and wished (bade) him good morning.
  - (iv) The king said, "How foolish of me!"  
The king confessed with regret that he was very foolish.

- (b) **Inverted Commas** ‘That’ is used in place of inverted commas.
- (i) Tarun said, “How clever I am!”  
Tarun exclaimed that he was very clever.
- (ii) Deepa said, “What a pity! you have not succeeded.”  
Deepa exclaimed that it was a pity that he had not succeeded.
- (iii) “So help me Heaven!” He cried, “I shall never cheat anyone.”  
He called upon heaven to witness his resolve that he would never cheat any one.
- (iv) “Be Sure, I am always with you,” said the mother.  
The mother assured her daughter that she was always with her.
- (c) **Tense** The change in these parts of
- (d) **Pronoun** reported speech are made as
- (e) **Adverb of time and place** explained earlier in the case of assertive sentences.

*Take care of the following changes*

- |  |                        |
|--|------------------------|
| (i) What, Oh, Ah, Good Heavens, Hurrah | Joy, Sorrow, Surprise  |
| (ii) Bravo                             | Applause, Appreciation |
| (iii) Hark                             | Listen                 |
| (iv) Fie/Phooh                         | Contempt               |

**NOTE** Before changing the narration exclamatory sentences are first transformed into assertive sentences.

### Optative Sentences (Prayer & Wish)

- (a) **Reporting Verb** Verb in the Reporting verb is changed into ‘wish’ and ‘pray’.
- (i) The old man said to his son, “May God bless you!”  
The old man wished/blessed his son that God might bless him.
- (ii) They said, “May God save our country.”  
They Prayed that God might save their country.
- (b) **Inverted Commas** ‘That’ is used in place of inverted commas.
- (i) He said, “May God pardon my sins!”  
He prayed that God might pardon his sins.
- (ii) The beggar said, “May you live long”.  
The beggar prayed that she might live long.
- (iii) The old woman said to the child, “God helps you!”  
The old woman prayed that God might help the child.
- (c) **Tense** The change in these parts of
- (d) **Pronouns** Reported speech are made as
- (e) **Adverb of time and place** explained earlier in the case of assertive sentences.

**NOTE** Before changing the Narration, optative sentences are first converted to assertive sentences.

## Practice Exercise 1

1. I said to him, "I will not go there tomorrow."
2. The clerk said to me, "I will not attend the office tomorrow."
3. Hari said to them, "Mohan did not sleep here yesterday."
4. Gita said to Rita, "Will you help me in this work?"
5. Sadhna said to me, "Can you go with me to the station?"
6. Her father said to me, "Do you know where Prem is?"
7. I said to him, "Don't you know that I am your friend?"
8. Ram said to me, "Why do you not go home?"
9. He said, "How is your father?"
10. He said to her, "Go away from here at once."
11. The teacher said to the boys, "work hard."
12. The doctor said to the patient, "Do not eat much to escape from disease."
13. The servant said to him, "Sir, grant me leave for two days."
14. He said, "Let us wait for our friends."
15. He shouted, "Let me go."
16. The spectators said, "Bravo! well done."
17. The captain said, "Hurrah! we have won the match."
18. The doctor said, "Alas! The poor man is no more."
19. The teacher said to me, "What a pity you did not follow my advice."
20. Mohan said, "Ah, what a bloody deed you have done!"
21. She said, "How beautiful the rose is!"
22. She said, "What a lazy fellow you are!"
23. She said, "May God pardon him."
24. Ram said to his friend, "May you succeed in the examination."
25. They said, "Long live the Prime Minister."
26. The minister said, "What a disaster the earthquake is!"
27. The teacher said to the boy, "I shall report the matter to the Principal if you misbehave again."
28. I said, "When it gets dark, light the lamp."
29. "Suppose you children go out for a nice long walk, She said."
30. 'Doctor', cried the patient, "Please tell me how much time I have."

## Practice Exercise 2

1. He says to me, "I have never been to your house I shall go with you."
2. He said to me, "She left Ahmedabad after I had gone."
3. She said to him, "But you are a fool. You do not understand me."
4. Sohan said to me, "I am your friend. I will never desert you."
5. The teacher asked Vina, "What is your name? Where do you come from?"
6. My friend told Rita, "I am going out. Will you go along with me?"
7. Rahul said to me, "Where are you going? Can I accompany you?"

8. The teacher said, "Boys, If you want to pass, you should work hard."
9. The teacher said, "Boys, if you want to pass, why are you not working hard?"
10. The teacher said, "Boys, if you want to pass, work hard."
11. "Will you give me lodging for one night?" asked the weary traveller, "Yes", said my father, "you are very welcome."
12. The Governor of the town asked the slave, "How has this hungry lion forgotten his nature?" The slave replied, "This very lion which is standing before you was my friend in the woods."
13. Seema said to Arnav, "Will you go to hospital today?" Arnav said, "No." "Why?" asked seema, "Because I am feeling better." replied Arnav.
14. The teacher said to Rita, "Did you finish your work yesterday?" Rita said, "No, Sir, my mother was ill."
15. The teacher said, "If you come before school tomorrow, I will explain it." The boys said, "Sir, we shall do as you say."
16. "Go down to the bazar. Bring me some oil and lump of ice," ordered his master.
17. Rameshwar said to his teacher, "Sir, I did not do my work as I was ill."
18. Father said to Mohit, "Dear, why are you sad today?"
19. Father said to Mohit, "Bring me a glass of water."
20. He said, "O! Son, my daughter will marry the strongest and greatest person. There is no one stronger and greater than you. Will you accept her as your wife?"
21. The policeman said to the thief, "Rascal, How could you dare do that? Did you not know the punishment of your crime?"
22. The girl said to the youngman, "Who are you? What do you want with me? I have never seen you before? Please take your seat."
23. A farmer took his sons to the field and said, "There is a treasure hidden here in the earth. If you find it, share it amongst you."
24. The student said, "May I come in, Sir? I am late today." The teacher said, "Yes, you may but this is not your first chance of getting late."
25. The woman said, "All travellers are welcome for the sake of one." "Who is that one," said the king, "for whose sake you make all travellers welcome?" "It is our lawful king, Robert the Bruce.", said the old woman.
26. "How pretty you are!" said the fox to the crow. "I am sure so beautiful a bird must have a beautiful voice. Cheer up, my dear, will you not sing a few notes for me?"
27. Ram said to me, "Thank you for all your help. I could not have finished the work without your help."
28. He said to the shopkeeper, "You are a fool. You have done the opposite of what I desired you to do. Instead of changing the perfume you have changed the shaving cream."
29. "I am a dead man, Hardy," said Nelson, "I am going fast, it will be all over with me soon. Let my dear lady have my hair and other things belonging to me."
30. A young prince once asked a lady, "How is it that you are so fascinating?" The lady felt shy and left the room saying, "Beauty lies in the eyes of a beholder."
31. He said, "Yes, I have broken the slate."
32. He said, "No, I have not done this."
33. The candidate said to the boss, "I assure you of my best service."
34. The doctor said to the patient, "I hope you are better now."
35. "Since it is fine, let us go swimming," Juliet said to Arnav."

36. "How steep the hill is!" They said, "We are tired."
37. "Neither a borrower, nor a lender be," said he to his son.
38. "Why have you come to disturb me," said the master, "Go away."
39. Said Shaurya to Sameer, "Be up. It is no use wasting time." "But I have no work to do today." replied Sameer.
40. "Ladies are," said the Chaufer, "waiting out side. They are getting impatient, Sir."
41. "Mohan made this mess. Let him clear it up," said his father.
42. I said, "Let Mohan do his worst, he cannot harm me."
43. "Let's give a party", said Jaya.  
"Let's not," said her husband.-

### Practice Exercise 3

**Directions** *In the following questions has been given in direct/indirect speech. Out of the four alternatives suggested select the one, which best expresses the same sentence in indirect/direct speech.* [SSC LDC 2013]

- Moti asked Gangu whether the latter was in his sense.
  - "Hey Gangu, are you in your senses now?" asked Moti
  - "Gangu, have you lost your senses?" asked Moti
  - "Gangu, are you in your senses"?' asked Moti
  - " Are you senseless, Gangu?" asked Moti
- "Who now," they had asked, "will listen to our troubles and protect us from the crocodiles?"
  - They had wanted to know who would listen to their troubles and protect them from the crocodiles
  - They had wanted to know who then would listen to their troubles and protect them from the crocodiles
  - They had wanted to know who will now listen to their troubles and protect them from the crocodiles
  - They wanted to know who will listen to their troubles and protect them from the crocodiles

**Directions** *In the following questions has been given in direct/indirect speech. Out of the four alternatives suggested select the one, which best expresses the same sentence in indirect/direct speech.* [SSC CGL 2013]

- Suresh asked Prasad whether he had watched the cricket match on television the previous night.
  - Suresh asked Prasad, "Have you watched the cricket match on television last night?"
  - Suresh said to Prasad, "Did you watch the cricket match on television last night?"
  - Suresh said to Prasad, "Did you watch the cricket match on television last night?"
  - Suresh asked Prasad, "Did you watch the cricket match on television previous night?"
- He said, "Garima wants to take up a job while her husband wants her to look after the family."
  - He said that Garima wanted to take up a job while her husband wanted her to look after the family
  - He said that Garima wants to take up a job while her husband wanted her to look after the family
  - He told that Garima wanted to take up a job while her husband wants her to look after the family
  - He said to Garima that though she wanted to take up a job while her husband wanted her to look after the family

5. She said, "When I was a child, I wasn't afraid of ghosts."
  - (a) She said that when she was a child she wasn't not afraid of ghosts
  - (b) She said that when she was a child she hadn't been afraid of ghosts
  - (c) She said that when she was a child she wasn't afraid of ghosts
  - (d) She said that when she had been a child she wasn't afraid of ghosts
6. He said, "Let Hari come with us, mother. I'll take care of him."
  - (a) He requested his mother to let Hari come with them as he will take care of him
  - (b) He informed his mother to let Hari come with them as he would take care of him
  - (c) He told his mother to let Hari come of with them as he would take care of him
  - (d) He told to his mother let Hari come with us as he would take care of him
7. "No," said the child, "I won't kneel for if I do, I shall spoil my new pair of trousers."
  - (a) The child said that he would not kneel for if he did so he will spoil his new pair of trousers
  - (b) The child said that he will not kneel for if he kneels he will spoil
  - (c) The child said that he would not kneel for if he did so he would spoil his new pair of trousers
  - (d) The child said that i will not kneel for if he should spoil his new pair of trousers
8. He said, "I do not wish to see any of you, go away."
  - (a) He said that he had not wished to see any of them and ordered them to go away
  - (b) He said that he did not wish to see any of them and ordered them to go away
  - (c) He told that he did not wish to see any of them and ordered them to go away
  - (d) He said that he does not wish to see any of us and ordered us to go away

**Directions** *In the following questions has been given in direct/indirect speech. Out of the four alternatives suggested select the one, which best expresses the same sentence in indirect/direct speech.* [SSC CPO, SI, ASI 2011]

9. The lady said to the servant, "If you don't wash the clothes properly, I will dismiss you".
  - (a) The lady warned the servant that she would dismiss her if she didn't wash the clothes properly
  - (b) The lady told the servant that she would dismiss her on the event of bad work
  - (c) The lady cautioned the servant that she must wash the clothes properly
  - (d) The lady advised the servant to wash the clothes properly
10. "There are ceremonies going on", he said to me.
  - (a) He told me that there were ceremonies going on
  - (b) He told that there had been ceremonies going on
  - (c) He told that there had been ceremonies going on
  - (d) He told that there are ceremonies going on
11. "Would you mind taking off your shoes before entering the house?" He said to the foreigner.
  - (a) He requested the foreigner to take off his shoes before entering the house
  - (b) He told the foreigner that the must take off his shoes before entered the house
  - (c) He said the foreigner that to take off his shoes before entered the house
  - (d) Before entering the house he said that shoes must be taken off

**Directions** *In the following questions has been given in direct/indirect speech. Out of the four alternatives suggested select the one, which best expresses the same sentence in indirect/direct speech.* [SSC CGL 2011]

12. Kiran asked, "Did you see the cricket match on television last night?"
  - (a) Kiran asked me whether I saw the cricket match on television the earlier night
  - (b) Kiran asked me whether I had seen the cricket match on television the earlier night
  - (c) Kiran asked me did I see the cricket match on television last night
  - (d) Kiran asked me whether I had seen the cricket match on television last night

13. He said to her, "What a cold day!"  
(a) He told her that it was a cold day  
(b) He exclaimed that it was a cold day  
(c) He exclaimed sorrowfully that it was a cold day  
(d) He exclaimed that it was a very cold day
14. The tailor said to him, "Will you have the suit ready by tomorrow evening?"  
(a) The tailor asked him that he will have the suit ready by the next evening  
(b) The tailor asked him that he would had the suit ready by the next evening  
(c) The tailor asked him if he would have the suit ready by the next evening  
(d) The tailor asked him if he will like to have the suit ready by the next evening
15. He said to the interviewer, "Could you please repeat the question?"  
(a) He requested the interviewer if he could please repeat the question  
(b) He requested the interviewer to please repeat the question  
(c) He requested the interviewer to repeat the question  
(d) He requested the interviewer if he could repeat the question
16. He said, "Be quiet and listen to my words."  
(a) He urged them to be quiet and listen to his words  
(b) He urged them and said be quiet and listen to words  
(c) He said they should be quiet and listen to his words  
(d) He said you should be quiet and listen to my words
17. The teacher said to Mahesh, "Congratulations! Wish you success in life."  
(a) The teacher congratulated Mahesh and said wish you success in life  
(b) The teacher wished congratulations and success in life to Mahesh  
(c) The teacher said congratulations to Mahesh and wished him success in life  
(d) The teacher congratulated Mahesh and wished him success in life
18. The poor examinee said, "O God take pity on me."  
(a) The poor examinee prayed God to take pity on him  
(b) The poor examinee, invoking God, implored him to take pity on him  
(c) The poor examinee exclaimed that God take pity on him  
(d) The poor examinee asked God to take pity on him
19. "Where will you be tomorrow," I said, "in case I have to ring you?"  
(a) I asked where you will be the next day in case I will ring him  
(b) I asked where he would be the next day in case I had to ring him  
(c) I said to him where he will be in case I have to ring him  
(d) I enquired about his whereabouts the next day in case I would have to ring up
20. The father warned his son that he should beware of him.  
(a) The father warned his son, "Beware of him!"  
(b) The father warned his son, "Watch that chap!"  
(c) The father warned his son, "Be careful about him"  
(d) The father warned his son, "Don't fall into the trap"
21. "What about going for a swim," he said, "It's quite fine now."  
(a) He asked me what about going for a swim as it was quite fine then  
(b) He proposed going for a swim as it was quite fine  
(c) He suggested going for a swim as it was quite fine  
(d) He advised me to go for a swim as it was quite fine
22. "You can't bathe in this sea," he said to me, "it's very rough".  
(a) He said that you can't bathe in this sea because it's rough  
(b) He said that I couldn't bathe in that sea if it was very rough  
(c) He said that I couldn't bathe in that sea as it was very rough  
(d) He said that you can't bathe in this sea since it was very rough

# 2

## Synthesis

**Definition** *Synthesis means the combination of two or more simple sentences into one simple, complex and compound sentence.*

### Part I

Combining two or more simple sentences into one Complex sentence with the help of subordinate conjunctions to make.

- (a) Noun Clause
- (b) Adjective Clause
- (c) Adverb Clause

### Part II

Combining two or more simple sentences into one simple sentence as follows

- (a) By using Infinitive
- (b) By using Participle
- (c) By using Nominative Absolute
- (d) By using Gerund and Noun with Preposition before it.
- (e) By using Noun or Phrase in Apposition.
- (f) By using Adjective
- (g) By using Conjunction 'And'
- (h) By using Adverb or Adverbial Phrase

**NOTE** All these combination are related to Subordinate Clause (Noun, Adjective and Adverb).

### Part III

Combining two or more simple sentences into one compound sentence by using Co-ordinating conjunctions to make Co-ordinate Clause.

## Part I

### Complex Sentence

A complex sentence is formed by joining two or more simple sentences with the help of subordinate conjunctions as follows

As stated earlier a complex sentence consists of more than one clause. Besides a principal clause, one or more subordinate clauses form a complex sentence. There are three kinds of subordinate clauses joined by their respective subordinating conjunctions. *For example*

- (i) I know **that** he is a good boy. (Noun clause)
- (ii) I know the man **who** was here yesterday. (Adjective clause)
- (iii) I shall give you money **when** you do this work. (Adverb clause)

These sentences contain three kinds of subordinate clauses.

- (a) Noun clause.
- (b) Adjective clause.
- (c) Adverb Clause.

#### (A) Noun Clause

I know that he is a good boy.

In the above sentence 'I know' is a principal clause. 'that he is a good boy' is a noun clause as it does the work of a noun. Noun clause answer the verb or noun in the principal or any other subordinate clause.

Subordinate conjunctions of Noun clause **that, if, whether, when, where, how, why, what, who, whose, whom, which, whatever.**

A set of simple sentences may be combined in the following manner by making noun clause.

##### (a) Object to a Transitive Verb

- (i) I say it. He is a good man.  
I say that he is a good man.
- (ii) I said it. He is a good man.  
I said that he was a good man.
- (iii) I cannot say. Will he come tomorrow?  
I cannot say if/whether he will come tomorrow.
- (iv) I don't know. What is he doing?  
I don't know what he is doing.

##### (b) Object of Infinitive, Gerund and Participle

- (i) Everybody was pleased to know. She was absent.  
Everybody was pleased to know that she was absent.
- (ii) She kept on asking. When will her mother return?  
She kept on asking when her mother would return.

**(c) Object to Preposition**

- (i) I don't believe. She said something.
- (ii) I don't believe in what she said.
- (iii) Please listen. Your teacher is telling something.  
Please listen to what your teacher is telling.

**(d) Complement of a Verb**

- (i) The hope is. She will return tomorrow.  
The hope is that she will return tomorrow.
- (ii) The fact is. Nisha has not qualified the test.  
The fact is that Nisha has not qualified the test.

**NOTE** Noun clause following the verbs –'to be, become, seem, appear, grow, taste, smell, prove, look, make' etc. –performs the function of a complement of these verbs (in place of a predicate).

**(e) The Case in Apposition to a Noun**

- (i) She never believed in his statement. His father is a doctor.  
She never believed in his statement that his father was a doctor.
- (ii) No one heard the news. The prime minister is coming tomorrow.  
No one heard the news that the prime minister was coming the next day.

**(f) The Case in Apposition to a Pronoun**

- (i) It is true. My brother has left for America.  
It is true that my brother has left for America.
- (ii) It was not known. What is she doing in Indore?  
It was not known what she was doing in Indore.

**(g) The Subject of a Verb**

- (i) It is true. What he knows.
  - (a) It is true what he knows.
  - (b) What he knows is true. (subject of a verb)
- (ii) It is not known. When will she come?
  - (a) It is not known when she will come.
  - (b) When she will come is not known. (subject of a verb)

**Noun clause as a subject may be used in place of pronouns. 'It, this, that,'  
Noun clause works as a subject in this type of sentences.**

*Examples worked out for the students.*

1. I say. She is a good woman.  
I say that she is a good woman.
2. I said. He is an honest man.  
I said that he was an honest man.
3. I cannot say. She will come.  
I cannot say whether/if she will come.

4. I did not know. Will he come?  
I did not know if he would come.
5. I doubt. Can he do it?  
I doubt if he can do it.
6. I am certain. She has got through the examination.  
I am certain that she has got through the examination.
7. I don't know. He said something.  
I don't know what he said.
8. What you say. I shall not do.  
I shall not do what you say.
9. It is not clear. What he says.  
(a) It is not clear what he says.  
(b) What he says is not clear.
10. It is true. She will succeed.  
(a) That she will succeed is true.  
(b) It is true that she will succeed.
11. She came sometime in the morning. It is a mystery.  
(a) When she came in the morning is a mystery.  
(b) It is a mystery when she came in the morning.
12. I wonder. How can she pass?  
I wonder how she can pass.
13. He denied. He has committed theft.  
He denied that he had committed theft.
14. The fact is. He is a hard-working fellow.  
The fact is that he is a hard working fellow.
15. The fact is well known. He is an honest person.  
The fact that he is an honest person is well known.
16. She came from somewhere in 1970. It is not revealed.  
(a) It is not revealed where she came from in 1970.  
(b) Where she came from in 1970 is not revealed.
17. Someone misguided him. His parents don't know.  
His parents don't know who misguided him.
18. A certain number of students were admitted. The Principal does not know this number.  
The Principal does not know how many students were admitted.
19. Everybody wants to know the reason. The two friends quarrelled yesterday.  
Everybody wants to know why the two friends quarrelled yesterday.
20. Do you know the time? The train will arrive at a certain time.  
Do you know when the train will arrive?

## Practice Exercise 1

*Combine the following sentences into complex sentences.*

1. I don't know. He will come.
2. He is going somewhere. I cannot say.
3. He was not guilty. That was the verdict of the bench.
4. There is no doubt in it. He will do it.
5. He is correct. I am sure of it.
6. You gave him stolen money. That was his statement.
7. He may be guilty. I am not certain.
8. Some one arrived late at night. I do not know.
9. I don't believe it. He said something to me.
10. Nobody informed me. My mother went to temple sometime in the evening.
11. Everybody doubts it. He will pass.
12. This is my belief. He will cheat you.
13. My father will come here. I do not know the time.
14. Where have you put my purse? Please tell me.
15. Are you listening? I am saying something.
16. He came late. I cannot tell the reason.
17. The news is wrong. He died last night.
18. He confessed. He had committed murder.
19. It was expected. He will arrive soon.
20. It is believed. Netaji died in aircrash.
21. I cannot say, She may be a doctor.
22. What is your attitude to life? All depends on this.
23. My son is anxious to learn. How can one travel to space?
24. The fact is. He is a coward.
25. She declared her intention. She will not marry next year.
26. He wasted a certain amount of money. His wife cannot tell.
27. I cannot rely on it. She has promised me something.
28. The police are trying to inquire. When did she leave the party?
29. She told me the fact. Her father will not allow her to go abroad.
30. Our expectation was. We will succeed.
31. The news is not correct. She has returned from Chennai.
32. She confessed. She went to Delhi last night.
33. My sister kept on asking. When shall I come back from Indore?
34. The verdict of the judges has been challenged. He is guilty.
35. I can not tell. She came sometime in the morning.
36. The rumour is baseless. He died last night.
37. She completed this work in a strange manner. Everyone wonders.
38. It is certain. She will arrive today.
39. I heard him telling his mother. He is leaving for America very soon.
40. It cannot be confirmed. Has he married?

**(B) Adjective Clause**

I know the man who was here yesterday.

In the above sentence 'I know the man' is a principal clause. 'Who was here yesterday' is an Adjective clause. It does the work of an Adjective qualifying noun 'the man'. Adjective clause qualifies noun or pronoun as the case may be.

Subordinate conjunctions of Adjective clause are "**Who, whose, whom, which, of which, that, as, why, when, where.**"

*Examples worked out for the students.*

1. I know the man. He is a doctor.  
I know the man who is a doctor.
2. This is my pen. It is very costly.  
This is my pen which is very costly.
3. I don't know any of the men. They live here.  
I don't know any of the men that live here.
4. I have met all the boys. They are studying in the college.  
I have met all the boys that are studying in the college.
5. The Sanskrit language is not difficult to learn. It is taught in our school.  
The Sanskrit language that is taught in our school is not difficult to learn.
6. The monster was proud of his power. He was defeated by Hercules.  
The monster who was proud of his power was defeated by Hercules.
7. He settled in the town. He retired there from service.  
He settled in the town where he retired from the service.
8. It was midnight. The trains collided then.  
It was midnight when the trains collided.
9. I had many friends in prosperity. All of them have deserted me now.  
In prosperity I had many friends who all have deserted me now.
10. He has become suddenly rich. I can tell you the reason.  
I can tell you the reason why he has become suddenly rich.
11. Shalini bought only one of the flats? These were built by AWHO.  
Shalini bought only one of the flats that was built by AWHO.
12. I have invited Mohan. Everybody likes him.  
I have invited Mohan whom everybody likes.
13. He bought a new book. Its price is very cheap.  
He bought a new book the price of which is very cheap.
14. The book has been found. I lost it yesterday.  
The book which I lost yesterday has been found.
15. He settled in Nagpur. He was born there.  
He settled in Nagpur where he was born.

## Practice Exercise 2

*Combine the following simple sentences into complex sentences.*

1. Shakespeare was a great dramatist. He is the author of a number of plays.
2. You have put my purse somewhere. Please show me the place.
3. This is the college. I studied here.
4. It was 10 o'clock. My father left for office then.
5. Can you tell me the reason? You are wasting time.
6. The boy was present there. The teacher gave him a prize.
7. I bought a pen. I shall give you the same pen.
8. I was the first man. I heard his name on the radio.
9. They were sitting under a tree. Its shade was very cool.
10. I shall go by the Taj Express. It goes to Agra direct.
11. They are reading a book. It is very rare.
12. The news is true. He gave it yesterday.
13. Yesterday I bought a book. It is very cheap.
14. They committed a mistake. It was quite serious.
15. You can not believe such a person. The person is dishonest.
16. We undertook a journey to Gwalior. It was tiring.
17. A soldier was lying in the field. He was wounded.
18. The dog felled the candle. It was burning.
19. They are healthy. The healthy do not need a doctor.
20. The man died last night. He was wounded in an accident.
21. The magic ball was eaten by the jester. It was meant for king.
22. Seema was the last person. She left for home.
23. This is a class room. It is not the place to play.
24. He has a large family. He has to educate them.
25. He has some bills. He must pay them in cash.
26. I have no friend. I cannot talk to him.
27. Childhood is a time. One can teach good habits to children.
28. I know the reason. He could not succeed.
29. The time is not certain. He will come tomorrow.
30. Nobody appreciated the way. She behaved at the party.
31. I was informed of the place. He was living there.
32. I remember very well the year. He retired then.
33. You can have anything. Whatever you like.
34. The students are very hard working. They hail from Bihar.
35. The girl is a cousin of my wife. The girl has long hair.
36. I never visit any of my uncles. They reside in Manekshaw Enclave.
37. The news is true. The Voice of America broadcast it.
38. The players were present at the function. The President awarded them cash prize.
39. Good deeds live after men. They do them in their lives.
40. Kabir was a famous poet. He wrote spiritual poetry.

**(C) Adverb Clause**

When you do this work, I shall give you money.

In the above sentence, 'I shall give you money' is a principal clause. 'When you do this work' is an adverb clause. It does the work of an Adverb. It is required to modify some verb, Adverb or Adjective in some other clause.

Adverb clause may be classified as follows.

*Examples worked out for the students.*

**Time Clause Conjunctions** : When, as, while, as soon as, before, after, by the time, until, till whenever, small, as long as.

1. He saw the police departing. He immediately got into his car.  
As he saw the police departing, he immediately got into his car.
2. I will get money for you. Don't go till then.  
Don't go until I get money for you.
3. I left office. My wife arrived afterwards.  
My wife arrived after I had left office.
4. He was going to school. He was caught in the rain.  
While he was going to school, he was caught in the rain.
5. His father retired last year. He has been idle from that time.  
Since his father retired last year he has been idle.

**Condition Clause**

**Conjunctions** : If, unless, suppose, in case, on condition that, provided, I wish, I would, would that, if only.

1. Work hard. You will fail.  
If you do not work hard, you will fail.
2. We may go tomorrow. It depends on the weather.  
We may go tomorrow if weather permits.
3. Do it well. You will be rewarded.  
If you do it well, you will be rewarded.
4. Work hard. You will fail otherwise.  
If you do not work hard, you will fail.
5. She had laboured. Otherwise she would not have succeeded.  
If she had not laboured, She would not have succeeded.

**Purpose**

**Conjunctions** : So that, lest, in order that, that

1. He went to Delhi. He wanted to meet his mother.  
He went to Delhi so that he might meet his mother.
2. He is afraid of getting late. He will go by his own car.  
He will go by his own car lest he should get late.

**Place**

**Conjunctions :** Where, wherever

1. I shall go. He works there in a factory.  
I shall go where he works in a factory.
2. You can stay. You can stay anywhere.  
You can stay wherever you like.

**Result**

**Conjunctions :** 'That' (followed by 'such', 'so')

1. He grew weaker and weaker. He was admitted to hospital.  
He grew so weak that he was admitted to hospital.
2. He drove very fast. He soon overtook us.  
He drove so fast that he soon overtook us.

**Reason**

**Conjunctions :** Because, since, as, that, now that.

1. The students disobeyed the teacher. He was annoyed.  
The teacher was annoyed because the students disobeyed him.
2. You are disturbing me. I can not work.  
I cannot work as you are disturbing me.
3. He came late. He was punished.  
He was punished because he came late.
4. It was dark outside. I did not go out.  
Since it was dark outside, I did not go out.

**Concession or Contrast**

**Conjunctions :** Although, though, as, even if, however, even if, whether, even though, no matter what, no matter that, not with standing that, much as, whatever.

1. He is very old. He can still run very fast.  
Although he is very old, he can run very fast.
2. He has succeeded in life. He is still humble.  
Though he has succeeded in life, He is still humble.
3. He is lucky. he will not win this match.  
However lucky he may be, he will not win this match.
4. She is rich. She is not kind.  
Rich as she is, she is not kind.

**Manner**

**Conjunctions :** As, as if, as though

1. I advised him. He acted accordingly.  
He acted as I advised him.
2. He is not educated. He speaks like an educated person.  
He speaks as if he were an educated person.

**Comparison**

**Conjunctions :** Than, as

1. The tiger is larger. The cat is smaller.  
The tiger is larger than the cat.
2. Her mother is wise. Richa is equally wise.  
Richa is as wise as her mother is.

**Practice Exercise 3**

*Combine the following simple sentences into complex sentences.*

1. He ran very quickly. He overtook everybody.
2. You always disturb me. I cannot work.
3. I had left office. My boss called me.
4. The members of the committee arrived. The conference started.
5. You must hurry. Otherwise you will miss the train.
6. It was very sultry noon. I could not go out.
7. I left office. The train started that very moment.
8. He will not leave at night. He cannot bear the idea of being robbed.
9. He came to me. He wanted my help.
10. He found out his mistake. Then he repented very much.
11. Do not sleep out side. You will be ill.
12. I reached the station. The train had left.
13. You left India. You have not written any letter since.
14. The old man walks fast. He walks like a young person.
15. He is rich. He is unhappy.
16. Help others. God will help you.
17. They were playing in the garden. It started raining.
18. No money was given to me. The work was stopped.
19. The patient grew weaker and weaker. He died last night.
20. His brother died. He has been very poor from that time.
21. Everybody will admire him. His being hard working is a condition.
22. Go out. You will catch cold.
23. He was sick. Even then he went out.
24. He was cremated in the village. He settled there after his retirement.
25. He is admired by everybody. He is still not proud.
26. He was sitting on the grass. A snake bit him.
27. She waited for her friend. She waited till her arrival.
28. She came late. Else she would have enjoyed music.
29. Do you want to go to Malabar Hills? Then bring money with you.
30. I shall go. My cousin works there.
31. Water is very cold. No one can drink it.
32. He employed a watch man. He wanted to be safe.

33. They helped me. Otherwise I would not have got success.
34. I would have been glad. I could have given you money.
35. You may go any where. You like.
36. He did not stop working. He achieved success.
37. The signal was given. The train started immediately.
38. You can stay here. You wish so.
39. She is beautiful. No other member in her family is so beautiful.
40. Let us wait. The train stops.
41. I make a promise. I stick to it.
42. He is working hard. His aim is to join Army.
43. He fled. He wanted to escape being caught.
44. I will get money for you. Please do not go till then.
45. Everybody will admire you. Your honesty is the condition.
46. He did not receive help in time. He would not have died from burns.
47. He gets more. Then he works more.
48. Do not get into the train. The train must stop.
49. It may rain. The schools may be closed.
50. We shall leave for Shimla. It depends on weather.
51. I should be glad. I could help your husband.
52. He worked hard. He would have failed.
53. I shall be glad. I can help you in getting a job.
54. She treated me in a certain manner. I shall treat her so.
55. My younger sister behaves with me. She behaves like an elder sister.
56. She wrote an essay. She wrote to the best of her ability.
57. She speaks well. She writes better.
58. She is wise. She is kinder.
59. He is not rich. He spends like a rich person.
60. The candidates stayed in the hall. They stayed till the departure of the supervisor.
61. She is wise. Her mother is equally wise.
62. I advised him. He did the work accordingly.
63. He will go by his own Car. He is afraid of getting late.
64. The patient grew weaker and weaker. He died at last.

## Part II : Synthesis (Simple Sentences)

### Simple Sentences

*Examples worked out for the students.*

The following are the usual ways of combining a set of simple sentences into one simple sentence.

#### (A) By using Infinitive

- (i) He bought a pen. He wanted to give it to me.  
He bought a pen to give it to me.
- (ii) The work was very easy for her. She could do it.  
The work was very easy (easy enough) for her to do.
- (iii) She is very weak. She cannot understand a single word of the letter.  
She is too weak to understand a single word of the letter.
- (iv) I went to the station. My object was to receive my uncle.  
I went to the station to receive my uncle.
- (v) I have a lot of money. I would spend it tonight.  
I have a lot of money to spend tonight.
- (vi) She admitted. She met him last evening.  
She admitted to have met him last evening.
- (vii) It appears. She is improving in her study.  
She appears to be improving in her study.
- (viii) It is expected. She will come tomorrow.  
She is expected to come tomorrow.
- (ix) I advised her. She acted accordingly.  
She acted according to my advice.

#### (B) By using Participle (Present, Past, Perfect)

##### 1. Present Participle

- (i) She entered the Mall. She was very happy.  
Entering the Mall she was very happy.
- (ii) I was hungry. I took my food.  
Being hungry I took my food.
- (iii) I reached college. I went direct to my class room.  
Reaching college I went direct to my class room.

##### 2. Past Participle

- (i) She was disappointed. She left her study.  
Being disappointed she left her study.
- (ii) I gave him a candle. It was burnt.  
I gave him a burnt candle.
- (iii) I found my pen. It was lost.  
I found my lost pen.

**3. Perfect Participle**

- (i) I took food. I went to college.  
Having taken food I went to college.
- (ii) He picked my pocket. He fled.  
Having picked my pocket he fled.

**(C) By using Nominative Absolute**

- (i) The police arrived. The pick pocket fled.  
The police having arrived, the pick pocket fled.
- (ii) The picture ended. The audience left.  
The picture having ended, the audience left.

**(D) By using Preposition before Gerund or Noun**

- (i) She insisted. She would go with me.  
She insisted on going with me.
- (ii) Suhani persisted. She wanted to live in Hyderabad.  
Suhani persisted in living in Hyderabad.
- (iii) My brother bought a new house. He bought it for his wife.  
My brother bought a new house for his wife.

**(E) Noun or Phrase in Apposition**

In such kind of sentences Noun or Phrase is placed within commas after the Nouns referred to.

- (i) My brother went to Shimla. Shimla is a beautiful hill station in Himachal.  
My brother went to Shimla, a beautiful hill station in Himachal.
- (ii) Kapil Dev was the best bowler. He was the Captain of Indian Cricket team.  
Kapil Dev, the Captain of Indian Cricket team, was the best bowler.

**(F) By using Adjective**

- (i) I came across a girl in the garden. She was beautiful.  
I came across a beautiful girl in the garden.
- (ii) They laughed at a small boy. He was hungry.  
They laughed at a small hungry boy.

**(G) By using Conjunction 'and'**

- (i) I saw a cow. I saw a calf also.  
I saw a cow and a calf.
- (ii) He bought new books. He bought also old books.  
He bought new and old books.
- (iii) Nisha went to the movie. Her husband also went with her.  
Nisha and her husband went to the movie.

**(H) By using Adverbs or Adverbial Phrases**

- (i) She went to parlour. She went frequently.  
She went to parlour frequently.
- (ii) He was running. His speed was slow.  
He was running slowly.
- (iii) I am sure. She will go to the movie.  
I am sure that she will go to the movie.

**Practice Exercise 1**

*Combine the following set of simple sentences into simple sentences.*

**(A) By using Infinitive**

1. He is very weak. He can not run.
2. I want a knife. I shall peel the vegetables.
3. He had a large family. He had to support them.
4. She has no pen. She cannot write a cheque.
5. He heard of my success. He was glad of it.
6. It is believed. He died from heart attack.
7. I expect. I shall pass next year.
8. It is reported. She has married lately.

**(B) By using Participle**

1. He drew the sword. He attacked the enemy.
2. He could not eat nuts. He had no teeth.
3. I was returning home. I saw a black dog.
4. He resolved firmly. He never smoked.
5. She completed the letter. She posted it.
6. He was disappointed. He gave up the job.
7. Turn to the right. You will find my house.
8. She was tired of riding. She went to bed.
9. We heard no answer. We rang the bell again.
10. Ceaser was stabbed. He died from the wounds.

**(C) By using Nominative Absolute**

1. The sun rose. Fog disappeared.
2. Archana was late. The teacher punished her.
3. The letter was written. I posted it soon.
4. The time was over. We handed our the note books.
5. It was cloudy. We went on picnic.
6. The rain is scanty this year. Sugar is dear in the market.
7. His uncle died. He inherited the property.
8. Rashmi's father was rich. She was not proud of this.
9. The Ganga is our sacred river. We should keep it clean.

**(D) By using Preposition before Gerund or Noun**

1. He killed his enemy. He was justified in this.
2. She wanted to go to market. She insisted on this.
3. He won praise. He saved the life of the prince.
4. The teacher was absent. We were informed of this.
5. The girl has long hair. The girl is the cousin of my wife.
6. He has stolen my book. There is no doubt about this.
7. He is reading comics. He is fond of them.
8. He was wounded. I heard of this.
9. All returned safe. We all were happy at this.
10. I bought a new house. I paid huge amount for it.

**(E) By using Noun or Phrase in Apposition**

1. Suniti is the daughter of a doctor. She stood first in the college.
2. Mr. Sinha is an engineer. He works in the Hydrel department.
3. Harsh is a famous poet. He writes love poetry.
4. Nanda is a great builder. He has built a number of apartments.
5. He bought a very costly picture. It is a work by a most famous artist of India.

**(F) By using Adverbs or Adverbial Phrase**

1. He replied back. This took him no time.
2. He saved money. This was wise of him.
3. I escaped from the den of gangster. This was lucky.
4. I got help from my friends. This was not expected.
5. I shall return tonight. It will not be long.
6. I shall get through the examination. There is no doubt about this.
7. She went to college. She was in a hurry.
8. She will go to the States next year. It is certain.

**(G) By using 'Adjective' or 'And'**

1. I am buying a house next week. It is very costly.
2. A girl entered the room. She was young.
3. She was kind. She was generous.
4. Why are you nervous? Why are you sad?

**(A) Noun Clause (Simple Sentence)**

**Some examples worked out** (Relating to Noun Clause).

**Combine the following simple sentences into one simple sentences**

1. There is no doubt in it. He will do it.  
Undoubtedly, he will do it.
2. He is correct. I am sure of it.  
I am sure of his being correct.
3. Nobody informed me. My father went sometime in the evening.  
Nobody informed me of the time of my father is departure in the evening.

4. It is alleged. He committed a murder.  
He is alleged to have committed murder.
5. It is understood. He is honest.  
He is understood to be honest.
6. The news is wrong. That he died.  
The news of his death is wrong.
7. They did not inform me. Their mother was ill.  
They did not inform me of their mother illness.
8. He confessed. He had committed the murder.  
He confessed to have committed the murder.
9. He hoped. He will succeed.  
He hoped to succeed.
10. I told you something. You must believe.  
You must believe in my statement.
11. We believe. The news is true.  
We believe in the truthfulness of the news.
12. It is high time. You should start working hard.  
It is high time for you to start working hard.
13. I wish. You should be quiet.  
I wish you to be quiet.
14. You saved money. It was prudent.  
It was prudent of you to save money.
15. He will marry her. He is not afraid of it.  
He is not afraid of marrying her.
16. I expect. I will meet you tomorrow.  
I expect to meet you tomorrow.
17. I expect. He will pass with credit.  
(a) I expect him to pass with credit.  
(b) He is expected to pass with credit.
18. It appears. He is rich.  
He appears to be rich.
19. It is believed. He is honest.  
He is believed to be honest.
20. It is reported. He is doing well in business.  
He is reported to be doing well in business.
21. It appears. He has been cheated.  
He appears to have been cheated.
22. He denies. He met her yesterday.  
He denies to have met her yesterday.

23. He insisted. He will join college.  
He insisted on joining college.
24. He will succeed. It is certain.  
(a) He is certain to succeed.  
(b) He will certainly succeed.
25. I do not know. How did he travel to Delhi?  
I do not know the manner of his travelling to Delhi.
26. I cannot tell the reason. Why did he leave his sister.  
I cannot tell the reason of his leaving his sister.
27. He left yesterday. No body informed me.  
No body informed me about his leaving yesterday.
28. He declared. He was innocent.  
He declared his innocence.
29. How long will the war last? It is uncertain.  
The duration of war is uncertain.
30. The king ordered. The murderer should be hanged.  
The king ordered the murderer to be hanged.

## Practice Exercise 2

*Combine the following sentences into simple sentences*

1. The student admitted. He was absent.
2. I am not aware. What is he?
3. I don't know. What is his name?
4. I cannot recall. Where does he live?
5. I have no faith in his promise. She promised to help me.
6. It is certain. She will succeed.
7. My faith is firm. He will succeed.
8. That makes the offence worse. You were absent.
9. She is sure. She will secure high marks.
10. She persisted. She will continue her study.
11. My father insisted. I should join army.
12. We do not know the reason. She left the party suddenly.
13. The soldiers were told. How could they climb the hill?
14. I expect. He is honest.
15. We hope. We will be invited.
16. He denied. He sold spurious drugs to the customers.
17. It is certain. She has two son.
18. It is expected. She will qualify Entrance Examination.
19. It appears. She is honest.
20. It is believed. Netaji died in air crash.

21. It is alleged. He stole his brother's jewellery.
22. It is likely. She may come late.
23. It is certain. He will be punished tomorrow.
24. He is sure. He will succeed.
25. It is beyond doubt. She will recover from illness.

### (B) Adjective Clause to Simple Sentence

#### Examples worked out

*Combine two simple sentences into one simple sentences (Relating to Adjective clause)*

- (i) He gave me money. He gave it to spend.  
He gave me money to spend.
- (ii) He has a lot of money. He will spend it on books.  
He has a lot of money to spend on books.
- (iii) In the park we saw children. They were playing base ball.  
In the park we saw children playing base ball.
- (iv) I will board a train. It connects Udaipur.  
I will board a train connecting Udaipur.
- (v) They are watching match. It is very interesting.  
They are watching a very interesting match.
- (vi) The magic ball was eaten by the jester. It was meant for the king.  
The magic ball meant for the king was eaten by the jester.
- (vii) The soldier lay in the battle field. He was wounded.  
The wounded soldier lay in the battle field.
- (viii) He visited the Taj. It is an artistic building.  
He visited the Taj, an artistic building.
- (ix) The book is very costly. I purchased it yesterday.  
The book purchased by me yesterday is very costly.
- (x) Rathore is our captain. He scored five runs.  
Rathore, our captain, scored five runs.
- (xi) The girl is cousin of my wife. She has long hair.  
The girl with long hair is the cousin of my wife.

### Practice Exercise 3

*Combine the following simple sentences into one simple sentence.*

1. She has arrived earlier. Do you know the reason?
2. Kabir was a famous poet. He was a weaver.
3. I bought a house last year. It is quite large.
4. We came across a soldier. He was in trouble.
5. He invented a machine. It is used for stitching.
6. Mr Verma is our teacher. Everybody loves him.

7. This is a class room. It is not the place to play.
8. We committed a mistake. It is quite serious.
9. Do you know the time? Your father left in the morning.
10. The boys are honest. They live near my house.
11. The man could not do work well. The man was tired.
12. We undertook a journey. The journey was tiring.
13. I was the first man. I heard his name on the radio.
14. He has a large family. He has to educate them.
15. He has some bills. He must pay them.
16. They admitted the offence. They committed last night.
17. You cannot believe such a person. The person is dishonest.
18. We undertook a journey to Gwalior. The journey was tiring.
19. In the street we saw a beggar. He was begging from door to door.
20. The man died last night. He was wounded in an accident.
21. The police discovered the weapon. It was used to kill the victim.
22. Air is the first necessity of life. It is the cheapest thing in the world.
23. Childhood is a time. One can learn good habits during this time.
24. I know the reason. He could not succeed.
25. The time has been announced. He will come tomorrow.
26. I remember very well the year. He retired then ?
27. These students are very hard working. They hail from Bihar.
28. The offence is unpardonable. She committed it intentionally.
29. The good deeds live after men. They do them in life.
30. Malini repaid the debt. Her father had incurred it.

### (C) Adverb Clause to Simple Sentence

#### Examples worked out

*Combine two simple sentences into one simple sentence. (Relating to Adverb Clause)*

- (i) She is very poor. She cannot carry on her study.  
She is too poor to carry on her study.
- (ii) He employs a watch man. He wants to be safe.  
He employs a watch man to be safe.
- (iii) He heard the news. He fainted.  
On hearing the news he fainted.
- (iv) He was sitting on a tree. A snake bit him.  
Sitting on a tree he was bitten by a snake.
- (v) The police arrived. The rioters fled.  
The police having arrived the rioters fled.
- (vi) She was late. she was punished.  
Being late she was punished.
- (vii) She came late. She was not punished.  
In spite of being late she was not punished.

- (viii) Work hard. You will succeed.  
By working hard you will succeed.
- (ix) Work hard. You will fail otherwise.  
Without working hard you will fail.
- (x) She had laboured hard otherwise. She would not have succeeded.  
But for hard labour she would not have succeeded.

### Practice Exercise 4

*Combine the following simple sentences into one simple sentence*

1. I had passed high school examination. I got a job.
2. He takes dinner early. He is afraid of getting ill.
3. The thief saw the police. He fled immediately.
4. He was sitting on the grass. A snake bit him.
5. He was late. He was punished.
6. The weather was unpleasant. We did not go out.
7. She was insulted. She left the room.
8. He was overpowered by the enemy. The enemy stabbed him.
9. He possesses huge wealth. He is not happy.
10. Go out. You will catch cold.
11. Work hard. You will fail.
12. Examine the paper carefully. You can not give your opinion.
13. He is very lazy. He is not fit to be a player.
14. We may go tomorrow. It depends on the weather.
15. Every Sunday he goes to Delhi. He goes to see his sick brother.
16. He is so weak. He cannot even walk.
17. I advised him. He did the work accordingly.
18. He is working hard. His aim is to join Army.
19. He is very kind. He helps everybody.
20. Permit me. I shall leave the room.
21. The work was done. I was present then.
22. He is very honest. He will not deceive you.
23. Turn to right. You will see a tall building.
24. He was going to school. He was caught in the rain.
25. His father retired last year. He has been idle from that time.
26. He drove very fast. He soon overtook us.
27. He succeeded in life. He is still humble.
28. He is very clever. He can see through your tricks.
29. Your sorrow is too deep. It cannot be expressed in tears.
30. This house is too small. It cannot serve my purpose.

## Practice Exercise 5

(Based on Noun, Adjective and Adverb Clauses)

**Combine the following set of sentences into simple sentences**

1. The lady entered the Mall. She went straight to the manager.
2. Archana lost her purse. It was very costly. It contained a lot of cash.
3. He came late. He was punished for this.
4. Small families are not an advantage. It is certain now.
5. Some people drink. This is injurious to health.
6. He has some new clothes. They are in the box.
7. He told a lie. He was not afraid of it.
8. We reached Shimla. We went to our hotel.
9. Yesterday my brother went to Chandigarh. Rohan went also.
10. She was clever. I could notice it.
11. It was very hot. I did not go out.
12. The train was late. We reached home late.
13. My father did not sell the house. This was wise.
14. They were walking in the garden. They enjoyed themselves.
15. Rohit had no money. He succeeded in his aim.
16. Work hard. You will pass.
17. The speech ended. We went to dinner.
18. He had no house. He could not sell.
19. He fired at his friend. He was arrested for this.
20. She earns a lot of money. She runs a beauty parlour.
21. Ashok was a great emperor. He become compassionate. It happened after the battle of Kalinga.
22. He was walking in the street. He saw a beggar. The beggar was not able to walk.
23. He arrived at the party. He was pleased. He met all of his friends.
24. We come to the Institute. We come to study. We study English.
25. Deepa was driving. She heard Reema's voice. She was humming a song.
26. I am threatened. I will speak the truth. I am not afraid of it.
27. It was dark. He fired at his enemy. He wanted to kill him.
28. He was successful. I was told. I was glad of it.
29. The child had broken window pane. It was tinted. He was playing cricket. He was punished for this.
30. We were delighted. We saw him. He was buying fruit. He was buying mangoes.

## Part III : Compound Sentence

We have already studied that a compound sentence contains a co-ordinate clause or more than one main clause. They are joined by co-ordinating conjunctions.

**Some Examples worked out**

*Co-ordinating conjunctions are given as follows*

(A) Illative conjunction are used when one statement is concluded from the other.

They express reason.

**They are – so, therefore, for**

- (a) She came late. She was punished.  
She came late, so she was punished.
- (b) I cannot go out. It is very cold outside.
  - (i) I cannot go out for it is very cold outside.
  - (ii) It is very cold out side, therefore, I cannot go outside.

(B) Adversative conjunctions add two statements to make a compound sentence.

They express a contrast. They are “**still, nevertheless, but, yet, whereas, while, however**” They express contrast.

- (a) She is intelligent. She is dishonest.  
She is intelligent but dishonest.
- (b) She was ill. She came.  
She was ill yet she came.

(C) Alternative conjunctions express a choice between alternatives. They are “**or, nor, otherwise, else, or else**”. They express condition.

- (a) Work hard. you will fail.  
Work hard or you will fail.
- (b) Do not be angry. Do not be rash.  
Be neither angry nor rash.

(D) Cumulative (Copulative) Conjunction add one statement to the other. They are **both-and, not only-but also, as well as, and neither-nor, either-or.**

- (a) He is a fool. He is dishonest also.  
He is not only fool but also dishonest.
- (b) He is handsome. He is smart also.  
He is not only handsome but also smart.

### Practice Exercise 1

**Combine the simple sentences into compound sentences**

1. He is intelligent. He is careless.
2. He can succeed. He will not work hard.
3. Morning walk is a good exercise. Everybody should walk.
4. He came late. He would have enjoyed music.
5. Walk fast. You will catch bus.
6. Wait here. He will not meet you.

7. The bus was slow. He reached late.
8. You are a liar. Your brother is a liar.
9. She is smart. She is honest too.
10. Do not be a borrower. Do not be a lender.
11. You may be correct. You may be wrong.
12. She is often late. She comes on foot.
13. Stand outside. Come in.
14. Weather was not fair. We went on picnic.
15. She came. She consoled me.

## Practice Exercise 2

1. She came late. She was punished.
2. I can not go out. It is very cold outside.
3. She is intelligent. She is dishonest.
4. She was ill. She came.
5. Work hard. You will fail.
6. Do not be angry. Do not be rash.
7. He is a fool. He is dishonest also.
8. He is handsome. He is smart.
9. He is intelligent. He is careless.
10. He can succeed. He will not work hard.
11. Morning walk is a good exercise. Everybody should walk.
12. He came late. He would have got the bus.
13. Walk fast. You will catch bus.
14. Wait here. He will not meet you.
15. The bus was slow. He reached late.
16. You play piano. Your brother plays piano.
17. She is obedient. She is polite also.
18. Do not be a borrower. Do not be a lender.
19. Richa cannot sing. Esha cannot sing.
20. Everything decays. Truth Survives.
21. I doubt it. He will pass.
22. I went to Indore. I spent a few days there.
23. I requested her to lend me some money. She refused.
24. You come by car. We shall take you to temple.
25. He took bath. He put on new clothes.
26. He fell off the stairs. He died from injuries.
27. Say one word. I shall kill you.
28. Write to father. Otherwise I would do so.
29. He is working hard. He wants to pass.
30. Sona cannot sing. Her husband cannot sing.

# 3

# Transformation

---

Transformation is a process of changing sentences into various forms given below.

## Part I (Simple Sentences)

Change of a simple sentence to a complex sentence is made by expanding a phrase or words into a subordinate clause.

- (a) Noun phrase/Noun to Noun clause.
- (b) Adjective phrase/Adjective to Adjective clause.
- (c) Adverb phrase/Adverb to Adverb clause.

## Part II (Complex Sentences)

Change of a complex sentence to a simple sentence is made by replacing a subordinate clause into a word or phrase as follows.

- (a) Noun clause to Noun phrase, Noun, Infinitive, Gerund case in apposition etc.
- (b) Adjective clause to Adjective phrase/Adjective, Participle, Infinitive case in apposition etc.
- (c) Adverb clause to Adverbial phrase/Adverb, Participle, Infinitive etc.

## Part III (Compound Sentences)

- (a) Change of a simple sentence to a compound sentence.
- (b) Change of a complex sentence to a compound sentence.

**NOTE** Students are again reminded of the instructions that all sentences simple, complex and compound have bearing on Inter-relationship of the clauses.

This fact has been explained variously in chapters on

- 1. Clauses
- 2. Clause Analysis,
- 3. Synthesis
- 4. Transformation

## Part IV (Miscellaneous Sentences)

- (a) Interchange of degree of comparison.
- (b) Interchange of affirmative and negative sentences.
- (c) Interchange of assertive and interrogative sentences.

- (d) Interchange of exclamatory and assertive sentences.
- (e) Sentences expressing condition.
- (f) Sentences expressing contrast.
- (g) Removal of adverb 'too'.
- (h) Interchange of Parts of Speech
- (i) Interchange of voice. *(Refer to chapters on Voice and*
- (j) Change of Narration *Narration in the book.)*

## Part I

### Simple to Complex

A simple sentence can be changed to a complex sentence by expanding phrase or a group of words into a subordinate clause as explained below

- (a) Noun phrase/Noun to Noun clause.
  - (b) Adjective phrase/Adjective to Adjective clause.
  - (c) Adverb phrase/Adverb to Adverb clause.
- (A) **Noun phrase is a group of words that do the work of a noun (explanation).**

*Study the following examples*

- (i) He hopes to succeed. *(object to verb)*
- (ii) Truth cannot perish. *(subject to verb)*
- (iii) Pay attention to his words. *(object to preposition)*
- (iv) My faith about his success is firm. *(case in apposition to Noun)*
- (v) It is unfortunate to be cheated by friends. *(case in apposition to a pronoun 'it')*
- (vi) My wish is to do something useful. *(complement of a verb 'is')*

### Change of Noun Phrase/Noun to a Noun Clause

- (i) He hopes that he will succeed.
- (ii) What is true cannot perish.
- (iii) Pay attention to what he says.
- (iv) My faith that he will succeed is firm.
- (v) It is unfortunate that one is cheated by friends.
- (vi) My wish is that I should do something useful.

- (B) **Adjective phrase is a group of words that do the work of an Adjective (qualification).**

*Study the following examples.*

- (i) He is a student of great promise.
- (ii) I met my friend living in Mumbai.
- (iii) They found a dead body covered with a white sheet.
- (iv) He is a man of few words.
- (v) Mohan with a lot of wealth is a miser.

**Change of Adjective Phrase/Adjective to an Adjective Clause.**

- (i) He is a student who holds a great promise.
- (ii) I met my friend who is living in Mumbai.
- (iii) They found a dead body which was covered with white sheet.
- (iv) He is a man who speaks a few words.
- (v) Mohan who has a lot of wealth is a miser.

(C) Adverb phrase is a group of words that does the work of Adverb (modification).

- (i) I shall do it in your presence.
- (ii) Do not go till my return.
- (iii) He went there to buy books.
- (iv) He was blamed for telling a lie.
- (v) For all his wealth he is unhappy.

**Change the Adverbial Phrase/Adverb into Adverb Clause**

- (i) I shall do it when you are present.
- (ii) Do not go until I return.
- (iii) He went there so that he might buy books.
- (iv) He was blamed as he told a lie.
- (v) Although he is wealthy he is unhappy.

**NOTE** Subordinate clauses can be introduced by subordinating conjunctions as given in chapter on Clauses.

**Practice Exercise 1 (a)****Simple to Noun Clause**

*Change the following simple sentences into complex sentences by using Noun clause.*

1. He confessed his guilt.
2. All depends on his future.
3. His age is not known.
4. Speak the truth.
5. His silence proved his complicity in the crime.
6. He appears to be running temperature.
7. He denied to have murdered.
8. He is believed to be honest.
9. She informed me of her arrival.
10. The news of his death is wrong.
11. Subhash Chandra Bose is believed to have died in Japan.
12. I have already heard his statement.
13. He is sure to have been punished.
14. He is expected to give me money.

15. Mohit may do anything.
16. I wish you to be successful in life.
17. He wishes to be a very rich person.
18. There is no truth in his remarks.
19. The place of his hiding is likely to be discovered very soon.
20. We believe the news to be true.
21. Your innocence is beyond any doubt.
22. I have long doubted his honesty.
23. I have long suspected his guilt.
24. His father is likely to give him punishment.
25. It is high time to leave India.
26. His resignation is out of the question.

## Practice Exercise 1 (b)

*Change the following complex sentences into simple ones by using Noun clause.*

1. I have long suspected him to be a thief.
2. The news of his arrival has not been intimated.
3. Her remarks about my failure were disgusting.
4. Truth is eternal.
5. She is expected to learn good manners.
6. Pay heed to my instructions.
7. She has a desire to learn swimming.
8. Her wish is to do social work in future.
9. He is reported to have lost his reputation.
10. I kept on wondering about her success.
11. Everybody is responsible for his deeds.
12. His fall is certain.
13. She did not inform me of his profession.
14. Nobody knows his whereabouts.
15. She jumped at my offer.

## Practice Exercise 2 (a)

### Simple to Adjective Clause

*Change the following simple sentences into complex sentences by using Adjective clause.*

1. I bought a very cheap pen yesterday.
2. I saw a beggar begging from door to door.
3. This is my native village.
4. Do you know the reason of his failure?
5. The value of exercise is great.
6. His offence is unpardonable.

7. They came across the students smoking by the road side.
8. A tired man cannot do work well.
9. This is not the manner to please your boss.
10. He gave me money to spend.
11. The pen given by him is very cheap.
12. I have no friend to talk to.
13. He was the last to arrive at the party.
14. He gave me a fake news.
15. How can you believe a dishonest person?

## Practice Exercise 2 (b)

*Change the following simple sentences to complex sentences by using Adjective clause.*

1. We committed a quite serious mistake.
2. They found a rare piece of diamond.
3. We undertook quite a tiring journey.
4. The tired man could not do work well.
5. The dog felled the burning candle.
6. The murder committed by him ruined his life.
7. He invented a machine for stitching.
8. He saw a brightly burning candle in the corner.
9. A class room is not the place to play.
10. He has a large family to educate.
11. He was the last man to attend the funeral.
12. Do you know the time of your father's departure?
13. Do you know the reason of her arrival earlier?
14. Nobody appreciated her behaviour at the party.
15. I was informed of his residence.
16. Kabir, a weaver, was a famous poet.
17. Everybody loves Mr. Verma, our teacher.
18. The boys living near my house are honest.
19. The place of the cremation of the leader was thronged with people.
20. She told me the reason of her being late.
21. Shakespear, a great dramatist, wrote a number of plays.
22. The girl with long hair is a cousin of my wife.
23. They live just near the by pass on the outskirts of the city.
24. The players awarded cash prize by the President were present at the function.
25. The offence committed by them intentionally is unpardonable.
26. I paid the debt incurred by my father.

## Practice Exercise 3

### Simple to Adverb Clause

*Change the following simple sentences into complex sentences by using Adverb clause.*

1. For all his experience he is still not efficient.
2. He can not succeed without hard work.
3. On being scolded he left the room.
4. The signal having been given the train started.
5. I shall be very glad to help him.
6. He is too simple to win the game.
7. He was punished on account of his mischief.
8. The work was done in my presence.
9. Despite his wealth he is not respected.
10. You must wait here till the arrival of your father.
11. Notwithstanding his poverty, he is honest.
12. Do it to the best of your ability.
13. Nobody must expect to become rich without hard work.
14. My heart is too full for words.
15. With a view to continuing his higher study he borrowed money from the bank.
16. Being very fat she is undergoing slimming treatment.
17. In comparison with the tiger the cat is swifter.
18. I am thankful to you for helping my brother.
19. But for the timely help he would have died from burns.
20. She is kind enough to help everybody.
21. He did not stop working before his success.
22. They were afraid of being caught in the shower.
23. You must act in accordance with the rules.
24. Considering his capability he was promoted.
25. Weather permitting we shall leave for Shimla.
26. Water is too hot to drink.
27. All being well I shall meet her parents today.
28. I shall be glad to be invited.
29. I would be glad to be there.
30. I would have been glad to have been there.
31. Your behaviour was too much for the guests.
32. She is too good for me.
33. He was quick enough to overtake me.
34. It being a junk food we did not taste it.
35. But for our poverty we would have been a happy family.

## Part II

### Complex to Simple

A complex sentence can be changed to simple sentence by contracting a subordinate clause into a phrase or a word.

- (a) Noun clause to Noun phrase/Noun, Infinitive, Participle, Gerund, Case in apposition etc.
- (b) Adjective clause to Adjective phrase/Adjective (Infinitive/Participle, Case in apposition etc.
- (c) Adverb clause to Adverb phrase/Adverb, Participle, Infinitive etc.

**NOTE** We have already studied the examples in the foregoing explanation.

### Practice Exercise 1 (a)

*Change the following complex sentences to simple sentences by replacing Noun clause.*

1. It is much regretted that she is dishonest.
2. He admitted that his enemy was generous.
3. I know where your brother lives.
4. Pay heed to what your officers say.
5. Never say what is wrong.
6. We believe that God exists.
7. I expect that he will pass.
8. It is unfortunate that he died young.
9. He asked me why I gave money to his brother.
10. He confessed that he had met her last evening.
11. I agreed that I would teach him.
12. I informed him that she had gone.
13. It appears that he has been scolded by his father.
14. I ordered him that he should leave the room at once.
15. People are certain that he is honest.

### Practice Exercise 1 (b)

*Change the following complex sentences into simple ones by replacing Noun clause.*

1. He confessed that he was guilty.
2. I do not care for what she has remarked.
3. Mohit may do what he likes.
4. I have long doubted if he is honest.
5. The rumour that he has died is baseless.
6. How old he is, is not known.
7. What she said is disgusting.

8. The fact that he was silent proved his complicity in the crime.
9. He denied that he had murdered.
10. It appears that she is absent today.
11. It was alleged that she had abused him.
12. She wanted to know what his name was.
13. My hope is that I should earn a lot of money.
14. It is sure that he has been punished.
15. It is expected that he will give me money.
16. All depend on what his future is.
17. I don't believe in what she said.
18. I agreed to what he proposed.

## Practice Exercise 2 (a)

*Change the following complex sentences to simple sentences by replacing Adjective clause.*

1. He is not such a man as can be trusted.
2. A student who is careless cannot succeed.
3. He is not a man who will cheat anyone.
4. He has a large house in which he lives.
5. The statement they made is false.
6. You can have anything that you like.
7. Dogs that bark seldom bite.
8. I know the reason why he could not succeed.
9. Milton who was a famous poet, wrote 'Paradise Lost'.
10. The train that connects New Delhi is late.
11. Childhood is a time when good habits can be learnt.
12. The man who was wounded died last night.
13. Those who are healthy do not need a doctor.
14. The good deeds that man does live after him.
15. The place where the leader was cremated was thronged with people.

## Practice Exercise 2 (b)

*Change the following sentences to simple ones by replacing Adjective clause.*

1. Yesterday I bought a book which is very cheap.
2. You cannot believe a person who is dishonest.
3. Those who are hard working succeed in life.
4. A soldier who was wounded was lying in the field.
5. The players who were tired could not perform well.
6. The monster who was proud of his power was defeated by Hercules.
7. In the street we saw a beggar who was begging from door to door.
8. The man who was wounded in the accident died last night.
9. The police discovered the weapon which was used to kill the victim.

10. The magic ball which was meant for the king was eaten by the jester.
11. Seema was the last person who left for home.
12. My uncle was the first man who heard her name on the radio.
13. He has some bills which he must pay in cash.
14. I have no friend whom I can talk to.
15. Childhood is a time when one can teach good habits to children.
16. The time when he will come tomorrow is not certain.
17. All of us were told the reason why he had become rich suddenly.
18. I remember very well the year when he retired.
19. The people who reside in our colony were shouting for justice.
20. Rathore who is our captain scored fifty runs.
21. Edison, who was a great scientist invented electricity.
22. We visited the Taj which is a unique building.
23. I shall travel by the Taj Express which goes to Agra direct.
24. The students who hail from Bihar are very hard working.
25. Tomorrow I will board a train which connects Udaipur.
26. The news which the Voice of America broadcast is true.
27. I met a poet whom I had already known.
28. Mr. Gupta will buy the house which I built only last year.
29. The book which I had lost has been found out.
30. Those who live in glass houses should not throw stones at others.

### Practice Exercise 3

*Change the following complex sentences into simple sentences by replacing Adverb clause.*

1. He did as I wished.
2. We get up when it is morning.
3. When we had finished work, we went home.
4. As he saw me, he ran away.
5. While she was walking in the garden, a stranger addressed her.
6. He is so kind that he helps everybody.
7. We went home after the teacher had arrived.
8. He wrote as fast as he could.
9. He will not return money unless he is threatned.
10. I succeeded better than I expected.
11. When the thief was found out, he was arrested.
12. Although she was punished, she was not ashamed.
13. You can talk as much as you like.
14. Poor as he is, he is honest.
15. Notwithstanding that he is honest, he is not hard working.
16. If they had not helped me, I would not have gained success.
17. He ran fast so that he might catch taxi.

18. As she ran fast, the teacher declared her first.
19. As he is poor, we will help him.
20. If God wills, you will succeed.
21. If I make a promise, I will stick to it.
22. Everybody complimented him because he had succeeded.
23. He has come to Chandigarh so that capable doctors may treat him.
24. As it was fine, we left for picnic.
25. While they were watching T.V. their friends visited them.
26. While she was crossing the road, a scooter knocked her down.
27. Sania is so slow that she cannot be a good tennis player.
28. She is too clever not to see through your tricks.
29. Her sorrow is so deep that it cannot be expressed in tears.
30. He will stick to his job lest he should starve.
31. When the signal was given, the train started.
32. Since I arrived in Chennai, I have not had any rest.
33. The project was not launched because no money was given to me.
34. This house is so small that I cannot live in it.
35. Since the weather was very pleasant, we went on a long drive.

### Part III

#### Simple and complex sentences to compound sentences.

- (a) Change of simple sentences to compound sentences.
  - (b) Change of complex sentences to compound sentences.
- (A) Simple sentence can be converted to compound sentence by changing phrase and a co-ordinating clause:
- (i) Noun phrase/Noun to co-ordinate clause.
  - (ii) Adjective phrase/Adjective to co-ordinate clause.
  - (iii) Adverb phrase/Adverb to co-ordinate clause.
- (B) Complex sentence can be converted to compound sentences by changing subordinate clause to co-ordinating clause :
- (i) Noun clause to co-ordinate clause.
  - (ii) Adjective clause to co-ordinate clause.
  - (iii) Adverb clause to co-ordinate clause.

- NOTE** (a) Co-ordinate clause is also called Independent clause.  
 (b) We have already studied co-ordinating conjunctions in chapter on Clauses and Synthesis.  
**They are : and, but, yet, still, nevertheless, whereas, while, or, otherwise, else, or else, nor, as well as.**

**(A) Change of Simple Sentences into Compound Sentences***Examples worked out for the students*

1. Climbing up the stairs he fell down.  
He was climbing up the stairs and he fell down.
2. Being disappointed he left the job.  
He was disappointed, so he left the job.
3. Having taken bath, he put on new clothes.  
He had taken bath and put on new clothes.
4. In spite of being rich, he is not happy.  
He is rich but he is not happy.
5. By running very fast, you can catch the bus.  
Run very fast and catch the bus.
6. It being very hot we left for Nainital.  
(a) We left for Nainital for it was very hot.  
(b) It was very hot so we left for Nainital.
7. Arriving at home she found her son missing.  
She arrived at home and she found her son missing.
8. Without respecting others you will not be respected.  
Respect others otherwise you will not be respected.
9. For all his knowledge he could not earn money.  
He had knowledge but he could not earn money.
10. Being stabbed fatally he died.  
He was stabbed fatally, so he died.

**Practice Exercise 1***Change the following simple sentences into compound sentences*

1. I shall leave the room with your permission.
2. For all his knowledge he is a fool.
3. He was punished on account of his fault.
4. Despite his wealth, he is not respected.
5. He worked hard to secure high percentage of marks.
6. On his return we asked him many questions.
7. In addition to mathematics he also teaches Hindi.
8. I am thankful to you for sending me money.
9. Besides being rich he is learned also.
10. Notwithstanding my request he left Jhansi.
11. He was sitting in the drawing room watching T.V.
12. With all his contacts he never used unfair means.
13. He must admit his fault on pain of punishment.
14. He must work hard to secure high percentage of marks.
15. He was dismissed for embezzlement.

16. The weather being very fine, we left for swimming.
17. In the event of his death his son will inherit the property.
18. He did not follow the rules out of ignorance.
19. To my surprise he could not qualify examination.
20. Only the rich can afford such a costly treatment.
21. Do this to escape suffering.
22. He went by car fearing rain.
23. Without being invited I shall not go.
24. Neither of the statements is correct.
25. Do not desire without deserving.

### (B) Change of Complex Sentences Into Compound

#### *Examples worked out for the students*

1. When she arrived at home, she found her son missing.  
She arrived at home and she found her son missing.
2. While he was climbing up, the stairs, he fell down.  
He was climbing up the stairs and fell down.
3. As he was disappointed, he left the job.  
He was disappointed so he left the job.
4. When he had taken bath, he put on new clothes.  
He had taken bath and put on new clothes.
5. Although he is rich, he is not happy.  
He is rich but he is not happy.
6. If you run very fast, you can catch the bus.  
Run very fast and catch the bus.
7. As it was very hot, we left for Nainital.  
(a) We left for Nainital for it was very hot.  
(b) It was very hot so we left for Nainital.
8. If you do not respect others, you will not be respected.  
Respect others otherwise you will not be respected.
9. Although he had knowledge he could not earn money.  
He had knowledge but he could not earn money.
10. As he was stabbed fatally, he died.  
He was stabbed fatally, so he died.

## Practice Exercise 2

*Change the following complex sentences into compound sentences replacing subordinate clause.*

1. Although she is sick, she will come.
2. If you come by car, we will take you to temple.
3. As it was cold, we did not go out.
4. When the thief was found out, he was arrested.
5. When she arrived, everybody welcomed her.
6. If you do not stop smoking, you will suffer from lung disease.
7. I shall not go, unless I am invited.
8. If you listen seriously, I will tell you all.
9. I am glad that he has recovered from illness.
10. I have found the pen that I had lost.
11. He had a dog that was very faithful.
12. Unlucky as he is, he is never disappointed.
13. (a) Do this lest you should suffer.  
(b) If you donot do this, you will suffer.
14. However, intelligent he may be, he can not succeed.
15. If he had not given me money, I would not have started business.
16. If he were at home, I would meet him.
17. If he is at home, I shall give him money.
18. In case he dies, his son will inherit his property.
19. He must work hard so that he may pass.
20. He could afford to spend something but he spent more.

## Part IV

### Interchange of following sentences

- (a) Interchange of Degree
- (b) Interchange of Affirmative and Negative Sentence
- (c) Interchange of Assertive and Interrogative Sentence
- (d) Interchange of Exclamatory and Assertive Sentence
- (e) Sentences Expressing Condition
- (f) Sentences Expressing Contrast
- (g) Removal of Adverb 'too'
- (h) Interchange of Parts of Speech

**(a) Interchange of Degrees without Changing the Meaning****Rule I**

- |                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| 1. <b>Comparative</b> | She is more intelligent than her brother is.     |
| <b>Positive</b>       | Her brother is not so intelligent as she is.     |
| 2. <b>Comparative</b> | She is not more intelligent than her brother is. |
| <b>Positive</b>       | Her brother is as intelligent as she is.         |
| 3. <b>Positive</b>    | She is not so intelligent as he.                 |
| <b>Comparative</b>    | He is more intelligent than she.                 |

**Rule II**

- |                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| 4. <b>Positive</b> | Very few writers in India are as famous as R.K. Narayan.     |
| <b>Comparative</b> | R.K. Narayan is more famous than most of the Indian writers. |
| <b>Superlative</b> | R.K. Narayan is one of the most famous Indian writers.       |

**Rule III**

- |                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| 5. <b>Positive</b> | No other writer in India is so famous as R.K. Narayan.       |
| <b>Comparative</b> | R.K. Narayan is more famous than any other writer in India.  |
| <b>Superlative</b> | R.K. Narayan is the most famous of all the writers in India. |
| 6. <b>Positive</b> | No other bowler in India is so famous as Kapil Dev.          |
| <b>Comparative</b> | Kapil Dev is more famous than any other bowler in India.     |
| <b>Superlative</b> | Kapil Dev is the most famous of all the bowlers in India.    |

**Rule IV**

- |                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| 7. <b>Superlative</b> | Varanasi is not the oldest of all the cities in U.P.       |
| <b>Comparative</b>    | Varanasi is not older than some other cities in U.P.       |
| <b>Positive</b>       | Some other cities in U.P. are at least as old as Varanasi. |

**More Solved Examples**

- |                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| 1. <b>Positive</b>    | Rustam was as powerful as his brother.                  |
| <b>Comparative</b>    | Rustam's brother was not more powerful than Rustam.     |
| 2. <b>Superlative</b> | Shivaji was one of the greatest warriors of India.      |
| <b>Comparative</b>    | Shivaji was greater than most of the warriors in India. |
| 3. <b>Positive</b>    | Very few countries are as rich in heritage as India.    |
| <b>Comparative</b>    | India is richer in heritage than most of the countries. |
| 4. <b>Comparative</b> | Eagle flies higher than any other bird.                 |
| <b>Positive</b>       | No other bird flies as high as eagle.                   |
| <b>Superlative</b>    | Eagle flies highest of all the birds.                   |

- |                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| 5. <b>Positive</b>    | No one else is so honest as our principal.                             |
| <b>Comparative</b>    | Our principal is more honest than anybody else.                        |
| <b>Superlative</b>    | Our principal is the most honest of all.                               |
| 6. <b>Superlative</b> | She is the most successful teacher in our college.                     |
| <b>Positive</b>       | No other teacher in our college is as successful as she is.            |
| <b>Comparative</b>    | She is more successful than any other teacher in our college.          |
| 7. <b>Superlative</b> | She is one of the most successful business women in our country.       |
| <b>Comparative</b>    | She is more successful than most of the business women in our country. |
| <b>Positive</b>       | Very few business women in our country are as successful as she is.    |
| 8. <b>Comparative</b> | It is better to lend than borrow.                                      |
| <b>Positive</b>       | Borrowing is not as good as lending.                                   |
| 9. <b>Superlative</b> | The Ambanis are not the richest of all the Indian industrialist.       |
| <b>Comparative</b>    | The Ambanis are not richer than some other Indian Industrialists.      |
| <b>Positive</b>       | Some other Indian industrialists are at least as rich as the Ambanis.  |
| 10. <b>Positive</b>   | No other legendary hero was so valorous as Arjun.                      |
| <b>Superlative</b>    | Arjun was the most valorous of all the legendary heroes.               |

### (b) Interchange of Affirmative and Negative Sentences

*Study the following examples*

- |                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| 1. <b>Affirmative</b> | Only he is responsible for my failure in life.     |
| <b>Negative</b>       | None but he is responsible for my failure in life. |
| 2. <b>Negative</b>    | He could not climb up the tree.                    |
| <b>Affirmative</b>    | He failed to climb up the tree.                    |
| 3. <b>Affirmative</b> | As soon as she arrived, she went to bed.           |
| <b>Negative</b>       | No sooner did she arrive than she went to bed.     |
| 4. <b>Negative</b>    | If you do not work hard, You will fail.            |
| <b>Affirmative</b>    | Unless you work hard, you will fail.               |
| 5. <b>Affirmative</b> | He is an honest person.                            |
| <b>Negative</b>       | He is not a dishonest person.                      |
| 6. <b>Affirmative</b> | I was doubtful of his success.                     |
| <b>Negative</b>       | I was not sure of his success.                     |
| 7. <b>Affirmative</b> | She is more intelligent than he.                   |
| <b>Negative</b>       | He is not so intelligent as she.                   |

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| 8. <b>Affirmative</b>  | Netaji was a greater freedom fighter than any other leader.          |
| <b>Negative</b>        | No other leader was so great freedom fighter as Netaji.              |
| 9. <b>Affirmative</b>  | She is too clever to be cheated.                                     |
| <b>Negative</b>        | She is so clever that she cannot be cheated.                         |
| 10. <b>Affirmative</b> | He is sometimes angry.   |
| <b>Negative</b>        | He is not always angry.  |
| 11. <b>Affirmative</b> | Everybody admits that he is very helpful.                            |
| <b>Negative</b>        | Nobody denies that he is very helpful.                               |
| 12. <b>Affirmative</b> | You must have given money to your poor friend.                       |
| <b>Negative</b>        | You must not have failed to give money to your friend.               |
| 13. <b>Affirmative</b> | I will always remember you in my life.                               |
| <b>Negative</b>        | I will never forget you in my life.                                  |
| 14. <b>Affirmative</b> | It is unlikely that he will give you money.                          |
| <b>Negative</b>        | It is not likely that he will give you money.                        |
| 15. <b>Affirmative</b> | Every body cried.  |
| <b>Negative</b>        | (a) There was none who did not cry.<br>(b) There was none but cried. |
| 16. <b>Affirmative</b> | I love my children.  |
| <b>Negative</b>        | I am not without love for my children.                               |
| 17. <b>Affirmative</b> | He is bound to succeed.  |
| <b>Negative</b>        | He cannot but succeed.   |
| 18. <b>Affirmative</b> | It always pours when it rains.                                       |
| <b>Negative</b>        | It never rains but pours.  |
| 19. <b>Affirmative</b> | I saw her last when I visited Pune.                                  |
| <b>Negative</b>        | I have not seen her since I visited Pune.                            |
| 20. <b>Affirmative</b> | I met him in 2009.   |
| <b>Negative</b>        | I have not met him since 2009.                                       |
| 21. <b>Affirmative</b> | The fort was burnt before it was surrendered.                        |
| <b>Negative</b>        | The fort was not surrendered until it was burnt.                     |
| 22. <b>Affirmative</b> | It is often difficult.   |
| <b>Negative</b>        | It is not always easy.   |
| 23. <b>Affirmative</b> | Look before you leap.  |
| <b>Negative</b>        | Don't leap before you look.  |
| 24. <b>Affirmative</b> | I met Malini five years ago.   |
| <b>Negative</b>        | I have not met Malini for five years.                                |
| 25. <b>Affirmative</b> | Always speak the truth.  |
| <b>Negative</b>        | Never tell a lie.  |
| 26. <b>Affirmative</b> | Every one has feelings.  |
| <b>Negative</b>        | There is no man who has no feelings.                                 |

27. **Affirmative** He always began a job which he completed.  
**Negative** He never began a job which he did not complete.
28. **Negative** There is no smoke without fire.  
**Affirmative** Fire causes smoke.
29. **Negative** There is no rose without a thorn.  
**Affirmative** Every rose has a thorn.
30. **Affirmative** All those boys are intelligent.  
**Negative** None of the boys is/are dull.
31. **Affirmative** We found a few students.  
**Negative** We did not find many students.
32. **Affirmative** I am very tired.  
**Negative** I am not a little tired.
33. **Affirmative** She accepted my offer.  
**Negative** She did not refuse my offer.
34. **Negative** If you had not helped me I would have failed.  
**Affirmative** But for your help I would have failed.
35. **Affirmative** Work or perish.  
**Negative** If you do not work, you will perish.
36. **Negative** If you do not pay, you will be refused admission.  
**Affirmative** Unless you pay, you will be refused admission.
37. **Affirmative** If Leena were at home, I would meet her.  
**Negative** Leena is not at home otherwise I would meet her.
38. **Affirmative** She was forbidden to loiter in the gallery.  
**Negative** She was asked not to loiter in the gallery.
39. **Affirmative** Sushma loves her father as much as she loves her mother.  
**Negative** Sushma loves her father no less than her mother.
40. **Affirmative** Raghu has more wealth than common sense.  
**Negative** Raghu does not have as much common sense as he has wealth.
41. **Affirmative** You know her nature as well as her husband does.  
**Negative** Her husband does not know her nature better than you.
42. **Affirmative** He was more worthy of a praise than anyone else.  
**Negative** None else was as worthy of praise as he was.

**(c) Interchange of Assertive and Interrogative Sentences***Study the following sentences*

- |                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| 1. Assertive      | I gave you money to buy a bike.                                      |
| Interrogative     | Did I not give you money to buy a bike?                              |
| 2. Interrogative  | Was he not kind to help you?   |
| Assertive         | He was kind enough to help you.                                      |
| 3. Interrogative  | Who does not like to be praised?                                     |
| Assertive         | Everybody likes to be praised.                                       |
| 4. Interrogative  | Who can forget their sacrifice?                                      |
| Assertive         | Nobody can forget their sacrifice.                                   |
| 5. Interrogative  | Why waste money on luxuries?   |
| Assertive         | It is foolish to waste money on luxuries.                            |
| 6. Assertive      | He could not have achieved success without your help.                |
| Interrogative     | Could he have achieved success without your help?                    |
| 7. Assertive      | That is not the manner to do this work.                              |
| Interrogative     | Is this the manner to do this work?                                  |
| 8. Assertive      | No one can be expected to do wrong to his parents.                   |
| Interrogative     | Who can be expected to do wrong to his parents?                      |
| 9. Interrogative  | What though I have lost a friend for your sake?                      |
| Assertive         | It does not matter that I have lost a friend for your sake.          |
| 10. Assertive     | Their glory can never fade.  |
| Interrogative     | When can their glory fade?   |
| 11. Interrogative | Have I ever refused to give you money?                               |
| Assertive         | I have never refused to give you money.                              |
| 12. Interrogative | Why not stay here tonight?   |
| Assertive         | It is better we should stay here tonight.                            |
| 13. Interrogative | What is the use of going there?                                      |
| Assertive         | (a) It is no use going there.<br>(b) There is no use of going there. |
| 14. Interrogative | If you stab him, will he not die?                                    |
| Assertive         | If you stab him, he will die.  |
| 15. Interrogative | Why blame him?   |
| Assertive         | It is no use blaming him.  |
| 16. Interrogative | What is that to me?  |
| Assertive         | It does not matter to me.  |

**(d) Interchange of Exclamatory and Assertive***Study the following sentences*

- |                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| 1. Exclamatory  | How smart she is!                                  |
| Assertive       | She is very smart.                                 |
| 2. Exclamatory  | What a pretty girl she is!                         |
| Assertive       | She is a very pretty girl.                         |
| 3. Exclamatory  | Oh that I were a doctor!                           |
| Assertive       | I wish I were a doctor.                            |
| 4. Exclamatory  | Alas! He died so young.                            |
| Assertive       | It is sad (to think) that he died so young.        |
| 5. Exclamatory  | Would that she were here!                          |
| Assertive       | I wish she were here.                              |
| 6. Exclamatory  | Had you but completed your education!              |
| Assertive       | I wish you had completed your education.           |
| 7. Assertive    | It is very foolish of me to ask for money.         |
| Exclamatory     | How foolish of me to ask for money!                |
| 8. Assertive    | I wish I had come here last year.                  |
| Exclamatory     | Would that I had come here last year!              |
| 9. Exclamatory  | Hurrah! we have won the match.                     |
| Assertive       | It is a matter of joy that we have won the match.  |
| 10. Exclamatory | To think of our living together!                   |
| Assertive       | It is strange that we think of living together.    |
| 11. Exclamatory | If only I could meet her now!                      |
| Assertive       | I wish I could meet her now.                       |
| 12. Exclamatory | Alas! we have lost today!                          |
| Assertive       | It is sad that we have lost today.                 |
| 13. Exclamatory | Bravo, well done!                                  |
| Assertive       | It is brave of you to have done well.              |
| 14. Exclamatory | To think of our meeting here!                      |
| Assertive       | I never thought of meeting you here.               |
| 15. Exclamatory | What a piece of work is man!                       |
| Assertive       | Man is a wonderful piece of work.                  |
| 16. Exclamatory | How wise of you!                                   |
| Assertive       | It is very wise of you.                            |
| 17. Exclamatory | Oh to be a queen!                                  |
| Assertive       | I wish I were a queen.                             |
| 18. Exclamatory | Oh to have been a prince!                          |
| Assertive       | I wish I had been a prince!                        |
| 19. Exclamatory | Our Prime Minister and so weak!                    |
| Assertive       | It is shocking that our Prime Minister is so weak. |
| 20. Exclamatory | Such a man and my husband.                         |
| Assertive       | It is shocking that such a man is my husband.      |

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| 21. <b>Exclamatory</b> | What a pity! you have lost.                              |
| <b>Assertive</b>       | It is a great pity you have lost.                        |
| 22. <b>Exclamatory</b> | A child and so bold at this age!                         |
| <b>Assertive</b>       | It is wonderful that a child is so bold at this age.     |
| 23. <b>Exclamatory</b> | O for a small house to live in Mumbai!                   |
| <b>Assertive</b>       | I ardently wish to have a small house to live in Mumbai. |
| 24. <b>Exclamatory</b> | Fie, Fie! you are a cheat.                               |
| <b>Assertive</b>       | It is contemptible that you are a cheat.                 |
| 25. <b>Exclamatory</b> | Alas! that ever a friend should be false.                |
| <b>Assertive</b>       | It is sad that a friend should be false.                 |

### (e) Sentences Expressing Condition

1. If/In case you work hard, you will get through.
2. Unless you take medicine, you will not get well.
3. You will get well only if you take medicine.
4. Should you help me, I shall succeed.
5. Were I a doctor, I should treat you.
6. Had you gone there, you would have met her.
7. Supposing you win lottery, how will you spend money?
8. I shall go to the movie provided you allow me.
9. Do it and you will be awarded a prize.
10. Do not be late otherwise /or you will be punished.
11. Have you paid for this book? then take it.
12. One more game and we will play in the finals.
13. Without investing money you can't earn profit.
14. By going out you will catch cold.
15. But for examining me the doctor could not have diagnosed my illness.
16. I shall give you information in the event of your keeping it secret.
17. I shall give you information on the condition that you will not reveal it.

### (f) Sentences Expressing Contrast

1. Although she is poor, she is honest.
2. Even though she came late, she was not punished.
3. Notwithstanding that she is wealthy, she is a miser.
4. Rich as she is, she is not honest.
5. Admitting that she is learned, she is not proud.
6. However hard you may try, you cannot compete with him.
7. However, intelligent she may be, she cannot pass.
8. I shall do it whatever you may say.
9. She was tired, all the same she did not go to bed.
10. He is very strict at the same time he is loving by Nature.
11. For all that he may say nobody trusts him.

12. It was raining nevertheless she went away.
13. Even if you run fast, you will not get the train.
14. He was weak indeed, but he could walk.
15. She has married indeed, but she is not happy.
16. Come what may she will not desist from playing tricks.
17. Much as I would have liked to give her money, I had no means.
18. No matter what they said, he married a girl of her choice.
19. No matter where she is, she will call me up as usual.
20. I must go whether you come with me or not.

**(g) Removal of Adverb too**

*Rewrite the following sentences removing the Adverb (too)*

1. He is too tired to walk.  
He is so tired that he cannot walk.
2. She is too anxious for the safety of her husband.  
She is over anxious for the safety of her husband.
3. It is too cold to go on picnic.  
It is so cold that one cannot go on Picnic.
4. The shirt is too loose for my body.  
The shirt is so loose that it does not fit my body.
5. It is too hot.  
It is excessively hot.
6. He is too eager for praise.  
He is over eager for praise.
7. The fort is too high for anyone to climb.  
The fort is so high that no one can climb it.
8. He was too selfish.  
He was selfish beyond limit.
9. My heart is too full for words.  
My heart is so full that I cannot utter a word.
10. He is too fast not to catch up with you any moment.  
He is so fast that he can catch up with you any moment.
11. She is too good for me.  
She is so good that I am no match for her.
12. This house is too small for me.  
This house is so small that it cannot serve my purpose.
13. This adversity is too much for anyone.  
This adversity is so harsh that no one can bear it.
14. My teacher is too fat.  
My teacher is fatter than she should be.
15. As a child Suhani was too active.  
As a child Suhani was more active than she should have been.

**(h) Interchange of Parts of Speech**

*Following interchanges of one part of speech for another are made*

**1. Noun**

- |          |      |           |
|----------|------|-----------|
| (a) Noun | into | Verb      |
| (b) Noun | into | Adjective |
| (c) Noun | into | Adverb    |

**2. Verb**

- |          |      |           |
|----------|------|-----------|
| (a) Verb | into | Noun      |
| (b) Verb | into | Adjective |
| (c) Verb | into | Adverb    |

**3. Adjective**

- |               |      |        |
|---------------|------|--------|
| (a) Adjective | into | Noun   |
| (b) Adjective | into | Verb   |
| (c) Adjective | into | Adverb |

**4. Adverb**

- |            |      |           |
|------------|------|-----------|
| (a) Adverb | into | Noun      |
| (b) Adverb | into | Verb      |
| (c) Adverb | into | Adjective |

**Practice Exercise****(A) Nouns into Verbs**

Replace the nouns in *Italics* in the following sentences by verbs

1. She got *success* in the examination.
2. Her *intention* was to harm me.
3. He gave me *advice*.
4. They can not get *admission* without documents.
5. I have a *disinclination* for work in office.
6. The *taste* of these mangoes is sour.
7. They have made an *agreement* to complete this work in time.
8. I have no *inclination* of going to the movie.
9. He is a *disgrace* on his family.
10. The *cost* of this refrigerator is very high.

**(B) Nouns into Adjectives**

Replace the nouns in *Italics* in the following sentences by Adjectives

1. She admitted her *guilt*.
2. The room was full of *dust*.
3. He is a man of great *courage*.
4. They do work with *skill*.
5. He is living in *peace* these days.
6. He was punished for his *negligence*.

**(C) Nouns into Adverbs**

Replace the nouns in *Italics* in the following sentences by *Adverbs*

1. She left the room in *anger*.
2. Please carry it with *care*.
3. She survived because of *luck*.
4. She is living in *peace* with her only son.
5. She listened to me with *patience*.
6. She listened to me with *attention*.
7. She left the room in a *hurry*.
8. He goes to Chandigarh *every* week.

**Verbs****(a) Verbs into Nouns**

Replace the Verbs in *Italics* in the following sentences by *Nouns*

1. My brother *promised* to help me.
2. This computer is *made* in India.
3. She accepted all that I *proposed*.
4. She was *bathing*.
5. She *signed* the documents.
6. I *need* money.
7. Please *help* me.
8. She was so intelligent that we *admired* her.

**(b) Verbs into Adjectives**

Replace the Verbs in *Italics* in the following sentences by *Adjectives*

1. She *differs* with me in her views.
2. She always *obeys* her brother.
3. He has *succeeded* in her work.
4. He *hoped* to succeed.
5. I *doubt* your honesty.
6. His success has *astonished* me.

**(c) Verbs into Adverbs**

Replace the Verbs in *Italics* in the following sentences by *Adverb*

1. She *hurried* to the bus stop.
2. I *forced* him to leave.
3. She *succeeded* in her task.
4. She *attended* to my advice.
5. They *helped* me in difficulties.
6. She *cares* for her duty.

## Adjectives

### (a) Adjectives into Nouns

Replace the Adjectives in Italics in the following sentences by Nouns

1. Exercise makes body *strong*.
2. Her actions are *careful*.
3. She is very *wise* in spending money.
4. Their expedition was *successful*.
5. He is a *courageous* man.
6. We are *proud* of our country.
7. The room is *dusty*.

### (b) Adjectives into Verbs

Replace the Adjectives in Italics in the following sentences by Verbs

1. You have given me *pleasant* news.
2. Her favour was *intentional*.
3. She was *successful* in her job.
4. He *is careful* of his health.
5. Your behaviour was *annoying* to your wife.
6. We are *proud* of your success.

### (c) Adjectives into Adverbs

Replace the Adjectives in Italics in the following sentences by Adverbs

1. She is leading a *peaceful* life with her daughter.
2. Be *careful* in your work.
3. She is *attentive* in learning computers.
4. His handwriting is *neat*.
5. I am *comfortable* in my seat.
6. He is a *slow* driver.
7. Her action is *intentional*.
8. I am *certain* that I will pass.

## Adverbs

### (a) Adverbs into Nouns

Replace the Adverbs in Italics in the following sentences by Nouns

1. Do not talk with children *angrily*.
2. Do you work *attentively*.
3. Enter the room *carefully*.
4. They did it *successfully*.
5. Stock tacking is done *annually*.

### (b) Adverbs into Verbs

Replace the Adverbs in Italics in the following sentences by Verbs

1. She went to the airport in a taxi *hurriedly*.
2. They always act *obediently*.
3. She does her duty *carefully*.
4. They served me *helpfully*.
5. She listened to my advice *attentively*.

**(c) Adverbs into Adjectives**

Replace the Adverbs in Italics in the following sentences by Adjectives

1. *Fortunately* they succeeded in the difficult task.
2. She is walking *gracefully*.
3. She behaved with me *disgracefully*.
4. She solved the problem *successfully*.
5. *Probably* she will succeed.
6. She was dressed *elegantly*.

**Miscellaneous Exercise**

Rewrite the following sentences as directed

1. His.....with the strangers astonished everybody. (use noun of 'familiar')
2. India is richer in heritage than most of the countries. (use 'rich' in place of 'richer')
3. A student of our school is a.....leader. (use adjective of 'fame'.)
4. We were disappointed when our tour was cancelled. (make noun of 'cancel')
5. He was happy to leave the house. (use happily in the sentence)
6. It is better to starve than beg. (make gerund of 'to starve')
7. There is possibility of his being late. (use modal 'may')
8. She looks just as smart in saari as she does in jeans. (use 'whether' in the sentence)
9. None in their correct senses will ever do it. (begin the sentence with 'none but')
10. Our principal is the most honest of all in the college. (make the sentence comparative)
11. Suresh thought of a new plan. (change voice)
12. He could not complete the race as he had injured his foot. (Rewrite by using verb prevent)
13. Shivaji was one of the greatest warriors of India. (Change into comparative degree)
14. Sheena returned a month ago. (begin the sentence with 'it is')
15. For more information contact the Secretary. (begin the sentence with 'should')
16. You remembered to buy a pen for me. didn't you? (begin the sentences with 'you did not')
17. You have nothing to complains of. (begin the sentence 'there is')
18. Please read this letter. (use phrasal verb beginning with 'go')
19. He has refused to help me. (begin the sentence with 'he said')
20. It is better to lend than borrow. (use gerunds for infinitives)
21. The price of milk has risen steadily. (make sentence using 'steady')
22. The judge punished the guilty. (make sentence using 'fail')
23. If you do not come, I will not go to the movie. (use 'unless' for 'if')
24. His victory surprised me. (make sentence using 'take')
25. The driver lost the job for rash driving. (begin the sentence with 'had')
26. He gives me the same love as he gives her. (rewrite the sentence using 'noless')
27. Her failure in life disappointed her parents. (make noun of 'disappoint')
28. We did not have good time because it was too cold. (begin the sentence with 'if')

29. Of what use is this book to you? *(begin the sentence with 'This book')*
30. She is not such a wise lady as she is known *(make a comparative degree of 'wise')*
31. Put your tools away. People may fall over them. *(combine the sentences)*
32. I would rather die than flatter. *(rewrite the sentence using 'prefer')*
33. Nobody will deny that she is honest. *(use 'admit' in the sentence)*
34. If you cannot face the music, I will have to. *(make the sentence by using 'or')*
35. Although she was too young, the commission appointed her. *(use 'despite' for 'although')*
36. She is not so much wise as beautiful. *(make comparative of 'wise')*
37. This should be of the greatest value to mankind. *(make positive degree of 'great')*
38. The storm which had been a threat since Monday at last broke out with great fury. *(rewrite the sentence by using 'Threaten')*
39. Waste not, want not. *(begin the sentence with if)*
40. I accept your offer. *(use 'acceptable' in this sentence)*
41. Reena has more money than brain. *(write the sentence in 'positive degree')*
42. It is normal for a child to eat four times a day. *(make adverb of 'normal' in the sentence)*
43. I caught a train and went to Amravati. *(make a sentence with 'Perfect Participle')*
44. I was not sure that it was you. *(use 'doubtful' for 'not sure')*
45. I do not know her nature any better than you. *(use positive degree)*
46. She complained that the room was hot. *(make a simple sentence)*
47. Tanya is the most punctual of all the boys in her class. *(make a comparative degree)*
48. What long hair you have! *(end the sentence with 'is')*
49. Even if you try hard, you cannot earn much. *(use 'however' in the sentence)*
50. Do they believe in God? *(end the sentence with 'exists')*
51. Who replaced the player after he was injured? *(use 'substitute' for replace)*
52. She has not met me for years. *(make the sentence using 'ago')*
53. Only my friends are responsible for my adversity. *(make negative)*
54. All the athletes complained that amenities provided were far from satisfactory. *(make sentence with 'complain of')*
55. It is unlikely that he will help you. *(make the sentence using 'not')*
56. He attended the function. No one raised any objection. *(combine the sentence using 'gerund attending')*
57. The girls were not permitted to go on Picnic *(make sentence using 'let')*
58. I have not a map, I can't guide you. *(make the sentence using 'if')*
59. They found a little sugar in the kitchen. *(make a 'negative sentence')*
60. Sunil had visited Mohan only once before but he remembered the route. *(make the sentence using 'although')*
61. I met him last, when his father died. *(use 'since' for 'when')*
62. If only I could meet her again. *(begin the sentence with 'would that')*
63. The situation was filled with high drama. *(use 'dramatic' in the sentence)*
64. The sun rose and the fog disappeared. *(make the sentence with 'nominative' absolute)*
65. O for a small place to live in the hills! *(begin the sentence with I wish)*

66. We worried about his attitude to the poor. (begin the sentence with 'his attitude')
67. It is sad that a friend should be false. (make sentence using 'Alas')
68. This is the last time you will ever sit in this room. (begin with 'never' in the sentence)
69. This sum is too difficult for me. (make a complex sentence)
70. It is wonderful that such a child is bold. (begin the sentence with 'how')
71. He refused to allow the late comers in and this annoyed them. (begin the sentence with 'his refusal')
72. Fie Fie! you are a cheat. (change into 'assertive sentence')
73. Fairies do not exist. (make the sentence 'using out of the question')
74. This plane flies direct from Srinagar to Delhi. (rewrite the sentence using 'flight')
75. What is that to you? (make the sentence 'negative')
76. This is the greatest discovery that the world has ever known. (begin the sentence with 'never')
77. Eat few rich dinners and you will need few medicines. (rewrite the sentence with if)
78. He will be angry if you come late. (use 'and' in the sentence)
79. The brilliant student surprised every one. (use 'brilliance' in the sentence)
80. It is no use blaming him. (begin the sentence with 'there')
81. I was so sure that I could depend on him. (use 'dependence' in the sentence)
82. You will have to write legibly. (Write using prefix 'it' before legibly)
83. Shall we ever forget these happy days. (rewrite using 'never')
84. This is not the manner to do this work. ('Write a clause after manner')
85. His prompt reply will able us to take timely action. (rewrite the correct sentence)
86. As it was a recess time, the students were playing. (being the sentence with 'it')
87. Who does not like to be praised? (change the sentence into assertive)
88. That was not my meaning at all. (rewrite using the verb 'mean')
89. If you listen seriously, I will tell you all. (rewrite the sentence using in the event of)
90. I am glad that he has recovered from illness. ('rewrite the sentence using 'recovery')
91. Do this to escape sufferings. (make the sentence using 'last')
92. It is likely that he will help you. (rewrite the sentence beginning with 'he')
93. Mr. Rahul is on leave, Mrs. Deepa ..... English these days. (Fill in the form of verb 'teach')
94. Please sit down. (change the voice)
95. Gold jewellery is bought and sold here. (change the voice)
96. He is said to be a spy. (begin the sentence with 'it')
97. She denied to have visited the multiplex yesterday. (begin the sentence with 'she desied that')
98. This computer is made in India. (use noun of 'made' in the sentence)
99. Every one wept when he departed. (use 'but wept' in the sentence)
100. If you had not worked hard, you would have wasted this year. (use 'hard work' in the sentence)
101. Although she is glamorous, she is modest. (use 'as' in the sentence)

# 4

## Punctuation

---

Punctuation is a system in which marks are used in writing to indicate pauses and division of sentences. The meaning of written communication is made clear to the readers by the use of these marks. In fact punctuation is the right use of putting in marks or stops in writing.

The following are the principal marks of punctuation.

1. Comma (,)
2. Apostrophe (')
3. Semi Colon (;)
4. Colon (:)
5. Dash and Parenthesis. (-)
6. Quotation marks (Inverted Commas) (“ ”)
7. Hyphen (-)
8. End marks
  - (a) Full stop (.)
  - (b) Question Marks (?)
  - (c) Exclamatory marks (!)

Besides punctuation marks the students are required to know the use of .

- (a) Capital letters
- (b) How to write numerals?

### Use of Comma (,)

- (a) **The comma is used for a short or slight pause to separate words in a list but it is avoided before ‘and’**
  - (i) Everything they will give me, food, clothes and salary.
  - (ii) We will need cake, candles, lights and all.
- (b) **Used to separate Adverb Clause when it is followed by main clause**
  - (i) When the train arrives, we shall board it
  - (ii) Unless you take exercise, you will not lose weight.
- (c) **Used to mark off non-restrictive adjective clause. In such cases Adjective clause acts as a co-ordinate clause**
  - (i) He ate contaminated food, which (and this) made him sick.
  - (ii) She went out with Arnav, who (and he) bought her a necklace.
  - (iii) She said that she would help me, which (but which) was not true.

**NOTE** Restrictive Adjective clause is restrictive in meaning.

Comma is not used to mark off restrictive clauses.

- (i) My brother who is working hard is bound to succeed.
- (ii) The boys who attended N.C.C. Camp will be awarded certificates.

(d) **Used to write Noun in Appositions**

- (i) I would like to meet Mr. Kabir, your manager.
- (ii) Mr. Kabir, the manager of our company, will call on you tomorrow.

(e) **Used for Parenthetical Expressions**

- (i) We knew, of course, that he would not attend your marriage.
- (ii) They are, however, intelligent.
- (iii) Your friend, if I am correct, is dishonest.
- (iv) They, as you know, will visit us next Summer.
- (v) Therefore, I like her.
- (vi) Moreover, She is intelligent.
- (vii) In fact, I like him.
- (viii) Slowly, She entered the room.

**NOTE** Students should take note of the following phrases carefully. after all—to say the least, in several ways, I know, I am sure, however, of course, therefore etc.

(f) **Used to separate nominative absolute**

The sun having risen, we left for the town.  
The task having been done, They went to bed.

(g) **Used to separate initials and Titles**

Please call on Prof. Sharma, M.A., Ph.D.

(h) **Used while writing address**

Lt. General A.K. Chopra,  
50, Arun Apartments,  
Noida . (U.P.)

(i) **Used while writing dates**

July 10, 2008  
10th July 2008 (No comma is required)  
Thursday, July 10th, 2008

(j) **Used while expressing numerical expressions in group of three digits from right direction**

7, 297, 789

(k) **Used after solutions and complimentary close**

My dear son,  
Dear son,  
Yours sincerely,  
Yours truly,

(l) **Used to separate question tag from the sentence**

She is honest, isn't she?

It is a nice story, isn't it?

(m) **Used for omitted words**

She is dull, her sister, clever.

Reena is ten, Sheena, fourteen.

(n) **Used to write reported speech after/before**(a) **Reporting Verb:**

"I am not going tomorrow," said she.

She said, "I am not going tomorrow."

"I am not", she said, "going tomorrow."

"I am not going tomorrow," said she, "I am ill".

**NOTE** Comma is not used at the end when the reported speech is interrogative.

"Are you going tomorrow?" said she.

"Are you", said she, "going tomorrow?"

(o) **Used after words of address.**

Priya, bring me some fruit.

Bring me some fruit, Priya

I know, Shreya, time has come now.

(p) **Used for separation of words.**

Sleep, sleep peacefully.

Blow, blow fast

What she is, is well known.

(q) **Used to indicate the omission of a verb.**

Richa got house. Esha, cash

The bride was a Kaystha, the groom, a Brahmin.

**2. Apostrophe (')**(a) **Used with 's' to indicate that a thing or a person belongs to somebody.**

Rohan's house

Children's school

Women's wardrobe

My sister's husband.

(b) **Apostrophe is not used in case of non-living things.**

The table's wood.

*(incorrect)*

The wood of the table.

*(correct)*

The book's price.

*(incorrect)*

The price of the book.

*(correct)*

- (c) **In case of Plural Nouns and Proper Nouns ending with 's' Apostrophe without 's' is used at the end**

The Girls' hostel.  
The Students' Club.  
Kalidas' poems  
Dickens' Novels

- (d) **Pronouns do not required the use of apostrophe. Only 's' is used with pronouns**

Yours faithfully,  
This house is hers  
Ours is a large house.

- (e) **The letters that are omitted are represented by an apostrophe while writing contracted form**

I'm, I've, Can't	It's
I'll, They'd	Won't

- (f) **Apostrophe with 's' is used with figures and letters to make plural**

1. P's and Q's  
2. 7's, 8's  
But we say.  
Fours, Sixes, Tens

- (g) **Apostrophe with 's' is used to make abbreviations Plural. However, in some cases Apostrophe can be omitted too**

M.A.'s, in '89 (1989)	M.P's, Ph.D's
The 90s of the previous century.	(Correct)

### 3. Semicolon (;)

Semicolon is used almost as a period/full stop within a sentence. It is used at the end of a thought in place of 'and', 'but', because etc to indicate that the thought continues into another thought.

1. Please do it; I shall give you money.
2. Krishna is black; Radha is fair.
3. It is cloudy; it may rain.
4. Man proposes; God disposes.

### 4. Colon (:)

Colon is used when a list, quotation or a long speech is to follow after it. It is used to explain the words – Namely, as follows, following, for example etc.

- (i) Wordsworth wrote : Child is father of man.
- (ii) The meaning can be explained thus : Honesty does not always pay.
- (iii) They brought many charges against him namely. Murder, Rape and Theft.
- (iv) Please send us the following items of furniture : Chairs, Tables, Benches and Stools.

## 5. Dash (–) and Parentheses

- (a) Dash is used in a sentence to mark an abrupt end to indicate that the words within a dash do not belong there. They are treated as just after thought. Some times they are parenthetical expressions. Double dashes are also known as parenthesis.
- (i) They are – you know – crooks.
  - (ii) My friend – I am sure – is very sincere. (used for explanation)
  - (iii) The other players – Gambhir and Raina – are also part of India team.
  - (iv) Please send me the detail such as – your age, your income, nature of the job.
  - (v) Antony lost for love all – kingdom, glory, friends and honour.
- (b) **Used sometimes for colon**  
We have received the following articles
- (i) Photo graphs
  - (ii) Identity cards
  - (iii) Medical certificates
- (c) **Used as a Pause**
- (i) I wrote her a message.....a message of peace and love.
  - (ii) He narrated a story.....a story that amused everyone.
- (d) **Used to indicate a missing word**
- (i) Mrs.....is a very shrewd lady.
  - (ii) Please refer to page 20–25.
- (e) **To resume a scattered subject. For Example**  
Honour, money, love.....all were lost.  
Friends, relative, partners.....all are present.

## 6. Quotation Marks ( ‘ ’ ), ( “ ” ) (Inverted Commas)

Quotation Marks are used to enclose words and punctuation in direct speech. They are also termed inverted commas when written as such ( “ ” ).

- (a) She shouted, “We have to win.”
- (b) Used to enclose the names of books, poems, essays.
- (i) I have bought, “Tales from Shakespears.”
  - (ii) Have you studied, “Ode to Nightingale.”
- (c) Used to enclose exact words spoken, written or quoted with a view to highlighting them.
- (i) ‘Beware of Dogs’ was written on the gate.
  - (ii) Political parties use ‘secularism’ as ‘catch vote slogan’.

## 7. Hyphen (-)

Hyphen is used to indicate words or parts of words that belong together.

- (a) **Used to make compound adjective qualifying a noun**
  - 10 year-old-boy
  - well-known actress
  - A 5-day week
  - A hundred-rupee note
  - Mother-in-law
- (b) **Used after prefixes to separate two vowels and three consonants**
  - Co-ordinate
  - Co-operation
- (c) **Used to make compound numbers: (21 to 99)**
  - Twenty-Six
  - Seventy-One
- (d) **Used to separate constituents of compound words**
  - Door-to-door campaign
  - Double-storey apartments
  - Man-to-man relations
- (e) **Used to write prefixes.**
  - Ex-husband
  - Vice - president
  - Non-violence

## 8. The End Marks

- (a) The Full Stop (.)
- (b) The Question Mark (?)
- (c) The Exclamation Mark (!)

### (a) Full Stop ( . )

- (a) Also known as a longest period, is used
  - (i) They have arrived.
  - (ii) She will join our club.
  - (iii) Pay now and get out.
- (b) Used after abbreviations and initials of the names. They may be omitted in current English
 

A.B. Vajpayee	U.S.A.	A.K. Chopra
Feb.	Prof.	U.K.
Dr.	etc.	Mr./Mrs.
e.g.		Feb.
U.N.O. (UNO)		M.L.A. (MLA)

(c) **Used after fractions, amount, time and date**

Fractions	Amount	Date
9.15 a.m.	50.75	5.9.05

(d) **Used at the end of the address**

10, Rama Kutir, Chandigarh.

(b) **Question Mark ( ? )****Used after interrogative questions**

- (i) Are you staying there?
- (ii) Could you please help me?
- (iii) When did you meet her last?
- (iv) How have you done?
- (v) I asked her how she had done it.

**NOTE** In sentence (v) full stop instead of question mark is used because it is a question in Indirect speech.

**Question Tag**

They can do it, can't they?  
 She will come, won't she?  
 Asking a question or expressing a doubt in a statement.  
 She was married in 1992?  
 She is honest (?) lady.

(c) **The Exclamation Mark ( ! )**

Used after interjections, the words and sentences expressing emotions such as joy, sorrow, surprise, pity, prayer, curse.

- (i) What a pretty child!
- (ii) How good of you!
- (iii) Ah! we are ruined.
- (iv) O! What you have done.
- (v) O father! What you have done.

**Capital**(a) **Capital letters are used**

- (i) To write God and Man in the widest sense.  
 God loves all  
 Man is mortal.
- (ii) Pronouns used for God also begin with a Capital letter  
 (i) God is great.  
 (ii) We worship Him.  
 But gods and goddesses used as deities do not begin with a capital letter.



## Practice Exercise

Punctuate the following sentences.

1. reena said to the servant what have you been doing since morning the servant said madam i have been walking the dog said go at once to the kitchen what have to do there the servant asked.
2. alas said her mother you have eaten all that i had mother do not worry i can manage without food but what about you said shaurya you have not eaten too.
3. great god i would rather be a pagan than such a christian wrote wordsworth.
4. by god I have not done it.
5. good heavens I have lost my purse.
6. good morning suhani have you slept well said her mom you do not appear to have slept well asked suhani in turn you were awake when I got up to turn off the air conditioner.
7. i cannot go she said because rain has not stopped so far.
8. they are well now arnav said they can go but it is drizzling how can they go said my daughter pearl.
9. do not desire O my young friend to get what you cannot get said the fisherman.
10. the king said to the jester how dare you touch the magic thing meant for me be ready to face the consequences shedding tears the jester said I am sorry no use crying said the king I am crying for you my lord replied the jester why asked the king.
11. you expect every body the slave said to the master, to flatter you all the time why is it so.
12. the queen cried help help.
13. advise me deep said how can i solve this problem.
14. no said malini i have not heard this news.
15. young and old good and bad all must die.
16. the names of the students are rohit, meenakshi, rahul, sona and ankur.
17. oh dear i am tired today.
18. o yes i like singing you like dancing.
19. some are born great some achieve greatness.
20. you fools how dare you enter my room without permission.
21. she wouldnt go there my son.
22. for god's sake please help me.
23. ah i am undone my friends have ruined me.
24. alas what a fool i am he has after all cheated me.
25. the words the prohibited area were written on the wall.

# 5

## Spelling Rules

---

### Introduction

English spelling is an intriguing part of learning English. **Max Muller** went one step further and summed up the dilemma of those learning English. “English spelling is a national misfortune to England and international misfortune to the rest of the world.

Various scholars and linguists have suggested a number of ways to learn spellings such as Dictionary method, Dictation method, Playway method, Old drill method and so on.

Without going into the merits and demerits of any methods we may agree to the sound advice of Tomkinson that ‘Caught rather than taught’ is the best way to learn spellings.

In other words a student can solve the problem just by reading constantly and preparing a list of words that spell a danger for a student.

There are many reasons for poor spellings. A five among them are poor memory, weak retention power and less of reading activity, therefore, correct spellings need constant writing practice, usage and power of recollection.

The more a student recollects a word, the more capability he acquires to avoid errors in spelling words.

### Some Important Rules on Spellings

1. The end consonant is usually doubled when there is one vowel letter before it

(a) While adding ‘ed, ing’ *For example*

Stop + ed + ing	Stopped	Stopping
Spot + ed + ing	Spotted	Spotting
Admit + ed + ing	Admitted	Admitting
Regret+ed+ing	Regretted	Regretting
Recur+ed+ing	Recurred	Recurring
Plan + ed + ing	Planned	Planning

**Exceptions**

Suffered	Suffering
Benefited	Benefitting
Offered	Offering
Differed	Differing
Focus	Focused

- (b) While adding 'er', 'est' to make comparative and superlative degree

*For example*

Thin	Thinner	Thinnest
Big	Bigger	Biggest
Sad	Sadder	Saddest
Fat	Fatter	Fattest
Mad	Madder	Maddest

- (c) While making a noun of a verb by adding 'er'

Cut	Cutter
Swim	Simmer
Run	Runner
Sin	Sinner
Rub	Rubber

- (d) While adding Y to make an adjective of a noun.

Mud	Muddy
Fun	Funny

- (e) If the stress is on the first syllable of a word that ends in "at, el, il, op, ip."

Equal + ed + ing	Equalled, Equalling
Travel + ed, ing	Travelled, Travelling
Level + ed + ing	Levelled, Levelling
Worship + ed + ing	Worshipped, Worshipping
Slap + ed + ing	Slapped, Slapping
Equip + ed, ing	Equipped, Equipping
Handicap + ed + ing	Handicapped, Handicapping
Signal + ed + ing	Signalled, Signalling
Model + ed + ing	Modelled, Modelling

**2. The end consonant is not doubled**

- (a) When there is diphthong before it.

Reap + ed + ing	Reaped, Reaping
Heap + ed + ing	Heaped, Heaping
Team + ed + ing	Teamed, Teaming
Shout + ed + ing	Shouted, Shouting
Cool + ed + ing	Cooled, Cooling

(b) When there is a suffix with a consonant.

Sin + ful	Sinful
Woman + hood	Womanhood
Sad + ness	Sadness
Equip + ment	Equipment

(c) When the stress is on the second syllable.

Listen + ed + ing	Listened, Listening
Offer + ed + ing	Offered, Offering
Answer + ed + ing	Answered, Answering
Murmur + ed + ing	Murmured, Murmuring

### 3. Words Ending in 'y'.

(a) Verbs ending in 'y' change into 'i' while they are conjugated (Making form of verbs) but 'y' remains unchanged when suffix 'ing' is added.

Rely	Relied	Relying
Marry	Married	Marrying
Try	Tried	Trying
Carry	Carried	Carrying

(b) Words ending in 'y' with a vowel before it do not change.

Obey	Obeyed	Obeying
Pray	Prayed	Praying
Enjoy	Enjoyed	Enjoying

#### Exceptions

Say	Said	Saying
Pay	Paid	Paying
Lay	Laid	Laying

(c) When suffix 'ing' is added to verbs ending in 'ie', then change in to 'y'.

lie	lying
die	dying
tie	tying

(d) Nouns and adjectives ending in 'y' with a vowel before them, change into 'i' when suffixes er, est, ly, full, ness are added.

Happy	Happier	Happily
Fly	Flier	
Plenty	Plentiful	
Tidy	Tidier	Tidiest
Pity	Pitiful	
Sunny	Sunnier	Sunniest

4. When words ending in 'll' are compounded with double 'll', both words become single 'l'.

Will + full	Wilful
Full+fill	Fulfil

**Exceptions**

Wellbeing	Farewell
-----------	----------

**5. Use of suffix 'ly' with adjectives to make adverbs****(a)** Adjectives ending in 'l' are written with 'll' while adding suffix 'ly'.

Final + ly	Finally
Real + ly	Really
Useful + ly	Usefully
Playful + ly	Playfully

**(b)** Adjectives ending in 'le' are written without 'le' while adding suffix 'ly'.

Sensible + ly	Sensibly
Forcible + ly	Forcibly
Gentle + ly	Gently
Subtle + ly	Subtly

**6. In words ending in 'n' retain 'n' when 'ness' is added**

Keen	Keeness
Clean	Cleanness
Mean	Meanness

**7. The letter 'c' is followed by letter (ei) and other letters by (ie).**

Receive	niece
Perceive	Siege
Deceive	Belief
Conceive	Achieve
Ceiling	berief

**Exceptions**

Leisure, Counterfeit, freight, feign, their, height, heir, reign.

**8. Words ending in 'll' are used with single 'l' when compounded with full, all, well, un, in dis**

All + together	Altogether
All + most	Almost
Well + come	Welcome
All + ready	Already
Un + till	Until
In + still	Instil
Dis + till	Distil

**9. The silent 'e' is not dropped when****(a)** Suffix 'ly' is added

False + ly	Falsely
Safe + ly	Safely
Sure + ly	Surely

**Exceptions**

Whole + ly	Wholly
True + ly	Truly
Due + ly	Duly

- (b) 'e' is not dropped after 'c' or 'g' while adding suffixes 'able', 'ous' beginning with vowel.

Peace + able	Peaceable
Trace + able	Traceable
Service + able	Serviceable
Courage + ous	Courageous
Advantage + ous	Advantageous
Manage + able	Manageable
Marriage + able	Marriageable
Charge + able	Chargeable

- (c) 'e' is not dropped when suffixes beginning with consonant are added such as **ful, less, hood, ly, ment, ness**.

hate + ful = hateful	use + less = useless
care + ful = careful	improve + ment = improvement
like + ness = likeness	state + hood = statehood
Extreme + ly = extremely	achieve + ment = achievement

**Exception (1)**

Argue + ment = argument
Awe + ful = awful

**Exception (2)**

Final 'e' in the following words can be retained or removed.

like	likeable, likable
mile	mileage, milage
judge	judgement, judgment
abridge	abridgement, abridgment
acknowledge	acknowledgement, acknowledgment

**10. The silent 'e' is dropped while adding**

- (a) suffixes such as 'ing, able, ary, ous'.

rove + ing = roving
care + ing = caring
age + ing = aging
value + able = valuable
note + able = notable
stare + ing = staring
advise + able = advisable
imagine + ary = imaginary
desire + ous = desirous
pore + ous = porous

fame + ous = famous  
 imagine + able = imaginable  
 love + able = lovable  
 move + able = movable

**Exceptions** like + able = likeable

- (b) silent 'e' is dropped while adding 'y' to a noun

Stone + y = stony  
 Noise + y = noisy  
 Taste + y = tasty  
 Ice + y = icy

- (c) The silent 'e' after consonant 't' is dropped when suffix 'tion' is added.

Pollute + tion = pollution  
 Frustrate + tion = frustration  
 Delete + tion = deletion  
 Deplete + tion = depletion

- (d) 'e' is changed to 'i' in words 'CE' when 'ous' as suffix is added.

Vice + ous = vicious  
 Malice + ous = malicious  
 Space + ous = spacious  
 Grace + ous = gracious

- (e) ee or oo are not dropped with suffixes 'able, ing, full'.

agree	agreeable	agreeing
foresee	foreseeable	foreseeing
woo		wooing
glee	gleeful	—

- (f) Final 'c' is changed to 'ck' before ed, ing, er

Panic	panicked
Picnic	picnickers

### 11. Making plurals – Some pitfalls.

- (a) The plural of a noun is usually made by adding 's' to it  
 homes, arms, boys, flames

**Exceptions**

- (b) Nouns ending in, o, kch, ch, ss end in 'es' when changed in plural forms

**wishes, switches, axes, asses, potatoes, tomatoes.**

But add 's' only in abbreviated words ending in 'o' **photos, Pianos, dynamos.**

- (c) When singular Nouns ending in 'f' or 'fe' are changed into plural add 'ves' in place 'of, 'f' or 'fe'.

Wife	Wives
Wolf	Wolves
Loaf	loaves
Thief	Thieves

**Exception**

handkerchief	handkerchiefs
chief	chiefs
cliff	cliffs
belief	beliefs

- (d) When singular nouns ending in 'y' with a consonant before them are changed into plural 'y' changes into 'ies'.

Country	Countries
Lady	Ladies.

- (e) Nouns ending in 'y' with a vowel word before them retain 'y' when 's' is added.

Joy	Joys
Day	Days
Play	Plays
Monkey	Monkeys

**12. As a part of spellings a student is supposed to be aware of the mute (silent) consonants *For example***

- (i) 'b' is silent in  
subtle, debt, debtor, doubt.
- (ii) 'd' is silent in  
grudge, hedge, sledge, adjourn.
- (iii) 'g' is silent in  
malign, benign, assign, sign.
- (iv) 'h' is silent in  
honour, hour, honest, honorary, exhaust.
- (v) 'k' is silent in  
knife, know, knee, knight.
- (vi) 'l' is silent in  
balm, talk, folk, alms, palm, calm, chalk.
- (vii) 'n' is silent in  
Solemn, autumn, hymn, column.
- (viii) 'p' is silent in  
pseudonym, Psychology, Corps, receipt.
- (ix) 't' is silent in  
often, whistle, hustle, debut, depot, hasten, fasten.
- (x) 'w' is silent in  
write, wrath, wring, wrong, wrap.
- (xi) 'h' is silent in  
daughter, draught, sight, right.

### Some Most Likely Pitfalls for Spelling Learners

#### A

Aggregate  
 Adjacent  
 Autumn  
 Accumulate  
 Accrue  
 Absence  
 Ascetic  
 Agree, Agreeable, Agreement  
 Address  
 Achieve  
 Already  
 Assassin  
 Annihilate  
 Acquire  
 Apparatus  
 Admissible  
 Acreage  
 Abridgeable, Abridgement,  
 Allot, Allotment, Allotted, Allotting  
 Accessible  
 Adversary  
 Assist, Assistant  
 Acquitted, Acquitting  
 Accommodate, Accommodation  
 Assess, Assessment  
 Awful  
 Aggravate  
 Athlete, Athletic  
 Accede  
 Accomplish, Accomplishment  
 Adolescent  
 Acquaint  
 Abstinence, Abstinant  
 Appearance  
 Assassin, Assassination  
 Advantageous  
 Arguable, Arguing, Argument  
 Acceptable

Accelerate, Accelerator  
 Annual  
 Admitting  
 Abbreviate  
 Allegiance  
 Allure  
 Aggrieved  
 Arrangement.  
 Advisable, Advise, Adviser, Advising  
 Appall  
 Acquire  
 Apostle  
 Amateur

#### B

Bouquet  
 Beggar  
 Balloon  
 Banquet  
 Bequeath  
 Battalion  
 Bidding  
 Business  
 Biscuit  
 Bureaucracy  
 Besiege  
 Beginner, Beginning  
 Busying  
 Beseech  
 Breakable  
 Book keeper  
 Believable, Believe  
 Blamable, Blameworthy  
 Betrayed,  
 Besiege  
 Benefit, Beneficial, Benefited  
 Bony  
 Bureau  
 Beneficent

**C**

Ceiling  
 Coolly  
 Coercible  
 Caffeine  
 Colloquial  
 Commemorate  
 Challenge  
 Conscience, Conscientious  
 Cigarette  
 Credible  
 Collapsible  
 Celebrate  
 Canvass, Canvassing  
 Coming  
 Corroborate  
 Compatible  
 Contemptible  
 Commitment, Committed  
 Cancelled, Cancelling, Cancellation  
 Chagrined, Chagrining  
 Controlled  
 Conceit, Conceited  
 Conferred  
 Colossal  
 Cagey  
 Confectionery  
 Corruptible  
 Conscious  
 Convertible  
 Counterfeit  
 Counsel, Counselling  
 Collaborate  
 Conqueror  
 Changeable  
 Chauffeur  
 Concede  
 Commendable  
 Connoisseur  
 Collectible  
 Courageous  
 Contractible

Concurred, Concurrence, Concurrent  
 Colonel  
 Committe

**D**

Discernible  
 Dispelling  
 Dissimilar  
 Dysentery  
 Deficient  
 Defendant  
 Deterred, Deterrence, Deterrent  
 Dependable, Dependence, Dependent  
 Despicable  
 Desperate  
 Descendant  
 Dissipate, Dissipation  
 Distil  
 Dictionary  
 Diffidence, Diffident  
 Drunkenness  
 Dispensable  
 Dungeon (Subterranean cell of Prisoners)  
 Demagogue (Political Agitator)  
 Deference, Deferment  
 Deceit, Deceitful, Deceive, Deceiver,  
 Deceiving  
 Difference, Different  
 Digestible  
 Discernible  
 Disheveled (Unkempt, Untidy)  
 Dismissible

**E**

Enmity  
 Etiquette  
 Expungeable  
 Erosion  
 Extravagance  
 Ecclesiastic

Embarrass  
 Exceed  
 Equilibrium  
 Exchangeable  
 Exhaustible  
 Enforceable  
 Erroneous  
 Elementary  
 Exaggerate  
 Echoes  
 Eligible  
 Existence, Existent  
 Efficient  
 Exhilarate, Exhilarating  
 Excusable  
 Ecstasy  
 Eighth

**F**

Fulfil  
 Fahrenheit  
 Fascinate  
 Fierce  
 Feign (Pretend)  
 Freight  
 Forcible

**G**

Glamour  
 Grammar  
 Goddess  
 Grotesque  
 Guarantee  
 Gaiety, Gaily  
 Gauge  
 Grief, Grieve, Grievous  
 Glamorous  
 Gorgeous

**H**

Hierarchy  
 Harass, Harassment  
 Hypocrisy  
 Hygiene  
 Heinous  
 Haemorrhage

**I**

Inoculate  
 Inadmissible  
 Inference  
 Impeccable  
 Illiterate  
 Immaculate  
 Inventor  
 Incurring  
 Irrefutable  
 Innocuous  
 Install  
 Impressible  
 Interchangeable  
 Imposter  
 Infallible  
 Incorrigible  
 Insistence, Insistent  
 Impregnable  
 Idiosyncrasy  
 Irrevocable  
 Incredible  
 Intermittence, Intermittent  
 Innumerable  
 Irreparable, Irresistible  
 Incompatible  
 Irrelevant  
 Inadvertence, Inadvertent  
 Inedible

**K**

Kaleidoscopic

**L**

Likable (likeable)

Lodgment

Licentious

Livable

Luscious

Lovable

Lascivious

Legible

Licence

Languor

Leisure

Lieutenant

**M**

Miscellaneous

Munificent

Moustache

Martyr

Movable

Mischievous

Manoeuvre

Millionaire

Mosquitoes

Motto, Mottoes

Mimicked, Mimicking

Millennium

Maintain, Maintenance

Manageable

Magnificent

**N**

Noticeable

Niece

Neigh

News-stand

Ninth

Negligible

**O**

Omitted

Ostensible

Obsession, Obsessive

Opulence, Opulent,

Omniscience, Omniscient

Oscillate, Oscillation, Oscillating

Occur, Occurred, Occurrence, Occurring

Obeisance

Offence

**P**

Pronunciation

Perishable

Permissible

Possible

Peaceable

Provable

Panicked, Panicking, Panicky

Profession

Perceivable, Perceive

Privilege

Potatoes

Professor

Prefer, Preference, Preferred

Perseverance, Persistence, Persistent

Prohibited

Procedure

Portable

Precede, Preceding, Predecessor

Producible

Playwright

Possess, Possession

Plebeian

Proficient

Parallel

Phenomena

Pursue, Pursuit

Patrolling

Pretence

Proceed

**R**

Renaissance  
 Reversible  
 Recede  
 Repellent  
 Resuscitate  
 Regretted, Regretting  
 Relevance, Relevant  
 Relief, Relieve  
 Repentance, Repentant  
 Replaceable  
 Refer, Reference  
 Referred  
 Receipt, Receive, Receiver  
 Repairable  
 Reconnaissance

**S**

Sponsor  
 Secretary  
 Sufficient  
 Splendour  
 Spontaneity  
 Succumb  
 Shield  
 Sergeant  
 Stationary  
 Skill, Skilful  
 Satellite  
 Siege (beleaguer)  
 Salable  
 Severity  
 Secede  
 Souvenir  
 Seismic  
 Serviceable  
 Suppress, Suppressible  
 Stationery  
 Supersede  
 Shriek

Sustenance  
 Stubborn, Stubbornness  
 Sovereign, Sovereignty  
 Secondary  
 Seize, Seizure  
 Succeed  
 Subsistence  
 Sizable  
 Suddenness  
 Superintendence, Superintendent  
 Scintillate, Scintillation, Scintillating  
 Salvageable  
 Susceptible  
 Sacrilege, Sacrilegious  
 Surfeit  
 Sleight  
 Strength

**T**

Travelled  
 Titillate  
 Tariff  
 Traffic, Trafficked, Trafficker  
 Traceable  
 Tangible  
 Threshold  
 Truly  
 Transmissible  
 Tranquillity  
 Trespass, Trespasser  
 Tyrannical, Tyrannize, Tyranny  
 Twelfth

**U**

Undiscernibly  
 Utterance  
 Until  
 Unmistakable, Unmistakably  
 Unparalleled  
 Usable, Using

**V**

Vacuous  
 Vicissitude  
 Vaccination  
 Verandha  
 Vigor, Vigorous  
 Vacuum  
 Value, Valuable  
 Vacillate, Vacillation, Vace, Vicious

**W**

Wintry  
 Wield  
 Weigh, Weight  
 Woollen, woolly  
 Welfare  
 Weird  
 Wholly  
 Welcome

**Work Book Exercise**

**Directions** Four words are given in each question, out of which only one word is correctly spelt. Find the correctly spelt word.

- |  |                                     |                            |
|--|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. (a) Dansuese<br>(c) Danseus         | (b) Danseuse<br>(d) Densuace        | <b>[SSC CGL 2014]</b>      |
| 2. (a) Restorent<br>(c) Restarent      | (b) Restaurent<br>(d) Restaurant    | <b>[SSC DEO, LDC 2012]</b> |
| 3. (a) Duration<br>(c) Electriscity    | (b) Dustur<br>(d) Economical        |                            |
| 4. (a) Poresistance<br>(c) Conspicuous | (b) Thesaurus<br>(d) Renaissance    | <b>[SSC CPO 2011]</b>      |
| 5. (a) Impetous<br>(c) Ignominious     | (b) Ignoable<br>(d) Idiosyncresy    |                            |
| 6. (a) Inconsistant<br>(c) Exponant    | (b) Repentant<br>(d) Excultent      |                            |
| 7. (a) Acoustic<br>(c) Pesimist        | (b) Norcoctic<br>(d) Permentant     |                            |
| 8. (a) Demagogue<br>(c) Delinquancy    | (b) Deliverence<br>(d) Delibarative |                            |
| 9. (a) Harrassment<br>(c) Fulfilment   | (b) Embarrasment<br>(d) Denoument   |                            |
| 10. (a) Ebulient<br>(c) Iminent        | (b) Jubilant<br>(d) Tolerent        |                            |
| 11. (a) Agnostik<br>(c) Advercity      | (b) Accomplice<br>(d) Acrimonous    |                            |
| 12. (a) Malign<br>(c) Asigne           | (b) Arraign<br>(d) Degine           |                            |
| 13. (a) Cortege<br>(c) Milege          | (b) Damege<br>(d) Plumege           |                            |
| 14. (a) Convinience<br>(c) Concesional | (b) Initative<br>(d) Exaggerate     |                            |
| 15. (a) Asiduous<br>(c) Macaber        | (b) Nefarious<br>(d) Loqacious      |                            |
| 16. (a) Malignant<br>(c) Independant   | (b) Impertinant<br>(d) Neglegent    |                            |
| 17. (a) Qstalt<br>(c) Ampasse          | (b) Imbrolios<br>(d) Recondite      |                            |

# 6

## Contractions

---

### What is a Contraction?

Contraction is the short form of a word. It is formed by combining two words into one.

### Forms of Contractions

The two words are usually contracted as follows

- (i) Subject + auxiliary verb.
- (ii) Auxiliary verb + not

#### 1. Subject (Noun and Pronoun) and Auxiliary verb

Auxiliary Verbs are

- (a) To be – is, am, are, was, were
- (b) To do – do, did
- (c) To have – have, had
- (d) Modal auxiliaries

Will, shall, can, could, may, might, should, must

The contraction of subject + Auxiliary is made by dropping the beginning of the auxiliary verb. The dropped letter is shown by an apostrophe.

I am	I'm
I have	I've
I will/Shall	I'll
Moni has	Moni's
Moni is	Moni's

#### 2. Auxiliary verb + not

This type of contraction is formed by dropping 'O' the dropped letter is shown by an apostrophe.

are not	aren't
was not	wasn't
am not	arent't

Since "amn't is wrong, use 'aren't for this wrong expression.

**NOTE** In negative verb phrases with “be, have, will, shall, would and should.” contractions may be used in two forms.

She’s not or she isn’t

He’ll not or he won’t

### 3. The common contractions are as follows

#### Singular Pronoun + Auxiliary verb

I am	I’m
I have	I’ve
I will/Shall	I’ll
{ I would, should, had	I’d
You are	You’re
You have	You’ve
You will	You’ll
{ You would, you had	You’d
She, He is/has	She’s /He’s
She, He will	She’ll/He’ll
It is, has	It’s
It will	It’ll

#### Plural Pronoun + Auxiliary verb

We are	We’re
We have	We’ve
We will	We’ll
We would, should had	We’d
They are	They’re
They have	They’ve
They will	They’ll
They would/should had	They’d

### 4. Noun + Auxiliary verbs

- |                |         |
|----------------|---------|
| (i) Mohan is   | Mohan’s |
| (ii) Mohan has | Mohan’s |

The following contractions are not used with **nouns**

{ Kim should, would, had	Kim’d
Kim will	Kim’ll

**5. Auxiliary verbs + Not**

am + not (amn't is not used as contraction form)

Is not	Isn't
Are not	aren't
Was not	Wasn't
Were not	Weren't
Do not	Don't
Does not	Doesn't
Did not	Didn't
Have not	Haven't
Has not	Hasn't
Had not	Hadn't
Will not	won't
Shall not	shan't
May not	Mayn't
Might not	Mightn't
Must not	musn't
Ought not	oughtn't
Need not	needn't
Would not	Wouldn't
Should not	Shouldn't
Cannot	Can't
Could not	Couldn't
Dare not	Daren't

**6. Some of the common contractions**

Here is	here's
There is	there's
That is	that's
That will	that'll
How is	how's
What is	what's
Who is	who's
What will	what'll
Who will	who'll
Who would	who'd

# ANSWERS

## Part D (Practical Grammar)

### 1. Narration

#### Practice Exercise 1

1. I told him that I would not go there the next day.
2. The clerk told me that he would not attend the office the next day.
3. Hari told them that Mohan had not slept there the previous day.
4. Gita asked Rita if she would help her in the work.
5. Sadhna asked me if I could go with her to the station.
6. Her father asked me whether I knew where Prem was.
7. I asked him if he did not know that I was his friend.
8. Ram asked me why I did not go home.
9. He asked me how my father was.
10. He ordered her to go away from there at once.
11. The teacher advised the boys to work hard.
12. The doctor advised the patient not to eat much to escape from disease.
13. The servant requested him to grant him leave for two days.
14. He said that they should wait for their friends.  
*Or*  
He told me that we should wait for our friends.
15. He shouted to me to let him go.  
*Or*  
He shouted to me that he might be allowed to go.
16. The spectators applauded them saying that they had done well.
17. The captain exclaimed with joy that they had won the match.
18. The doctor exclaimed with sorrow that the poor man was no more.
19. The teacher expressed regret that it was a great pity that I had not followed his advice.
20. Mohan exclaimed with sorrow that it was a very bloody deed he had done.
21. She exclaimed with wonder that the rose was very beautiful.
22. She exclaimed with pity that he was a very lazy fellow.
23. He prayed that God might pardon him.
24. Ram wished that his friend might succeed in the examination.
25. They prayed that their Prime Minister might live long.
26. The minister exclaimed with sorrow that the earthquake was a terrible disaster.
27. The teacher threatened/warned the boy to report the matter to the Principal if he misbehaved again.
28. (a) I told her to light the lamp when it got dark.  
(b) I told her that when it got dark she should light the lamp.
29. She proposed that the children went out for a nice long walk.
30. The patient pleaded with the doctor to tell her how much time she had.

**Practice Exercise 2**

1. He tells me that he has never been to my house and therefore, he will go with me.
2. He told me that she left Ahmedabad after he had gone.
3. But she told him that he was a fool because he did not understand her.
4. Sohan told me that he was my friend and therefore, he would never desert me.
5. The teacher asked Vina what her name was and where she came from.
6. My friend told Rita that she was going out and asked her if she would go along with her.
7. Rahul asked me where I was going and if he could accompany me.
8. The teacher told the boys that if they wanted to pass, they should work hard.
9. The teacher asked the boys why they were not working hard, if they wanted to pass.
10. (a) The teacher advised the boys to work hard, if they wanted to pass.  
(b) The teacher told the boys that if they wanted to pass they should work hard.
11. The weary traveller asked my father if he would give him lodging for one night. My father replied that he would because he was very welcome.
12. The governor of the town asked the slave how the hungry lion had forgotten his nature. To this the slave replied that very lion which was standing before him had been his friend in the woods.
13. Seema asked Arnav if he would go to hospital that day. Arnav replied that he would not. Then Seema asked him why he would not. Arnav replied that he would not go because he was feeling better.
14. The teacher asked Rita if she had finished her work the previous day. Rita replied respectfully that she had not because her mother had been ill.
15. The teacher told the boys that if they came before school the next day, he would explain it. The boys assured him respectfully that they would do as he said.
16. His master ordered the servant to go down to the bazaar and bring him some oil and lump of ice
17. Rameshwar told his teacher respectfully that he had not done his work as he had been ill.
18. Father asked Mohit lovingly why he was sad that day.
19. Father asked Mohit to bring him a glass of water.
20. Addressing him as his son he told him that his daughter would marry the strongest and greatest person and there was no one stronger and greater than he. So he asked him if he would accept her as his wife.
21. Calling the thief rascal the policeman asked him how he could dare do it and if he had known the punishment of his crime.
22. The girl asked the young man who he was and what he wanted with her. Further she told him that she had never seen him before and requested him to take his seat.
23. A farmer took his sons to the field and told them that there was a treasure hidden there in the earth. He advised them to share it amongst them, if they found it.
24. The student asked the teacher respectfully if he might come in although he was late that day. The teacher replied that he might but reminded him that that was not his first chance of getting late.
25. The woman told the king that all travellers were welcome for the sake of one. The king asked the woman who that one was for whose sake she made all travellers welcome. To this the old woman replied that it was their, lawful king, Robert the Bruce.
26. The fox flattered the crow saying that he was very pretty, and told him that she was sure that so beautiful a bird must have a beautiful voice. She cheered him up lovingly and asked him if he would not sing a few notes for her.
27. Ram thanked me for all my help (saying that) and said that he could not have finished the work without my help.

28. He reprimanded the shopkeeper saying that he was a fool because he had done the opposite of what he had desired him to do. He informed him that instead of changing the perfume he had changed the shaving cream.
29. Nelson called Hardy near him and told him that he was a dead man and he was going fast because it would be all over with him soon. So he requested Hardy to let his dear lady have his hair and other things belonging to him.
30. A young prince once asked a lady how it was that she was so fascinating. She felt shy and left the room saying that beauty lay in eyes of a beholder.
31. He admitted that he had broken the slate.
32. He denied that he had done it.
33. The candidate assured the boss of his best services.
34. The doctor hoped that the patient was better then.
35. Juliet suggested to Arnav that they should go swimming since it was fine.
36. They exclaimed that the hill was very steep and they were tired.
37. He advised his son to be neither a borrower nor a lender.
38. The master scolded his servant for disturbing him and ordered him to go away.
39. Shaurya asked Sameer to be up as it was no use wasting time. But Sameer replied that he had no work to do that day.
40. The chauffeur told his master respectfully that the ladies were waiting outside and they were getting impatient.
41. Mohan's father said that Mohan had made the mess and that he was to clear it.
42. I declared that Mohan might do his worst, he could not harm me.
43. Jaya suggested giving a party (to give a party) but her husband opposed the idea.

### Practice Exercise 3

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (c)  | 2. (a)  | 3. (c)  | 4. (a)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (c)  | 7. (c)  |
| 8. (b)  | 9. (a)  | 10. (a) | 11. (a) | 12. (b) | 13. (d) | 14. (c) |
| 15. (d) | 16. (a) | 17. (d) | 18. (a) | 19. (b) | 20. (a) | 21. (a) |
| 22. (c) |         |         |         |         |         |         |

## 2. Synthesis

### Part I

#### Practice Exercise 1

1. I do not know whether he will come.
2. I cannot say where he is going.
3. The verdict of the bench was that he was not guilty.
4. There is no doubt that he will do it.
5. I am sure that he is correct.
6. (a) His statement was that you gave him stolen money./  
(b) That you gave him stolen money was his statement.
7. I am not certain if he is guilty.
8. I do not know who arrived late at night.
9. I do not believe in what he said to me.
10. Nobody informed me when my mother went to temple in the evening.
11. Everybody doubts if he will pass.
12. (a) This is my belief that he will cheat you.  
(b) That he will cheat you is my belief.
13. I do not know when my father will come here.

14. Please tell me where you have put my purse.
15. Are you listening to what I am saying.
16. I cannot tell why he came late.
17. The news that he died last night is wrong.
18. He confessed that he had committed murder.
19. It was expected that he would arrive soon.
20. It is believed that Netaji died in air crash.
21. I cannot say whether/if she is a doctor.
22. All depends on what your attitude to life is.
23. My son is anxious to learn how one can travel to space.
24. The fact is that he is a coward.
25. She declared her intention that she would not marry the following year.
26. His wife cannot tell how much money he wasted.
27. I cannot rely on what she has promised to me.
28. The police are trying to inquire when she left the party.
29. She told me the fact that her father would not allow her to go abroad.
30. Our expectation was that we would succeed.
31. The news that she has returned from Chennai is not correct.
32. She confessed that she had gone to Delhi the previous night.
33. My sister kept on asking when I would come back from Indore.
34. The verdict of the Judges that he is guilty has been challenged.
35. I can not tell when she came in the morning.
36. The rumour that he died last night is baseless.
37. Everyone wonders how she completed this work.
38. It is certain that she will arrive today.
39. I heard him telling his mother that he was leaving for America very soon.
40. (a) It cannot be confirmed whether he has married.  
(b) Whether he has married cannot be confirmed.

### Practice Exercise 2

1. Shakespeare who was a great dramatist is the author of a number of plays.
2. Please show me the place where you have put my purse.
3. This is the college where I studied.
4. It was ten o'clock when my father left for office.
5. Can you tell me the reason why you are wasting time?
6. The boy whom the teacher gave a prize was present there.
7. I shall give you the same pen that I bought.
8. I was the first man who heard his name on the radio.
9. They were sitting under a tree the shade of which was very cool.
10. I shall go by the Taj express which goes to Agra direct.
11. They are reading a book which is very rare.
12. The news that he gave yesterday is true.
13. Yesterday I bought a book which is very cheap.
14. They committed a mistake which was quite serious.
15. You cannot believe such a person as is dishonest.
16. We undertook a journey to Gwalior which was tiring.

17. A soldier who was wounded was lying in the field.
18. The dog felled the candle which was burning.
19. Those who are healthy do not need a doctor.
20. The man who was wounded in accident died last night.
21. The magic ball which was meant for the king was eaten by the jester.
22. Seema was the last person who left for home.
23. This is a class room which is not the place to play.
24. He has a large family whom he has to educate.
25. He has some bills which he must pay in cash.
26. I have no friend whom I can talk to.
27. Childhood is a time when one can teach good habits to children.
28. I know the reason why he could not succeed.
29. The time when he will come tomorrow is not certain.
30. Nobody appreciated the way in which she behaved at the party.
31. I was informed of the place where he was living.
32. I remember very well the year when he retired.
33. You can have anything that you like.
34. The students who hail from Bihar are very hard working.
35. The girl who has long hair is a cousin of my wife.
36. I never visit any of my uncles that reside in Manekshaw Enclave.
37. The news which the voice of America broadcast is true.
38. The players whom the president awarded cash prize were present at the function.
39. The good deeds which men do in their lives live after them.
40. Kabir who was a famous poet wrote spiritual poetry.

### Practice Exercise 3

1. He ran so quickly that he overtook everybody.
2. As you always disturb me, I cannot work.
3. When I had left office, my boss called me.
4. When the members of the committee arrived, the conference started.
5. You must hurry lest you should miss the train.
6. I could not go out because it was very sultry noon.
7. As soon as I left office, the rain started.
8. He will not leave at night, lest he should be robbed.
9. He came to me so that I might help him.
10. When he found out his mistake, he repented very much.
11. If you sleep outside, you will be ill.
12. When I reached the station, the train had left.
13. Since you left India, You have not written any letter.
14. The old man walks as fast as a young person.
15. (a) Rich as he is, he is unhappy.  
(b) Though he is rich, he is unhappy.
16. If you help others, God will help you.
17. While they were playing in the garden, it started raining.
18. The work was stopped because no money was given to me.
19. The patient grew so weak that he died last night.

20. Since his brother died, he has been very poor.
21. Everybody will admire him if he is hard working.
22. If you go out, You will catch cold.
23. Although he was sick yet he went out.
24. He was cremated where he settled after his retirement.
25. Though he is admired by everybody, he is not proud.
26. While he was sitting on the grass, a snake bit him.
27. She waited for her friend till she arrived.
28. If she had not come late, she would have enjoyed music.
29. If you want to go to Malabar Hills, bring money with you.
30. I shall go where my cousin works.
31. Water is so cold that no one can drink it.
32. He employed a watchman so that he might be safe.
33. If they had not helped me, I would not have got success.
34. If I had given you money, I would have been glad.
35. You may go wherever you like.
36. He did not stop working until he achieved success.
37. As soon as the signal was given, the train started.
38. You can stay here if you wish.
39. No other member in her family is as beautiful as she is.
40. Let us wait till the train stops.
41. If I make a promise, I stick to it.
42. He is working hard so that he may join Army.
43. He fled lest he should be caught.
44. Please do not go until I get money for you.
45. Everybody will admire you on condition that you are honest.
46. If he had received help in time, he would not have died from burns.
47. The more he gets, the more he works.
48. Do not get into the train until it stops.
49. If it rains, the schools may be closed.
50. We shall leave for Shimla if weather permits.
51. I should be glad if I could help your husband.
52. If he had not worked hard, he would have failed.
53. I shall be glad if I can help you in getting a job.
54. I shall treat her as she treated me.
55. My younger sister behaves as if she were an elder sister.
56. She wrote an essay as well as she could.
57. She writes better than she speaks.
58. She is more kind than wise.
59. He spends as if he were a rich person.
60. The candidates stayed in the hall till the supervisor departed.
61. She is as wise as her mother is.
62. He did the work as I advised him.
63. He will go by his own car lest he should get late.
64. The patient grew so weak that he died at last.

**Part II****Practice Exercise 1****(A) By using Infinitive**

1. He is too weak to run.
2. I want a knife to peel the vegetables.
3. He had a large family to support.
4. She has no pen to write a cheque.
5. He was glad to hear of my success.
6. He is believed to have died from heart attack.
7. I expect to pass next year.
8. She is reported to have married lately.

**(B) By using Participle**

1. Drawing the sword he attacked the enemy.
2. Having no teeth he could not eat nuts.
3. Returning home I saw a black dog.
4. Having resolved firmly he never smoked.
5. Having completed the letter she posted it.
6. Disappointed he gave up the job.
7. Turning to the right you will find my house.
8. Tired of riding she went to bed.
9. Hearing no answer we rang the bell again.
10. Having been stabbed Ceaser died from the wounds.

**(C) By using Nominative Absolute**

1. The sun having risen, fog disappeared.
2. Archana being late, the teacher punished her.
3. The letter having been written, I posted it soon.
4. The time being over, we handed over the note books.
5. It being cloudy, we went on picnic.
6. The rain being scanty this year, sugar is dear in the market.
7. His uncle having died, he inherited the property.
8. Despite his father being rich, she was not proud.
9. The Ganga being our sacred river, we should keep it clean.

**(D) By using Preposition before Gerund or Noun**

1. He was justified in killing his enemy.
2. She insisted on going to the market.
3. He won praise for saving the life of the prince.
4. We were informed of the absence of the teacher.
5. The girl with long hair is the cousin of my wife.
6. There is no doubt about his stealing my book.
7. He is fond of reading comics.
8. I heard of his being wounded.
9. We all were happy at the safe return of all.
10. I paid huge amount for a new house.

**(E) By using Noun or Phrase in Apposition**

1. Suniti, the daughter of a doctor, stood first in the college.
2. Mr. Sinha, an engineer, works in the Hydrel department.
3. Harsh, a famous poet, writes love poetry.
4. Nanda, a great bulider, has built a number of apartments.
5. He bought a very costly picture, a work by a most famous artist of India.

(F) **By use of Adverbs or Adverbial phrase**

1. He replied back in no time.
2. He saved money wisely.
3. I escaped from the den of the gangsters luckily.
4. I got help from my friends unexpectedly.
5. I shall return tonight before long.
6. Undoubtely, I shall get through the examination.
7. She went to college hurriedly.
8. She will certainly go to the states next year.

(G) **By using 'Adjective' or 'And'**

1. I am buying a very costly house next week.
2. A young girl entered the room.
3. She was kind and generous.
4. Why are you nervous and sad?

**Practice Exercise 2**

1. (a) The student admitted to have been absent.  
(b) The student admitted his absence.
2. I am not aware of his profession.
3. I don't know his name.
4. I cannot recall his residence.
5. I have no faith in her promise to help me.
6. (a) Her success is certain.  
(b) She will certainly succeed.
7. My faith in his success is firm.
8. Your absence makes the offence worse.
9. She is sure of securing high marks.
10. She persisted in continuing her study.
11. My father insisted on my joining army.
12. We do not know the reason of her leaving the party suddenly.
13. The soldiers were told the manner of climbing the hill.
14. I expect him to be honest.
15. We hope to be invited.
16. He denied to have sold spurious drugs to the customers.
17. She has certainly two sons.
18. She is expected to qualify Entrance Examination.
19. She appears to be honest.
20. Netaji is believed to have died in air crash.
21. He is alleged to have stolen his brother's jewellery.
22. She is likely to come late.
23. He will certainly be punished tomorrow.
24. He is sure to succeed.
25. Undoubtedly, she will recover from illness.

**Practice Exercise 3**

1. Do you know the reason of her arrival earlier?
2. Kabir, a famous poet, was a weaver.
3. I bought a quite large house last year.
4. We came across a soldier in trouble.

5. (a) He invented a stitching machine.  
(b) He invented a machine used for stitching.
6. (a) Mr. Verma, our teacher, is loved by everybody.  
(b) Everybody loves Mr. Verma, our teacher.
7. The class room is not a place to play.
8. We committed a quite serious mistake.
9. Do you know the time of your father's departure in the morning?
10. The boys, living near my house, are honest.
11. The tired man could not do work well.
12. We undertook a tiring journey.
13. I was the first man to hear his name on the radio.
14. He has a large family to educate.
15. He has some bills to pay.
16. They admitted the offence committed by them last night.
17. You cannot believe a dishonest person.
18. We undertook a tiring journey to Gwalior.
19. In the street we saw a beggar begging from door to door.
20. The man wounded in an accident died last night.
21. The police discovered the weapon used to kill the victim.
22. Air, the cheapest thing in the world, is the first thing in life.
23. Childhood is the time to learn good habits.
24. I know the reason of his failure.
25. The time of his arrival has been announced.
26. I remember very well the year of his retirement.
27. These students hailing from Bihar are very hard working.
28. The offence she committed intentionally is unpardonable.
29. The good deeds done by men in life live after them.
30. Malini repaid the debt incurred by her father.

**Practice Exercise 4**

1. After having passed high school examination, I got a job.
2. (a) He takes dinner early to avoid sickness.  
(b) He takes dinner early so as not to get sick.
3. Seeing the police, the thief fled immediately.
4. While sitting on the grass, he was bitten by a snake.
5. Being late, he was punished.
6. The weather being unpleasant, we did not go out.
7. Being insulted, she left the room.
8. Being over powered by the enemy, he was stabbed.
9. In spite of possessing huge wealth, he is not happy.
10. By going out, you will catch cold.
11. Without working hard you will fail.
12. Without examining the paper carefully, you can not give your opinion.
13. He is too lazy to be a player.
14. Depending on the weather, we may go tomorrow.
15. Every Sunday he goes to Delhi to see his sick brother.

16. He is too weak to walk.
17. He did the work in accordance with my advice.
18. He is working hard to join the army.
19. He is kind enough to help everybody.
20. I shall leave the room with your permission.
21. The work was done in my presence.
22. He is honest enough not to deceive you.
23. Turning to right you will see a tall building.
24. While going to school, he was caught in the rain.
25. Since retirement, his father has been idle.
26. He drove fast enough to overtake us.
27. In spite of success in life he is humble.
28. He is too clever not to see through your tricks.
29. Your sorrow is too deep for tears.
30. This house is so small for me.

#### Practice Exercise 5

1. Entering the Mall, she went straight to the manager.
2. Archana lost her very costly purse containing a lot of cash.
3. He was punished for coming late.
4. Small families are certainly not an advantage now.
5. Drinking is injurious to health.
6. He has some new clothes in the box.
7. He was not afraid of telling a lie.
8. Reaching Shimla, we went to our hotel.
9. Yesterday my brother and Rohan went to Chandigarh.
10. I could notice her cleverness.
11. It being very hot, I did not go out.
12. The train being late, I reached home late.
13. My father did not wisely sell the house.
14. While walking in the garden, they enjoyed themselves.
15. In spite of having no money, Rohit succeeded in his aim.
16. You will pass by working hard.
17. The speech having ended, we went for dinner.
18. He had no house to sell.
19. He was arrested for firing at his friend.
20. She earns a lot of money by running a beauty parlour.
21. Ashoka a great emperor became compassionate after the battle of Kalinga.
22. Walking in the garden, he saw a beggar unable to walk.
23. Arriving at the party, he was pleased to meet all of his friends.
24. We come to the institute to study English.
25. Driving Deepa heard Reena humming a song.
26. In spite of being threatened, I am not afraid of speaking the truth.
27. He fired at his enemy in dark to kill him.
28. I was glad to be told that he was successful.
29. The child was punished for breaking the tinted pane while playing cricket.
30. We were delighted to see him buying mangoes.

**Part III****Practice Exercise 1**

1. He is intelligent but careless.
2. He can succeed but he will not work hard.
3. Morning walk is a good exercise, therefore, everybody should walk.
4. He came late otherwise, he would have enjoyed music.
5. Walk fast and you will catch bus.
6. Wait here otherwise, he will not meet you.
7. The bus was slow, so he reached late.
8. You are a liar and so is your brother.
9. She is both smart and honest.
10. Neither be a borrower nor be a lender.
11. You may be either correct or wrong.
12. She comes on foot so she is often late.
13. Stand outside or come in.
14. Weather was not fair yet we went on picnic.
15. She came and consoled me.

**Practice Exercise 2**

1. She came late, so she was punished.
2. It is very cold out side, therefore I can not go.
3. She is intelligent but dishonest.
4. She was ill yet she come.
5. Work hard or you will fail.
6. Be neither angry nor rash.
7. Besides being dishonest he is a fool.
8. (a) He is handsome as well as smart.  
(b) He is handsome and smart too.
9. He is intelligent but careless.
10. He can succeed but he will not work hard.
11. Morning walk is good exercise, therefore everybody should walk.
12. He came late otherwise, he would have got the bus.
13. Walk fast and you will catch bus.
14. Wait here otherwise, he will not meet you.
15. The bus was slow, so he reached late.
16. You play piano and so does your brother.
17. She is not only obedient but also polite.
18. Be neither a borrower not a lender
19. Richa cannot sing not can Esha.
20. Everything decays but truth survives.
21. He will pass and I doubt it.
22. I went to Indore and there I spent a few days.
23. I requested her to lend me some money but she refused.
24. Come by car and we shall take you to temple.
25. He took bath and he put on new clothes.
26. He fell off the stairs and so he died from injuries.
27. One word more and I shall kill you.
28. Either you write or I must write to father.
29. He wants to pass and so he is working hard.
30. (a) Neither Sona nor her husband can sing.  
(b) Sona cannot sing and her husband can not sing either.  
(c) Sona cannot sing and neither can her husband.

**3. Transformation****Part I****Practice Exercise 1 (a)**

1. He confessed that he was guilty.
2. All depends on what his future is.
3. How old he is, is not known.
4. Speak what the truth is.
5. The fact that he was silent proved his complicity in the crime.
6. It appears that he is running temperature.
7. He denied that he had murdered.
8. It is believed that he is honest.
9. She informed me that she had arrived.
10. The news that he died is wrong.

11. It is believed that Subhash Chandra Bose died in Japan.
12. I have already heard what he has said. 13. It is sure that he has been punished.
14. It is expected that he will give me money.
15. Mohit may do what he likes. 16. I wish that you may be successful in life.
17. He wishes that he should be a very rich person.
18. There is no truth in what he says.
19. (a) Where he is hiding is likely to be discovered very soon.  
(b) It is likely that his place of hiding will be discovered very soon.
20. We believe that the news is true. 21. That you are innocent is beyond any doubt.
22. I have long doubted if he is honest. 23. I have long suspected that he is guilty.
24. It is likely that his father will give him punishment.
25. (a) It is high time that I should leave India.  
(b) It is high time I left India.
26. That he will resign is out of the question.

#### Practice Exercise 1 (b)

1. I have long suspected that he is a thief.
2. The news that he has arrived has not been intimated.
3. Her remarks that I had failed were disgusting.
4. What is true is eternal.
5. It is expected that she will learn good manners.
6. Pay heed to what I have instructed.
7. She has a desire that she should learn swimming.
8. Her wish is that she should do social work in future.
9. It is reported that he has lost his reputation.
10. I kept on wondering if she would succeed.
11. Everybody is responsible for what he does.
12. That he will fall is certain.
13. She did not inform me what she was.
14. Nobody knows where he is.
15. She jumped at what I offered her.

#### Practice Exercise 2 (a)

1. Yesterday I bought a pen which is very cheap.
2. I saw a beggar who was begging from door to door.
3. This is the village where I was born.
4. Do you know the reason why he has failed?
5. The value of exercise that we take is great.
6. The offence which he committed is not pardonable.
7. They come across the students who were smoking by the road side.
8. A man who is tired, cannot work well.
9. (a) It is not the manner which you use to please your boss.  
(b) It is not the manner how you please your boss.
10. He gave me money which I could spend.
11. The pen which is given by him is very cheap.
12. I have no friend whom I can talk to.

13. He was the last man who arrived at the party.
14. He gave me a news that was fake.
15. How can you believe a person who is dishonest.

**Practice Exercise 2 (b)**

1. We committed a mistake which was quite serious.
2. They found a piece of diamond which is rare.
3. We undertook a journey which was quite tiring.
4. The man who was tired could not do work well.
5. The dog felled the candle which was burning.
6. The murder which he committed ruined his life.
7. He invented a machine which is used for stitching.
8. He saw a candle which was burning brightly.
9. This is a class room which is not the place to play.
10. He has a large family whom he has to educate.
11. He was the last man who attended the funeral.
12. Do you know the time when your father went.
13. Do you know the reason why she arrived earlier.
14. No body appreciated the way in which she behaved at the party.
15. I was informed of the place where he was living.
16. Kabir, who was a weaver, was a famous poet.
17. Everybody loves Mr. Verma who is our teacher.
18. The boys who live near my house are honest.
19. The place where the leader was cremated was thronged with people.
20. She told me the reason why she was late.
21. Shakespear, who was a great dramatist, wrote a number of plays.
22. The girl who has long hair is a cousin of my wife.
23. They live just near the by pass which is on the outskirts of the city.
24. The players whom the President awarded cash prize were present at the function.
25. The offence which they committed intentionally is unpardonable.
26. I paid the debt which my father incurred.

**Practice Exercise 3**

1. Although he is experienced, he is not efficient.
2. Unless he works hard he cannot succeed.
3. When he was scolded, he left the room.
4. When the signal was given, the train started.
5. I shall be very glad if I help him.
6. He is so simple that he cannot win the game.
7. As he did mischief, he was punished.
8. The work was done, When I was present.
9. Though he is wealthy, he is not respected.
10. You must wait here till your father arrives.
11. Although he is poor yet he is honest.
12. Do it as best as you can.
13. Nobody must expect to become rich unless he works hard.
14. My heart is so full that I cannot utter a word.

15. He borrowed money from the bank so that he might continue his higher study.
16. She is undergoing slimming treatment because she is very fat.
17. The cat is swifter than the tiger.
18. I am thankful to you because you helped my brother.
19. If he had not got timely help, he would have died from burns.
20. She is so kind that she helps everybody.
21. He did not stop working until he got success.
22. They were afraid lest they should be caught in the shower.
23. You must act as the rules say.
24. He was promoted because he was very capable.
25. We shall leave for Shimla if weather permits.
26. Water is so hot that no one can drink it.
27. If all is well, I shall meet her parents today.
28. I shall be glad if I am invited.
29. I would be glad if I were there.
30. I would have been glad if I had been there.
31. Your behaviour was so bad that the guests could not bear it.
32. She is so good that I am no match for her.
33. He was so quick that he could overtake me.
34. As it was a junk food, we did not take it.
35. If we had not been poor, we would have been a happy family.

### Part II

#### Practice Exercise 1 (a)

1. Her dishonesty is much regretted.
2. He admitted his enemy's generosity.
3. I know the residence of your brother.
4. You must pay heed to the words of your officers.
5. Never say anything wrong.
6. We believe in God's existence.
7. I expect him to pass.
8. Unfortunately he died young.
9. He asked me the reason for giving money to his brother.
10. He confessed meeting her last night.  
He confessed to have met her last night.  
He confessed having met her last night.
11. I agreed to teach him.
12. I informed him of her departure.
13. He appears to have been scolded by his father.
14. I ordered him to leave the room at once.
15. People are certain of his honesty.

#### Practice Exercise 1 (b)

1. He confessed his guilt.
2. I do not care for his remarks.
3. Mohit may do any thing.
4. I have long doubted his honesty.
5. The rumour of his death is baseless.
6. His age is not known.
7. Her statement is disgusting.
8. His silence proved his complicity in the crime.
9. He denied to have murdered.
10. She appears to be absent today.
11. She was alleged to have abused him.
12. She wanted to know his name.
13. My hope is to earn a lot of money.
14. He is sure to have been punished.
15. He is expected to give me money.
16. All depends on his future.
17. I don't believe in his statement.
18. I agreed to his proposal.

**Practice Exercise 2 (a)**

1. (a) He is not a trust worthy man.  
(b) He is not a man to be trusted.
2. A careless student cannot succeed.
3. He is not a man to cheat anyone.
4. He has a large house to live in.
5. They made a false statement.
6. You can have anything of your choice.
7. Barking dogs seldom bite.
8. I know the reason of his failure.
9. Milton, a famous poet, wrote 'Paradise Lost'.
10. The train connecting New Delhi is late.
11. Childhood is a time to learn good habits.
12. The wounded man died last night.
13. Healthy people do not need a doctor.
14. Good deeds done by a man live after him.
15. The place of cremation of the leader was thronged with people.

**Practice Exercise 2 (b)**

1. Yesterday I bought a very cheap book.
2. You cannot believe a dishonest person.
3. The hard working persons succeed in life.
4. A wounded soldier was lying in the field.
5. The tired players could not perform well.
6. The monster proud of his power was defeated by Hercules.
7. In the street we saw a beggar begging from door to door.
8. The man wounded in the accident died last night.
9. The police discovered the weapon used to kill the victim.
10. The magic ball meant for the king was eaten by the jester.
11. Seema was the last person to leave for home.
12. My uncle was the first man to hear her name on the radio.
13. He has some bills to pay in cash.
14. I have no friend to talk to.
15. Childhood is a time to teach good habits to children.
16. The time of his arrival tomorrow is not certain.
17. All of us were told the reason of his becoming rich suddenly.
18. I remember very well the year of his retirement.
19. The residents of our colony were shouting for justice.
20. Rathore our captain, scored fifty runs.
21. Edison, a great scientist, invented electricity.
22. We visited the Taj, a unique building.
23. I shall travel by the Taj Express going to Agra direct.
24. The students hailing from Bihar are very hard working.
25. Tomorrow I will board a train connecting Udaipur.
26. The news broadcast by the Voice of America is true.
27. I met a poet already known to me.
28. Mr. Gupta will buy the house built by me only last year.
29. The book lost by me yesterday has been found out.
30. Those living in glass houses should not throw stones at others.

**Practice Exercise 3**

1. He did in accordance with my wish.
2. We get up in the morning.
3. After having finished our work, we went home.
4. Seeing me, he ran away.
5. Walking in the garden she was addressed by a stranger.
6. He is kind enough to help everybody.
7. We went home after the arrival of the teacher.
8. He wrote fast to the best of his ability.
9. Without being threatened, he will not return money.
10. I succeeded beyond my expectations.
11. On being found out, the thief was arrested.
12. Despite being punished, she was not ashamed.
13. You can talk to your liking.
14. In spite of being poor, he is honest.
15. Despite being honest, he is not hard working.
16. But for their help, I would not have gained success.
17. He ran fast to catch taxi.
18. On account of running fast, she was declared first by the teacher.
19. He being poor, we will help him.
20. God willing, you will succeed.
21. I make a promise to stick to it.
22. He was complimented because of his success.
23. He has come to Chandigarh to be treated by capable doctors.
24. It being fine we left for picnic.
25. While watching TV they were visited by their friends.
26. Crossing the road she was knocked down by a scooter.
27. Sonia is too slow for a good tennis player.
28. She is so clever that she can see through your tricks.
29. Her sorrow is too deep for tears.
30. He will stick to his job so as to escape starvation.
31. The signal having been given the train started.
32. I have not had any rest since my arrival in Chennai.
33. No money having been given to me the project was not launched.
34. The house is too small for me.
35. The weather being very pleasant we went on a long drive.

**Part III****Practice Exercise 1**

1. You permit me and I shall leave the room.
2. He is a man of knowledge but he is a fool.
3. He committed a fault so he was punished.
4. He is wealthy but he is not respected.
5. He worked hard and secured high percentage of marks.
6. He returned and we asked him many questions.
7. He teaches Mathematics and Hindi also.

8. You sent me money so I am thankful to you.
9. He is not only rich but also learned.
10. He did not accept my request but left Jhansi.
11. He was sitting in the drawing room and watching T.V.
12. He had many contacts but never used unfair means.
13. He must admit his fault otherwise he will be punished.
14. He must work hard and will secure high percentage of marks.
15. He was dismissed for he embezzled money.
16. The weather was very fine so we left for swimming.
17. He will die and his son will inherit the property.
18. He was ignorant so he did not follow the rules.
19. He could not qualify examination and I was much surprised.
20. (a) This treatment is very costly so only the rich can afford it.  
(b) None but the rich can afford this treatment.
21. Do this or suffer.
22. He feared rain and went by car.
23. I am not invited and so I shall not go.
24. Neither this statement nor that statement is correct.
25. First desire and then deserve.

**Practice Exercise 2**

1. She is sick but she will come.
2. Come by car and we will take you to temple.
3. It was cold so we did not go out.
4. The thief was found out and he was arrested.
5. She arrived and everybody welcomed her.
6. You must stop smoking otherwise you will suffer from lung disease.
7. I am not invited so I shall not go.
8. Listen seriously and I will tell you all.
9. He has recovered from illness so I am glad.
10. I had lost the pen but I have found it.
11. He had a dog and that was very faithful.
12. He is unlucky but he is never disappointed.
13. Do this otherwise you will suffer.
14. He is very intelligent but he cannot succeed.
15. He gave me money and I started business.
16. He is not at home otherwise I would meet him.
17. He may be at home and in that case I will give him money.
18. He will die and his son will inherit his property.
19. He must work hard and he will pass.
20. He spent more than he could afford.

### Part IV

#### Practice Exercise

##### (a) Nouns into verbs

1. She succeeded in the examination.
2. She intended to harm me.
3. He advised me.
4. They cannot be admitted without documents.
5. I am disinclined to work in office.
6. These oranges taste sour.
7. They have agreed to complete this work in time.
8. I am not inclined to go to the movie.
9. He has disgraced his family.
10. This refrigerator costs a lot.

##### (b) Noun into Adjective

1. She admitted that she was guilty.
2. The room was dusty.
3. He is a courageous man.
4. They are skilful workers.
5. His life is peaceful these days.
6. He was punished for he was negligent.

##### (c) Nouns into Adverbs

1. She left room angrily.
2. Please carry it carefully.
3. She survived luckily.
4. She is living with her only son peacefully.
5. She listened to me patiently.
6. She listened to me attentively.
7. She left the room hurriedly.
8. He goes to Chandigarh weekly.

### Verbs

##### (a) Verb into Noun

1. My brother made a promise to help me.
2. This computer is of Indian make.
3. She accepted all my proposals.
4. She was taking bath.
5. She put signature on the documents.
6. I am in need of money.
7. Please give me help.
8. Her intelligence won our admiration.

##### (b) Verb into Adjective

1. Her views are different from mine.
2. She is obedient to her brother.
3. He has been successful in her work.
4. He was hopeful of success.
5. I am doubtful of your honesty.
6. His success is astonishing to me.

##### (c) Verb into Adverb

1. She left for bus stop hurriedly.
2. I turned him out forcibly.
3. She did her task successfully.
4. She listened to my advice attentively.
5. They served me in difficulties helpfully.
6. She does her duty carefully.

### Adjectives

##### (a) Adjectives into Noun

1. Exercise gives strength to our body.
2. She acts with care.
3. She spends money with wisdom.
4. They achieved success in their expedition.
5. He is a man of courage.
6. We take pride in our country.
7. The room is full of dust.

(b) **Adjectives into Verbs**

1. Your news has pleased me.
2. She intended to favour me.
3. She succeeded in her job.
4. He cares about his health.
5. Your wife was annoyed with your behaviour.
6. We pride ourselves in your success.

(c) **Adjectives into Adverbs**

1. She is living with her daughter peacefully.
2. Do your work carefully.
3. She is learning computers attentively.
4. She writes neatly.
5. I am sitting comfortably.
6. He drives slowly.
7. she did it intentionally.
8. I will certainly pass.

**Adverbs**(a) **Adverbs into Nouns**

1. Do not talk with children in anger.
2. Do your work with attention.
3. Enter the room with care.
4. They got success in doing this.
5. Stock-taking is done every year.

(b) **Adverbs into Verbs**

1. She hurried to the airport in a taxi.
2. They always obey.
3. She cares for her duty.
4. They helped me in difficulty.
5. She attended to my advice.

(c) **Adverbs into Adjectives**

1. It is fortunate that they succeeded in the difficult task.
2. Her gait was graceful.
3. Her behaviour was disgraceful.
4. She was successful in solving the problem.
5. It is probable she may succeed.
6. Her dress was elegant.

**Miscellaneous Exercise**

1. His familiarity with the strangers astonished everybody.
2. Very few countries are as rich in heritage as India.
3. A student of our school is a famous leader.
4. The cancellation of our tour disappointed us.
5. He left the house happily.
6. Starving is better than begging.
7. He may be late.
8. She looks smart whether she wears saari or Jeans.
9. None but in their correct senses will ever do it.
10. Our principal is more honest than anybody else.
11. New plan was thought of by Suresh.
12. His injured foot prevented him from completing the race.
13. Shivaji was greater than most of the warriors in India.
14. It is a month since Sheena returned.
15. Should you require more information, contact the Secretary of the club.
16. You did not forget to buy a pen for me. did you?

17. There is nothing to complain of.
18. Please go through this letter.
19. He said that he would not help me.
20. Borrowing is not as good as lending.
21. There is a steady rise in the price of milk.
22. The judge did not fail to punish the guilty.
23. Unless you come, I will not go to the movie.
24. a) His victory took me by surprise  
b) I was taken by surprise at his victory.
25. Had the driver not driven rashly, he would not have lost the job.
26. He loves me no less than he loves her.
27. Her failure in life caused disappointed to her parents.
28. If it had not been cold, we would have had good time.
29. This book is of no use to you.
30. She is not wiser lady than she is known to be.
31. Put your tools away lest people should fall over them.
32. I would prefer to die rather than flatter.
33. Everybody will admit that she is honest.
34. Face the music or I will have to.
35. Despite being young she was appointed by the Commission.
36. She is more wise than beautiful.
37. Nothing else is of as great value to mankind as this is.
38. The storm which had threatened since Monday at last broke out with great fury.
39. If you do not waste, you will not want.
40. Your offer is acceptable to me.
41. Reena has not as much brain as she has money.
42. Normally a child should eat four times a day.
43. Having caught a train I went to Amravati.
44. I was doubtful if it was you.
45. You know her nature as well as I.
46. She complained of the room being hot.
47. Tanya is more punctual than any boy in the class.
48. How long your hair is!
49. However hard you may try you cannot earn much.
50. Do they believe that God exists?
51. Who was substituted for the injured player?
52. She met me years ago.
53. None but my friends are responsible for my adversity.
54. All the athletes complained of unsatisfactory amenities.
55. It is not likely that he will help you.
56. No one raised any objection to his attending the function.
57. The girls were not let go on Picnic.
58. If I had a map, I could guide you.
59. They found little sugar in the kitchen.
60. Although Sunil had visited Mohan only once before, he remembered the route.
61. Have you ever visited Mumbai?

62. Would that I could meet her again.
63. The situation was highly dramatic.
64. The sun having risen the fog disappeared.
65. a) I wish to have a small place in the hills to live in.  
b) I wish I had a small place in the hills to live in.
66. His attitude to the poor worried us.
67. Alas! a friend should be false.
68. Never will you sit in this room again.
69. This sum is so difficult that I cannot solve.
70. How bold such a child is!
71. His refusal to allow the late comers annoyed them.
72. It is contemptible that you are a cheat.
73. Existence of fairies is out of the question.
74. The flight of the plane from Srinagar to Delhi is direct.
75. It does not matter to you.
76. Never has the world known such a great discovery.
77. If you eat few rich dinners, you will need few medicines.
78. He will be angry at your coming late.
79. The brilliance of the student surprised everyone.
80. There is no use of blaming him.
81. I was sure of my dependence on him.
82. You will not have to write illegibly.
83. We shall never forget these happy days.
84. This is not the manner how you should do this work.
85. His prompt reply will enable us to take timely action.
86. It was a recess time and the students were playing.
87. Everybody likes to be praised.
88. I did not mean it at all.
89. In the event of your listening seriously I will tell you all.
90. His recovery from illness has made me glad.
91. Do this lest you should suffer.
92. He is likely to help you.
93. Mr. Rahul is on leave. Mrs Deepa is teaching English these days.
94. You are requested to sit down.
95. We buy and sell gold jewellery.
96. It is said that he is a spy.
97. She denied that she had visited the multiplex yesterday.
98. This computer is of India make.
99. There was none but wept when he departed.
100. But for hard work you would have wasted this year.
101. Glamorous as she is, she is modest.

## 4. Punctuation

### Practice Exercise

1. Reena said to the servant "What have you been doing since morning?" The servant said, "Madam, I have been walking the dog." Reena said, "Go at once to the kitchen." "What have I to do there?" the servant asked.
2. "Alas! Child", said her mother, "You have eaten all that I had." "Mother, do not worry. I can manage without food. But what about you?" said Shaurya. "You have not eaten too."
3. "Great God! I would rather be a Pagan than such a Christian," wrote Wordsworth.
4. By God! I have not done it.
5. Good Heavens! I have lost my purse.
6. "Good morning, Suhani. Have you slept well?" said her Mom. "You do not appear to have slept well," asked Suhani in turn. "You were awake when I got up to turn off the air conditioner."
7. "I can not go," she said, "because rain has not stopped so far."
8. "They are well now", Arnav said. "They can go." "But it is drizzling. How can they go?" said my daughter, Pearl.
9. "Do not desire, O my young friend, to get what you cannot get", said the fisherman.
10. The King said to the Jester, "How dare you touch the magic thing meant for me? Be ready to face the consequences." Shedding tears the Jester said, "I am sorry. No use crying," said the King. "I am crying for you, my lord", said the Jester "Why?" asked the King.
11. "You expect everybody," the slave said to the master, "to flatter you all the time. Why is it so?"
12. The queen cried, "Help! Help!"
13. "Advise me," Deep said, "How can I solve this problem."
14. "No," said Malini, "I have not heard this news."
15. Young and old, good and bad—All must die.
16. The names of the students are—Rohit, Meenakshi, Rahul, Sona and Ankur.
17. Oh dear! I am tired today.
18. 'O yes, I like singing; you like dancing.
19. Some are born great; some achieve greatness.
20. You fools! How dare you enter my room without permission.
21. She wouldn't go there, my son.
22. For God's sake, Please help me.
23. Ah! I am undone. My friends have ruined me.
24. Alas! what a fool I am. He has, after all, cheated me.
25. The words, "The Prohibited Area", were written on the wall.

## 5. Spelling Rules

### Work Book Exercise

- |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (b)  | 2. (d)  | 3. (a)  | 4. (b)  | 5. (c)  | 6. (b)  | 7. (a)  |
| 8. (a)  | 9. (c)  | 10. (b) | 11. (b) | 12. (b) | 13. (a) | 14. (d) |
| 15. (b) | 16. (a) | 17. (d) |         |         |         |         |